



# **NUTRITION   In Health and Disease**

# NUTRITION

THIRTEENTH EDITION / 143 Figures and 5 Plates in Color

Philadelphia and Montreal



# *In Health and Disease*

LENNA F. COOPER, B.S., M.A., M.H.E., SC.D.

EDITH M. BARBER, B.S., M.S.

*Writer and Consultant, Food and Nutrition Food Editor, General Features Syndicate Formerly Food Editor, New York Sun, and Lecturer on History of Cookery and Public Relations for Home Economists, Teachers College, Columbia University*

HELEN S. MITCHELL, A.B., PH.D.

HENDERIKA J. RYNBERGEN, B.S., M.S.

*Associate Professor of Science, Cornell University-New York Hospital School of Medicine*

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY



**THIRTEENTH EDITION**

**COPYRIGHT © 1958, by J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY**

Copyright, 1928, 1929, 1930, 1931, 1933,  
1935, 1938, 1941, 1943, 1947, 1950, 1953  
By J. B. Lippincott Company

Copyright © 1958, by J. B. Lippincott Company

Distributed in Great Britain by  
Pitman Medical Publishing Co., Limited, London

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 58-11874

Printed in the United States of America

# Preface

The 13th edition of *Nutrition in Health and Disease* presents nutrition principles based on the most recent findings and concepts, and suggests applications for putting this information to work. Emphasis is laid on the part that the nurse can play in promoting better nutrition for all people, and particularly on her role at the patient's bedside in implementing the dietary treatment of disease. This text also meets the needs of general college students in a variety of health-related fields.

ment the text

The 1958 Recommended Daily Dietary Allowances prepared by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council are used for reference throughout this edition.

Part One deals with the nutritional needs of various ages and groups, the foods which will supply these needs, and the fate of these foodstuffs in the body. New concepts of fat metabolism, the possible significance of unsaturated fatty acids and their distribution in common foods are discussed in Chapter 3. New bar charts in Chapters 4, 6, 7 and 8 show the distribution of nutrients in common foods classified in the four food groups now commonly used for teaching purposes. A new table of energy expenditures for everyday activities of the mid-20th century replaces outmoded material. The reduction of caloric needs with each decade for adults

of different weights is also given in tabular form. Geriatrics is given special emphasis in Chapter 15, recognizing, of course, that the foundation for good nutrition in later years is laid in good food habits acquired earlier in life.

Food and the Public Health, Chapter 16, is completely new, written by Warren Averill, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Food Technology, University of Massachusetts. Dr. Averill gives an interesting and concise review of the latest information on food-borne infections, food poisoning, spoilage, deterioration and modern methods of food preservation which conserve the values and the attractive appearance of food. The problem of food additives is discussed briefly, as well as the Federal and the state laws which protect the public against fraudulent and misleading claims and against contamination.

Part Two, *Diet in Disease*, is introduced by a new chapter entitled "The Patient and His Nutritional Problems." This chapter is concerned with the patient as a person, his attitudes toward food, feeding problems and his dietetic care. The subsequent chapters on diet in relation to specific disease syndromes have been thoroughly revised, with some sections completely rewritten. Low fat, low cholesterol diets for atherosclerosis, the gluten-free diet for treatment of sprue and celiac disease, the special diet for the dumping syndrome, and special diets for cardiospasm, hiatus hernia, kidney stones and pancreatitis have

been added. Formulas and directions for preparation of new varieties of tube feedings are given. Recent developments or discoveries such as ammonium poisoning in liver failure, Ornase in the orally administered therapy of diabetes and the significance of the hormone glucagon are also discussed. The chapter dealing with diet in diseases of children has been greatly expanded.

Part Three, pruned for increased efficiency, nevertheless includes new gluten-free recipes (Chap. 50), and other new recipes have been added to Chapters 49 and 50.

Part Four has been revised and condensed. Out-of-date tables have been deleted, a new table of the sodium and potassium content of foods and seasonings has been substituted, and the table of blood constituents has been revised, with the addition of urinary constituents indicating the nature of pathologic changes.

Special attention is called to the carefully selected and refreshed bibliography for supplementary reading which includes both general references and more specific readings classified according to subject. The latter group will be especially helpful to the advanced student. At the other extreme, professional people may find the list of more casual read-

ing for the lay person (sub-listing under General References) of some convenience in replying to queries of a non-professional nature.

The *Overseas Supplement* accompanies all copies of the book sent outside North America. This supplement provides suggestions as to how this text can be adapted for use in countries where the foods and the food habits are quite different from those in the United States. References in the Supplement list sources of information about foods common to various parts of the world.

The teacher's guide, entitled *Teaching Nutrition in Nursing*, by Hendenka J. Rynbergen, was completely revised in 1956 for use with the 12th and the 13th editions of the text. This manual contains outlines for lesson plans and suggests appropriate methods, topics for emphasis and related activities in each subject matter area, with special attention to an integrated approach in teaching diet in disease.

The authors have kept in mind not only the needs of the nursing student in basic programs but also those of the graduate nurse, the dietitian and the college instructor with the hope that the book's primary assets as a text will ensure its usefulness as a reference as well.

# Acknowledgments

The authors wish to express their deep appreciation to their many friends and associates for advice given and time spent in reviewing and revising the manuscript for the 13th edition. Special thanks are due Miss Marjorie Heseltine, Nutrition Specialist in the United States Children's Bureau, for assistance with Chapters 12, 13 and 14, Warren Av-

enll, Ph D, Associate Professor in Food Technology, University of Massachusetts, for writing Chapter 16, Food and the Public Health, and several physicians and the Department of Nutrition at The New York Hospital-Cornell Medical Center, for much helpful advice.



# Contents

## Part One. PRINCIPLES OF NUTRITION

<b>1. NUTRITION FOR HEALTH AND GROWTH</b> .....	<b>3</b>
Nutrition Today .....	3
Nutrition Through the Ages .....	4
Nutrition, a National and an International Issue ..	6
Prevalence of Nutritional Deficiencies .....	7
Nutritional Improvement Yields Results .....	10
American Food Habits Change .....	11
Popular Guides for Teaching Nutrition .....	13
Community Nutrition Programs .....	16
<b>2. CARBOHYDRATES</b> .. .....	<b>19</b>
World Use of Carbohydrate Foods .....	19
Sugars or Soluble Carbohydrates .....	20
Insoluble Carbohydrates .....	21
Metabolism of Carbohydrates .. . . .	25
Bread, Flour and Cereal Enrichment .....	27
<b>3. FAT AND OTHER LIPIDS</b> .. .....	<b>29</b>
The Place of Fat in the Diet .....	29
Food Fats—Definition and Classification .....	30
Essential Fatty Acids .. .....	31
Digestion and Absorption .. .....	33
Metabolism and Storage .. .....	35
Other Lipids .. .....	35
<b>4. PROTEINS</b> .. .....	<b>37</b>
Importance and World Use .....	37
Composition and Origin .. .....	37
Amino Acids .. .....	38
Quality of Proteins .. .....	39
Food Sources .. .....	40
Protein Metabolism .. .....	41
Protein Requirements .. .....	43
<b>5. ENERGY METABOLISM</b> .. .....	<b>46</b>
Energy and Heat .. .....	46
Measuring Food Calories .. .....	47

**ENERGY METABOLISM—(Continued)**

Measure of Energy Expended . . . . .	48
Basal Metabolism . . . . .	48
Energy Metabolism Requirements . . . . .	50
Other Factors Affecting Total Metabolic Rate . . . . .	52

<b>II MINERALS . . . . .</b>	<b>55</b>
Minerals Essential for Life . . . . .	55
Mineral Composition of the Body . . . . .	56
Calcium and Phosphorus . . . . .	59
Iron . . . . .	59
Iodine . . . . .	62
Trace Elements . . . . .	64
Sodium, Potassium, Magnesium, Sulfur and Chlorine . . . . .	66
Acid-Base Balance . . . . .	67
Acid-Base Reaction of Foods . . . . .	68

<b>7 FAT-SOLUBLE VITAMINS . . . . .</b>	<b>71</b>
General Discussion . . . . .	71
Vitamin A and Precursors . . . . .	73
Vitamin D (Calciferol) . . . . .	76
Vitamin E (Tocopherol) . . . . .	81
Vitamin K (Menadione and Derivatives) . . . . .	81

<b>8. WATER-SOLUBLE VITAMINS . . . . .</b>	<b>84</b>
Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C) . . . . .	84
Vitamin B Complex . . . . .	88
Antivitamins . . . . .	100

<b>9. DIGESTION, ABSORPTION AND CELL METABOLISM . . . . .</b>	<b>101</b>
Enzyme Action in Digestion . . . . .	101
Food Changes in the Large Intestine . . . . .	107
Factors Affecting Digestion . . . . .	108
Intermediary and Cell Metabolism . . . . .	109

<b>10. MEAL PLANNING TO MEET RECOMMENDED ALLOWANCES . . . . .</b>	<b>113</b>
Estimation of Human Dietary Needs . . . . .	113
Caloric Allowances . . . . .	114
Interpretation and Use of Tables . . . . .	115
Meal Planning To Fit Personal and Family Needs . . . . .	117
Menus and Market Order for a Family of Four . . . . .	122
Economy Hints . . . . .	124

<b>11 REGIONAL, NATIONAL AND CULTURAL FOOD PATTERNS . . . . .</b>	<b>128</b>
Regional Food Patterns . . . . .	128
National Food Patterns . . . . .	130
Cultural Food Patterns . . . . .	132
Food Habits . . . . .	138
Food Habits . . . . .	138

12. NUTRITION IN PREGNANCY AND LACTATION	140
Nutritional Demands of Pregnancy	140
Food Selection in Pregnancy	145
Complications of Pregnancy Involving Diet	147
Diet During Labor	150
Diet Following Delivery	150
Diet in Lactation	150
13. NUTRITION DURING INFANCY	153
Breast Feeding	153
Formula Feeding	154
Digestive Disturbances of Infancy	155
Weaning	155
Feeding Premature Infants	156
Formulas: Types and Preparation	157
	163
	166
Weight Gain	167
14. NUTRITION FOR GROWTH	169
Diet in Early Childhood	170
Elementary School Age	173
High School Age	176
Nutrition Studies of Children	177
The School Lunch Program	181
Nutrition Education	183
Evaluation of Growth and Nutritional Status	184
15. GERIATRIC NUTRITION	186
Adult Nutrition	186
Our Aging Population	188
Food Habits of Older People	189
Food Requirements of Older People	191
Planning Meals for Older People	194
16. FOOD AND THE PUBLIC HEALTH	196
Food-Borne Infections	197
Food Poisoning	198
Food Spoilage and Deterioration	200
Preservation of Foods	202
Food Additives	206
Food Laws	207

## Part Two : DIET IN DISEASE

INTRODUCTION	213
17. THE PATIENT AND HIS NUTRITIONAL PROBLEMS	215
Psychological Factors in Feeding People	215
Nutritional Status of Patients	217



THE PATIENT AND HIS NUTRITIONAL PROBLEMS--(Continued)	
	217
	Ill Patient
	218
18. DIET IN THE TREATMENT OF DISEASE ..	220
The Hospital Basic Diet . . . . .	221
Progressive House Diets . . . . .	221
Dietary Modifications for Specific Conditions ..	225
Nutritional Adequacy of Hospital Diets . . . . .	227
19. FEVERS AND INFECTIONS .....	229
Fevers of Short Duration . . . . .	229
Chronic Fevers and Infections . . . . .	232
20. NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES--SUBCLINICAL AND CLINICAL .....	235
General Concept of Deficiencies . . . . .	235
Protein Deficiencies . . . . .	236
Disorders Due to Vitamin A Deficiency . . . . .	241
Thiamine Deficiency--Polyneuritis and Beriberi . . . . .	244
Pellagra and Related Deficiencies . . . . .	247
Riboflavin Deficiency . . . . .	248
Ascorbic Acid Deficiency--Scurvy . . . . .	248
Rickets . . . . .	250
Osteomalacia . . . . .	253
Dental Caries . . . . .	253
Hemorrhagic Disease of Infants ..	255
Nutritional Anemia . . . . .	255
Simple, or Endemic, Goiter . . . . .	256
Early Diagnosis and Treatment of Nutritional Failure .....	256
21. OVERWEIGHT AND UNDERWEIGHT .....	260
Life Expectancy and Body Weight . . . . .	260
Obesity . . . . .	261
Underweight . . . . .	269
22. DIABETES MELLITUS .....	272
Causes of Diabetes . . . . .	272
Symptoms . . . . .	273
Diagnostic Tests . . . . .	273
Physiologic Explanation of Body Changes . . . . .	275
Diet Therapy . . . . .	277
Insulin Therapy . . . . .	285
An Oral Therapeutic Agent . . . . .	289
Diabetic Emergencies . . . . .	289
Diabetes in Children . . . . .	290
Diabetes in Pregnancy . . . . .	291
Teaching the Patient .....	291
23. DISEASES OF THE ESOPHAGUS AND THE STOMACH .....	294
The Pathway of Digestion . . . . .	294
Diagnostic Procedures . . . . .	295

**DISEASES OF THE ESOPHAGUS AND THE STOMACH—(Continued)**

Peptic Ulcer .....	295
Other Disorders of the Upper Gastro-intestinal Tract .....	300
<b>24. DISEASES OF THE INTESTINES .....</b>	<b>305</b>
Diarrhea .....	305
Regional Ileitis .....	305
Colitis .....	307
Sprue .....	308
Constipation .....	311
Cancer of the Bowel and Colostomy ..	313
Diverticulosis and Diverticulitis ..	313
Hemorrhoids .....	314
<b>25. DISEASES OF THE LIVER, THE BILIARY TRACT AND THE PANCREAS ....</b>	<b>315</b>
Functions of the Liver and the Gallbladder ..	315
Pathologic Conditions ..	317
Diseases of the Liver .....	317
Disease of the Gallbladder ..	323
Pancreatitis .....	324
<b>26. ALLERGY; SKIN DISEASES .....</b>	<b>326</b>
Allergy and Its Manifestations ..	326
Tests for Allergy ..	327
Treatment of Allergy .....	329
Teaching the Patient ..	330
Skin Diseases .....	331
<b>27. CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES .....</b>	<b>333</b>
Cardiac Disease ...	333
Vascular Diseases ...	341
Hypertension .....	344
<b>28. DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY .....</b>	<b>348</b>
Functions of the Kidneys ..	348
Nephritis ..	349
Glomerulonephritis ..	349
Nephrosclerosis ..	351
Uremia ...	353
Kidney Failure .....	353
Nephrosis .....	354
Kidney Stones .....	354
<b>29. DISEASES OF THE BLOOD .....</b>	<b>357</b>
Anemias .....	357
Anemias Due to Loss of Blood ..	357
Anemias Due to Deficiencies .....	358
Dietary Recommendations for Blood Donors .....	360
Diseases Affecting the White Blood Cells .....	360

30.	DISEASES OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL AND THE NERVOUS SYSTEMS .....	361
	Diseases of the Musculoskeletal System .....	361
	Diseases of the Nervous System .....	364
31	MISCELLANEOUS METABOLIC DISTURBANCES .....	368
	Spontaneous Hypoglycemia ..	368
	Hyperthyroidism ..	369
	Hypothyroidism ...	370
	Gout ..	370
	Tetany .....	372
32.	SURGICAL NUTRITION; BURNS ..	373
	Preoperative Diets ..	373
	Postoperative Diets ..	375
	Burns ...	383
33	NUTRITION IN DISEASES OF INFANCY AND CHILDHOOD .....	385
	Problems of Nutrition in Sick Children .....	385
	Feeding Difficulties in Infants ..	387
	Deficiency Diseases of Infants .....	388
	Infections ..	389
	Malnutrition, Underweight, Obesity ..	389
	Nutrition Problems of Crippled Children .....	391
	Diseases Specific to Children ..	394
	Diseases Common to Children and Adults ..	397

### *Part Three* FOOD SELECTION AND PREPARATION

34	INTRODUCTION TO FOOD SELECTION AND PREPARATION .....	403
	Adequate Menu for a Day .....	403
	Food for the Patient ...	405
	Use of Recipes ..	405
	Measuring Ingredients ..	405
	Cookery Terms ..	407
	Care of Utensils and Dishes .....	407
35.	BEVERAGES .....	409
	Beverages in the Menu ..	409
	General Rules and Recipes for Beverages .....	413
36	MILK .....	420
	Safe Milk ..	420
	Composition of Milk .....	421
	Food Value ..	421
	Digestibility .....	422
	Milk in the Menu .....	423
	Use of Milk in Recipes .....	423

37. FATS, SWEETENINGS, SEASONINGS AND FLAVORINGS	425
Fats	425
Sweetenings	426
Seasonings and Flavorings	428
38. CEREALS AND CEREAL PRODUCTS	430
Types of Cereals	431
Food Value	432
Digestibility	433
Place in the Menu	433
Preparation	436
Breakfast-Cereal Recipes	437
Rice Recipes	437
Macaroni and Noodle Recipes	438
39. FRUITS AND NUTS	440
Fruits	440
Nuts	446
40. EGGS	448
Food Value	448
Average Composition	448
Digestibility	448
Place in the Menu	449
Principles of Cookery	450
Recipes	451
41. DESSERTS	454
Functions of Desserts	454
General Rules for Serving Desserts	454
Recipes	455
42. CHEESE	464
Types of Cheese	464
Food Value	465
Digestibility	466
Use of Cheese in the Menu	466
Principles of Cookery	467
Recipes	467
43. MEATS AND POULTRY	469
Trends in Meat Consumption	469
Safe Meat	469
Types of Meat	470
Types of Poultry	473
Food Value	475
Digestibility	475
Meat and Poultry in the Menu	475
General Principles of Cookery	475
Effects of Cooking on Food Value	478
Care of Meat	479
Meat Recipes	479

MEATS AND POULTRY—(Continued)	
Choice and Preparation of Poultry .....	482
Poultry Recipes ..	483
Broths, Soups and Juices .....	484
44. FISH, INCLUDING SHELLFISH .....	487
Food Value .....	487
Shellfish ..	489
Other Foods Grouped with Fish .....	490
Digestibility ..	490
Place in the Menu .....	490
Selection and Care of Fish ..	491
Fish Recipes ..	491
Selection and Care of Shellfish .....	493
Shellfish Recipes ..	493
45. VEGETABLES ..	495
Botanical Classification ..	495
Food Value .....	496
Digestibility .....	498
Canned Vegetables ..	498
Frozen Vegetables ..	498
Dehydrated or Dried Vegetables .....	499
Place in the Menu .....	499
Preparation and Cooking .....	499
Dressings ..	502
Miscellaneous Recipes ..	504
46. SALADS AND RELISHES .....	508
Leafy Vegetables in Salads ..	508
Other Salad Vegetables ..	507
Salad Combinations ..	508
Salad Dressings ..	509
Salads and Relishes in the Menu .....	510
Recipes for Salads .....	511
Recipes for Salad Dressings ..	513
47. SOUPS .....	515
Ready-To-Use-Soups .....	515
Clear Soups ..	515
Unthickened Milk Soups—Chowders and Stews ..	516
Cream Soups .....	517
48. BREADS, BATTERS AND DOUGHS ..	522
Grain for Bread .....	523
Yeast-Bread Standards ..	525
Yeast in Bread-Making ..	525
Recipes Using Yeast Bread As a Foundation .....	525
Toast Recipes .....	525
Preparation of Crumbs ..	527
Sandwiches .....	527
Luncheon or Supper Sandwiches .....	528
Tea Sandwiches .....	529

## BREADS, BATTERS AND DOUGHS—(Continued)

Quick Breads .....	529
Biscuit and Muffin Recipes .....	530
49 INEXPENSIVE FAMILY-SIZE RECIPES .....	534
Soups .....	534
Meat Dishes .....	536
Cheese Dishes .....	537
Miscellaneous Main Dishes .....	538
Fish Dishes .....	541
Desserts .....	542
The Use of Dry Skim Milk .....	544
Special Recipes for Using Dry Skim Milk .....	545
III RECIPES FOR THERAPEUTIC DIETS .....	547
Low Caloric Recipes .....	547
Diabetic Recipes .....	552
High Caloric, High Protein Recipes .....	555
Allergy Recipes .....	559
Ketogenic Diet .....	563
Gluten-Free Recipes .....	563
Low Sodium Recipes .....	565
Vegetables .....	568
Breads .....	569
Desserts .....	569

## Part Four: TABULAR MATERIAL AND SPECIAL TESTS

## TABLES

1. COMPOSITION OF FOODS—EDIBLE PORTION IN COMMON MEASURES ..	574
2. FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS	636
3. CLASSIFICATION OF FRUITS AND VEGETABLES ACCORDING TO CARBOHYDRATE CONTENT .....	642
4. CHOLESTEROL CONTENT OF FOODS .....	643
5. SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES	644
6. ACID-BASE REACTION OF FOODS .....	648
7. BLOOD AND URINE COMPONENTS .....	649
8. EQUIVALENT WEIGHTS AND MEASURES .....	651
9. AVERAGE WEIGHT FOR HEIGHT TABLES .....	653
10. HEIGHT-WEIGHT TABLES FOR MEN AND WOMEN .....	657

## SPECIAL TESTS

TESTS CONCERNED WITH DIABETES MELLITUS, INSULIN ADMINISTRATION ..	658
Tests for Sugar and Diacetic Acid in the Urine .....	658
Directions for the Administration of Insulin .....	662

BIBLIOGRAPHY .....	665
GLOSSARY .....	687
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL RECIPES .....	695
GENERAL INDEX .....	702



PART ONE

# Principles of Nutrition

**Part One** deals with the Principles of Normal Nutrition and their application to all age and sex categories.





*Nutrition Today*  
*Nutrition Through the Ages*  
*Nutrition, a National and an International Issue*  
*Prevalence of Nutritional Deficiencies*  
*Nutritional Improvement Yields Results*  
*American Food Habits Change*  
*Popular Guides for Teaching Nutrition*  
*Community Nutrition Programs*

## CHAPTER ONE

# Nutrition for Health and Growth

### NUTRITION TODAY

The subject of nutrition is as old as man's search for food, but the science of nutrition is new. We have today a wealth of scientific knowledge about food with fresh concepts and applications. Knowledge of how we use food to nourish our bodies is the result of long years of research in laboratories in many countries, but this alone is not sufficient. Knowledge must be put into action not just by doctors who may prescribe special diets but by every homemaker who cares about the health of her family. Experts apply new discoveries in electronics so that we may enjoy TV by merely pushing a button, but there is no push-button application of nutrition. In contrast, the practical application of new discoveries in nutrition must be made by everyone who chooses his own food.

Many professional groups are helping others to understand how to benefit by nutrition knowledge: the doctor who prescribes special diets for his patients, the nutritionist who teaches others how to apply nutrition in everyday meal

planning, the dietitian who plans and supervises meal service in hospital, school or factory cafeteria, the nurse who sees that her patient is served the

provide not only for minimum requirements but also for the variations from the "normal" both in health and in disease, and for some margin of safety to

ity. The well-nourished individual is alert mentally and physically, has a wholesome and optimistic outlook on life, has good resistance to infections

and shows numerous other signs of good health.

Not only can good nutrition contribute to everyday health, but the life span may be increased by extending the active and vigorous period of life. By using animals with a shorter life span than man, Sherman proved, by carefully controlled experiments on 27 generations of rats, that good diet could extend the life span by 10 per cent.

The real job of planning for health and efficiency of future generations depends upon the formation of good health habits in today's children. Inheritance may account for tall parents' having tall children, but there is also the probability that the foods which make for growth were served habitually in those households.

### NUTRITION THROUGH THE AGES

Food always has been recognized as one of the most vital necessities of life. Man's interest in its nutritive values began before the dawn of civilization, and it has continued to grow throughout the ages. This interest did not develop into a distinct science of nutrition, however, until the twentieth century.

E. V. McCollum<sup>1</sup> has aptly summarized man's concern for food in the first of a series of articles on nutrition in *Today's Health*.

"Mankind has been on this earth for not less than 300,000 years. For a large share of that time man has been a hunter and food-gatherer, eating what he could find. Around 6,000 years ago, when the earliest civilizations were being established in a few places, man set forth in earnest as a food-producer to alleviate his ever-pressing need to satisfy hunger. Yet for less than 50 years has man possessed the knowledge that would permit him to provide and then select combinations of foods to nourish his

body as it rightfully and properly should be nourished."

**Egypt.** On an old millstone found in

written as a hymn of praise to the God Ptah, extolling him as the supreme Sun God. The manuscript reveals the existence of a government that apparently was vitally interested in food, for it reads:

"And thus the stations [official positions] were made and the functions [of government] were assigned, which furnished all nutrition and all food . . . Everything has come forth from him, whether food, or nutrition, or food of the gods, or any good thing."<sup>2</sup>

**Babylonia.** The interest of the ancients in food and in dietary matters is shown, it will be remembered, by the biblical story of Daniel and his three companions who were chosen to stand before King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon as "youths in whom there was no blemish . . . and understanding science." They were to receive daily a portion of the king's dainties and his wine. But Daniel objected to this regimen, much to the consternation of the chief eunuch, who feared the king's displeasure if these young men's countenances should be "worse-looking than those of other youths." Daniel then instituted what was probably the first dietary experiment when he persuaded the chief eunuch to allow him and his companions to be given, for a period of ten days, a diet of pulse (legumes, such as peas, beans and lentils) in place of the king's meat, and water in place of his wine. It will be remembered that at the end of the ten days, they looked so well that they were allowed to continue in their own way, and at the end of their three years' training, the king found them "ten times better than all the magicians

<sup>1</sup> McCollum, E. V. *Today's Health*, October, 1957.

<sup>2</sup> Breasted, J. H. *The Dawn of Civilization*, New York, Scribner, 1933.

and enchanters that were in all his realm." Thus we see a beginning, at about 600 B.C., of an appreciation of things "scientific," even though a very meager fund of knowledge existed. Confidence in magic was beginning to wane.

Greece. Primitive man soon learned to associate his diseases with his food supply. Even the medicine man of the time was primarily interested in the

until Hippocrates arrived on the scene of action about 460 B.C. He linked the development of medicine to that of nutrition and recognized that all foods

lated Galen (A.D. 130 to 200), after finishing the medical course of his time, went from Greece to Alexandria in Egypt, where he was allowed to dissect the bodies of executed criminals. Later he experimented upon hogs and, as a result of his experiments, concluded that the stomach was a place in which food could be resolved into particles sufficiently small to be absorbed.

Experimental research as a necessary factor in the study of medicine was given a great impetus by Galen. However, for more than a thousand years after his death little progress was made. During the 16th century Leonardo da

followed in the 19th century by such illustrious men as Liebig, Voit and Rubner.

While new concepts of nutrition were developing in Germany and several other European countries, in France Pasteur was astonishing scientific circles with his discoveries in the field of bacteriology, hygiene and the value of antiseptics, introducing a new era in public health. Even earlier, Florence Nightingale had recognized that good nursing demanded hygienic conditions and adequate food and thus revolutionized the care of wounded soldiers in the Crimea.

The 20th century brought wide interest in all phases of health and prevention of disease. In the United States the names of Lusk, Chittenden, Mendel, McCollum, Murlin, Benedict, Sherman and Mary Swartz Rose stand out as pioneers in their respective fields of nutrition research.

**Evolution in Nutrition Research**  
Early in the 20th century research workers in food chemistry and in physiology in Europe and in America demonstrated the need of good-quality protein for the growth of animals. Later the concept of the number and the type of minerals needed for growth came to include trace elements, as well as those present in larger amounts. At the same time other workers had shown the presence and the need for certain "accessory food factors," later called vitamins. Then followed in rapid succession studies of amino acids, essential fatty acids, hormones, enzymes, chemical regulators and intermediary products of digestion and metabolism.

Research methods and scientific tools have kept pace with changing concepts. First, the chemist analyzed foods for protein, fat, total ash and moisture, and assumed the balance to be carbohydrate in nature. Then he analyzed the ash for its specific mineral constituents. Later, animal-feeding experiments supplemented the chemist's data by showing

lism, or what becomes of the food after it is digested in the body. Lavoisier was

that hitherto unrecognized food factors were necessary for growth and that the rate of growth could be used to measure the presence of such substances. This method is known as bio-assay. Now micro-organisms are being used, and the method is called micro-biologic assay.

New methods were developed for studying the processes of metabolism and its end products. At first animals were used for such studies. As differences in species became evident, it was obvious that research on human subjects would be the only way to understand human metabolism. Thus the present trend is the study of nutritional status of human subjects under carefully controlled conditions.

Groups of laboratories in various parts of the United States are working together on co-operative projects too extensive for any one laboratory to undertake. The Institute of Home Economics, Agricultural Research Service, and the Office of Experiment Stations are giving Federal support to nutrition studies, which should yield basic information of benefit to us all.

### NUTRITION, A NATIONAL AND AN INTERNATIONAL ISSUE

The science of nutrition took on new significance during and after World War II. To be sure, the League of Nations had attempted to set up standards for adequate nutrition as far back as 1935, and these recommendations

same time the National Research Council established the Food and Nutrition Board to study the broad problems of nutrition on a national and international scale. One of their first accomplishments was to establish Recommended Dietary Allowances for various age and sex categories. This yardstick of good nutrition published first in 1941 with five subsequent revisions has done much to give nutrition education in this country a common goal (See Chap. 10.)

The concept of what better nutrition can mean to a nation was not new, but there is a new emphasis with the realization that international planning needs to be done to ensure even a degree of good nutrition for all people.

The importance of food in making peace terms work is emphasized by the fact that one of the first international organizations was set up to help consumers and food producers plan for a better-fed world. The United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) grew out of the meeting held at Hot Springs, Va., in May, 1943, and was launched as a full-fledged international organization in Quebec, Canada, in October, 1945, under the leadership of Lord John Boyd Orr, a world leader in the field of nutrition. He was the 1949 recipient of the Nobel Peace Prize in recognition of his leadership in this work. The FAO is concerned not so much with the theories and the terms of peace as with the establishment of conditions that will help to make peace.

Two thirds of the world's people never have had enough to eat or the right kind of food to promote health. In

United States and to application of the available knowledge in order to keep people as well as possible during the extreme strain of the war years. The National Nutrition Conference in 1941 launched a nation-wide program, with nutrition committees set up in nearly every state doing an active job of promoting better nutrition. At about the

food do not get enough of it or the right kind. Today, science is trying to provide information on how to produce enough

food to feed the world, and the FAO is a first step toward putting that in-

nutrition is mentioned and emphasized repeatedly in the FAO articles of organization. The science of nutrition ties in on the one hand with the agriculture of nations and on the other with the health of nations. The World Health Organization (WHO) is another United Nations subdivision concerned specifically with the health of the world's people. Still another UN subdivision—the United Nations

at least an elementary education, including some simple rules of health. UNESCO has selected *Food and People* as a major topic for study and for a series of publications under that title. These well-written and illustrated pamphlets provide vivid glimpses into the world's food problems and its resources for feeding an increasing population. Of first concern is the quantity of food to provide sufficient calories. A world map (Fig. 1) from *UN Sets the Table*<sup>3</sup> shows several densely populated countries where calories provided were less than 2,250 per person in 1939, whereas the United States and others of the more prosperous countries had more than 2,750 calories per capita.

A joint Nutrition Advisory Committee of experts from several countries is working to co-ordinate the activities of FAO, WHO and UNESCO where they

the burdens of hopeless poverty from men's shoulders by applying modern scientific knowledge to the development of the earth's resources. It is a far more fundamental solution to the world's ills than the military and the political preoccupation that seems to absorb the attention of most governments.<sup>4</sup>

### PREVALENCE OF NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES

United Nations agencies and others study continuously the areas of the world where nutritional deficiencies still exist. Some of the deficiency diseases discussed in Chapter 20 are seldom found in the United States today, but all of them and more are found in the world today. Every student of nutrition who is also a good citizen should be conscious of world health problems. Beriberi, scurvy, pellagra and rickets

known conditions, such as kwashiorkor among children in many parts of the world, have been recognized more recently as deficiency diseases.

In order to study the extent of a nutrition problem in a given area or country, a team of workers consisting of medical men and nutritionists may make a survey. Large samples of population groups are given physical examinations to discover their nutritional status. Nutritionists may study the food pattern of the people and the nutrients available and attempt to correlate their findings with the medical picture. Recommendations for improvement of the situation must take into account local resources, nutritive value of native foods and ways in which they are used. Finally, consideration is given to what help may be needed from outside.

The United States still has mild nu-

ment to wipe out mass hunger and lift

<sup>3</sup> Kahss, Peter. *UN Sets the Table, Food and People series*, UNESCO, 1950.

<sup>4</sup> Director-General's Report. *World War Against Want, the Work of FAO, 1950-1951*.

# A DIFFERENCE OF CALORIES

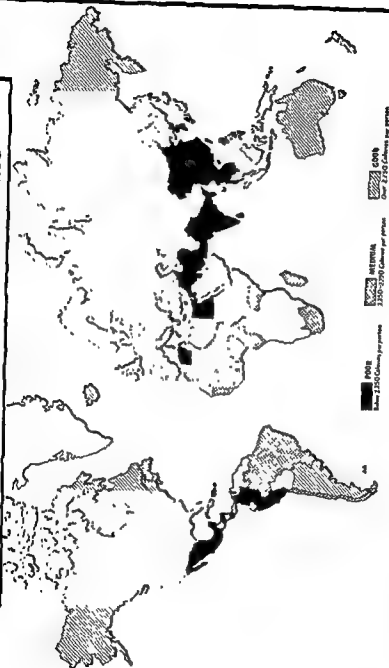


Fig. 1. Kist, Peter U.N. Sets the Table, Food and People Series, No. 2, a UNESCO project, New York, Manhattan Publishing Co., 1950.

## NEED FOR IMPROVED DIETS, 1955

### Family Diets Not Meeting NRC Allowances

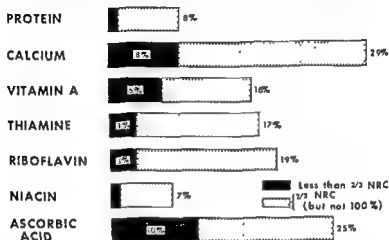


Fig. 2 (U. S. Department of Agriculture)

tritional deficiencies, especially among people of low income and limited education. Often these deficiencies are termed subclinical because they are not the frank deficiency diseases found in underdeveloped countries. Vague or

States today because we have the knowledge and the resources to discover the cause and suggest a remedy.

Repeated surveys have been made of population groups in the United States in an attempt to evaluate their food habits and their nutritional status. One such survey made during World War II<sup>6</sup> showed that large numbers of people were not eating foods to provide the

nutrients recommended for optimum health. A later survey made in 1955 and reported by Faith Clark in 1957<sup>6</sup> shows that nutrient intake seems to have improved in general, but there are some families who, though not suffering from obvious malnutrition, fail to get recommended amounts of certain nutrients. Calcium and ascorbic acid are the two nutrients which most often failed to meet recommended allowances in the family diets investigated (Fig. 2).

Nutritional status must be measured by health and by medical examination of individuals. Dietary surveys may show diets to be faulty or even seriously inadequate according to our standards, but evidence of serious malnutrition may not be conspicuous. However, poor diets predispose a proportion of such groups

<sup>6</sup> Clark, Faith. Family Diets Today, Nutrition Education Conference Report, April 1, 1957.



# A DIFFERENCE OF CALORIES

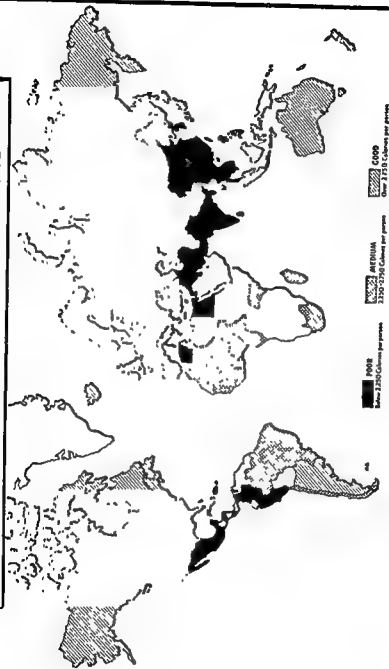


Fig. 1 Kihss, Peter: *U.N. Sets the Table, Food and People Series, No. 2*, a UNESCO project, New York, Manhattan Publishing Co., 1950.

1948, there was a striking improvement in health, particularly in those symptoms which might have been expected to respond to the nutritional factors provided in the enrichment program. Beriberi, which had been widespread in years prior to 1943, was practically nonexistent in 1948, and tuberculosis deaths have been cut in half in 8 years.<sup>8</sup> The policy of flour enrichment in Newfoundland has been maintained since her union with Canada in 1949, and there is enthusiastic support for it as a consequence of the health improvement accomplished.

The enrichment of flour and bread in the United States has been in effect since 1941 and is now mandatory in 27 states, Hawaii and Puerto Rico. Accomplishment of this program in the United States cannot be measured as it was measured in Newfoundland, but the findings there should help persuade the skeptics that there is merit in the program. The principle of enrichment has been applied to corn products and rice in some Southern states.

Rice is the predominant grain of the Orient and the chief cereal food of more than half the world's population. Beriberi has long been associated with the eating of polished rice, the form preferred by most of these peoples. Few of these countries have adequate statistics to give a true picture of the incidence of beriberi, but the Philippines have kept records since 1920. On the peninsula of Bataan, deaths from beriberi had ranged from 150 to 300 a year, and as many as 12,000 persons gave evidence of health continually impaired by beriberi symptoms. Since the initiation of the rice-enrichment program in 1949, inspired and directed by Dr. R. R. Williams, the incidence of beriberi has been reduced about 90 per cent, and not a single death from beri-

beri occurred during the next 2 years.<sup>9</sup> While education may have been able to stimulate some improvement in food habits and in methods of milling rice over a long period of time, it is unlikely that any such accomplishment as that reported above ever could have been realized from education alone, even within the lifetime of the children.

Other studies on smaller groups of children or adults in this country in institutions where diet could be controlled and nutritional status studied have also shown that food providing essential nutrients not only can cure deficiencies but also make the difference between mediocre and buoyant health.

## AMERICAN FOOD HABITS CHANGE

Comment on the history of nutrition in this country would not be complete without mention of the changes in the food-consumption pattern. The Department of Agriculture keeps up-to-date records of the types and the amounts of foods available in this country for

unusual to interpret because they are based on total available food and not on actual consumption figures. Nevertheless, they give some idea of trends in available nutrients during this span of nearly half a century (see Fig. 3). The significant decrease in the use of grain products and potatoes has resulted in a marked reduction in carbohydrates in spite of an increased use of sugars and sweets. The gradual rise in the curve for fat cannot be interpreted as a true picture indicating that much increase in consumption, because there is no way of knowing how much fat is wasted in the butchering of meats, in the preparation of food or on the plate, but the trend of consumption is upward.

Authorities tell us that the figures on food supplies during World War II and

<sup>8</sup> Williams, R. R. *Am. J. Nursing* 52: 447, 1952.

<sup>9</sup> Medical Survey and Resurvey in Newfoundland, 1944 and 1948. *Canad. M. A. J.* 52: 227, 1945; 60: 329, 1949.

to the possibility of physical ills or defects resulting from habitual malnutrition. Therefore, a distinction should be made between the extent to which diets seem to be inadequate, as shown by dietary surveys, and the prevalence of actual deficiency conditions in a population group.

The application of existing knowledge of the significance of optimum nutrition for health is slow, as are all preventive or prophylactic measures in public health. The benefits lack drama and can be measured with difficulty only after years of work. Premature and exaggerated claims too often are made for the benefits to be derived from optimum versus merely adequate nutrition. Individual variation as to need for specific nutrients must take into consideration such factors as age, environment, occupation and stress conditions. About all that can be said is that the evidence now available, leads to but one conclusion: it is that there is a real difference, as measured in terms of growth, development and general health, between optimum and just adequate nutrition, and that every practical effort should be made to help more people attain the optimum.

### NUTRITIONAL IMPROVEMENT YIELDS RESULTS

Food and nutrition experts have been teaching for decades the value of good food, but it is difficult to evaluate the results of their efforts. The evidence is all around us in the robust health of most children today. But statistical or scientific evidence of accomplishment is necessary if governments are to initiate and support such programs.

The relation between the customary diet and the nutritional status must be

nutritional failure, work efficiency and growth patterns of infants and children are valuable criteria for judging the effectiveness of a program. Such studies have been made on isolated population groups, and these afford good evidence that improvement of the diet can benefit nutritional status.

In Great Britain<sup>7</sup> during World War II it was demonstrated that "improvement of the diet of workmen whose diet was not previously up to the standard for health was followed by increased output without any conscious increased effort and also by a reduction in the number of accidents." In the United States the importance attached to proper feeding of industrial workers has come to be appreciated to the extent that provision of adequate food for employees has continued to be emphasized where there is progressive plant management. The feeding of men in the armed forces is constantly under study to improve both palatability and nutritive quality of the food because authorities appreciate the importance of the right food for health, morale and general stamina of the men.

Among the postwar studies, those in Newfoundland and in the Philippines are notable examples of measured ac-

the authors made a survey in several of the northern outposts 15 years prior to the study begun in 1944 in some of the southern outposts. The conditions were strikingly similar. The signs and the symptoms found on clinical examination and biologic tests in 1944 were indicative of a multiple vitamin deficiency. The enrichment of margarine with vitamins A and D and of all-white flour with three B vitamins plus iron and calcium became effective in June, 1944. When the second survey was made in

The incidence of signs and symptoms of

<sup>7</sup> Orr, John Boyd. Brit. M. J. 173, 1941.

1948, there was a striking improvement in health, particularly in those symptoms which might have been expected to respond to the nutritional factors provided in the enrichment program. Beriberi, which had been widespread in years prior to 1943, was practically non-existent in 1948, and tuberculosis deaths have been cut in half in 8 years.<sup>8</sup> The policy of flour enrichment in Newfoundland has been maintained since her union with Canada in 1949, and there is enthusiastic support for it as a consequence of the health improvement accomplished.

The enrichment of flour and bread in the United States has been in effect since 1941 and is now mandatory in 27 states, Hawaii and Puerto Rico. Accomplishment of this program in the United States cannot be measured as it was measured in Newfoundland, but the findings there should help persuade the skeptics that there is merit in the program. The principle of enrichment has been applied to corn products and rice in some Southern states.

Rice is the predominant grain of the Orient and the chief cereal food of more than half the world's population. Beriberi has long been associated with the eating of polished rice, the form preferred by most of these peoples. Few of these countries have adequate statistics to give a true picture of the incidence of beriberi, but the Philippines have kept records since 1920. On the peninsula of Bataan, deaths from beriberi had ranged from 150 to 300 a year, and as many as 12,000 persons gave evidence of health continually impaired by beriberi symptoms. Since the initiation of the rice-enrichment program in 1949, inspired and directed by Dr. H. R. Williams, the incidence of beriberi has been reduced about 90 per cent, and not a single death from ber-

ber occurred during the next 2 years.<sup>9</sup> While education may have been able to stimulate some improvement in food habits and in methods of milling rice over a long period of time, it is unlikely that any such accomplishment as that reported above ever could have been realized from education alone, even within the lifetime of the children.

Other studies on smaller groups of children or adults in this country in institutions where diet could be controlled and nutritional status studied have also shown that food providing essential nutrients not only can cure deficiencies but also make the difference between mediocre and bouyant health.

## AMERICAN FOOD HABITS CHANGE

Comment on the history of nutrition in this country would not be complete without mention of the changes in the food-consumption pattern. The Department of Agriculture keeps up-to-date records of the types and the amounts of foods available in this country for human consumption, the latest summary covering 47 years (1909-1956). These data on the per capita food supply are difficult to interpret because they are based on total available food and not on actual consumption figures. Nevertheless, they give some idea of trends in available nutrients during this span of nearly half a century (see Fig. 3). The significant decrease in the use of grain products and potatoes has resulted in a marked reduction in carbohydrates in spite of an increased use of sugars and sweets. The gradual rise in the curve for fat cannot be interpreted as a true picture indicating that much increase in consumption, because there is no way of knowing how much fat is wasted in the butchering of meats, in the preparation of food or on the plate, but the trend of consumption is upward.

Authorities tell us that the figures on food supplies during World War II and

<sup>8</sup> Medical Survey and Resurvey in Newfoundland, 1944 and 1948. *Canad. M. A. J.* 52: 227, 1945; 60: 329, 1949.

<sup>9</sup> Williams, R. R. *Am. J. Nursing* 52: 447, 1952.

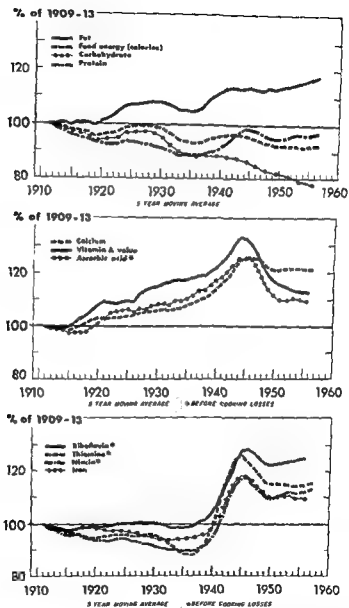


Fig 3 Per capita civilian consumption, U.S.A (Top) Food energy, protein, fat and carbohydrate (Center) Calcium, vitamin A and ascorbic acid (Bottom) B vitamins and iron. (Agricultural Handbook No. 62 and Supplement for 1956, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D. C., 1957)

immediately afterward may give a wrong impression because certain commodities were stockpiled at that time and were not really available for civilian use. However, the available supply of meat, fish, poultry, eggs and dairy products has been fairly constant over most of the period studied. This means that there was an adequate supply of good-quality protein if it had been evenly distributed.

It is interesting to speculate upon what factors—economic, educational or other—influence American food habits. When the national nutrition program was launched in 1941, followed immediately by bread and flour enrichment, the supply of available nutrients showed a marked increase. Obviously the nutrients added to flour and bread—thiamine, riboflavin, niacin and iron—showed the most abrupt rise at that time and have continued at a level well above prewar. The increased use of citrus fruits and green and yellow vegetables during the 1940's is reflected in the increase in vitamins A and C during those years, but the trend in the use of these foods

and the vitamins they supply has been decreasing during the last 10 years.

One cannot help but wonder whether or not the intensive educational campaign and the popular interest in nutrition during the war years was responsible for the increased use of protective foods. Is the decreased use of some of the protective foods today an indication of ignorance or lack of interest in nutrition? To be sure, the nutrient supply is still liberal, but the downward trend of these curves does not leave us with a feeling of complacency. We know that foods are not evenly distributed, much is wasted, and some people cannot afford to buy as many of the protective foods as they need. It is apparent, therefore, that nutrition education should continue to be a vital force in this country.

### POPULAR GUIDES FOR TEACHING NUTRITION

For many years nutritionists have offered homemakers easy guides for meal planning. Such guides or dietary patterns differ slightly in their wording but give essentially the same advice.

#### A Daily Food Plan

##### *Milk Group (Some Milk Daily)*

Children	3 to 4 cups
Teenagers	4 or more cups
Adults	2 or more cups

Pregnant and nursing mothers 4 to 6 cups

Cheese and ice cream may replace part of the milk.

##### *Meat Group (2 or More Servings)*

Beef, veal, pork, lamb, poultry, fish, eggs;  
dry beans and peas and nuts as alternates

##### *Vegetable-Fruit Group (4 or More Servings, Including)*

A dark green or a yellow vegetable,—at least every other day, for vitamin A.

A citrus fruit or other vegetable high in vitamin C—daily

Other fruits and vegetables, including potatoes.

##### *Bread-Cereals Group (4 or More Servings)*

Whole grain, enriched, restored.

FOOD FOR FITNESS

# *A Daily Food Guide*

## **MILK GROUP**

Some milk for everyone

- Children . . . 3 to 4 cups  
Teen-agers . . . 4 or more cups  
Adults . . . 2 or more cups



## **MEAT GROUP**

2 or more servings

Beef, veal, pork, lamb,  
poultry, fish, eggs

As alternates—  
dry beans, dry peas, nuts

## **VEGETABLE FRUIT GROUP**

4 or more servings

Include—

- A citrus fruit or other fruit or vegetable important for vitamin C
- A dark-green or deep-yellow vegetable for vitamin A—at least every other day
- Other vegetables and fruits, including potatoes

## **BREAD CEREAL GROUP**

4 or more servings

Whole grain, enriched,  
or restored

Plus other foods as needed to complete meals and to provide additional food energy and other food values

Fig. 4A. (Leaflet 424, Institute of Home Economics, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.)

## THE BASIC 7 FOOD GROUPS

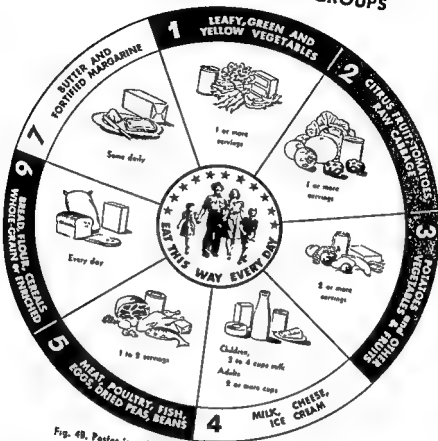


Fig. 4B. Poster issued by Institute of Home Economics, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington.

A basic scheme for meal planning<sup>10</sup> using 4 food groups has been suggested by the Institute of Home Economics. Most foods contain more than 1 nutrient, but no single food furnishes all the necessary nutrients in proper proportions to maintain health. It is not difficult to obtain the factors needed if

the types of foods listed below are eaten daily in the amounts suggested.

The minimum number of servings listed above form a foundation for a good diet. To round out meals and to satisfy the appetite, many people will use more of these foods, and everyone will use foods not specified such as butter, margarine, other fats, sugars, sweets, baked goods, etc. A pattern dietary based on these 4 groups is given in detail in Chapter 18.

<sup>10</sup> Page, L., and Phipard, E. F. Essentials of an Adequate Diet, Home Economics Research Report No. 3, Nov., 1957.



Each of the broad food groups listed in the daily food plan has a special job to do, no single group provides all the nutrients, but together they furnish a major share of the protein, the minerals and the vitamins recommended. These needs, and how they are met, will be discussed in more detail in the chapters which follow.

An earlier scheme, commonly referred to as the Basic 7 Foods Groups (see Fig. 4), has been in use for some years

food groups better than 7. Any of these schemes for teaching nutrition allow for considerable variation to meet differences in taste preferences, national food patterns and cost. The choice of teaching devices should be adjusted to needs and revised in line with the dietary patterns of national or regional groups. Kodachrome slides, films, posters and other educational materials produced by other agencies usually conform to one of the government plans and are useful for popular education. The commercial materials are often more colorful than those produced by educational and government agencies, but they must be used with discretion if they are accompanied by advertising.

Canada's Food Rules are very similar to ours, and they have also produced some good educational films.

### COMMUNITY NUTRITION PROGRAMS

Community health programs always

as a knowledge of how to prevent the spread of infections, that public-health measures in a community should include attention to the kind of food served in schools, factories, institutions and restaurants, as well as attention to

inspection of the water and the milk supply and the hygiene of food establishments. Education and opportunity for good nutrition are becoming a major part of every community-health program, because it is now generally recognized that optimal health is not possible without the right food and that sub-optimal health is frequently responsible for indigence, delinquency, discomfort, inefficiency and potential disease.

To attack new problems in the field of public health is never simple, and the problem of malnutrition is especially complex, because it has medical, social, economic and psychologic aspects. In any community it requires the co-operation of all public and private agencies with a broad vision on the part of administrators, staff and especially family case workers as to the part that better food can play in improving the health of their clients. Many times they are so concerned with family relations and budget problems that there is little time or inclination to investigate the food used by the family.

### Role of Nursing Services

In recent years a number of health

and departments of education, may maintain nursing services. Many communities also have a visiting-nurse service under private auspices. The function of a public-health nursing service may be entirely educational, or it may be a combination of health education and bedside care. Checking the food habits of the family or the individual may disclose glaring deficiencies that might be corrected within the existing food budget.

The nurse has an opportunity to carry practical nutrition into many homes untouched by other services. She must be

prepared to give necessary instruction in regard to food selection. She will handle few cases in which some improvement is not required. It is strongly recommended that a well-trained nutritionist be included on the staff of the larger organizations to serve as consultant and to plan a broad nutrition program in which

may be obtained through consultant services established by the local nutrition committee or by other community agencies. Nutrition program

in helping a patient to carry out the doctor's orders concerning special diets and to fit the diet into the family food plan. In assisting with such a program for one member of the family, improve-

instances poor health that cannot be traced to any organic disease can be corrected by helping the patient to secure an adequate, normal diet.

To change ingrained food habits is usually a slow process, and improvements may have to be made gradually

in itself makes such a significant contribution to an otherwise poor diet

at low cost. Instruction may be needed in the preparation of food, and these suggestions should be made in line with

the facilities available for cooking (See Part Three)

In certain circumstances the nurse may have a unique opportunity to promote better nutrition. She may be expected to make practical suggestions for securing the kind and the amount of food necessary during pregnancy and lactation (see Chap. 12). She may be called upon to help prepare the baby's formula and, later, to advise on the introduction of foods other than milk (see Chap. 13). Preschool and older children may need guidance in food habits, or the mother may have to be helped as to what foods to buy, how to prepare them and how to induce the children to eat the right food. When the children reach high-school age and begin to eat one meal away from home, good food habits established early count, but even then these children may need guidance on how to choose the best lunch for the limited amount that they have to spend (see Chap. 14).

Adults and older people often fail to realize that their health also may depend upon the habitual consumption of an adequate diet and that good food habits can delay the progress of

can be of great assistance in suggesting foods that will hasten recovery and help the patient to adjust to a normal diet again.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. About when did the modern concept of nutrition as a science take shape?
2. What contribution has the United States made to the setting of standards for nutritional needs?
3. Which of the U.N. organizations are concerned with the food and the nutrition of populations?
4. What evidence is there of nutritional deficiencies in the United States?
5. Have there been some improve-

## III Principles of Nutrition

---

ments in the American dietary in recent years? State the probable reasons for the changes that have occurred.

■ Numerous popular guides have been published to help laymen select better food. Which of these guides with which you are familiar have you found to be most helpful to you? Why?

7. Give scientific evidence that improvement of nutritional status is possible as a result of food enrichment.

8. Health departments have long been responsible for the prevention of communicable diseases. How will the addition of education in nutrition alter the programs of health agencies?

**See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.**

*World Use of Carbohydrate Foods*  
*Sugars or Soluble Carbohydrates*  
*Insoluble Carbohydrates*  
*Metabolism of Carbohydrates*  
*Bread, Flour and Cereal Enrichment*

## CHAPTER TWO

# Carbohydrates

### WORLD USE OF CARBOHYDRATE FOODS

"Bread, the staff of life" might be paraphrased as "carbohydrate, the fuel of life." Carbohydrate foods are the major sources of calories for all peoples the world over. They make up from 50 to 60 per cent of the American diet and a higher percentage for peoples in many other countries. They are the cheapest and most easily digested form of fuel for human and animal energy.

The natural sources and the form in which the common carbohydrate foods are used around the world throw light on the respective standards of living in various countries. A world food survey made by the FAO charts the foods used in 70 countries. Eastern Asia and eastern Europe derive over 80 per cent of their total calories from carbohydrate foods, grain and potatoes. In Asia the predominating grain is rice, in Europe, wheat with some rye in central Europe and oats in Scotland. Potatoes are an important carbohydrate food in many countries, especially in Poland, Scandinavia and Russia. The Western world eats wheat in one form or another—bread, breakfast cereals, macaroni and spaghetti, with oats, corn and other cereals in lesser amounts. The American

Indian and peoples of Central and South America make corn their "staff of life." In general, the peoples of the Western Hemisphere eat fewer cereal products than those of eastern Europe and Asia.

The word *cereal* is derived from Ceres, the mythologic goddess of grain and harvest, pictured by the Greeks as giving the first grain to man. Today, grains furnish about one half the food calories for the world's people and a large proportion of the feed for farm animals.

The United States and Canada, along with certain western European countries and Australia and New Zealand, are the big consumers of sugar in the form of candies, cakes, sugar and other sweets.

A food nutrient which assumes such importance in the maintenance of life on this planet demands further study. Carbohydrates are the chief form in which plants store potential energy.

has yet to understand and duplicate the chemical laboratory of the green leaf. The largest proportion of the sun's energy which is transformed into potential energy by plants appears in some form of carbohydrate, made up of the 3 elements carbon, hydrogen and oxygen.

### SUGARS OR SOLUBLE CARBOHYDRATES

The single sugars (monosaccharides) are the simplest and smallest carbohydrate molecule. They require no digestion and are readily absorbed from the intestine directly into the blood stream. Three single sugars are found in foods and are formed from other carbohydrates in the process of digestion: glucose, fructose and galactose.

GLUCOSE, also called dextrose, is abundant in fruits and vegetables. It is the form of carbohydrate to which all other forms are converted eventually for transport in the blood and for utilization by the tissues of the body.

FRUCTOSE, also called levulose and fruit sugar, is found associated with glucose in many fruits and vegetables, and especially in honey. It is responsible for the peculiar sweetness of honey.

GALACTOSE is not found free in nature but is derived from the double sugar lactose by digestion or hydrolysis. It is manufactured for experimental and therapeutic purposes. Sometimes it is used diagnostically by the medical profession to test the functioning of the liver.

The double sugars (disaccharides) commonly encountered in foods are sucrose (cane or beet sugar), maltose (malt sugar) and lactose (milk sugar). The double sugars may be split by acid hydrolysis outside of the body or by specific enzymes in the digestive tract into single sugars. Each of the 3 double sugars has distinct characteristics of interest in human nutrition.

SUCROSE, ordinary granulated, powdered or brown sugar, is one of the sweetest forms of sugar and costs the

least. Consequently, it is consumed in greater quantities than all others, often to the detriment of the teeth and of

tary tract and because sucrose tends to satisfy the appetite and thus reduce the consumption of other more necessary foods. In fact, sugar is one of the best examples of "empty calories," meaning calories unaccompanied by other nutrients. Molasses, a by-product of sugar manufacture, and "raw sugar," the first crystallization, are crude forms of sucrose retaining some minerals and vitamins from the original sources. Blackstrap molasses is the darkest form and carries the most impurities along with some minerals and vitamins, but the flavor is disagreeable to many people and it has no special virtue.

MALTOSE, or malt sugar, does not occur free in nature but is manufactured from starch by the action of diastase, a plant enzyme obtained from sprouting grains. Maltose is also an intermediate product in the digestion of starch and is easily utilized by the body. Often it is used in combination with dextrin in infant and invalid diets where it is desirable to have a soluble form of carbohydrate which does not readily ferment in the digestive tract.

LACTOSE, or milk sugar, is the only one of the common sugars not found in plants. It is formed only in the mammary glands of lactating mothers, animal or human. It is less soluble and more slowly digested than the other 2 double sugars. When consumed in amounts greater than those ordinarily present in milk, some of it may not be digested. An undigested residue of lactose in the large intestine has a laxative action which may be desirable in certain instances but in excess causes diarrhea. Lactose is an excellent medium for the growth of certain useful acid-tolerant types of bacteria and has been used therapeutically to increase this type of

bacterial flora in the large intestines. Lactose also seems to increase the absorption or utilization of calcium, and often this finding is cited as the reason for the efficient utilization of calcium from milk. Sometimes lactose is given as an accompaniment of calcium salts prescribed for persons who have an allergy to milk and must obtain their calcium in another form.

### INSOLUBLE CARBOHYDRATES

For more stable and efficient storage of potential energy the plant world packs its fuel in larger units than the sugars, namely, starch, dextrin and cellulose. All of these are polysaccharides, the molecules of which may be

ever, a carbohydrate must be subject to digestion by the enzymes of the digestive tract. Starches and dextrins fall into this category, but celluloses and hemicelluloses which occur in foods are more

their resistance to decay. Thus, nature synthesizes all types of carbohydrate, from the very soluble, easily fermented sugar, to wood cellulose as resistant as the cedars of Lebanon or the redwoods of California.

### Starch

The starches, found in grains, vegetables and other plant products, are not only the major form of fuel storage in plants but one of the most useful forms of fuel foods for humans and animals. The percentage of starch in a vegetable such as the potato is lower than in the grains because of its higher moisture content. From the table on page 22 of starchy foods and sweets, many of

growing plants, one essential characteristic of a storage material is insolubility. To be suitable for a human food, how-



Fig. 5 Potato cells, showing starch grains as they appear raw and after cooking. Note the softened appearance and rupture of both cell walls and starch granules. (Broadhurst, Jean, *Bacteria in Relation to Man*, Philadelphia, Uppincott)

has yet to understand and duplicate the chemical laboratory of the green leaf. The largest proportion of the sun's energy which is transformed into potential energy by plants appears in some form of carbohydrate, made up of the 3 elements carbon, hydrogen and oxygen

### SUGARS OR SOLUBLE CARBOHYDRATES

The single sugars (monosaccharides) are the simplest and smallest carbohydrate molecule. They require no digestion and are readily absorbed from the intestine directly into the blood stream. Three single sugars are found in foods and are formed from other carbohydrates in the process of digestion. glucose, fructose and galactose.

GLUCOSE, also called dextrose, is abundant in fruits and vegetables. It is the form of carbohydrate to which all other forms are converted eventually for transport in the blood and for utilization by the tissues of the body.

FRUCTOSE, also called levulose and fruit sugar, is found associated with glucose in many fruits and vegetables, and especially in honey. It is responsible for the peculiar sweetness of honey.

GALACTOSE is not found free in nature but is derived from the double sugar lactose by digestion or hydrolysis. It is manufactured for experimental and therapeutic purposes. Sometimes it is used diagnostically by the medical profession to test the functioning of the liver.

The double sugars (disaccharides) commonly encountered in foods are sucrose (cane or beet sugar), maltose (malt sugar) and lactose (milk sugar). The double sugars may be split by acid hydrolysis outside of the body or by specific enzymes in the digestive tract

least. Consequently, it is consumed in greater quantities than all others, often to the detriment of the teeth and of

tary tract and because sucrose tends to satisfy the appetite and thus reduce the consumption of other more necessary foods. In fact, sugar is one of the best examples of "empty calories," meaning calories unaccompanied by other nutrients. Molasses, a by-product of sugar manufacture, and "raw sugar," the first crystallization, are crude forms of sucrose retaining some minerals and vitamins from the original sources. Blackstrap molasses is the darkest form and carries the most impurities along with some minerals and vitamins, but the flavor is disagreeable to many people and it has no special virtue.

MALTOSE, or malt sugar, does not occur free in nature but is manufactured from starch by the action of diastase, a plant enzyme obtained from sprouting grains. Maltose is also an intermediate product in the digestion of starch and is easily utilized by the body. Often it is used in combination with dextrin in infant and invalid diets where it is desirable to have a soluble form of carbohydrate which does not readily ferment in the digestive tract.

LACTOSE, or milk sugar, is the only one of the common sugars not found in plants. It is formed only in the mammary glands of lactating mothers, animal or human. It is less soluble and more slowly digested than the other 2 double sugars. When consumed in amounts greater than those ordinarily present in milk, some of it may not be digested. An undigested residue of lactose in the large intestine has a laxative action which may be desirable in certain instances but in excess causes diarrhea. Lactose is an excellent medium for the growth of certain useful acid-tolerant types of bacteria and has been used therapeutically to increase this type of

dered or brown sugar, is one of the sweetest forms of sugar and costs the

bacterial flora in the large intestines. Lactose also seems to increase the absorption or utilization of calcium, and often this finding is cited as the reason for the efficient utilization of calcium from milk. Sometimes lactose is given as an accompaniment of calcium salts prescribed for persons who have an allergy to milk and must obtain their calcium in another form.

### INSOLUBLE CARBOHYDRATES

For more stable and efficient storage of potential energy the plant world packs its fuel in larger units than the sugars, namely, starch, dextrin and cellulose. All of these are *polysaccharides*, the molecules of which may be several hundred times as large as those of the sugars. Consequently, they are

growing plants, one essential characteristic of a storage material is insolubility. To be suitable for a human food, how-

ever, a carbohydrate must be subject to digestion by the enzymes of the digestive tract. Starches and dextrins fall into this category, but celluloses and hemi-

celluloses seem to be able to digest some of it. Of course, different woods vary in their resistance to decay. Thus, nature synthesizes all types of carbohydrate, from the very soluble, easily fermented sugar, to wood cellulose as resistant as the cedars of Lebanon or the redwoods of California.

### Starch

The starches, found in grains, vegetables and other plant products, are not only the major form of fuel storage in plants but one of the most useful forms of fuel foods for humans and animals. The percentage of starch in a vegetable such as the potato is lower than in the grains because of its higher moisture content. From the table on page 22 of starchy foods and sweets, many of



Fig 5 Potato cells, showing starch grains as they appear raw and after cooking. Note the softened appearance and rupture of both cell walls and starch granules. (Broadhurst, Jean: *Bacteria in Relation to Man*, Philadelphia, Lippincott)



CARBOHYDRATES IN COMMON STARCHY  
FOODS AND SWEETS

STARCHY FOODS	
	PER CENT
Barley, pearled	79
Breads, all types	52-58
Corn meal and grits	74-78
Crackers	71-74
Macaroni, spaghetti and noodles	73-77
Oatmeal or oat cereals	70
Potatoes, raw	19
Rice or rice cereals	79
Rye flour	68-78
Wheat flour	69-79
Wheat cereals	72-80

SWEETS	
	PER CENT
Cakes	56-62
Candies	56-99
Cookies	60-80
Dried fruits	75-88
Honey	80
Jams and jellies	65-71
Syrups	74
Cane or beet sugar	100

which appear daily in our meals, it is easy to estimate how much carbohydrate they contribute to our diet. The starch of the grain is mostly in the endosperm encased in a protective covering of cellulose, the bran or husk, which is more or less resistant to digestion. The starch granule consists of tiny particles of starch usually arranged in concentric layers or a pattern of characteristic shape and appearance. Thus, each kind of starch—potato, wheat, arrowroot, corn—can be identified by microscopic examination. A more detailed discussion of grains and cereal products is given in Chapters 38 and 39.

**Effect of Cooking and Digestion.** Before starch can be used readily by

ules have an affinity for water, absorbing it as a sponge, slowly at room temperature, rapidly at boiling temperature. Thus, a spoonful of dry cornstarch or flour dropped into cold water may be stirred to a smooth paste, but when dropped into boiling water it forms a lump because the outer grains swell so rapidly that they form a jacket around the others. After rupture of the cellulose wall by cooking, the starch is in a form that can be acted upon more easily by digestive enzymes (Fig. 5). There is some experimental evidence that the body can digest raw starch to a limited extent, probably after bacterial disintegration of the cellulose covering. The relative digestibility of starches from different sources has been the subject of some debate. Arrowroot, tapioca and sago may be digested more rapidly than starch from corn, wheat or rice, but the ultimate completeness of digestion probably does not vary greatly. The length of cooking time may also affect the rate more than the completeness of digestion.

After the rupture of the cellulose walls by cooking, starch may be acted upon by the ptyalin of the saliva. In salivary digestion starch passes through

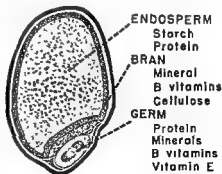


Fig. 6 A grain of wheat has three parts. All are used in whole-wheat flour but only the endosperm in white flour. Note what a small part of the grain is germ (Wellman Food Planings, Lippincott)

the outer cellulose envelope is ruptured, and the moisture permeates the starch granules themselves. The starch gran-

## THE STORY OF FIBER IN THE BODY

IN FOOD	IN THE DIGESTIVE TRACT	IN EXCRETA
Cellulose in vegetables, fruits, cereals, nuts	Functions chiefly as bulk Softened by digestive juices Stimulates peristalsis Small fraction digested by bacterial action and absorbed as glucose Largest proportion undigested passes into large intestine	Indigestible residue in stools

several stages it is first transformed into soluble starch, then into a series of three or more intermediate products known as dextrins, and later into the sugar, maltose, an entirely soluble product. Accompanying each dextrin stage a small quantity of maltose is formed, the

plain cracker or bread becomes sweet to the taste if chewed long enough, that is, if it is retained in the mouth a sufficient length of time to permit digestion to proceed to the maltose stage.

Cooking alone may carry the breakdown of starch to the dextrin stage, if continued long enough. Starch granules break down most rapidly when moisture is present. Long application of dry heat, such as in baking or toasting, will also change starch to soluble dextrins. The palatable flavor of the brown crust of rolls or bread or the brown part of toast or of toasted cereals is due partly to forms of dextrin. Sometimes dextrins are found free in nature, especially in cereals, but they occur more frequently as intermediate products in the change of starch to maltose as described above. Dextrins also occur as intermediate products in digestion of starch by malt enzymes used in making malt beverages and in certain other commercial processes such as the making of mucilages. The Government uses dextrin, made from cassava starch, for the mucilage on postage stamps.

## Glycogen

A small amount of carbohydrate is stored in the liver and the muscles in the form of glycogen. The amount is so small that it is only a temporary source of fuel in the body between meals and is mostly used up in 24 hours if no food is eaten. Liver and deep-sea scallops contain the most of any familiar foods, ranging from 2 to 6 per cent. Factors controlling glycogen formation and breakdown in the body are of interest to the diabetic specialist because this mechanism helps to control the level of the glucose in the blood.

## Cellulose and Hemicellulose

Cellulose and hemicellulose are the framework of plants. They are the chief constituents of wood, of stalks and leaves of all plants and of the outer coverings of seeds and cereals. Fiber forms the more or less porous walls of cells in which water, starch, minerals and other substances are stored in the plant much as honey is held in the comb.

The more tender celluloses from green leaves and young shoots. No known enzyme secreted in the human intestine can digest cellulose, but bacterial fermentation or disintegration may play a role in dissolving the substances which bind together the cellulose fibers or particles. The degree of digestibility varies according to stage of growth, the

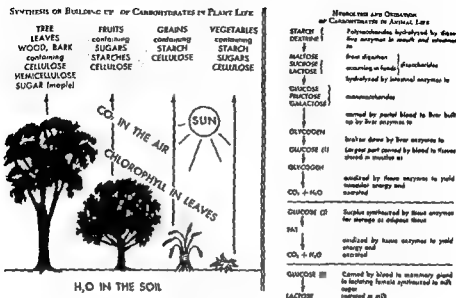


Fig. 7. Synthesis and breakdown of carbohydrates in plant and animal life.

type of plant and the amount of cooking. The cellulose of tender shoots may disappear completely from the intestinal tract.

The indigestibility of cellulose is its major asset, since the undigested fiber furnishes the bulk often necessary for efficient and normal peristaltic action (muscular contraction) of the intestines. The addition of cellulose to the diet in the form of bran is suggested sometimes in cases of chronic constipation due to

(6 Gm) has been suggested as an adequate daily allowance, it may be increased or reduced according to individual requirements.

In order to make a diet rich in fiber,

- Vegetables and fresh fruits
  - 1 Gm of fiber/100 Gm. (average serving)
- Dried fruits
  - 15 Gm of fiber/30 Gm (average serving)
- Whole-grain bread and cereals.
  - 05 Gm of fiber/30 Gm. (average serving)
- Nuts
  - 05 Gm of fiber/30 Gm

(For more nearly accurate figures on fiber content of common foods, see Table 1, Part Four.)

<sup>1</sup> Stern, F. Applied Dietetics, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1949.

normal colon performs better when a reasonable amount of bulk or residue is present. Figures were derived from these studies as to the amount of cellulose, or indigestible fiber, that a normal person requires each day. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz

Agar-agar and pectin are hemicelluloses, closely related to cellulose but slightly different in chemical structure. They have the ability to absorb many

of a soft stool. Alginates, the active compounds extracted from seaweeds, are now used extensively in ice-cream manufacture to give body and smooth consistency.

The pectins in certain fruits and fruit seeds are responsible for their jelling properties. Chemically, these pectins are complex compounds of several single sugar molecules. Commercial pectin, prepared from fruit seeds, is widely used for making jelly in the home as well as commercially. The colloidal property—the ability to form a jelly—is increased in the presence of sugars.

The therapeutic value of pectin and pectin products in the treatment of diarrhea has been attributed to its capacity for absorbing toxins or neutralizing harmful substances produced by certain bacteria. Thus, pectin tends to remove irritants and provide the bulk which promotes normal physiologic peristalsis.

Interrelationships among the different forms of carbohydrate are apparent from the foregoing discussion. A summary of the synthesis in plant life and the breakdown in the animal world is given in Figure 7.

Ever within the plant there is transition from one form to another. In the maple tree the sugar of the sap is changed into the complex molecule, the polysaccharide, wood fiber, an indigestible form of carbohydrate. In such fruits as the banana the carbohydrate is in the form of starch while the fruit is maturing, but some of it is changed to sugar as the fruit ripens. In some vegetables, sugar synthesized by the leaves

is stored as starch, as in mature beans, peas and corn. People like green corn and green peas because the carbohydrate is still partly sugar. Connoisseurs of fresh garden vegetables are aware of how quickly the sugar of corn and green peas disappears after harvesting, and how much more delicious they can be when used immediately after picking. This change is due to the enzymes that are present, and the change is stopped as soon as the enzymes are destroyed by cooking.

### METABOLISM OF CARBOHYDRATES

The varied forms of carbohydrate that occur in foods must all be reduced to one form, glucose, before they can be utilized by the body. That is the purpose of digestion and the changes that take place in the liver. Even the two single sugars, fructose and galactose, must be changed to glycogen and later to glucose before they can be transported in the blood to the tissues. The glycogen of the liver is broken down

of blood glucose rises slightly after meals in normal persons but is maintained at a relatively constant level, from 70 to 100 mg per 100 cc of blood.

The circulating blood glucose is absorbed by the muscles and other tissue cells to maintain their normal reserve, mostly in the form of glycogen synthesized by the cellular enzymes. The muscle glycogen is the reserve fuel for muscular energy and forms a complex glycogen-phosphorus compound that can break down with almost explosive speed when the nerve impulse demands muscular action. Much research has been undertaken in an attempt to discover the exact nature of this chemical reaction, which creates motion in a manner utterly unlike anything that

occurs outside of the body. Three vitamins of the B complex group are involved in the oxidation-reduction reactions of carbohydrates in muscle tissue. Muscular work is often compared with a mechanical engine, but all such comparisons fail to emphasize the fact that heat is a mere by-product of this reaction in the body rather than a means of producing it, as in an engine. To be sure, the heat that is produced is used to maintain body temperature.

When more carbohydrate than the body needs for daily work is eaten, the extra is stored for future use. Glycogen in the liver and in the muscles is the temporary storage to carry from meal to meal and overnight. The real surplus carbohydrate is transformed into fat and stored as adipose tissue. An overliberal supply of carbohydrate in the

diet continually is the chief cause of obesity.

Some carbohydrate is essential for the normal metabolism of other foodstuffs. Fatty acids do not oxidize as readily as do sugars in the body. When the body is called upon to burn fat in the absence of carbohydrate, a condition known as acidosis is apt to occur, because the products of the incomplete oxidation of fatty acids are acid in reaction and are toxic to the body. The glucose in the blood stream is used for still another purpose in the lactating mother. When the mammary glands are active, lactose is synthesized from blood glucose by enzyme action in these glands. Thus, the carbohydrate cycle in nature starts with synthesis in the plants to become the fuel for animal life where by oxidation

*ENRICHMENT LEVELS AS ESTABLISHED BY LAW IN CERTAIN STATES  
AND SOME OTHER COUNTRIES\**

(All figures represent milligrams per pound as purchased, average food values for similar products without enrichment are given in light-face type)

	THIAMINE		RIBOFLAVIN		NIACIN		IRON	
	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min.	Max
Bread and Other Baked Goods.								
Enriched	11	18	07	16	10.0	13.0	8.0	12.5
Unenriched bread	24		48		41		27	
Flour								
Enriched	20	25	1.2	1.5	16.0	20.0	13.0	16.5
Unenriched	.28		.21		41		36	
Farina								
Enriched	1.66		1.2		6.0		6.0	
Unenriched	25		.28		38		4.5	
Macaroni and Noodle Products.								
Enriched	40	50	1.7	2.2	27.0	34.0	13.0	16.5
Unenriched macaroni	42		.27		92		68	
Unenriched noodles	91		.50		104		95	
Corn Meal and Gnts								
Enriched	20	30	1.2	1.8	16.0	24.0	13.0	26.0
Unenriched corn meal	61		21		47		50	
Unenriched corn gnts	59		.18		52		45	
Rice								
Enriched	20				16.0		13.0	
Unenriched	.3		12		74		36	

\* Based on Federal standards of identity or state laws

it returns to simple water and carbon dioxide as shown in Figure 7.

### BREAD, FLOUR AND CEREAL ENRICHMENT

Natural grains carry not only the store of carbohydrates already mentioned but also protein and certain minerals and vitamins essential for good nutrition. The vitamin B complex factors present in the natural whole grains are usually sufficient in amount to help form the enzymes necessary for the metabolism of the carbohydrate of the grain. The balance of nature is upset when we find

some of the minerals and vitamins are lost or discarded in the millings. It is interesting to note that the latter find excellent use as animal feed. Attempts to educate people accustomed to white-flour products to return to the use of whole-grain products has never been successful. Consequently, the expedient of enrichment of bread and flour was initiated during World War II, with

other cereal products of various types added to the list later. The practice is now widespread, not only in the United States but in several other countries where public-health problems warranted such action.

Bread and flour enrichment is of first importance because bread constitutes one of the main sources of calories in the American diet. There are laws making bread and flour enrichment mandatory in 27 states as of 1956. Enrichment of corn meal and grits is also mandatory in several southern states where corn is a major item of the diet, and a rice enrichment law recently was passed in South Carolina. The enrichment of infant foods, ready-to-eat breakfast foods, macaroni, spaghetti and noodles is also common, and standards for some have been established even though the enrichment is not mandatory. Table on page 26 gives the standard minimum and maximum levels for enrichment of products where such have been defined and also, for comparison, the values of the natural milled products without enrichment.

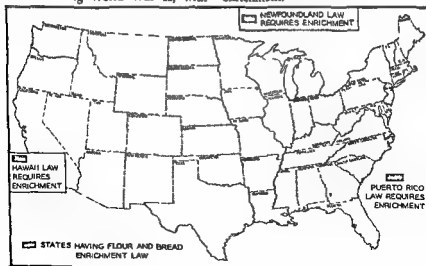


Fig. 8. Enrichment legislation map (Food and Nutrition Board, National Research Council)

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What does the expression "Bread is the staff of life" mean? What other forms of carbohydrate may form the bulk of the diet? In which countries?

2. How did the word *cereal* originate?

3. From what are carbohydrates synthesized by plants? What is the process called?

4. Name the single sugars and give some food sources for each.

5. What is the commonest disaccharide? In its usual form does it contribute anything besides calories to the

diet? What other double sugars occur in food?

6. Where are starches found in food? Discuss the effect of cooking on starch.

7. What is another name for "animal starch"? Where is it found? What is its importance?

8. Some polysaccharides are not digested. Which are they? In which foods do we find them? What is their function?

9. Why will eating more carbohydrate foods than the body needs result in weight gain?

10. What are the end products of the metabolism of carbohydrate?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*The Place of Fat in the Diet*  
*Food Fats—Definition and Classification*  
*Essential Fatty Acids*  
*Digestion and Absorption*  
*Metabolism and Storage*  
*Other Lipids*

## CHAPTER THREE

# Fat and Other Lipids

### THE PLACE OF FAT IN THE DIET

Fats are as important a form of stored energy in animals as carbohydrates are for plants. Statistics for the entire country show an increase in the per capita use of fats during the past half century. Actually, consumption of fat varies so widely among individuals and regions, and so much fat is wasted, that it is impossible to estimate how much really is consumed. McCann and Trulson<sup>1</sup> have discussed the possible significance of the changes in types of fat consumed but conclude that long-range studies of contrasting populations are needed before we can interpret these observations. We do know from more detailed studies on men and boys that it is not unusual for them to obtain half or more of their total calories from fat. Data in the table on page 32 give more details as to the actual contribution made by different types of foods to the total fat in the average American diet.

People who are accustomed to this amount of fat in their diet are quite unhappy when they cannot have it. The psychological value of visible fat in the

diet is far greater than that of the hidden or invisible fat, although physiologically the latter serves the same purpose.

There is no physiologic proof that the human body needs as much fat as Americans consume, but it is recommended by experts that not less than 20 to 25 per cent of the total calories in the American diet should be in the form of fat. That this much fat is not a physiologic necessity for all people is demonstrated by the extremely low fat diets used by large population groups in southern and eastern Europe and in Asia. In eastern Asia, for instance, there is less than 20 per cent of total fat in the diet as compared with two or three times that amount in the American diet.

Fats serve a multiple purpose in the diet. Some act as carriers of essential fatty acids and vitamins, and all give satiety value to a meal. The satisfaction that fat gives in the diet is partially

in the dishes without fat. Thus, the morale value of fats is always high. During both world wars fats were in short supply, and there was more popular com-

<sup>1</sup> McCann, M. B., and Trulson, M. F. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:358, 1957.



plaint about fats than about almost any other food, although there was no evidence of malnutrition. The increased consumption of fat mentioned above is probably a more serious health hazard than any temporary shortage. This will be discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

### FOOD FATS—DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION

The class of food constituents known as fats includes those which are fluid at room temperature, commonly called oils, as well as those which are usually solid and called fats. They all have similar chemical structure and properties. They are compounds of fatty acids and glycerol—a complex structure of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen—insoluble in water and greasy to touch.

There should be a clear distinction in everyone's mind between oils which are true fats and the hydrocarbon oils derived from petroleum, such as lubricating oil or purified mineral oil. The latter contain carbon and hydrogen but no oxygen. Mineral oil is completely indigestible in the animal body and cannot be classed as a food. Formerly, it was used in place of true fats in certain special low-calorie diets. This procedure is generally discouraged because mineral oil tends to interfere with the absorption of all the fat-soluble vitamins. It is particularly detrimental when used in a food such as salad dressing and when taken with meals.

In natural fats there are a number of different fatty acids, which give to each its specific taste and texture. The fat of cold-blooded animals—fish, for example—is a soft fat which remains plastic in the low-temperature environment in which the fish live. The fats of warm-blooded animals have higher melting points but are also plastic at the body temperature of each species. As a rule, the fat of herbivorous animals is harder than that of the carnivorous. When

adipose tissue of animals is subjected to heat, the fat liquefies and separates from the connective-tissue cells in which it was stored. Thus pork fat is "tried out" in the manufacture of lard.

For practical convenience a distinction is often made between the food fats which are purchased or used as such—known as visible fats (butter, margarine, lard, cooking fats, salad oils) and the so-called invisible fats which are a part of our natural foods (the fats of meat, milk, cheese, eggs, cereals, nuts). This distinction is not literally correct or always consistent. The butter or margarine in cake or on a vegetable is not visible, and the fat on a beef steak is visible, but we accept the classification for convenience.

The visible fats most used in the United States are lard, butter, margarine and cooking fats. The last two are usually made from the relatively less expensive vegetable oils, such as cottonseed oil and soybean oil, by the process of hydrogenation. This chemical process involves the introduction of hydrogen into the fat molecule under carefully controlled conditions to produce a fat with exactly the right melting point and other properties for culinary purposes. Fat thus formed is homogenized in form a creamy smooth product, but evidence of its being a mixture is given by the grainy texture of such a fat once it has been melted and allowed to harden again—the high and the low melting point ingredients are no longer evenly mixed.

Margarine is processed largely from vegetable oils by hydrogenation and then churned with cultured milk to give the flavor of butter. All brands are fortified with vitamin A to the equivalent of average butter, and some have vitamin D added. Nutritionally, fortified margarine is practically the equivalent of butter, and the usual cost is about half or less. One table spread now offered is a mixture of butter and margarine.

COMPARATIVE COMPOSITION OF FATS. \* FATTY ACIDS AS PER CENT OF TOTAL ACIDS

FAT	SATURATED	UNSATURATED ACIDS			
	ACIDS RANGE	OLEIC RANGE	LINOLEIC RANGE	LINOLENIC RANGE	ARACHIDONIC AVERAGE
Butter	46-48		4	1.2	0.2
Coconut oil	75-88	5-8	1-2		
Corn oil	11-15	25-40	46-66		
Cottonseed oil	21-30	22-36	34-57		
Lard	43	46	10-15		0.5
Linseed oil	8-12	13-31	10-27	30-64	
Margarine	15-23	59-77	5-11	0-1	0
Olive oil	8-16	53-86	4-20		
Peanut oil	14-22	44-65	20-37		
Shortening	17-45	43-79	3-12	0-1	0.5
Soybean oil	11-18	18-58	23-62	1-10	
Tallow	53	42	- 5	0.5	0.5

\* Rathman, D M Vegetable Oils in Nutrition, New York, Corn Products Refining Co, 1957.

### ESSENTIAL FATTY ACIDS

The types of fatty acids in natural fats are responsible for differences in texture, melting point and other characteristics. Some fatty acids are "saturated," meaning that each carbon atom in the long-chain molecule carries all of the hydrogen atoms possible. Fats formed from such fatty acids are usually solid at room temperature. An "unsaturated" fatty acid is one in which one or more of the carbon atoms fail to carry all of the hydrogen atoms possible. The unsaturated fatty acids are found mostly in oils from seeds and fish or in softer fats. Some of the more highly unsaturated fatty acids cannot be synthesized within the body from other fatty acids but are necessary for growth and health. These are known as essential fatty acids and must be supplied in the food. The three now recognized as essential are linoleic, linolenic and arachidonic, the first two so named because they were discovered in linseed oil. Linoleic is the most widely distributed and the most important one of the three.

A deficiency of essential fatty acids has been demonstrated experimentally in animals, and one type of eczema in

children responds to treatment with natural fats carrying these unsaturated fatty acids. Infants seem to grow better and on fewer total calories when there is an adequate supply of essential fatty acids. The human requirement for essential fatty acids is not known, nor is their exact function in the body understood. Recently, as a result of clinical observations, it has been suggested that certain

has been raised as to whether or not changes in the American food pattern and the consumption of fat are sufficient enough to become a health hazard (Changes in American food habits were discussed in Chap. 1).

Only recently have common foods been analyzed for the essential fatty acids, and data are still incomplete. A partial list of fats and oils showing the range of saturated and unsaturated fatty acids in each is given in the table on

page 31. Of the four unsaturated acids listed, only the last three are considered to be essential, and of these linoleic is the one most often present. Oleic is listed with the unsaturated group, but it is less unsaturated than the others and does not appear to have the distinct characteristics that have given the

designation "essential" to the other three.

In addition, there are invisible fats in many foods, and some of these contribute appreciable quantities of essential fatty acids. From recent studies we have some figures on the consumption of foods in American households. From these data, Coons has calculated the relative contribution that each class of foods makes to the total fat consumption and to the saturated and unsaturated types of fat (table, p. 32). Linoleic acid is the significant one of the unsaturated group and thus is used here as a measure of the essential fatty acids. This logical grouping of foods according to the proportion of saturated and unsaturated fats is needed as a practical guide for planning and evaluating therapeutic diets should this become necessary. The first two groups contribute about five times as much saturated as unsaturated fats. The next two groups provide about equal amounts of saturated and unsaturated. Oils and salad dressing are unique in that the unsaturated fraction is about

#### FATS IN HOUSEHOLD DIETS—1955\*

FOODS	FAT PER CENT	SATU- RATED FATTY ACIDS PER CENT	LINO- LEIC ACID PER CENT
Milk, dairy products	25	39	8
Beef, veal, lamb	14	17	2
Pork, bacon, lard	24	23	23
Margarines, shortenings	13	7	9
Oils, salad dressings	6	3	28
Poultry, eggs, fish	■	5	7
Baked goods, nuts, fruits, vegetables	12	6	23

\* Coons, Callie Mae. Fatty acids in food, J. Am. Dietet. A 34 242, 1958

#### TOTAL FAT AND SELECTED FATTY ACIDS IN DIETS, HOUSEHOLDS IN THE UNITED STATES AVERAGE PER PERSON PER DAY APRIL-JUNE, 1955\*

FOOD GROUP	FAT TOTAL GM	SATURATED FATTY ACIDS GM.	OLEIC ACID GM	LINOLEIC ACID GM
Beef, veal, lamb	22.1	11.0	8.8	0.4
Pork (excl. bacon, salt pork)	15.1	6.0	7.6	1.5
Poultry, fish	4.4	1.2	1.6	.8
Bacon, salt pork	13.4	5.4	6.7	1.3
Lard	9.2	3.7	4.6	.9
Other shortening	9.0	2.2	5.8	.7
Oils, salad dressing	9.3	1.9	2.8	4.6
Margarine	10.4	2.6	6.4	.8
Butter	10.6	7.0	2.9	.4
Milk, cream, ice cream, cheese	23.0	18.5	7.6	1.0
Eggs	5.6	2.0	2.5	.4
Other foods (purchased baked goods, nuts, fruits, vege- tables, etc.)	18.0	3.6	9.0	3.6
Total	155.1	65.1	66.3	16.4

\* Food Consumption and Dietary Levels of Households in the United States, Spring 1955, Agricultural Research Service, U S. Department of Agriculture, Aug. 1957.

10 times the saturated. The last two groups vary widely but in general provide more linoleic than saturated fats

A more complete picture of fat consumption in the United States has been calculated from the 1955 food consumption survey.<sup>2</sup> An average of 155 Gm of dietary fat per person per day is used—perhaps from 10 to 15 per cent being wasted. For regional differences in type and amount of fat consumed the student is referred to the publication from which this table is taken. Here again it will be noted that oils and salad dressings contribute by far the most linoleic acid (4.1 Gm) in spite of making up only a small fraction of the total fat. As this edition goes to press it is impossible to make definite recommendations about fat consumption, either as to type or amount. There is general agreement that "overweight" in terms of excess body fat is a serious risk to health. The human requirement for the essential fatty acids is not known, but research now in progress in many laboratories should yield more definite information within a few years.

### DIGESTION AND ABSORPTION

Fats require special digestive action before absorption because the end products must be carried in a water medium, blood and lymph, in which fats are not soluble. All fats are finely emulsified in the intestines by the action of the bile and the bile salts. Part of the emulsified fat is split by enzyme action into fatty acids and glycerol. Lipase is the term applied to an enzyme which splits fats. A gastric lipase may digest some of the fats already in an emulsified form in foods such as cream and egg yolk. The more active enzyme is pancreatic lipase, found in the small intestine, which can split the fat that has been emulsified by bile action. The increase in surface area affected by emul-

sification is enormous and thus gives the enzyme a better chance for action. The emulsification also makes possible the absorption of some of the undigested fat globules, as well as the fat-soluble vitamins, directly into the lacteals.

The portion of the fat which is split by enzyme action may be absorbed either via the lacteals into the lymphatic system or directly into the portal blood via the intestinal capillaries (See diagram, Fig. 9.)

*In either case the present concept is*

some of the minute globules of natural fat are absorbed as such. The mixing of fatty acids from various food sources and from stored fat makes possible the synthesis of fats needed for specific tissues. Some of the fat combines with phosphate radicals to form phospholipids or with cholesterol to form esters. Any of these lipids which are absorbed via the lacteals are transported as an emulsion in lymph via the thoracic duct to the left subclavian vein in the left shoulder, where the lymph flows slowly into the rapidly moving blood stream. The blood then carries the fat compounds to all the tissues.

The digestibility of fats varies to some extent, the softer fats—those with the lower melting point—are digested more completely by man than those with the higher melting points. Butterfat, with a melting point of 32° C., is digested with a loss of only 3 per cent, beef fat, with a melting point of 45° C., with a loss of

Digestion and absorption of fat may also vary with age, infants have a limited ability to utilize fats, and some elderly people have a poor tolerance for fatty foods.

Foods which are surrounded by coatings of fat, especially if the food is satu-

<sup>2</sup> Food Consumption and Dietary Levels of Households in the United States, Spring, 1955, Agr. Research Service, Aug., 1957

rated to any extent, as in the case of some fried foods, are often much delayed in their passage through the stomach. The temperature of the fat used in frying should be controlled carefully. Cooking of the fats at high temperatures sometimes reached in frying

brings about changes which make digestion more difficult. The glycerol of the fat may break down into irritating substances, and some changes may occur also in the fatty acids when subjected to high temperatures. For these reasons and because they may introduce an ex-

### DIAGRAM OF FAT DIGESTION AND ABSORPTION

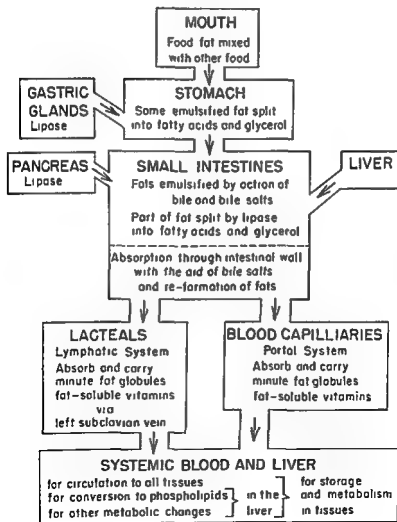


Figure 9

cess of fat, fried foods usually are withheld from sickroom dietaries

### METABOLISM AND STORAGE

To a certain extent, fats and carbohydrates are interchangeable as sources of energy. Both yield energy when oxidized by the tissues. However, their oxidation proceeds along different lines. The utilization of carbohydrates was described in the previous chapter.

Fats are more concentrated than carbohydrates and when oxidized yield 2½ times as many calories per unit of weight. Fatty acids have a greater concentration of carbon and therefore yield more energy. Even so, fat foods are a more expensive source of calories than carbohydrate foods—a fact reflected in the low consumption in countries where people are living on a low economic level.

During metabolism, fatty acids and glycerol follow different paths in the process of oxidation. The fatty acids are broken down by several stages into smaller molecules, and eventually to carbon dioxide and water, with the release of energy. The glycerol fraction is oxidized through some of the same stages as the carbohydrates.

In certain diseases the intermediary products of fat metabolism, namely, acetone, diacetic acid and beta-hydroxybutyric acid, may be produced in such quantities that their further metabolism to carbon dioxide and water cannot keep pace with their production. They increase in the blood stream and may be excreted in the urine. The volatile member of the group—acetone—may give rise to a characteristic odor of the breath. The chemical structure of two of these compounds classifies them as ketones and is the basis for the term *ketosis*. Two of these ketones have acid properties, therefore, another term for this condition is *ketone acidosis*. Ketosis may occur in severe cases of diabetes, also in starvation when the body is burning its own fat (Chap 22).

The fat not needed for immediate use

is stored in the body depots as adipose tissue to be drawn upon in any emergency. Body fat may also be formed from carbohydrates (Chap 2) and to a lesser extent from the proteins. Thus storage of fat is valuable in assisting in the regulation of the body temperature, as the layer of fat beneath the skin acts as a nonconductor and prevents excessive radiation or loss of body heat. It also serves to protect the body from mechanical injury and acts as a support to vital organs, particularly the kidneys. Too great a deposit, on the contrary, results in obesity and may put an unnecessary burden upon the heart and other organs.

The relatively high consumption of fat in the United States and certain other countries may predispose to obesity, not because fat foods necessarily produce fat but because people who eat a high fat diet can overstep so easily their caloric needs. On the other hand, when a high caloric diet is necessary for therapeutic purposes it cannot be accomplished without a generous amount of fat.

### OTHER LIPIDS

In addition to fats, the phospholipids and the sterols play very important roles in metabolism. The *phospholipids* are compounds consisting of a fat to which is attached a phosphoric acid radical and a nitrogen-containing base. Two of the most important of this group are *lecithin* and *cephalin*, both cellular constituents. The phospholipids occur in relatively large amounts in the brain, the liver, the heart, the kidney, the lungs and, to a lesser extent, in all voluntary muscles. Egg yolks are also a rich source.

*Lecithin*, a water-soluble derivative of fats, undoubtedly plays an important part in fat metabolism, but exactly how and to what extent have not been determined. *Choline*, a part of the *lecithin* molecule, is now known to be essential to the prevention of fat accumulation in the liver, a condition known as "fatty liver disease." Other substances have

been found to participate in preventing fat deposits in the liver.

The two most common sterols are ergosterol, found in plants, and cholesterol, found in animal tissues. Cholesterol, an essential constituent of many cells, especially nerve and glandular tissues, is found in high concentration in the liver, where it is stored, and in the blood, by which it is transported in the body. Surplus calories, especially those consumed as fat, sometimes increase the synthesis of cholesterol in the body beyond actual needs. This excess cholesterol circulating in the blood may combine with other lipids and with protein to form large molecules of a complex compound which cannot be easily transported or eliminated from the body. The deposition of some of these large molecules in the walls of certain arteries is a phase of the pathologic condition known as atherosclerosis. Epidemiology studies of the incidence of cardiovascular disease seem to show considerable correlation with the high consumption of fats in the United States and several other countries. Experimental studies and clinical observations also point toward an association of these factors, but there are some puzzling and contradictory findings which make it premature at this time to conclude positively that surplus fats or any particular types are responsible for cardiovascular disease. Older people who gain weight easily or who have high blood cholesterol are advised to reduce their fat consumption as a precaution.

Cholesterol is excreted from the body by way of the bile. When the mechanism for disposing of it is inadequate, cholesterol may appear in gallstones.

Ergosterol and other plant sterols are not easily absorbed by man or animals and have no relation to any pathologic change in humans. Both cholesterol and ergosterol are precursors of vitamin D, which is produced by the irradiation of

these sterols with ultraviolet light (Chap. 7).

Lipids also form complex compounds with proteins, known as lipoproteins. Some are water soluble and act as transporters of lipids such as cholesterol in the blood stream. Sometimes these larger molecules of lipoproteins are deposited in the arterial walls in the degenerative disease atherosclerosis. (See Chap. 27.)

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Name the foods which consist in large part of fat.
2. Are fats a cheap or an expensive food source of calories?
3. Mineral oil was popular for a number of years as a substitute for fat on low-calorie diets. Why is this not advisable?
4. How are cooking fats and margarine manufactured? Does this process alter their food values?
5. What is added to margarine to give it the flavor of butter? What is added to make it nutritionally equal to butter?
6. Name the "essential" fatty acids. Are these freely distributed in foods containing fat? Which of the three is most important?
7. Do the highly unsaturated fatty acids seem to have any effect on the level of blood cholesterol?
8. What are the end products of fat digestion? What are the pathways of absorption? What are the end products of fat metabolism?
9. In diabetes there may be an accumulation of partially metabolized fats. What are these called? How may they be detected?
10. Besides its use for energy, what other functions does fat perform in the body?
11. What are phospholipids? Sterols? Where are they found in the body? Which sterols may be converted to vitamin D?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Importance and World Use*  
*Composition and Origin*  
*Amino Acids*  
*Quality of Proteins*  
*Food Sources*  
*Protein Metabolism*  
*Protein Requirements*

## CHAPTER FOUR

# Proteins

### IMPORTANCE AND WORLD USE

Every animal, including man, must have an adequate source of protein in order to grow or maintain itself.

Proteins have long been recognized as the fundamental structural element of every cell of the body. More recently specific proteins and protein derivatives have been recognized as the functional elements in certain specialized cells, glandular secretions, enzymes and hormones. Thus, protein well deserves its name, which is of Greek derivation, meaning "of first importance." Since proteins are the principal constituents of the active tissues of the body and the body is dependent upon food protein for these indispensable substances, the quality and the quantity in the daily diet are of prime importance.

In many parts of the world, food sources of protein, especially good protein, are extremely scarce. There is some evidence that in countries where the quality and the quantity of protein are inadequate, the stature of whole groups of people may be affected. Peoples depending largely on plant sources of protein with little if any animal foods tend to be short in stature. It is well known

that most Orientals and Indonesians are short, also, the average stature of the peoples in the Mediterranean area is less than that of northern Europeans. A study of Orientals who have lived in California for a generation or more has demonstrated a marked increase in stature—evidence that heredity was not the only determining factor. On the other hand, Australians and New Zealanders have large and strong physiques and they are probably the heaviest meat eaters on the globe.

The United States has ample sources of protein, and the average person consumes an adequate amount. However, even in this country there are some people who, for economic or other reasons, may not get enough protein.

### COMPOSITION AND ORIGIN

Proteins, as well as fats and carbohydrates, are composed of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, but in addition they contain nitrogen, usually sulfur and phosphorus and sometimes iron. Chemically pure proteins are fairly stable, but in a moist state in which they generally are found in foods they decompose readily at room temperature. This spoil-



age is due to bacterial action and may form substances toxic to the body. In this respect, nitrogenous foods are more unstable and will decompose more readily than carbohydrates and fats. Therefore, protein foods such as fresh

Plants can synthesize protein elements from the nitrates and the ammonia in soil and in decaying vegetable matter, along with water and carbon dioxide from the air. Animals are dependent upon plants for this synthesis because animal cells cannot utilize the simpler forms of nitrogen. Animal metabolism of protein eventually yields the forms of nitrogen which the plant alone can utilize. Frequently, this sequence of events is called the nitrogen cycle

### AMINO ACIDS

Proteins are made up of nitrogen-containing compounds known as amino acids, held together in a chainlike chemical structure. Proteins are among the

The first one of the amino acids was discovered over 125 years ago, but the last of the 22 listed below was isolated and identified in 1935 by W. C. Rose. During the century between these discoveries much of the basic chemistry and physiologic significance of proteins came to be understood. With the realization that amino acids were important

mental research was done with experimental animals, the pioneer work by Osborne and Mendel, and much of the later work by Rose, a former student of Mendel.

According to Rose<sup>1</sup> and later studies by Albanese<sup>2</sup> on infants, there are 10 essential and 12 nonessential amino acids for growth. These are as follows:

#### CLASSIFICATION OF AMINO ACIDS WITH RESPECT TO THEIR GROWTH EFFECTS

Essential	Nonessential
Lysine	Glycine
Tryptophan	Alanine
Histidine*	Serine
Phenylalanine	Norleucine
Leucine	Aspartic acid
Isoleucine	Glutamic acid
Threonine	Hydroxyglutamic acid
Methionine	Proline
Valine	Hydroxyproline
Arginine†	Citrulline
	Tyrosine
	Cystine

\* Adults may synthesize histidine in the tissues or by intestinal micro-organisms.

† Arginine can be synthesized by the animal organism but not at a sufficiently rapid rate to meet the demands for normal growth.

Subsequent work on human subjects has demonstrated that only 8 of the 10

may be necessary for growth of children, as they are for growth of animals.

The minimum adult requirement of each of the 8 essential amino acids was determined by Rose,<sup>3</sup> but as yet we do not know the quantity of each amino acid necessary for optimum growth of children. As research continues to build up our knowledge of proteins and human need, we shall know better how

<sup>1</sup> Rose, W. C. *Physiol. Rev.* 18:109, 1938, *Nutrition Abstr. & Rev.* 27:631, 1957.

<sup>2</sup> Albanese, A. A.: *Am. J. Clinical Nutrition* 1:44, 1952.

<sup>3</sup> *Op. cit.*

to meet those needs from widely varied food sources.

The nurse, as well as the physician and the dietitian, should be able to recognize the names of the essential amino acids, if not all of them. Lysine is now mentioned on the label of certain kinds of bread, where it is being used to supplement the wheat protein which is low in lysine. Tryptophan is the precursor of one of the B vitamins—niacin—and such will be discussed in Chapter 8. Methionine and cystine are the only amino acids containing sulfur, and for this reason they have special functions in metabolism. These few examples and others mentioned later in this chapter may serve to emphasize the unique importance of each amino acid and to explain why such extensive research is in progress in this field.

When it was first demonstrated that a person could be maintained in nitrogen equilibrium on a mixture of pure amino acids without any protein food as such, it changed our concept of the unique role of protein in the diet. For practical purposes, however, protein is our food source of amino acids because no one would choose to eat amino acids in place of protein. A protein hydrolysate, a mixture of amino acids, made from a natural protein by enzymatic or acid hydrolysis is most unpalatable and tends to disturb the digestion if taken by mouth. The use of hydrolysates is usually limited to emergency intravenous feeding.

### QUALITY OF PROTEINS

Proteins in natural foods differ widely in the number and the proportion of the 22 or more amino acids that they contain. A good-quality protein or a complete protein is one that supplies all the essential amino acids in sufficient quantities for normal growth and maintenance. When tested experimentally, proteins such as ovomitin from egg yolk or lactalbumin from milk are capable of supporting growth in young

rats when fed at a relatively low level in the ration. This indicates that they top the list of good-quality proteins. In

gelatin—derived from animal connective tissue, an example of incomplete protein.

Proteins from plant sources are not usually of as good quality as those from animal sources. The amino acid structure of plant cells naturally differs from that of animal cells. The best quality plant proteins are found in legumes, such as beans, peas and peanuts and in nuts. Proteins in certain green leaves and vegetables are good in quality but extremely limited in quantity. Grains in general contain rather poor quality protein.

A protein which can support neither growth nor maintenance in an experimental animal is called incomplete. One which can support maintenance but cannot promote growth is sometimes called partially incomplete. Usually, more than one protein is present in a single food such as corn. Zein, one of the proteins of corn, is a classic example of an incomplete protein. Zein lacks two of the essential amino acids. Young rats cannot grow or even survive when zein is the sole source of protein in their diet. Gliadin from wheat is another incomplete protein.

Fortunately, most of our foods contain a mixture of proteins, one of which often supplements another. More to the point is the fact that we combine several foods in a meal, and the proteins from different types of foods tend to supplement one another because of their different amino acid content. For instance, cereals which are low in lysine usually are eaten with milk, which provides a generous amount of this factor. Thus, cereal and milk or bread and cheese are good combinations because

## PROTEIN

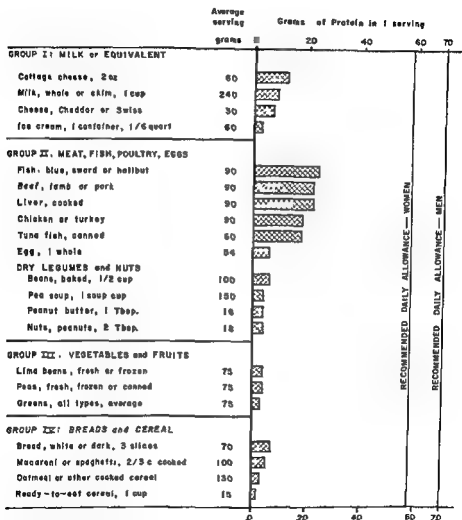
In Average Servings of Foods  
Classified in the Four Groups

Figure 10

the proteins supplement each other. It is obvious that this type of supplementary value among foods makes a varied diet much safer than a restricted one. Cereal products may contribute more than one half the protein in certain

countries where foods of animal origin are scarce.

## FOOD SOURCES

From Figure 10 it is evident that the best sources of protein are in the first

two groups, the Milk Group and the Meat Group. These groups also supply the best quality protein as well as more per serving. Dry legumes and nuts are included as alternates in the meat group because they provide the best-quality plant protein and in some countries must serve as a major source of protein.

Proteins are somewhat modified in physical properties and in physiologic availability by heat. In ordinary cook-

ing, the difference in temperature and time in meat cookery makes the roast that is overdone at high temperature appear to have the higher protein content because the one roasted at lower temperature with less shrinkage did not lose as much moisture. (See Table 1, Part Four.)

lower than 300°, to get the best results for more tender meat as well as to lessen shrinkage. The nutritive value of soybean protein is improved by autoclaving soybeans before processing as flour or grits. On the other hand, the high temperatures used in processing certain ready-to-eat cereals reduce the protein value by the destruction of one or more amino acids.

The percentage of water in meat is

the difference in temperature and time in meat cookery makes the roast that is overdone at high temperature appear to have the higher protein content because the one roasted at lower temperature with less shrinkage did not lose as much moisture. (See Table 1, Part Four.)

## PROTEIN METABOLISM

The digestion of protein in the alimentary tract is accomplished by the action of the three proteolytic enzymes—trypsin, pepsin, and amylase.

These enzymes are secreted by the pancreas and the small intestine. They are active in the alkaline environment of the small intestine.

small traces of peptides (compounds of two or more amino acids) that escaped being split apart. The amino acids are absorbed directly into the blood stream through the intestinal capillaries and are carried by the portal blood first to the liver and then to all tissues and organs of the body (Fig. 11).

The body makes such combinations of these amino acids as are necessary to build up its own kind of body protein, provided that the essential amino acids are present all at once in adequate amounts. No two types of tissue have exactly the same composition, muscle, liver, kidney, blood, skin, etc., must each have the specific types and amounts of these "building stones" to complete its structure or replace used materials.

Enzymes, hormones and internal secretions each contain combinations of specific amino acids or their derivatives. The specificity of function of amino acids is gradually being disclosed. Tyrosine and phenylalanine are necessary constituents of thyroxin—the endocrine secretion of the thyroid gland. Histidine is essential for the synthesis of histamine, a regulatory compound in the blood stream. Insulin demands 7 specific amino acids for its synthesis by the pancreatic cells. The simple amino acid glycine can combine with certain toxic substances to make them harmless until excreted.

By ingenious research methods it has been demonstrated that a tissue must have all of the essential amino acids for a particular job—cell growth or tissue synthesis—presented to it by the blood stream at the same time. A missing amino acid cannot be supplied several hours later and find the other essential ones on the job waiting until all can be assembled. This fairly recent finding emphasizes the need for protein of good quality, providing all essential amino acids, at every meal.

After the blood stream has delivered the requisite amino acids to the various tissues and has collected the discard or surplus amino acids from the tissues, it

## PROTEIN

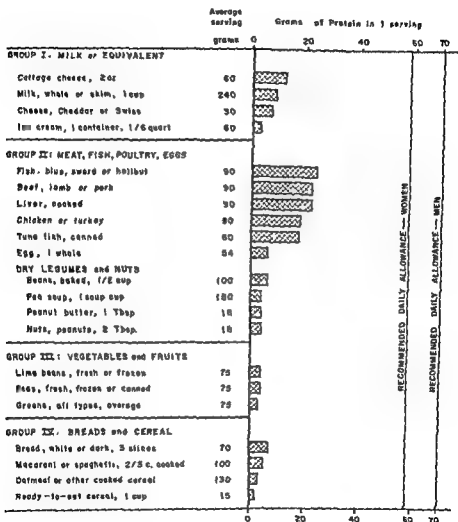
In Average Servings of Foods  
Classified in the Four Groups

Figure 10

the proteins supplement each other. It is obvious that this type of supplementary value among foods makes a varied diet much safer than a restricted one. Cereal products may contribute more than one half the protein in certain

countries where foods of animal origin are scarce.

## FOOD SOURCES

From Figure 10 it is evident that the best sources of protein are in the first

two groups, the Milk Group and the Meat Group. These groups also supply the best quality protein as well as more per serving. Dry legumes and nuts are included as alternates in the meat group because they provide the best-quality plant protein and in some countries must serve as a major source of protein.

Proteins are somewhat modified in physical properties and in physiologic availability by heat. In ordinary cook-

ing, while high temperatures tend to cause toughening. An egg cooked below the boiling point is more tender than a "boiled" egg. Meat-cookery experts recommend temperatures between 300 and 350° F., and sometimes even lower than 300°, to get the best results for more tender meat as well as to lessen shrinkage. The nutritive value of soybean protein is improved by autoclaving soybeans before processing as flour or grits. On the other hand, the high temperatures used in processing certain ready-to-eat cereals reduce the protein value by the destruction of one or more amino acids.

The percentage of protein in cooked foods, either meat or vegetables, depends upon the amount of moisture that may have been added or lost in cooking.

The difference in temperature and time in meat cookery makes the roast that is overdone at high temperature appear to have the higher protein content because the one roasted at lower temperature with less shrinkage did not lose as much moisture. (See Table 1, Part Four.)

### PROTEIN METABOLISM

The digestion of protein in the alimentary tract is accomplished by the action of the three proteolytic enzymes

small traces of peptides (compounds of two or more amino acids) that escaped being split apart. The amino acids are absorbed directly into the blood stream through the intestinal capillaries and are carried by the portal blood first to the liver and then to all tissues and organs of the body (Fig. 11).

The body makes such combinations of these amino acids as are necessary to build up its own kind of body protein, provided that the essential amino acids are present all at once in adequate amounts. No two types of tissue have exactly the same composition, muscle, liver, kidney, blood, skin, etc., must each have the specific types and amounts of these "building stones" to complete its structure or replace used materials.

Enzymes, hormones and internal secretions each contain combinations of specific amino acids or their derivatives. The specificity of function of amino acids is gradually being disclosed. Tyrosine and phenylalanine are necessary constituents of thyroxine—the endocrine secretion of the thyroid gland. Histidine is essential for the synthesis of histamine, a regulatory compound in the blood stream. Insulin demands 7 specific amino acids for its synthesis by the pancreatic cells. The simple amino acid glycine can combine with certain toxic substances to make them harmless until excreted.

By ingenious research methods it has been demonstrated that a tissue must have all of the essential amino acids for a particular job—cell growth or tissue synthesis—presented to it by the blood stream at the same time. A missing amino acid cannot be supplied by the

phases the need for protein of good quality, providing all essential amino acids, at every meal.

After the blood stream has delivered the requisite amino acids to the various tissues and has collected the discard or surplus amino acids from the tissues, it

## PROTEIN

*In Average Servings of Foods  
Classified in the Four Groups*

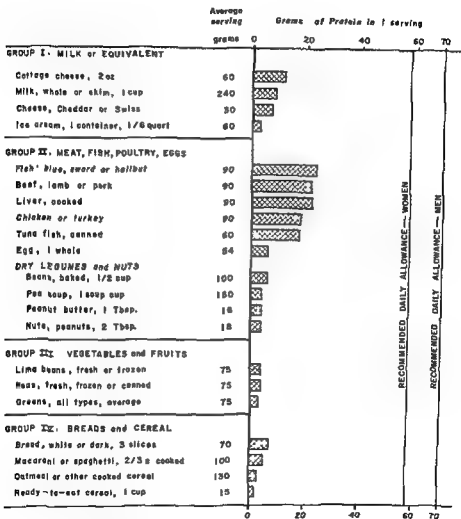


Figure 10

the proteins supplement each other. It is obvious that this type of supplementary value among foods makes a varied diet much safer than a restricted one. Cereal products may contribute more than one half the protein in certain

countries where foods of animal origin are scarce.

## FOOD SOURCES

From Figure 10 it is evident that the best sources of protein are in the first

A diagrammatic representation of the fate of protein in metabolism is shown in Figure 11. A careful study of this diagram, along with reading the text, may help to clarify this story.

More complex protein derivatives give rise to other nitrogenous end products in the urine—uric acid and creatinine.

stable chemical combinations that remain static once they are formed. Modern research has demonstrated that all tissues are in a state of dynamic equilibrium, which means that they maintain a constant composition while certain components are breaking away and being replaced by others derived from food or the body's current surplus.

The complexity of the chemical processes involved in protein metabolism, as well as the need for protein as a tissue builder, indicates why it is not an economical fuel food. However, from a practical point of view, man's choice of food protein should provide an intake well above actual needs to make sure of an adequate supply of the essential amino acids. The necessary margin of safety means that usually there will be a surplus that must be deaminized and used like a fuel food, as surplus scrap wood left from building a house may be used for fuel, although the original material was not procured for that purpose.

## PROTEIN REQUIREMENTS

Any quantitative estimate of protein requirement must take into account the quality of proteins involved. The Food and Nutrition Board recommends 70 and 58 Gm of protein per day for men and women, respectively (i.e., from 10 to 15% of the total calories or 1 Gm per Kg of body weight per day). The allowances for growing children are higher per unit of weight to meet the needs for growth. The pregnant woman

The trend at the present time is toward an increasingly liberal protein allowance for all ages, to provide for less obvious needs as well as for growth and maintenance. It is suggested, for instance, that a liberal protein intake tends to increase immunity or resistance to infections. However, experimental evidence and the results of wartime restrictions indicate that the human body has an ability to adapt itself to widely different protein levels of intake. Scientific observations of people living on drastically limited food supplies, low in protein and of poor quality, during World War II afford further evidence regarding the amazing human adaptation to such restrictions.

In ordinary peacetime circumstances and with a moderate income, the average person is apt to meet his protein requirement without difficulty. It is con-



Fig 11 Adequate and inadequate protein (18 per cent vs. 4 per cent). Rats of the same litter. This deficiency produces stunted growth but no deformities.



carries them back to the liver. Neither surplus protein nor amino acids can be stored to any extent in the body. The liver serves as a redistribution and disposal center for amino acids. Those not needed are deaminized, that is, the nitrogen part ( $\text{NH}_2$ ) is split off, and the non-nitrogenous part is used along with sugars and fats for fuel. Slightly more than half of the protein molecule may be converted into sugarlike compounds (glucogenic) to be used as an immediate source of energy, stored as glycogen or converted into fat for storage as adipose

tissue. The ultimate end products of the oxidation of this portion of the protein molecule are  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , the same as for fat and sugar (Fig. 11).

The nitrogenous portion of the amino acids split off by enzyme action in the liver may be used again in the resynthesis of certain simple amino acids needed by the body, or it may be discarded. The largest proportion is waste nitrogen, and most of it is formed into the simple compound urea by the liver cells and in that form is transported by the blood to the kidneys for excretion.

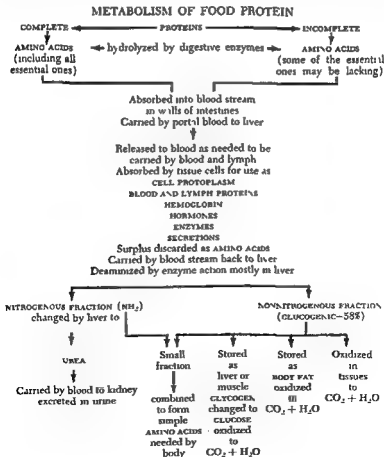


Figure 11

A diagrammatic representation of the fate of protein in metabolism is shown in Figure 11. A careful study of this diagram, along with reading the text, may help to clarify this story.

More complex protein derivatives give rise to other nitrogenous end products in the urine—uric acid and creatinine.

Protein is more complex than the pre-

## PROTEIN REQUIREMENTS

Any quantitative estimate of protein requirement must take into account the quality of proteins involved. The Food and Nutrition Board recommends 70 and 58 Gm. of protein per day for men and women, respectively (i.e., from 10 to 15% of the total calories or 1 Gm. per Kg. of body weight per day). The allowances for growing children are higher per unit of weight to meet the

stable chemical combinations that remain static once they are formed. Modern research has demonstrated that all tissues are in a state of dynamic equilibrium, which means that they maintain a constant composition while certain components are breaking away and being replaced by others derived from food or the body's current surplus.

The complexity of the chemical processes involved in protein metabolism, as well as the need for protein as a tissue builder, indicates why it is not an economical fuel food. However, from a practical point of view, man's choice of food protein should provide an intake well above actual needs to make sure of an adequate supply of the essential amino acids. The necessary margin of safety means that usually there will be a surplus that must be deaminized and used like a fuel food, as surplus scrap wood left from building a house may be used for fuel, although the original material was not procured for that purpose.

The trend at the present time is toward an increasingly liberal protein allowance for all ages, to provide for less obvious needs as well as for growth and maintenance. It is suggested, for instance, that a liberal protein intake tends to increase immunity or resistance to infections. However, experimental evidence and the results of wartime restrictions indicate that the human body has an ability to adapt itself to widely different protein levels of intake. Scientific observations of people living on drastically limited food supplies, low in protein and of poor quality, during World War II afford further evidence regarding the amazing human adaptation to such restrictions.

In ordinary peacetime circumstances and with a moderate income, the average person is apt to meet his protein requirement without difficulty. It is con-



Fig. 12. Adequate and inadequate protein (18 per cent vs. 4 per cent). Rate of the same litter. This deficiency produces stunted growth but no deformities.

PROTEIN IN PATTERN DIETARY FOR 1 DAY\*

FOOD GROUP	AMT IN Gm	HOUSEHOLD MEASURE	CALORIES	PROTEIN Gm
Milk or equivalent	488	2 c. (1 pint)	332	17
Egg	54	1 medium	77	6
Meat, fish, fowl	90	3 ozs cooked	257	23
Vegetables.				
Potato, cooked	100	1 medium	83	2
Green or yellow	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c cooked	18	2
Other	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. cooked	39	2
Fruits				
Citrus	100	1 serving	41	1
Other	100	1 serving	85	1
Bread, white, enriched	70	3 slices	189	6
Cereal, whole grain or enriched	30	$\frac{1}{2}$ c cooked or 1 oz dry	80	2
Butter or margarine	14	1 tablespoon	100	
Total			1,301*	62

\* For basis of calculation see Basic Dietary Pattern in Chapter 18

sidered highly desirable for at least one third of the protein to be derived from animal sources, and the recommended allowances make this assumption. It is also recommended that some source of good protein be included in each meal for reasons stated earlier in this chapter. Since protein foods of high biologic value are the most expensive class of foods in the diet, there is a tendency among some low-income groups to consume less than recommended amounts of protein and often of poorer quality. From Figure 10 it is easy to estimate the number of servings of protein foods necessary to meet the day's recommended allowance.

A basic dietary pattern for one person for a day is often used in planning

not protein requirements. However, in actual life, men engaged in heavy work want protein foods as part of their extra calories, and this means that the protein intake is more than that recommended for active men. During convalescence from debilitating diseases or from surgery, extra protein seems to hasten recovery and the regaining of strength. In cold climates a higher protein intake may be desirable due to the specific dynamic action which tends to increase body-heat production. The earlier tendency to reduce protein intake in many diseases has been rather generally reversed, with a few exceptions, due to recent favorable results from the use of more liberal protein diets.

The history of research into human protein requirements provides some dramatic contrasts of opinion. Late 19th-century investigators of the subject advocated from 100 to 150 Gm of protein as a daily optimum, the figures being based on observations of what people were actually eating. The estimates tended to be high because meat consumption was liberal in the 19th century in central Europe where these scientists were living. Early in this century,

The protein requirement may be modified by certain pathologic and environmental conditions. Physiologically, hard physical labor increases caloric but

Chittenden, at Yale, conducted a scientific study on a number of students and faculty, and found that they could remain in nitrogen equilibrium on less than a third of the amount of protein previously considered necessary. Other investigators championed the cause of low protein, believing that the products resulting from protein metabolism, in excess of actual body needs, were harmful.

For the last 30 years or more the emphasis has been on an adequate supply of good-quality protein well above minimum requirements. Our present concern for a good balance of amino acids at every meal has drawn attention to the supplementary values of natural proteins and the possible fortification of poor-quality proteins with the missing amino acids. The latter procedure is seriously questioned, however, because too little is known about the desirable balance of amino acids for optimum nutrition.

Today, more than ever before, an effort is being made through such United Nations agencies as FAO, WHO and UNESCO to search for additional sources of good protein, especially in those parts of the world where animal foods are scarce and expensive and children particularly are suffering from protein deficiencies (See Chap. 20)

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why is good-quality protein important for breakfast as well as for other meals?

2. For what specific purposes are proteins used in the body?

3. Why must protein foods be stored in a refrigerator to prevent spoilage?

4. The structural components of proteins are amino acids. How many of these are known? Do tissues vary in their requirements for specific amino acids?

■ What is meant by "essential amino acids"? Are the same ones essential for maintenance as for growth? How are the amino acids related to some of the hormones? Illustrate

■ What theory is suggested as to why most Australians and New Zealanders are taller than people of similar racial strains living elsewhere?

7. What are the best food sources of complete proteins? Which food groups furnish the most protein? Compare the quality of protein from plant and animal foods

8. What is the effect of heat on protein? What caution should be observed in the cooking of protein foods?

9. Trace the pathway of proteins through digestion and metabolism. What part does the liver play in protein metabolism? What are the end products of protein metabolism? How are these excreted from the body?

10. What are the National Research Council recommendations for protein? Which foods must be included in the daily dietary, and how much of each, \_\_\_\_\_

of the foods listed and tabulate its fat and carbohydrate content

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

PROTEIN IN PATTERN DIETARY FOR 1 DAY\*

FOOD GROUP	AMT IN Gm	HOUSEHOLD MEASURE	CALORIES	PROTEIN Gm
Milk or equivalent	488	2 c. (1 pint)	332	17
Egg	54	1 medium	77	6
Meat, fish, fowl	90	3 ozs cooked	257	23
Vegetables				
Potato, cooked	100	1 medium	83	2
Green or yellow	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c cooked	18	2
Other	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. cooked	39	2
Fruits				
Citrus	100	1 serving	41	1
Other	100	1 serving	85	1
Bread, white, enriched	70	3 slices	189	6
Cereal, whole grain or enriched	30	$\frac{1}{2}$ c cooked or 1 oz dry	80	■
Butter or margarine	14	1 tablespoon	100	■
Total			1,301*	62

\* For basis of calculation see Basic Dietary Pattern in Chapter 18.

sidered highly desirable for at least one third of the protein to be derived from animal sources, and the recommended allowances make this assumption. It is also recommended that some source of good protein be included in each meal for reasons stated earlier in this chapter. Since protein foods of high biologic value are the most expensive class of foods in the diet, there is a tendency among some low-income groups to consume less than recommended amounts of protein and often of poorer quality. From Figure 10 it is easy to estimate the number of servings of protein foods necessary to meet the day's recommended allowance.

A basic dietary pattern for one person for a day is often used in planning menus for institutions such as hospitals. This dietary pattern of 1,300 calories provides a liberal amount of protein, more than half of which is from animal sources. Additional foods chosen to supply the extra calories would also provide additional protein (See Chap 18).

The protein requirement may be

not protein requirements. However, in actual life, men engaged in heavy work want protein foods as part of their extra calories, and this means that the protein intake is more than that recommended for active men. During convalescence from debilitating diseases or from surgery, extra protein seems to hasten recovery and the regaining of strength. In cold climates a higher protein intake may be desirable due to the specific dynamic action which tends to increase body-heat production. The earlier tendency to reduce protein intake in many diseases has been rather generally reversed, with a few exceptions, due to recent favorable results from the use of more liberal protein diets.

The history of research into human protein requirements provides some dramatic contrasts of opinion. Late 19th-century investigators of the subject advocated from 100 to 150 Gm of protein as a daily optimum, the figures being based on observations of what people were actually eating. The estimates tended to be high because meat consumption was liberal in the 19th century in central Europe where these scientists were living. Early in this century,

one is trying to get rid of surplus storage.

### Heat in Relation to Metabolism

Heat is the result of combustion of fuels outside the body and also of the oxidation of foods in our bodies. Since heat is a by-product of all energy spent as work, heat can serve as a measure of energy metabolism. As it is necessary in scientific work to have measures of length (centimeter, inch) and measures of weight (gram, ounce), so is it necessary to have a measure of heat. A calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one kilogram of water one degree centigrade. In our more common measures, it is approximately the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of four pounds of water one degree Fahrenheit.

### MEASURING FOOD CALORIES

A bomb calorimeter is a device for measuring calories, the stored fuel in foods, just as it is for measuring the fuel value of wood, coal or oil. The apparatus shown in Figure 13 is carefully designed for measuring all the heat produced by the complete oxidation of an accurately measured amount of any food. The apparatus is insulated thoroughly against loss of heat, and the amount of heat produced is measured by the change in temperature of a measured amount of water.

**Physiologic Fuel Values.** The calorie value of nutrients determined by the bomb calorimeter must be modified to take account of losses in digestion and excretion. From a large number of determinations Atwater derived the well-known physiologic fuel values

Protein	4 calories per Gm
Fat	9 calories per Gm
Carbohydrate	4 calories per Gm.

These values were approximate only, but they served reasonably well when applied to foods.

calories were recognized. In the Agriculture Handbook No. 8 published by the U. S. Department of Agriculture in 1950,<sup>1</sup> calorie values are calculated by a modification of the procedure that had been in use for 50 years. Instead of applying the general caloric factors 4, 9, 4 to the percentage composition of food, as had been done previously, more specific fac-

<sup>1</sup> Watt, B. K., and Merrill, A. L. Composition of Foods Raw, Processed, Prepared, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Handbook No. 8, 1950.

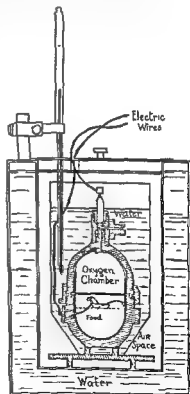


Fig. 13 Diagram of the parts of a bomb calorimeter. The water in the inner chamber changes in temperature when the food is burned. The water in the outer chamber acts with the intervening air space as insulation. (Jean Broadhurst)

*Energy and Heat*  
*Measuring Food Calories*  
*Measure of Energy Expended*  
*Basal Metabolism*  
*Energy Metabolism Requirements*  
*Other Factors Affecting Total Metabolic Rate*

## CHAPTER FIVE

# Energy Metabolism

Atomic power may make the headlines, but solar energy is still the power that makes life on earth possible. However, of all the sun's energy that reaches the earth only a fraction of 1 per cent can be adapted or stored for future use. Even the most efficient man-made devices for harnessing some of the sun's energy are less efficient by far than plants. Here the amazing process known as photosynthesis uses the sun's light and heat (plus the chlorophyll of the green leaves as catalyst) to manufacture

glucose. This is capable of being stored as starch. Thus, the potential or stored energy of the plant world becomes the food of animals who in turn spend that energy in the form of heat and work or store the surplus as body fat. (See Fig. 7.)

Metabolism may be used in a general sense to refer to all types of changes which occur in food nutrients after they have been absorbed from the alimentary canal and to the cellular activity involved in utilizing these nutrients. Sometimes the word is used in a more specific sense, as in protein metabolism,

to refer to the total picture of what happens to protein in the body. These changes, which result ultimately in the combustion of foodstuffs, with the release of heat or energy, constitute what is called energy metabolism.

### ENERGY AND HEAT

Energy is expended whenever work is performed by the body in the comple-

involved in the performance of one's daily work, or involuntary, such as in the circulation of the blood, respiration, digestion and the maintenance of muscular tone.

As the furnace must be fed frequently with fuel in order to meet the expenditure of energy in the form of heat and work,

between the amount of work performed, the heat produced by the body and the total food intake. One cannot perform more work than is provided for by the food intake unless one "borrows" from the reserve supply stored as adipose tissue. This "borrowing" habit is bad unless

one is trying to get rid of surplus storage.

**Heat in Relation to Metabolism**  
Heat is the result of combustion of fuels outside the body and also of the oxidation of foods in our bodies. Since heat is a by-product of all energy spent as work, heat can serve as a measure of energy metabolism. As it is necessary in scientific work to have measures of length (centimeter, inch) and measures of weight (gram, ounce), so is it necessary to have a measure of heat. A calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one kilogram of water one degree centigrade. In our more common measures, it is approximately the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of four pounds of water one degree Fahrenheit.

### MEASURING FOOD CALORIES

A bomb calorimeter is a device for measuring calories, the stored fuel in foods, just as it is for measuring the fuel value of wood, coal or oil. The apparatus shown in Figure 13 is carefully designed for measuring all the heat produced by the complete oxidation of an accurately measured amount of any food. The apparatus is insulated thoroughly against loss of heat, and the amount of heat produced is measured by the change in temperature of a measured amount of water.

**Physiologic Fuel Values.** The caloric value of nutrients determined by the bomb calorimeter must be modified to take account of losses in digestion and excretion. From a large number of determinations Atwater derived the well-known physiologic fuel values.

Protein	4 calories per Gm
Fat	9 calories per Gm
Carbohydrate	4 calories per Gm.

These values were approximate only, but they served reasonably well when

applied to the procedure that had been in use for 50 years. Instead of applying the general caloric factors 4, 9, 4 to the percentage composition of food, as had been done previously, more specific fac-

1 Watt, B. K., and Merrill, A. L. Composition of Foods Raw, Processed, Prepared, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Handbook No. 8, 1950

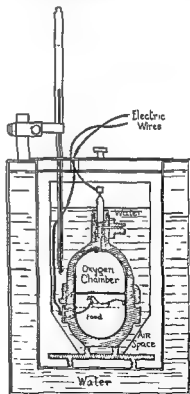


Fig. 13 Diagram of the parts of a bomb calorimeter. The water in the inner chamber changes in temperature when the food is burned. The water in the outer chamber acts with the intervening air space as insulation. (Jean Broadhurst)



*Energy and Heat*  
*Measuring Food Calories*  
*Measure of Energy Expended*  
*Basal Metabolism*  
*Energy Metabolism Requirements*  
*Other Factors Affecting Total Metabolic Rate*

## CHAPTER FIVE

# Energy Metabolism

Atomic power may make the headlines, but solar energy is still the power that makes life on earth possible. However, of all the sun's energy that reaches the earth only a fraction of 1 per cent can be adapted or stored for future use. Even the most efficient man-made devices for harnessing some of the sun's energy are less efficient by far than plants. Here the amazing process known as photosynthesis uses the sun's light and heat (plus the chlorophyll of the

air and the water from the soil. No animal is capable of accomplishing this synthesis. Thus, the potential or stored energy of the plant world becomes the food of animals who in turn spend that energy in the form of heat and work or store the surplus as body fat. (See Fig. 7.)

Metabolism may be used in a general sense to refer to all types of changes which occur to food nutrients after they have been absorbed from the alimentary canal and to the cellular activity involved in utilizing these nutrients. Sometimes the word is used in a more specific sense, as in protein metabolism,

to refer to the total picture of what happens to protein in the body. These changes, which result ultimately in the combustion of foodstuffs, with the release of heat or energy, constitute what is called energy metabolism.

### ENERGY AND HEAT

Energy is expended whenever work is performed by the body — the animal

involved in the performance of one's daily work, or involuntary, such as in the circulation of the blood, respiration, digestion and the maintenance of muscular tone.

As the furnace must be fed frequently with fuel in order to meet the expenditure of energy in the form of heat, energy

between the amount of work performed, the heat produced by the body and the total food intake. One cannot perform more work than is provided for by the

### Variations in Basal Metabolic Rates

There are normal variations in basal metabolism, the causes of which lie within the body itself: the size, the shape and the composition of the body, the age of the individual and the activity of certain internal glands. It is generally accepted that a variation of from 10 to 15 per cent either way from the accepted metabolism rate (all variables considered) is within normal limits. Complete tables of average metabolic rates for men and women of different age, height and weight are used for

comparison with the measured rate. The basal metabolism of an average man and woman would be about 1,650 and 1,350 calories, respectively.

The surface area of the body is used as a measure of size in these studies

greater the necessary heat production by the individual. It has been found that a tall, slender person has a greater sur-



Fig. 14. A respiration apparatus for making basal metabolism measurements.  
[McKesson Appliance Co.]

tors were used. These new factors take into consideration further research data on the fuel values of foods

The new values for most foods approximate the old values, but they are more accurate for such foods as whole wheat, where there is a large indigestible fraction. For practical purposes, however, it is still possible to estimate

fat and carbohydrate

The need for revising the U.S. method of calculating food values was emphasized during World War II, when international committees were concerned with the world's food supply. They could not talk the same nutrition language unless they could agree upon methods of estimating the nutritional value of foods. As a result, the FAO Nutrition Division published its findings in 1947.<sup>2</sup> The policies and the data given in that publication became the basis of the present method of calculation. Table 1, in Part Four, Composition of Foods, is based on Handbook No. 8 and some more recent data.

### MEASURE OF ENERGY EXPENDED

The actual energy expended by the body throughout a given period may be determined by placing a human subject in a special calorimeter. The heat given off by the subject is absorbed by the water in the coils surrounding the well-insulated chamber, where, by an accurate mechanism, the total heat may be measured. This procedure is known as direct calorimetry. As there are in existence only a few calorimeters large enough for making direct observations on human beings, and since they are exceedingly expensive, this method is used chiefly for scientific research.

By another method, known as indirect

<sup>2</sup> FAO Energy-Yielding Components of Food and Computation of Calorie Values, Washington, FAO, 1947.

calorimetry, the rate of metabolism is calculated from the oxygen intake measured by a respiration apparatus. From the oxygen consumed in a given number of minutes the caloric expenditure can be calculated. This principle may be applied to persons engaged in various

conditions, or when work is performed in a stationary position, a tank type of apparatus is used. This type of apparatus is now installed in most of the larger hospitals of the country (Fig. 14). The metabolism test is used extensively as a means of diagnosis, particularly in cases of hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, myxedema and other endocrine disturbances which may alter the metabolic rate.

### BASAL METABOLISM

The energy expended under basal conditions includes the work of

1. Maintaining muscle tone
2. The circulatory system
3. Respiration
4. Digestive processes
5. Other glandular and cellular activity.

In order that there may be some basis of comparison for tests, the rate of metabolism must be studied under standard conditions. Therefore, it is specified that the subject be lying down, awake and at complete rest, and that the test be taken at least 12 hours after the last meal and several hours after any vigorous exercise.

In the morning before breakfast is the most convenient time to comply with these conditions. The rate of metabolism as determined under these "standard" conditions is known as the basal metabolic rate (BMR). Marked variations in the basal rate of metabolism are an indication of disease.

## A NURSE'S ACTIVITIES FOR 1 DAY—CALCULATION OF ENERGY EXPENDED

Activity	TIME ENGAGED IN ACTIVITY IN HOURS	CALORIES PER POUND	
		PER HOUR	TOTAL
Asleep	8	0.4	3.2
Lying still, awake	1	0.5	0.5
Dressing and undressing	1	0.9	0.9
Sitting, eating meals, sewing, watching TV	4½	0.7	3.2
On duty (8 hours).			
Walking	1	1.5	1.5
Standing	1	.8	.8
Care of patient	4	1.1	4.4
Reading, writing	2	.7	1.4
Walking to and from work	½	1.5	.7
Recreation			
Playing piano	½	1.2	½
Dancing	½	2.0	1.0
	24		
		Total per lb	18.2
		Weight in lbs.	130
		Total energy expended for the day 2,366	

amount expended by this tissue was  
minute compared with the total ———

ories per day In every case the food intake should equal in caloric value the heat units expended by the body (except, of course, in overweight individuals who find it necessary to reduce). A man doing sedentary work may require only 2,500 calories per day, while a man doing exceedingly hard manual labor may require as much as 5,000 calories. The calorie allowances given for different ages and sexes are ———

10). For men, the range is from 3,200 down to 2,550, for women, from 2,300 to 1,800 calories, lower for the older age groups.

The table on page 50 gives the average energy expenditure per pound or per kilo for several everyday activities.

Obviously, not all types have been measured, but in using this table to estimate your own energy expenditure you can use the data for the activity nearest to that in which you were engaged or one which would require similar exertion.

Individual variation in the amount of energy spent in performing a given task or activity may be considerable. One person may sit so relaxed that he spends no more energy than another may spend lying down. One person makes more motions in doing a job than another. Thus, in calculating your own energy expenditure for a day from such a table, you can expect only an approximate figure because of the many variables and the difficulty of estimating the exact length of time spent in each activity. Nevertheless, it is interesting to see how your energy intake calculated from food eaten compares with your calculated energy expenditure for the same day.

A nurse weighing 130 pounds and on active duty 11 hours a day may estimate

face area than a shorter, stout person of the same weight, that is, surface area is proportional to height multiplied by weight.

The higher the proportion of active muscular tissue the higher the metabolic rate will be, because fatty tissue has a much lower rate. Thus, the athlete will tend to have a higher rate than a sedentary man of the same age and size.

Age and growth are responsible for normal variations in basal metabolism. The relative rate is highest during the first and the second years and decreases after that, although it is still relatively high through the ages of puberty, both in girls and in boys. During adult life there is a steady decrease in rate with a marked drop in old age, due undoubtedly to lower muscle tone resulting from diminishing muscular activity.

Sex probably has little effect upon metabolism, although women in general have a lower metabolism than men. This may be accounted for by less habitual activity or by a difference in body composition, women usually having a little more fat and less muscular development than men.

The internal secretions of certain glands of the body, such as the thyroid and the adrenals, materially affect metabolism. The secretion of the thyroid gland has the most marked effect. Hyperthyroidism is that condition in which the metabolism is accelerated by increased production of thyroxine, while

hypothyroidism is characterized by a decreased metabolism to a lesser degree, but their significance in this respect is not well understood.

### ENERGY METABOLISM REQUIREMENTS

For all voluntary activities the fuel needed is in direct relation to the intensity of the exercise. For instance, a moderate amount of energy is needed for walking, while for the heavy labor

of digging a ditch or for the active exercise of tennis a considerable amount of fuel is needed.

Muscular work is the greatest factor influencing energy requirements. Mental work, strange as it may seem, does not affect the total metabolism sufficiently to be detected easily. Investigators, working with a very delicate apparatus, found that nerve tissue did expend some energy, but that the

ENERGY EXPENDITURE FOR EVERYDAY ACTIVITIES\*

	CAL / Kg./Hr.	CAL / LB./Hr.
Asleep	9	.4
Bicycling, mod. speed	3	1.7
Cello playing	25	1.1
Dancing, foxtrot	52	2.4
Dancing, waltz	44	2.0
Dishwashing	22	1.0
Dressing and undressing	1.9	.9
Driving an automobile	21	1.0
Eating a meal	15	.7
Horseback riding, trot	58	2.6
Ironing	22	1.0
Laundry, light	25	1.1
Lying still and awake	12	.5
Painting furniture	28	1.3
Playing Ping-pong	5	2.7
Piano playing, moderate	2	1.2
Reading aloud	15	.7
Running	88	4.0
Sewing by hand	15	.7
Sewing, elec. mach	15	.7
Sitting quietly, watching TV	1.4	.6
Skating	4.9	2.2
Standing, relaxed	17	.8
Sweeping, vacuum cleaner	41	1.9
Swimming (2 mi / hr)	98	4.5
Tailoring	21	1.0
Typing rapidly	22	1.0
Walking, 3 mph	3	1.5
Walking, 4 mph	4.9	2.2
Writing	15	.7

\* Adapted from Taylor, MacLeod & Noyes, *Energy Expenditure in Man*, 1955.

for at least 12 hours. For a person on an average diet the specific dynamic action of food may account for about 10 per cent rise above the basal.

Climate, season, housing and clothing affect metabolism, chiefly through their bearing upon the regulation of body temperature. The heat produced in the body by metabolic processes must be conserved or given off in such a way as to maintain the body temperature at a remarkably constant figure. If no heat were lost from the body during average daily activity, the temperature would rise about  $2^{\circ}$  an hour. In winter we purposely curtail our heat loss from the body by wearing heavier clothing and living in heated houses, while in summer we wear thinner clothing to expedite greater losses. However, nature has provided for a carefully controlled loss of heat that may vary as climate and environment dictate. A thinly clothed person on a cold winter day may shiver. This process is a series of rapid muscular contractions set up involuntarily in the body to increase heat production in order to make up for the rapid heat loss. Evaporation of perspiration from the skin is a mechanism employed by the body to reduce temperature. Insensible perspiration is evaporating continuously with a slight loss of heat, but sensible perspiration means greater heat loss and affords a welcome cooling effect when the body is overheated in warm weather or after strenuous exercise.

Although essential nutrients should be considered in the selection of an adequate diet, it must not be forgotten that the caloric value is fundamentally one of the most important. DuBois<sup>2</sup> pointed out when he stated:

"Calories in medical practice are just as important as they ever were, in spite of the fact that attention has been centered on vitamins. No supplements of vitamins or mineral elements can alter

the laws of the conservation of energy. Calories are still needed to keep the body warm and to furnish energy for muscular work."

When emergencies arise in war or famine, it is total calories which must be provided first to keep people alive and satisfied. The quality and the nature of the calories can be adjusted later to meet specific needs.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

- 1 Explain the use of the word *metabolism* in the two expressions—"energy metabolism" and "protein metabolism."
- 2 What is the unit of measure for energy and how is food energy measured?
3. What are the so-called physiologic fuel values? How can they be used to estimate food values?
- 4 Milk has the percentage composition of 3.5 Gm protein, 4 Gm fat and 5 Gm carbohydrate per 100 Gm. Calculate the caloric value of a glass of milk weighing 240 Gm.
- 5 What change in the calculation of caloric value of foods was recommended in 1950 and why was it necessary?
- 6 What is measured in a basal metabolism test? Under what conditions must the test be performed? Name the factors which affect the basal metabolic needs of any given individual.
- 7 What is the largest single factor affecting the total energy requirements? List other factors which play a part in the total calories needed.
8. Calculate the energy requirement

Compare the figures. Is the quick method reasonably accurate?

9 Determine from your study of the previous chapters which foods will con-

<sup>2</sup> DuBois, E. F., and Chambers, W. H. J. A. M. A. 119:1183, 1942.

her total energy expenditure for the 24 hours from the list of activities. The results of such a calculation are given below as a sample. An office girl with less activity would expend considerably fewer calories, but a man weighing more and in sedentary occupation may expend about the same calories as this more active woman.

A quick estimate of the energy needs of a moderately active person may be made as follows

Basal needs = 1 cal./Kg./hr

Weight in Kg  $\times$  24 = BMR for 1 day

BMR plus 50% = total energy needs for moderate activity

The increase above the basal is proportional to the degree of activity as indicated in the following table for rough estimation of energy needs

APPROXIMATE INCREASE ABOVE BASAL NEEDS FOR LISTED ACTIVITIES

	PER CENT ABOVE BASAL
Bed rest (hospital patient)	10
Sedentary activity, knitting	30
Light activity, tailor or nurse	50
Moderate activity, carpenter, painter	75
Severe activity, lumberman, stone mason	100

Habitual muscular exercise not only increases the total energy metabolism but affects the basal rate because energy is required to maintain muscle tone. On the other hand, sleep lowers metabolism because the muscles are relaxed. A prolonged period of absolute rest in bed means loss of muscle tone and lowered metabolism

A person who habitually consumes more calories than he expends for work plus body heat tends to store the extra food as body fat (adipose tissue). This is easy to do, especially when one's activities are less than they were previ-

ously. Frequently, eating habits are not adjusted to fit reduced activities. There-

weight. A further discussion of weight control and the treatment of obesity is given in Chapter 21.

### OTHER FACTORS AFFECTING TOTAL METABOLIC RATE

The ingestion of food increases metabolism. One research worker found that a fasting man had a metabolism averaging 9 per cent lower than that on the days when food was consumed. However, metabolism goes on during fasting, showing that the body must continue burning fuel supplies even though the tissues are called upon to make up the deficit. This explains the loss of weight and wasting in severe illness and starvation.

With prolonged fasting and subsequent loss of weight, the body tends to adjust itself by lowering the metabolic rate. This is comparable with setting back a thermostat so that the organism runs at a lower rate. This adjustment is true of adults, but children who are undernourished seem to have a higher rate, which makes undernutrition in children even more serious than in adults. So far there is no satisfactory explanation of this difference.

**Specific Dynamic Action of Protein.** Not all kinds of food are oxidized with an equal effect upon metabolism. Protein stimulates metabolism, so that a greater amount of heat is produced in its metabolism than in that of similar quantities of fats and carbohydrates. This effect is commonly known as the specific dynamic action of protein. Carbohydrates and fats have a much less marked effect, but the slight stimulation that results from the intake of food of any type accounts for the fact that metabolism tests usually are taken before breakfast when no food has been eaten

*Minerals Essential for Life*  
*Mineral Composition of the Body*  
*Calcium and Phosphorus*  
*Iron*  
*Iodine*  
*Trace Elements*  
*Sodium, Potassium, Magnesium, Sulfur and Chlorine*  
*Acid-Base Balance and Reaction of Foods*

## CHAPTER SIX

# Minerals

### MINERALS ESSENTIAL FOR LIFE

Minerals have been classed among the "little things" in nutrition, but they are far from little in importance. Plant life, animals, bacteria and other one-celled organisms all require proper concentrations of certain minerals to make life possible. Minerals serve as part of structural tissue or control certain vital functions. Changes of concentration which may seem small can be fatal. Thus, common salt, which in dilute solution is necessary for most forms of animal life, becomes a preservative when foods are salted or kept in brine because the concentration kills bacteria. On the other hand, marine forms (fish and shellfish) quickly die when subjected to fresh water.

In natural foods, minerals are present in various forms mixed or combined with proteins, fats and carbohydrates. Processed or refined foods, such as fats, oils, sugar and cornstarch, contain almost no minerals. The total mineral content of a food is determined by burning the organic or combustible part of a known amount of a food and weighing the resulting ash. The ash then is an-

alyzed for individual mineral elements. Most foods have been analyzed for 10 or more mineral elements, but in dietary practice the figures most commonly used are those for calcium, phosphorus and iron and, for therapeutic purposes, sodium and potassium (Tables 1 and 5, Part Four).

Minerals such as iodine, fluorine and other trace elements which are essential for life may be found abundantly in drinking water in certain areas or in foods grown on soils in those areas, while in other parts of the country they are deficient in both soil and water. Still other mineral elements such as sodium, potassium, chlorine, sulfur and magnesium, all necessary in human nutrition, are so universally present in foods that we do not need to worry about deficiencies.

Accurate data on the mineral constituents of common foods no longer satisfy the scientific nutritionist. The question of relative availability of mineral elements in various forms for physiologic processes has stimulated new investigations in this field. In discussions of the subject written 40 or more years ago,



tribute largely calories to the diet. Check your answer with the food composition tables in the back of the book.

10. The basal metabolism of a man of average size is about 1,650 calories per day, of a woman of average size, about 1,350 calories. If the measured basal metabolism for such a person were

12 per cent below average ( $-12$ ), how many calories per day would each be expending under basal conditions?

11. When there are acute food shortages, should relief agencies supplying a minimum of food to relieve starvation think first of calories, protein or vitamins, and why?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

# CALCIUM

## In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

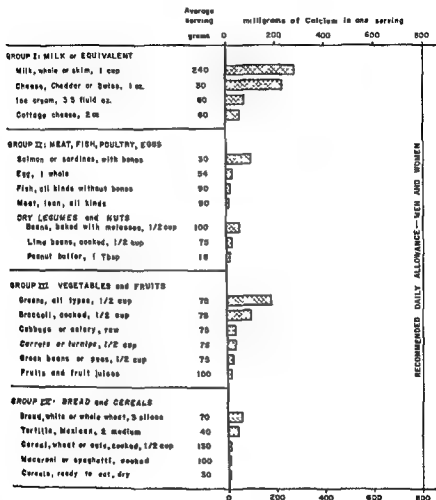


Figure 15

and phosphorus in the cooking of vegetables, especially if the cooking water is discarded. There are wide differences in mineral content of plants grown on different soils. Thus, foods should be chosen with a view to supplying an ex-

cess of these elements and providing a liberal margin of safety. This excess

the opinion prevailed that the organic forms of minerals found in plant and animal foods were better utilized than the inorganic. However, modern research has disproved this theory. Today we are aware that many minerals occur

the tissues, minerals may function as simple salts or be incorporated into organic complexes. Sulfur and small amounts of other elements are incorporated in organic compounds which need digestion before they can be absorbed.

### MINERAL COMPOSITION OF THE BODY

The organic constituents, carbohydrate, fat, protein and related substances, plus water make up about 98

mineral in some form, some as hard tissues such as bones and teeth, some as salts in the fluid of the body. The most important structural or functioning mineral elements in the human body are listed in the accompanying table

### CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS

Calcium is the mineral most likely to be deficient in the average American diet. Phosphorus also is found to be low in some cases.

Although calcium and phosphorus usually are associated because they function together in the body, they are not always found in the same foods.

**Food Sources of Calcium and Phosphorus.** It is apparent in Figure 15 that milk and milk products are the most important sources of calcium and in readily available form. A few of the green, leafy vegetables used commonly in the Southern states are good sources

### MINERAL COMPOSITION OF AN ADULT HUMAN BODY\*

ELEMENT	PER CENT OF TOTAL ASH	GM./70 KG. MAN
Calcium (Ca)†	39	1,160
Phosphorus (P)†	22	670
Potassium (K)	11	150
Sulfur (S)	4	112
Chlorine (Cl)	3	85
Sodium (Na)	2	69
Magnesium (Mg)	0.7	21
Iron (Fe)	.15	4.5
Iodine (I)	0.007	.02

Manganese (Mn), Copper (Cu), Cobalt (Co), Nickel (Ni), Fluorine (F), Zinc (Zn), Aluminum (Al), Arsenic (As), Bromine (Br), Silicon (Si) and Selenium (Se) } <sup>T</sup><sub>4</sub><sub>0</sub><sub>5</sub>

\* Shoul, A. T.: Mineral Metabolism, New York, Reinhold, 1939.

† Amounts of calcium and phosphorus are variable, according to the bone composition and the reserves of these elements in bone.

oxalate, thus rendering the calcium unavailable. In most sections of the country greens are not used regularly enough or in sufficient quantity to be relied upon to replace milk, but they are important when milk is scarce or unobtainable. Meats and poultry are poor sources of calcium. Cereal products contribute little, except where breads are enriched with calcium or are made with a high percentage of milk solids. The pattern dietary of 1,300 calories provides almost the recommended allowance of 800 mg (0.8 Gm.), which will be supplemented by the calcium of the foods added to make up the needed calories (see Chap. 18).

Phosphorus is more widely distributed and less likely to be deficient in the average diet than calcium. Poultry, fish, meats, cereals, nuts and legumes, as well as milk and milk products, are all good sources.

There may be slight losses of calcium

The calcium and phosphorus requirements for growth have been investigated in children of different ages, observing the level of intake at which maximum retention of calcium and phosphorus is attained. Growth of bone requires the

and until puberty, when there is a sharp rise again during the period of rapid growth. The recommended allowances of calcium for children take into account the different ages and sex needs. Calcium is the only mineral obtained from food

in calcium and phosphorus is necessary to meet these needs. For infants, the intake requirements may well be stated in terms of the amount of milk, since this is the chief food source. For older children, the requirements for calcium and phosphorus are most easily met by including a quart of milk a day or its equivalent in milk products. The calcium and the phosphorus content of milk is not only high but in good proportion, and these factors are more readily available from milk than from

vitamin D can function only when calcium and phosphorus are present in reasonably adequate amounts. Compare the story of vitamin D in Chapter 7.

## IRON

Iron is another mineral that is apt to be low in certain types of American diets, although comparatively small amounts are needed. There is less than 5 Gm. of iron in the body of a full-grown healthy person, but its importance to our well-being is strikingly out of proportion to the quantitative figures

**Blood Building** Iron is a necessary constituent of hemoglobin, the coloring matter of the red blood cells, and is an essential constituent of every cell in the body. As a constituent of hemoglobin it is vitally essential to the processes of nutrition. Hemoglobin is a compound of protein, iron and a pigment complex. Hemoglobin combines with oxygen in the lung capillaries to form oxyhemoglobin and as such travels in the blood stream to the tissues, where the oxygen is released to take part in oxidative processes. Part of the carbon dioxide formed is carried back by the same hemoglobin, which drops its load in the lungs and starts out with a new load of oxygen. Therefore, it is highly important that the food contain sufficient amounts of iron along with other necessary elements needed for its utilization.

The iron of our bodies is used very efficiently. Normally, it is not used up or destroyed when it becomes a con-

amounts of unabsorbed iron may be lost in the stools, very little is excreted in the urine. Loss of blood due to hemorrhage, menstruation or accident is responsible for the major losses of iron from the body.

**Food Sources.** The best food sources of iron are found in the meat, fish, poultry and egg group. The green, leafy vegetables, dried fruits and enriched bread and cereal products are the best plant sources. Milk and milk products are conspicuously low in iron. Such foods as molasses and raisins, popularly featured as good sources of iron, are rich on a percentage basis, but small servings of these foods used infrequently do not constitute as important a source

day, together with other foods suitable for his age, provides such a margin of safety

**Function.** Ninety-nine per cent of the calcium in our bodies and a large

calcium phosphate is removed from the body in the feces.

bone in the development of the fetus and the young animal, and normally the calcium phosphate is deposited in it as growth and strain demand. When nature's plan is thwarted by an inadequate supply of either of these minerals in food, or by an inability to utilize them, growth may be retarded, or, as more often happens, growth in size continues, but the new bone is abnormal in structure and poorly calcified. This results in the bowed legs, enlarged ankles and wrists, prolapsed thorax and other bone deformities characteristic of rickets.

Calcium and phosphorus perform other less conspicuous but necessary functions in the body, of which only a few can be mentioned here. Calcium in the blood is necessary for the process of clotting. Blood calcium below normal gives rise to tetany, and the physician may prescribe calcium to be given intravenously in order to raise the blood level of calcium and stop the muscle twitching characteristic of tetany.

Phosphorus is a necessary constituent of every cell in the body and is especially important in nerve tissue. Radioactive phosphorus used as a "tagged" element in metabolic research has confirmed the wide diversity of function of phosphorus.

Phosphates are now recognized as playing a major role in muscle physiology. A complex carbohydrate-phosphate compound is the storage battery which can release muscular energy immediately when a nerve impulse gives the order.

Phosphates also assist in maintaining the acid-base balance of the blood. Further consideration will be given to this function in the discussion of the acid-base equilibrium in the body.

**Dietary Requirements.** The dietary requirements of calcium and phosphorus for children and adults have been investigated extensively. Earlier work with animals led the way on how to attack the problems in humans.

The assumption that end products of metabolism appear in the urine and unabsorbed material in the feces does not hold for calcium and phosphorus. Some metabolized calcium and phosphorus may be excreted via the intestinal tract. Thus, the problem of balance studies to determine calcium and phosphorus requirements is complicated. A person is said to be in equilibrium with respect to any nutrient if the intake approximately equals the output.

The maintenance requirement of calcium for adults has been studied in several laboratories, but it is difficult for workers to reach complete agreement. It is generally accepted that a recommended allowance should be about 50 per cent above a minimum figure to allow for stresses, strains and emergency needs, as well as for individual variation. The Recommended Dietary Allowances, as revised in 1958, give 0.8 Gm. per day as adequate for adults, with 1.5 and 2.0 Gm. recommended during pregnancy and lactation. The same allowance is recommended for women as for men, despite their smaller average size, in order to ensure ample stores in preparation for maternity.

In the Recommended Allowance Table no figures are given for phosphorus because dietary deficiencies of phosphorus are uncommon when diets are adequate in calcium and protein. In general, the phosphorus allowance

CALCIUM AND IRON IN PATTERN DIETARY FOR 1 DAY

FOOD GROUP	AMOUNT IN GM	HOUSEHOLD MEASURE	CALORIES	CALCIUM MG.	IRON MG
Milk or equivalent	488	2 c (1 pint)	332	576	.4
Egg	54	1 medium	77	26	1.3
Meat, fish, poultry	90	3 oz., cooked	257	9	2.9
Vegetables					
Potato, cooked	100	1 medium	83	11	.7
Green, leafy, yellow	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	18	119	7
Other	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	39	15	6
Fruits					
Citrus	100	1 serving	41	20	.3
Other	100	1 serving	85	11	.8
Bread, white, enriched	70	3 slices	189	54	1.2
Cereal, whole grain or enriched	80	$\frac{1}{2}$ c cooked or 1 oz dry	80	11	11
Butter or margarine	14	1 tablespoon	100	3	
			1,301	772	9.5

potato and enriched white bread, it may be helpful to remember that white foods are not good builders of red blood.

It has been shown that there is a marked difference in the availability of iron derived from various food sources. For instance, only about half the iron in whole cereals is in usable form, and even less in certain green leaves. It is impossible to tabulate available iron in foods at present, but work in progress may throw further light on the subject. The basic dietary of 1,300 calories provides 9 mg of iron. Additional foods to supply extra calories would easily bring the total to the 10 mg level.

Since the iron in foods is available in either organic or inorganic form, it is

have evolved over the years from extensive research. From the maze of findings certain well-established facts have evolved.

The iron in foods may be in either organic or inorganic compounds, and its availability for human nutrition depends

upon other factors than the form in which it occurs. Iron absorption may be hindered by certain abnormal conditions in the alimentary canal, especially a lack of sufficient hydrochloric acid in the stomach. By the use of radioactive iron which can be followed as a tracer, it appears that iron is absorbed from the intestinal tract largely in response to need, and the rest is discarded.

Following absorption, iron is transported to the liver for storage and can be utilized for hemoglobin synthesis.

was the first proof of one inorganic element's functioning in the utilization of another. Copper is not present in the hemoglobin molecule. Adequate protein must also be available for synthesis of the complex compound hemoglobin. Other dietary essentials, especially certain vitamins, seem to aid in this process, according to Leverton,<sup>1</sup> who demonstrated that young women could main-

<sup>1</sup> Leverton, R. M., and Marsh, A. G.: J. Nutrition 23:229, 1942.

# IRON

## In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

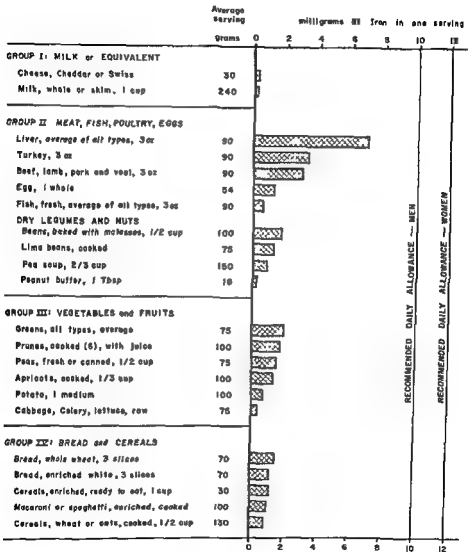


Figure 16

have a noticeable lack of pigment, which is significant, since iron salts are all colored and usually lend color to a food rich in this element. Compare, for in-

stance, egg yolk with egg white, molasses with white sugar, whole with milled grains, and spinach with celery. With a few exceptions, such as the

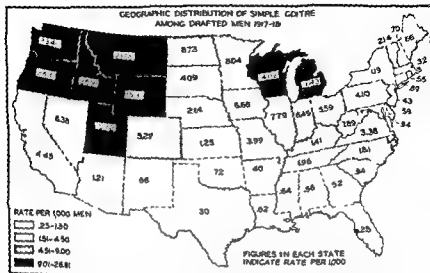


Fig. 17. Geographic distribution of simple goiter among men drafted for World War I. These goitrous areas are naturally low in iodine. (U S Dept. Public Health)

over the United States, and that it seemed to be most prevalent in the very regions where there was the least iodine. This early suspicion was confirmed, and we now recognize that common goiter is primarily an iodine-deficiency disease.

As an essential constituent of the thyroid gland in man and in animals, sufficient iodine must be supplied if that gland is to function normally. The amount of iodine present in the body of an adult is estimated to be about 25 mg., and most of it is concentrated in the thyroid. The minute amounts found in most animal and plant tissue have made the detection and the measuring of this factor an extremely difficult technical problem. Refined methods of analysis have demonstrated that marine fish, shellfish and seaweed are relatively high in iodine. In general, water supplies and vegetables grown in nongoitrous regions are richer in iodine than the water and the vegetables in goitrous regions.

Iodine deficiency is characteristic of

the soil of the Great Lakes region and as far south as West Virginia and of some sections of the Pacific Northwest, and the incidence of goiter as highest in these regions. Outside the United States goiter is common in Switzerland and in mountainous regions of South America and New Zealand. In south central Brazil there are areas where enlarged thyroid among schoolchildren is so common that a child without such enlargement is the exception and is ridiculed by other children as a "bottle-neck."

The thyroid gland becomes enlarged owing to the overgrowth of the structural tissue, but there is a decrease in the actively secreting tissue, and the whole organism suffers from the lack of this internal secretion. The incidence of common goiter is higher in females than in males and is most apt to appear during adolescence or pregnancy.

**Goiter Prophylaxis.** The suggestion was made by Marine and Kimball that iodine might be administered to children



tain their hemoglobin level on less iron if all other essentials were present in the diet. Apparently iron is a mineral element which is rigidly conserved by the body and used repeatedly. If no blood is lost, there is little need for new iron except for the growth of a new organism.

**Dietary Requirements. ADULTS**  
The recommended allowance for women is 12 mg. of iron per day, with 15 mg. per day during pregnancy and lactation.

The 10 mg. of iron per day recommended for men may be more liberal than is necessary, because there is evidence that the male adult needs relatively little iron. Usually, this need is met if the diet is adequate in other respects. This figure has been retained, however, until more data on the subject are available, because this level can be attained without difficulty, and a generous intake may be desirable for other reasons.

vision for new material as well as replacement requires a more liberal supply of iron. The anemias of infancy and childhood are evidence of the shortage that frequently occurs, although nature seems to have made provision for the period of nursing. Milk is essentially low in iron, but a reserve of this mineral stored in the liver of the infant during prenatal life is drawn upon during the nursing period and economically conserved for repeated utilization. The potential shortage of iron that may occur by the sixth or the seventh month may be forestalled by the early use of egg

culated for each age group on basis of body weight.

needs are greater than those of the

blood-building elements. Chlorosis or adolescent anemia in girls may be due to a low reserve of iron, or of other factors necessary for blood building, when menstruation begins. Languor and exhaustion result from the lack of an

important constituent—iron. Boys are growing rapidly at this age and also need iron for hemoglobin building, but

## IODINE

Common goiter has been known since prehistoric times, but it was not recognized as a deficiency disease until the late 19th century. Baumann discovered iodine in the thyroid gland in 1895, and from then on iodine was used more or less as a preventive or curative treatment for endemic goiter. Before that time burnt sponge (a good source of iodine) had been a popular folk remedy for goiter.

Not until 20 years after Baumann's discovery was serious attention given to iodine as prophylaxis against goiter in large population groups. No doubt, action was stimulated by the high incidence of goiter among draftees from certain states during World War I. The map (Fig. 17) shows the distribution of goiter, which corresponds in large measure to the areas where iodine is deficient in the surface soil and the drinking water.

**Iodine and Goiter.** Before surveys were made of the iodine content of soil, it had been noted that the disease of common goiter was unevenly distributed

<sup>2</sup> Johnston, F. A. J. Am. Dietet. A. 29 758, 1953.

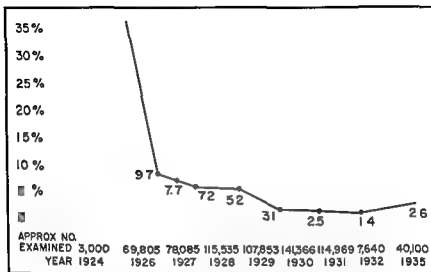


Fig 18. Graph illustrating the incidence of goiter in the public schools of Detroit from 1924 to 1935 (Kimball, O. P. JAMA 103 860)

active elements. These are known as trace elements because they are found only in such minute quantities. However, this does not mean that they are unimportant, for it is now known that some of them are absolutely essential, usually in some enzyme system, while the functions of others are not so well understood. Some of the more important trace elements, such as copper and iodine, have already been discussed.

**Essential Trace Elements.** The trace elements cobalt, fluorine, manganese and zinc are recognized as essential to animal health.<sup>4</sup> Copper and iodine may also be considered in this class.

**Cobalt** is a component of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, a nutritional factor necessary for the formation of red blood cells. An overdose of cobalt given to animals experimentally has been shown to produce polycythemia, i.e., red cells in excess of normal. There is ample cobalt present

in the average diet, and there is no danger of an excess from natural foods.

Fluorine has long been recognized as a normal constituent of bones and teeth, the dental enamel being especially rich in this element. The fluorine content of surface soils and water supplies varies widely and naturally influences the fluorine content of food grown in the region and, in turn, the level of human consumption.

Excess fluorine is now recognized as the cause of mottled enamel in the permanent teeth of children in certain areas of the world. This condition is endemic in limited areas—i.e., in the Texas Panhandle and adjacent areas—and is commonly known as dental fluorosis. The mottling occurs when fluorine is present in the drinking water in concentrations of 15 ppm (parts per million) or more. In these same areas the low incidence of dental caries attracted comment. Subsequently, the relation of traces of fluorine in local water supplies to the low incidence of dental

<sup>4</sup> Shohl, A. T. *Op. cit.*

in goitrous regions as a preventive measure. Consequently, in an experiment, iodine was administered to schoolchildren in Akron, Ohio, with remarkably successful results. By a similar project, in three cantons in Switzerland the incidence of goiter was diminished during 11 years from 87 to 13 per cent. These demonstrations suffice to show that although the body requirements for iodine are exceedingly small, they must be met in order to prevent goiter. Many sections of the country, notably the east coast and the Southern states, as well as California on the west coast, need pay little attention to this factor because iodine is indigenous. However, in the

foods are imported from many different localities, goiter may be less of a problem than in rural goitrous areas where mostly home-grown food is consumed.

Administration of iodine as a prophylactic measure against goiter had to be planned as a public-health activity so that it would reach all people in an area in safe but significant amounts. The use of tablets either at home or in school was impractical, and the adding of iodine to drinking water was too expensive. Common salt is used by nearly everyone in somewhat comparable amounts. Therefore, a small percentage of an iodine compound was added to table salt to be marketed in goitrous regions, and an educational campaign was conducted to inform people why they should buy and use iodized salt.

This plan was adopted by Michigan

of endemic goiter or enlarged thyroid has been reduced almost to nil.<sup>2</sup> The decrease in the sale of iodized salt that has occurred since publicity on the subject has fallen off is paralleled by a slight increase in the number of goiters in schoolchildren. The discontinuance of iodized salt in one county in Michigan was followed by a marked rise in the incidence of goiter within 5 years. The incidence of goiter in the public schools of Detroit from 1924 to 1935 is a striking illustration of what health education can accomplish (Fig. 18). In other states, where the use of iodized salt was not encouraged, the incidence of thyroid enlargement has remained fairly constant over the same period of years.

In 1941, the National Study Committee on Endemic Goiter resolved that the content of potassium iodide in table salt and in salt for domestic animals should be 0.01 per cent, provided that a suitable stabilizer was used. This amount was calculated from per-capita consumption of salt to be sufficient for the prevention of endemic goiter and not great enough to cause harmful effects in other types of thyroid disorders. Iodized salt has since been continuously available in groceries in parts of the country where it is needed and at no increased cost to the consumer. Education is still necessary, however, if all people are to understand why it is desirable to choose iodized salt when shopping. Iodized salt is now being introduced into other countries where common goiter is endemic, probably as a result of its successful use in this country.

### TRACE ELEMENTS

Many inorganic elements in addition to iodine occur in animal tissues in extremely small quantities and in some instances are detected only by spectrographic methods or by the use of radio-

<sup>2</sup> McClure, R. D.: JAMA 109:783, 1937.

Eleven years later the results of this plan adopted by the Michigan Department of Health far exceeded the hopes of those who instigated it. The incidence

dehydration and possibly to salt depletion, accompanied by heat cramps. Some industrial plants provide for all employees water with about 0.1 per cent solution of salt or "salt tablets" to be taken with a liberal amount of water. The significance of the salt as a stimulant to thirst, thus preventing dehydration, may be even greater than the role of salt *per se*. In any case, reduction of "heat fatigue" is reported as a result of more salt and water.

Sodium, potassium and magnesium salts in solution in the blood and the lymph are chiefly responsible for maintaining the osmotic pressure relation between cells and the surrounding fluids. The nice balance that is ordinarily maintained in the body may be disturbed locally when bathing in fresh water, as shown by the irritating effects on the delicate nasal membranes. However, a salt solution of a concentration similar to that of our tissue fluids is not irritating. Such a solution of 0.85 per cent sodium chloride in distilled water is known as physiologic saline. It is useful for gargles, washes or enemas, and is the basis for some intravenous solutions. Sodium and potassium also play an extremely important role in the maintenance of neutrality in the body tissues, as discussed later in this chapter.

Magnesium is relatively abundant in

enzymes. It forms an integral part of the complex bone salts. It is closely related to calcium in its functioning, but it cannot replace it in the tissues. The interrelationships of calcium, phosphorus and magnesium are complex, and a disturbance in the normal balance may result from or cause pathologic conditions.

Sulfur is more concentrated in hair, nails and bone matrix than in other tissues. It is an important constituent of all soft tissues and of certain substances such as glutathione and insulin. Sulfur

is a component of the amino acids cystine and methionine and, as such, is found in most protein foods. It is found also in two of the B vitamins. Thus, sulfur usually is adequate if the diet is well balanced and supplied with adequate protein.

## ACID-BASE BALANCE

The maintenance of a constant acid-base balance in the blood and the tissues is a function of normal metabolism. The reaction of the blood is slightly alkaline (pH 7.3-7.45), varying only within narrow limits, regardless of the amount of acid products formed in metabolism. This equilibrium is maintained by a series of buffers in the blood and the tissue fluids. Buffers are able to react with either acids or bases without causing much change in the reaction of the solution.

Proteins of the blood (hemoglobin and plasma proteins) and the phosphates, the carbonates and the organic acids, all in solution in the blood, play an important role in the maintenance of this balance. Acid products formed in metabolism are disposed of either through the lungs or the kidneys. Thus carbon dioxide can be exhaled, while sulfates, chlorides and several organic acids are neutralized by the buffers and eliminated in the urine. The mechanism tends continually to deplete the alkaline elements of the blood and the tissues, but the minerals in our food replenish the supply.

When the supply of buffer substances becomes depleted due to starvation or inability to metabolize food properly, a condition of acidosis may result. Actually, the blood does not become acid, but the term *acidosis* is used to indicate a lowered alkaline reserve which results when the basic elements are used up faster than they are replenished. This may happen in severe diabetes, when the organic acids from faulty metabolism accumulate.

Alkalosis is the opposite of acidosis.

caries has been studied extensively.<sup>5, 6</sup>

enough to reduce the incidence of dental caries, had to be answered. It is now estimated that 1 ppm. is about the critical level, and if this amount is added to the water in a community, a reduction of 50 to 60 per cent in dental caries may be anticipated. Large-scale experiments now in progress in several communities point the way to effective use of fluorine prophylaxis. Mass control of dental caries in children is indeed a possibility in the future (See further discussion of this subject in Chap. 20.)

Manganese plays essential roles both in plant and in animal metabolism. It occurs in all human tissues but seems to function specifically in blood formation and in certain endocrine glands. The manganese requirement of man is not known, but the average diet probably supplies enough. Blueberries and wheat bran are the richest known sources, nuts come next. The manganese content of plants is dependent upon soil content.

Zinc occurs in animal and plant tissues in amounts comparable with those of iron. It is present in the human body as a constituent of a metabolic enzyme. It is considered to be essential, but no quantitative estimates of requirements have been made.

**Trace Elements of Doubtful Significance.** No one has yet been able to demonstrate that aluminum, arsenic, bromine, nickel and silicon are essential to animal life. However, all are found in traces, both in animal and in plant tissues. They appear to be harmless in the amounts and the forms found in natural foods.

Contrary to an earlier popular misconception, traces of aluminum from cooking utensils or in baking powders are harmless.

<sup>5</sup> McClure, F. J. JAMA 139:711, 1949.

<sup>6</sup> Ast, D. B., et al. J. Am. Dent. A. 52:291, 296, 307, 1958.

Arsenic is found in sea foods and in the human body. It accumulates in hair and in nails, but its biologic function is not understood. It has been used therapeutically since the Middle Ages. Overdoses cause gastro-intestinal disturbances, but there is no danger of an excess from natural foods.

**Toxic Trace Elements.** Selenium and fluorine (the latter discussed previously) are the only mineral elements commonly found in food or drinking water in concentrations detrimental to human or animal health. In certain areas in the western part of the United States selenium occurs in locally grown feeds in sufficient concentrations to cause an animal disease called blind staggers. It was formerly known as alkali disease, but it is now recognized as due to an excess of selenium. So far it has been reported, this mineral is not a menace to human health.

### SODIUM, POTASSIUM, MAGNESIUM, SULFUR AND CHLORINE

Of the body minerals mentioned, sodium, potassium, magnesium, sulfur and chlorine usually are present in abundance in the average diet and do not need further discussion from that particular point of view.

Sodium chloride, common table salt, plays a regulatory role in the body metabolism, both the sodium and the chlorine performing specific functions. Animal foods probably contain enough sodium chloride for our actual needs, but with plant foods we seem to need or want a moderate amount of sodium chloride, as do the herbivorous animals, who are known to seek the "salt licks." This craving may be due to the large amount of potassium that is present in plant tissue which needs sodium to balance it in the functioning of animal cells. In certain pathologic states this need is exaggerated. When hard work is performed in a high-temperature environment, excessive perspiration may lead to

dehydration and possibly to salt depletion, accompanied by heat cramps. Some industrial plants provide for all employees water with about 0.1 per cent solution of salt or "salt tablets" to be taken with a liberal amount of water. The significance of the salt as a stimulant to thirst, thus preventing dehydration, may be even greater than the role of salt *per se*. In any case, reduction of "heat fatigue" is reported as a result of more salt and water.

Sodium, potassium and magnesium salts in solution in the blood and the lymph are chiefly responsible for maintaining the osmotic pressure relation between cells and the surrounding fluids. The nice balance that is ordinarily maintained in the body may be disturbed locally when bathing in fresh water, as shown by the irritating effects on the delicate nasal membranes. However, a salt solution of a concentration similar to that of our tissue fluids is not irritating. Such a solution of 0.85 per cent sodium chloride in distilled water is known as physiologic saline. It is useful for gargles, washes or enemas, and is the basis for some intravenous solutions. Sodium and potassium also play an extremely important role in the maintenance of neutrality in the body tissues, as discussed later in this chapter.

Magnesium is relatively abundant in muscle and in bone tissue. It probably acts with other minerals as a regulator and as a constituent of certain tissue enzymes. It forms an integral part of the complex bone salts. It is closely related to calcium in its functioning, but it cannot replace it in the tissues. The interrelationships of calcium, phosphorus and magnesium are complex, and a disturbance in the normal balance may result from or cause pathologic conditions.

Sulfur is more concentrated in hair, nails and bone matrix than in other tissues. It is an important constituent of all soft tissues and of certain substances such as glutathione and insulin. Sulfur

is a component of the amino acids cystine and methionine and, as such, is found in most protein foods. It is found also in two of the B vitamins. Thus, sulfur usually is adequate if the diet is well balanced and supplied with adequate protein.

## ACID-BASE BALANCE

The maintenance of a constant acid-base balance in the blood and the tissues is a function of normal metabolism. The reaction of the blood is slightly alkaline (pH 7.3-7.45), varying only within narrow limits, regardless of the amount of acid products formed in metabolism. This equilibrium is maintained by a series of buffers in the blood and the tissue fluids. Buffers are able to react with either acids or bases without causing much change in the reaction of the solution.

Proteins of the blood (hemoglobin and plasma proteins) and the phosphates, the carbonates and the organic acids, all in solution in the blood, play an important role in the maintenance of this balance. Acid products formed in metabolism are disposed of either through the lungs or the kidneys. Thus carbon dioxide can be exhaled, while sulfates, chlorides and several organic acids are neutralized by the buffers and eliminated in the urine. The mechanism tends continually to deplete the alkaline elements of the blood and the tissues, but the minerals in our food replenish the supply.

When the supply of buffer substances becomes depleted due to starvation or inability to metabolize food properly, a condition of acidosis may result. Actually, the blood does not become acid, but the term *acidosis* is used to indicate a lowered alkaline reserve which results when the basic elements are used up faster than they are replenished. This may happen in severe diabetes, when the organic acids from faulty metabolism accumulate.

Alkalosis is the opposite of acidosis.

This may occur when severe vomiting over a period of time causes a great loss of hydrochloric acid. The body quickly adjusts when the acute condition is relieved.

The reaction of the urine may vary widely in a normal individual because the amount of acid or basic end products from metabolism will vary and the excess must be eliminated.

### ACID-BASE REACTION OF FOODS

Conclusive evidence is not as yet available regarding the practical importance of the acid-base balance of foods in relation to health. Experience and scientific evidence indicate a wide range of adaptability on the part of the human body and do not support the "scare" propaganda with which certain food faddists promote the sale of "alkalizing" compounds to prevent acidosis.

The usual mixed diet contains a good balance of acid and basic factors. The basic elements sodium, potassium, magnesium and calcium may occur as salts of inorganic acids, such as phosphates, sulfates, chlorides or organic acids. The mineral elements are sometimes referred to as "ash" because they do not "burn" up. When foods are metabolized in the body, the mineral elements are released to function in maintaining the acid-base balance, the organic acids are mostly oxidized to carbon dioxide and water. Foods are said to be acid or basic according to whether the acid or the basic elements in the ash predominate. Most fruits contain organic acids combined with basic inorganic elements. When such compounds are oxidized in the body, they leave an alkaline ash. Some other foods, such as cereals and meats, not at all acid in taste, yield end products that are strongly acid. Thus by potential acidity or alkalinity of foods is meant the reaction that they will ultimately yield after being oxidized in the body.

Some workers have attempted to

establish quantitative figures for the excess of acid or basic elements in foods, but the significance of these figures now is questioned, therefore, they have been omitted. A simple classification easy to remember and sufficient for general use is as follows.

### ACID-BASE REACTION BY FOODS

#### POTENTIALLY ACID OR ACID ASH FOODS

Breads—all types  
Cakes and cookies, plain  
Cereals and crackers  
Cheese—all types  
Eggs  
Fish and shellfish  
Fruits—cranberries, plums and prunes  
Macaroni, spaghetti, noodles  
Meats and poultry  
Nuts—Brazil, filberts, pecan nuts, walnuts  
Vegetables—corn and lentils

#### POTENTIALLY BASIC OR ALKALINE ASH FOODS

Fruits—all types (except cranberries, plums and prunes\*)  
Jams and jellies, honey  
Milk, cream and buttermilk†  
Molasses  
Nuts—almonds, coconut, chestnuts  
Vegetables—all types (except corn and lentils)

#### NEUTRAL FOODS

Butter or margarine  
Candy, plain  
Cooking fats and oils  
Syrups  
Starches, corn and arrowroot  
Sugars

\* Ash alkaline in vitro, partly acid in vivo, because organic acids are not completely utilized.

† Calcium largely excreted into intestinal tract; therefore, effect upon pH of serum tends to be acid because of high phosphate content.

**SUMMARY OF MINERAL ELEMENTS IN NUTRITION**  
(The information summarized here is given in more detail in the text )

ELEMENT	FOOD SOURCES	DIETARY ALLOWANCE FOR ADULTS	FUNCTION IN THE BODY	ELIMINATION
Calcium	Milk, cheese, some green vegetables, molasses	Adult, 0.8 Gm daily, child, 1.0 Gm. Low in average diet	Bone and tooth formation, coagulation of blood. Regulates heartbeat, aids in regulating mineral metabolism	Feces chiefly, some in urine
Phosphorus	Milk, poultry, fish, meats, cheese, nuts, cereals, legumes	1.5 Gm daily. Usually adequate in average diet	Bone and tooth formation, constituent of cells. Aids in utilization of organic foodstuffs and regulation of neutrality	Urine and feces
Iron	Liver, meat, legumes, whole or enriched grains, green vegetables, dried fruits	Women, 12 mg., men, 10 mg. daily. More for anemic individuals	Constituent of hemoglobin, blood and tissue cells. Necessary for oxygen-carrying power	Feces (mostly unabsorbed iron)
Iodine	Sea foods, water and plant life in nongoltrous regions; sodium iodide in iodized salt	Adequate in nongoltrous regions, adult, 0.15-0.30 mg.	Necessary for normal functioning of the thyroid gland	Urine
Sodium	Common salt, sea foods, animal products	Adult, about 3-6 Gm. Adequate in average diet	Regulates osmotic pressure, neutrality and heartbeat	Urine chiefly and perspiration
Potassium	Cereals, vegetables, legumes, meats	Adult, 2-4 Gm. Adequate in average diet	Constituents of all cells. Regulates osmotic pressure and neutrality	Urine chiefly and perspiration
Magnesium	Nuts, cereals, legumes	Adequate in average diet	Necessary for mineral balance in body	Feces chiefly, some in urine
Chlorine	Common salt, sea foods, animal products	Adequate in average diet	Constituent of acid in the gastric juice. Regulates osmotic pressure	Urine chiefly and perspiration
Sulfur	Protein foods	Adequate if protein is adequate	Necessary constituent of all body tissues—hair and nails especially	Urine
Copper	Liver, nuts, legumes, cereals, dried fruits	Adult, about 1.0-2.0 mg. Adequate in average diet	Aids in utilization of iron in hemoglobin synthesis	Feces chiefly



## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why are minerals essential to life? Name at least 3 functions of minerals in the body

2. What happens in growth if calcium and phosphorus are inadequate in the dietary? Why are these 2 minerals usually discussed together?

3. Milk is the single best source of calcium in the diet. See if you can write a diet which meets the calcium require-

4. What situation results when the iron intake of the diet is low? Name 4 good food sources of iron other than liver.

5. Give the reasons underlying the supposition that adult men may need very little, if any, iron in their intake. Why will adult women continue to need small amounts?

6. Why is iodine such an essential constituent of the body? What is the situation in states lacking iodine in the soil and the drinking water? What is being done to overcome this shortage? Are there any common food sources of iodine?

7. Compare the calcium and iron supplied by the 1,300 caloric basic dietary with the recommended allowances for these minerals.

8. Name some of the minerals having important roles in the body, although they occur there in relatively small quantities. What are some of their functions? Do they appear in food in sufficient quantities to meet physiologic needs?

9. What is meant by the term *trace elements*? Name one of them now under investigation in the prevention of dental caries. What are the findings about this element?

10. What is meant by acid or basic ash when referring to foods? Would a lunch of a meat sandwich, stewed prunes and coffee be predominantly acid or basic? Would this be detrimental to a normal person?

11. Are the blood and the tissues basic or acid in their reactions? How would you answer someone who said that she could not eat tomatoes "because they made her blood acid"? How does the body maintain its acid-base balance?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*General Discussion (all vitamins)*  
*Vitamin A and Precursors*  
*Vitamin D (Calciferol)*  
*Vitamin E (Tocopherol)*  
*Vitamin K*

## CHAPTER SEVEN

# Fat-Soluble Vitamins

### GENERAL DISCUSSION (ALL VITAMINS)

The stories of the early recognition of deficiency diseases and the discovery of the vitamins are most entertaining and worthy of popular dramatization. But the interest in vitamins must not overshadow the importance of the other nutritional factors—proteins, fats, carbohydrates and minerals. Actually, the vitamins function to make possible the more efficient utilization of these other food constituents.

Chapters 7 and 8 are brief résumés of accepted facts or theories regarding the function of each vitamin in normal nutrition, its properties, assay methods and distribution in common foods and food concentrates. Nutritional deficiencies, their symptoms and dietary treatment are discussed in Chapter 20.

**Definition.** Vitamins are potent organic compounds which occur in minute quantities in natural foodstuffs, they perform specific and vital functions in the cells and the tissues of the body. This definition might also apply to essential amino acids or other organic compounds present in small amounts and necessary for the functioning of living tissues. The term *vitamin* is applied to a limited number of these com-

pounds not otherwise classified. There is really little justification for these constituents of foods bearing the common name vitamins—they differ from each other in physiologic function, in chemical structure and in natural distribution—but apparently the term *vitamin* is here to stay.

**History.** A few early physicians

... like the connection between food  
century and scurvy in the 16th, but it was centuries later that certain foods were recommended as protective. The first vitamins were discovered as "accessory factors" in foods which had proved to be curative for specific deficiency diseases. In other words, vitamins were first recognized by their absence rather than by their presence.

In the early years of the 20th century workers in Germany, the Netherlands, Great Britain and the United States were beginning to use animals for nutrition experiments. A number of investigators showed that purified rations containing only protein, fat, carbohydrate and minerals would not support growth. They observed that natural foods provided some substances other than the basal constituents which were essential

for normal growth and well-being. These workers initiated the search for "accessory food factors," later called vitamins. Since then our knowledge of vitamins has grown rapidly.

**Nomenclature.** The term *vitamine*, meaning a vital amine, was proposed by Funk in 1911 to designate a new food constituent necessary for life which he thought he had identified chemically. Other terminology was proposed as new factors were discovered, but the word *vitamin*, with the final "e" dropped to avoid any chemical significance, met with popular favor.

At first the individual vitamins were named by letter or according to their curative or preventive properties, but present opinion favors names descriptive of the substance. As the chemical structure of each vitamin is discovered, it is named appropriately, if it is not already a recognized compound. However, the lettered nomenclature may still be used to some extent, especially in popular discussions of the subject. From time to time new vitamins are postulated and are added to the accepted list after extensive research.

Whenever a supposedly single vitamin proves to have more than one

microbiologic methods of assay. As the efforts of chemists to concentrate, identify and synthesize each vitamin have succeeded, potency then has been expressed in metric weights of pure crystalline substances.

The only vitamin values still given in International Units (I.U.) as originally defined by a League of Nations committee are vitamins A and D. All others are given in milligrams (mg.) or micrograms (mcg.), whichever is appropriate.

Determination of the specific vitamin activity of natural foods becomes an increasingly difficult task as the number and the complexity of the vitamins increase. Table 1, Part Four, gives figures for 5 vitamins in foods. Vitamin losses in the cooking and the storage of food will be mentioned more specifically under each vitamin, but, in general, certain principles of vitamin conservation are worth noting. Fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K) are not lost easily by ordinary cooking methods, and they do not dissolve out in the cooking water. Water-soluble vitamins (B complex and C) are dissolved easily in cooking water, and a portion of the vitamins actually

age of vegetables tend to parallel the degree of wilting, such losses are progressive in the long storage of fruits and vegetables.

**Human Requirements.** A natural sequence to more reliable figures for vitamins in foods has been the attempt to give quantitative estimates of human vitamin requirements. Obviously, these estimates are only approximate, based as they are upon the work of various investigators using different methods of approach. Furthermore, there may be

Sometimes it is convenient to group the vitamins according to solubility. Vitamins A, D, E and K are fat soluble. Two water-soluble groups are recognized—those having vitamin C activity and the large group known as the

the only device for testing thousands of their vitamin content. This type of procedure, called the bio-assay method, is still the basis of comparison for the standardization of newer chemical or

understanding what happens when there is a deficiency. With an understanding of the specificity or function of each vitamin there comes a better realization of their importance.

Recommended dietary allowances of vitamins and other food essentials for different age and sex categories have been established by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council. These levels, which may be attained by a variety of dietary patterns, makes for a wider application of nutri-

absorption may result in poor absorption of these vitamins. They can all be stored in the body to some extent, mostly in the liver, and as a consequence of storage it follows that deficiencies are apt to be slower in manifestation than for most of the water-soluble group. In several instances vitamin activity is not confined to a single substance, but several related substances produce a similar effect on the body. Some of these fat-soluble vitamins are formed from precursors or provitamins.

### VITAMIN A AND PRECURSORS

**Physiologic Significance** Vitamin A was the first of the fat-soluble vitamins to be recognized. This happened in 1913 when two groups of workers, McCollum and Davis, at Johns Hopkins, and Osborne and Mendel, at Yale, demonstrated independently that rats failed to grow normally on diets lacking in natural fats. At about the time growth ceased the eyes became inflamed and apparently infected. This characteristic eye disease, known as xerophthalmia, was relieved in a few days by the addition to the diet of a little butter fat or cod-liver oil. These fats contained the protective or curative factor later known as vitamin A.

Vitamin A is a constituent of the visual purple in the retina of the eye, a substance necessary for normal vision. The visual purple is rapidly decomposed in bright light and is restored in dull light. When supplies of vitamin A are adequate, this adjustment takes place rapidly. When vitamin A is deficient, the adjustment to dull light is slower.

One of the earliest signs of vitamin A deficiency in man is a disturbance in

**Terminology.** Before discussing the individual vitamins there are terms that may need explanation. The word *avitaminosis* means literally without vitamins, but it is generally used with a letter following (i.e., avitaminosis A) to indicate a specific and a complete deficiency of that factor. The word *deficiency* may be used to indicate varying degrees of shortage, thus, mild, moderate, severe or complete. The possibility of an excess intake of certain vitamins has been postulated, and in one instance (vitamin D) a large excess has proved harmful. Such a condition is termed *hypervitaminosis*. Early symptoms of vitamin deficiencies so vague that they are rarely mentioned to a physician are called subclinical. Recent attempts have been made to develop satisfactory criteria for judging early deficiencies. These are discussed and listed in Chapter 20.

The 4 fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K have nothing in common as to function or chemical structure, but they are all soluble in fat and fat solvents. Absorption from the intestinal tract follows the same path as the fats, thus, any condition which interferes with fat

duly conscious of the glare of headlights in night driving. Night blindness or glare blindness may be evidence of the

**VITAMIN A VALUE**  
**In Average Servings of Foods**  
**Classified in the Four Groups**

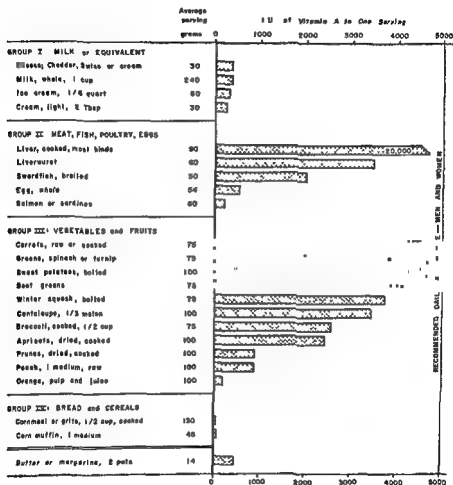


Figure II

inability of the visual purple in the eye to adapt itself readily to changes in light intensity

The eye is not the only organ affected by vitamin A deficiency. The mucous membranes lining the nose, the throat and other air passages, the alimentary canal and the genito-urinary tracts show changes in the epithelial cells known as

keratinization. Rough, dry and scaly skin, especially on the arms and the thighs, is another indication of a vitamin A deficiency. Any of these symptoms may be due to an inability to metabolize carotene, i.e., convert it into true vitamin A, even though the carotene intake is adequate.

Wherever these tissue changes occur,

the natural mechanism for protection against bacteria or other foreign substances is impaired, and the tissue may easily become infected. Young rats show a high susceptibility to eye infections, older rats more often develop lung or glandular infections. Clinical observations show that normal mucous membranes lining nose, throat, sinuses and ear passages are the best defense against infections and that adequate vitamin A is an important factor in maintaining the normal functions of these membranes. From these findings came the term *anti-infective*. This was not entirely justified, because the function of this vitamin is really the maintenance of normal epithelial cells that naturally afford the best physiologic protection against bacterial invasion.

Vitamin A is essential to normal reproduction in rats, pigs and other animals. Studies have shown that for successful reproduction and lactation the diet must furnish more vitamin A than is needed for good growth. Female rats on minimal supply of vitamin A intake may show no outward signs of vitamin A deficiency yet they are not able to bear or rear vigorous young.

adequate vitamin A may give birth to litters of pigs with defective eyes or without eyeballs. This finding was one of the first evidences that prenatal malnutrition might cause abnormalities in the fetus.

**Storage.** Closely related to physiologic function is the body's ability to store vitamin A. It is estimated that the liver may contain as high as 95 per cent of the vitamin A of the entire body, with small amounts in adipose tissue, lungs and kidneys. Infants and young animals probably have low reserves of vitamin A at birth, but if they are well fed they store it rapidly. The liver gradually acquires, over a period of years,

an increasing reserve of vitamin A which normally reaches its peak in adult life. The advantage of this reserve is chiefly to take care of temporary shortages or increased requirements. Obviously, an intake above minimum requirement must be maintained most of the time if such a reserve is to be built up. Reserve stores of vitamin A are evident even in young animals. It requires from 11 to 14 weeks to deplete young rats in preparation for conducting bio-assays.

**Properties of Vitamin A and Its Precursors.** For years vitamin A was associated with a yellow color in plants but did not seem to parallel the pigment in animal foods. This observation was puzzling until the existence of a provitamin A—the yellow pigment carotene—was established as responsible for the vitamin A activity of plants. The true vitamin usually found in animal tissues is only slightly pigmented. It is recognized today that there are 4 forms of carotene that possess vitamin A activity. Betacarotene is the most abundant and possesses about double the vitamin A activity of any of the other forms. The animal body is capable of transforming these precursors into true vitamin A. This takes place in the liver and possibly in the intestines. Some animal products such as cream and butter may contain both forms, because some of the provitamin may remain unchanged.

**Measurement of Vitamin A Value.** The International Unit (I.U.), which is the same as the U.S.P. unit, is defined as the activity of 0.6 mcg (or 0.0006 mg) of betacarotene. The new crystalline vitamin A has a potency of 4,500,000 I.U. per gram. Fish-liver oils and commercial vitamin A concentrates are usually labeled in terms of I.U. per gram or per capsule. Vitamin A content of common foods usually is given in I.U. per 100 Gm (Table 1, Part Four).

**Human Requirements.** The estimation of adult minimum requirements usually is based on the daily intake of vitamin A necessary to maintain normal

dark adaptation. The recommended allowance of 5,000 I U. daily for the average adult is approximately double the minimum requirement thus determined.

Infants seem to require more vitamin A to maintain a normal blood level than to prevent impaired dark adaptation. Whichever is the true measure of need, established practices of infant feeding usually ensure an adequate intake. No direct measurements of vitamin A requirements during pregnancy and lactation have been recorded, but by analogy from animal experiments the recommended allowance of 6,000 I U. during pregnancy and 8,000 I U. during lactation have been agreed upon as safe. (For complete table of vitamin A allowances for all age and sex categories see Chap. 10.)

**Food Sources.** Fish-liver oils are the richest natural sources of vitamin A. However, they usually are classed as food supplements rather than as foods. They vary according to species and season when caught, but commercial brands are well standardized for our convenience.

All animal livers are good sources of vitamin A, but they are not as rich as fish liver. All milk products that include milk fat, such as butter, cream or full cream cheese, are rich in vitamin A. The milk of cows on green pasture is usually higher in vitamin A than is the milk of stall-fed animals, but the color is not an index of vitamin A potency.

Carotene is abundant in carrots, from which it derives its name, but it is also present in even higher concentration in certain green, leafy vegetables and

in plant foods may well contribute a large share of the vitamin A requirement for adults who have a normal capacity for converting carotene into vitamin A. The form of carotene found in certain yellow vegetables may not be as available as carotene from other plant sources. Figure 19 shows the relative vitamin A values of some common foods in 4 food groups. The true vitamin A of animal products in the first 2 groups is of greater physiologic value than the more abundant carotenes from the vegetables and the fruits of Group 3.

**Stability in Foods.** Vitamin A is gradually destroyed by heating in contact with air. This seems to be a process of oxidation accelerated by high temperatures. However, a long period of heating at low temperature seems to be more destructive than a short period at a slightly higher temperature. Thus, milk boiled quickly or pasteurized by up-to-date methods still retains a large proportion of the vitamin A. Originally present. Improved methods of evaporating and drying milk also limit the period of heating to a minimum so that very little vitamin A is lost. Open-kettle cooking of vegetables is more destructive to this vitamin than commercial or home-canning processes, where the product is heated in closed cans. Carotene is fairly stable in the ordinary cooking of vegetables but is decreased by wilting or drying before cooking. Cool, moist storage helps to prevent the loss. Rancidity in fats destroys vitamin A.

### VITAMIN D (CALCIFEROL)

**History.** Rickets has been known as a deficiency disease of infants for several centuries. Renaissance painters often depicted children with rachitic deformities, probably such signs were so common as to be considered normal. The history of rickets as a deficiency disease is much older than our knowledge of how to prevent it. In the early 19th century cod-liver oil was a well-known folk remedy for rickets in Holland. Some-

Animal foods that contain mostly pre-formed vitamin A seem to be more efficient sources of this factor for humans than the precursors found in plants. However, the ample supply of carotenes



Fig 70 Why we cannot get enough sunshine (Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation)

what later it was accepted as a therapeutic agent for rickets by physicians in Holland, France and Germany. During the latter part of the 19th century cod-liver oil lost favor with the medical profession because physicians could not explain its action. It was not used extensively then for many years until the period of World War I, when active research on the prevention and the treat-

ment of rickets was begun. The absence of vitamin D alone probably will not cause rickets, unless the proportion or the total amounts of calcium and phosphorus in the diet are inadequate. However, when the latter condition exists, vitamin D controls the metabolism of the bone-building elements so as to make possible their most efficient utilization.

The low incidence of rickets in tropical climates suggested that sunshine might play a role in the prevention of rickets. Even after it had been demonstrated conclusively that it was the ultraviolet light from sunshine that aided in the healing of rickets, it was difficult to understand the connection between this light effect and vitamin D from some food sources such as cod-liver oil. Eventually, the puzzle was solved when it was discovered that vitamin D activity could be produced in certain foods by irradiation with ultraviolet light. The only secretion of the skin is also activated

unknown factor was credited with some control over the metabolism of calcium and phosphorus.

**Physiologic Significance** Present-day concepts of the function of vitamin D are based upon extensive research on the synthesis of vitamin D in the skin.



when exposed to sunlight, and by re-absorption protects the body against rickets. The amount of ultraviolet light in sunlight varies with the season and

violet light is impossible in northern climates during the winter months and for this reason some other source of vitamin D needs to be provided.

Animal experiments have helped to answer many questions and determine the most potent sources of vitamin D. Rickets may be produced experimentally in rats, chicks, dogs and other animals by feeding a ration disproportionately high in calcium, low in phosphorus and deficient in vitamin D or ultraviolet light. These animals will develop characteristic rachitic symptoms similar to

signs in a live animal. These characteristic symptoms may be prevented or corrected when an adequate source of vitamin D is provided.

Vitamin D is the only vitamin that has been demonstrated to have specific toxicity when administered in overdosage. Usually toxicity is not manifest except after huge doses, such as 500,000 I.U. daily (compare with daily requirements

of 400 I.U. for man). The toxicity is due to the fact that vitamin D is stored in the liver and in the adipose tissue of the body. The reserve is depleted more rapidly when the calcium-phosphorus

ratio is far from the normal, as it is in rachitic rations used for experimental purposes. For children who receive an adequate source of calcium and phosphorus, the requirement for vitamin D seems to be much less than for those who have a deficient intake or disturbed utilization of bone-building elements. When pregnant and nursing mothers are provided with an abundant source of vitamin D, they are able to pass on some degree of antirachitic activity to the young, both prenatally and through the

milk. The young will resist the disease.

Rats to be used for vitamin D assays must be from a special colony fed on a ration low enough in this factor so that the young will not have a large reserve. Experimental rickets is difficult to produce when young rats are protected by vitamin D stored prenatally.

**Properties and Forms of Vitamin D.** Research on the chemical nature of vitamin D was initiated in 1924, when Steenbock and Hess demonstrated independently that antirachitic activity could be induced in foods by exposure to ultraviolet light. It soon followed that the factor activated was associated with fat, and that two fatlike compounds known as ergosterol and cholesterol were the precursors from which vitamin D was produced by the action of ultraviolet rays. The two important forms are vitamin D<sub>2</sub> (calciferol made by irradiation of ergosterol) and vitamin D<sub>3</sub> (formed by irradiation of a form of cholesterol). There is evidence that

permitted the manufacture of a concentrated vitamin D preparation such as viosterol (irradiated ergosterol in oil) long before the pure crystalline vitamin D (calciferol) was isolated in 1935.

**Measurement of Vitamin D.** The

mins, vitamin D can be stored to some extent in the animal body, primarily in the liver. The reserve is depleted more rapidly when the calcium-phosphorus

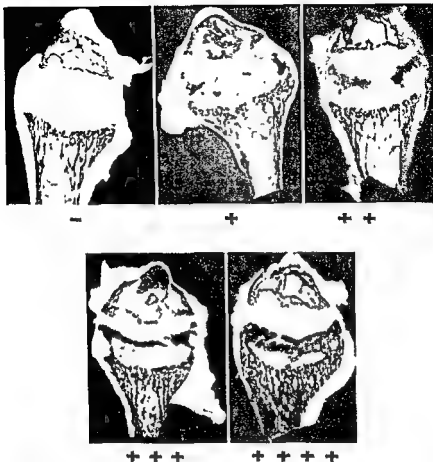


Fig 21 Progressive degrees of recalcification or healing of rachitic bones due to graded doses of vitamin D. The increasing extent of the dark areas, where the white band appeared in the first photo, indicates mineral deposits. Photo marked ++++ represents one Steenbock or 27 USP units of vitamin D. [Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation]

International Unit (I.U.) of vitamin D

of experimental rickets are roentgenograms, total mineral content of bone and calcification of the metaphysis (the growing portion) of the long bones. The last observation has been used in de-

veloping the standardized line test on rats universally employed for routine assays of vitamin D preparations. Rats are fed on a rickets-producing diet until a definite stage of early rickets occurs, then the source of vitamin D or product to be tested is fed and the animals are sacrificed on the 11th day. Longitudinal sections of certain bones are stained in

silver-nitrate solution that darkens only the calcified areas. Figure 91 shows the

administered

**Human Requirements.** Who needs vitamin D and how much is needed? These questions have stimulated much research on this subject. Jeans and Stearns<sup>1</sup> stated the basis for requirements as "those amounts which, with ample intakes of calcium and phosphorus and a diet otherwise adequate, insure sufficient retention of calcium and phosphorus to permit (a) normal growth and mineralization of the skeleton and teeth of infants and children, (b) maintenance of bony and dental structures dur-

A quantitative estimate for children depends upon the age of the child, the rate of growth, the type of food eaten and the exposure to sunlight. Premature and rapidly growing infants need more than others, breast-fed infants less than those fed on cow's milk, children under 2 years more than older children because they are more susceptible to rickets. There is some evidence that vitamin D is effective in reducing the incidence of dental caries in preschool and school-age children. Thus, the figures given for recommended vitamin D allowances for infants and children are subject to many variables that are covered by giving 400 I U. The same amount is recommended for older children and adolescents.

for all persons deprived of sunlight and for elderly persons. According to the Food and Nutrition Board recommendations, other adults probably have little need of vitamin D.

**Natural and Artificial Sources.** The

<sup>1</sup> Jeans, P., and Stearns, G: J.A.M.A. 111,703, 1938.

natural distribution of vitamin D in common foods is limited to small, and often insignificant, amounts in cream, butter, eggs and liver. Thus, we have come to depend upon fortified foods, fish-liver oil or concentrates for preventive and therapeutic use.

Vitamin D milk is one of the best and most available fortified foods. Most of the vitamin D milk now on the market is produced by adding a vitamin D concentrate to the milk and then homogenizing it to maintain an even distribution of the fat. The present standard of 400 I U. per quart means that a quart of milk provides a day's requirement of vitamin D. Most brands of evaporated milk also have vitamin D added. Promiscuous fortification of a variety of other foods with vitamin D does not seem to be either desirable or necessary.

For children who never receive any vitamin D supplement, a food fortified with extra vitamin D may be desirable. The Council on Foods of the American Medical Association expresses the opinion.<sup>2</sup>

"Of all the common foods available, milk is the most suitable as a carrier of added vitamin D. Vitamin D is concerned with the utilization of calcium and phosphorus, of which milk is an excellent source."

Of the numerous fish-liver oils investigated there is a wide range of potency. This seems to vary with the season of the catch and the oil content of the livers. The highest potency oil often comes from fish that give the lowest yield of oil.

Concentrates are made from the natural fish-liver oils or by irradiating pure ergosterol and cholesterol. Such preparations are labeled with the exact units per dose or per capsule and are prescribed accordingly. A protective dose to meet the daily requirement is considerably less than what may be prescribed as a curative dose.

**Stability.** Vitamin D in foods and in

<sup>2</sup> Council on Foods. J.A.M.A. 108:206, 1937.

food concentrates is remarkably stable to heating, aging and storage. Vitamin  $\text{E}$  milk that is warmed for the baby or the cod-liver oil that may have been kept over a season is still a reliable source of this factor.

### VITAMIN E (TOCOPHEROL)

**Physiologic Significance.** The existence of a dietary factor essential for reproduction in the rat was recognized in the early 1920's by Evans, it was given the name vitamin E or antisterility factor by Sure in 1924. Most of the experimental work has been done on rats, the males and the females being affected differently. Vitamin E deficiency leads to destruction of germ cells in the testes of the male and thus to permanent sterility. In a female, mated with a normal male, ovulation and implantation of the ovum may take place normally, but about half way through the gestation period resorption of the developing fetus occurs and no young are born. With less severe vitamin E deficiency, which may permit the birth of a weakling litter, the chances of survival are poor because this same deficiency seems to interfere with lactation or later with growth of the young.

There is less agreement about the need of larger animals for vitamin E, but there is some evidence that cattle and swine do require it. Evidence points to a close correlation between the vitamin E content of the diet of hens and the hatchability of their eggs and the viability of the chicks that are hatched. The role of vitamin E in human reproduction and its possible therapeutic usefulness in the prevention of abortion is controversial but worthy of further study.

Earlier work on nutritional muscular dystrophy in rabbits has recently been repeated with other animals, and the nutritional deficiency factor has been identified as vitamin E. Clinical evidence, however, indicates that vitamin E is of little or no significance in human

muscular dystrophy or similar muscular diseases.

**Storage.** It requires several months for rats to use up their reserve and to become sterile due to a diet deficient in vitamin E. Vitamin E is stored in muscles and in fatty tissues and not in the liver, as are the other fat-soluble vitamins.

**Properties and Forms of Vitamin E.** Three naturally occurring compounds have vitamin E activity. They are fat-soluble alcohols of high molecular weight, closely related in structure and called alpha-, beta- and gamma-tocopherols. Alpha-tocopherol is the most active form. Tocopherols are more stable than most other vitamins, but they are destroyed when in contact with rancid fats. Alpha-tocopherol deteriorates on exposure to light and decomposes upon irradiation with ultraviolet light. Contact with lead and iron hastens destruction.

Vitamin E has become important in food technology because of its antioxidant property. It helps to prevent deterioration of certain foods by oxidation. This same characteristic may exert a protective action upon vitamin A in the body.

**Human Requirement.** The uncertainty regarding the significance of vitamin E in human nutrition precludes any possibility of determining human requirement.

**Food Sources.** Wheat germ and wheat-germ oil afford the richest source of this factor, but it is so widely distributed in common foods that it is even difficult to obtain for experimental purposes a food mixture that is deficient in vitamin E. Tests show that vitamin E is present in cereal germs, egg yolk, legumes, nuts, leafy vegetables and vegetable oils.

### VITAMIN K (MENADIONE AND DERIVATIVES)

**Physiologic Significance.** A severe hemorrhagic disease in newly hatched chicks was recognized by Dam in Co-

penhagen in 1935. The chick ration was adequate in protein, in minerals and in feeding alfalfa. The antihemorrhagic factor found in these materials was called vitamin K—Koagulationsvitamin.

This discovery and also the identification, the isolation and the synthesis of compounds with vitamin K activity have made possible extensive clinical use of

## FAT-SOLUBLE VITAMINS

ACTIVE CHEMICAL FORMS	A (PROVITAMIN) CAROTENE	D CALCIFEROL	E TOCOPHEROL	K VITAMIN K <sub>1</sub> AND K <sub>2</sub> AND MENADIONE
Important food sources	Liver Egg yolk Butter, cream, margarine Green and yellow vegetables Apricots Cantaloupe	Irradiated foods Small amounts in Butter Egg yolk Liver Salmon Sardines Tuna fish	Wheat germ Leafy vegetables Vegetable oils Egg yolk Legumes Peanuts Margarine	Cabbage Cauliflower Spinach Other leafy vegetables Pork liver Soybean oil and other vegetable oils
Concentrates or pharma- ceutical sources	Fish-liver oil	Fish-liver oil Viosterol	Wheat-germ oil	Synthetic
Stability to cooking, drying, light, etc	Gradual destruc- tion by expo- sure to air, heat and drying more rapid at high tempera- tures	Stable to heating, aging and stor- age Destroyed by ex- cess ultraviolet irradiation	Stable to all methods of food processing Destroyed by rancidity and ultraviolet ir- radiation	Stable to heat, light and ex- posure to air Destroyed by strong acids, alkalis and ox- idants
Function: Essential in	Maintaining func- tion of epithe- lial cells, skin, mucous mem- branes, visual purple	Calcium and phosphorus ab- sorption and metabolism	Maintaining func- tion of repro- ductive and muscular tissues	Clotting of blood —necessary in formation of prothrombin
Deficiency manifest as	Night blindness Glare blindness Rough, dry skin Dry mucous membranes	Rickets Soft bones Bowed legs Poor teeth Skeletal deformi- ties	Stenility in males (rats) Resorption of fetus (females) Muscular dys- trophy in rats and rabbits	Slow clotting time of blood Some hemor- rhagic disease of newborn Lack of pro- thrombin
Adult human requirement	5,000 I. U.	Children and ado- lescents, 400 I. U.	Unknown	Unknown

this vitamin for the control and the prevention of some types of hemorrhage. When there is a fall of the prothrombin level of the blood, such as occurs in hemorrhages associated with hepatic or biliary disease, vitamin K appears to be specific. This factor apparently is necessary for the liver cells to perform their normal function of forming prothrombin.

Vitamin K deficiency in food probably is rare, but the deficiency state is caused more likely by failure to absorb or utilize the vitamin in the food. The absorption of vitamin K from the intestine seems to be dependent upon the presence of bile and the normal digestion and absorption of fats. The use of mineral oil in reducing diets or as a laxative interferes seriously with the absorption of vitamin K. In pregnancy especially, the use of mineral oil should be discouraged, as the resulting low prothrombin level may predispose to hemorrhage, miscarriage or hemorrhagic disease of the newborn.

**Storage.** Vitamin K is not stored easily in the body, but, according to the information in clinical reports, whatever is stored is found in the liver.

**Properties and Forms of Vitamin K.** Vitamin K, one of the fat-soluble vitamins, is a yellowish crystalline substance. At least two forms of this vitamin ( $K_1$  and  $K_2$ ) occur naturally, and a number of simpler substances with antihemorrhagic properties have been synthesized. They are heat resistant but are destroyed by alkalis, strong acids and certain oxidizing agents. In the concentrated form vitamin K seems to be sensitive to light.

**Measurement of Vitamin K Activity.** Vitamin K activity can be measured in terms of micrograms of the pure synthetic compound, and the activity of other substances can be expressed in similar terms.

One method of assay uses young chicks and is based on the minimum dose that will maintain the normal coagulation time of the blood at the end of 1 month.

**Human Requirement.** For most people the vitamin K content of the average diet is adequate, and no quantitative estimate of human requirement has been attempted.

The prophylactic use of vitamin K in the prevention of hemorrhage in the newborn is now recommended and practiced in many hospitals. Oral administration of a vitamin K preparation to the mother before delivery and 1 dose of 1 to 2 mg intramuscularly to the infant immediately after birth are suggested as a practical public-health measure.

**Sources.** Vitamin K is fairly widely distributed in foods. It appears abundantly in cauliflower, cabbage, spinach, pork liver, soybeans and, to a lesser extent, in wheat and oats. Alfalfa is the richest known source.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. How was the word *vitamin* derived? Can you define a vitamin as distinct from any other food nutrient?

2. Give some events and names of people of interest in the history of vitamin discoveries.

3. Describe the function of each of the fat-soluble vitamins and good food sources of each, if there are any.

4. Does the depth of yellow color in

small in natural foods, what commercial process is used to produce vitamin D foods? Which foods are commonly fortified with vitamin D?

6. When is a deficiency of vitamin K most likely to occur and what prophylactic measures are recommended?

7. Vitamin E has 2 seemingly unrelated functions. By what vitamin E deficiency symptoms in animals are these 2 functions demonstrated?

8. Are any of the fat-soluble vitamins toxic if used in too large quantities? For which one is special caution necessary when concentrates are administered to infants?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C)*

*Vitamin B Complex: Thiamine (B<sub>1</sub>), Riboflavin (B<sub>2</sub>),*

*Niacin (Nicotinic Acid), Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> Group, Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>,*

*Folacin (Folic Acid), Pantothenic Acid, Biotin,*

*Other B Complex Factors*

*Antivitamin*

## CHAPTER EIGHT

# Water-Soluble Vitamins

### ASCORBIC ACID (VITAMIN C)

**Physiologic Significance.** The history of the recognition of scurvy as a deficiency disease in man and of its subsequent control by antiscorbutic foods is discussed in Chapter 20. The discovery that experimental scurvy could be produced in guinea pigs was made by Holst and Frolich in Norway in 1907. Guinea pigs develop characteristic hemorrhages around joints, teeth and other bony structures similar to the disease in man. Other animals—the rat, the chicken, the dog and certain domestic animals—fail to develop any sign of scurvy when deprived of vitamin C because they are able to synthesize this factor in their bodies. Man, monkeys and guinea pigs do not have this ability and, therefore, must depend upon the vitamin C in their food.

Vitamin C has several functions in

bones and cartilage, gums and teeth (dentin). Ascorbic acid may also play a part in the formation of blood cells in the bone marrow and in the maintenance of normal hemoglobin levels.

Clinical experience with a number of diseases, such as tuberculosis, pneumonia and rheumatic fever, shows a decreased excretion of ascorbic acid even with an increased intake. There is some question as to whether a suboptimal intake of vitamin C is a predisposing cause of any of these diseases or whether there actually is some increased demand for vitamin C as a result of the disease. Interpretation of these findings must await further research. However, we do know that ascorbic acid is essential for the normal healing of wounds and is now being used therapeutically to speed recovery from surgical operations.

**Storage.** The promptness with which man excretes an excess intake of vitamin C in the urine indicates limited powers of storage. The rapid appearance of symptoms of scurvy in guinea pigs on scorbutic rations is further evidence of poor storage. After periods of depletion or shortage when ascorbic acid is again supplied more vitamin is retained until the tissues seem to become



Fig 22 Scurvy results from vitamin C deficiency. Guinea pigs are used for experiments in vitamin C because they need a food source of this factor, even as humans do. (Left) Normal guinea pig (Right) Scurvitic guinea pig (Nutrition Laboratory, Battle Creek Sanitarium)

saturated. Following saturation the excess is again excreted. It is generally believed that a habitual intake of vitamin C of between 80 and 100 mg daily will keep a person in a state approaching saturation, which condition is probably more conducive to optimum health than one in which there is no reserve.

**Properties of Ascorbic Acid.** By 1932 the isolation of vitamin C in pure crystalline form had been accomplished by two groups of workers, one in Pittsburgh and one in Hungary. The chemical structure was identified, and the product was synthesized in physiologically active form soon after that "Ascorbic acid" was officially accepted in 1938 as the chemical name to be given to vitamin C. Ascorbic acid dissolved in water is strongly acid to taste, but in this form it is unstable. However, in fruit juices it is oxidized less rapidly, owing to the acidity of the juices and the protective substances in them. Ascorbic acid in turn prevents the oxidative discoloration of fruits. In tablet form it is inexpensive and stable if kept free from moisture.

**Measurement of Ascorbic Acid.** Ascorbic acid can be conveniently measured chemically, and its potency is expressed in milligrams. It is an active reducing agent and bleaches certain

dyes rapidly. This property is used in the quantitative determination in foods and tissues.

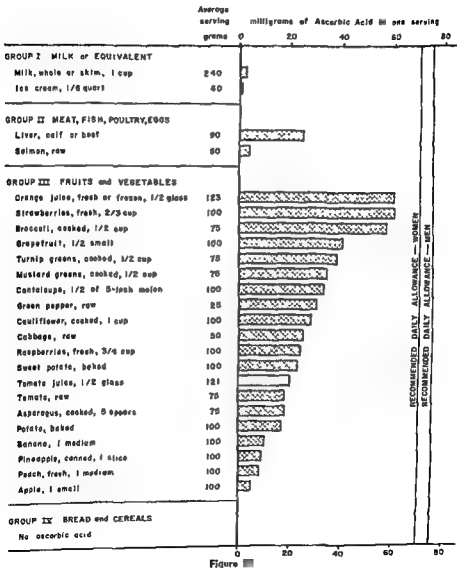
Guinea pigs always have been the preferred experimental animals for bioassay work because of their susceptibility to a deficiency of ascorbic acid, and they are still used for demonstration and comparative assays (Fig 22).

**Human Requirement.** Elaborate studies have been made to determine human requirements for ascorbic acid at different ages, under different conditions of environment, under physical exertion, in fevers and in infections. The amount necessary to prevent frank symptoms of scurvy in humans is far less than that recommended for an optimum state of health. Saturation tests after graded levels of intake and observations on blood ascorbic acid have been the chief techniques used for studying human requirements. On the basis of such studies the National Research Council recommends 75 mg for an average man and 70 mg for a woman, 100 mg during pregnancy and 150 mg during lactation. Growing children need relatively more than adults. (See table, Chap. 10.) During and following fevers and infections the demand for ascorbic acid seems to be increased, either because of rapid



### ASCORBIC ACID

#### In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups



destruction or of an increased need. A regular and adequate intake of ascorbic acid is emphasized because of the poor storage and constant need. Food sources are usually adequate, except in patho-

logic states or when fresh foods are not available.

**Food Sources.** It is obvious from the bar charts (Fig 23) that the commonly used fruits and vegetables of Group 3

are the richest sources of ascorbic acid, with citrus fruits, strawberries, cantaloupe and a number of raw, leafy vegetables topping the list. Canned or frozen citrus juice may be the cheapest source of vitamin C when fresh citrus fruit is scarce or expensive, and may even be cheaper than tomato juice unless home canned, because it takes 3 times as much tomato to supply the same number of units of vitamin C.

In certain circumstances other sources of ascorbic acid are worthy of consideration. Potatoes may become an important source when used in large quantities,

particularly in the Antarctic running low on antiscorbutic foods. That mother's milk contains more vitamin C than pasteurized cow's milk may alter the amount of orange juice and the time of adding it to the baby's schedule. Mother's milk contains more ascorbic acid than average cow's milk and considerably more than is found in pasteurized milk.

Vitamin C is one of the most difficult nutrients to supply in adequate amounts to troops or civil populations in wartime because of its instability in stored foods. In World War II army rations included a lemon powder fortified with ascorbic acid. If men did not like lemonade, as was frequently the case, the ration was low in this factor.

In some countries indigenous fruits

min C from garden vegetables. Even before the war in northern Russia an extract of pine needles rich in vitamin C was being added to berry juice as a health beverage for school children. In another part of northern Europe raw turnip juice saved the lives of infants who otherwise would have died of scurvy.

**Stability in Foods.** Of all the vitamins, ascorbic acid is the most unstable to heat, oxidation, drying and storage. Alkalinity, even in a slight degree, is distinctly destructive to this vitamin, therefore, soda never should be added to food in cooking. Acid fruits and vegetables lose much less ascorbic acid upon heating than nonacid foods. Vitamin C is extremely soluble in water and dissolves out of vegetables during the first few minutes in the process of cooking.

To reduce as much as possible the loss of ascorbic acid in cooking vegetables, the use of the least possible amount of cooking water, short cooking time (water should be boiling when vegetable is added) and little chopping or cutting is recommended. Studies have shown that baked, boiled or steamed potatoes retain a large proportion of their vitamin C if cooked whole. Fresh fruits and more especially vegetables lose vitamin C activity rapidly when stored at room temperature and somewhat less rapidly at refrigerator temperatures. Expert advice is not to shell peas, cut beans, peel vegetables until ready to cook. Quick freezing of fruits and vegetables destroys little if any of this factor. To retain a maximum of the ascorbic acid, frozen fruits should be used promptly after thawing, and frozen vegetables should be plunged directly into boiling water for immediate cooking.

Vitamin P or citrin is a term applied

cherries, or most human cherries, has the highest ascorbic acid content of any known food.<sup>1</sup> Only recently has attention been called to it, and the acerola is now becoming popular. In Great Britain, during World War II, rose-hip and black-currant sirups or jams served to supplement the meager supply of vita-

<sup>1</sup> del Campello, A., and Asenjo, G. F. *J. Agriculture* 61:161, 1957.

in being yellow plant pigments and relatively stable. They are present in the rind of citrus fruits (hence the name citrin), and they are also present in other fruits and green leaves.

## VITAMIN B COMPLEX

**Discovery and Early Significance.** As early as 1897, Eijkman, a Dutch physician stationed in Java, noticed that the poultry at the prison hospital showed symptoms similar to those of his patients suffering from beriberi. This malady developed in the chickens when they were fed on the polished-rice table scraps thrown out from the prison, and recovery followed when other food was given. The results of the investigation were published in an obscure journal. Years later attention was given to the findings, and great scientific significance was attached to them. Eijkman had discovered that there was a deficiency in polished rice, but he did not realize its significance.

Experimental work with rats, *vitamine* and came to be known as vitamin B. Animals deprived of this factor lost appetite, ceased to grow and often developed characteristic symptoms of polyneuritis, a loss of muscular control and partial paralysis. Many of these symptoms in animals were similar to those of beriberi in man, particularly the effect upon the nervous system.

**Subdivision into Separate Factors.** Numerous workers began to observe a complexity of symptoms due to deficiencies among peoples with different dietary patterns. These reports were confusing until the discrepancies in experimental

chemical term—as research progressed to disclose the chemical nature of each.

At present some 12 fractions of the vitamin B complex are generally recognized, and others are postulated. Those discussed in this chapter are thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, folacin, pantothenic acid and biotin, with brief comments about several others.

**Distribution and Properties.** Certain properties, the solubility in water and the distribution in many common foods are similar for all members of the B complex. The very fact that several of the fractions occurred together in the same food gave rise to the early idea that there was only one substance. New factors identified are classified as belonging to the B complex if they are water soluble and are abundant in liver and yeast. Dry yeast is the richest natural source of the B complex, and new strains of yeast are being developed with varying proportions of the different factors.

**Therapeutic Use.** Concentrates of vitamin B complex manufactured by pharmaceutical houses usually are made from liver, yeast or rice polishings. The proportion of the various factors present depends somewhat upon the source or the combination of sources. Synthetic vitamins may be combined in any desired proportion in the preparation of B complex mixtures. Obviously, a proportion of factors corresponding approximately to human need would be most desirable. It is concluded from clinical work that the whole B complex is often superior therapeutically to any single fraction.

### Thiamine (Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>)

**Physiologic Significance.** The poly-

min B<sub>1</sub> fraction of the B complex. In 1910, R. R. Williams became interested in beriberi in the Philippines and in the

designation—letter, descriptive name or

curative effects of rice polishings. He started a 26-year search for the active principle in rice polishings, bran and other natural foods. Later it was named thiamine, as descriptive of its chemical nature.

Even a mild deficiency of this factor may cause anorexia (loss of appetite) and mania in all types of animals and man. Early recognition of the necessity of this vitamin for normal growth has since been supplemented by the knowledge that it is important throughout life in tissue respiration. There is an intricate interrelationship between thiamine and carbohydrate metabolism in the tissues.

A common complaint often due to a mild thiamine deficiency, but not always recognized, is atonic constipation and poor intestinal muscle tone. It is possible that the muscle-nerve mechanism of internal organs is more susceptible to this deficiency than that of the skeletal muscles, which become paralyzed only when the deficiency is severe. Certain British workers suggest that the degree of slowing of heartbeat (bradycardia) may be indicative of this deficiency.

Work conducted at the Mayo Clinic has disclosed the characteristic syndrome of early thiamine deficiency in human subjects. Thiamine alone was restricted in the diet of some nurses and other volunteers. These subjects were under careful supervision as to food, and the urinary excretion of thiamine was also checked. Williams *et al* summarize their findings as follows:<sup>2</sup>

"The degree of disability induced by withdrawing thiamine from otherwise adequate diets of these persons was impressive. Fatigue appeared, interest in

complaints were heard. The heart sounds became faint, blood pressure fell, the pulse was irritable, and, as the duration of the restriction was prolonged, abnormalities in the action of the heart and mobility of the stomach and intestine could be recorded with special apparatus."

**Storage.** Thiamine cannot be stored to any extent in the animal body. Therefore, it is important that it be supplied regularly in the diet. In America the food supply is such that one is relatively sure to have enough thiamine to prevent beriberi but frequently not enough to ensure optimum health. Many a vague symptom of tiredness or chronic constipation may be aggravated by suboptimal intake of thiamine. Many animals, especially cattle and other ruminants, synthesize thiamine and other factors of the vitamin B complex by bacterial action in the alimentary tract.

**Properties of Thiamine.** Thiamine was first synthesized by R. R. Williams in 1936 as a climax to his 26 years of interest in the subject. The pure vitamin, usually sold as thiamine chloride, has a yeasty taste and odor and is water soluble. The natural and the synthetic products are identical in physiologic activity. In the dry state thiamine chloride is stable and is not easily destroyed by heat or oxidation. In water solution it is less stable, but more stable in acid than in neutral or alkaline medium.

**Measurement of Thiamine.** Thiamine content of foods may be given in milligrams or micrograms (1 mg = 1,000 mcg). Human requirements and potency of synthetic compounds or concentrates are expressed more often in milligrams.

Chemical and microbiologic methods of assay have largely replaced the older bio-assay methods, in which rats and pigeons were used as experimental animals. Now that these rapid methods of assay are available, extensive determinations of vitamin values of foods before and after storage and cooking are pos-

<sup>2</sup> Williams, R. D., *et al*. Arch. Int. Med. 66:785, 1940.

# THIAMINE

## In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

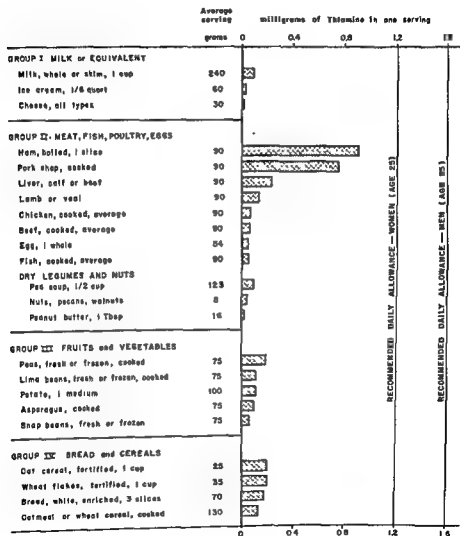


Figure 24

sible, and tables of food values are being revised to include such figures

**Human Requirements.** Adult human thiamine requirements tend to parallel

energy expenditure except for extremes of caloric intake. Thus the Food and Nutrition Board recommends from 1.3 to 1.6 mg. for men and from 1.0 to 1.2

mg for women, varying with age and the degree of activity, and relatively more during growth, pregnancy and lactation (See table, Chap 10.)

**Food Sources.** Thiamine is widely distributed in a large variety of animal and vegetable tissues, but there are few foods in which it occurs in abundance. This is strikingly emphasized in Figure 24, which shows the thiamine content of average servings of some common foods. It is evident that it takes several servings of even the better sources of thiamine to meet the recommended allowance. Therefore, enrichment of bread and cereals was instigated to make it easier for the average person to meet his requirement economically. Since bread constitutes about one fourth of the calories in the average American diet, and since only a very small fraction of the bread consumed in this country is made from whole wheat, the enrichment of white flour and bread with thiamine, riboflavin, niacin and iron was a logical step toward improving the level of nutrition in the United States. For more details about enriched flour and bread see Chapter 2.

Dry yeast and wheat germ are the richest natural sources of thiamine, but they are eaten only in relatively small amounts. Moist baker's yeast has only

cooking. If the cooking water is discarded, thiamine losses may be from 20 to 35 per cent.

In acid foods this vitamin is quite stable, but its activity is destroyed rapidly by sulfite, a fact which may explain the loss of thiamine in dried fruits, such as apricots and peaches, treated with sulfur.

Thiamine is well retained in cereals, since they generally are cooked slowly and at a moderate temperature and the cooking water is used. Baked products lose about 15 per cent of their original thiamine. Generally, the losses in cooking meat are greater than in other foods, ranging from 25 to 50 per cent of raw value. Foods stored in their natural condition lose remarkably little thiamine.

### Riboflavin (Vitamin B<sub>2</sub>)

**Physiologic Significance.** The second member of the B complex—riboflavin was synthesized in 1935. This factor is associated with normal growth and development, both in mammals and in birds. Like thiamine, riboflavin plays an important role in tissue respiration. It combines with phosphoric acid and protein to form enzymes that control some of the oxidations involved in the life processes of living cells.

Sebrell and co-workers have demonstrated that riboflavin deficiency in man may be characterized by pallor of the mucous membrane of the lips and splitting of the lips at the angles of the mouth, a condition known as cheilosis.

Riboflavin also plays an important role in relation to the eye. Ocular symptoms appear consistently on a low riboflavin diet and may precede all other manifestations. Eyestrain and fatigue, itching and burning, sensitivity to light and frontal headaches are the most frequent complaints. Cataracts have been observed in rats, mice, chickens and monkeys after prolonged deficiency of riboflavin. In man, riboflavin deficiency is apt to occur along with a deficiency of other members of the B complex.

Thiamine in cooking are dependent upon several factors, such as type of food, method of preparation, temperature, length of cooking and acidity or alkalinity of the cooking medium. Research in the losses of nutrients in food processing indicates that on the whole fresh vegetables retain thiamine well during cooking. From a trace to 15 per cent is dissolved in the cooking water, and up to 22 per cent may be destroyed by

# **THIAMINE** In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

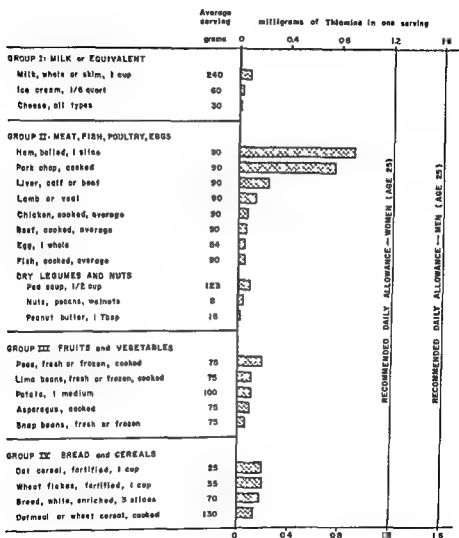


Figure 24

energy expenditure except for extremes of caloric intake. Thus the Food and Nutrition Board recommends from 1.3 to 1.6 mg. for men and from 1.0 to 1.2

**Storage.** There is no great storage capacity in the body for this vitamin. It has been suggested that under stress the body can conserve its store of riboflavin much better than it can conserve thiamine.

**Properties of Riboflavin.** Riboflavin in water solution has a yellow-green fluorescence. Although it is stable to heat, acid and oxidation, it is sensitive to alkali and in solution is easily destroyed by light. This vitamin always should be kept in dark bottles.

**Measurement of Riboflavin.** The only reliable unit for riboflavin is the metric weight of the pure substance. Human requirements for this vitamin are expressed in milligrams and the

a generous amount of milk. The addition of riboflavin in the enrichment of flour and bread has helped to raise the average intake.

**Stability in Foods.** Riboflavin is stable to ordinary cooking processes. Several investigators have made tests of the amount of destruction of riboflavin in milk, since it is an important source of this vitamin. Results of these studies show that the destruction by light is significant and likely to be more serious while in the bottle than has been left outside the door than during processing or cooking. One half or more of the riboflavin is lost in 24 hours if milk bottles are allowed to stand in sunlight. Paper cartons protect milk against such losses.

### Niacin (Nicotinic Acid)

ing the riboflavin content of foods, tissues, etc.

**Human Requirement.** Unlike thiamine, the human requirement for riboflavin does not seem to be related to energy expenditure. The Food and Nutrition Board recommends 1.8 mg. for men and 1.5 mg. for women, regardless of activity. The greater relative need for riboflavin during growth, pregnancy and lactation is reflected in the specific recommendations for these categories. (See table, Chap. 10.)

**Food Sources.** Riboflavin is widely distributed in animal and in vegetable foods, but only in small amounts in most of them. Organ meats, milk and green leafy vegetables are the outstanding food sources. This is strikingly emphasized in Figure 25, which shows the riboflavin content of average servings of some common foods and the contribution they make toward the day's requirement.

Dry yeast is the richest natural source, but this product is not generally consumed in large amounts. The average person is not apt to get an optimum amount of riboflavin unless he consumes

**Physiologic Significance.** When Elvehjem reported the spectacular cure of blacktongue in dogs by means of nicotinic acid, now known as niacin, the logical supposition was that a niacin deficiency might be the cause of pellagra in humans. Later, Spies and others demonstrated that most of the classic symptoms of pellagra were relieved by the administration of niacin. However, most persons suffering from pellagra have multiple deficiencies, and it has been found that certain symptoms formerly associated with the disease are not relieved until thiamine and riboflavin are supplied along with niacin. Earlier concepts of pellagra being related to a protein deficiency have been clarified by the discovery that one of the amino acids—tryptophane—is a precursor from which niacin may be synthesized in the animal body. Niacin is associated also with the enzyme systems in tissue respiration. Human pellagra is discussed fully in Chapter 20.

**Storage.** Little is known regarding the extent of storage of niacin in the body, but probably it is stored in the liver. It is eliminated in the urine largely as derivatives and, to a smaller extent,



# RIBOFLAVIN

## In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

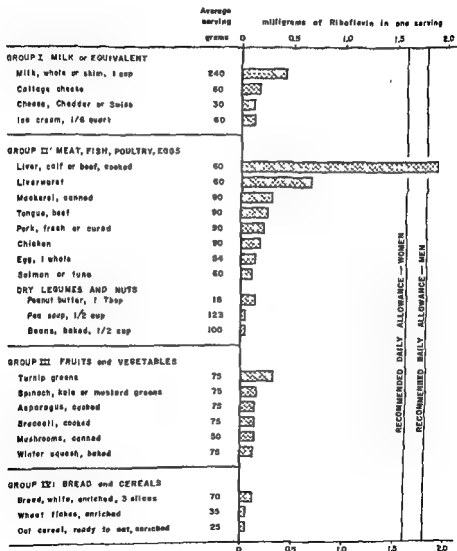


Figure 25



# **NIACIN** In Average Servings of Foods Classified in the Four Groups

Average  
serving  
grams      milligrams of Niacin in one serving

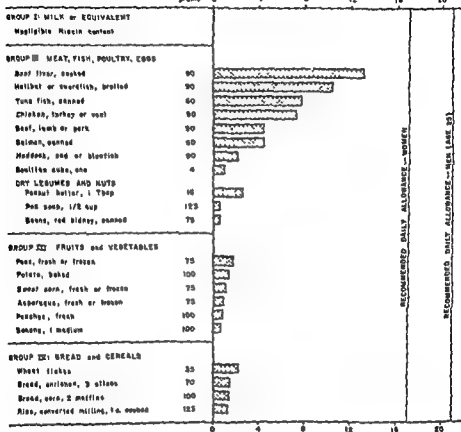


Figure 26

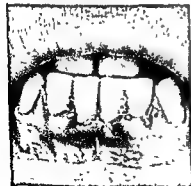
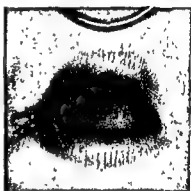
as free niacin. This diversity of end products has added to the difficulties of metabolic studies in niacin.

**Properties of Niacin.** Nicotinic acid has long been known as a simple organic

unlike some other members of the B complex, it is even stable to alkali. Nicotinic acid is commonly called niacin to avoid confusion because it has none of the physiologic properties of nicotine found in tobacco.

Two forms of this vitamin—niacin and niacinamide—have antipellagra activity. Therapeutic doses of niacin may cause temporary flushing or hot flashes, but

PLATE 2



## PLATE 2

*(Top, left)* Dermatitis of hands and neck in a case of pellagra. (New York)

*(Top, right)* Beefy red glossitis in a patient with multiple B complex deficiency. This is characteristic of pellagra or sprue. (New York)

*(Center, left)* Late chronic glossitis with complete papillary atrophy, probably resulting from prolonged B complex deficiency. (Newfoundland)

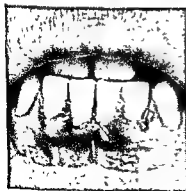
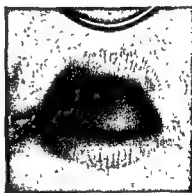
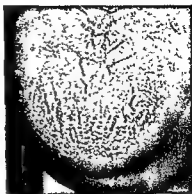
*(Center, right)* Angular stomatitis and dermatitis, probably due to a riboflavin deficiency (Grace A. Goldsmith, M D, Tulane University)

*(Bottom, left)* Advanced gingivitis marked swelling of papillae with loss of tissue and retraction of gums (Newfoundland) Nutritional factors most apt to be associated with such a condition in Newfoundland are ascorbic acid and some of the B vitamins

*(Bottom, right)* "Granulated" eyelids, or conjunctival follicular hypertrophy, is common in malnourished children. It begins with reddening and thickening of the lower lid (Florida)

(Plate 2 courtesy of Jolliffe, Norman, Tisdall, F. F., and Cannon, Paul R. Clinical Nutrition, New York, Hoeber, 1950)

PLATE 2





niacinamide does not produce this reaction

**Measurement of Niacin.** Niacin in foods and niacin requirement are both expressed in milligrams of the pure chemical substance.

Chemical and microbiologic methods

based upon the blacktongue-preventing value.

**Human Requirement.** Evidence of the human requirement for niacin is rather meager. Most of the clinical evidence is based upon doses of niacin effective in the cure of pellagrous symptoms, and it is well known that curative doses are usually much larger than preventive ones. It has been assumed that the niacin requirement may vary with energy expenditure, as seems to be true with thiamine. Niacin requirements can be established only in relation to the

intake of tryptophan, since this amino acid is a precursor of niacin in the body. Therefore, in the 1958 revision, the Food and Nutrition Board recommend in terms of "Niacin equivalents" a range of 21 to 18 mg. per day for men and 17 mg. for women (see Chap. 10).

**Food Sources.** In general, meat, poultry and fish are better sources of niacin than plant products, as emphasized in Figure 26, showing average servings. The use of meat drippings is recommended, because niacin is easily dissolved out of foods in cooking. Whole-grain and enriched products make an appreciable contribution. Fruits and vegetables other than mushrooms and legumes are insignificant sources of niacin. Milk and eggs are poor sources of preformed niacin but good sources of its precursor tryptophan.

#### Vitamins in Pattern Dietary for One Day

The contribution made by the Basic

VITAMINS IN PATTERN DIETARY FOR 1 DAY\*

FOOD GROUP	AMOUNT IN GAL.	HOUSEHOLD MEASURE	CALORIES	VITAMIN A I U.	THIAMINE Mg.	RIBOFLAVIN Mg.	NIACIN Mg.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg.
Milk or equivalent	488	2 c. (1 pint)	332	780	.18	.84	6	8
Egg	54	1 medium	77	550	.05	.14	..	..
Meat, fish, fowl	90	3-oz. serving	257	4,815	.24	.51	57	8
Vegetables:								
Potato, cooked	100	1 medium	83	20	.09	.03	10	14
Green, leafy or yellow	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	18	3,300	.06	.09	.5	21
Other	75	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	39	190	.07	.06	.7	10
Fruits:								
Citrus	100	1 serving	41	95	.06	.02	2	44
Other	100	1 serving	85	465	.03	.04	.8	5
Bread, white, enriched	70	3 slices	189	..	.18	.12	1.5	..
Cereal, whole grain or enriched	30	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. cooked or 1 oz. dry	80	..	.05	.03	.7	..
Butter or margarine	14	1 tablespoon	100	460	..	..	..	..
Totals			1,301	10,675	1.01	1.88	11.5	103

\* For basis of calculation see Basic Dietary Pattern, Chapter 18.



Dietary Pattern to the 5 vitamins for which we have specific recommendations is given in the accompanying table. Since the pattern dietary provides only 1,300 calories, the foods chosen to supplement these will also provide additional vitamins to bring the totals up to the recommended allowances.

### Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> Group

**Physiologic Significance.** Pyridoxine was identified in 1938 as a separate fraction of the B complex. Subsequently, vitamin B<sub>6</sub> proved to be a complex of 3 closely related chemical compounds—pyridoxine, pyridoxal, and pyridoxamine. It is a water-soluble vitamin that it is needed by most animals. A deficiency is associated with a peculiar type of anemia in some species, extreme muscular weakness, dermatitis and nervous disorders in others. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> can be synthesized by intestinal organisms in the rat, but whether or not this is true in humans has not been established.

The need for and the function of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> in humans has been demonstrated conclusively in both adults and infants. The accidental destruction of this factor in a canned-milk formula resulted in the occurrence of nervous irritability and convulsive seizures in young infants.<sup>8</sup> Rapid recovery followed injection of the vitamin, proving conclusively that the symptoms noted were a result of a deficiency.

The mechanism of the action of pyridoxine and its several derivatives has been studied extensively. It is associated closely with the synthesis and the metabolism of the amino acid tryptophan and with the metabolism of fats. It also functions in the enzyme system, which facilitates the utilization of amino acids by the tissue cells. Evidence available indicates that the daily intake of

pyridoxine should be from 1 to 2 mg, which amount is readily provided by an ordinary diet.

**Food Sources.** Of the animal foods, pork and the glandular meats are the richest, with lamb and veal relatively better than fish or beef muscle. Milk and eggs are only fair sources. Of the plant foods, legumes, potatoes, oatmeal, wheat germ and bananas are the richest.

content of foods is determined by a microbiologic method.

### Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>

**Physiologic Significance.** Ever since the discovery that liver was effective in the treatment of pernicious anemia research workers have been hunting for the active principle, or "extrinsic" factor, in liver. At first it seemed that folic acid was the answer, but it proved to be ineffective in relieving many of the symptoms of the disease. In 1948, a more active substance, B<sub>12</sub>, isolated from liver, was found to be effective in microgram quantities in the therapy of pernicious anemia (both uncomplicated and with neurologic involvement), as well as in other types of macrocytic anemias. Thus, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is probably identical with Castle's "extrinsic" factor. The oral effectiveness of it is enhanced by the "intrinsic" factor found in normal gastric juice, as was true of the active factor in liver extracts. The "intrinsic" factor appears to help in the absorption of the vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

The suggestion that vitamin B<sub>12</sub> may act as a growth factor for children as it does for poultry, pigs and ruminants has not been well confirmed. The natural

more, there is no evidence of a widespread deficiency of this factor among American children.

<sup>8</sup> Coursin, D. B.: J.A.M.A. 154:406, 1954.

**Properties of Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.** The structure of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> was established by Todd in 1955 as an extremely complex nitrogenous compound containing 1 atom of cobalt (cyanocobalamin). Cobalt, long known as a trace element essential for some animals, never before had been found in a natural organic compound.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is remarkably potent. It has a biologic activity 11,000 times that of a standard liver concentrate formerly used in the treatment of pernicious anemia. Thus B<sub>12</sub> appears to be one of the most potent biologically active substances known. It has been administered therapeutically in doses of from 0 to 150 mcg. Comparative effects with folic acid in other types of anemia require doses of from 20,000 to 50,000 mcg.

Food sources of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> have not been widely investigated, but on present evidence the content of liver and kidney is high, of milk, muscle meats and fish, medium.

### Folacin (Folic Acid)

**Physiologic Significance.** Folic acid was first recognized as a dietary essential for chicks in 1938 and later was shown to be a requirement of other animals. It is necessary for the hematopoietic (blood-forming) system in animals and man. Folacin was first used clinically in 1945 by Spies, who showed it to be

except on a quantitative basis. None of these factors is as effective as vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in the treatment of true pernicious anemia.

**Food Sources.** The presence of this group of factors in green leaves was the basis for the names folacin and folinic

presence in green leaves, these factors are found in liver, yeast, meats and fish, nuts, legumes and whole grains.

### Pantothenic Acid

**Physiologic Significance.** Pantothenic acid is another of the vitamin B complex group first recognized as essential for rats, dogs, pigs, pigeons and chicks. The complete synthesis of pantothenic acid was accomplished in 1940. A deficiency of pantothenic acid has been reported to cause emaciation, loss of hair and graying of hair in dark animals, ulcers of the intestinal tract and damage to several internal organs.

It is practically certain that pantothenic acid is required in human nutrition. It is a part of coenzyme A which plays a basic role in metabolism, in the utilization of carbohydrates, in the synthesis and the breakdown of fatty acids and sterols and in a number of other processes.

**Food Sources.** The name pantothenic, meaning widespread, indicates that the distribution of this vitamin is extensive. Figures on the pantothenic acid content of foods are limited in number. Yeast, liver, kidney, heart, salmon and eggs are the best sources. Other good sources are broccoli, mushrooms, pork, beef tongue, peanuts, wheat, rye and soybean flour. About one half of the pantothenic acid is lost in the milling of grains, which constitute an important, if not a rich, source of this factor in the average diet. Fruits are relatively poor sources of this vitamin.

Folic acid is transformed within the living organism to a biologically active form called the "citrovorum factor" (CF). A synthetic material of similar structure and properties is called folinic acid. The natural factor CF is about twice as active physiologically as the synthetic form. Since the CF or folinic acid seems to be the functional form of folacin, the physiologic significance of the three cannot be distinguished.

### Biotin

**Physiologic Significance.** Biotin, another member of the vitamin B complex, was first isolated in 1936 as a growth essential for yeast.

Previous to this date numerous workers had described factors called by various names but having similar anti-dermatitis properties. These several factors proved to be identical and are now known as biotin. Investigations have shown that a biotin deficiency can be produced in rats, rabbits and monkeys by feeding a substance called avidin found in raw egg white. Avidin inactivates biotin and is known as an antivitamin (see last paragraph in the chapter). Intestinal synthesis of biotin is common in most animals and possibly in man. There is some evidence, however, that biotin is needed by man because deficiency symptoms have been produced by feeding raw egg white.<sup>4</sup>

**Food Sources.** Few foods have been analyzed for this factor. It is abundant in liver and other organs, in yeast, mushrooms and peanuts. Lesser amounts occur in milk, eggs and certain vegetables and fruits.

### Other B Complex Factors

#### *Para-aminobenzoic Acid (PABA)*

Para-aminobenzoic acid was first recognized as a vitamin in 1941. As a vitamin it is necessary for growth and maintenance of normal fur in rats and for the prevention of the graying of fur in dark-colored rats. PABA seems to have a specific enzymatic function in the metabolism of certain amino acids. It is widely distributed in plant and animal foods and is especially high in liver and yeast.

#### *Inositol*

Inositol was first considered to be a vitamin in 1940, although it had been

known for decades as a carbohydrate substance similar to glucose chemically and with a sweet taste.

A deficiency of inositol was noted first by poor growth and loss of hair in experimental mice. The biochemical function seems to be related in some way to fat metabolism and the prevention of lipid deposits. The significance of inositol in human nutrition has not been established.

Food sources of inositol are fruits, vegetables, whole grain and organ meats. It occurs in plants as a phytin derivative, an organic phosphorus compound found in grains.

#### *Choline and Betaine*

The classification of these nitrogenous compounds as vitamins is questioned by some because they may be structural components of body cells rather than catalysts. Choline occurs in foods as well as in the body in relatively large amounts and has never been associated with a deficiency disease in man. The body can make choline from methionine, an amino acid, with the aid of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folacin. The action of choline, betaine or methionine in the prevention of "fatty livers" is known as lipotropic (fat moving). Choline is distributed widely in plant and animal tissues, and a deficiency is not likely in the average diet. Betaine is formed by the oxidation of choline.

Six or seven other fractions of the B complex have been described as essential for growth or protection against specific lesions in experimental animals, but as yet they have not been accepted generally. Nothing is known of their human significance. If an adequate intake of the better-known B complex vitamins is derived from natural sources, it can be assumed that those less well known are apt to be present. The confusion that accompanies the discovery of most new vitamins until their identity has been well established need not concern the average reader of this text.

<sup>4</sup> Sydenstricker, V. P., et al.: J.A.M.A. 118, 1199, 1942.

# WATER-SOLUBLE VITAMINS

Fractions of the Vitamin B Complex

Active Chemical Form	Ascorbic Acid	Thiamine (B <sub>1</sub> )	Riboflavin (B <sub>2</sub> )	Niacin and Nicotinamide (Pyridine) (B <sub>3</sub> )	Pantothenic Acid	Vitamin B <sub>6</sub> Pyridoxine, Pyridoxal, Pyridoxamine	Biotin, Folic Acid, Inositol, Choline, Para
Important food sources	Citrus fruits Strawberries Cantaloupe Tomatoes Sweet peppers Cabbage Potatoes Kale, parley Turnip greens	Pork Liver Organ meats Whole grains Enriched products Nuts Legumes Potatoes	Liver, milk Meat, eggs Enriched products Green, leafy vegetables tablets	Liver, poultry Meat, fish Whole grains Enriched products Legumes Mushrooms	Liver Organ meats Eggs, peanuts Legumes Mushrooms Salmon, whole grains	Pork Organ meats Legumes, seeds Grains Potatoes Bananas	Liver Organ meats Some in leafy vegetables
Concentrates or pharmaceutical sources	Synthetic	Yeast, wheat germ, extracts Synthetic	Yeast Liver concentrates Synthetic	Yeast Liver concentrates Synthetic	Yeast, wheat germ, liver concentrates	Yeast, wheat germ, liver concentrates	Yeast concentrates
Stability to cooking, drying, light, etc.	Unstable to heat and oxidation, except in acids Destroyed by drying and aging	Unstable to heat and oxidation	Stable to heat in cooking, to acids and oxidation Unstable to light	Stable to heat, light and oxidation, acid and alkali	Unstable to acid, alkali, heat and certain salts	Stable to heat, light and oxidation	Variable stability to heat, light, acid and alkali
Function: Essential in	Formation of intercellular substance, cellular oxidation and reduction	Carbohydrate metabolism, component of thymine coenzyme co-factors	Carbohydrate & amino acid metabolism, component of enzyme system	Carbohydrate & amino acid metabolism, component of enzyme system	Growth and health of all animals Active as co-enzyme A	Metabolism of fats and amino acids	Growth, cell respiration, blood formation, fat metabolism
Deficiency manifestations	Scurvy Sore mouth Sore and bleeding gums Weak-walled capillaries	Beriberi (man) Polyneuritis (animal) Poor appetite Fatigue Constipation	Eye sensitivity Cataract Cheilosis (man) Alopecia (rats)	Pellagra (man) Blacktongue (dogs)	Dermatitis (chick) Graying of hair (rats)	Acrodermatitis (rats) Microcytic anemia (dogs)	Stunted growth and/or metabolic disturbances
Adult human requirement	Men 75 mg Women 70 mg	Men 1.3-1.6 mg Women 1.0-1.2 mg	Men 1.9 mg. Women 1.6 mg	Niacin equivalent Men 12-21 mg. Women 17 mg	Not yet established	Probably 2-3 mg for adults	Unknown

## ANTIVITAMINS

Research in the chemical structure of the vitamins has led logically to knowledge of their characteristic reactions. In many instances a change in chemical composition, such as oxidation, completely destroys the vitamin activity. In other instances another compound may react with a vitamin in such a way as to inactivate it without actually destroying it. Such a substance is sometimes called an antivitamin. One example of an antivitamin is avidin, found in raw egg white. Avidin reacts with biotin to form a compound which cannot be absorbed from the intestinal tract. When experimental animals are fed raw egg white, a biotin deficiency develops. Another type of antivitamin is a compound so similar to the vitamin in structure that it starts to react as does the vitamin but cannot finish the reaction. Thus, the function which the vitamin is meant to perform cannot be accomplished.

Antibiotics and, possibly, some of the sulfa drugs used in the treatment of infections may be vitamin antagonists. Normally, bacteria in the intestinal tract have the ability to synthesize certain vitamins. When a sulfa drug or an antibiotic (a substance which destroys micro-organisms) is given orally, it may kill in the intestinal tract some of the bacteria capable of vitamin synthesis. Quite the opposite effect has been noted in some experiments on animals, in them, the antibiotics stimulate growth, possibly by destroying detrimental bacteria.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. From a historical point of view, which deficiency diseases were first to be recognized as such?
2. List properties and food sources of ascorbic acid. Why is this factor the most difficult to supply in army rations or for arctic expeditions?
3. How has the human need for ascorbic acid been studied? Why is a regular daily supply so essential?
4. How many fractions of the vitamin B complex are recognized today? Which ones are listed in the Recommended Dietary Allowances?
5. Which factors of the B complex are used in bread and flour enrichment? What other cereal products besides wheat are now enriched in certain localities?
6. Name the scientist largely responsible for isolating and synthesizing thiamine?
7. Do deficiencies of any of the B complex fractions still occur in the United States or other parts of the world?
8. Which vitamins are likely to be reduced in foods under following treatment:
  - (A) Bottled milk exposed to sunlight
  - (B) Cabbage kept overnight after shredding
  - (C) Vegetables to which soda has been added in cooking
  - (D) Potatoes mashed and reheated
9. What is meant by an antivitamin, and how is the vitamin activity destroyed or prevented?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Enzyme Action in Digestion*  
*Food Changes in the Mouth*  
*Digestion in the Stomach*  
*Digestion in the Small Intestine*  
*Absorption of Food*  
*Food Changes in the Large Intestine*  
*Factors Affecting Digestion*  
*Intermediary and Cell Metabolism*

## CHAPTER NINE

# Digestion, Absorption and Cell Metabolism

Digestion and absorption often are regarded as part of the total metabolism of food in the body. While this phase of the subject already may be familiar, a brief review of digestion cannot well be omitted from a study of nutrition

### ENZYME ACTION IN DIGESTION

Digestion is the process whereby foods are prepared by the various parts of the alimentary canal for absorption into the body proper. No food can function in nourishing the body tissues until it has been absorbed into the blood stream. Before food can be absorbed it must undergo a series of mechanical and chemical changes that constitute digestion. The chemical changes are brought about by a series of enzymes

stuffs and has no action on any other. Digestion experiments performed outside the body, although not exactly duplicating body conditions, have served to demonstrate the high degree of specificity as well as the great activity of enzymes.

Enzymes may digest from 500,000 to 4,000,000 times their own weight of the foodstuffs in question. The enzymes are unstable at high temperatures. Most of them function best at body temperature and under the specific conditions

ending -ase, for example, amylases

sucrase on sucrose, etc.

complex foodstuffs into simpler compounds. Enzyme action is specific; that is, a particular enzyme functions in the breakdown of a particular class of food-

### FOOD CHANGES IN THE MOUTH

The first change in food takes place in the mouth, where it is finely divided

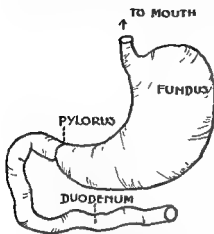


Fig 27. Stomach showing fundus where food is first held. Note the pylorus at the entrance to the duodenum.

through the process of mastication, softened, moistened and made ready for swallowing. It is moistened by becoming mixed with saliva, a fluid secreted by three pairs of glands: the submaxillary, located near the angle of the jaw; the sublingual, beneath the tongue; and the parotid, in the cheek. It has been estimated that these glands secrete about 1,500 cc. of saliva per day, a little more than 3 pints. The most active principle of the saliva is a salivary amylase—ptyalin—an enzyme that acts on starch. Ptyalin carries the digestion of the cooked starch through three or more dextrin stages down to the sugar, maltose. The possibility that maltose may be changed to glucose by a salivary maltase has been suggested by some workers. However, the complete change of starch to either maltose or glucose seldom occurs in the mouth, since food remains there only a few minutes.

Swallowing is a reflex act initiated by the muscles at the base of the tongue. The bolus of food is carried down the esophagus partly by gravity and partly by muscular action—a wave of relaxation followed by a wave of constriction

(peristalsis), the entire process taking only a few seconds.

### DIGESTION IN THE STOMACH

As the food enters the stomach it forms a mass in the fundus, the portion nearest the esophagus that serves as a reservoir for food. Here it is held for some time, variously estimated at from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 hours, during which time little or no free hydrochloric acid mixes with it. The glands producing the acid are situated in the middle portion of the stomach. The salivary digestion of starch proceeds until such time as the food mass, which is neutral or slightly alkaline upon entering the stomach, has become permeated with the acid gastric juice. The food mass in the fundus is reduced gradually in size as small portions move toward the middle portion of the stomach, where active gastric digestion proceeds.

Gastric juice is a clear liquid, the active principles of which are hydrochloric acid and the enzymes pepsin, rennin and a gastric lipase. From 2,000 to 2,500 cc. of gastric juice is secreted daily. Hydrochloric acid is present in the juice in about 0.4 or 0.5 per cent concentration when freshly secreted from the glands. Some of the acid is neutralized by alkaline fluids regurgitated from the small intestine. Therefore, the juice as it is obtained from the stomach contains about 0.2 per cent hydrochloric acid, which is diluted still further when food is present. In abnormal conditions the acid may be increased, reduced or absent. The acid probably serves to delay or inhibit the growth of some of the micro-organisms that find entrance into the stomach along with the water and the food. This inhibiting value must not be over-emphasized, because it is limited by the short time the food is in contact with the acid.

**Gastric Enzymes.** The gastric protease—pepsin—is formed by the action of hydrochloric acid on the inactive

STOMACH EVACUATION TIMES AND HIGHEST TOTAL ACIDITIES FOR VARIOUS ARTICLES OF DIET\*

ARTICLE OF DIET (100-Gm portions unless otherwise stated)	NUMBER OF OBSERVATIONS	HIGHEST TOTAL ACIDITY (average) (cc 0.1 N alkali to neutralize 100 cc. juice)	EVACUATION TIME HOURS AND MINUTES (average)
Beef and beef products	25	120	3 00
Bread and cereals	75	80	2 40
Cakes	29	90	3 00
Chicken	20	125	3 15
Egg and egg combinations	90	80	2 40
Fish	75	130	2 50
Fruits	68	90	2 00
Gelatin (fruit-juice preparations)	11	70	2 00
Guinea hen	2	110	4 00
Ice cream	7	105	3 15
Ices	4	65	2 35
Junket	4	65	2 25
Lamb and lamb products	14	135	3 00
Licorice	1	65	3 00
Milk			
Cow			
400 cc.	50	100	2 30
75 cc	8	45	1.15
Human			
150 cc	5	60	1 40
225 cc	2	90	2 25
Nuts (25-50 Gm.)	22	100	3 30
Orange-albumen (2 l)	2	85	2 20
Pies	29	90	2 30
Popcorn	3	60	1 30
Pork and pork products	31	120	3 15
Puddings	23	90	2 20
Sugars and candies	28	70	2 05
Turkey	2	140	3 30
Veal			
(A) Market	7	140	2 50
(B) "Bob"	7	110	3 20
Vegetables prepared in different ways	124	75	2 15

\* Hawk, P. B., Oser, B. L., and Summerson, W. H.: *Practical Physiological Chemistry*, Blakiston, New York, 1954.

form of the enzyme known as pepsinogen secreted by the gastric glands. Pepsin changes proteins into the simpler forms, proteoses and peptones. This peptic action is continued for a short time after the food mass reaches the intestine. Rarely, if ever, is the quantity of pepsin insufficient for the digestion of the proteins, but the amount of hydrochloric acid secreted may be

insufficient to activate the pepsinogen.

paring it for the further action of the protein-splitting enzymes in the intestine.

A gastric lipase may split the emulsified fats, such as are found in cream



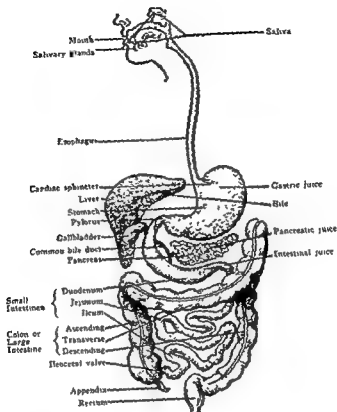


Fig 28 Diagram of digestive organs and juices, etc.

and in egg yolk, to fatty acids and glycerol.

### How Foods Leave the Stomach

Peristaltic waves, the rhythmic contractions of the alimentary tract, which originate at the transverse band near the middle of the stomach, carry the food on toward the pylorus, which in turn finally permits it to pass on into the intestinal tract. Water leaves the stomach rapidly, in  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour or less, partly through a relaxed pylorus and partly by absorption directly from the stomach into the blood stream. Foods leave more slowly, the emptying time of the stom-

ach varying with the individual and with the amount and the nature of the meal. Small amounts of food may leave the stomach in from 1 to 4 hours, while the last remnant of a full-sized meal may not have disappeared in 6 or 7 hours. Carbohydrates taken alone leave the stomach more rapidly than protein, and protein more rapidly than fat alone, but mixtures apparently leave more slowly than their single food constituents.

**The Pylorus.** When the food has become thoroughly mixed with the gastric juice, the pylorus, a strong sphincter muscle—gatekeeper of the stomach—

**SUMMARY OF DIGESTIVE JUICES AND THEIR ENZYMES**  
(See diagram on opposite page)

DIGESTIVE JUICE	ENZYMES PRESENT	REACTIONS PROMOTED
Salivary	Amylase (ptyalin)	Starch → maltose
Gastric	Protease (pepsin) Lipase Rennin Hydrochloric acid (not an enzyme)	Protein → proteoses and peptones Emulsified fats → fatty acids and glycerol Aids in the digestion of milk (casein)  Activates pepsinogen
Pancreatic	Amylase (amyllopsin) Protease (trypsin) Lipase (steapsin) Maltase	Starch → maltose Protein → peptides and amino acids Fats → fatty acids and glycerol Maltose → glucose
Intestinal	Peptidases  Disaccharidase {sucrase maltase lactase	Peptides → amino acids Sucrose (cane sugar) → glucose and fructose Maltose → glucose (2 molecules) Lactose → glucose and galactose
Bile		Aids in digestion and absorption of fats by emulsification

opens more frequently, and the walls of the stomach contract more vigorously so as to force the semifluid food material out into the duodenum. This material is known as chyme. The presence of acid in it causes the intestinal mucous membrane to secrete into the blood stream a substance called secretin, which in turn stimulates an outpouring of the pancreatic juice into the duodenum.

### DIGESTION IN THE SMALL INTESTINE

**Intestinal Juices.** In the small intestine the food is mixed with other digestive juices, which are capable of acting upon all three of the principal food constituents, namely, carbohydrates, fats and proteins. The pancreatic juice, secreted by the pancreas, and the bile, secreted by the liver, are poured into the duodenum, a short distance

the chyme. They are all alkaline, and their first action is to neutralize the hydrochloric acid and other acids of the food mass.

**Pancreatic Enzymes in the Intestines.** The enzymes in the pancreatic juice include a protease (trypsin), an amylase (amyllopsin), a lipase (steapsin) and maltase. Trypsin, activated by the intestinal juice, continues the digestion of proteoses and peptones or initiates the breakdown of proteins that may have escaped peptic digestion in the stomach. Trypsin is the most powerful proteolytic enzyme and may carry the splitting process to the amino acid stage.

Amylopsin from the pancreas continues the digestion of any starches that may not have been carried to the maltose stage by the action of ptyalin in the saliva. Even raw starches may be digested by this enzyme. The pancreatic maltase acts on maltose, changing it into glucose.

**Bile and Lipase.** The bile secreted by the liver is stored temporarily in the gallbladder until the flow of bile into

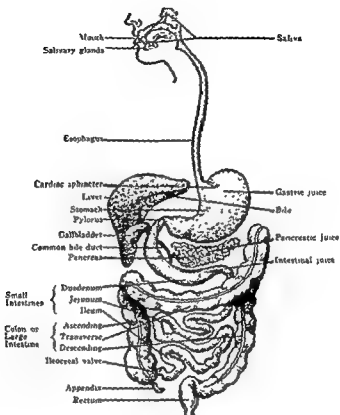


Fig. 28. Diagram of digestive organs and juices, etc.

and in egg yolk, to fatty acids and glycerol

### How Foods Leave the Stomach

Peristaltic waves, the rhythmic contractions of the alimentary tract, which originate at the transverse band near the middle of the stomach, carry the food on toward the pylorus, which in turn finally permits it to pass on into the intestinal tract. Water leaves the stomach rapidly, in  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour or less, partly through a relaxed pylorus and partly by absorption directly from the stomach into the blood stream. Foods leave more slowly, the emptying time of the stom-

ach varying with the individual and with the amount and the nature of the meal. Small amounts of food may leave the stomach in from 1 to 4 hours, while the last remnant of a full-sized meal may not have disappeared in 6 or 7 hours. Carbohydrates taken alone leave the stomach more rapidly than protein, and protein more rapidly than fat alone, but mixtures apparently leave more slowly than their single food constituents.

**The Pylorus.** When the food has become thoroughly mixed with the gastric juice, the pylorus, a strong sphincter muscle—gatekeeper of the stomach—

lymph capillaries and then forced by muscular contraction of the villi on into the larger blood and lymph vessels of the intestinal wall

**Selective Absorption.** The products of protein digestion, peptides and amino acids, with the single sugars, pass through the walls of the villi into the minute blood capillaries, which in turn carry these absorption products into the portal vein and thence to the liver.

Products of fat digestion may be absorbed by either the lacteals, which are part of the lymphatic system, or by the blood capillaries, which transport nutrients direct to the portal vein and the liver. During the passage through the intestinal wall the fatty acids and glycerol may unite to form neutral fat, may combine with phosphates to form phospholipids, or may form cholesterol esters or lipoproteins. The finely emulsified fat which is not split by enzyme action must be absorbed via the lacteals. The lymph carries these products via the thoracic duct, thence slowly into the blood stream in the left subclavian vein. The portal blood carries its absorbed products to the liver for redistribution through the systemic circulation.

Passage of the food along the intestinal tract proceeds with regularity and rhythm. The acid chyme first ejected through the pylorus remains in the duodenum until a mass accumulates. Segmentation of the food mass is then brought about by contractions of non-consecutive rings of muscle at different portions of the intestinal tract. These contractions take place first at one point and then at another, thus bringing about a thorough mixing of the food with the digestive juices and aiding in absorption. Contraction and segmentation cease periodically, and the small masses of food material are carried forward by peristalsis. The food again masses together, accumulating in the lower portion of the small intestine, the ileum. Here remnants of undigested foods are

allowed longer contact with the digestive juices, digestion being practically completed at this point. What remains of the semifluid mass is then passed on into the large intestine

**The Ileocecal Valve.** Between the small and the large intestine there is another gate, similar in function to the pylorus of the stomach, known as the ileocecal valve. The food mass passes through the ileocecal valve into the large intestine, where further absorption of fluid may take place. If this valve is unpaired, it rarely allows any of the food mass to pass back again into the small intestine, in spite of antiperistalsis in the cecum.

### FOOD CHANGES IN THE LARGE INTESTINE

The large intestine does not secrete any enzymes, although digestion continues here, as salivary digestion continues in the stomach due to digestive juices already mixed with the food. The large intestine fills rather slowly, and in it the food mass remains for several hours, sometimes a day or more. Antiperistalsis, a reverse movement, as well as peristalsis, takes place in the anterior portion of the large intestine. This antiperistaltic movement permits the food to come into close contact with the walls of the large intestine, thus favoring absorption of water. During this time water is absorbed from the mass which gradually takes form and is finally ejected from the body as feces. The feces consist chiefly of undigested and indigestible-food materials, with some digestive juices, bacteria and cellular debris of the body tissues.

The control of water balance in the colon is extremely important, because both constipation and diarrhea are essentially problems of disturbed water balance. During a day there is secreted into the digestive tract some 8,500 cc. of fluid, most of which is reabsorbed as a carrier of dissolved-food constituents. Complex osmotic pressure relations

the intestine is stimulated by the presence of food in the gut.

Fats must be emulsified first into microscopic globules before they can be digested or absorbed. The bile salts in the bile are chiefly responsible for this emulsifying action, which greatly increases the surface area of the fats exposed to enzyme action. The steapsin then may split a large portion of the fat to fatty acid and glycerol. The

bile is essential for both the digestion and the absorption of fats and the fat-soluble vitamins.

**Intestinal Enzymes.** The intestinal juice contains several peptidases—enzymes—that carry the hydrolysis of partially digested protein to completion, breaking proteoses and peptides to amino acids. The intestinal juice completes the digestion of the carbohydrates by means of the three specific enzymes—sucrase, maltase and lactase—that split respectively sucrose (cane sugar), maltose and lactose (milk

sugar) into the single sugars (glucose, fructose and galactose).

The table on page 105 shows the action of the various digestive juices upon the food constituents.

The diagram of the digestive organs should be studied along with the table on page 103.

### ABSORPTION OF FOOD

With the exception of a small amount of water, no absorption of food takes place from the mouth and almost none from the stomach. By far the greater

increased by numerous fingerlike projections or processes called villi, which extend into the food mass. Each tiny villus is provided with numerous capillaries, an artery and a vein, and in the center is a lymph space called a lacteal or chyle vessel, which is a part of the lymphatic system (Fig. 29). Each villus has a muscular structure that permits expansion and contraction. Digested food material is absorbed through the walls of the villi into the blood or the



ssels  
layer  
ssels  
erant

cellulose is advantageous, because of its laxative action in the colon. The cellulose in foods, given as fiber in most food tables, is discussed more fully in Chapter 2, and its use in intestinal diseases is considered in Chapter 24.

AVERAGE COEFFICIENTS OF  
DIGESTIBILITY OF FOODS WHEN  
USED IN MIXED DIET  
(CELLULOSE CONTENT NOT  
INCLUDED)

	PROTEIN per cent	FAT per cent	CARBO- HYDRATE per cent
Animal foods	97	95	98
Cereals and breadstuffs	85	90	98
Dried legumes	78	90	97
Vegetables	83	90	95
Fruits	■	90	90
Total food of average mixed diet	92	95	98

The above table shows the completeness of digestion of various classes of foods as determined by Atwater,<sup>2</sup> and these figures are still used in calculations.<sup>3</sup>

## INTERMEDIARY AND CELL METABOLISM

A study of digestion and absorption of foods would not be complete without some mention of the fate of the absorbed nutrients. The transport of the nutrients by the blood stream, the storage of surplus nutrients, metabolism in the cells and the role played by water in the body are all part of the picture. Each of these subjects warrants more study than the brief comments possible here.

### Transport and Storage of Nutrients

All of the absorbed nutrients are car-

ried to the tissues by the blood stream. All excess nutrients and end products of metabolism are carried from the tissues by the blood.

The liver and the muscles store part of the sugar as glycogen, and another part may be changed to fat and along with excess fat be stored in the body as adipose tissue. Amino acids, the end products of protein digestion, are allowed to proceed to the tissues where needed. If they are in excess of the needs of the tissues for building or repairs, they are split into two parts. One portion contains nitrogen, most of which is excreted as urea, the other portion, some of which is similar to carbohydrate, is utilized as such. The metabolism of each food constituent has been discussed in more detail in the respective chapters.

### Water in Relation to Body Function

Water is not changed in any way by the digestive juices, but it is a necessary constituent of them and of every cell in the body. Water is even more essential to life than food. Man may live weeks without food, but only days without water. Two thirds of the body weight is water. About 4½ pints is eliminated every day, carrying waste material with it. This amount must be replaced in form of fluids or foods containing water.

Although some water (about ½ pint) is formed within the body as an end product of food metabolism, from 8 to 8 glasses of water or beverages should be drunk daily in order to make sure that a sufficient amount of water is available for bodily functions.

Water is absorbed rapidly from the digestive tract into the blood and the lymph. Enough water is retained with food residues in the colon to produce a soft stool. Water taken before breakfast in the morning may act as a mild laxative. The laxative effect may be increased by taking water plus a small amount of salt, which delays absorption and tends to retain the water in the intestine.

<sup>2</sup> Atwater, W. O. Farmers' Bulletin No. 1029, U. S. Dept. of Agriculture.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., p. 10.

determine how much is absorbed and how much left with the intestinal residue. Numerous environmental and psychic factors may interfere with the optimum amount of water being retained for normal stool formation and evacuation. According to Gauss,<sup>1</sup> it is one function of the bile to control the amount of water in the colon contents. Whatever the controlling mechanism may be, there is much yet to be learned about the functioning of the colon and the process of defecation.

### FACTORS AFFECTING DIGESTION

to the completeness of digestion. Ease of digestion is a much more indefinite term than completeness. Clinically, the rate of digestion is important, however, it has been shown that food that leaves the stomach and is passed on to the intestinal tract undigested may in the end be as completely digested and absorbed as food that is wholly digested in a shorter time.

The term *digestibility*, as ordinarily

Some foods—for example, sugar—may be completely digested, but most foods leave some residue. It was found by Atwater, and later by other scientists, that more than 90 per cent of the food

digestion. The kind of food and the method of preparation also may affect this condition. Food to which one is unaccustomed, particularly if it is unattractive, is often digested with difficulty. Thus, even when food is scarce and people are hungry, unfamiliar foods are not accepted readily.

The fineness of division of food is another factor that favors ease of digestion. The fineness of division may be brought about by mechanical means during preparation, by mashing the food or by forcing it through a sieve or a strainer, or, when eating, by thorough

quickly than more solid ones, chiefly because the digestive juices come in contact more quickly with the whole of the substances to be digested. The total quantity of food material taken at one time is also significant. For this reason it is imperative that persons suffering from acute illness should be fed small amounts at frequent intervals, rather than large amounts at regular meal hours.

Intestinal motility, the vigor of the peristaltic muscular action, determines the speed with which food masses and residue are moved along the alimentary canal. This motility may be excessive when there is inflammation or infection, and the result is diarrhea. Constipation may result from sluggish motility, which condition may be due to poor muscle tone. Vitamin B complex and a reasonable amount of bulk tend to promote normal motility.

Cellulose in all vegetable foods slows digestion, particularly of the proteins. It has been demonstrated that dry legumes (peas, beans and lentils) have coefficients of protein digestibility of 78 per cent, but when free of cellulose their coefficient of digestibility for protein is about as high as for animal foods, 97 per cent. However, a limited amount of

and fear, which may greatly retard digestion. On the other hand, joy and mirth are conducive to more normal

<sup>1</sup> Gauss, Harry. *Am J Digest. Dis* 12 224, 1945

cellulose is advantageous, because of its laxative action in the colon. The cellulose in foods is as good as that in meat food.

AVERAGE COEFFICIENTS OF  
DIGESTIBILITY OF FOODS WHEN  
USED IN MIXED DIET  
(CELLULOSE CONTENT NOT  
INCLUDED)

	PROTEIN per cent	FAT per cent	CARBO- HYDRATE per cent
Animal foods	97	95	98
Cereals and breadstuffs	85	90	98
Dried legumes	78	90	97
Vegetables	83	90	95
Fruits	85	90	90
Total food of average mixed diet	92	95	98

The above table shows the completeness of digestion of various classes of foods as determined by Atwater,<sup>2</sup> and these figures are still used in calculations.<sup>3</sup>

### INTERMEDIARY AND CELL METABOLISM

A study of digestion and absorption of foods would not be complete without some mention of the fate of the absorbed nutrients. The transport of the nutrients by the blood

by the blood.

The liver and the muscles store part of the sugar as glycogen, and another part may be changed to fat and along with excess fat be stored in the body as adipose tissue. Amino acids, the end products of protein digestion, are allowed to proceed to the tissues where needed. If they are in excess of the needs of the tissues for building or repairs, they are split into two parts. One portion contains nitrogen, most of which is excreted as urea, the other portion, some of which is similar to carbohydrate, is utilized as such. The metabolism of each food constituent has been discussed in more detail in the respective chapters.

### Water in Relation to Body Function

Water is not changed in any way by the digestive juices, but it is a necessary constituent of them and of every cell in the body. Water is even more essential to life than food. Man may live weeks without food, but only days without water. Two thirds of the body weight is water. About 4½ pints is eliminated every day, carrying waste material with it. This amount must be replaced in form of fluids or foods containing water.

Although some water (about ½ pint) is formed within the body as an end product of food metabolism, from 6 to 8 glasses of water or beverages should be drunk daily in order to make sure that a sufficient amount of water is available for bodily functions.

Water is absorbed rapidly from the digestive tract into the blood and the lymph. Enough water is retained with food residues in the colon to produce a soft stool. Water taken before breakfast in the morning may act as a mild laxative. The laxative effect may be increased by taking water plus a small amount of salt, which delays absorption and tends to retain the water in the intestine.

subjects warrants more study than the brief comments possible here.

### Transport and Storage of Nutrients

All of the absorbed nutrients are car-

<sup>2</sup> Atwater, W. O.: Farmers' Bulletin No. 142, U. S. Department of Agriculture, 1902.

<sup>3</sup> Merrill, A. L., and Watts, B. K.: Energy Value of Foods, Agricultural Handbook No. 74, 1935.



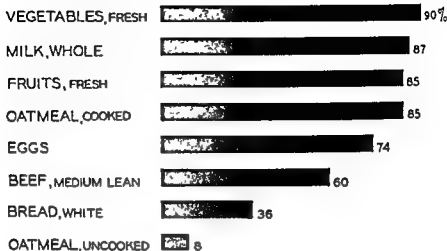


Fig. 30. Percentage of water in common foods.

**Water in Body Fluids.** Water is essential as a component part of blood, lymph and the secretions of the body, as well as of the more solid tissues. Water is the universal medium in which the various chemical changes of the body take place. As a carrier it aids in digestion, absorption, circulation and excretion, it is essential in the regulation of body temperature, it plays an important part in the mechanical functions, such as lubrication of joints and movement of the viscera in the abdominal cavity. Moisture is necessary for the functioning of every organ in the body. Waste products from the tissues are transferred to the blood in watery solutions, they are carried by the blood, which is about 80 per cent water; they are excreted via the kidneys in the urine, which is about 97 per cent water (Fig. 31).

The same water is reutilized many times and for different purposes. Approximately 8 to 9 quarts (8,500 cc.) of digestive juices are produced and secreted by glands in 24 hours (Fig. 28). The water which carries the active enzymes into the digestive tract is used

during absorption to carry the digested nutrients into the blood and the lymph. Over 4 quarts (4,000 cc.) of water is always circulating in the blood stream. Each time a nutrient moves to or from a cell, water is the carrier. It is estimated that some 50 quarts of water cross cell membranes in 1 day. In the kidney again large volumes of water carry the dissolved waste material through the capsule of the uriniferous tubules, but in passing through the tubules most of the water with some of its useful dissolved material is reabsorbed. The urine which is excreted is the concentrated water solution of the waste products.

**Dehydration.** The fatal results of extreme thirst and dehydration (loss of water) further emphasize the importance of water. The German physiologist Rubner states that we can lose all our reserve glycogen, all reserve fat and about one half of the body protein without great danger, but that a loss of 10 per cent of the body water is serious and from 20 to 22 per cent loss is fatal. Thirst is nature's device for ensuring an adequate water intake. Thirst is a sensation of dryness at the root of the tongue

# THE STORY OF WATER IN THE BODY

Water functions in every tissue of the body, constitutes 70% of body weight,  $\frac{1}{2}$  in muscles  $\frac{2}{3}$  intracellular —  $\frac{1}{3}$  extracellular

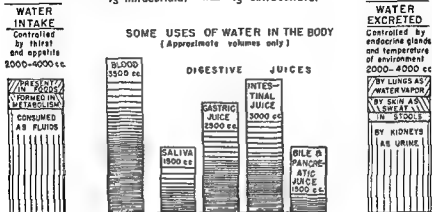


Figure 31

and the back part of the throat. Normally, thirst is experienced when breathing dry air, eating dry food, after exercise or after prolonged speaking or singing. Any circumstance that tends to increase water elimination, such as profuse sweating, hemorrhage, diarrhea or increased volume of urine, as in diabetes, will create intense thirst. The use of common salt to stimulate thirst and increase water consumption has already been discussed in Chapter 6.

## Cell Metabolism

The metabolic processes within the

Cells cannot grow and multiply and perform their functions unless the necessary constituents are brought to them at all times. The cell is the vital unit of the body, and all these myriads of cell units work together as an organized whole. The cells are the organized

units necessary for life, they have become specialized as to function in the higher animals, and every cell in the body is dependent upon many others for existence, i.e., for foods ready for use and for special substances such as hormones and growth substances. The cells may be compared with individuals in human society; each does its own job but depends upon others for existence.

thesis of specific types of protoplasm for each cell, for storage and release of energy, for maintenance of blood constituents and for the elaboration of hormones and enzymes.

The composition of the cells and the tissues of the body is remarkably constant, yet there is continual change or exchange of constituents. This is known as a state of dynamic equilibrium. Even the cells of such stable structures as

teeth and bone are in a state of dynamic equilibrium. Conclusive proof of this has come from the use of tagged elements that could be incorporated in food fed to experimental animals and followed to their ultimate destination in the body tissues. Heavy hydrogen and heavy carbon have molecular weights one more than the usual elements and can be detected by suitable instruments even in living tissue. Physiologically, they behave the same as the regular elements as constituents of organic compounds in the body. Radioactive minerals, such as iron, iodine, calcium and phosphorus, have been used as tagged elements in the study of mineral metabolism and have verified the theory that mineral compounds, both in hard and in soft tissues, are in a constant state of change.

Thus, for all cell metabolism it is obvious that the necessary materials must be available from the blood and the lymph, and must be replenished continually

constituents. The body is frugal indeed regarding the waste of essential materials and provides for their utilization again and again, as in the case of iron

the first step in the chain of events that must take place before food becomes body tissue.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Draw a diagram of the digestive tract and state the function of each part.
2. Name the digestive enzymes, the

site of production, the action of each and the end products of digestion.

3. Digestive enzymes function best at body temperature. How would freezing or boiling temperatures affect enzyme action?

4. If you desired to demonstrate a proteolytic enzyme that would attack protein and break it all the way to amino acid, which would you choose?

5. If gastric digestion is slow or incomplete, would it be likely to be due to insufficient pepsin, rennin or hydrochloric acid?

6. Why would a diet of bread and vegetables create the sensation of hunger more than an equal number of calories with some protein and fat present?

7. Certain food faddists caution against eating starches and protein at the same meal. Is there any evidence from the way the digestive enzymes work that would refute this theory?

8. In a beverage containing milk, sucrose, glucose, salt, iron and vitamins, which factors would need digestion before absorption?

9. If the flow of bile is insufficient, which enzymatic action is most likely to be hindered?

10. If the cecum is full, will the resulting pressure on the valve tend to keep it open or closed? Explain your answer.

11. If water in the body is not sufficient for metabolic needs, what makes a person aware of this particular need?

12. Compare the rate of absorption of fats and sugars. How would this difference affect the rate at which these foodstuffs would reach the blood and the tissues?

13. What is meant by a state of dynamic equilibrium in the body? What new research device has helped to prove this theory?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Estimation of Human Dietary Needs*  
*Caloric Allowances*  
*Interpretation and Use of Tables*  
*Meal Planning To Fit Personal and Family Needs*  
*Menus and Market Order*  
*Economy Hints*  
*Avoid Food Fads and Fallacies*

## CHAPTER TEN

# Meal Planning To Meet Recommended Allowances

In the preceding chapters we have discussed the various nutrients needed by our bodies and have referred frequently to the Recommended Dietary Allowances. In this chapter we shall make application of the information gained in the preceding chapters. The establishment of a yardstick of good nutrition by which to measure progress toward that goal has long been recognized by scientists as desirable. With such a goal set for some of the most essential nutrients it is possible to interpret this goal in terms of common foods.

### ESTIMATION OF HUMAN DIETARY NEEDS

The idea of setting up standards for planning family meals and food supplies is not new. Some early estimates were based upon what people actually were eating, not upon what they needed.

Even after needs were recognized, many years had to elapse before methods were developed for quantitative assays. Criteria were gradually de-

veloped for recognizing early deficiencies and distinguishing between minimum requirements and optimum allowances desirable. The student should appreciate the decades of labor by thousands of research workers that have made possible the present-day estimates of dietary recommendations.

In 1933 some attempts were made to define human requirements for specific nutrients, first by the British Medical Association and later by Stiebeling and co-workers in the United States Department of Agriculture. The standards formulated by the League of Nations Health Committee in 1935 were the first to represent group opinion and were based on the limited information then available.

When the Food and Nutrition Board was appointed by the National Research Council in 1940, it undertook as one of its most important projects the formulation of a set of figures for human requirements in terms of specific nutrients. As a result of long and careful consideration, Recommended Dietary Allowances

were first published in 1941. Since that date they have been revised several times as new research data became available.<sup>1</sup> The objectives are stated as follows in the 1958 edition:

These allowances are designed to maintain good nutrition in healthy persons in the United States under current conditions of living and to cover nearly all variations of requirements for nutrients in the population at large. They are meant to afford a margin of sufficiency above minimal requirements and are therefore planned to provide a

ease or for nutrient depletion in severely depleted persons. On the other hand,

body, in the range of requirement among individuals, in the difficulty of assessing precise requirements, and in possible hazards of excessive intake of some nutrients.

Patterns of food consumption in the United States permit ready adaptation and compliance with the recommendations. . . . It should be realized, however, that in using this standard for evaluation of diets, it cannot be assumed that food practices are necessarily poor or malnutrition exists because these goals of nutrient intake are not completely met.

The British and the Canadian committees working independently arrived at somewhat lower figures for certain nutrients than the United States and a slightly different philosophy of interpretation. Thus, the British recom-

mendations are believed to be sufficient to maintain good nutrition for the average individual rather than "higher than average" as in the United States. The Canadian standard represents a minimum for each nutrient or a probable physiologic requirement below which maintenance of health could not be assumed.

The Recommended Dietary Allowances as adopted by the U. S. Food and Nutrition Board are expressed in nutrients rather than specific foods because these goals can be attained from a variety of different food patterns. The sample menus given on pages 120 and 121 show two patterns of eating which approximate the recommended allowances. Many cultural patterns exist in the United States and other countries, and it would be enlightening for students from other cultures to see how well their dietary pattern could serve to provide the nutrients recommended and what minor changes might be needed for improvement.

### CALORIC ALLOWANCES

The Food and Nutrition Board in the United States has used a system similar to that of the FAO for estimating caloric requirements. Thus, the reference man and woman are defined as 25 years old, living in a temperate climate and weighing 70 and 58 Kg. (154 & 128 lbs.), respectively:

These standard persons are presumed to be fairly active physically, being neither sedentary nor engaged in hard physical labor as a major occupation. The man could be employed in light industrial work; he could be a delivery man, a painter, an outdoor salesman, or a farmer except in the periods of heaviest farm work. The woman could be employed at bench work in a factory, she could be a shop saleswoman, or an active homemaker and mother. Both man and woman are presumed to engage in a moderate amount of outdoor activity and to lead a vigorous healthy life. The allowances of 3,200 and 2,300

<sup>1</sup> Recommended Dietary Allowances, Revised 1958 National Research Council, Washington, D. C., Pub. 589.

**CALORIE ALLOWANCES FOR INDIVIDUALS OF VARIOUS BODY WEIGHTS AND AGE**  
(At mean environmental temperature of 20° C and assuming moderate physical activity)

MEN					WOMEN				
DESIRABLE WEIGHT		CALORIE ALLOWANCES			DESIRABLE WEIGHT		CALORIE ALLOWANCES		
Kg	Lbs	25 Yrs	45 Yrs	65 Yrs	Kg	Lbs	25 Yrs	45 Yrs	65 Yrs.
50	110	2,500	2,350	1,950	40	88	1,750	1,650	1,400
55	121	2,700	2,550	2,150	45	99	1,900	1,800	1,500
60	132	2,850	2,700	2,250	50	110	2,050	1,950	1,600
65	143	3,000	2,800	2,350	55	121	2,200	2,050	1,750
70	154	3,200	3,000	2,550	58	128	2,300	2,200	1,800
75	165	3,400	3,200	2,700	60	132	2,350	2,200	1,850
80	176	3,550	3,350	2,800	65	143	2,500	2,350	2,000
85	187	3,700	3,500	2,900	70	154	2,600	2,450	2,050
					75	165	2,750	2,600	2,150

calories, respectively, appear to be satisfactory for this "standard" man and "standard" woman. Adjustments on the basis of described characteristics for age, body size, climate, and activity are indicated when individuals differ from the standard man and woman.

The above table gives the approximate caloric needs adjusted to age and desirable weight for 3 age groups.

Adjustment for activity is not simple. The adult allowances assume a moderate degree of activity. For extreme degrees of activity the allowance may be increased as much as 50 per cent. For truly sedentary people the allowance must be reduced, perhaps as much as 25 per cent. The table of energy expenditures for different conditions of muscular activity given on page 50 provides a basis for approximating the caloric needs.

For a more extensive discussion of the scientific basis for calculating caloric requirements and for other nutrients listed

drop in mean external temperature from the 20° C. as given. This adjustment is intended for differences in mean annual temperature but may serve also for seasonal differences.

Adjustment of calories for pregnancy and lactation, and for children and adolescents, are given in the tabular recommendations.

### INTERPRETATION AND USE OF TABLES

The specific nutrients included in the table of allowances and the quantities of each specified were chosen by experts in the field and are the most nearly accurate estimates possible at the date of publication.

Nutrients not listed in the tabulation are those which are apt to be present in adequate amounts in the usual dietary, or they are trace elements or vitamins for which there are insufficient data to serve as a basis for recommendation. These have been discussed in the respective chapters dealing with specific nutrients.

The recommended allowances for adults are given in terms of a reference man and reference woman as described in the section on calories. Adjustment should be made for persons who differ from the standard in body size, age or

■ per cent increase for every 10° C.

**FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD, NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL. RECOMMENDED DAILY DIETARY ALLOWANCES, REVISED 1958\***  
**DESIGNED FOR THE MAINTENANCE OF GOOD NUTRITION OF HEALTHY PERSONS IN THE U.S.A.**  
 (Allowances are intended for persons normally active in a temperate climate.)

	Age (Yrs.)	Weight Kg (Lbs.)	Height Cm (In.)	Calories	Prot. (Gm.)	Calc. (Gm.)	Iron (Mg.)	Vit. A (IU.)	Thiam. (Mg.)	Ribo. (Mg.)	Niacin (Mg.)	Ascorbic (Mg.)	Vit. D (IU.)
Men	25	70 (154)	175 (69)	3,200†	70	0.8	10	5,000	1.0	1.8	21	75	
	45	70 (154)	175 (69)	3,000	70	0.8	10	5,000	1.5	1.8	21	75	
	65	70 (154)	175 (69)	2,550	70	0.8	10	5,000	1.3	1.8	18	75	
Women	25	58 (128)	163 (64)	2,300	58	0.8	12	5,000	1.2	1.5	17	70	
	45	58 (128)	163 (64)	2,200	58	0.8	12	5,000	1.1	1.5	17	70	
	65	58 (128)	163 (64)	1,800	58	0.8	12	5,000	1.0	1.5	17	70	
Infant†	Pregnant (second half)			+ 300	+ 20	1.5	15	6,000	1.3	2.0	+ 3	100	400
	Lactating (850 ml. daily)			+ 1,000	+ 40	2.0	15	8,000	1.7	2.5	+ 2	150	400
	0-1 mo ‡			Kg × 120	†	0.6	5	1,500	0.4	0.5	6*	30	400
Children	1-6 mos	8 (13)	60 (24)		†	0.6	7	1,500	0.5	0.8	7	30	400
	7-12 mos	9 (20)	70 (28)										
	1-3	12 (27)	87 (34)	1,300	40	1.0	7	2,000	0.7	1.0	8	35	400
Boys	4-6	18 (40)	109 (43)	1,700	50	1.0	8	2,500	0.8	1.3	11	50	400
	7-9	27 (60)	129 (51)	2,100	60	1.0	10	3,500	1.1	1.5	14	60	400
	10-12	36 (79)	144 (57)	2,500	70	1.2	12	4,500	1.3	1.8	17	75	400
Girls	13-15	46 (108)	163 (64)	3,100	85	1.4	15	5,000	1.8	2.1	21	90	400
	16-19	51 (139)	175 (69)	3,600	100	1.4	15	5,000	1.8	2.5	25	100	400
	19-25	60 (138)	160 (63)	2,600	80	1.3	15	5,000	1.3	2.0	17	80	400
	16-19	54 (120)	162 (64)	2,400	75	1.3	15	5,000	1.2	1.9	16	80	400

\* The allowance levels are intended to cover individual variations among most normal persons as they live in the United States under usual environmental stresses. The recommended allowances can be attained with a variety of common foods, providing other nutrients for which human requirements have been less well defined.

† Calorie allowances apply to individuals usually engaged in moderate physical activity. For office workers or others in sedentary occupations they are excessive. Adjustments must be made for variations in body size, age, physical activity and environmental temperature.

‡ The Board recognizes that human milk is the natural food for infants and feels that this is the best and desired procedure for meeting nutrient requirements in the first months of life. No allowances are stated for the first month of life. Breast-feeding is particularly indicated during the first month when infants show handicaps in homeostasis due to different rates of maturation of digestive, excretory and endocrine functions. Recommendations as listed pertain to nutrient intake as afforded by cows' milk formulas and other foods given the infant when breast-feeding is terminated. Allowances are not given for protein during infancy.

§ Niacin equivalents include dietary sources of the performed vitamin and the precursor tryptophan. Sixty mg. tryptophan equals 1 mg. niacin.

physical activity. Allowances for infants and children are given for age groups

in each group and are for normal activity and for the weights indicated in the table. As with adults, adjustments should be made for children who differ in size and activity from the standard

The recommended allowance values of the table are for nutrients in foods as consumed and do not take into consideration prior losses in storage, cooking and serving. Provision should be made for these losses in planning practical diets. The allowances do provide for possible incomplete availability or absorption of certain nutrients, such as iron and carotene

In spite of careful explanation as to the meaning of this yardstick and how it should be used, there has been a tendency, ever since the publication of the first edition, for some enthusiastic promoters of nutrition to misuse the figures. Results of dietary surveys have been interpreted carelessly in making comparisons with the recommended allowances. Sometimes the inference has been drawn that diets which failed to meet these levels were subminimum and that persons living on such diets were malnourished and likely to show signs of deficiencies. Such conclusions ignore the broad margin between optimum allowances and minimum requirements.

When the recommended allowances are used to estimate the per capita

consumption goals based on practical possibilities.

The problems that arose with the feeding of civil populations in liberated countries after World War II emphasized that the liberal margins of safety highly desirable in normal times might become untenable when whole nations were starving. It then becomes desirable to raise the diet of as many people as possible to the minimum-requirement levels. When Americans were required, during the war, to curtail consumption of meat, cheese and fats, at no time were the restrictions such as to cut the average consumer much, if any, below recommended allowances. Even if it did so for certain groups, the restrictions were well within the margin of safety provided by the allowances.

In using the nutrition yardstick it is to be emphasized that the amounts of the various nutrients, with the exception of vitamin D, can be obtained through a good diet of natural foods. Flour or bread should be whole grain or enriched. It is fortunate that optimum nutrition can be provided by an unlimited number of combinations of different foods. Excessive use of vitamin-poor foods should be avoided, of course, and loss and waste in preparation and in serving should be kept to a minimum. The translation of the allowances into sample menus to fit different localities and incomes is our immediate concern.

The basic dietary pattern outlined in Chapter 1 provides for a liberal amount of the 8 nutrients other than vitamin D with a total caloric value of only 1,300. (See complete calculation of the Basic Dietary, Chap. II.) Other foods chosen to suit the appetite, growth and activity needs may add substantially to these figures.

### MEAL PLANNING TO FIT PERSONAL AND FAMILY NEEDS

Various dietary patterns might be suggested that would measure up equally well to the yardstick of good nutrition.

ished food supply, it may be impossible to meet these recommendations. In such circumstances it is essential to distinguish between standards based on good nutrition for all and more immediate



## MENU No. 1

Moderate-cost menu for moderately active woman, age 25—pattern of Northern U.S.A.

FOODS	AMT Gm.	APPROX- IMATE MEASURE	CALO- RIES	PROTEIN Gm.	CA Mg	IRON Mg.	VITA- MIN A I.U.	THIA- MINE Mg.	RIBO- FLAVIN Mg.	NIACIN Mg.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg.
Milk	488	2 c	932	17	576	.5	780	.19	.83	.3	5
Oatmeal, cooked	100	% c	63	2	9	.7		10	.02	.2	
Bread, white, enriched	46	2 slices	128	4	36	8		.12	.08	1.0	
Orange juice	100	% c	44	1	19	.2	190	.08	.03	.2	49
Egg	54	1	77	6	26	1.3	550	.05	.14	Tr.	
Salad dressing	15	1 tbsp.	53		1	1	20	Tr.			
Large roll	57	1 large	176	5	31	1.0		.14	.09	1.3	
Prunes, stewed	100	6 prunes, 2 tbsp. juice	165	1	23	1.5	75	.05	.06	6	1
Cookies, butterscotch	75	2 small	120	1	11	.5	20	.05	.03	.3	
Beef pot roast	75	med. serving	231	19	9	2.4		.03	.15	3.0	
Potato, boiled	100	1 med	83	2	11	.7	20	.09	.03	1.0	14
Peas, canned	100	% c.	88	5	90	2.1	670	.12	.06	1.0	8
Tomatoes, cooked	100	% c.	19	1	11	6	1,050	.06	.03	.7	16
Butter or margarine	42	3 tbsp	300	9			1,380				
Pie, custard	135	3/4 of 9" pie	266	7	162	1.0	290	.07	.21	.4	
Cream	50	2 tbsp.	60	1	90		240		.04		
Sugar	12	1 tbsp.	46								
Candy—peanut brittle	15	1 piece	88	1	6	.3		.01	Tr.	.3	
Totals			2,302	73	1,001	13.7	5,285	1.16	1.80	11.0	93
Compared with recommended allowances for a woman of 58 kg. (128 lbs)			2,300	58	800	12	5,000	1.2	1.5	17*	70

\* Niacin equivalents include dietary sources of the preformed vitamin and the precursor tryptophan.

# Menu No. 2

Low-cost menu for a moderately active woman, age 25—pattern of Southeastern U.S.A.

Foods	Amt. Gm	APPROX- IMATE MEASURE	CALO- RIES	PROTEIN Gm.	Ca Mg.	IRON Mg.	VITA- MIN A IU.	THIA- MINE Mg	RIBO- FLAVIN Mg.	NIACIN Mg.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg
Corn grits, enriched, cooked	200	1 c.	102	2	2	.9		.08	.06	.8	
Salt pork, cooked	100	small serving	250	2		.3		.03	.02	.4	
Evaporated milk	50	½ c, scant	100	3	121	.1	200	.02	.18	.1	
Molasses	60	3 tbsp.	138		174	3.6					
Turnip greens, cooked	150	1 c	45	4	388	3.6	15,900*	.09	.61*	1.0*	87*
Sweet potato, cooked	100	1 small	123	2	30	.7	7,700	.09	.05	.6	20
Black-eye peas or cowpeas, cooked	100	½ c.	94	7	87	2.5	390*	.29	.08	.8	20*
Tomatoes, canned	100	½ c	19	1	11	.6	1,050	.06	.03	.7	16
Corn bread, enriched	100	2 pcs, 2½ x 3"	219	7	139	1.9	180	.17	.08	1.3	
Blucuits, enriched	100	3 (2" diam)	342	8	218	1.8		.23	.22	2.0	
Buttermilk	244	1 glass	87	9	288	2		.09	.43	.1	2
Pork, fresh	75	1 med. serving	300	18	9	2.4		.62	.18	3.7	
Margarine	43	3 tbsp	300		9						
Peanut butter	100	2 tbsp	184	8	24	6	1,380	.01	.04	5.2	
Sugar	12	1 tbsp	48								
Totals			2,320	71	1,450	18.9	26,750	1.87	2.13	16.8	145
Compared with recommended allowances for a woman of 58 kg (128 lbs)			2,300	58	800	12	5,000	1.2	1.5	17.1	70

\* If cooked for a long time in a large amount of water, these factors may be reduced considerably.

† Niacin equivalents include dietary sources of the performed vitamin and the precursor tryptophan.

It is important to recognize personal, family and regional preferences when planning meals, especially for the sick. This has an important bearing also on the ultimate success of any nutrition program. When a person has a poor appetite, it is unwise to introduce unfamiliar or disliked foods. To attempt to do so

nutritionist must take pains to interpret needs in terms of favorite foods available in the particular locality, in season and suitable to the income level of the group concerned.

The first suggested menu for a moderately active woman is of moderate cost and of a type used in a large part of the United States, particularly northern and central areas. The menus for the 3 meals are suggested, and the nutritive value is calculated in tabular form on page 118. It will be noted that the food values of this menu exceed the recommended allowances in most instances.

### Menu No. 1

#### Breakfast

Orange juice  
Oatmeal  
Whole milk  
Toast and butter  
Coffee with cream and sugar

#### Lunch

Egg salad  
Roll and butter  
Stewed prunes  
Cookies  
Milk  
Candy snack—peanut brittle

#### Dinner

Pot roast of beef  
Potatoes, boiled  
Stewed tomatoes  
Peas, canned or frozen  
Bread and butter  
Custard pie  
Coffee with cream and sugar

The second menu for a moderately active woman is low cost and typical of certain groups, especially in the southern part of the United States. This menu also meets the recommended allowances although it is quite different from Menu No. 1 in food items.

### Menu No. 2

#### Breakfast:

Grits and pork gravy or  
Corn-meal pancakes, fat pork and  
molasses  
Coffee with evaporated milk

#### Lunch:

Hot biscuits  
Peanut butter  
Molasses  
Turnip greens

#### Dinner:

Pork shoulder  
Sweet potatoes  
Tomatoes  
Cowpeas or black-eye peas  
Buttermilk  
Corn bread and margarine

The second list of foods contains less milk, no fruit, no egg and less variety, but it measures up to recommended allowances almost as well as the first. It must be remembered that the calcium from greens may not be as readily available as that from milk, but the liberal supply allows for some not being used. Also, the larger proportion of carotene from vegetables may not be as efficient as vitamin A from animal sources, but there are several times the recommended allowance of this factor (See calculation on p. 119.)

Numerous other combinations could be equally adequate and adapted to available food supplies and dietary customs.

Special attention is directed to the need for adaptation to local customs when this text is used in other countries. An Overseas Supplement to this text is available and is sent with every copy of

the book shipped outside North America. In this Supplement sample dietaries from Formosa, India, Lebanon and Puerto Rico are given as examples of such adaptation can be made. A

planned around the family menu, as the essentials are similar for all. Therapeutic diets are discussed in Part Two.

### SUGGESTED MARKET ORDER FOR A WEEK

For family of 2 adults and 2 children  
(8 & 10 years old)

#### Leafy, green and yellow vegetables

- 1 head lettuce
- 2 lbs snap beans
- 2 bunches carrots
- 2½ lbs spinach
- 2 lbs squash
- 1 head of cabbage (small)
- 1 No 2 can or 1 pkg frozen green peas
- 1 pkg green Lima beans (frozen)

#### Citrus fruit, Tomatoes

- 4½ to 5 lbs. oranges or 2 cans frozen orange juice
- 2 grapefruit
- 1 46-oz can tomato juice
- 1 large can tomatoes

#### Potatoes, Sweet Potatoes

- 2 lbs sweet potatoes
- 6 lbs potatoes

#### Other Vegetables and Fruit

- 2 lbs apples
- 3 lbs other fruit in season or canned
- 1 No. 2½ can peaches
- 1 lb. prunes
- ½ lb raisins
- 1 bunch celery
- 1 lb onions

#### Milk, Cheese, Ice Cream

- 1½ qts fresh whole milk
- 1 14½-oz can evaporated milk
- 2 lbs nonfat dry milk solids
- ½ lb Cheddar cheese
- ½ to 1 lb cottage cheese
- 1 pt. ice cream

#### Meat, Poultry, Fish

- 3 to 3½ lbs chuck roast of beef
- 2 to 3 lbs shoulder of lamb
- 1 lb. liver
- 1 lb fish (haddock, cod, halibut)
- 1 can tuna or salmon

Eggs  
2 doz.

(Continued)

calculate a day's menu for your own family and locality. In so doing it will be noted that each food in such a list plays a specific role and, if omitted, has to be replaced by another of similar food value to keep the day's menu adequate. A knowledge of food equivalents makes it easier to plan for variety in meals while keeping the food value adequate.

From the foods necessary for good nutrition, meals may be planned that appeal to the appetite of the individual or the family. The 4 food groups outlined in Chapter 1 give ample opportunity for variation in the choice of foods within each group without sacrificing any food essentials.

When more money is available, the allowances for meat, fresh fruits and vegetables, butter and certain luxuries may be increased. In this case the amounts of potatoes, dried vegetables, bread and cereals may decrease automatically. The homemaker who has the responsibility of planning and preparing meals for a family of varying ages and activities, with perhaps some dietary restrictions in the group, may need some help. The nutritive requirements of children and elderly people are somewhat different from those of adults in the prime of life. It would be folly to give a small child everything that appears on the family menu. However, this menu should be planned in such a way that few special foods need be prepared for him. The question of food for children is discussed in detail in Chapters 13 and 14, of course, any member of the family who is ill must have special consideration. However, all diets should be

It is important to recognize personal, family and regional preferences when planning meals, especially for the sick. This has an important bearing also on the ultimate success of any nutrition program. When a person has a poor appetite, it is unwise to introduce unfamiliar or disliked foods. To attempt to do so

nutritionist must take pains to interpret needs in terms of favorite foods available in the particular locality, in season and suitable to the income level of the group concerned.

The first suggested menu for a moderately active woman is of moderate cost and of a type used in a large part of the United States, particularly northern and central areas. The menus for the 3 meals

this menu exceed the recommended allowances in most instances

### Menu No. 1

#### Breakfast

Orange juice  
Oatmeal  
Whole milk  
Toast and butter  
Coffee with cream and sugar

#### Lunch

Egg salad  
Roll and butter  
Stewed prunes  
Cookies  
Milk  
Candy snack—peanut brittle

#### Dinner:

Pot roast of beef  
Potatoes, boiled  
Stewed tomatoes  
Peas, canned or frozen  
Bread and butter  
Custard pie  
Coffee with cream and sugar

The second menu for a moderately active woman is low cost and typical of certain groups, especially in the southern part of the United States. This menu also meets the recommended allowances although it is quite different from Menu No. 1 in food items.

### Menu No. 2

#### Breakfast:

Cuts and pork gravy or  
Corn-meal pancakes, fat pork and molasses  
Coffee with evaporated milk

#### Lunch

Hot biscuits  
Peanut butter  
Molasses  
Turnip greens

#### Dinner:

Pork shoulder  
Sweet potatoes  
Tomatoes  
Cowpeas or black-eye peas  
Buttermilk  
Corn bread and margarine

The second list of foods contains less milk, no fruit, no egg and less variety, but it measures up to recommended allowances almost as well as the first. It must be remembered that the calcium from greens may not be as readily available as that from milk, but the liberal

as vitamin A from animal sources, but there are several times the recommended allowance of this factor. (See calculation on p. 119.)

Numerous other combinations could be equally adequate and adapted to available food supplies and dietary customs.

Special attention is directed to the need for adaptation to local customs when this text is used in other countries. An Overseas Supplement to this text is available and is sent with every copy of

## TUESDAY

*Breakfast*

Grapefruit  
Soft-cooked eggs  
Toast and butter or margarine  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Lunch*

Baked macaroni and cheese  
Snap beans  
Shredded raw carrots  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Oatmeal and prune pudding (oatmeal left from Monday breakfast)  
Milk

*Dinner*

Broiled liver and bacon  
Baked potato  
Baked squash  
Tossed green salad  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Fruit in season  
Milk

## WEDNESDAY

*Breakfast*

Orange or orange juice  
Ready-to-eat cereal with milk  
Toast and butter or margarine  
Preserves  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Lunch*

Split pea soup  
Apple, cabbage and raisin salad  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Baked Indian pudding  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Dinner*

Beef hash with potatoes (beef left from Sunday)  
Homemade vegetable relish  
Creamed carrots and peas  
Celery  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Fruit cup  
Milk

## THURSDAY

*Breakfast*

Tomato juice  
Hot oatmeal with milk  
Toast and butter or margarine  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Lunch*

Creamed eggs on toast or  
Soft-cooked eggs with toast  
Jellied fruit salad  
Molasses cookies  
Milk

*Dinner*

Baked shoulder of lamb  
Baked sweet potato  
Green Lima beans  
Cole slaw  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Canned peaches  
Graham crackers  
Milk

## FRIDAY

*Breakfast*

Orange  
Hot wheat cereal with raisins and milk  
Toast and butter or margarine  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Lunch*

Cream of pea soup  
Cottage cheese and peach salad  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Cookies  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Dinner*

Baked fish (haddock, cod or halibut)  
Sliced beets  
Baked potato  
Celery  
Bread and butter or margarine  
Lemon snow with custard sauce  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

**Dry Beans, Peas, Nuts**

- 8 ozs split peas
- 4 ozs. peanut butter

**Flour, Cereals, Meal, Baked goods**

- 3 loaves enriched bread
- 3 loaves whole-wheat bread
- 1 loaf rye bread
- 1½-lb. box rolled oats or whole-wheat cereal
- 1 pkg. ready-to-eat cereal
- 2 lbs enriched flour or corn meal
- ½ lb macaroni or spaghetti
- 1 box graham or other crackers

**Fats, Oils**

- ½ lb. bacon
- 1½ lbs. butter or margarine
- ½ lb shortening
- ¼ pt salad dressing or salad oil

**Sugar, Syrup, Preserves**

- 2 lbs sugar
- ½ to 1 pt. molasses, honey, jelly or preserves

**MENUS AND MARKET ORDER FOR A FAMILY OF FOUR**

The choice of foods should be made according to season and should take into account taste preferences of all the members of the family.

This hypothetical family of 4—2 adults, a 6-year-old boy and a 10-year-old girl—was chosen as an illustration. The husband, of average height and weight, is moderately active, walks to work and usually comes home for lunch. The wife is of slight build but very active, doing all her own housework and caring for 2 small children. She probably would need less food than her husband. The younger child would be in the second age group given in the table of allowances, the 10-year-old in the fourth group. The specific needs for children at different ages are discussed in Chap-

**SUGGESTED MENUS FOR A WEEK FOR A FAMILY**

(See market order on page 121)

SUNDAY	MONDAY
<b>Breakfast</b>	<b>Breakfast</b>
Orange juice	Prunes with orange slices
Scrambled eggs	Hot oatmeal with milk
Toast and butter or margarine	Toast and butter or margarine
Preserves	Milk for children
Milk for children	Coffee or tea for grownups
Coffee or tea for grownups	
<b>Dinner</b>	<b>Lunch</b>
Pot roast with carrots, potatoes and onions	Cream of tomato soup with toast squares
Chopped spinach	Tuna fish and celery salad
Bread and butter or margarine	Bread and butter or margarine
Two-egg sponge cake with ice cream	Baked Indian pudding
Milk for children	Milk
Coffee or tea for grownups	
<b>Supper</b>	<b>Dinner:</b>
Open-face grilled cheese and bacon sandwich for grownups	Beef casserole with mounds of mashed potatoes (beef left from Sunday roast)
Hot wheat cereal with milk for children	Green peas
Shredded cabbage and raisin salad	Fruit salad
Fruit in season	Bread and butter or margarine
Milk	Sponge cake with honey sauce
	Milk

butter for both cooking and table use. Cream is an expensive food. For economy, top milk may be used if adequate provision is made for the children to have their full quota of whole milk. Sometimes evaporated milk may be used in place of cream. Inexpensive cheese is a good source of protein as more expensive or processed types.

**Meats, Poultry, Fish and Eggs.** Cheaper cuts of meat may be used when it is necessary to cut food costs. A rough estimate of the cost of the edible portion of some of the apparently cheapest cuts may disclose that the cheapest food is not always the cut which has the lowest price tag per pound. Variety meats, such as pork or lamb liver, pork heart and beef tongue, are often good buys, both for protein and vitamins. As a rule, fish is cheaper than meat and is a good source of protein. Poultry today is less expensive per pound than good-quality meats, but the proportion of bone is large. When meats are high, main dishes of beans or peas may be used occasionally and peanut butter for sandwiches. Grade B eggs are as nutritious as Grade A and usually are cheaper. Eggs of graded size show considerable variation in price—sometimes small eggs are the best buy, sometimes large ones. Fat from bacon and other meats can be saved and used for many cooking purposes.

**Bread, Cakes and Cereals.** In general, foods prepared at home are less expensive than foods purchased ready to eat. Sweet rolls, buns, coffee cakes are expensive types of bread. Breakfast cereals cooked at home are cheaper than the ready to eat, but the latter are preferred by many. Large-size packages are economical for big families, but not for small ones, as the opened package may become stale and have to be discarded.

#### AVOID FOOD FADS AND FALLACIES

Food fads are still with us in spite of much that has been written warning

people not to be misled. To quote a recent bulletin.<sup>2</sup>

As our scientific knowledge of nutrition has increased, food fads and nutritional quackery have increased, too. People have become increasingly aware of the importance of the right food for good health, and the quacks and faddists have seen a chance to capitalize on this situation. They use it to promote their ideas and sell their products. It is estimated at least 10 million people in the United States are influenced by dietary fads.

There are many dietary fads which may be harmless but senseless. Too often they detract from the pleasure of eating, an important element in good nutrition. Variety is in itself a safeguard, and, when variety is severely limited, as it is by some fads and self-imposed restrictions, certain nutritive factors are apt to be low or absent. Nor is there magic in any specific food item. It makes little difference whether one obtains his nutrients from fluid milk or milk powder, from milk products such as cheese, yoghurt or ice cream, or whether he gets them from meat, fish or fowl, wheat germ, whole grains or blackstrap molasses. The essential point is to get an adequate supply of each nutrient from food which tastes good. The Mexican, the Greek and the Italian each may prefer his native foods, irrespective of nutritive value. Surprisingly enough, native dietary patterns often provide nutrients which meet recommendations as well as the typical American patterns and far better than the fad diets consumed by some native Americans.

The futile efforts to cure chronic ailments, to improve the state of affairs by pseudoscientific devices, reflect a striving for something better in terms of health. It is easy to listen to misleading radio advertising, to read unreliable health literature, to follow suggestions

<sup>2</sup> Cook, C. M., and Foley, M. E.: Food Facts and Fads Leaflet No. 308, Coop Ext. Service, Univ. of Mass., 1957.



## SATURDAY

*Breakfast*

Tomato juice  
Ready-to-eat cereal with milk  
Toast and butter or margarine  
Preserves  
Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Lunch*

Peanut butter and celery sandwiches  
Vegetable salad  
Floating island or junket

Milk for children  
Coffee or tea for grownups

*Dinner.*

Minced lamb on rice potatoes  
(lamb left from Thursday dinner)  
Snap beans  
Hearts of lettuce with dressing  
Hot applesauce on Graham crackers with  
custard sauce  
Milk

A 8-oz serving of milk is allowed for the children. If the children do not drink all their milk, they have it as part of the afternoon snack

ter 14. Most of the time the same meals may be planned for all the family. Certain modifications can be made for the children when the adults prefer a dessert or other dish which is not suitable for children. It is simpler for the homemaker if the adults adjust their food habits somewhat to those of the children.

The suggested menus for a week and a market order to provide the necessary items for this family of 4 are given in this chapter. It is suggested that each student plan menus and a market order for her own family or a family group that she knows intimately. This experience allows taste preferences and individual needs to be taken into account.

**ECONOMY HINTS**

Modifications in the menus and the market order may be made when it is necessary to reduce costs. Intelligent adjustments can ensure that meals are still nutritionally adequate and acceptable to the family.

Fruits and vegetables in season and when plentiful are better nutritionally and usually cheaper than canned or frozen. However, home-frozen foods are good economy if home produced, and they can be prepared to suit family tastes. They may be even better if they are frozen properly and used promptly after thawing. As a rule, carrots and cabbage are inexpensive and can be used raw or cooked. Fresh greens in

season and wild greens in some areas may be used in place of more expensive green vegetables. Canned fruits and vegetables can replace fresh products when these are expensive or out of season. Canned tomatoes are cheaper and often higher in vitamin C than raw tomatoes out of season. During some seasons either canned or frozen orange juice is cheaper than fresh and has about the same nutritive value. Sectioned or sliced orange provides more nutritive value than the juice extracted from the same orange. Canned tomatoes or tomato juice, canned grapefruit juice and low-cost fresh fruits may be used in place of orange juice.

The nutritive value of cheaper standard grades of canned fruits and vegetables is essentially the same as that of the more expensive fancy grades, and they are canned under equally sanitary conditions.

**Milk and Dairy Products.** Either evaporated or dried milk is cheaper than fresh milk and is entirely satisfactory for cooking. Both products have some use as a beverage. When dry skim milk (fat-free milk solids) is used in place of whole milks, some source of vitamin A, such as more generous amounts of green or yellow vegetables or fortified margarine, should be used. Practically all margarine on the market today has the vitamin A value of average butter and is entirely satisfactory as a substitute for

Trade Commission, the United States postal authorities, Better Business Bureaus, state and national health associations, and the American Medical Association through its Bureau of Investigation and Council on Foods and Nutrition. But there are ways of evading any law or regulation. There will always be quacks and promoters who want to sell something. There will

always be those who want to sell something. There will always be those who want to sell something.

4 The recommended allowances for children are estimated for age groups. How is the average value for each age group computed, and what values would you use for a 12-year-old boy large for his age?

5 Choose any dietary pattern with which you are familiar and plan a day's menu to meet the recommended allowances, using foods well liked by the people for whom it is intended.

6 Which factors are most difficult to obtain in sufficient quantities in low-cost meals in your locality at the season of year when you are studying this chapter?

7. Choose any person of your acquaintance whose diet is restricted in certain foods and make the necessary substitutions to provide a diet that meets the recommended allowances.

8. Select a family that you know with at least 3 growing children. Assume that they are on a liberal income and plan the day's menu and make out the market order, taking into account home-produced foods.

9 What food fads have you heard discussed or seen practiced? How would you help a layman to distinguish between fact and fad or between true and false ideas about food?

theories. Money spent for better food—more of the protective foods—will go farther toward promoting better health for America than the same amount of money now being spent for pseudo-health and diet fads.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. The Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council has recommended dietary allowances for certain specific nutrients. Which ones are listed in this table?

2 These allowances are listed for different age and sex categories. For which of these are the allowances as great for young children as for a grown man? Why?

3. For which factor do the allow-

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

of neighbors or friends and to be misguided by ideas with a plausible sound. Why not ask advice of medical and nutrition authorities? Some food fads in themselves may be relatively harmless, but when they lead to delay in seeking necessary medical advice they can be dangerous indeed. In any event, food fads may increase food costs unduly and result in the omission of foods really needed.

The commercial advertising of food products seems to be somewhat less objectionable now than it was a decade ago. Perhaps some of the adverse publicity and complaints have had an effect. There are still some candies and other sweets that expound the idea of "health and vitality" through "cheap, quick energy." Obviously, such statements are misleading and tend to exaggerate the nutritive value of candy. These advertisements are frequently addressed to young people who have only a few nickels to spend for their lunch and desire the most for their money.

So-called natural foods are quite apt to be recommended along with raw foods, raw in place of refined sugar, sea salt in place of table salt, olive oil in place of other fat, lemon juice in place of vinegar. Except for price, there is no particular objection to these, but neither is there anything poisonous or harmful in the foods for which they are substituted.

Certain vegetable juices have been credited with more virtues than they actually possess. An increased consumption of vegetables may be advised for some people, but there is no scientific foundation for such claims as, celery juice for indigestion and rheumatism, carrot juice for the complexion, parsley

are found in certain foods, medical literature will report it with supporting evidence.

Special food combinations are "prescribed" in certain systems of eating. He who dares to indulge in protein and starches or perhaps starches and acid fruits at the same meal faces dire consequences, we are told. There is no physiologic basis for the notion that the normal human digestive apparatus is not equipped to deal with these foods, whether eaten individually or together. Most natural foods are combinations, whether we will or no, even the diet faddists cannot avoid them, but they

tion and adds advice on how to protect ourselves.

Earmarks of quackery and misleading propaganda should be familiar to the layman. Extravagant claims for cure or relief of various complaints are always to be doubted. Vague labeling which

because the laws are stricter about labels.

Promoters of most of the fad diet systems or health institutes have personal

personal appearances, but they also work through the mails, the radio, the newspapers, handbills, newsstand publications and books with catchy titles.

Your interests are safeguarded by such agencies as the United States Food and Drug Administration, the Federal

<sup>3</sup> Mitchell, H S: J Am Dietet. A 17: 67, 1941.



... .. it is a party given to celebrate the beginning of a  
 ... .. feast that the women and the children stand and wait until the men  
 finish eating (Standard Oil Co., New Jersey)

may drink coffee or, possibly, tea in its place. On the other hand, second-generation families from southern European stock have adopted the use of milk, even for adults, although this was not the custom in their own country.

In their own countries, most of the nationality groups were accustomed to cooking vegetables with meat, but, here again, the price of vegetables seems exorbitant and their use may be reduced far below what is necessary for health. In the majority of instances, the great problem of the nutrition worker and the nurse is to teach these people the value of milk and vegetables in the diet and to

assist in planning the budget so as to cover these two necessary items.

Characteristic food habits of every regional or national group should be respected, because there are good nutritional practices in each of them. Emphasis should be placed on the desirable features of the established food pattern and methods of preparation that preserve maximum food values. In fact, nutritional needs may be met by many different patterns of eating. Although the choice of foods and the methods of preparation may differ from those to which we are accustomed, it often happens that the foods used fall into the

*Understanding the Significance of Food Habits*  
*Regional Differences in Food Patterns in the United States*  
*Dietary Patterns of National and Cultural Groups*  
*Nutritional Problems of Transplanted Peoples*  
*Favorite National and Regional Dishes*

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

# Regional, National and Cultural Food Patterns

### UNDERSTANDING THE SIGNIFICANCE OF FOOD HABITS

A problem that often confronts the public-health nurse or the nutritionist concerns regional or national food habits. Our population has come from all parts of the world and has brought a variety of dietary habits and taste quite as fixed as our own. Dietary problems among foreign-born families are bound to arise because of the fact that foods that have been staples in their diet may now be expensive, while foods that have been considered luxuries are comparatively cheap. Sugar and white bread, for instance, are among the least expensive foods in this country, while milk, vege-

peoples of the rural class live sanely in their own countries, but on arrival in America they find conditions so changed from those of their own land that it is often difficult for them to make the necessary adjustment. Not knowing that one food is more valuable than another, or that certain things are essential while others are merely pleasant adjuncts, they are likely to choose their new diets unwisely.

In the past, many of the immigrants who came to our shores were of the farming class. Some had been accustomed to raising their own produce, to having their own goats or cows for the production of milk and the manufacture of cheese, their own chickens, ducks and geese, and their own fruit trees and vineyards. It is very difficult for them to realize that milk, for instance, can possibly be worth from 23-30 cents per quart, especially since they believe it to be a drink and not a food. Many of these people also are accustomed to goat's milk and find it difficult to make the change to cow's milk. Therefore, milk often is one of the first foods on which the family economizes. The children

when the nurse gives advice in regard to food selection. If the nurse considers

recommended to meet nutritional requirements

In the South, hot breads are served at nearly every meal, and baker's yeast breads are not popular. There is a preference for vegetables that have been cooked a long time and often with fat pork. Undoubtedly some vitamins are destroyed by this process, but the common use of pot liquor conserves the nutrients which are in solution. The wide variety of greens used compensates in a measure for the low consumption of milk and cheese as sources of calcium and vitamins. The scarcity of fresh milk in some localities has encouraged the use of evaporated and dry milk.

In the Southwest, the Mexican in-

original pattern of eating, it is being introduced gradually. In the Mexican home preparation of corn for tortillas, the lime used introduces calcium, an essential mineral which otherwise would have been deficient.

In the Far West, the infiltration of Oriental cultures has influenced food habits. The introduction of

Locally grown fruits and vegetables are used in season and preserved for winter use. This is a good custom and should be encouraged.

On the east coast and in New England, many traditional dishes have come down from the Pilgrim settlers. The use of corn meal in Indian pudding and johnnycake was acquired from the Indians by their new neighbors. Baked beans, cod-fish cakes, clam or fish chowder and turkey for festive occasions are all old New England traditions, some of which have been adopted nationally. A

such as squash, turnips and carrots, are popular.

In isolated communities in any part of the country, unusual food habits may be encountered. Malnutrition may result from a limited variety of foods grown locally, especially if soil and drinking water happen to lack essential nutrients and the economic status does not allow of the extensive use of foods from other producing areas. Sporadic outbreaks of actual deficiency diseases have been reported occasionally. Such instances are less common today, since state health departments are recognizing their responsibilities for these conditions quite as much as they are for the control of communicable disease.

In metropolitan areas a great variety of food patterns may be found. In large cities, there may be whole sections in which the inhabitants follow as closely as possible the food customs of the country from which they have emigrated. This influence is retained to some extent by a second generation. People who come to the city from regions of the United States where definite types of foods are preferred continue to attempt to follow the diet to which they have been accustomed. Usually they can be persuaded to supplement their meals with the foods that are more generally available in the city than they were in

In the north central states, it

by regional choice of ingredients. Many of these states produce and use large quantities of dairy products, especially cheeses of several varieties closely resembling European types.

Four Food Groups and provide nutrients that meet recommended allowances.

The four nationality patterns chosen at random to illustrate this point in the Overseas Supplement<sup>1</sup> to this text each provide adequate amounts of essential nutrients.

If the nurse or the social worker knows the family food customs, this will play an important part in establishing good relations. A family may be encouraged to continue its own methods of preparation and seasoning when these are not incompatible with health and then gradually institute necessary changes to correct poor practices.

Unfamiliar foods and methods of preparation need to be studied and possible values recognized before changes are suggested. For example, the Mexican

Success in making necessary changes in lifetime habits demands sympathy and understanding. Special diets should be interpreted for the patient or the homemaker in terms of the regional or the national food pattern. A woman of foreign birth or one from a different part of the country may have little contact

where the mother has had the opportunity to learn to adjust to local foods and customs shows that instruction, as well as understanding, is an important phase of nutrition work.

While it was once held that the stature of certain races was due to climate, now it is generally believed that these racial differences are partially the result of differences in food. Holt states that statistics show that Japanese children in the United States, both boys and girls,

are taller and heavier than those of corresponding ages living in Japan; also that children of the successful and prosperous Russian Jews—those who have become to a considerable degree American—

are seen among the very poor, where the mode of life and food has altered little from that of the parents. While happiness, usefulness and even success in life are by no means dependent upon the height and the weight of the individual, a fine physical development is always desirable. A frail body or habitual poor health is a serious handicap in life.

In this chapter special attention is given to regional and national food patterns which are distinctive. A knowledge of these food preferences and attention to them may help to build the bridge of understanding between the health worker, the nurse or the nutritionist and the family that she is trying to assist.

### REGIONAL DIFFERENCES IN FOOD PATTERNS IN THE UNITED STATES

Anyone who has traveled in different parts of the United States and has eaten meals typical of various regions is aware of differences in menus, food preparation and local terms for foods or special dishes. Part of the joy of travel is in eating the traditional foods of each locality. On the other hand, natives of certain regions who relocate for various reasons may have strong preferences for familiar dishes. Boys in the Army indicated such preferences, and these were considered when possible.

People who are ill are much more likely to want familiar foods cooked in a traditional manner. Therefore, it is pertinent for the dietitian and the nurse to recognize some of these regional differences which exist in our own country. In some instances, modification of a familiar pattern of eating may be

<sup>1</sup> Cooper, Barber, Mitchell and Rynbergen: Overseas Supplement to Nutrition in Health and Disease, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1956

recommended to meet nutritional requirements.

In the South, hot breads are served at nearly every meal, and baker's yeast breads are not popular. There is a preference for vegetables that have been cooked a long time and often with fat pork. Undoubtedly some vitamins are destroyed by this process, but the common use of pot liquor conserves the nutrients which are in solution. The wide variety of greens used compensates in a measure for the low consumption of milk and cheese as sources of calcium and vitamins. The scarcity of fresh milk in some localities has encouraged the use of evaporated and dry milk.

In the Southwest, the Mexican in-

original pattern of eating, it is being introduced gradually. In the Mexican home preparation of corn for tortillas, the lime used introduces calcium, an essential mineral which otherwise would have been deficient.

In the Far West, the infiltration of Oriental cultures has influenced food habits. The modern diet is

features to be commended.

In the north central states, there is a mixed racial background with a strong northern European and Scandinavian heritage in many localities. Even third-

quantities of dairy products, especially cheeses of several varieties closely re-

Locally grown fruits and vegetables are used in season and preserved for winter use. This is a good custom and should be encouraged.

On the east coast and in New England, many traditional dishes have come down from the Pilgrim settlers. The use of corn meal in Indian pudding and johnnycake was acquired from the Indians by their new neighbors. Baked beans, cod-fish cakes, clam or fish chowder and turkey for festive occasions are all old New England traditions, some of which have been adopted nationally. A

such as squash, turnips and carrots, are popular.

In isolated communities in any part of the country, unusual food habits may be encountered. Malnutrition may result from a limited variety of foods grown locally, especially if soil and drinking water happen to lack essential nutrients and the economic status does not allow of the extensive use of foods from other producing areas. Sporadic outbreaks of actual deficiency diseases have been reported occasionally. Such instances are less common today, since state health departments are recognizing their responsibilities for these conditions quite as much as they are for the control of communicable disease.

In metropolitan areas a great variety of food patterns may be found. In large cities, there may be whole sections in which the inhabitants follow as closely as possible the food customs of the country from which they have emigrated. This influence is retained to some extent by a second generation. People who come to the city from regions of the United States where definite types of foods are preferred continue to attempt to follow the diet to which they have been accustomed. Usually they can be persuaded to supplement their meals with the foods that are more generally available in the city than they were in



the part of the country where their food habits were established.

## DIETARY PATTERNS OF NATIONAL AND CULTURAL GROUPS

### Jewish Dietary Habits

Probably one of the most difficult dietary problems for the health worker is that of the Jews, because of the many religious restrictions that are applied to the diet. No health worker can afford to ignore the religious ideas or customs of a people, for confidence is the basis upon which all successful social work rests.

The following description of the dietary laws of the Jews is quoted from *Foods of the Foreign Born*,<sup>2</sup> and from *Jewish Dietary Problems*.<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. Prohibited Foods

**Prohibition of Animal Foods Absolute and partial prohibitions**

Unclean animals are absolutely prohibited. Clean animals all are quadrupeds that chew a cud and also divide the hoof. All others are regarded as not clean.

Products of animals that are suffering from some malady or that have died a natural death or had eaten poison are regarded as "terefah," unclean, and may not be used.

All animal foods which are not ob-

other—may be eaten. This would bar all shellfish, such as oysters or lobsters, as well as fish of the eel variety.

No scavengers or birds of prey are to be eaten. These are regarded as unclean.

<sup>2</sup> Wood, Bertha M. *Foods of the Foreign Born*, New York, Barrows, 1929.

<sup>3</sup> Schapiro, Mary L. *Jewish Dietary Problems*, *J. Home Econ.*, Feb., 1919.

#### IS FORBIDDEN

### 2. Prescribed Modes of Preparing Food

The following partial prohibitions are fully as important as the above

\*from the manner or kind of meat is secured

forated or fluted, and placed in an oblique position, so as to enable the blood to drain off. It is allowed to remain thus for one hour, after which time it is to be washed three times. The washing is for the purpose of removing all the salt. This process is called kosher and is regarded as very important.

Bones with no meat and fat adhering to them must be soaked separately, and during the salting should be placed near the meat.

Chops and steaks may be broiled.

The heart may be used, but must be cut open lengthwise, and the tip removed before soaking. This enables the blood to flow out more freely. Lungs are treated as is the heart. Milt must have veins removed. The head and feet may be koshered, with the hair or skin adhering to them. The head must have the brain removed. This latter is used, but must be koshered separately.

To kosher fat for clarifying remove the skin and proceed as with meat. In

turned back or cut, so that the vein lying between two tendons may be removed.

Seething a kid in its mother's milk is forbidden. This is the origin of the prohibition against the cooking of the meat

and milk together, or of the eating of such mixtures. This rule is rigidly adhered to, and in its present application necessitates the use of a complete double equipment of dishes and utensils. Since this rule is regarded as one of the most important, one can understand why such sauces as butter sauces or white sauce are refused at meals with meat. This rule occasions the home economics teacher considerable trouble in planning menus.

Meat and fish should not be cooked or eaten together, for such a mixture is supposed to cause leprosy. The mouth has to be washed after eating fish and before meat may be eaten.

### 3. Jewish Holidays

**Sabbath.** No food may be cooked on the Sabbath. This means that all cooking for both days is done on Friday. This need has led to the development of foods such as Sabbath Kugel or Sholent, Petshar, and many others.

**Passover.** During Passover week no leavened bread or its product, or anything which may have touched leavened bread, may be used. This restriction holds for eight days. In every Jewish home a complete and most thorough system of cleaning precedes this holiday. No corner escapes a scrubbing and scouring, lest a particle of leaven, or what is just as bad, a particle of food which may have touched leavened bread, should be found. A complete new set of dishes is used during the week. Cutlery, silver, or metal pots may be used during this holiday if properly koshered or sterilized. The usual method of doing this is to plunge red-hot coals into boiling water, and then to immerse the desired utensils. These or any other Passover utensils may be used after the holiday is over without rekoshering, but once used without Passover precautions they are unfit for Passover use unless rekoshered. In actual practice this means that in every orthodox Jewish household there are four sets of dishes—the usual set for meat and the set for milk food, in addition to duplicate Passover sets. The Passover dishes are stored away very carefully, lest some leaven come near them.

Because of the need for abstaining from leavened bread during Passover, many interesting dishes have developed, such as the Mazzah Klos (dumplings), soup, cakes and puddings made of the mazzah meal. Almond pudding and cake are very popular. Almost all of the food cooked during this holiday requires the liberal use of shortening or fat, with great danger of a too liberal use for health, as well as from the economic point of view. The fat generally used is either goose or chicken drippings, or clarified beef fat other than suet.

**Fast Days:** (A) Yom Kippur (the Day of Atonement). No food or drink may be had for 24 hours. (B) Fast of Esther. This precedes the Feast of Purim and is now observed only by the very pious. The Feast of Purim is universally observed.

**Semifast Days.** Eight days in Ab. For nine days no meat food may be eaten by the orthodox.

A striking characteristic of the Jewish diet is the richness of the food, including pastries and cakes, foods rich in fats, and preserves and conserves, as well as stewed and canned fruits. Pickles and "sours" are also used abundantly. No pork or pork products are used. Meat and milk must not be served in the same meal. Butter, being a product of milk, must not be served with meat. Most vegetables, therefore, are cooked with the meat. Cooked vegetables are more often served in soup than otherwise. Borscht, a soup made with "sour salt" (tartaric acid) and vegetables to which sour cream is added, is a favorite dish but is not served with the meat meal. This limits the amount of vegetables used, although the salad vegetables—lettuce, cucumbers, tomatoes and scallions—are served quite frequently, either plain or with sour cream. Cereals, especially barley and buckwheat (kasha), are served as a vegetable with meat or in soup, either in a meat stock or cooked in milk.

Noodles and other egg-and-flour mixtures are used quite extensively.

the part of the country where their food habits were established.

## DIETARY PATTERNS OF NATIONAL AND CULTURAL GROUPS

### Jewish Dietary Habits

Probably one of the most difficult dietary problems for the health worker is that of the Jews, because of the many religious restrictions that are applied to the diet. No health worker can afford to ignore the religious ideas or customs of a people, for confidence is the basis upon which all successful social work rests.

The following description of the dietary laws of the Jews is quoted from *Foods of the Foreign Born*,<sup>2</sup> and from *Jewish Dietary Problems*.<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. Prohibited Foods

**Prohibition of Animal Foods Absolute and partial prohibitions**

Unclean animals are absolutely prohibited. Clean animals all are quadrupeds that chew a cud and also divide the hoof. All others are regarded as not clean.

Products of animals that are suffering from some malady or that have died a natural death or had eaten poison are regarded as "terefah," unclean, and may not be used.

All animal foods which are not ob-

Hebrews, and by many primitive peo-

shellfish, such as oysters or lobsters, as well as fish of the eel variety.

No scavengers or birds of prey are to be eaten. These are regarded as unclean.

<sup>2</sup> Wood, Bertha M. *Foods of the Foreign Born*, New York, Barrows, 1929.

<sup>3</sup> Schapiro, Mary L. *Jewish Dietary Problems*, J. Home Econ., Feb., 1919.

#### 2. Prescribed Modes of Preparing Food

The following partial prohibitions are fully as important as the above:

4. *Leviticus* xxi. 3. "And ye shall not eat of the blood of any soul."

forated or fluted, and placed in an oblique position, so as to enable the blood

garded as very important.

Bones with no meat and fat adhering to them must be soaked separately, and during the salting should be placed near the meat.

Chops and steaks may be broiled.

The heart may be used, but must be cut open lengthwise, and the tip removed before soaking. This enables the blood to flow out more freely. Lungs are treated as is the heart. Milt must have veins removed. The head and feet may be koshered, with the hair or skin adhering to them. The head must have the brain removed. This latter is used, but must be koshered separately.

To kosher fat for clarifying remove the skin and proceed as with meat. In

lying between two tendons may be removed.

Seething a kid in its mother's milk is forbidden. This is the origin of the prohibition against the cooking of the meat

favorite dish, and bread and butter are served with this dish

The Italian immigrant finds coffee in America cheaper than in his own country, and it is not uncommon to find the children partaking of this beverage in place of milk. The Italian buys food in small quantities, such as the breast of a chicken or merely one wing, using such pieces to flavor a whole dish. When refrigeration is limited, perishable food never is provided in great abundance.

The Italians have many kinds of cheese, which are used freely. However, some have a strong aversion to American cheese, and an investigation conducted in New York disclosed the fact that when Roman cheese cost \$1.25 a pound, it was considered such an essential that in the poorest Italian homes, where the investigator found the family suffering from the cold and the lack of food, it was still being purchased in small quantities. However, a taste for sweets is acquired rapidly in this country, the children eating a great deal of candy between meals. This, together with too much coffee and too little milk, is the most difficult phase of the nutritional problem among Italian children. The trend in recent years has been toward more milk both for children and for adults as incomes became more adequate and education in the value of milk more widespread.

While the use of green vegetables and fruits in the Italian diet is to be commended, there should be encouragement in the use of milk, coarse cereals, root vegetables and potatoes. Candy between meals and coffee for the children should be discouraged.

#### Hungarian Dietary Habits

In the native Hungarian diet, between 50 and 60 per cent of the calories are from grains and potatoes. Pork, either fresh or cured, is the favorite meat, especially in rural areas. As a rule, Hungarian foods are more highly seasoned than the average European dishes. Pap-

rika is used freely as a seasoning, likewise onions and fresh peppers, both green and red. Sour cream is used both as a sauce and in certain cooked foods. Sauerkraut is popular. Fish and shrimp

aged, as should the use of more milk.

#### Polish and Slavic Dietary Habits

Potatoes and bread are major items in the Polish food pattern, grains and potato together providing from 60 to 70 per cent of the total calories. Rye and buckwheat flour are used freely. Coarse cereals may be cooked in milk but rarely are served with milk. Potatoes are eaten at almost every meal. Pork and pork products, especially sausage, highly seasoned, are popular, but meat of any kind is a luxury in rural areas. Fresh, salted and pickled fish are favorite foods. Cabbage may be used raw, as kraut or cooked and most vegetables are cooked with meat. Sour cream and cottage cheese are used extensively.

The use of more milk (particularly for the children), of more raw vegetables and of more fruits should be encouraged. These people may profitably increase the use of canned tomatoes in winter, a custom only recently accepted in Europe.

For a more detailed summary of European food patterns the student may refer to an earlier publication by Mitchell and Joffe.\*

#### Armenian, Turkish and Greek Dietary Habits

The inhabitants of the Near East are an outdoor people. Most of them are farmers; they raise their own sheep, goats, cattle, chickens, ducks and geese,

\* Mitchell, H. S., and Joffe, N. F.: Food patterns of some European countries, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 20: 676, 1944.

Rye and whole-wheat breads are well liked, as well as crusty rolls.

Dried fruits, as well as fresh, are used by those who can afford them.

Fish is served quite frequently, especially cod, haddock, carp, salmon and white fish, as well as the smoked and the salted fishes—herring, salmon and sturgeon. Gefüllte fish is a delicacy prepared in almost all Jewish homes. Chicken is considered almost an essential for the Sabbath evening meal.

In prescribing diets for the Jewish people, it might be helpful, both to the person who prescribes and the patient for whom the diet is prescribed, to remember that all their foods may be classified under three heads: (1) Meat or fish, (2) milk and its products, and (3) neutrals. Meat and milk are never mixed. Neutrals may be used with meat or with milk products, but never with both in the same meal.

Because milk in any form cannot be served with meat at the same meal, the diet of Jewish children often lacks the proper amount of milk. The use of more milk for the children, more green vegetables and canned vegetables and fresh and canned fruits for the whole family should be stressed. The continued use of rye bread, legumes, coarse cereals, dried fruits and a variety of fish which are characteristic of the Jewish diet is advantageous.

### Italian Dietary Habits

The Italian immigrants who come from northern and central Italy are

children. Cheese is also made from it and used freely. Eggs are in common

dishes. Dark bread made from the whole wheat is a standby. Approximately 40 per cent of the native Italian diet is from wheat in some form and from 60 to 70 per cent from grain and potatoes combined, the root vegetables being used more in the north than in the south of Italy.<sup>4</sup> Olive oil or lard is used in various

factory for use at any meal of the day.

The Tuscan and the Umbrian peasantry live almost exclusively on the "minestra," which word is usually translated "soup," made of vegetables with meat stock. On gala occasions, either noodles or rice is added, and grated cheese always is sprinkled on it.

A typical Italian breakfast consists of black coffee for adults, milk for children, and bread without butter. The noonday meal consists of bread, cheese and black coffee, with perhaps one of the many

ing in the fields or away from home at midday. The menu at this meal is a little more varied, although it usually consists of one dish. Meat or beans often serve as a basis. The cooking of this dish is started in the morning. Later on, vegetables are added and still later macaroni and the fat, which may be lard or olive oil. Polenta, a thick corn-meal mush, to which tomatoes, cheese or a bit of pork and garlic has been added, is another

<sup>4</sup>Bennett, M. K.: Food for Postwar Europe, Food Research Institute, Stanford Univ Press, War-Peace Pamphlet No 5, 1944.



Fig 34 Boy acting as interpreter for Chinese diabetic patient who is being instructed regarding the carbohydrate equivalent of his favorite bowl of rice. (Frances Stern Food Clinic of the Boston Dispensary)

are much relished by them, as well as other types of "preserved" eggs, which are eaten much as we in this country eat sweets.

#### Japanese Dietary Habits

The Japanese diet is similar to the Chinese but differs slightly in methods of cooking and seasoning. In general, the Japanese use more fish and a smaller variety of vegetables and grains than the Chinese. Even before World War II, the dairy industry in Japan had developed so that it was possible and safe to buy fresh milk. Eggs are used fresh but not fermented, as in China.

#### Mexican Dietary Habits

The Mexicans use freely many varieties of beans, as well as rice, potatoes,

peas and some vegetables. Chili, a variety of pepper, is also popular. The chili plant is sacred to the Mexican, who is supposed to be blessed in health if he uses it plentifully. The tomato always is prominent in Mexican cookery. Mexicans use little meat and practically always cook it with vegetables. They have a strong aversion to meat that is not perfectly fresh and slaughtered in the approved Mexican style. Chili con carne is a favorite meat dish. It consists of beef seasoned with garlic and chili peppers and cooked several hours. Tamales also are popular. They are made of corn meal and ground pork, highly seasoned, they are rolled in corn husks and steamed. Tortillas, made with ground whole corn which has been soaked in lime water and baked on a griddle, serve as a



Fig 33. Familiar foods give children of other nationalities a feeling of security. (FAO, from UN film *Battle for Bread*)

they produce their own grains and grow fruits and vegetables in abundance. Grains, rice or wheat furnishes the major source of calories. The whole wheat is parboiled and cracked for use as a staple starchy food at the main meal. Eggs, butter and cheese also are produced on the farm. Lamb is the favorite meat. The food is not highly spiced but is rich in fat. The fat is cooked with the food and this serves in place of butter. Matzoon, or yoghurt, a sour-milk preparation, is used almost universally by these people, sweet milk is seldom used. Black coffee, in which the pulverized bean is retained, is the preferred beverage.

### Chinese Dietary Habits

The Chinese diet is varied, consisting of eggs, meat, fish, cereals and a large

grown abundantly, and some 30 or more products are manufactured from it. The protein is high and of good quality.

Rice is used freely and takes the place of American bread, particularly in southern China. In northern China, wheat, corn and millet seed are used in abundance. The millet seed (ground or whole) is made into cakes or a thin mush, the latter being the form in which it is given to children. Noodles are widely used. Grains and, in some areas, sweet potatoes constitute the chief source of calories in the Chinese diet, grain and potato together provide from 70 to 90 per cent of the total calories.

The quantity of meat eaten is small, and usually it is served with vegetables. These are cut into small uniform pieces in conformity with an ancient law laid down by Confucius, the philosopher, specifying that food should not be eaten unless it had first been chopped or cut into small pieces. Pork is the chief meat of the poorer classes. Lamb and goat meat are used when available, but beef is uncommon.

In certain parts of China, a child rarely tastes cow's milk, but water buffalo milk is used to some extent. Soybean milk and cheese are more common. When transplanted to this country, the Chinese readily accepts the use of dairy products for children and adults.

The Chinese use practically every part of the animal as food (with the exception of the hair and the bones); even the brain, the spinal cord and the various internal organs, as well as the skin and the blood, are utilized. Coagulated blood is sold on the market in pieces similar to liver and, since this is one of the inexpensive foods, it is used freely. Fish and shellfish are also in common use. They are sold alive, for the Chinese have a strong aversion to dead fish and consider them unfit for food.

Eggs, including hen, duck and pigeon eggs, are used in abundance, when they can be afforded. The Chinese prepare what is known as fermented eggs, which



Fig 24. Boy acting as interpreter for Chinese diabetic patient who is being instructed regarding the carbohydrate equivalent of his favorite bowl of rice. (Frances Stern Food Clinic of the Boston Dispensary)

are much relished by them, as well as other types of "preserved" eggs, which are eaten much as we in this country eat sweets.

#### Japanese Dietary Habits

The Japanese diet is similar to the Chinese but differs slightly in methods of cooking and seasoning. In general, the Japanese use more fish and a smaller variety of vegetables and grains than the Chinese. Even before World War II, the dairy industry in Japan was small.

peas and some vegetables. Chili, a variety of pepper, is also popular. The chili plant is sacred to the Mexican, who is supposed to be blessed in health if he uses it plentifully. The tomato always is prominent in Mexican cookery. Mexicans use little meat and practically always cook it with vegetables. They have a strong aversion to meat that is not perfectly fresh and slaughtered in the approved Mexican style. Chili con carne is a favorite meat dish. It consists of beef seasoned with garlic and chili peppers and cooked several hours. Tamales also are popular. They are made of corn meal

#### Mexican Dietary Habits

The Mexicans use freely many varieties of beans, as well as rice, potatoes,

and baked on a griddle, serve as a



bread. The lime provided in this fashion

should be encouraged, and, if a change to the American type of bread is made, it should be of the whole-grain or enriched type.

### **Portuguese Dietary Habits**

The dietary habits of the Portuguese are similar to those of the Mexicans. Their consumption of wheat products is lower than that of any other southern European country, but use of grains other than wheat is liberal. They use many spices and peppers, allspice and mace are favorites.

### **Puerto Rican Dietary Habits**

Puerto Rican dietary habits are not unlike those of other Latin-American countries. Rice and beans are the staple foods, used almost daily and often cooked together. Salt codfish is used more often than fresh fish. Pork and beef are the favorite meats. Plantain and some root vegetables, along with fresh tomatoes, peppers and onions, are used commonly. Bananas, oranges and pineapple are popular and relatively inexpensive in Puerto Rico, and much to be preferred to canned fruits, which have been widely introduced. Even more important are some of the native fruits which are not familiar in the north such as the mango and the West Indian cherry which has only recently been fully appreciated as the richest known natural source of ascorbic acid.

Puerto Ricans living in the north may have to adjust to different fruits in season and to canned fruits. They may well be encouraged to use more milk and cheese, cheaper cuts of meat to supplement the protein at meals when rice and beans are served. Acceptance of canned tomatoes in place of more expensive fresh ones out of season, margarine in place of butter or expensive oils, and

cheaper cuts of meat would provide better nutrition for the same cost. Malnutrition and tuberculosis are common among Puerto Rican children living in the United States, an indication of the need for improved nutrition.

### **NUTRITIONAL PROBLEMS OF TRANSPLANTED PEOPLES**

The transplanting of peoples from tropical or semitropical climates to northern parts of the United States presents special nutritional problems. Vegetables and fruits which were cheap in a southern area may be expensive, and it is difficult for people to choose acceptable foods from among those which they can afford. Southern markets may provide a variety of greens which are used abundantly, but cost and lack of variety in northern markets may discourage their use. These same greens may have provided minerals and vitamins essential for health. The limited consumption of milk may not have been as serious for the children eating more of such greens as it is when they move north and fail to make the necessary compensation.

In the case of dark-skinned races, Negroes, Mexicans and others, the children seem to be especially susceptible to rickets in the north, possibly due to lessened exposure to sunlight. Thus more attention to milk and adequate sources of vitamin D is paramount. These same people show increased susceptibility to tuberculosis in the north, and, again, protective foods are important. Thus a marked change in climate may involve adjustments in food to meet modified requirements.

### **FAVORITE NATIONAL AND REGIONAL DISHES**

A study of some of the main dishes of different nationality groups indicates that people the world over eat much the same kinds of foods. They may combine or season them differently or serve them at a different time of day, but they pro-

vide the same nutrients. Actually, it is fun to prepare and eat dishes which are the favorites of other nationalities or

use only recipes for several popular main dishes from different countries are given in Chapter 49. Numerous regional and foreign cookbooks are available for those who enjoy trying their culinary skills on unfamiliar dishes.

As a source of information on vitamins and minerals in unusual foods, FAO has published *Food Tables for International Use*.<sup>7</sup>

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why is it essential that a public-health nurse or a nutritionist be able to adjust her advice on nutrition concern-

<sup>6</sup> Favorite Recipes from the United Nations—1956, U. S. Committee for UN, 816 21st St., N.W., Washington, D. C.

<sup>7</sup> Food Composition Tables—Minerals and Vitamins for International Use, FAO, Rome, Italy, 1954.

ing various regional and national food patterns?

2. What evidence is there that stature may be influenced by nutrition as well as by racial inheritance?

3. After noting the regional dietary habits in the United States, which ones in the South and the Southwest would you recommend and encourage, and what changes would you recommend?

4. How has the infiltration of various cultures influenced the food habits of those in various regions of the United States?

5. Why is the Jewish diet one of the most difficult problems for the health worker? What are some of the dietary laws which must be respected?

6. How does the use of grains, potatoes and meat vary among the following racial groups: Italians, Hungarians, Poles, Greeks and Turks?

7. How can you help others to gain respect for the food habits and the favorite dishes of nationality and regional groups other than their own? Where would you look for recipes and food values?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Nutritional Demands of Pregnancy*  
*Food Selection in Pregnancy*  
*Complications of Pregnancy Involving Diet*  
*Diet During Labor*  
*Diet Following Delivery*  
*Diet in Lactation*

## CHAPTER TWELVE

# Nutrition in Pregnancy and Lactation

### NUTRITIONAL DEMANDS OF PREGNANCY

Pregnancy makes many demands on the prospective mother, not the least of which are her nutritional needs and those of the unborn infant. Formerly it was assumed that, except in cases of acute deficiencies in the diet, the fetus would not be affected. In recent years, studies of nutrition of women during pregnancy have shown that there is a definite relationship between the diet of the mother and the condition of the baby at birth. These studies have also

mother and the baby.

Not only are the mother's nutritional needs increased during pregnancy, but, if she has always eaten a diet that was adequate in all essentials, she has a

has had a poor food intake

Nutrition Studies in Pregnancy.

One of the most conspicuous findings of recent studies is that the diet of a very large percentage of pregnant women does not meet the nutritional allowances recommended by the National Research Council (see p. 116). That these deficiencies are in a large measure related to income levels is also apparent. Jeans,<sup>1</sup> reporting on a study in a rural state, found a direct correlation between the amounts of all nutrients present in the diet and the income levels of his patients. Trulson and co-workers,<sup>2</sup> in a study of 1,567 pregnant women of low-income status from both city and rural areas, found that only 20 per cent met the recommended figures for protein intake, only 20 per cent had sufficient milk, and only 25 per cent had sufficient vitamin C in the diet. However, many women with incomes sufficient for their needs also may be found to be eating an inadequate diet in one or more respects.

The effect of such poor food intakes

<sup>1</sup> Jeans, P. C., *et al.* J. Am. Dietet. A 28:27, 1952

<sup>2</sup> Trulson, M., *et al.* J. Am. Dietet. A 25:669, 1949

on the condition of the newborn baby is best illustrated by the studies of Burke and her co-workers<sup>3</sup> in the Harvard School of Public Health and the Boston Lying-In Hospital. Figure 38 shows the relationship of the mother's diet to the health of the baby. In a study of 284 women, it was found that those on good or excellent diets (42 mothers) had babies in good or excellent condition at birth, with only 2 exceptions. The mothers on fair diets (202 patients) had babies rated largely as good or fair. Those mothers on poor to very poor diets (40 patients) had babies rated as fair or poorest, with only 3 exceptions. The poorest infants were those who were stillborn or born prematurely, who died within 3 days of birth, who had congenital defects or who were functionally immature.

The question sometimes is asked, what is meant by a "poor" diet? Such a

<sup>3</sup> Burke, B. S., et al. *J. Nutrition* 38:453, 1949.

diet is usually low in all the necessary food nutrients, there may even be one food group, such as milk, entirely missing from it. An example of a poor diet is a day's food intake of a mother who

at which time more pastry and coffee are consumed. Often she is not hungry at lunch, nor does she enjoy preparing

needs, except perhaps for calories. Another patient drank up to 15 cups of tea daily, each with 2 teaspoonfuls of sugar, and found that she was not always hungry for other food.

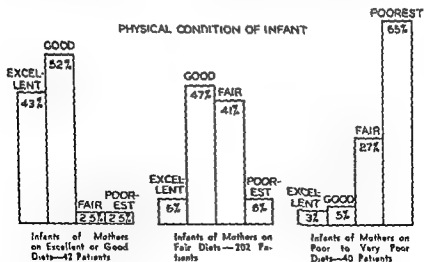


Fig. 35. Condition of infants at birth in relation to the prenatal diet of the mother. Note the decrease in excellent and good ratings for infants and the increase in fair and poorest infants as the diet goes from good to poor. [Adapted from Burke, B. S., et al. *J. Nutrition* 38:453, 1949]



latter part of pregnancy tended to be short, light in weight and likely to receive a low pediatric rating in other respects. They suggest that it is not possible to indict protein alone, as a low intake of the B complex vitamins, found in many protein foods, may also play a part in these findings. Dieckman *et al.*<sup>6</sup> also have shown that there is an increased incidence of abortion with a low protein intake on the part of the mother. The same investigators found that the pediatric rating of excellent infants increased steadily in number with an increased protein intake by the mother.

Extra protein in the diet will be supplied by additional milk up to 1 quart a day, but if the Recommended Dietary Allowances of a 20 Gm protein increase are to be met, the meat and egg intake will have to be increased as well. This may be done by urging the mother to have a serving of meat, fish or poultry at her main meal and to have a "protein" sandwich at lunch or supper. Sandwich fillings contributing valuable amounts of protein are cold cuts, tuna fish, salmon or sardines, cheese and eggs. Peanut butter is a good source of protein and of the B vitamins, and may be used liberally if the mother is not overweight.

Extra protein may be supplied inexpensively by the generous use of dried skim milk in creamed soups and other dishes in which milk is an ingredient. Jeans,<sup>6</sup> in discussing the study already referred to, says "The need for greater intake of milk and milk products is of major importance in pregnancy. The addition of even a pint of milk daily would better the intake of protein and riboflavin in the poorest diet to a real degree, and would more than double the present intake of calcium of nearly half the women. The use of low cost dry milk solids would benefit greatly those unable to buy sufficient fresh milk."

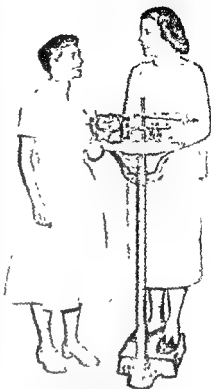


Fig. 24 The nurse has an excellent opportunity for teaching while doing routine procedures. Here nurse and mother discuss weight gain and nutritional needs. (Paul Porter)

**CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS REQUIREMENTS** The pregnant woman must be supplied with calcium and phosphorus in quantities large enough for her own needs and those of the bony framework of the body of the growing fetus and for the formation of its teeth. A quart of milk a day will supply a large proportion of the needed calcium and phosphorus, as well as a good proportion of the necessary protein.

The proper utilization of calcium and phosphorus depends upon the inclusion of a certain amount of vitamin D in the diet. Many cities today offer milk 10

<sup>6</sup> Dieckman, W. I., *et al.*: J. Am. Dietet. A 27 10-18, 1951.

<sup>7</sup> *Op. cit.*

It will be seen from the foregoing that the importance of nutrition in pregnancy is poorly recognized by a large section of the population, and that nurses, as well as many others in the medical field, must assume more responsibility for teaching this group better nutrition.

**Nutritional Requirements.** The table on page 142 shows the Recommended Dietary Allowances of the National Research Council for pregnancy and lactation compared with those for the young nonpregnant woman. These will vary with the weight, the age and the activity of the mother, and should be used only as a guide.

**CALORIES** While metabolism rises during pregnancy, this occurs largely in the second half. The recommended increase in milk intake from 1 pint to 1 quart will increase the caloric intake by approximately 300 calories. However, the increase in milk intake should begin as soon as pregnancy has been established, not for its caloric but for its valuable protein, calcium and vitamin content. There should be no increased intake of purely energy foods such as fat and carbohydrate if the weight is within normal limits. (See Table 10, Part Four)

In cases of too rapid weight gain or of overweight, it may be necessary to decrease the mother's caloric intake. However, it must be remembered that enough calories should be included to allow the protein in the diet to be used for the building of new tissue rather than to be broken down for energy.

In cases of underweight, often the sign of undernourishment, the amounts of all nutrients should be increased in the interest of preserving the health of both mother and baby.

**PROTEIN REQUIREMENT** The protein intake must be increased in pregnancy because of its specific contributions to growth and because, as a rule, a diet low in protein is lacking in other nutrients. As has already been shown, the protein in the diet of many pregnant women falls below the amounts recommended. Besides possible impairment of the health of the mother, unquestionably there is an effect on the condition of the newborn baby when the diet is low in protein. Burke<sup>4</sup> and her co-workers found that infants of mothers eating less than 75 Gm of protein daily during the

<sup>4</sup> Burke, B. S. J. Am. Dietet. A 20:735, 1944.

#### RECOMMENDED DAILY DIETARY ALLOWANCES FOR A MODERATELY ACTIVE WOMAN DURING PREGNANCY AND LACTATION

(Food and Nutrition Board, National Research Council, Revised 1958)

NUTRITIONAL ESSENTIALS	NONPREGNANT WOMAN 58 Kg - 25 Yrs Old		PREGNANCY SECOND HALF	LACTATION (850 CC. DAILY)
	58 Kg	25 Yrs Old		
Calories*	2,300		2,800	3,300
Protein, Gm	58		78	98
Calcium, Gm	0.8		1.5	2.0
Iron, mg	12		15	15
Vitamin A, I U	5,000		6,000	8,000
Thiamine, mg	12		13	17
Riboflavin, mg	15		20	25
Niacin Equiv, † mg	17		20	19
Ascorbic acid, mg.	70		100	150
Vitamin D, I U			400	400

formed vitamin and the pre-

Warkany<sup>9</sup> and his co-workers, by creating a severe deficiency of vitamin A in the diet of experimental animals, obtained young without eyeballs and with other severe eye defects. Warkany,<sup>10</sup> by depleting mother rats of their stores of riboflavin, was able to produce severe skeletal anomalies, such as fused ribs, fingers and toes, and cleft palate. Such conditions are not likely to occur in

liver, whole-grain and enriched breads, green and yellow vegetables, citrus fruits, tomatoes, cabbage and potatoes. All these must be supplied liberally in the diet of the pregnant woman if she is to meet her own nutritional needs as well as those of the growing fetus.

during pregnancy (Chap. 7).

### FOOD SELECTION IN PREGNANCY

In the table on page 144 are listed the foods and the quantities of each that must be consumed daily by the pregnant mother in order to meet the Recommended Dietary Allowances of the National Research Council. Such a food intake represents the so-called excellent diet found by investigators to be most likely to produce an infant with a

takes place.

Foods rich in vitamins are those which have been discussed as essential for other nutrients, milk and milk products, eggs, meat, fish and poultry, and especially

<sup>9</sup> Warkany, J. Harvey Lectures, Series 48, 1952-1953

<sup>10</sup> Warkany, J. Am J Roentgenol 47 889, 1942

---

#### A DAY'S MEAL PLAN FOR THE HEALTHY PREGNANT WOMAN OF AVERAGE WEIGHT

---

##### Breakfast

**Fruit** Grapefruit, orange or other fruit or juice rich in vitamin C.

**Cereal** Whole grain or enriched, served with milk and a moderate amount of sugar, or an egg

**Bread** One slice, whole grain or enriched, with butter or fortified margarine

**Milk** One glass Two cups of cocoa made with milk may be substituted if the mother is not gaining weight too rapidly.

**Coffee** As desired Cream and sugar limited if there is too rapid a gain in weight.

##### Dinner

**Meat** A liberal serving of lean meat,

**Bread** One slice, whole grain or enriched, with butter or fortified margarine

**Dessert** Desserts made with milk, eggs or fruit should be served often

**Milk** A glass of milk.

##### Supper or Luncheon

**Main dish** A dish made with eggs if these have not been used elsewhere in the menu, or a cheese dish, or legumes, or a meat or fish sandwich.

**Vegetable** A cooked vegetable or a salad

**Dessert** Raw or cooked fruit with plain cake or cookies

**Milk** A glass of milk.

##### Before Retiring

**Milk** One glass if there has not been sufficient milk in the menu during the day, or fruit

---



which 400 I.U. of vitamin D per quart

**IRON REQUIREMENT.** An adequate iron supply during pregnancy is no less important than that of calcium. There is prenatal storage of iron in the fetus for use during the first months of infancy. Clinical studies show that hemoglobin levels tend to be lower in women of the low-income groups. Lund,<sup>7</sup> in a study of a large group of pregnant women in New Orleans, found that 50 per cent of the women had a hemoglobin level below 11 Gm./100 cc. blood, and 20 per cent had levels below 10 Gm. All these women were in the low-income groups. This finding may reflect inadequate protein and vitamin intake as well as a diet low in iron, since foods rich in one are often rich in the others also. Therefore, a low hemoglobin level in pregnancy may indicate a generally inadequate diet and endanger the health of both the mother and the infant.

Foods especially high in iron are beef

<sup>7</sup> Lund, C J. *Am J Obst & Gynec* 62: 947, 1951.

and pork liver, one of which should be included at least once a week. Other good sources of iron are heart, kidney, tongue, all lean meats, chicken, eggs, most green, leafy vegetables, potatoes, whole-grain or enriched bread, dried fruits and dried peas and beans. Molasses is an important source of iron in those regions where it is commonly included in the diet. It is not always easy to include sufficient iron in the daily diet, especially in the low-income group.

**IODINE REQUIREMENT.** Iodine is also an important element in the diet of the pregnant woman. A deficiency of this element during pregnancy may cause *goiter in the child or in the mother*. The use of iodized salt is suggested for those who live in areas in which the soil and the drinking water are known to be deficient in iodine.

**VITAMIN REQUIREMENTS.** All vitamins are essential for the metabolism of living tissue, and doubly so in growth. In research studies done on animals, it was possible to produce specific congenital defects by depleting the mother animal of a single vitamin. Hale<sup>8</sup> and later

<sup>8</sup> Hale, F. *Am. J. Ophth.* 18: 1087, 1935.

#### DIET IN PREGNANCY

Whole milk: 1 qt. One oz. of Cheddar cheese is equivalent to 8 ozs milk

Lean meat: One liberal serving (4 ozs) of meat, fish or fowl, liver is desirable at least once each week.

Egg: At least one

Fruit: Two or more servings (1-1½ cups,

day.

Vegetables: Two or more servings of cooked or raw vegetables (1-1½ cups, 200-300 Gm.); these should include dark green leafy or deep yellow vegetables, also legumes, several times

each week, in addition, a medium potato (150 Gm.) should be eaten daily

Bread and cereal: Whole-grain or enriched bread, at least 4 slices daily (½ cup of cereal is equivalent to 1 slice of bread).

Butter or fortified oleomargarine: 2 tablespoons.

Additional foods. Consisting of either more of the foods already listed or other foods of one's own choice adjusted to individual energy needs and in relation to desired weight gain

Vitamin D: Some form of vitamin D to supply 400 I.U.

other food sometimes heartily disliked, may be eaten as liverwurst or as a liver spread in a sandwich, or it may be disguised in a variety of ways in cooked dishes. (See Recipes, Part Three.)

In general, meat and eggs are expensive foods. Dried beans and peas, used by many groups in the United States as well as in many other countries, serve as a partial substitute at much lower cost. However, they must not replace the use of animal protein to too great a degree, for the legumes do not supply as good a quality of protein. Fish and eggs are excellent meat substitutes in areas and at times of year when they are cheap. Meats such as heart and tongue are less expensive than other cuts and add variety to the diet.

Fruits and vegetables, bought fresh in season, are usually least expensive. However, the frozen fruit juices, especially orange and grapefruit juice, and canned tomato juice are comparatively inexpensive sources of vitamin C all the year round. In the southeastern section of the United States, the frequent use of greens with their accompanying "pot liquor" provides a considerable source of calcium and vitamin C in the diet. Carrot

may be of help. Fluids should be drunk between meals, not with the meal. Skim milk may be tolerated better than whole milk. Vomiting, if it persists and becomes pernicious, should be treated by a physician.

#### Anemia of Pregnancy in the Lactation

logic adjustments. By this time her total blood volume has increased considerably to provide for the placental circulation. This may not be accompanied by

#### anemia of pregnancy

True anemia occurring during pregnancy is due most often to an iron deficiency. Frequent pregnancies, depleting the mother's store of iron, may be a factor. Usually, however, anemia occurs in mothers who have an inadequate food intake, particularly of protein. Iron medications will aid greatly in restoring the hemoglobin to normal levels in these patients, but it is essential that the diet be investigated and corrected at the same time or other deficiencies may appear.

gional food patterns, to which the prenatal diet may have to be adapted.

### COMPLICATIONS OF PREGNANCY INVOLVING DIET

**Vomiting of Pregnancy.** During the first trimester of pregnancy there may be trouble with nausea. Certain foods, which previously have been eaten without difficulty, now may cause distress. Fats are a common cause of upset. Fluids taken with meals may also precipitate vomiting. Dry toast or a few unsalted crackers eaten before arising

may be of help. If the mother is being treated while nursing, the infant will re-

<sup>11</sup> Spies, T. D., et al. J.A.M.A. 149, 1376, 1932.



Fig 37 The desirable outcome of pregnancy: a healthy, happy mother and baby.  
(The New York Hospital)

superior rating and to maintain the mother's health at an optimum. While modifications of the diet may be necessary at the various stages of pregnancy, the plan for the day's menu on page 145 can be followed with minor variations throughout most of the period.

**Adaptations for Cost and Food Habit Patterns.** It may be difficult for the mother to follow the suggested diet pattern if she has a strong dislike for a food such as milk or liver, if her food habits are culturally very different, or, most frequent of all, if the cost of the diet is higher than she can afford. However, some adaptations can be made without impairing the nutritive value of

the diet too greatly. The use of dried skim milk for part or all of the whole milk will lower the cost substantially. The use of chocolate and coffee flavor, a dash of vanilla extract or of cinnamon or nutmeg may change the taste of milk sufficiently so that the mother will drink it. Milk, either fluid or dried, may be used in desserts, creamed soups and scalloped dishes. As has already been indicated, a 1-oz. slice of Cheddar (hard) cheese has approximately the same protein and calcium content as an 8-oz. glass of milk. This may be an acceptable substitute for Italian patients, who use cheese somewhat more readily than large quantities of milk. Liver, an-

On page 148 there will be found a comparison of the recommended diet for pregnancy for a woman of normal weight, containing approximately 2,400 calories, and the restrictions necessary to bring this down to 1,800 and 1,500 calories. All these meet the Recommended Dietary Allowances for specific nutrients, except for calories, in the latter two diets.

#### Toxemia of Pregnancy. The cause

stage there may be convulsions and coma. There is considerable controversy over the influence of nutrition on the development of toxemia. Toxemia seems to occur more frequently in pregnant women on poor diets, and particularly

on low protein intakes, than in corresponding groups on good diets. Burke's findings<sup>13</sup> show that 44 per cent of the women on poor or very poor diets, 8 per cent on fair diets, and none on good or excellent diets developed symptoms of toxemia. Tompkins and Wiehl<sup>14</sup> have

been unable to relate nutritional status to the health of the mother during pregnancy as clearly as other in-

<sup>13</sup> Burke, B. S., and Kirkwood, B. B. *Am J Pub Health* 40:960, 1950.

<sup>14</sup> Tompkins, W. T., and Wiehl, D. G. *Am. J Obst & Gynec* 62:899, 1951.

<sup>15</sup> McGanity, W. J., et al. *Am J Obst & Gynec*. 67:501, 1954.

TOXEMIA AND SUPPLEMENTATION		
RESEARCH CLINIC GROUP	NO. OF PTS	PERCENTAGE OF PATIENTS HAVING TOXEMIA
CONTROL	170	41.2%
VITAMIN THERAPY	244	32.8%
PROTEIN THERAPY	186	26.9%
VITAMIN + PROTEIN THERAPY	160	16.3%

Fig 32. (Tompkins, W. T., and Wiehl, D. ■ Nutritional deficiencies as a causal factor in toxemia and premature labor, *Am. J. Obst & Gynec*, 62:899, 1951)

## DIETS FOR PREGNANCY VARYING IN CALORIC CONTENT\*

	2,400 CALORIES	1,800 CALORIES	1,500 CALORIES
Milk	1 qt. whole	1 qt. whole	1 qt. skimmed
Meat, fish and poultry	4 ozs.	4 ozs. lean	4 ozs. lean
Eggs	1	1	1
Fruit	2 servings citrus, 1 other	2 servings citrus, 1 other	2 servings citrus, 1 other
Vegetables	4 servings, including potato and dark green leafy or yellow vegetable	4 servings, including potato and dark green leafy or yellow vegetable	4 servings, including potato and dark green leafy or yellow vegetable
Bread and cereals	4 servings whole grain or enriched	4 servings whole grain or enriched	4 servings whole grain or enriched
Butter or margarine	3 teaspoons	3 teaspoons	3 teaspoons
Other foods	Sugar, desserts, fat for cooking; other foods to meet cal- oric needs	None. Saccharin or Sucaryl may be used for sweeten- ing	None. Saccharin or Sucaryl may be used for sweeten- ing.

without  
(Seet salt;  
y low  
tion.)  
t the

Recommended Dietary Allowances of the National Research Council for pregnancy with the exception of calories for the 1,800 and the 1,500 calorie diets.

ceive enough folic acid from its mother's milk to restore its blood components to normal

**Overweight in Pregnancy.** Pregnancy usually is a time of well-being

during delivery, and, even more so, there is an increase in the incidence of toxemia in overweight women

If the mother is overweight or has a tendency to gain weight easily, such foods as sugar, candy, jelly and other sweets, oil salad dressings, fried foods, fatty meats, cake and pie desserts, and carbonated beverages should be limited or omitted entirely. It will be necessary to limit bread and potatoes to the 5 serv-

ings allowed. If still further caloric restrictions are considered to be necessary, skim milk may be substituted for whole milk. As was pointed out earlier in the chapter, the protein in the diet may be utilized for energy instead of for growth if the calories are limited too severely. Oldham and Sheft<sup>12</sup> have shown that this occurs when the diet is below 1,500 calories, even when the protein intake is adequate. Probably no diet in pregnancy should fall below 1,500 calories, and it may be more realistic to allow the mother an 1,800 calorie diet. If she adheres to this, there should be no impairment of her health or of the baby's, and her weight gain should remain at a minimum.

<sup>12</sup> Oldham, H., and Sheft, B. *J. Am. Dietet. A* 27 847, 1951, *Bull. Matern. Welf.* 4 10, 1957.

## SAMPLE MENU FOR A DAY FOR A LACTATING MOTHER\*

Breakfast	Noon Meal	Supper or Luncheon
Stewed prunes	Tomato juice	Cream of pea soup
Shredded-wheat cereal with milk (sugar if desired)	Baked ham	Tomato and cottage cheese salad
Scrambled eggs	Scalloped potatoes	Biscuit with butter or fortified margarine
Toast with butter or fortified margarine	Green beans	Apple sauce
Milk	Raw carrot sticks	Gingerbread
Coffee if desired	Whole-wheat bread and butter or fortified margarine	Milk, Coffee or tea if desired
	Cup custard	
	Milk, Coffee or tea if desired	
Midmorning Lunch	Midafternoon Lunch	Before Retiring
Milk	Orange or grapefruit juice	A glass of milk

\* Adaptation from Federal Security Agency, Children's Bureau. *The Child* 9:169-171, 1945.

**Dietary Requirements.** The nursing woman producing approximately 850 cc. milk daily, requires 1,000 additional calories above her normal needs, not only for milk production, but also for the extra activity necessitated by the care of the baby. Besides the increase in energy requirement, there are also increases in the requirements of protein, minerals and vitamins (see p. 142). Milk should be increased to 1½ qts., and the remainder of the diet should continue to be that prescribed for pregnancy. Some source of vitamin B may be included at the direction of the physician.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1 Even the normal healthy woman who has been taking an adequate diet will require more dietary essentials during pregnancy. Review Recommended Dietary Allowances of the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council for women in various activities. Which allowances increase in ratio to the caloric allowance? What other essentials should be increased during pregnancy?

2 What do nutrition studies show of the adequacy of diets in pregnancy of large groups of women in the United States? What is the role of the nurse in the correction of this situation?

3. Discuss the results of an inadequate intake of protein. In what forms may extra protein be added to the diet?

4. The mineral requirement is naturally larger during pregnancy. How may the calcium and the phosphorus requirements be fulfilled? What are the food sources of iron? How may the iodine requirements be met?

5 List the foods and the quantity of each that must be included daily in the diet of the pregnant woman.

6. Plan a menu for a day for a healthy

clude all the necessary foods. Plenty of water as well as other liquids should be taken. A typical sample menu for a day is shown above.

It should be remembered that the mother must return to a normal food intake when she weans the baby from the breast or she will gain excess weight

vestigators, they do report an increased incidence of toxemia in mothers who ate less than 1,500 calories and 50 Gm. protein per day during the last trimester. All these findings reinforce what was said at the beginning of this chapter: we have not so far made nutrition education in pregnancy as effective a tool as we might in maintaining the health of the mother during this period and ensuring a healthy infant at birth.

Once toxemia has occurred, the dietary treatment of it varies, depending on the severity of the symptoms. In the early stages, a diet high in protein, minerals and vitamins and low in sodium may best meet the needs of the patient. If the mother is markedly overweight, the calories should be restricted. Suggestions for the restriction of sodium and calories, while maintaining the protein intake, will be found in the table on page 148. See Chapters 27 and 50 for suggestions for making the low-sodium diet more palatable.

**Cardiac Disease and Pregnancy.** It needs to be remembered that the nutritional requirements of the pregnant woman with cardiac disease are the same as those of the noncardiac pregnant patient. If it is necessary to limit the mother's salt intake, note the suggestions for moderate restriction of sodium for patients being cared for in the hospital. See Chapters 27 and 50 for suggestions for making the low-sodium diet more palatable.

**Diabetes and Pregnancy.** Again the

ther discussion of pregnancy and diabetes see Chapter 22.

### DIET DURING LABOR

During the early part of the first stage of labor there need be little variation

from the usual diet if the patient can take food without digestive disturbance. During the latter part of the first stage, food should consist mainly of carbohydrates, as they leave the stomach quickly. Protein and fat tend to remain in the stomach considerably longer, which may result in aspiration if anesthesia is given. The diet may be soft or liquid and will include white-bread toast with jelly, soda crackers, canned or cooked fruits, gelatin, fruit juices, ginger ale, broth and tea or coffee with sugar but no milk or cream. Some obstetricians prefer that no solid food be given after the mother is in active labor because of the danger of vomiting and aspiration of food into the trachea.

### DIET FOLLOWING DELIVERY

A liquid diet usually is given for the first meal after delivery. After that, there is a return to the normal diet. If the mother nurses the baby, there must be an even greater allowance of food than there was during pregnancy.

### DIET IN LACTATION

Lactation makes even greater demands in some respects upon the maternal organism than does pregnancy. After birth the child still must be fed from the mother's body, the food now being produced by the mammary glands instead of being supplied through the blood stream, as before birth. As the baby gains in weight and becomes increasingly active, the food supply from the mother must increase.

**Supply of Mother's Milk.** A normal infant will consume daily 2½ ozs of mother's milk for each pound of his weight. An 8-lb infant will consume approximately 20 ozs, while a 15-lb. baby will consume about 30 ozs. Since human milk has a caloric value of 20 calories per oz., it will be seen readily that a nursing mother must supply several hundred additional calories per day as food for the infant.

*Breast Feeding*  
*Formula Feeding*  
*Digestive Disturbances of Infancy*  
*Weaning*  
*Feeding Premature Infants*  
*Formulas: Types and Preparation*  
*Supplementary Foods*  
*The Infant Diet*  
*Weight Gain*

## CHAPTER THIRTEEN

# Nutrition During Infancy

There are many evidences that the earliest experiences of the newborn baby are of great importance in his later adjustment to the world in which he

warm, comfortable relationships with those about him.<sup>1</sup>

### BREAST FEEDING

Breast feeding is the natural way to

portance than whether he is breast or formula fed. If the mother is relaxed and confident, the baby will respond to her and, through her, to the world about him with trust and confidence. Conversely, if the mother is tense and over-anxious, or if the feeding is hurried, the baby becomes aware of discomfort. In response, there may be fretfulness or crying, which may prevent his taking the food he needs.

A mother should be encouraged to breast-feed her baby, but she should not be made to feel guilty if she prefers to bottle-feed him. If he is cuddled and made comfortable when he is being fed, whether by breast or by bottle, his feelings will be those of warmth and comfort, and he will be able to establish

mother's breasts produce the first few days) Breast milk is pure and is not likely to cause intestinal infections. Moreover, breast-fed babies are less likely to be malnourished and have fewer

<sup>1</sup> Infant Care, Children's Bureau, U. S. Dept. of Health, Education and Welfare, Publ. No. 8, 1955.



pregnant woman of average weight. Make necessary modifications for a woman who is underweight; for one who is overweight; for a patient with a limited income.

7. Using Chapter 11 as a guide, write a menu for a day for a pregnant patient with a food pattern not typically American. Be sure that it is adequate for the needs of pregnancy.

8. During the first trimester there may be trouble with nausea. How may the menu be modified to relieve this?

9. If for any reason the quota of fluid  
 " " "  
 " " "  
 " " "  
 which may be used in the menu.

ond trimester, the pressure of the enlarged uterus may cause constipation. How will you advise the mother? (See Chap. 24.) Why should mineral oil not be used?

11. During the third trimester toxemia may appear. Is there anything to indicate that diet may act as a preventive? If so, state the evidence.

12. How may the diet in pregnancy be restricted in sodium?

13. Lactation makes greater demands upon the mother than does pregnancy. What food increases should be made to stimulate the supply of milk? Which  
 " " "  
 " " "  
 " " "  
 " " "

adequate to it in every respect.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

not be when he is going to sleep after-

the mother may have to be prepared to make up 10 or 12 bottles of formula, but, like the breast-fed baby, he will set his own schedule within the first 2 or 3 months. It should be noted that it is not safe to re-use a formula that is left over.

**Weight Gain.** It is now recognized that each baby will establish his own



Fig 39 Feeding time should be enjoyed by both mother and baby, whether he is breast- or formula-fed (Children's Bureau photograph by Philip Bone)

light amount of food. (For average weights see the height-weight charts, Table 9, Part Four.)

### DIGESTIVE DISTURBANCES OF INFANCY

**Colic.** Colic arises from cramps in the intestines, which cause the baby real

almost never constipated. A formula-fed baby will have fewer stools than a breast-fed baby, perhaps one a day or even less. So long as the movement is soft, there is no cause for worry. If the stool becomes hard, the doctor may make a slight change in the formula.

**Diarrhea.** Loose stools may be serious, and the doctor should be consulted at once. See Chapter 33 for diseases in which diarrhea is a symptom.

\*Ibid.

### WEANING

The average breast-fed baby is weaned between the 7th and the 10th months.<sup>2</sup> He has been drinking water and orange juice from a bottle, and should have begun to learn to drink small quantities from a cup when he was from 4 to 5 months old. If he is drinking well from a cup when weaning is begun, there may be no need of interim bottle feeding. Some babies, however, will continue to want to suck, and having a bottle once or twice a day will give him a chance to continue sucking. At this age he may be changed directly to whole milk, whether he is taking it from a bottle or a cup.

A bottle-fed baby is not ready to change to cup feeding as early as a breast-fed baby. However, some of the formula milk may be given in a cup as early as the 5th or the 6th month in order to accustom the baby to its use.

<sup>2</sup> Spock, B: *Baby and Child Care*, New York, Duell, 1957.

for the mother to eat properly if she is going to produce this quantity of milk:

	Gm	Ozs.
1st day . . . . .	10	$\frac{1}{2}$
2d day . . . . .	90	3
3d day . . . . .	190	6 $\frac{1}{2}$
4th day . . . . .	310	10
5th day . . . . .	350	11 $\frac{1}{2}$
6th day . . . . .	390	13
7th day . . . . .	470	15 $\frac{1}{2}$
3d week . . . . .	500	16
4th week . . . . .	600	20
8th week . . . . .	800	26 $\frac{1}{2}$
12th week . . . . .	900	30
24th week . . . . .	1,000	33

The thick, yellowish fluid which appears the first few days of nursing is called colostrum. It will nourish the baby until the milk comes a few days later. The baby should be laid beside the mother with his cheek close to her breast. He will turn his head toward the breast trying to find the nipple, and the mother can help him by holding the

and she will be able to satisfy his needs with an ever-increasing supply as he keeps on growing. At first the baby may be satisfied after he has emptied only one breast, but if he does not give signs that he is full, he should be given the other breast. He should be started on this breast at his next feeding, so as to be sure to empty it.<sup>2</sup>

If the baby is not getting enough to satisfy his hunger from the breast feeding, the doctor may prescribe an addi-

occasionally to skip a breast feeding, and in such case a formula feeding may be substituted.

In some circumstances it may be advisable to substitute bottle feeding for breast feeding, even when the mother has an adequate supply of milk. Accord-

ing to the Children's Bureau, this would be in case of another pregnancy or the development of chronic illness or severe long-lasting infectious disease in the mother.<sup>3</sup>

### "Burping" the Baby

Once or twice during a feeding, the

the air.

### How Often To Feed

Much has been said in recent years about so-called "self-demand schedules of feeding." For many years babies were fed by the clock, regardless of whether they were hungry earlier or later than the scheduled time. Today we recognize that when a baby is hungry, that is the time to feed him, whether the interval is 2, 3, 4 or even 5 hours. A newborn baby may wake to be fed 10 or 12 times in 24 hours. By the time he is a month old, there may be 3 hours between feedings. Most babies establish themselves on a schedule of 4-hourly feedings by the time they are between 2 and 3 months old. During this time, too, the baby will begin to sleep through the night after a late evening feeding.

### FORMULA FEEDING

If the mother is feeding her baby by bottle, she should hold him as though she were breast-feeding him, cradled in her arm (see Fig. 39), in order to give him the same sense of nearness and companionship. It is important that she feel relaxed and unhurried, and that she enjoy this time with her baby. She should never allow him to eat by himself by propping the bottle up beside him. In this way his nutritional needs will be met but not his need for love and contact.

<sup>3</sup> Infant Care. Op. cit.

<sup>2</sup> McClure, M. H.: *Am. J. Nursing* 57: 1002, 1957.

## INITIAL FEEDINGS EVERY 3 HOURS FOR INFANT OF 1,500 GM.

(Gordon in Dunham, Ethel C: *Premature Infants, A Manual for Physicians*, ed. 2, New York, Hoeber-Harper, 1955)

AGE	5% GLUCOSE (cc per feeding)	WATER (cc per feeding)	FEEDING MIXTURE (cc per feeding)	TOTAL FLUID (cc per Kg 24 Hrs.)	TOTAL CALORIES (per Kg. 24 Hrs.)
0-12 hrs	0	0	0	20*	•
12-24 hrs	8	0	0		
24-36 hrs	8	0	4		
36-48 hrs.	8	0	8	75	30
3, 4, 5 days	0	8	12-16	105-135	50-70
6, 7 days	0	8	20-25	135-160	85-105
8 days	0	0	30	160	125

\* During the first 24 hours no particular attention need be paid the total fluid or the total caloric requirement.

than human milk, and this calcium seems to be more readily absorbed. This is another reason for favoring cow's milk for premature infants. Iron storage is usually incomplete, and it may be necessary to give either an iron medication or a blood transfusion to prevent the development of an iron-deficient anemia.

There is greater need of vitamins in the

gavage until he is capable of taking a formula. A somewhat larger baby may be fed with a medicine dropper covered with rubber tubing until he is able to suck. As soon as premature infants are found to suck well, they should be fed by bottle.

## FORMULAS: TYPES AND PREPARATION

## Milks Used in Infant Feeding.

Cow's milk usually is chosen because it can be modified easily to resemble the composition of human milk, and a safe supply is generally available. Fresh pasteurized, canned evaporated or dried whole milk powder may be used in the preparation of a formula.

The choice of the type of milk for infant feeding will be determined by circumstances. Sometimes a safe, dependable fresh milk supply is not available, or home refrigeration is inadequate. Evaporated milk is distributed widely and will keep without refrigeration until the can is opened, after which it must be stored in a cold place, as is the case with fresh milk. Dried milk also will keep without refrigeration until the can is opened, but it must be kept covered and cold afterward. Some physicians prescribe canned milk for the formula, even when a supply of fresh milk

is available. The vitamins usually found in milk for the needs of the rapidly growing premature infant. Moreover, low-fat cow's milk will contain less vitamin A than full cow's milk. Defective fat absorption will interfere with the absorption of vitamins A and D. Therefore, these two vitamins will have to be added in larger amounts than usual and in concentrate form miscible in water. Vitamin C also needs to be supplied to

when orange juice may be substituted. There is some indication that supplements of the B complex vitamins are also desirable.

Because the sucking or swallowing reflexes may be sluggish, a very small premature infant may be fed entirely by

## COMPOSITION OF MILK MIXTURES FOR FEEDING PREMATURE INFANTS DESIGNED TO PROVIDE 120-130 CALORIES PER KG. OF BODY WEIGHT

(Gordon in Dunham, Ethel C.: *Premature Infants, A Manual for Physicians*, ed. 2, New York, Hoeber-Harper, 1955)

MILK MIXTURE* (PER KG.)	PROTEIN		FAT		CARBO-HYDRATE		CALORIES	
	Per Cent of Cal.	Gm. ozes	Per Cent of Cal.	Gm. ozes	Per Cent of Cal.	Gm. ozes	Total	Per cc.
For smaller premature infants, less than 2,000 Gm (4 lbs. 7 ozs.)								
Half-skimmed milk, 150 cc, plus sugar, 15 Gm (approximately 10% added)	5.3	16	2.6	18	21.8	66	132	0.9
Half-skimmed milk, powdered, 18 Gm, plus sugar, 11 Gm, plus water to make total of 150 cc	6.0	20	2.2	16	19.4	64	121	.8
For larger, more mature infants, 2,000-2,500 Gm. (4 lbs. 7 ozs - 5 lbs 8 ozs):								
Evaporated milk, 70 cc, plus sugar, 6 Gm, plus water to make total of 150 cc.	4.8	16	5.5	41	12.9	43	120	.8
Human milk, 180 cc.	2.2	7	6.7	50	12.9	43	121	.7

\* Acidification of milk with lactic acid is recommended for premature infants by some authorities. Theoretically, it would be indicated because of the tendency for these infants to have low gastric acidity. Practically, lactic acid milk has the advantage of keeping for 24 hours without refrigeration.

At first he will take only a few sips, and he should be allowed to have most of his fluids by way of the bottle. When he

is being deprived of an important source of pleasure and comfort.

## FEEDING PREMATURE INFANTS

The premature infant needs more care in every respect than does a full-term baby. The sucking and the swallowing reflexes may be absent or sluggish, the capacity of the stomach is small, the gastric acidity is low, the absorption of fat is poor, and the digestive enzyme sys-

tem is incompletely developed. Human milk was long considered to be the ideal food for premature infants, and today many physicians continue its use by asking the mother to express her milk from the breasts while the baby still is being cared for in the hospital. However, it has been found that a high-protein, low-fat cow's milk formula will ensure as good and sometimes better weight gain and development in these infants than does human milk, and it is far easier to obtain.

Because of the incomplete antenatal storage and the demands of rapid growth, the premature infant has greater need of calcium, phosphorus and protein than has the full-term infant. Cow's milk has a much higher calcium content

## INITIAL FEEDINGS EVERY 3 HOURS FOR INFANT OF 1,500 Gm.

(Gordon in Dunham, Ethel C. *Premature Infants, A Manual for Physicians*, ed 2, New York, Hoeber-Harper, 1955)

AGE	5% GLUCOSE (cc. per feeding)	WATER (cc. per feeding)	FEEDING MIXTURE (cc per feeding)	TOTAL FLUID (cc. per Kg 24 Hrs )	TOTAL CALORIES (per Kg 24 Hrs )
0-12 hrs	0	0	0	20*	•
12-24 hrs	8	0	0		
24-36 hrs	8	0	4		
36-48 hrs	8	0	8	75	30
3, 4, 5 days	0	8	12-16	105-135	50-70
6, 7 days	0	5	20-25	135-160	85-105
8 days	0	0	30	160	125

\* During the first 24 hours no particular attention need be paid the total fluid or the total caloric requirement

than human milk, and this calcium seems to be more readily absorbed. This is another reason for favoring cow's milk for premature infants. Iron storage is usually incomplete, and it may be necessary to give either an iron medication or a blood transfusion to prevent the development of an iron-deficient anemia.

may be very small and will not supply sufficient of the vitamins usually found in milk for the needs of the rapidly growing premature infant. Moreover, low-fat cow's milk will contain less vitamin A than full cow's milk. Defective fat absorption will interfere with the absorption of vitamins A and D. Therefore, these two vitamins will have to be added in larger amounts than usual and in concentrate form miscible in water. Vitamin C also needs to be supplied to premature as well as to full-term infants. Usually, the synthetic form is given until the baby has gained full-term status, when orange juice may be substituted. There is some indication that supplements of the B complex vitamins are also desirable.

Because the sucking or swallowing reflexes may be sluggish, a very small premature infant may be fed entirely by

gavage until he is capable of taking a formula. A somewhat larger baby may be fed with a medicine dropper covered with rubber tubing until he is able to suck. As soon as premature infants are found to suck well, they should be fed by bottle.

### FORMULAS: TYPES AND PREPARATION

#### Milks Used in Infant Feeding.

Cow's milk usually is chosen because it can be modified easily to resemble the composition of human milk, and a safe supply is generally available. Fresh pasteurized, canned evaporated or dried whole milk powder may be used in the preparation of a formula.

The choice of the type of milk for infant feeding will be determined by circumstances. Sometimes a safe, dependable fresh milk supply is not available, or home refrigeration is inadequate. Evaporated milk is distributed widely and will keep without refrigeration until the can is opened, after which it must be stored in a cold place, as is the case with fresh milk. Dried milk also will keep without refrigeration until the can is opened, but it must be kept covered and cold afterward. Some physicians prescribe canned milk for the formula, even when a supply of fresh milk

available, as they consider it to be more satisfactory. It is possible to obtain each of these milks fortified with vitamin D.

In processing canned and dried whole milk, the fat is blended thoroughly with the other milk solids. When fresh whole milk is used for the formula, the physician may advise the use of the homogenized type, in which, during the process of preparation for the market, the cream is thoroughly blended and distributed throughout the milk.

**Special Forms of Milk.** Under some conditions a pediatrician may advise the use of a lactic acid milk. This may be obtained in dried form, or it may be prepared either by adding lactic acid or a culture to cool boiled milk. Cooling is important before the acid is added, otherwise the milk is too large to pass

by the use of partially skimmed milk, may be advised. Naturally, changes of this kind are made under supervision of the physician.

Goat's milk is used sometimes in

It must be prepared for infant use in much the same fashion as cow's milk.

**Milk Substitutes.** Certain infants are born with a sensitivity to the proteins of all milk. This may be mild enough to cause only irritability, or it may be severe enough to cause violent illness and even death. Several preparations

These contain no milk at all. Soybean preparations are used most commonly. Usually, the protein in the soybean can be taken by infants allergic to the pro-

	Cow's MILK PER CENT	GOAT'S MILK PER CENT	HUMAN MILK PER CENT
Protein	3.5	3.3	1.4
Fat	3.9	4.2	3.7
Carbohydrate	4.9	4.8	7.2
Minerals	0.7	0.7	0.2
Water	87.0	87.0	87.5

adequate nutritionally for such infants. If these types of "milk" are properly supplemented, infants do as well on them as on other bottle feedings.

**Sugars Used in Formula Making.** Cow's milk is adapted to the needs of an animal that reaches maturity in a few months, while the human offspring does not reach maturity for some years. Therefore, it is to be expected that cow's milk will be richer in body-building materials than human milk. By analysis, it is found to be richer in protein and in the mineral salts but less rich in milk sugar. (See table of comparison on this page.) For this reason it is commonly "modified" by dilution with water and the addition of some form of sugar. This may be granulated sugar (sucrose), corn syrup or malt sugar (dextrimaltose). Physicians differ as to the choice of carbohydrate, but sugar and corn syrup are used most often because they can be found at the grocery store and are easy to use. The amount to be added is calculated according to the total number of calories required for 24 hours. The milk used in the day's formula will supply most of the calories, the difference being made up by the addition of carbohydrate. Then water will be added to meet the fluid requirement and to dilute the protein.

#### Nutritional Needs To Be Met by the Formula

The protein requirement for children is much higher per kilogram of body weight than for adults, because of the added needs for growth. Whereas the adult allowance is 1 Gm. of pro-

	CALORIES/Kg. / OF BODY WEIGHT/24 HRS
Basal metabolism	60
Activity	25
Growth	80
Loss in stools	5
Total	120

tein per Kg, the infant will need about 2 Gm. of human milk protein or from 3 to 4 Gm. of cow's milk protein per Kg. of body weight. The difference is due to the fact that the amino acids of human milk protein are more closely adapted for human infant needs than are those of cow's milk protein.

The energy requirement of infants also is much greater per unit of body weight than that of adults. The adult

infant has more active tissue and a greater body surface area for his weight than the adult, consequently, there is a greater heat loss. Additional calories are also needed for growth and activity. The table above shows the distribution of the caloric needs of the infant.

The fluid requirement for young infants is about 150 cc., or 5 ozs., per Kg. of body weight in 24 hours. At first this usually is calculated into the formula, but later boiled water is given to the baby between his feedings.

**Calculation of a Formula.** We shall assume that we have a 3-month-old baby weighing 5 Kg., or 11 lbs., who is to be transferred from breast to bottle feeding. His needs will be as follows:

- 5 x 120 calories = 600 calories
- 5 x 3 to 4 Gm. protein = 15 to 20 Gm. protein.
- 5 x 150 cc fluid = 750 cc. fluid, or 25 ozs

If we look up the protein content of milk, we shall find that it contains 3% Gm. of protein and 70 calories per 100 cc. Therefore, if we use 600 cc., or 20 ozs., of milk, we shall obtain 21 Gm. of protein and 420 calories. The protein is slightly higher than the required amount of 15 to 20 Gm., but this is acceptable for the fast-growing infant. Since we need a total of 600 calories, we shall need 45 Gm., or a scant 4 level tablespoons, of sugar, which at 4 calories per Gm. will yield the remaining 180 calories. Water (150 cc., or 5 ozs.) will be added to bring the total fluid up to 750 cc. At 3 months, this probably would be given in 5 feedings of 150 cc., or 5 ozs., each feeding.

The amount of formula for the baby will be increased gradually, first by the week and then by the month, throughout the period of bottle feeding. To meet the needs for growth, the doctor will change the formula in the first weeks, then it probably will be standardized, except for an increase in quantity.

The lower infant mortality rate and the larger number of well babies are attributed in large part to the great advances made in the last decades in methods of feeding, especially among infants who must be fed artificially. The simplification of the formula and the early supplementation of milk with other foods deserve much credit. However, Mitchell\* states "Perhaps the most significant improvement in artificial feeding of infants is the reduction of bacterial contamination. Sterilization of the formula at the time of preparation and the subsequent storage of it so that bacterial contamination is avoided have been major factors in reduction of morbidity and mortality of gastro-intestinal infections during the first era of life."

\* Mitchell and Nelson: Textbook of Pediatrics, ed. 5, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1950





Fig. 40 Technic for preparing the formula. (Top, left) Equipment needed (Top, right) Testing nipple after washing. (Center, left) Scalding can. (Center, right) Ingredients for formula. (Bottom, left) Measuring water. (Bottom, right) Measuring sugar. (Continued on facing page)

### How To Make the Formula

The mother of the infant should be instructed carefully. The procedure will depend to some extent upon whether the milk is in fresh, canned or dried form. In every case, however, the cleanliness of bottles, nipples and uten-

sils used during the making of the formula must be stressed. The care of the filled bottles for the 24-hour allowance, which is usually made up all one time, is the same, whatever type of milk is used.

### Feeding Equipment

Nursing bottles of heat-resistant glass or of boilable plastic cost more but

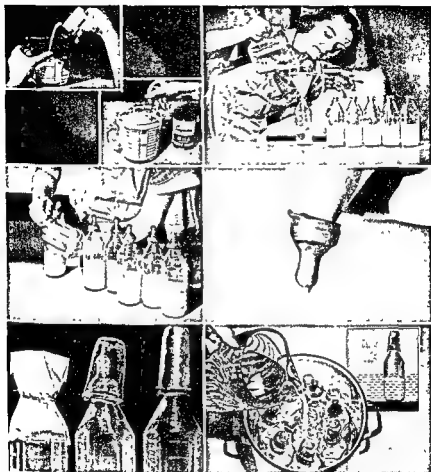


Fig 40 (Continued). (Top, left) Measuring milk (Top, right) Filling the bottles. (Center, left) Putting on nipples (Center, right) Testing nipple for flow. (Bottom, left) Paper, glass and aluminum caps (Bottom, right) Bottles on rack, ready for sterilization

probably are less expensive in the long run than others. Bottles should be of a shape easy to clean with a bottle brush. A dozen 8-oz. bottles for holding formula is a good supply with which to start. A few 4-oz. bottles may be included for water and orange juice.

**Nipples.** There should be a sufficient

number of nipples for use during 24 hours

**Nipple Caps** These may be of glass, plastic, aluminum or paper. The last are inexpensive but can be used only once.

**Cleaning.** After each feeding, bottles and nipples should be rinsed, scrubbed with a detergent and water, using a

bottle brush, then rinsed again thoroughly with warm clean water.

### Formula-Making Equipment

A set of utensils<sup>7</sup> should be reserved if possible, especially for preparing the formula. These should include:

A kettle for sterilizing the bottles.

A wire rack, or a pie tin (upside

the sides

A set of measuring spoons.

A measuring cup, marked in ounces, with a pouring lip.

A large saucepan in which to mix the formula, with a lip to make pouring easy.

Method 11).

A funnel makes it easier to pour the formula into the nursing bottles, but if your saucepan has a lip that pours well, you may be able to get along without

cover, for used nipples.

Bottles to hold a 24-hour supply of formula.

Nipples and nipple caps.

A pair of tongs is convenient.

preparation, such as lactic acid milk formulas. Its great advantage is its ease of use and the elimination of possibilities for contamination of the formula. The method is recommended by the American Hospital Association and is required by law in all hospitals in some states.

<sup>7</sup> Infant Care. Op cit.

There are many advantages for home use also. The procedure is as follows:

Thoroughly clean the table surface, or other work area, and the hands with soap and water.

of can with soap and water, and rinse with boiling water.

Collect ingredients to be used for formula.

Measure required amounts of water,

small amount of formula is test, add a little to each bottle

Put a nipple on each bottle and test the flow of milk.

Cover the nipples loosely with the nipple caps, no matter what type of bottle and cap is used.

kettle is deep enough, or invert another kettle of the same size over it, in order

Cool to room temperature and place in refrigerator.

Preparation of Equipment and Formula Using Sterile Technic. Sterilization of equipment should be done as follows:

## FORMULA PREPARATION WITH STERILE TECHNIC

FRESH MILK	EVAPORATED MILK	DRIED MILK
Take bottle or carton of milk from the refrigerator	Measure required amount of water into saucepan	Measure required amount of cold water and place in saucepan
Wash top under running water and wipe with towel (unless there is an extra protecting bottle cap).	Add required amount of sugar or syrup.	Add required amount of dried milk to water (Use dry measuring spoon and level with knife)
Shake bottle and measure required amount of milk into saucepan	Stir until dissolved	Beat with egg beater until milk and water are blended thoroughly
Measure and add required amount of water.	Bring to boil, boil 5 minutes and remove from heat	Measure required amount of sugar into mixture and stir.
Measure and add required amount of sugar or syrup into mixture and stir	Scald top of can of evaporated milk by dipping it into boiling water or pouring boiling water over it	Bring to boil and let boil 5 minutes while stirring constantly
Bring to boil and boil 5 minutes, stirring constantly.	Open can of milk, measure required amount into saucepan with other ingredients.	
	Stir to mix.	

Shake bottle occasionally so that milk will warm evenly

Remove bottle cap and apply nipple taken from covered jar, unless nipple was placed on bottle when formula was prepared. Be sure not to contaminate the rim of the bottle or the nipple

Test temperature of milk by shaking a few drops on the inside of the wrist

Milk should be warm but not hot.

Test temperature of milk by shaking a few drops on the inside of the wrist

Milk should be warm but not hot.

## SUPPLEMENTARY FOODS

The procedure for the preparation of fresh milk, evaporated milk and dried milk formulas is given in the table above. Use the sterile equipment described, being careful not to contaminate it

**Warming the Feeding.** The following procedure should be observed.

Remove filled nursing bottle from refrigerator.

Place in small, deep saucepan of warm water or in bottle-warmer.

Place over high heat until water begins to bubble

The sequence in which new foods are added to the infant diet and the readiness with which the baby accepts them will vary. Usually, there is little difficulty with vitamin A and D preparations, but the baby may balk at the sour taste of orange juice. The addition of a little sugar and dilution with water may make it more acceptable to him. If he steadily refuses cereal, cooked strained fruits may be given first and cereal added a week or two later.

In an excellent article on the developmental growth of children, Rabino-

vitch<sup>8</sup> states: "Babies differ a great deal in their capacity to handle new foods, and many difficult situations have been created by a rigid adherence to a preconceived schedule. There is no set time for the introduction of orange juice or solid food, and one is always wiser to respect the infant's developmental pace and to allow him to set the pattern."

In the following paragraphs, the authors have indicated the approximate age at which new foods may be introduced, but in the light of the above paragraph it can be seen that there may be a considerable variation in infants.

**Vitamin Supplements.** Both breast-fed and artificially fed infants may need vitamin supplements as early as the 2nd to the 4th week. Vitamin D is particularly essential in temperate climates, where babies do not receive sufficient sunlight to ensure good bone development. Usually, it is prescribed for all babies, no matter where they live. The good bony structure and the fine, straight legs of most of our children today are the result of the early feeding of vitamin D.

Fish-liver oils are one of the oldest and best-known sources of this vitamin. There is wide variation as to the amount of vitamin D in the various oils, hence, the quantity prescribed depends upon the strength. 400 I.U. a day is the dosage recommended by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council.<sup>9</sup>

Fish-liver oils are also excellent

well-being.

By the time the baby is 3 or 4 weeks of age, orange juice is added to supply vitamin C, in which milk is very low. It

<sup>8</sup> Rabinovitch, R. H., and Fischhoff, J.: J. Am. Dietet. A 28 614, 1952.

<sup>9</sup> National Research Council Recommended Dietary Allowances, No. 589, 1958.

should be diluted at first with an equal quantity of cool, boiled water and given once a day, beginning with 1 teaspoonful, and gradually increasing to 2 tablespoonfuls twice daily by the end of the third month. Mothers should be warned that orange juice must not be heated or boiled, or the vitamin C will be destroyed. The great care necessary in preparing a formula is due to the fact that milk is a good culture medium for bacteria.

If the baby is allergic to orange juice, or if there is considerable difficulty in getting him to take it, the synthetic vitamin ascorbic acid may be substituted.

**Cereals.** The baby should be introduced to cereals when he is 2 to 3 months old. Dry, precooked cereal preparations and canned cereals especially prepared for infant feeding are available. Because milk is low in some of the essential nutritional factors, many doctors advise the use of fortified cereals to

mixed with warm formula or whole milk, - but the oil must not be warmed

cooking. The coarse cereals must be strained, and all of them should be thinner than those prepared for the family. Only a small amount of cereal should be used at first, and this generally is given with the midmorning feeding. The original small amount may be increased gradually, and in a few months it may be of a thicker consistency. By the 7th or the 8th month, the baby will be taking from 2 to 5 tablespoonfuls twice during the day.

**Fruits.** Cooked, strained fruits and ripe banana may be added to the baby's diet when he is 3 to 4 months old. Like cereals, these may be purchased in cans or jars, all ready for infant use, or they may be prepared at home. Fruits should

be cooked according to directions in Chapter 39 and put through a purée sieve or strainer. Strained apple sauce, prunes, peaches, pears and apricots are suitable. Ripe mashed banana, thinned out with a little milk, may also be given. Starting with a teaspoonful once or twice a day, the baby will soon take 2 to 3 tablespoonfuls. Most babies love fruit and take it readily. This helps them to accept other solid foods, the taste of which may not appeal to them quite so much.

**Vegetables.** By the 4th month, or even earlier, strained vegetables are usually introduced. Those added first are peas, string beans, spinach, carrots, beets, tomatoes and squash. Fresh, frozen or canned vegetables are suitable. If prepared at home, they should be cooked in a small amount of water, as would be done for the family meal, and the baby's portion put through a purée sieve or a strainer. Again, these and other varieties of vegetables are available in cans or jars in most grocery stores prepared and ready for serving



Fig 41. Signs of good nutrition. Note the straight back, well-developed body, alertness and good co-ordination of this child. (The New York Hospital)

be added a little later.

**Egg Yolk.** Egg yolk is a valuable source of iron, in which milk is particularly low. By the time egg yolk is introduced at 4 to 6 months, the baby's store of iron with which he was born is pretty well used up by his increasing number of red blood cells. Fortunately, enriched cereals and many fruits and vegetables are also good sources of iron, and will contribute to his need for this mineral at about this time.

Eggs are a rather common source of allergy. For this reason the yolk only is given at first, as its protein is less allergenic than the white of the egg, and the egg white contains no iron. The egg is cooked hard by placing it in boiling

given by spoon, or mixed with cereal or

given by the time he is a year old

**Meat.** Meats may be added as early as 2 months or as late as 8 months, depending on the doctor's judgment about the baby's need for them. The most convenient way of serving meat to the baby is by way of the canned, strained beef, beef heart, liver, lamb, chicken, veal and pork preparations available in cans and jars at most grocery stores. To prepare meat for the baby at home, the mother should buy a lamb chop or a slice of



Fig. 42. The rate at which a child gains weight is dependent on many factors. As long as he gains weight and length steadily, and exhibits the other signs of good nutrition, there is no cause for worry. (The New York Hospital)

beef top round, wipe the surface with a clean damp cloth and scrape off the meat fibers with a tablespoon or a dull knife. The resulting meat pulp may be heated in a custard cup set in a small pan of water over a flame, until it is brown. Liver should be parboiled in water until it is brown, cut in small pieces and put through a sieve. A small amount of salt may be added for flavor to home-prepared meats and water or milk if the mixture is too dry. Salt has been added to the canned meats.

Meats add protein, iron and some of the B complex vitamins to the baby's diet. Again, it is best to begin slowly, with a teaspoonful or less, at the evening feeding, increasing the quantity as the baby grows older.

### THE INFANT DIET

By the time they are 6 months old, most babies will be eating all the sup-

plementary foods discussed so far. Besides this, they will be getting either the breast or formula feedings for their milk supply, and they will have started to take some fluids, especially orange juice and water, and perhaps milk, from a cup. A good meal plan for a baby of this age is to give him cereal and egg yolk at breakfast, vegetable and meat for lunch, and cereal and fruit for supper. The quantities will depend on his appetite. If there is a tendency to constipation, giving fruit at breakfast as well as at supper may help. Prunes are particu-

larly good for this. Bread, toast or zwieback to hold in his hands and chew on, particularly if his teeth are beginning to appear. If potato has not already been given, it can be added at this time, mashed fine. It should be thinned out with milk at first until he is used to it. A piece of crisp bacon or a bit of raw, peeled apple is also often enjoyed by babies, when they are allowed to hold it in their hands and suck on it. Puddings made mainly with milk, such as junket, cornstarch, tapioca and rice pudding, may also be added occasionally for variety. A small piece of a white, non-oily fish, such as flounder, haddock or halibut, may be substituted for meat now and then. It should be boiled gently in water to cover until it flakes.

By the time he is 8 months old, it is time to try serving some of the baby's foods mashed with a fork instead of strained through a sieve. The change should be made gradually and should not be forced. Vegetables and fruits may be tried this way first. Meat had better be served strained until after the first year, because it is so much more difficult to swallow.

As the baby becomes acquainted with a variety of things, including his food, he will want to explore it with such tools

as he has at his command. To quote Rabinovitch<sup>10</sup> again: "In the second half of the first year, the baby will begin to mess with food, to feel its texture and consistency, to finger-feed himself as he recognizes his growing dexterity. Such experimentation, often difficult for the cleanliness-and-germ-conscious mother,

developmental realities goes without saying."

### WEIGHT GAIN

The height-weight tables in Part Four will be found useful as a means of comparison in determining average normal gains and as a basis for computing nutritional requirements. It needs to be

weight in 12 months.

During the second half of the first year the weight gain will be slower, but most babies will have trebled their birth weight at the end of the first year. The rate of gain will vary with the size of the parents, the sex of the baby—boys are a little heavier than girls—and the type of body build of the child.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why is breast feeding considered to be an advantage for both mother and baby?

2. What must the mother's attitude be if she bottle-feeds the baby?

3. In what circumstances should breast feeding be discontinued?

4. If breast milk decreases in quan-

tity, what method is used to supplement it?

5. What foods in what quantity should be included in the mother's diet if she is nursing her baby? (See Chap. 12.)

6. The average baby is weaned between the 6th and the 9th months. How should the baby be prepared for this?

7. The premature baby has nutritional problems not found in the full-term baby. What are some of these?

8. Which 2 types of milk are commonly used for premature babies? What are the advantages of each?

forms of cow's milk may be used, and what reasons may influence the choice?

10. In preparing the milk formula, there must be dilution and additions. For what reasons? What are the additions generally used?

11. Babies are quite individual in their growth rates. What warning should be given the mother about height and weight tables?

12. What is meant by self-demand feeding? Why have many doctors advised against a too-rigid feeding schedule?

13. Plan a formula and a feeding schedule for a baby 5 months old and weighing 14 lbs (6½ Kg.).

14. Terminal sterilization is now in general use. What are its advantages? For which type of formula can it not be used? Give directions for preparing a whole-milk formula, including terminal sterilization.

15. Give directions for making an evaporated milk formula, using sterile technique. What are the difficulties of this method of formula preparation?

16. The choice of the type of milk may depend upon circumstances. Which type of milk would you suggest for a young mother traveling with a baby across the United States? Why?

<sup>10</sup> *Op. cit.*



17. Supplementary foods are introduced into the baby's diet gradually. What is the first supplement generally advised and in what amount? In what order are other foods introduced? Suggest reasons for their introduction. Plan

a day's diet for a normal well baby 9 months of age.

18. How does the baby's growing dexterity and his need for exploration affect his food habits at this particular age?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Diet in Early Childhood*  
*Elementary School Age*  
*High School Age*  
*Nutrition Studies of Children*  
*The School Lunch Program*  
*Nutrition Education*  
*Evaluation of Growth and Nutritional Status*

## CHAPTER FOURTEEN

# Nutrition for Growth

The influence of nutrition on the health, the growth and the development of the newborn baby and of the infant has been shown in the previous chapters. Here we shall consider the nutritional needs of children and show how nutrition modifies growth and development and is, in turn, modified by environment.

Just as improvement in infant feeding practices has done much to promote the health of babies and to lower infant mortality, so our knowledge of nutrition has contributed toward the health and the well-being of all children. Studies made of 9-year-old boys show that in the past 50 years in this age group there has been an increase of from 3 to 4 inches in height and of from 5 to 8

growth we usually mean a physical increase in weight or height, or both, as the result of cell multiplication. Development is more difficult to describe and to measure; it deals with muscle strength and co-ordination, with mental capacity and mental health, with attitudes and adaptations. Nutrition affects growth, and it may also have a direct or an indirect influence on the development of the child. Other factors which affect the child and, therefore, are interrelated with nutrition are the emotional, the economic, the social and the hereditary environment in which he finds himself.

**Rates of Growth** Although growth occurs continuously from conception to full maturity, it is not a uniform process but consists of two periods of rapid growth separated by one of more or less uniform but slower increase. The first

in growth and weight may contribute to the well-being of the individual for the rest of his life.

**Growth and Development.** By

<sup>1</sup>From data collected by Boyd, J. D.: *The Child* 16: 58, 1951.

cussed in earlier chapters. We shall now consider the needs of children following the period of infancy, when the growth curve slows down to a steady pace until

the second period of rapid growth is reached in adolescence.

### DIET IN EARLY CHILDHOOD

The diet of the 1 year old differs only slightly from that described in the previous chapter. It will include 1½ to 2 pints of milk a day plus the supplementary foods already discussed. His vegetables and fruits will be mashed instead of strained, and he will have started on "finger foods," such as bread crusts, toast and zwieback, and an occasional piece of raw apple or carrot. He will have been introduced to the family 3-meal schedule with a midmorning and a midafternoon lunch of fruit juice or milk. The cup will largely have supplanted the bottle, and he may have started to try feeding himself with a spoon.

During the second year more solid foods will be added, such as finely chopped fruits and vegetables in place of mashed ones, ready-to-eat cereals as well as hot cereals, chopped liver, lean meat, fish and poultry instead of the strained variety. Whole egg will have replaced egg yolk, and a child of this age is ready to eat 1 egg a day. Cottage cheese and mild American cheese, in combination with other foods, may be used occasionally, and butter or fortified margarine is used with toast or zwieback. He will also enjoy custard and simple puddings. The 2 year old's food should be prepared simply, and most fried foods, rich pastries and cakes should be avoided. Coffee, tea and soft drinks containing caffeine should not be given to young children.

*Making foods easy to eat* for beginners helps them to develop independence in feeding themselves and will pre-

Bread and butter cut into strips are easy to hold and eat.

For the 3 to 5 year old the basis of the diet should remain the same, but the child should be introduced gradually to most of the foods on the family table. He should be encouraged to drink 1 to 1 qt. of milk a day. Some of this may be used in creamed soups and custards or other desserts included in his meals. Whole fruits and vegetables, both cooked and raw, should begin to appear on his menu. Meat should be cut in small pieces rather than ground. Bacon, if it has not been used earlier, often is a welcome addition. It needs to be remem-

cause it is too difficult to manage the food with them.

A midmorning and a midafternoon lunch should be continued for this age group if it does not interfere with the child's appetite at mealtime. Milk, if not consumed at mealtime, or fruit juice, sometimes accompanied by bread, crackers or plain cookies, may be given. Rich cookies, cake and candy should not be eaten between meals but reserved, if used at all, for dessert at the end of a meal.

### Establishing Good Food Habits

It is important that the child's training to establish good food habits be begun during the first year and continued through childhood. The meal hour should be one of peace and quiet

times of the day. It furnishes the occasion for the whole family to visit together

into bite-size pieces can be managed either with fingers or with a spoon

Children are great imitators, they will

**FOOD THAT WILL MEET NEEDS OF HEALTHY CHILDREN FROM 1 TO 6**  
 (Your Child from One to Six, Children's Bureau, U S Dept of Health,  
 Education and Welfare, Publ No 30, 1956)

Food	APPROXIMATE QUANTITY NEEDED DAILY	AVERAGE SIZE OF SERVING FOR EACH AGE		
		1 YEAR	2 AND 3 YEARS	4 AND 5 YEARS
Milk, to drink and in or on foods	3 to 4 measuring cups	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 c	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 c.	1 c
Eggs	1	1	1	1
Meat, poultry, fsh, cottage cheese	1 to 4 tablespoons*	1 tablespoon	2 to 3 table- spoons	4 tablespoons
Potatoes, white or sweet	1 serving	2 tablespoons	3 tablespoons	4 tablespoons
Other cooked vegeta- bles (mostly green leafy or deep yel- low ones)	1 to 2 servings	2 tablespoons	3 tablespoons	3 to 4 table- spoons
Raw vegetables (car- rots, cabbage, to- matoes, lettuce, etc)	1 serving	Small portion (such as $\frac{1}{2}$ medium-sized carrot)		
Fruit for vitamin C	1 medium orange or $\frac{1}{2}$ cup citrus fruit juice or $\frac{1}{2}$ cup tomato juice	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Other fruit (apples, apricots, bananas, pears, peaches, prunes, most ber- ries, etc)	1 serving	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ c
Bread, whole grain or enriched	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 slices	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 slice	1 slice	1 to 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ slices
Cereal, whole grain, enriched or restored	1 serving	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	$\frac{1}{2}$ c
Butter or fortified margarine—spread on bread and used to season vegetables				
Fish-liver oil or vita- min D concentrate or vitamin D milk	400 units	(A quart of vitamin D milk contains 400 units)		

\* One tablespoon means a level tablespoon. A rounded tablespoon is equal to 2 level ones.



Fig. 43. The right start for the baby. Liking comes through learning to like. Teach the flavor of a variety of foods early. (Gesell and Ilg, *Behavior of Infants*, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

accept foods simply because daddy or mother eats them. Therefore, parents should set a good example by including in their own diet foods known to be essential for good body-building. Unfavorable comments regarding wholesome foods should be strictly avoided.

A mother is often overly anxious about her child's food and displays this anxiety before him. A child's appetite may vary, as does that of an adult. Because he does not drink his full quota of milk at one meal does not mean that the lack will not be made up at the next one. There is much virtue in expecting the child to eat the things set before him, but a child who is scolded and made to feel that he is being coerced into eating certain foods is sure not to want them and more than likely will fight for his "rights." Undue nagging is responsible for many of the so-called food-problem children.

If a child is to be offered some unfamiliar food, this should come at the early part of the meal while he is still hungry, and the food should be given in very small quantity. If he rejects it, he should not be forced, but another trial should be made a week later.

Snubbery is bad psychology, since a child soon learns to classify food un-

pleasantly, as with medicine. Tactfulness on the part of the mother is never more necessary than at a child's mealtime. As already stated, the most effective plan is to expect the child to eat the food set before him. Mothers who carry through successful food programs must have faith in their ultimate success.

Children differ greatly in their natural desire for food. Long-term studies such as those conducted at the Yale Clinic of Child Development emphasize this fact

preferences," which should be familiar to every mother, nurse or dietitian dealing with children. For instance, "finicky" food habits and food jags are characteristic in the years from 2 to 4. The 5 to 7 year olds dislike casserole dishes, mixtures, fat meats and gravies. They like raw vegetables better than cooked ones, but dislike strongly flavored cooked vegetables, the root vegetables especially being in disfavor.

Preferences also change with age and should be respected by mother or nurse. Nutritional requirements can be met in spite of this changing pattern with age. The 5 year old prefers plain food, such as meats, potatoes, raw vegetables, milk and fruit. By 6 or 7 he is willing to try new foods and to accept foods previously disliked. By 8 there is a ravenous appetite with few refusals but strong preferences. Food may be judged by odor or color, and food served attractively makes an impression. By 9 the child usually has a keen interest in food, likes to help prepare it and is positive in his likes and dislikes. Some will eat everything at this age, but plain foods still are preferred. Puréed foods and fat on meat continue to be disliked. The authors stress particularly the deep-seated growth reasons which seem to

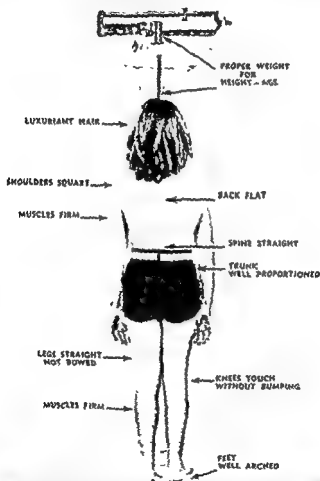
<sup>2</sup> Gesell and Ilg, *The Child from Five to Ten*, New York, Harper, 1946

underlie these changing preferences and refusals.

### ELEMENTARY SCHOOL AGE

New problems with regard to the regular routine of feeding established in the first years may occur when the child

enters elementary school. Contact with other children who have been allowed a greater variety of foods or are accustomed to eating sweets between meals may cause a child to question his own schedule, which up to then he had taken for granted. The excitement of new ex-



The typical healthy child possesses a good physique, well proportioned trunk and limbs, through a program of proper food, exercise and sleep. These are the good health habits which provide a well-built body. The family physician should be consulted if there is any great deviation from normal, such as underweight.

Fig 44 Healthy child, showing a well-built body (Sunlist Growers)

CALORIC CONSUMPTION BY BOYS AND GIRLS FROM 1 TO 10 YEARS OLD<sup>4</sup>

AGE	BOYS		GIRLS	
	Range	Mean	Range	Mean
	Cal.	Cal.	Cal.	Cal.
1	1017-1431	1224	996-1452	1224
2	1154-1682	1418	1159-1719	1439
3	1255-1829	1542	1294-1888	1591
4	1317-1973	1645	1334-1984	1659
5	1508-2176	1842	1368-2080	1724
6	1590-2274	1932	1528-2268	1897
7	1653-2399	2026	1583-2389	1986
8	1751-2589	2170	1661-2433	2047
9	1843-2847	2345	1719-2479	2099
10	1864-2792	2328	1706-2486	2096

periences may interfere at times with digestion and appetite, especially if a fear of being late is developed. It is important that there should be plenty of time for the eating of an adequate breakfast. This is true for lunch also, when there are two school sessions and the child comes home for this meal. If he takes lunch to school and there are no

must take into consideration the type of midday meal which he has had. He may need an afternoon snack when he returns from school, but it should not be of such a nature as to take away appetite for dinner.

Gesell and Ilg<sup>3</sup> state that there is usually a steady rise in appetite from 5 years on: "By 9 years nearly all children have a vigorous and generous appetite." However, they call attention to the fact that it is not wise to expect uniform levels of appetite throughout the day. "Breakfast is the poorest meal, even

table manners, which often are of so much concern to mothers at this period. "From a developmental standpoint graceful table manners constitute a minor problem. . . . Under ordinary conditions the 'manners' improve with age (rather than with scoldings)."

Effort should be made during this whole period to establish taste for all good food. Food prejudices should be discouraged, and a taste for raw vegetables in salad form should be encouraged by serving them regularly. In general, meals should be simple, fried foods and rich desserts being served only occasionally. Parents will find that if they themselves eat the right foods regularly, there is less likelihood of poor food habits in the children of the family.

## Nutritional Requirements

Calories Beal,<sup>4</sup> studying a considerable group of the same children over a period of years, has shown that there is little difference between the caloric intake of boys and girls up to 5 years of age. After this the boys have a consistently higher caloric intake than girls. Her findings are shown at the top of this page.

The Basic Seven foods should be the first source of calories. They should be

<sup>4</sup> Beal, V. A., Burke, B. S., and Stuart, H. C.: Nutrition studies on children living at home, *Am. J. Dis. Child.* 70:214, 1945.

crease with increasing age. . . . call attention to the inadvisability of over stressing the development of good

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*

## DAILY FOOD NEEDS OF THE 6 TO 12 YEAR OLD\*

Each of the 7 groups which follow should be included in every day's meals.

## Group 1

Dark green leafy and deep yellow vegetables

Such as broccoli, kale, green peppers, turnip and other greens, carrots, sweet potatoes, winter squash

Raw, cooked, frozen, canned

1 or more servings daily

## Group 2

Citrus fruit, tomatoes, raw cabbage and other high vitamin C foods

Such as oranges, grapefruit, lemons, limes, tomatoes, muskmelons, fresh pineapples, strawberries, raw cabbage, green peppers and turnips (If fruits are hard to get, use more, especially raw, from Groups 1 and 3.)

1 or more servings daily

## Group 3

Potatoes and other vegetables and fruit:

Such as potatoes, beets, celery, corn, eggplant, lettuce, mushrooms, rutabagas, summer squash, apples, apricots, peaches, pears, rhubarb, prunes, raisins, dates, figs and other fruits and berries

Raw, cooked, frozen, canned, dried

2 or more servings daily

## Group 4

Milk, cheese, ice cream

Milk—whole, skim, evaporated, condensed, dried, buttermilk

3 to 4 cups daily

The following portions contain as much calcium as a cup of milk: 1 oz Cheddar cheese, 4 ozs cream cheese, 12 ozs cottage cheese, 1/2 or 3 large cups of ice cream.

## Group 5

Meat, fish, poultry, eggs, dried beans and peas, nuts

1 serving of meat or fish daily, if possible

4 or more eggs a week

2 or more servings a week of nuts, peanut butter or dried peas or beans

## Group 6

Bread and cereals, whole grain or enriched and restored—every day

## Group 7

Butter or fortified margarine daily

place of them

\* Your Child from Six to Twelve, Children's Bureau, Federal Security Agency, 1949

supplemented by additional bread and potatoes and desserts, and occasionally by other sweets, to meet the total caloric needs.

Calories must be supplied in adequate quantity in the diet if growth is to occur. When the caloric intake is below the needed requirement of the child, protein foods will be used for energy instead of for tissue building. Macy and Hunscher<sup>5</sup> have shown that "a difference in intake of as few as ten calories per kilogram of body weight per day (or approximately four calories per pound) may make the difference between progress and failure in satisfactory growth."

<sup>5</sup> Macy, I. G., and Hunscher, H. A. I. Nutrition 45:189, 1951

**Protein.** Protein needs increase with growth, and protein intake will increase with increased caloric intake if a variety of foods is eaten. A quart of milk a day, from 4 to 7 eggs a week, a serving of meat or fish daily, and 2 or more servings a week of nuts, peanut butter or dried peas or beans, will provide the necessary protein. Protein is obtained largely from carbohydrates, including candy and soft drinks in excess, both the quantity and the quality of the protein intake will suffer.

**Calcium and Iron.** A quart of milk daily will provide the necessary calcium as well as good quality protein and some of the essential vitamins. Iron needs are met by an adequate intake of meat,



eggs, green, leafy vegetables, whole-grain and enriched breads and cereals and potatoes. Dried peas and beans and molasses will contribute a share of iron if these foods form a staple article of the diet.

**Vitamins** Vitamin needs are more likely to be met when a variety of foods is included in the diet. Milk, butter, fortified margarine and green and yellow vegetables and fruits will provide vitamin A. The continued use of fish-liver oils is recommended by some physicians for school-age children to ensure good bone and tooth development. Milk fortified with vitamin D will ensure some intake of this vitamin. The B complex vitamins will be included if good-quality protein foods, as well as enriched bread and cereals, appear frequently in the diet. In our Southern states, where cornmeal rather than wheat flour is commonly used, it is important to obtain enriched cornmeal when this is possible. In at least one Southern state, rice must be enriched by law. Vitamin C needs are not met as easily as other nutritional requirements, as the food sources are limited in number. Citrus fruits and tomatoes are excellent sources, but not available in some communities except during the growing season. Potatoes are a good, cheap source of this vitamin, but they are not a staple article of diet in some of our regional and national dietary patterns. Cabbage and other leafy vegetables, particularly raw, will contribute some of this vitamin to the diet whenever these foods are served. Foods to include daily in the diet of school-age children will be found on page 175.

### HIGH SCHOOL AGE

It is during adolescence that the second very rapid growth period occurs. This is usually between the ages of 12 and 14 for girls and 14 and 16 for boys, although it may be sooner for early-maturing children and somewhat later for late-maturing children. Physical growth occurs in all directions, in length

of bones, in muscle mass, in the laying down of body fat in the soft tissues, and in the widening of the shoulders in boys and the broadening of the hips in girls. The total period of rapid growth seldom lasts more than 2 or 3 years, when adult build and stature are reached. However, growth in skeletal muscle mass continues, particularly in the boy. A further "lengthening out" may occur in the late adolescent period in both boys and girls.

As may be expected, the nutritional needs to be met by this rapid growth process are increased tremendously. Stuart,<sup>6</sup> in an article dealing with physical growth during adolescence, says: "Food requirements are extremely high during pubescence. Fortunately the appetite is usually voracious, so that enough suitable food will be eaten if it is made available. However, unsuitable foods will satisfy the appetite, and faulty habits of food selection formed in earlier years will often be carried over into this period and prevent the taking of an adequate diet. The principal need is for a high protein diet, covered by a liberal allowance of calories."

During this period of rapid physical growth, there is a concurrent maturing of the whole personality, with its attendant strains and stresses. There is a striving for independence from parental restriction, coupled with an increased need for guidance and reassurance. The adolescent must be given the opportunity to make his own decisions, and parents must be understanding of this urge for independence, yet be willing to help when asked. At this time coffee and tea may begin to appear in the diet as an indication of being "grown up." There is no harm in this if the intake is not excessive, and if it is not substituted for milk. The habits of the parents in this, as in many other matters, are often the deciding factor, as the child patterns himself on the adults whom he knows best.

<sup>6</sup> Stuart, H. C.: *Am J Dis Child.* 74:495, 1947.

Girls are apt to attempt to reduce or to keep thin at this time. Again, there is no great harm in this so long as the essential foods to meet the nutritional needs are included in the diet. Unfortunately, often it is milk (see middle section of chart on p. 179), eggs,

many years, the incidence among young women between 16 and 18 years of age is higher than any other age group. Physicians are inclined to attribute this in part to poor food habits and the fad of slenderizing.

All the foods listed under Daily Food Needs of the 6 to 12 Year Old are essen-

calcium requirement, and girls during their period of rapid growth need at least a quart of milk and preferably somewhat more daily. The increased milk intake will provide good-quality protein for growth as well. All the other foods listed, eaten in sufficient quantity, will provide for the greatly increased physiologic needs during this period of growth and stabilization.

Besides adequate calcium, protein and calories, girls need an increased iron intake when menses begin. An adequate amount of foods high in iron, such as lean meats, liver, eggs, green, leafy vegetables, enriched breads and cereals and potatoes, should be included in the daily food intake. This is a period when the young girl, beginning to look forward to eventual marriage and motherhood, may be taught in school and in

## NUTRITION STUDIES OF CHILDREN

Although children's diets have improved over the years with the spread of the knowledge of nutrition and improved economic conditions, we are a long way from reaching the goal of providing a good diet for every child. The most common inadequacies occur in the calcium, the vitamin A and the ascorbic acid intake as compared with the desirable amounts recommended by the National Research Council.

**Influence of Age.** In a report on a series of studies,<sup>7</sup> it has been shown that children of elementary school age in general have better diets than teenagers. The younger children drink more milk and eat more servings of citrus

relatively better food habits than older children. Some of this is shown in the

of the diets of girls was consistently below that of boys in every age group, with 16-year-old girls making the poorest showing.

At all ages the nutrients most often low in the diet were calcium and ascorbic acid. Even when the dietary intake of calcium by these children was compared on the basis of meeting 67 per cent of the National Research Council

<sup>7</sup> Nutrition Commission Report, 1933, 1935.

Allowances, a level considered to be minimally adequate, the following data were obtained: Ten per cent of the boys

11-year-old groups this figure dropped to 15 per cent for boys and 25 per cent for girls. At 12 to 14 years of age, 30 per cent of both boys and girls failed to meet minimal requirements for calcium, and at 15 and over, 21 per cent of the

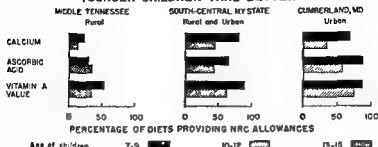
boys and 48 per cent of the girls had diets inadequate in calcium. Since calcium in the diet must be obtained largely from milk, cheese and ice cream, it can be seen that these foods are dangerously low in many teen-agers' diets.

**Studies on Vitamin C Intake.** That even elementary school children may be markedly deficient in meeting nutritional needs is shown by a nutrition survey of more than 500 children in Louisiana, studied in the winter of 1950



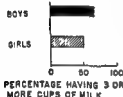
Fig 45. Compare the well-nourished, alert boy on the left with the apathetic, poorly nourished child on the right. Food can make the difference. [Pattison, M., Barbour, H., and Eppright, E: *Teaching Nutrition*, Iowa State College Press, Ames, Iowa, 1957]

## YOUNGER CHILDREN FARE BETTER



## BOYS DRINK MORE MILK

10th grade pupils in up-State NY



## MORE MILK MEANS MORE CALCIUM

Children in Cumberland, Md

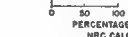
MILK (cups)

Less than 2

2 to 3

3 to 4

4 or more



## BOYS GET MORE CALCIUM

13 to 15 year olds in areas in TENNESSEE

Boys

Girls

NEW YORK STATE

Boys

Girls



## HIGHER FAMILY INCOMES

## GIVE CHILDREN MORE MILK, MEAT, FRUIT AND VEGETABLES

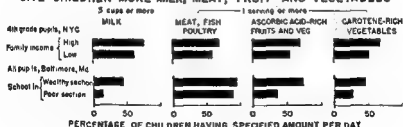


Figure 46

[Nutrition Committee News, July, 1952, Bureau of Human Nutrition and Home Economics, N.P.S., USDA, Washington 25, D. C.]

and in the fall and the winter of 1951.\* More than half the children were found to have inadequate serum ascorbic acid levels. However, there was an age dif-

ference even here. Of the younger children (7 to 9 years), 61 per cent met the minimum requirements for vitamin C recommended by the National Research Council for this age group, while only 44 per cent of the 10- to 12-year age

\* Dallyn, M. H., and Moschette, D. S. J. Am. Dietet. A 718, 1952

group met the recommended minimum. The authors found a significant relation between the serum ascorbic acid levels and the degree of gum changes, that is, the lower the serum ascorbic acid level, the more serious the gum changes. (See Chap. 20.)

**Income Levels and Culture Patterns.** A comparative study of the diets of students in private and in public high schools in New York City reported by the Milbank Memorial Fund<sup>10</sup> shows that high-income level and culture are not complete assurances that food intake will be adequate in every respect. The average intake of the private-school pupils generally exceeded recommended allowances of the nutrients protein, iron, calcium, vitamin A and ascorbic acid which were included in the study. Both boys and girls, however, fell below the recommended level of calcium per kilogram, and the girls were short in iron per kilogram. The public-school pupils

<sup>10</sup> Wiehl, D. G., and Berry, K. Milbank Mem. Fund Quart. 23: 353, 1945.

generally had a lower average of these nutrients, and the total intake was seldom more than equal to recommended standards and sometimes fell below them. Certain cultural differences were noted. In the Jewish group, the diets contained larger amounts of calcium and vitamin C than did those of the group of Italian parentage, while the latter group was higher in vitamin A. That, in general, children of families with higher incomes have better diets than those of low-income families is shown graphically on the bottom section of the chart on page 179.

**Causes of Poor Food Intake.** The factors that influence poor food intakes of children are those which one would expect. Low-income families and large families with moderate incomes are those in which the children most often have nutritionally inadequate food intakes. Ignorance of the homemaker of what constitutes a good diet frequently leads to poor food habits in the child. Psychological conflicts, not uncommon

### SIGNS OF OVER-ALL NUTRITION OF THE CHILD\*

#### A WELL-NOURISHED HAPPILY ADJUSTED CHILD HAS

*general appearance of vitality and well-being, eyes clear and bright with no dark circles beneath them, hair smooth and glossy*

*skeleton well grown and sturdy, strong*

*body functions proceeding normally as evidenced by good appetite and digestion, regular elimination, sound, refreshing sleep, stable nervous system; good endurance, and prompt, adequate recovery from fatigue.*

#### A POORLY NOURISHED CHILD

*lacks several or all characteristics of good nutrition, depending on degree or type of malnutrition.*

*may have strained expression, dark circles beneath eyes, pale mucous membranes of mouth and eyelids*

*may be hyperactive, without physical endurance, hyperirritable, high strung, or dull, listless and inactive*

*has subcutaneous fat varying from almost absent to excessive*

*has lesions of specific nutrient deficiencies that may or may not be evident*

*ately the skeleton and the muscles and give rounded contour to the body*

\* Adapted by Dairy Council Digests, May, 1955, from Martin, E. A. Roberts' Nutrition Work with Children, Univ. Chicago Press, 1954.



Fig. 47 Milk supplied by the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). (Left) With tense anticipation, a Greek refugee child watches as his cup is filled with milk. (Right) At the feeding center in Barrio Fugoso, Manila, this small boy relishes his daily lunch—a porridge made from rice and milk.

in the adolescent, may lead to rejection of food, with resulting underweight, or to overeating, often of nutritionally "empty foods," and consequent overweight, another form of malnutrition. The omission of breakfast, particularly by teen-age girls, is an important factor in the inadequacy of food intake in so many of this group.

#### Characteristics of Well-Nourished and Poorly Nourished Children.

The table by Martin on page 180 lists the characteristics of good and faulty nutrition which may be easily recognized by doctors, nurses and teachers. It is essential that all those who come in contact with children become aware of the fact that the signs of poor health in children are due often to undernutrition, so that steps may be taken to remove the cause.

#### THE SCHOOL LUNCH PROGRAM

Both parents and teachers long ago recognized the importance of some pro-

vision for the school lunch, and in many communities there was some concerted effort toward providing for this in individual schools. School lunch programs originated in Europe in the early 1800's, and have since spread throughout the world. In the United States, Federal assistance became available first in 1933. This was followed by distribution through the Department of Agriculture of surplus farm commodities. Eventually, the National School Lunch Act, which became effective in 1946, put the school lunch program on a permanent basis. The Act is administered by the Department of Agriculture with the co-operation of the State Departments of Education.

**Organization.** The operation of the school lunch plan is in the hands of a local sponsoring agency, which generally consists of school officials. Applications for aid may be made by both public and private nonprofit schools. The Federal funds are used to reimburse the



Fig 48 A school lunch program in action in Quebec, Canada.  
(The Canadian Red Cross Society)

schools for a percentage of the cost of the food purchased. These funds must be matched in amount with funds from state sources. In addition, from time to time, the U. S. Department of Agriculture offers the schools supplies of foods, both from its own surplus-removal purchases and from special purchases for the school lunch program.

**Type Lunches.** Reimbursement to the schools is made according to the

one third to one half of the daily intake

beverage.

2. Two ozs. fresh or processed meat,

poultry, fish or cheese, 1 egg, ½ cup cooked dry peas or beans, or 4 tbsp of peanut butter.

3 Three-fourths cup of vegetables or fruit, or both

4 One or more portions of bread or muffins or other bread made of whole-grain or enriched flour.

5 Two teaspoons of butter or fortified margarine.

The Type B lunch, used by schools with limited facilities, furnishes only two thirds as much food, and it should be supplemented by food brought from home. Where lunchroom facilities are entirely lacking, one half pint of whole milk (known as Type C lunch) may be furnished.

It is estimated that the National School Lunch Program reaches one third of the schoolchildren in the United

States and that three fourths of these children receive the Type A lunch. Allowing for children receiving a school lunch not subsidized by the National School Lunch Program, and for those

of our country. The nurse, either as homemaker or as a worker in public health, may well find herself called upon to contribute to such a program.

What can be accomplished in improving the food intakes in children is shown in the report of a program of nutrition education in Ascension Parish, La., carried out from 1944-1948 and re-evaluated in 1950-1951.<sup>11</sup> The project included participation by schoolteachers, school lunchroom managers and parents, and was carried on by them after the original investigator left. Nutrition was made part of the school curriculum and centered upon the needs, the interests and the age levels of the children. It became the core of a school program which was based on community needs, having as its theme "The Improvement of Living Through Community Education." As can be seen by the chart below, marked improvements in food intakes occurred during this program. That these have been maintained by and large is shown by the 1950-1951 evaluation.

<sup>11</sup> Whitehead, F. ■ J. Am. Dietet. A 28:622, 1952

#### STUDY IN NUTRITION EDUCATION IN ASCENSION PARISH, LA.\*

FOOD GROUP	PERCENTAGE OF NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL ALLOWANCES		
	1944-45	1947-48	1950-51
Milk	48	57	60
Eggs	50	76	80
Fruit			
Noncitrus	56	76	78
Citrus	35	60	69
Meat, lean only	109	124	89
Whole grains	29	84	■
Butter, fortified margarine	23	40	58
Potatoes, Irish, sweet	57	91	93
Vegetables			
Green leafy	18	47	45
Other	110	123	126



A similar project<sup>12</sup> conducted from 1952 to 1955 in a group of Kansas City, Mo., schools resulted not only in improvement of children's dietary habits but also in the formulation of recommendations involving all teachers and the entire school curriculum in nutrition education programs.

### EVALUATION OF GROWTH AND NUTRITIONAL STATUS

It has been the custom for many years to evaluate a child's progress by comparison with others of his age group. Height and weight tables often have served as the only criteria by which growth has been measured. This, however, tells us nothing of the child's growth in relation to his hereditary background, nor of environmental factors

but it must be remembered that they tell only part of the story. Moreover, a child's growth is better evaluated in terms of his own previous performance.

In judging the total nutritional status of a child we look for many factors. Good bone and tooth development, good posture, shining hair, good muscle turgor, clear skin and eyes, plus alertness and curiosity, are all indications of good health and reflect the effect of proper nutrition.

Long-term studies now are in progress in such research centers as The Child Research Center in Denver, Colo., The Fels Research Institute for the Study of Human Development at Yellow Springs, Ohio, The Department of Maternal and Child Health at the Harvard School of Public Health in Boston, Mass., and many others, to observe the child's growth and development in relation to his own pattern and to study the interrelationships of all the environmental factors, social, economic, nutritional,

psychological, as well as the hereditary factors, on this pattern and rate. In this

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. In what ways may environment affect the nutrition of a child?

2. Make out a menu for a day for a rapidly growing 2-year-old child. How much milk should be included? In what manner may a child this age prefer to eat some of his food? Should this be permitted? Why?

3. It is important to establish good food habits in the early years of childhood. Outline factors other than the supplying of adequate food that are important. Criticize methods which are sometimes used to entice a child to eat.

4. At what age do caloric intake dif-

5. Which foods should appear daily in the diet of the school child and in what quantities?

6. Make out a menu for 5 box lunches a child can carry to school, each of which will meet approximately a third of his daily requirement.

7. New feeding problems may occur after a child enters elementary school. What are these, and how may they be met?

8. What are the food needs during the rapid growing period in adolescence? Do girls have additional nutritional needs compared with boys? What are these and why do they occur? Which foods should be included daily in the diet of both boys and girls at this age?

9. What evidences have we of malnutrition among schoolchildren? What are some of the causes of such malnutrition? What is being done about them?

<sup>13</sup> Symposium, *The Child*, Vol. 16, No. 4, December, 1951.

<sup>12</sup> O'Keefe, P. R., and Whitehead, F. E. Research in Action. The Third Year, Kansas City, Mo., Public Schools, 1955.

10. How can the school nurse make an effective contribution toward the development of a good school lunch program?

11. What do we mean by growth? What is meant by development? Why

to give us better methods of evaluation?

12. List the indications of good nutritional status.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Adult Nutrition*  
*Our Aging Population*  
*Food Habits of Older People*  
*Food Requirements of Older People—*  
*Calories, Protein, Minerals, Vitamins*  
*Planning Meals for Older People*

## CHAPTER FIFTEEN

# Geriatric Nutrition

Geriatrics is that phase of medicine that deals with the prevention and the treatment of the diseases of old age. Geriatric nutrition is concerned with the conserving of health with advancing years and with the delay of some of the

ing strength and vigor, but it is one which can be practiced three times a day and is abused more frequently than any other.

—better still in childhood

### ADULT NUTRITION

The science of nutrition gives major consideration to the food requirements for growth, and with good reason. It is during this period that nutritional deficiencies are most likely to show. On the other hand, it is also true that this is the time when results of good nutrition are the most striking. But the time has come for more consideration of adults, both young and old. Webster defines an adult as "a person . . . who has reached ma-

but certainly the surest foundation for a long period of usefulness and activity is that laid in childhood and preserved through youth and adult life. The rela-

younger, than their predecessors of a generation earlier. This trend in our young people is undoubtedly due to better health practices while they were children. The same factors are also contributing to better health and strength in our adult population, but there is still room for improvement.

tain it. Good nutrition is only one of the health practices which help in maintain-

The nervous strain under which business executives and professional people frequently work can be tolerated only by a body in prime physical condi-

tion. Men and women in our factories today are protected from industrial hazards, but only recently has the provision of the right food for physical stamina had recognition as an important phase of industrial health work. The nutritional indiscretions and deficiencies during the active period of life may not strike abruptly, but they take their toll in inefficiency, minor ailments, discomforts and increased susceptibility to infections. Premature senility is not inevitable, but it is all too frequent. It is false optimism to expect a body to continue to function normally after years of poor food habits. Men and women past middle life should be able, because of their experience, to make the best contribution to humanity. The lengthening of the active period of life would permit many people to contribute more richly and more extensively to the well-being of families and communities.

Sherman was a strong advocate of "the nutritional improvement of life" and ably expressed his ideas on the subject in a series of articles<sup>1</sup> under the title of "Nutrition Engineering." His introductory paragraph is as follows:

It has been recognized for centuries that signs of senility might be deferred, but few people were concerned until it was too late. Roger Bacon, the scientific monk of the 13th century, claimed that the three causes of old age were infection, negligence and ignorance. With regard to aging, Bacon said

No one wishes to take thought in regard to methods of prevention, not even physicians, since we see that scarcely one physician in a thousand will give this matter even slight attention. Very rarely does it happen that one pays sufficient heed to the rules of health. No one does so in his youth, but sometimes one

penence.

As a method of attack on the problem Bacon suggested "that the wonderful and ineffable utility and splendor of experimental science may appear and the pathway may be opened to the greatest secret of secrets." Experimental science is pointing the way, as Bacon predicted, but human nature has not changed

not do so more often when it is given so little intelligent care. The delicate organs and tissues of the body continue to do their respective jobs for many decades if given half a chance. No one expects a man-made machine to last as long as that without special care and renewal of parts. Nature has a remarkable ability to repair or compensate for worn-out or injured parts if given the opportunity and the right materials. As Sherman has put it

It is becoming increasingly clear that, however important the inherited constitution, there is yet a great opportunity open to each of us to provide for such a favorable internal environment as shall

renders service of the greatest social value.

The extra years which the science of nutrition offers, whether these be estimated at seven or ten, more or less, are

<sup>1</sup> Sherman, H. C.: Nutrition Engineering. J. Franklin Inst., July, Aug., Oct., Nov., 1944.

*Adult Nutrition*  
*Our Aging Population*  
*Food Habits of Older People*  
*Food Requirements of Older People—*  
*Calories, Protein, Minerals, Vitamins*  
*Planning Meals for Older People*

## CHAPTER FIFTEEN

# Geriatric Nutrition

Geriatrics is that phase of medicine that deals with the prevention and the treatment of the diseases of old age. Geriatric nutrition is concerned with the conserving of health with advancing years and with the delay of some of the

ing strength and vigor, but it is one which can be practiced three times a day and is abused more frequently than any other.

## ADULT NUTRITION

The science of nutrition gives major consideration to the food requirements for growth, and with good reason. It is during this period that nutritional deficiencies are most likely to show. On the other hand, it is also true that this is the time when results of good nutrition are the most striking. But the time has come for more consideration of adults, both young and old. Webster defines an adult as "a person . . . who has reached ma-

parent effort or precautionary measures; but certainly the surest foundation for a long period of usefulness and activity is that laid in childhood and preserved through youth and adult life. The relative values of scientific health engineering and heredity are already beginning to show up in the physical and mental development of the present generation. It is a statistical fact that boys and girls who entered college during the decade ending in 1943 were taller, though younger, than their predecessors of a generation earlier. This trend in our young people is undoubtedly due to better health practices while they were children. The same factors are also contributing to better health and strength in our adult population, but there is still room for improvement.

maintain "full strength" if they ever attain it. Good nutrition is only one of the health practices which help in maintain-

The nervous strain under which business executives and professional people frequently work can be tolerated only by a body in prime condition.

Adult nutrition problems deserve and demand consideration even more as our adult population increases. Less than half the population was over 20 years of age in 1850, 55 per cent were over 20 in 1920 and about 69 per cent were over 20 in 1950. The nutrition of these 69 per cent of the population is the subject of this chapter.

The life expectancy has increased at an unprecedented rate in the last century. Modern sciences have made it possible for more babies to live to grow up and for more people to live to grow

40 years and the next 30 years up to 1900 showed an increase of 7 years in life expectancy. During the first half of the 20th century the life expectancy in the United States has increased approximately 20 years, making the present figure close to 67 years.

The number of people 65 years and over in the United States was over

foods to provide the essential amount of B complex vitamins to take care of the extra carbohydrate. Sometimes the difficulties of marketing and food preparation prompt a simplification of meals with the omission of fresh fruits and vegetables. This tendency was disclosed by a survey made of the food habits of families in Baltimore.<sup>4</sup> Records were kept of the amount and the frequency of use of certain foods during one week. The 943 families in the survey were divided according to the age of the homemaker. The ratings of the food habits shown in Figure 50 indicate that by far the largest number of unsatisfactory diets were found in the homes where the homemaker was over 60 years of age. When the types of foods omitted were studied, it proved to be the green and the yellow vegetables, fruits and milk that were most often inadequate (Fig 51).

Nutritional indiscretions among adults are not confined to any particular class, although the problems among low-income groups are apt to be greater. Too much, too little or the wrong kind of food—each is a problem for special consideration.

### FOOD REQUIREMENTS OF OLDER PEOPLE

Undoubtedly the greatest factor in the prevention of senility is the adoption of a suitable diet. It has been demonstrated repeatedly by animal experiments that the life span of animals may be increased by raising the amounts of protective foods beyond those consid-

to exceed the rate of increase for some younger groups. The progress in health sciences, which primarily is responsible for this increase, is the control of diseases in younger age groups. Medical science knows less about degenerative and chronic diseases of middle and old age, but progress has been made in recent years in the study and the practice of geriatrics, and nutrition is an important phase of prevention and treatment.

### FOOD HABITS OF OLDER PEOPLE

The food habits of older people do not always fall in line with their food needs. Many of them develop a craving for sweets and seldom make the necessary compensation in the choice of other

One of the marked changes in old age is decreased metabolism—a lowering of the body fires. Metabolism is reduced from 10 to 30 per cent as age advances.

<sup>3</sup> Current Population Reports, U S Dept of Commerce, Dec. 18, 1957.

<sup>4</sup> Downes, J., and Baranovsky, A. Milbank Mem Fund Quart 23 161, 1944



Fig 49 Two long-faithful volunteers happy doing a needed job (The New York Hospital)

not to be thought of as added to age. Rather, they are inserted at the prime (in any life that was not begun too soon to get the full benefit of the newer knowledge). In social-economic terms this means a continuation of the current increase in adult expectation, and with a smaller percentage of years of dependency

It has been shown that a

food habits. We cite a few examples. the 80-year-old man who learned to eat salads when a thoughtful housekeeper chopped them to make them easier to eat yet kept them colorful and attractive.

who still liked to try new gadgets and ready-prepared foods ■ make work easier and yet provide interest and variety in meals for two. "Never too old to learn" is a far truer adage than "You can't teach an old dog new tricks."

None of us is too young to begin

thinking about improving the health of later years. People buy annuities and life insurance for the future, why not consider other steps which may give even greater security and comfort?

### OUR AGING POPULATION

The aged and the aging should be clearly distinguished. the aged are people, aging is a process. According to Stieglitz<sup>2</sup> "Aging is continuous. It

factor of time in living." Thus birth, growth, maturation and senescence are all part of the normal aging process. Aging proceeds more rapidly during the growing years because change is more rapid at that time. In the adult the aging process slows down and the rate of this change may be further retarded and the active period of life may be extended by good health practices

<sup>2</sup> Stieglitz, E. J. Geriatric Medicine, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1943.

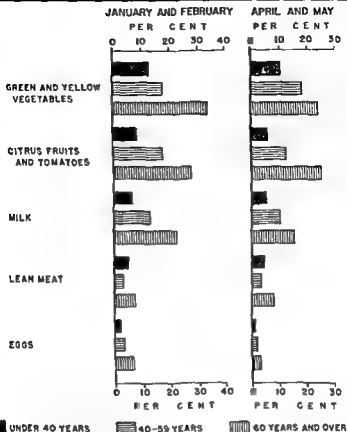


Fig 51. Food habits classified as unsatisfactory for amounts [specific food groups according to age of homemaker (percentage distribution)] (Downes, J., and Sarenovsky, A.: *Milbank Mem. Fund Quart.* 23:161, 1944)

More often the appetite prompts middle-aged people to eat more food than they need, and the result is a tendency

day is past when a reduction in the amount of all foods is a satisfactory solution. It is essential to reduce consumption of empty calories—rich desserts, cakes, candies, fats and alcohol.

Reduction in total calories involves the most difficult task of alteration of

food habits. Habits of eating play a significant role in nutritional problems.

fixed they become. The food habits of

the meals for these persons—the homemaker herself, the nurse or a house-



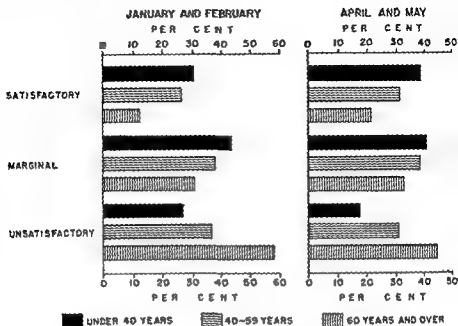


Fig 50. Food habits in relation to age of homemaker (percentage distribution of composite ratings) (Downes, J., and Baranovsky, A. *Milbank Mem. Fund Quart.* 22 161, 1944)

At the same time bodily activity is decreased, so that the caloric need is also reduced. There is wartime evidence from Europe that the imposed caloric restrictions reduced the incidence of certain degenerative diseases in man. In the Netherlands<sup>3</sup> throughout the winter of 1944 to 1945, the average caloric intake for adults was from 1,200 to 1,400, and even lower in the spring. While clinical evidence of starvation was common in urban areas and there was an increase in tuberculosis, ulcer and intestinal diseases, interestingly enough heart disease, hypertension and obesity were greatly diminished. These degenerative diseases associated with obesity are at the top of the list of causes of death or disability among middle-aged and older people in the United States. Insurance companies, from whom the most reliable statistics are available, have long been warning adults more

against the habit of overeating than undereating.

### Calorie Needs

The Food and Nutrition Board recommends for each decade between 25 and 45 a reduction of 3 per cent of the requirements at 25 and a reduction of 7.5 per cent for each decade between 45 and 65. After 65, the decline in caloric needs for each decade is about 10 per cent. The food sources of these reduced calories must be chosen with care to include all essential factors and in higher proportion than in former years because of less total food consumed. Sometimes appetite fails to tempt the very elderly to eat enough food or the right kind of food. The undernutrition which may occur can often be relieved by attention to foods with low bulk and concentrated calories, high in protective values and prepared in a way which the person enjoys.

<sup>3</sup> Stare, F. J. *Nutrition Rev.* 3 225, 1945.

take should always be taken into account.

### Mineral Needs

The calcium needs of older people seem to be appreciably greater than those of younger adults. Studies made at Michigan State College by Roberts *et al.*<sup>8</sup> show that the calcium requirements of their group of older women were higher than figures obtained previously on younger women. Loss of calcium from the bone leads to osteoporosis

calcium absorption.

More research is needed on why older women seem to fracture bones, especially hips, more often than men. Is it that men tend to drink more milk than women, or is there a sex difference in the aging of bones?

At present the best suggestion is to provide liberal amounts of milk and milk products. These may be used in cooking, creamed soups, milk desserts, etc. The use of nonfat dry milk is to be encouraged in cooking as an inexpensive source of good protein and calcium. Present evidence favors from 0.8 to 1.0 Gm of calcium per day.

Needs for other minerals are apparently similar to those for all adults, as discussed in Chapter 6.

### Vitamin Needs

Unfortunately, little is known regarding the vitamin requirements of older people and whether there is a change with age or associated with chronic disease. There is no evidence, however, that vitamin requirements are reduced with advancing years, and it is safe to assume that older people need all the vitamins that they did in earlier years.

If there has been merely a marginal supply of any of the vitamins in the diet

for many years, then a reduction in total food eaten may be sufficient to precipitate minor nutritional deficiencies. The time factor which is inevitable with advancing age may permit cumulative effects to show up.

The B complex requirement of older people has been the subject of clinical investigation. The apparent list which

people inadvertently reduce the B complex intake with reduced calories and fail to make a good from other sources. As a result, slow depletion of body reserves is likely, since these factors are not stored to any extent.

Tuohy<sup>9</sup> presents evidence that thiamine has a specific action in restoring muscular activity of the gastro-intestinal tract through its function in connection with carbohydrate metabolism. This is in line with Whitney's<sup>10</sup> observation of the beneficial effects of thiamine in chronic constipation. There is evidence that other fractions of the B complex may function also in maintaining normal muscle tone in the intestinal tract.

Williams<sup>11</sup> calls special attention to individual variation in the needs for various nutrients, but in none is there a greater degree of individuality than in the need for thiamine. Thus, what may seem to be inconsistencies in the findings of others regarding human needs for the B vitamins may be the individual differences which should be taken into consideration especially in the elderly. Thus, if a person feels better and responds favorably to extra B vitamins, he probably needed them.

The use of vitamin concentrates is not advocated without professional advice. When people buy and take all types of

<sup>9</sup> Tuohy, E. L.: J. A. M. A. 114:223, 1940.

<sup>10</sup> Whitney, E. T.: Bull. New England M. Center 6:170, 1944.

<sup>11</sup> Williams, R. J.: Biochemical Individuality, New York, Wiley, 1953.

<sup>8</sup> Roberts, F. H., et al.: J. Am. Dietet. A 24:292, 1948.

keeper—can eliminate some calories behind the scenes while still keeping meals attractive and in the familiar pattern. If people do not see the forbidden foods, one psychological barrier has been overcome. By substituting for rich cakes and pastries such items as puddings and custards made with skim milk, angel food cake and more fruit desserts, gelatins, whips, etc., calories

to use before the food reaches the table. The nurse concerned with the continuing education of the patient may need to make specific suggestions along this line in keeping with the socioeconomic status of the patient and his cultural pattern of eating.

Surplus calories are not the only reason for curtailing the carbohydrates and the fats in the diets of older people. Some of them seem to have a reduced capacity for metabolizing sugars, and this may result in a fluctuating blood sugar level. When this is true, less sweets are advisable. Starchy foods in moderation such as potatoes, cereals and bread are better tolerated ■ meet the caloric needs.

Fats are the most concentrated source of calories and often the invisible components of common foods. To be sure, they give flavor and satiety value to

and in turn to the incidence of arteriosclerosis. This problem and the sources of fats in the diet are discussed more fully in Chapters 3 and 27.

### Protein Needs

Apparently protein needs are not reduced appreciably with age, and yet many older people eat less protein than

when they were younger. The elderly are more prone to suffer from protein starvation than from any other form of deficiency. This is most likely to happen when marketing is difficult, cooking facilities are poor or the money for food is limited. It can also happen among those of better economic status when denture troubles, lack of appetite or too little energy prevents the preparing or the eating of meats or other protein foods.

Nitrogen balance studies on elderly men and women show that clinical protein deficiencies are not uncommon. Mild deficiencies may be manifested by a sense of habitual fatigue, slow healing of wounds and lowered resistance. Real protein starvation for an extended period is rare, but it may result in wasting and edema.

Some good-quality protein ■ essential at each meal regardless of age. The Recommended Dietary Allowances suggest no reduction in protein with age, as they do in calories. Some authorities<sup>6</sup> even suggest more, 1.2 Gm. per Kg. of body weight, perhaps because it may be used less efficiently. Gillum and Morgan,<sup>7</sup> who have made an extensive study of the nutritional status of older people, find that protein along with iron is needed to maintain the hemoglobin level in their subjects.

Special attention may need to be given to meeting the protein needs of older people. This is especially true if he is sharing in the family meals planned to meet the needs of the younger members of the family who need more calories. An extra glass of milk (perhaps reconstituted dry skim milk) at meals or between meals may be the answer. If the person lives alone, milk, cheese and eggs are often used as alternates for meat, fish or poultry because of ease in preparation. Adequate calories tend to spare protein, so that the total food in-

<sup>6</sup> Kountz, W. B. JAMA 153:177, 1953

<sup>7</sup> Gillum, H. L., Morgan, A. F., ■ al. J. Nutrition 55:263, 1955

the young folks at family parties, but they do not want to be conspicuous because of their infirmities. With a little preliminary planning of an appropriate menu, the party can be fun for young and old.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1 Which well-known scientist was responsible for the concept of "improbability of the norm," and what is meant by that phrase?

2. Surveys have shown that older

people are apt to omit certain foods from their diets. Which ones are these and which nutrients are deficient as a result?

3 Why is the caloric requirement of older people reduced? How much reduction in caloric intake is recommended for each decade past age 25?

4 If an elderly person shares the family fare but eats less of everything than younger members, which nutrients may be lower than recommended?

5 In what circumstance may the use of vitamin concentrates be justified?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

vitamin concentrates without scientific advice and regardless either of what ails them or of the natural vitamins present in their daily diets, it takes on the earmarks of a fad. Vitamins from the grocer

stituents instead of alone and labeled in units. But when dietary restrictions, common indeed among adults, make it difficult or impossible to obtain enough of certain vitamins in natural foods, vitamin concentrates have a rightful place. One may have confidence in the integrity of concentrates on the market. They are labeled according to the amount of each vitamin present in milligrams, micrograms or International Units per tablet, capsule or measure. The law is strict in holding the manufacturer to these figures on the label.

### PLANNING MEALS FOR OLDER PEOPLE

The planning of food to meet the needs of the older age group presents many problems, which are as varied as the circumstances in which such people are living. They may be living alone, or with one or two other older people, and marketing and preparing meals for themselves, they may be the older member in a younger family, they may be cared for by a practical nurse or a housekeeper. Whoever is responsible for planning and preparing food should be aware of likes and dislikes, special needs and limitations. There are numerous factors which should be considered, such as ignorance of nutritional facts, food prejudices, fear of new foods, lack of money, limited cooking facilities and poor appetite. The public health nurse

should be a member of the family at mealtime and eat foods prepared for the family. If digestive ability is limited, the family meals should be so planned that the older person may avoid fried foods, rich sauces, pastries and other foods that disagree with him. When lack of meal-

may be welcomed by an older person and may help to induce sleep.

Bulletins and pamphlets published by national and state agencies and by insurance companies give simple information about food for older people. Among these, attention is called to those published by the Institute of Home Economics<sup>12</sup> and by the Community Service Society of New York,<sup>13</sup> which are suitable for the layman, and one by the American Dietetic Association,<sup>14</sup> which is suitable for managers of small homes for the aged in helping to plan and serve meals which are attractive, satisfying and beneficial.

The emphasis in the last-mentioned publication on making simple food attractive and appropriate to the specific needs of an elderly person is appreciated far out of proportion to the effort involved. An example of good planning occurred at the golden wedding of the parents of one of the authors. One parent was a partial invalid and had a denture problem. The dinner menu of fruit cocktail, turkey croquettes, mashed potatoes, peas, aspic salad, ice cream and a beautiful arrangement of cake and

Senior members of most families enjoy

<sup>12</sup> Food Guide for Older Folks, Home and Garden Bull. No. 17, U.S.D.A.

<sup>13</sup> Food for Health As We Grow Older, Community Service Soc., New York City.

<sup>14</sup> Eating is fun for older people too, Am. Dietet. A., 1952.



Fig 52 This bread offered for sale in Tunisia, North Africa, is in great contrast with our present paper-wrapped loaves of bread. Notice the cut pieces that are left unprotected so that the customer may feel them to determine their freshness.

ing or infection. From chance alone, a situation which occurs only once in a million meals could cause 517 outbreaks a day in this country. The fact that there are relatively few outbreaks of food poisoning or infection stands as a monument to the integrity and the care of the food industry as a whole.<sup>1</sup>

We are fortunate that, for the most part, our food is preserved, stored and marketed efficiently with the aim of minimum waste and loss of nutritive

and nutritive value packed under strict, sanitary conditions.

### FOOD-BORNE INFECTIONS

Foods usually are moist and of low acidity, therefore, they are likely to be an excellent media for the survival and

*crococcus pyogenes* var. *aureus* or *albus*), *Clostridium botulinum*, hemolytic streptococci (*Streptococcus pyogenes*) that cause scarlet fever and septic sore throat, and the diphtheria bacillus (*Cornebacterium diphtheriae*). Foods may also carry the protozoa that cause amebic dysentery and the eggs or larvae of infectious tapeworms and trichina.

These infections may be present in the food at its source, such as animals infected with tuberculosis, brucellosis,

or preservation.

Our industry has advanced to the point where the convenience of the package is one of the greatest sales incentives, because the food that it contains is assumed to be of high quality

<sup>1</sup> Dauer, C. C., and Sylvester, G., Pub Health Rep. 72 735, 1957.

*Food-Borne Infections*  
*Food Poisoning*  
*Food Spoilage and Deterioration*  
*Preservation of Foods*  
*Food Additives*  
*Food Laws*

## CHAPTER SIXTEEN

# Food and the Public Health

The dependence of health upon the quality and the quantity of the food supply has been emphasized in the preceding pages. Each step in food production must be controlled carefully to preserve the nutrients, to prevent contamination with harmful micro-organisms and to eliminate toxic chemical residues.

Water and milk and dairy products once were our main concern with regard to outbreaks of disease, but today food products other than these are responsible for the majority of food-poisoning outbreaks. In 1951, there were 7 water-borne outbreaks, 12 traced to milk and milk products, and 256 to other foods.

Outbreaks of disease traced to milk and water supplies have gone down steadily since pasteurization of milk, tuberculin testing of dairy cattle, chlorination and filtration of municipal water

occur are traced usually to personal contact or to food handling by carriers of the disease.

In most states, inspection aids in eliminating the infected milk-producing animals—goats (brucellosis) and cows (tuberculosis, brucellosis). Milk now is pasteurized for well over 90 per cent of our population. Safe milk flows from the pasteurizer by a closed system of

Foods other than water and milk present a difficult problem of control. They are produced by thousands of processors and handled by millions of people, then may be mishandled by the consumer.

The census of 1957 estimates that the population of the United States is about 172.4 million men, women and children. Assuming that these people eat three times a day, there are consumed each day 517.2 million meals amounting to a total consumption of about 1 billion pounds of food each day of the year.

It is not strange that newspapers carry an occasional report of sickness, and even death, caused by food poison-

find a report of sickness traced to milk or water supplies. Cholera, typhoid fever and dysentery have almost disappeared, and the rare cases that do





salmonellosis, tularemia, tapeworms or trichina, and may be carried to the consumer if the food is undercooked (beef or pork). In some cases hen's eggs from an infected chicken may be eaten uncooked in egg-nogs and mayonnaise, and in this manner people have contracted salmonellosis.

Food may also be infected by food handlers who are convalescent from infectious diseases. They may be in apparent good health but still carry infectious organisms. The organisms may be distributed on food by hands soiled with urine or feces or by spray of oral and nasal secretions by coughing and sneezing over the food being prepared.

Dust falling on uncovered foods and the feces and the bodies of insects may also convey pathogenic organisms to a food supply. To cover cooked foods and refrigerate properly do much to cut down on the numbers of pathogenic organisms in foods. It is wise to put cooked foods promptly into an efficient refrigerator rather than to allow them to cool thoroughly before refrigerating. Often the period required for cooling in a warm kitchen is sufficient for bacteria to grow rapidly.

Transmission of disease by the eating utensils in a restaurant may be eliminated by scalding all dishes and silverware after washing or by rinsing in clean water containing a residual of at least 100 parts per million of chlorine. Drying should be by drainage, since towels frequently are a means of applying organisms to the utensils rather than of removing them.

The eating of uncooked shellfish may be the cause of typhoid fever if the shellfish were taken from polluted water.

The onset of symptoms of food infection is at least 12 hours after eating and usually 18 to 24 hours, whereas symptoms of food poisoning occur in about 3 hours or less and, to the embarrassment of the caterer, usually at the picnic or the banquet where poisoning occurs.

## FOOD POISONING

The term *food poisoning* is used commonly to include all illnesses due to ingestion of food which contains toxins produced by bacteria, poisonous plants and animals, and inorganic and organic chemicals, and even to include allergic reactions.

### Bacterial Food Poisoning

The two types of bacteria which produce toxins in food products are quite different in growth habits and also in symptoms of poisoning. One is an aerobic, heat-labile coccus which produces a toxin which is stable to boiling (*M. pyogenes* var. *aureus* or *albus*, previously known as *Staph aureus* and *albus*). The other is a heat-resistant, spore-forming, anaerobic rod which produces a toxin that is destroyed by boiling for 10 minutes (*Cl. botulinum*).

### Staphylococcal Food Poisoning

Poisoning caused by staphylococci, in which the source of infection is clearly established, a food handler usually is implicated. The organisms may gain entrance to the food from nasal or throat secretions of the carrier or from an infected lesion on his hands.

Poisoning is caused by a heat-stable preformed toxin which affects only the gastro-intestinal tract and is characterized by the rapidity (1 to 2 hours) of onset of symptoms (vomiting, diarrhea and abdominal cramps) and rapid recovery.

For poisoning to occur there must be infection with a toxin-producing strain of the organism of a suitable food (meats and meat products, custards, filled bakery products and meat or poultry salads) followed by incubation at, or near, room temperature for a cumulative time of over 4 hours. A final

The stale odor of spoiled meat, the foul odor of a spoiled egg and the souring of milk are familiar examples of bacterial spoilage. The spoilage of canned foods also is traced usually to bacterial causes.

Yeasts and molds are most familiar as causes of spoilage of fresh foods, dried foods and foods of high sugar content. The fermentation of catsup and cider is due to yeast growth. The fuzzy growths on bread and cheese and on the surface of jams and jellies indicate mold spoilage. The spoilage of citrus fruits and other fruits and vegetables often is due to the growth of molds.

### Enzymic Food Spoilage

Spoilage due to enzymic action is much more widespread than most people realize. Enzymic spoilage appears most often in loss of quality rather than as frank spoilage. The haylike flavor of frozen vegetables after long or improper storage is due to enzymic activity. Fruits and vegetables that soften or become overripe during storage may be the result of either enzymic action or mold growth. Difficulty has been encountered with some of the newer methods of food preservation, such as processing at extremely high temperatures for a very short time and preservation by irradiation with ionizing rays, since under the conditions used some enzymes are more resistant to destruction than the most resistant spoilage organisms. These enzymes can cause off odors and flavors, even though the food is perfectly sterile.

### Chemical Spoilage

Chemical causes of spoilage include flavor changes due to oxidation, swelling of cans due to production of hydrogen by the action of food acids on the metal of the container, discoloration from the reaction of metal ions from the container with the product to produce discolored crabmeat or corn, and oxidative rancidity of fats.

Most of these situations can be prevented by using a lining in the can to

protect the can and the contents, such as "fruit" enamel to prevent bleaching of highly colored fruits or "corn" enamel to prevent corn from discoloring. Anti-oxidants are added to foods subject to rancidity to prevent oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids.

### Physical Causes of Food Spoilage

The spoilage of foods by physical changes usually involves a change of state from a solution to a precipitate, such as is seen in sandy ice cream caused by formation of large lactose crystals during storage at fluctuating temperatures and the formation of glasslike particles in caviar and shrimp caused by struvite crystal formation ( $MgNH_4PO_4$ ).

Exposure to light can cause spoilage in beer bottled in clear glass with an off odor described by the industry as "skunky" beer. Sunlight can also cause a tallowy off flavor in milk left too long on the doorstep and at the same time destroy a high percentage of its riboflavin content.

The effect of freezing on fresh fruits

crystals in the cells will rupture the cell walls and in so doing will release the enzymes that are the actual cause of the wilting and the discoloration.

### Spoilage by Animals and Insects

One means by which the Federal Food and Drug Administration can check the sanitary conditions under which a product has been packed is to examine the product for rat hairs and droppings, insects and insect fragments, and mold hyphae. If an excessive quantity of any of these is present, they can confiscate an entire shipment of food and prohibit future shipments until the unsanitary conditions are corrected to the satisfaction of the Food and Drug inspector.

Often it would be chemically impossible to show any nutritional difference

but in reality it is quite rare. A doctor seldom, if ever, sees a case of botulism in his career.

The toxin is absorbed directly from the stomach and the intestinal tract, and in about 12 to 24 hours it affects the nervous system, causing double vision, difficulty in swallowing, loss of speech and, if fatal, respiratory failure in from 3 to 11 days.

An antitoxin has been developed for the 5 known strains of *C. botulinum*, but it is of little value after advanced symptoms appear.

### Natural Food Poisons

Food poisoning is a nonspecific term and may include illnesses due to chemical poisons, poisonous plants or animals and the bacterial toxins mentioned above.

It is well known that many varieties of mushrooms are poisonous and have been mistaken for edible types, with disastrous results. There is no simple test which will identify edible types other than botanical characteristics.

A few plants used as foods are safe at one time and not at another. The young white shoots of pokeweed frequently are eaten with safety as greens in the early spring, but the later green shoots may cause severe illness. The green leaves of rhubarb may contain enough oxalic acid to cause illness, but the succulent leaf stems are eaten without any untoward effects. Green parts of white potatoes may contain enough solanin to cause illness, and even death. Clams and mussels on the Pacific coast during the summer may build up a toxin due to an infection with certain plankton

but causes trouble in Europe occasionally.

### Contaminants

There are many chemicals which may accompany food accidentally or

otherwise and may be poisonous to man

accident. A brief list would include copper, mercury, sodium fluoride, insecticides, lead, kerosene, lye, washing soda, detergents and silver polish. Since some 10,000 or more deaths occur each year from the swallowing of poisons, especially by children, it is imperative that containers of poisonous chemicals be marked plainly and kept as far away as possible from food supplies. Many detergent and pesticide manufacturers now add coloring to their product to distinguish it easily from food materials.

### Allergic Reactions

Allergic reactions, which are described more thoroughly in Chapter 28, are due to the escape of a specific protein molecule or fragment from the digestive tract into the blood, causing sensitization, so that when that food is

### FOOD SPOILAGE AND DETERIORATION

Any change which renders a food undesirable or unfit for human use may be called food spoilage. Although one usually thinks of spoilage as being caused by micro-organisms, it can also be caused by chemical or physical changes or by enzymes. Those companies which have lost thousands of dollars through contamination of their product by rodents and insects would be inclined to agree that insects and rodents are also causes of spoilage.

### Microbial Food Spoilage

Microbial food spoilage may be caused by three different groups of micro-organisms: bacteria, yeasts and molds.

The stale odor of spoiled meat, the foul odor of a spoiled egg and the souring of milk are familiar examples of bacterial spoilage. The spoilage of canned foods also is traced usually to bacterial causes.

Yeasts and molds are most familiar as causes of spoilage of fresh foods, dried foods and foods of high sugar content. The fermentation of catsup and cider is due to yeast growth. The fuzzy growths on bread and cheese and on the surface of jams and jellies indicate mold spoilage. The spoilage of citrus fruits and other fruits and vegetables often is due to the growth of molds.

### Enzymic Food Spoilage

Spoilage due to enzymic action is

overripe during storage may be the result of either enzymic action or mold growth. Difficulty has been encountered with some of the newer methods

irradiation with ionizing rays, since under the conditions used some enzymes are more resistant to destruction than the most resistant spoilage organisms. These enzymes can cause off odors and flavors, even though the food is perfectly sterile.

### Chemical Spoilage

Chemical causes of spoilage include

protect the can and the contents, such as "fruit" enamel to prevent bleaching of highly colored fruits or "corn" enamel to prevent corn from discoloring. Antioxidants are added to foods subject to rancidity to prevent oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids.

### Physical Causes of Food Spoilage

The spoilage of foods by physical changes usually involves a change of state from a solution to a precipitate, such as is seen in sandy ice cream caused by formation of large lactose crystals during storage at fluctuating temperatures and the formation of glasslike particles in caviar and shrimp caused by

off odor described by the industry as "skunky" beer. Sunlight can also cause a tallowy off flavor in milk left too long on the doorstep and at the same time destroy a high percentage of its riboflavin content.

The effect of freezing on fresh fruits

tail. Frequently, the formation of ice crystals in the cells will rupture the cell walls and in so doing will release the enzymes that are the actual cause of the wilting and the discoloration.

### Spoilage by Animals and Insects

One means by which the Federal Food and Drug Administration can check the sanitary conditions under which a product has been packed is to examine the product for rat hairs and droppings, insects and insect fragments, and mold hyphae. If an excessive quantity of any of these is present, they can confiscate an entire shipment of food and prohibit future shipments until the unsanitary conditions are corrected to the satisfaction of the Food and Drug inspector.

Most of these situations can be prevented by using a lining in the can to

Often it would be chemically impossible to show any nutritional difference

between a product heavily contaminated with rat hairs and one free of contamination. However, from an esthetic viewpoint, as well as from the public health aspect, the product free of rat hairs is much to be preferred.

### PRESERVATION OF FOODS

The methods of food preservation may be divided into two general classes—bactericidal and bacteriostatic. Bactericidal methods are those which destroy the organisms. These would in-

salt or sugar).

#### Refrigeration

Until the discovery of mechanical refrigeration in the last part of the 19th century, the keeping of fresh foods depended upon ice cut in winter and stored in insulated ice houses for use in spring, summer and fall to provide refrigeration. This was particularly unsatisfactory for people in the Deep South.

A sudden realization of how much we depend upon the mechanical refrigerator occurs when a storm disrupts the elec-

trical service to homes and grocery stores. The problem of keeping milk, meat, fish and vegetables becomes quite acute, for spoilage at room temperature occurs four times more quickly than at 40° F., the temperature of most refrigerators.

Almost all fresh foods now sold have been refrigerated during part of their journey from the producer to the consumer. If high-quality foods are to reach the consumer, the metabolic action of the fruits and the vegetables must be reduced (for these products are made up of living cells), growth of micro-organisms must be inhibited, and chemical and physical changes must be prevented or slowed down.

Usually, fresh foods are stored at the lowest temperature possible at which no adverse physiologic changes take place. Bananas, for example, are stored at higher temperatures during ripening (62° to 70° F.), then are held at 58° to 60° F. for storage after ripening. If they are chilled below 58° F. before ripening, they develop a smoky, dull color, and if chilled after ripening the skin turns brown rapidly. Apples, on the other hand, usually are stored at 30° to 32° F. for best results.

In order to maintain crispness or an attractive appearance, the humidity usually is maintained as high as possible to prevent loss of moisture, but it must also be low enough not to encourage mold.

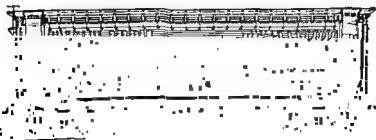


Fig. 111 Interior view of a loaded modern refrigerator car. (Swift and Co., Public Relations Department)

relative humidity.

### Freezing

There has been a tremendous rise in popularity of frozen foods, due in part to the increased frozen storage and display capacity of stores and the development of frozen storage space in the modern home refrigerator. The major factor has been that frozen foods usually retain more of the qualities and the nutrients of fresh foods than those preserved by any other method.

Frozen foods keep because most bacteria will not grow below 32° F., and those enzymes not destroyed by blanching (scalding) are much reduced in activity at 0° F. All bacteria are not destroyed by freezing, they are merely unable to grow at such low temperatures. When foods are allowed to thaw

further softening caused by enzymes released from the normal cycle of metabolism. These enzymes (pectic enzymes) attack the pectin which holds the cells together. It is for this reason that some fruits and vegetables—i.e., tomatoes and lettuce—cannot be frozen satisfactorily.

A fairly recent but very active phase of the food industry is the production of frozen prepared foods. It is now possible to have a complete meal from soup to apple pie and ice cream from the freezer and ready to eat in about  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. This is particularly valuable for the married woman who is working or is active socially, or for anyone living alone.

The home freezer is demonstrating more and more its convenience for food storage and preservation. Most housewives, however, will find that it does not save them money, as so many advertisements indicate.

### Cooking and Baking

Nearly all the micro-organisms in a food are destroyed by cooking. Since this lengthens the time that a food will keep, cooking may be regarded as a

tissues

The softening of vegetables after freezing and thawing is due to a partial

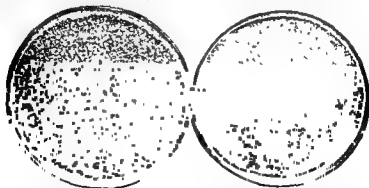


Fig. 55 The benefit of pasteurization is illustrated by the difference in these bacterial colonies developing in these two agar plates after incubation for two days at 37° C. Each contains 0.1 cc. of milk; taken before pasteurization (left plate) and from the same milk after pasteurization (right plate). (Broadhurst and Given, *Microbiology Applied to Nursing*, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

method of preservation. In some cases it is a mixed blessing, as a study of food poisoning will quickly show that most cases of food poisoning are caused by consumption of a cooked food which has

the growth of food-poisoning organisms. If contamination of the cooked food occurs after cooking from the hands or the nasal spray of a food handler, the toxin-producing organisms then can grow without hindrance.

### Pasteurization

The time-temperature relationship of pasteurization is based on the time at a given temperature in which all the organisms which will produce disease are destroyed. Milk as it comes from the pasteurizer is not sterile. The total bacterial count has been reduced, and all the disease-causing organisms are destroyed.

The reduction in bacterial count plus refrigeration increases the shelf life of many foods other than milk, such as beer, wines, etc. Mild heat treatment of concentrated citrus juices before freezing is practiced by many packers to control the enzymes which may cause clarification and/or gelation of the concentrate if it is mishandled (allowed to remain above freezing) during storage and marketing.

### Canning

The first record of preservation by heating a food material is that by Spal-

1795, the French Government offered a prize of 12,000 francs for a method of preserving food for military use. At this time Nicolas Appert, a confectioner from Paris, began experiments on methods of preserving foods. In 1804 he discovered the art of canning and after 11 years of further research published his method. He collected his reward in 1810 from Napoleon Bonaparte, who was then Emperor of France.

Canning in the United States dates from 1819, and one of the original canneries (started by William Underwood) is still in operation.

He mined the relationship between microorganisms and food spoilage. He demonstrated that food that had been sterilized by heat would keep indefinitely if recontamination was prevented.

Canning grew steadily from its beginning as a means of preservation and gained added impetus by the use of pressure-processing equipment intro-

could then be accomplished in less than an hour and result in a product of higher quality.

That canning has become a very satisfactory method of preservation is borne out by the fact that 42 billion cans of

ervation. During the last part of the 18th century, France was, or had been, at war with most of the European countries. A constant nutritious food supply for the French army and navy was

of food

This one discovery has probably done more to help mankind maintain an adequate food supply throughout the year than any other.

Canning procedures are improving continually the quality and the retention

not as yet reached wide distribution on a retail scale

### Chemicals As Preservatives

than a second at temperatures of up to 275° F in a specially designed heat exchanger, cooled immediately and then sealed into sterile containers aseptically. This method, known as aseptic canning, is now used on a small scale to process purées and baby foods, but its use is limited because of the high cost of the equipment required and the short packing periods of most canneries.

### Dehydration

In the past dehydration was looked upon as one of the least desirable methods of preservation. Technologic advances during and after World War II have made possible much-improved products with special attributes of low cost, reduced weight, convenience and keeping quality.

The use of dehydrated products has increased rapidly in the past 15 years. Certain dehydrated products are used by some housewives to the exclusion of their counterparts preserved by other methods. An example of this is instant coffee, which now constitutes over 20 per cent of coffee used.

Of particular interest to the nutritionist is the availability of instant non-fat dry milk, which brings this excellent food to the consumer at a low price in an easily soluble form with good flavor and keeping qualities.

Other items in this multimillion-dollar business are cake, muffin, cornbread, pancake and roll mixes (which are mixtures of dehydrated ingredients), instant potato, orange juice, tomato juice and dessert mixes, precooked dehydrated cereals, rice and tapioca, soups, and dried active yeast. Dried stabilized eggs (whole eggs, egg yolk or egg white) are used widely in bakery products but have

drum propionate, calcium propionate or sodium diacetate is used in bread to prevent mold growth. In general, however, chemical preservatives have had a long hard fight to stay in foods, due to

scals, chemical preservatives are not allowed. For example, catsup will keep because of the preservative effects of acids, sugars and spices, and for that reason sodium benzoate which for years had been added to catsup may no longer be used.

### Antibiotics

The use of antibiotics is a relatively recent advance in food technology. As yet it is allowed by the Food and Drug Administration only in poultry products, and there only oxytetracycline and chlorotetracycline are allowed in such amounts that the residual will be only 7 parts per million.<sup>2</sup> At this level practically all the antibiotic is destroyed by cooking.

Antibiotics will inhibit the growth of spoilage organisms but do not sterilize food. The shelf life of poultry is extended by about 7 to 10 days, but eventually spoilage will occur.

The "acronized process" of the American Cyanamid Company is the use of Aureomycin (chlorotetracycline) in the ice slush in which poultry is cooled after dressing.

<sup>2</sup> Stephens, M. R. *Am J Pub Health* 47:341, 1957.



method of preservation. In some cases it is a mixed blessing, as a study of food poisoning will quickly show that most cases of food poisoning are caused by consumption of a cooked food which has not been properly refrigerated. Cooking destroys the organisms that ordinarily would compete with, and hold in check, the growth of food-poisoning organisms. If contamination of the cooked food occurs after cooking from the hands or the nasal spray of a food handler, the toxin-producing organisms then can grow without hindrance.

### Pasteurization

The time-temperature relationship of pasteurization is based on the time at a given temperature in which all the organisms which will produce disease are destroyed. Milk as it comes from the pasteurizer is not sterile. The total bacterial count has been reduced, and all the disease-causing organisms are destroyed.

The reduction in bacterial count plus refrigeration increases the shelf life of many foods other than milk, such as beer, wines, etc. Mild heat treatment of concentrated citrus juices before freezing is practiced by many packers to control the enzymes which may cause clarification and/or gelation of the concentrate if it is mishandled (allowed to remain above freezing) during storage and marketing.

### Canning

The first record of preservation by heating a food material is that by Spalanzani in 1765. He sealed food in glass tubes and then boiled them for an hour. His experiment was a success, for he had disproved the theory of spontaneous

1795, the French Government offered a prize of 12,000 francs for a method of preserving food for military use. At this time Nicolas Appert, a confectioner from Paris, began experiments on methods of preserving foods. In 1804 he discovered the art of canning and after 8 years of further research published his method. He collected his reward in 1810 from Napoleon Bonaparte, who was then Emperor of France.

Canning in the United States dates from 1819, and one of the original canneries (started by William Underwood) is still in operation.

He determined the relationship between microorganisms and food spoilage. He demonstrated that food that had been sterilized by heat would keep indefinitely if recontamination was prevented.

Canning grew steadily from its beginning as a means of preservation and gained added impetus by the use of pressure-processing equipment introduced in 1874. By using steam pressure, much higher temperatures could be reached (5 lbs. 227°, 10 lbs. 240°, 15

That canning has become a very satisfactory method of preservation is borne out by the fact that 42 billion cans of food were produced in the United States alone in 1956. This would be enough to supply every man, woman and child in the United States with about 244 cans of food.

This one discovery has probably done more to help mankind maintain an adequate food supply throughout the year than any other.

18th century, France was, or had been, at war with most of the European countries. A constant nutritious food supply for the French army and navy was

United States has necessitated the use of a long and constantly growing list of chemicals in the production and the preservation of food. The technical purposes for which food additives are used would be a study in itself, but they can be outlined briefly with a few examples of each as follows:

1. Improving the nutritional quality of a food (vitamin D in milk and oleo, vitamin and mineral enrichment of bread and cereals)

2. Enhancing the keeping quality (antioxidants in fats, antimicrobial agents in fresh poultry, inert gases in packaging, sodium benzoate or sorbic acid in cider)

processing (emulsifiers, stabilizers, acids, alkalis, buffer salts, leavening agents)

Food additives are prohibited specifically by the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act where they are used to mask faulty processing and handling techniques, to deceive the consumer and to aid processing at the expense of a substantial reduction of the nutrition value of the product, and where good manufacturing practices do not require the use of an additive to produce a food item economically.

Food additives usually are limited in

interstate or manufactured in a territory of the United States or the District of Columbia. Federal regulations also control imported and exported foods. Foods manufactured and sold within a state's boundaries are not subject to Federal regulation but are controlled by the food regulations of the state in which they are produced.

A food is considered to be misbranded if the label is false or misleading, the name and the address of the manufacturer or the distributor are not on the package, the weight or the volume of food contained is wrong or omitted, the label does not comply with regulations or the container is misleading in size or shape.

The label must contain the common or usual name of the food and the name of each ingredient other than spices, flavoring and colorings, unless a standard of identity has been established by the FDA.<sup>6</sup> The standard of identity places a lower limit on the amount of

identity lists the optional ingredients which may be used in the product at the discretion of the manufacturer. If a standard of identity has been established for a food, the list of ingredients does not have to be on the label except for a statement of the presence of artificial flavoring and coloring or chemical preservatives, if added.

Labels which contain dietary claims must also give the percentage of the minimum daily requirement for the vitamins or the minerals mentioned. If no minimum daily requirement has been established, the vitamin or the mineral content is given in grams, milligrams or USP units (United States Pharmacopoeia) per 100 grams of food or per serving. Many labels also contain a statement of the sodium content of the food,

which would accentuate the cumulative effect of a food additive.

## FOOD LAWS

### Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act

The Federal Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has control over misbranding and adulterating foods shipped

<sup>6</sup> Food Protection Committee. The Use of Chemical Additives in Food Processing. Nat Res Council, Pub No 386, 1955.

<sup>7</sup> Janssen, W F.. J Am Dietet. A 28: 609, 1952.

Charles Pfizer and Company have also produced a similar process called "biostat," which is a Terramycin (oxytetracycline) ice

Canada allows the use of antibiotics in fish, but in the United States the use of antibiotics in fish and products other than poultry is prohibited until it can be demonstrated that the residual antibiotics in food will not cause sensitization and allergic reactions from the residual in the food. Of more importance is the danger that their therapeutic use may be prevented by development of allergic reactions to clinically useful antibiotics. If heat-labile antibiotics are used and a tolerance is established for their residue by the Food and Drug Administration, the use of antibiotics in fresh foods will be extended to meat, pre-packaged vegetables and other foods to lengthen the useful storage life under refrigeration.<sup>3</sup>

### Irradiation

Few methods of food preservation have received as much advance publicity and premature ovation as has irradiation. This method of preservation de-

nature to hard x-rays). Micro-organisms are destroyed either by direct hit or by free radicals which are released by the ionizing radiations as they pass through the food.

Several problems have caused delay

APPROXIMATE LETHAL DOSE OF  
IONIZING RADIATION

	REP
Man	400 to 800
Insect	25,000 to 100,000
Mold	100,000 to 1 million
Bacteria	1 to 4 million
Virus	3 to 5 million
Enzymes	About 20 million

<sup>3</sup> Cahill, V. H. J. Am. Dietet. A. 33:30, 1957.

of commercial use of irradiation as a means of food preservation. Unit cost is much higher than conventional methods, and in most cases the product is less acceptable to the consumer than those products processed by conventional methods. An off odor and flavor are common to most products, as well as a loss of the characteristic texture of some fruits and vegetables.<sup>4</sup>

The approximate sensitivity of various organisms to ionizing radiations in terms of lethal dose in reps is shown by the table on this page. The rep is a quantity of radiation and is the abbreviation

reps, due to off odor and flavor development, sterilization by irradiation is still an unsolved problem. However, there are several applications which should reach the consumer in the near future.

potatoes and onions, and irradiation followed by refrigeration. It is probable that successful treatments producing a high-quality product will use a combination of heat, radiation, and refrigeration.

odor.

Irradiated foods have been fed to animals and human volunteers with no untoward results. Vitamin losses due to mild irradiation are similar to those in canning. However, if foods are sterilized by irradiation, high losses of vitamins A, C and E occur.

### FOOD ADDITIVES

The production of an adequate supply of food for a country as large as the

<sup>4</sup> Wasserman, R. H. J. Am. Dietet. A. 33:33, 1957.

brucellosis and tuberculosis, and regulations concerning sale of margarine

### Recent Legislation

Concern about the number and the

Harvey Wiley, who was chief chemist of the United States Department of Agriculture from 1883 to 1914. He was very active in agitation for legislation to control the indiscriminate addition of chemical preservatives to food. Agitation years later did at least result in changes

some of the loopholes through which some marginal food processors were adding questionable chemicals to foods

In 1950 the House of Representatives appointed a committee, now known as the Delaney Committee, to investigate some shortcomings in controls existing in the 1938 law, whereby processors might add chemicals to food without proving their safety or notifying the Food and Drug Administration. Through hearings and research the Committee determined that about 740 chemicals were being added to the food supply for one purpose or another and in some cases without adequate testing to determine toxicity. The Committee, however, did not publish levels of use, which, of course, are necessary to determine the hazards involved.

A few years later the National Research Council appointed a Food Protection Committee to study the problem further in order to evaluate the benefits

to the consumer and the extent of the public health problem involved. Their report was thorough and informative. It described the functions and the technologic benefits of the chemicals used in processing, the foods in which the chemicals were used and, in many cases, maximum levels of use.

From 1955 to 1957 many bills were studied by Congressional committees to amend the 1938 law, and in August, 1958, a compromise Food Additives Bill was passed by Congress. The new Food Additives Bill covers the use of intentional additives, incidental additives and sources of ionizing radiation in foods. The main features of the new Food Additives Law are:

1. *Petition for Use.* Before a manufacturer may use a new food additive a petition for approval by the Food and Drug Administration must be filed with the details of its chemistry, safety, quantity required, effect of addition, conditions of use, method of manufacture, and a method for determination of residual in food. After the petition is filed, the FDA will approve or deny its use within 90 days, with an extension of 90 days if necessary.

2. *Protest Procedure.* If the FDA denies the use of a food additive and the manufacturer protests that decision, the

entire record," renders a decision to accept or to deny the use of the additive.

3. *Safety.* It is necessary to establish with reasonable certainty that no harm will result from use of the proposed additive. An estimation of the probable consumption and cumulative effect must

expressed in milligrams per 100 grams of food or per normal serving.

A food is considered to be adulterated if it is filthy, putrid or decomposed, if noncertified colors are used, if the container is made of a substance injurious to health (i.e., lead), if there is dilution or substitution, or if there is omission of a valuable ingredient. Food is also considered to be adulterated if it contains meat from a diseased animal or one that died by other means than slaughter. If a poisonous substance is added to a food when it is not necessary in good manufacturing practices, the food will be considered adulterated.

The false advertising of foods, drugs and cosmetics in such quarters as television and radio is not under the jurisdiction of the FDA but is controlled by the Federal Trade Commission.

An amendment to the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act of 1938 was passed in 1954 to establish safe limits of pesticide chemical residues on fresh fruits and vegetables. The chemical pesticide sprays range in toxicity to man from virtually harmless to extremely toxic and dangerous poisons. To control their use the FDA has published a list of tolerances for over 1,400 pesticide chemicals and has established a zero tolerance for certain pesticides which are extremely dangerous, such as cyanides, mercury-containing compounds and selenium-containing compounds.

To protect the consumer, foods

imprisoned, depending upon the circumstances

### Federal Meat Inspection Act

Through the Bureau of Animal Industry (BAI), the Secretary of Agriculture administers regulations concerning the meat industry. This regulation provides for the inspection of all cattle, sheep, swine and goats slaughtered in any state, territory or the District of

Columbia for transportation or sale as articles of interstate or foreign commerce. The carcasses and parts of all such animals found to be sound, healthful, wholesome and fit for human food are stamped "Inspected and Passed." Animals found to be unfit for human food are separated and stamped "Inspected and Condemned." Carcasses which have been condemned for food purposes must be destroyed under the supervision of a Federal inspector.

The Secretary of Agriculture also has charge of regulations concerning imported and exported meat and meat products, as well as the regulation concerning the labeling of horsemeat. Horsemeat may be used for human food, but strict labeling is required to prevent its use as a substitute for beef.

A law passed in 1957 provides for compulsory inspection of poultry and poultry products, and is similar in nature to the Meat Inspection Act.

### USDA Grade Standards and Inspection Service for Processed Foods

The Fruit and Vegetable Division of the Agricultural Marketing Service, United States Department of Agriculture, develops grade standards for processed foods and supplies an inspection service for processed fruits, vegetables and related foods.

The Federal grading of foods aids in informing processors, sellers, brokers, distributors and buyers concerning the class, the quality and the condition of the product. The grades serve as a basis

### State Regulations

It is the responsibility of the individual states to regulate food production and processing in which the product does not leave the state. The state also controls such things as pasteurization of milk, inspection of cattle and goats for

## PART TWO

# Diet in Disease

Part Two deals with food as a nutrient and its part as a therapeutic measure in the treatment of disease

be made. Feeding tests with animals must be carried out to determine toxicity for animals and set safety factors for use in foods for human consumption.

4 *Tolerances* Tolerances for an additive will be determined by the FDA, and the level of use in a food may be no more than ■ necessary for the purpose used.

5. *Additives Already in Use.* Additives that were in use before January 1, 1958, must be proven safe for use within 18 months of enactment of the law, with a possible 12-month extension if required. This means that within 30 months all food additives must be proven safe and acceptable by the FDA before use.

6. *Cancer-Causing Chemicals.* No additive can be used in any concentration if it ■ capable of causing cancer if eaten. Even though no food additive used at the present time is known to cause cancer when eaten, it is possible

reason.

Safety of food additives is a problem of extreme importance that should be considered over all other phases of the question. It is practically impossible to demonstrate absolute proof of safety of an additive for all people in a population which may include a few very sensitive individuals and others in poor physiologic condition, as well as those suffering from a disease of one sort or another.

Usually, judgment of safety is based

on the result of experiments on three or more types of animals to determine acute toxicity and chronic toxicity at levels far above those intended for use in foods. The maximum level of consumption of an additive in a day's food must be determined or estimated. The minimum level which will produce deviations from normal in animals is studied carefully to determine what effects in humans may be expected, and an adequate margin of safety must be established to reduce to a minimum any hazard to the health of people of varying ages and physiologic state.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Are bacteria killed by freezing?
2. Why is it that dehydrated foods do not spoil?
3. Why is milk pasteurized? How is it pasteurized?
4. What information must appear on the label of canned food?
5. Why are food additives used?
6. What are the purposes of "standards of identity"?
7. Why ■ the use of sodium benzoate in catsup prohibited?
8. What infections may be food borne?
9. How may food poisoning be prevented?
10. Which foods may be poisonous naturally?
11. Which Federal agencies protect our food supplies and what are their limitations?
12. What are the provisions of the 1958 Food Additives Law?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

## INTRODUCTION

### Contemporary Development of Nursing and Dietetics

History seems to indicate that Florence Nightingale was the mother not only of the nursing profession but of dietetics as well. Her biographer, Sir Edward Cook, reports that when she went to Scutari at the time of the Crimean War in 1854 she was at once confronted with the food problem. Forty-five hundred soldiers were lying on cots in corridors and elsewhere, the sick and the wounded occupying from 3 to 4 miles of space. The kitchen for these thousands of men was located at the extreme end of the hospital. It took from 1½ to 4 hours to serve the ordinary dinner, and there were no facilities for preparing special foods for those who were critically ill. It is reported that within 10 days after her arrival not only had she established 2 "extra diet kitchens" but she had fitted up an impromptu kitchen on a staircase, and from these diet kitchens 800 men were supplied daily with such foods as chicken broth, arrowroot gruel and other sickroom specialties. In addition, she organized the laundry. Then she went to the battle-front—to the hospital at Balaklava. "She was anxious to inspect these hospitals, to increase the efficiency of the female nurse establishments and, in particular, to introduce those washing and cooking arrangements which had been productive of so much benefit at Scutari."

In her own *Notes on Nursing and Notes on Hospitals*, she makes many comments that still are pertinent. After discussing the importance of variety and the proper cooking of food, she says:

"I have often been surprised by the primitive kitchens of some of our civil hospitals with which little variety of cooking is possible. In a

ing of that which is of more importance than most medicines."

The nursing profession from its beginning and until quite recent times was responsible for the dietary work in hospitals. The nurse to whom the special phase of work was assigned was often called a dietist, in fact, this term was used in some branches of government work until recent years. A movement was started about 1890 in some of the hospitals in the eastern part of this country to place a woman specially trained in foods and in food preparation in charge of the special diet kitchen—at first to teach their nurses how to prepare foods for the sick. A graduate of a cooking school in the East was employed by Johns Hopkins Hospital to instruct its nurses in cooking. She was probably the first resident teacher of sickroom cookery. A little later, in the spring of 1893, the Presbyterian Hospital in Philadelphia decided to start a diet kitchen in which the nurses would be taught.

She was given the title "superintendent of Diet." Exactly when the word dietitian was first applied to this type of food specialist is not known, but it must have developed within the following 10 years.

### Threefold Responsibility in Dietary Treatment

In view of the rapid advancement in the science of nutrition and in the administrative phases of feeding large numbers of sick people it is not surprising that specialists in this field of knowledge should have invaded the hospital field. Nevertheless, the dietary treatment of the sick is a threefold responsibility that rests upon the medical, the nursing and the dietary departments. Only by good teamwork can the best results for the patient be obtained.

Although the doctor orders the thera-





*Psychological Factors in Feeding People*  
*Nutritional Status of Patients*  
*The Effect of Immobilization on Nutrition*  
*Feeding the Long-Term and the Chronically Ill Patient*  
*Teaching the Patient*

## CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

# The Patient and His Nutritional Problems

### PSYCHOLOGICAL FACTORS IN FEEDING PEOPLE

In the ensuing chapters we shall deal with many variations of diet modification. These must be followed as accurately and painstakingly as the doctor's orders for medication and treatment. However, diets are ~~not~~ <sup>not</sup> ~~meant~~ <sup>not</sup> for ~~people~~ <sup>people</sup>.

Turning back to Chapter 11, we realize the variety of cultural patterns that one is liable to encounter in patients in the hospital. The orthodox Jewish, the Puerto Rican, the Mexican, the Polish and the Italian patient all have food habits very different from our own. Even within our own country food patterns differ widely, so that a patient from the South who finds himself in a Northern hospital will think the way vegetables are cooked insipid and un-

meaning for the patient not realized by the nurse. Everyone rejoices with the patient who progresses from a liquid diet to one containing solid food as concrete evidence that he is getting

which must be of long duration may well convey a real sense of deprivation to the patient and carry overtones of discouragement difficult to resolve.

Again, food has a symbolic significance which bears little relation to its nutritive value. Babcock<sup>1</sup> says that "it is easier to show discouragement through anorexia than it is to explain

prepared and served, but if the patient does not eat it, nothing has been accomplished.

The therapeutic diet itself may have

<sup>1</sup> Babcock, C. G. J. Am. Dietet. A. 23, 1952.

peutic diet, and the dietitian translates the order into specific food, it is the nurse at the bedside and in the home who deals with the patient as he eats the food. Often it is she who must interpret the diet to the patient and make changes and substitutions as necessary to meet the patient's individual needs from day to day or after he goes home. The nurse should be able not only to fill a dietary prescription accurately but to observe its effects and report intelligently on them to the doctor. She must also take account of the psycho-

logical factors affecting appetite and digestion, and make every effort to induce a patient to eat essential foods.

To know foods and to use them as a means of maintaining and restoring health, as she knows the uses and the effects of medicines, is the big objective in the nurse's study of dietetics. To know how to make variations from the normal diet in disease conditions, she must know food values so as to be able to keep her patient well nourished while adjusting to restrictions imposed by disease.

which may determine acceptance or rejection of the meal. Hot food must be served *hot* and cold food *cold*. A pot of hot coffee or tea may make the remainder of a restricted diet acceptable. It tells the patient, as no words can, that those about him really care about him and are making every effort to make his food as palatable as possible.

### NUTRITIONAL STATUS OF PATIENTS

The nutritional status of the patient when he enters the hospital should also be observed. Older patients may have lost some of their teeth, making chewing difficult if they are placed on a general house diet. A patient may be markedly underweight or overweight and be in need of increased or decreased quantities of food on his tray in so far as is consistent with his diet order. With the increased longevity of our times there is a corresponding increase in the number of very old patients who enter our hospitals. Some of these are in poor nutritional state because they have lost interest in food or, for economic reasons, have eaten very limited diets for a long time.

On the other side of the picture, often a young adolescent with rheumatic fever will be as perpetually hungry as others of his age group, and his caloric and growth needs must be met as nearly as possible within the limitations of his diet order. An antiobesity diet for a short, older woman, who at home leads a fairly sedentary life, should be considerably lower in calories than the diet for an overweight 6-foot truck driver. A patient will need fewer calories on complete bed rest than when he is being mobilized.

These are all observations which the nurse will make more readily than the dietitian, or even the doctor, because of her more constant contact with the patient. When she communicates her findings to the doctor and the dietitian, she is doing her share in giving her patient

better total care and in making his hospital stay as constructive as possible.

### THE EFFECT OF IMMOBILIZATION ON NUTRITION

Many patients undergo a period of immobilization, either as an effect of their disease, as in chronic poliomyelitis, or as treatment, such as prolonged rest in the case of tubercular patients and those in casts. In a study done on 4 conscientious objectors during World War II, Detrick and Whedon<sup>2</sup> found increased nitrogen and calcium losses from the body during immobilization, resulting in progressive muscular weakness. It would seem to be important that all patients on prolonged bed rest, even when on routine house diets, have additional protein and calcium foods to offset such losses and prevent or reduce muscle weakness in so far as this is possible.

### FEEDING THE LONG-TERM AND THE CHRONICALLY ILL PATIENT

One of the most challenging tasks of the nurse and the dietitian is the maintenance of good nutrition in the patient with long-term illness. Often in such patients appetite is lost due to the ravages of disease. It will be noted that usually the best meal of the day is breakfast, when the patient is rested. As the day progresses and the patient becomes increasingly tired, he tends to eat less. Therefore, it is important to serve the most nutritious meals early in the day and a lighter meal in the evening.

For the person who eats slowly, the main course should be served on a plate attached to a hot-water container, so as to keep the food warm as long as possible. The patient who must be fed may also benefit from such a "hot plate." The feeding of patients, often a slow process and requiring much patience, may be made much more cheerful and homelike by feeding two patients together, allowing one to rest from a

<sup>2</sup> Detrick, J. E., and Whedon, J. *Am J Med* 4 3, 1948.



Fig 56 The nurse has excellent opportunities for nutritional observation while doing routine procedures at the bedside (The New York Hospital)

This is also true of the patient confined to bed. It is difficult to eat in a semirecumbent position and alone. Most people's lives are set in families, and to eat in bed and by one's self may accentuate the patient's illness in his mind. Some hospitals try to meet this

room, may actually be a better setting than that of the private patient in his single room. Even a low sodium diet may be accepted when its restrictions are shared with a fellow patient.

As can be seen, the nurse must use all her skills in understanding, encouragement and diversion to encourage a pa-

tient to eat. There should be a warm appreciation of and a sympathetic approach to food tastes and habits of long standing and of great meaning to the patient. The nurse and the dietitian must work in close co-operation, so that the patient's preferences may be met in so far as is possible within the limitations of the diet order and the hospital's facilities. With the same patience and ingenuity that would be called for if the patient were meeting some of the other problems of illness, they must work together to help him respond to his diet restrictions.

It must not be forgotten that the appearance of the food and the tray also will produce a psychological effect

and which foods will meet these. This applies as a matter of course to diets used in the treatment of disease, where the nurse and the dietitian will work closely together. However, there is also a need for combating the varied misconceptions that people have about food and for teaching sound, basic nutrition to all patients. Often the nurse can do this more easily than the dietitian, as she gives the patient bedside care and questions about health practices and food come naturally into the conversation. At mealtime, too, the nurse will note what the patient eats or does not eat on his tray, and this gives her another opportunity to emphasize good nutritional usage.

One warning must be given about the choice of words in teaching patients. Although the student is familiar with such terms as protein, carbohydrate, metabolism and so on, the patient may have little or no idea of their meaning or of the foods or the processes that these terms represent. Even such words as starches and sugars may easily be misinterpreted. In a recent survey<sup>4</sup> of 100 patients it was found that a third did not know what the term *nutrition* meant, less than half understood *citrus fruits*, to many the word *vitamins* meant pills, and 25 per cent of the patients did not know which part of the egg was the yolk. To encourage the patient to talk of the foods that he knows and enjoys, and to discuss these in terms of their contribution to his nutritional needs, is a more realistic approach. It must be kept in mind also that it is better to teach one fact well than to attempt more than the patient can accept or understand. As a final check on his comprehension, the patient should be asked to repeat the instruction.

<sup>4</sup> Collins, G. E. - J. Florida M. A. 42: 111, 1955

## SUMMARY

These, then, are some of the factors which must be kept in mind when we consider the application of nutrition to

discussed in this chapter should also be kept in mind, so that the diet may be adapted to the individual to meet not only his nutritional but also his emotional and cultural needs.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1 Look at the patients under your care at the present time. Do any of them present one or more of the problems described in this chapter? If so, has a plan been made with the dietitian for their solution? Have you any suggestions?

2 What psychological factors should be kept in mind in the feeding of patients?

3 What may be expected from the proper nutritional care of the chronically ill patient?

foods which should be introduced in liberal amounts to meet this specific need.

5 How may food be kept warm for the patient who eats slowly?

6 How may the nurse help the pa-

tient understand directions that have been given him?

9 At what time of day does the chronically ill patient have the best appetite?



Fig 57 The patient who must be fed is more likely to eat and to enjoy his meal if the person assisting him is cheerful and unhurried. (The New York Hospital)

course of the meal while the other is being fed, and so alternating patients and courses. Especially if such patients are capable of conversation, they will eat and enjoy their meal much better than if they were fed alone.

Frequently, chronically and severely ill patients become tired before their meal is finished. A piece of bread, buttered by the nurse and placed in the patient's hand, may encourage him to continue to eat. Often these patients are served between-meal nourishments to increase their food intake, yet they have little appetite for them. If the nurse will remember that if the patient takes one swallow or one bite of food he will have had more than he had before, she will be alert to encourage him "to take an-

other bite" each time she passes his bedside.

It should be remembered that a return to health or to self-care and reasonable activity may depend as much on the nutritional care of these patients as on other factors. Goodman<sup>3</sup> says "The results which can be expected from maintaining or re-establishing a satisfactory nutritional state in older persons and in all individuals with acute and chronic illnesses are gratifying and in many instances actually startling."

#### TEACHING THE PATIENT

Last, but not least, the nurse has many opportunities for teaching patients something about their nutritional needs.

<sup>3</sup> Goodman, J. I. *Am. J. Nursing* 51:165, 1951.

since most of the information has been gained within the last half century

Good food is essential to health. This fact is generally accepted, but it is rarely recognized how frequently the poor selection of food may be a contributing factor to disease. On the other hand, the intelligent use of food in the treatment of disease has become a matter of special interest to the medical and the nursing professions, as well as to dietitians. The wide interest evident in diet fads and diet cures makes it all the more necessary for the professional dietary treatment of disease to be sane and scientifically sound.

### THE HOSPITAL BASIC DIET

The regular hospital menu should provide a well-balanced diet capable of maintaining a state of good nutrition such as has been discussed in previous chapters. It is intended for ambulatory patients and for those whose condition does not require a so-called special or therapeutic diet. It is often referred to as the General, the House, the Regular or the Full Diet. It is very similar to a normal family menu and should, of course, be based on the Recommended Dietary Allowances.

The pattern dietary on the next

all therapeutic diets, except those used in emergencies or for short periods of time. If for any reason the diet is not

supplements.

the specific requirements of the patient will be added. For example, cream and sugar will be served with the breakfast cereal, and coffee or other beverages may be served with the 3 meals, either with or without sugar and cream. Jelly with the toast may add pleasure to the meal as well as additional calories. Soup and crackers are desirable additions. Two more vegetables may be added, one of them raw, if the patient's condition permits. If not, additional citrus fruit, such as orange or grapefruit juice, is desirable. Desserts also furnish not only calories but other important nutrients as well.

The nutritional adequacy of the general, or basic, diet depends not only on the selection of foods but also on the preparation and the cooking, including the time and the temperature of these processes. These methods are discussed in detail in Part Three.

Typical menus for the regular house diet, built upon the above basic dietary pattern, appear later in the chapter with other standard diets.

### PROGRESSIVE HOUSE DIETS

Modifications of the normal general diet are made to supply the various needs of the body in disease. Modifications may be made chiefly in one or more of the following ways:

- 1 Methods of preparation
- 2 In consistency
- 3 In total calories
- 4 In one or more of the nutrients
- 5 In specific food

For example, the light, or convalescent, diet differs from the general, or regular, diet chiefly in the method of preparing the food, although consistency, which is due primarily to the cellulose of vegetable foods and to meat fibers, is also a factor.

The soft diet, as indicated by the name, is low in roughage and contains some liquids. The full liquid diet consists entirely of foods in the liquid state.



## CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

# Diet in the Treatment of Disease

Good diet is a perfect way of curing  
And worthy much regard and health  
assuring

A king that cannot rule him by his diet  
Will hardly rule his realm in peace and  
quiet

The above quotation, taken from an old Latin book on medicine, *Regimen Sanitatis Salernitanum*, and written about A.D. 1000, expresses an appreciation of diet in the treatment of disease. The ancients wrote the preview, as it were, to dietetics by their acute observations with little but experience to guide them in their judgments. Hippocrates, about 400 B.C., forecast calorimetry when he wrote "Growing bodies have the most innate heat, they therefore require the most food, for otherwise their bodies waste. In old people the heat is feeble and they require little fuel, as it were, to the flame, for it would be extinguished by much."

Artaeus, a Roman physician of about

is just as though the aqueducts were open wide." He further stated his belief that a drug would be found to cure it by controlling thirst. It would seem that the discovery of insulin, discussed in the

chapter on diabetes mellitus, fulfilled his prophecy.

How surprised the sailors of old must have been when, after centuries of fear and dread of scurvy, they were able to return from their long voyages well and happy by the simple use of lemons! This was a forerunner of the discovery of vitamin C, which we now know exists in many fruits and vegetables. Byrd's expeditions to the South Pole would have been impossible had not the dietary needs, especially sources of vitamin C, been planned in advance. The story of the cure of other deficiency diseases is

A recent article<sup>1</sup> states, "Within modern times irrefutable studies have shown in many parts of the world that diet conditions disease, diet influences growth and development and diet is a decisive factor in determining death rates."

In Part Two will be found an application of the principles of nutrition to the treatment of disease in ways of which the ancients could not have dreamed,

<sup>1</sup> Mann, G. V., and Stare, F. J. J.A.M.A. 142:409, 1950

TABLE OF FOODS ALLOWED ON PROGRESSIVE HOUSE DIETS

TYPE OF FOOD	GENERAL DIET	LIGHT DIET	SOFT DIET	FULL LIQUID DIET
Fruits	All	All cooked and canned fruits, citrus fruits, bananas	Fruit juices, cooked and canned fruits (without seeds, coarse skins or fiber), bananas	Fruit juices, strained
Cereals and cereal products	All	Cereals dry or well cooked, spaghetti and macaroni, not highly seasoned	Same as light diet	Cruels, strained
Breads	All	Enriched and whole-wheat bread, soda crackers	Same as light diet	
Soups and broths	All	All	Broth, strained cream soups	Same as soft diet
Meat, fish and poultry	All	Tender steaks and chops, lamb, veal, ground or tender beef, bacon, chicken, sweetbreads, liver, fish	Tender chicken, fish and sweetbreads, ground beef and lamb	
Eggs	Eggs cooked all ways	Soft-cooked eggs	Same as light diet	Eggnoys
Dairy products	Milk, sweet and acid, cream, butter, cheese, all kinds	Milk, sweet and acid, cream, butter; cottage and cream cheese, Cheddar cheese used in cooking	Same as light diet	Milk, sweet and acid, cream
Vegetables	All, including salads	Cooked vegetables: asparagus, peas, string beans, spinach, carrots, beets, squash Salads: tomato and lettuce Potatoes: boiled, mashed, creamed, scalloped, baked	Cooked vegetables: same as light diet  Salads: none  Potatoes: same as light diet	
Desserts	All	Ices, ice cream, junket, cereal puddings, custard, gelatin, sangle cakes, plain cookies	Same as light diet	Ices, ice cream, gelatin, junket and custard
Beverages	All	Tea, coffee, cocoa, coffee substitutes, milk and milk beverages, carbonated beverages	Same as light diet	Same as light diet

EVALUATION OF A PATTERN DIETARY FOR ITS NUTRITIVE CONTENT<sup>1</sup>

Food Group	Amt. in Gm	HOUSEHOLD MEASURE	Calo- ries	Protein Gm.	Fat Gm	Carbo- hydrate Gm	MINERALS		VITAMINS				
							Cal- cium Mg	Iron Mg.	A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Milk or equivalent <sup>2</sup>	489	2 c. (1 pint)	332	17	20	24	576	4	(780) <sup>3</sup>	18	84	.6	6
Egg	54	1 medium	77	6	6	1 <sup>b</sup>	20	13	550	.05	14		
Meat, fish or fowl <sup>4</sup>	80	3 ozs., cooked	257	23	18		9	29	4,815 <sup>5</sup>	24	.51	.57	.35
Vegetables, Potato, cooked	100	1 medium	100	2	2	19	11	7	20	.09	.03	1.0	14
Deep green or yellow, cooked <sup>6</sup>	75	$\frac{3}{4}$ c.	18	2	4	4	39	.7	3,300	.06	.09	5	21
Other, cooked <sup>7</sup>	75	$\frac{3}{4}$ c	39	2	9	9	15	.6	190	.07	.06	.7	10
Fruits Citrus <sup>8</sup>	100	1 serving	41	1	10	10	20	3	(85) <sup>9</sup>	.06	.02	.2	44
Other <sup>9</sup>	100	1 serving	85	1	22	22	11	.8	465	.03	.04	.6	5
Bread, white, en- riched	70	3 slices	189	6	2	36	54	1.2		.18	.12	1.5	
Cereal, whole grain or enriched		$\frac{3}{4}$ c. cooked in 1 oz dry	80	2	1	17	8	.6		.05	.03	.7	
Butter or margarine	14	1 tablespoon	100		11		3		460				
Totals			1,301	102	101	142	772	95	10,675	101	1.88	11.51	103
Compare with recommended allowances <sup>12</sup>													
Moderately active man (70 Kg., 25 yrs. old)													
Moderately active woman (58 Kg., 25 yrs. old)													
			3,200	70			800	100	5,000	1.60	1.80	21	75
			2,300	58			800	120	5,000	1.20	1.50	17	70

<sup>1</sup> Calculations from Table 1, Part Four, Composition of Foods<sup>2</sup> Milk equivalents mean evaporated milk and dried milk in amounts equivalent to fluid milk in nutritive content, cheese, if water-soluble minerals and vitamins have not been lost in whey, and food items made with milk<sup>3</sup> Parentheses indicate imputed values<sup>4</sup> Evaluation based on the use of 109 Gm liver, 258 Gm. pork or ham, 150 Gm fish and 800 Gm beef, lamb or veal per 10-day period.<sup>5</sup> Only if 100 Gm liver is included once in 10 days.<sup>6</sup> Evaluation based on figures for cooked asparagus, broccoli, carrots and green beans<sup>7</sup> Evaluation based on figures for cooked peas, cauliflower, beets, onions and corn<sup>8</sup> Evaluation based on figures for whole orange and grapefruit, and orange and grapefruit juices<sup>9</sup> Evaluation based on figures for bananas, apple, unsweetened cooked prunes and sweetened canned peaches<sup>10</sup> Evaluation based on figures for shredded wheat biscuit and enriched farina<sup>11</sup> The addition of coffee will add approximately 1 mg. niacin per cup.<sup>12</sup> From the National Research Council Recommended Dietary Allowances revised 1956

### Soft Diet

The soft diet is soft in texture and consists of liquids and semisolid foods. It is an intermediate step between the light and the liquid diets. It is indicated in certain postoperative cases, in acute infections and in some gastro-intestinal conditions.

It is low in residue and is readily digested. Little or no spices or condiments are used in the preparation. It is somewhat more restricted than the light diet in fruit, meat and vegetables. In some hospitals, only puréed vegetables are served, and no meat is allowed.

### Full Liquid Diet

Foods in the liquid state are more easily digested because they are so finely divided. They are also more easily taken by the acutely ill patient, for whom chewing may be an effort. The lightest of foods are given—broths, albumin drinks, thin gruels, fruit juices, lemonade, and tea or coffee if the patient is accustomed to them. (For postoperative diets see Chap. 32.)

The liquid diet may be prescribed in acute infections and in inflammatory conditions of the gastro-intestinal tract. It is of low nutritive value, and if the condition is prolonged it may be essential to give the largest amount of food possible in the most easily digested form. Milk, cream, buttermilk or other sour-milk preparations will add calories and protein. Lactose or corn syrup added to beverages will increase the calories. High protein feedings may also be included (see Chap. 50). Plain ice cream, fruit ices, junket and plain gelatin desserts are allowed as convalescence proceeds. By careful planning the Full Liquid Diet may come close to meeting the normal nutritional needs of the patient, at least minimally. It is important that feedings, consisting of at least 6 to 8 oz., be given every 2 to 3 hours during the day and evening.

### Application of House Diets

An outline of foods included in the progressive house diets is given in the table on page 223. A comparison of these diets will show how an acutely ill patient may progress from the liquid to the soft, to the light and on to the general, or house, diet. Typical menus are also given on the following page.

There is some difference in the practice of various hospitals as to what is included in these house diets, and the nurse should familiarize herself thoroughly with the meaning of the terms in the hospital in which she is located.

### DIETARY MODIFICATIONS FOR SPECIFIC CONDITIONS

In addition to the dietary modifications given in the Standard Hospital Diets, many therapeutic or special diets are necessary in the treatment of disease, as will be shown in the following chapters.

The objectives of such dietary treatment may be one or more of the following:

- 1 To adjust the diet to the ability of the body to metabolize certain food constituents, as in diabetes mellitus.
- 2 To rest a particular organ, as when fat is reduced in diseases of the gall-bladder.
- 3 To increase or decrease body weight by the addition or the restriction of calories.
- 4 To combat long-standing malnutrition, as, for example, the use of the high protein diet in cirrhosis of the liver.
- 5 To treat or to prevent edema by limiting the use of salt, as in cardiac disease.
- 6 To provide for ease of digestion by exclusion or removal of irritating substances or those which delay the emptying time of the stomach, such as fiber, condiments and fried foods. This would apply to diseases of the gastro-intestinal tract.

The following outline will show ways

These 3 diets are the simplest in modification and usually are included in Standard Hospital Diets (see following paragraphs)

### Light, or Convalescent, Diet

A light, or convalescent, diet is intended for convalescent patients not yet able to take the regular diet and for those with minor illnesses. It must be appetizing and readily digested. The chief difference between this diet and

the regular house diet is the method of preparation. The foods are cooked plainly—no fried foods or rich pastries are served. Other fat-rich foods, such as pork (except bacon) and salad dressings, are avoided. Bran and strong or gas-forming vegetables are avoided, as well as most raw vegetables and fruits. All foods included in the soft and the liquid diets may be served in the light diet. In some hospitals this classification is omitted.

### TYPICAL MENUS FOR PROGRESSIVE HOUSE DIETS

GENERAL DIET	LIGHT DIET	SOFT DIET	FULL LIQUID DIET
<i>Breakfast</i>			
Fresh pear	Orange	Orange juice	Orange juice, strained
Oatmeal with milk or cream	Oatmeal with milk or cream	Oatmeal with milk or cream	Strained oatmeal gruel with milk or cream
Scrambled eggs	Soft scrambled eggs	Soft scrambled eggs	Coffee with cream and sugar
Buttered whole-wheat toast	Buttered whole-wheat toast	Buttered whole-wheat toast	
Coffee with cream and sugar	Coffee with cream and sugar	Coffee with cream and sugar	
			10 A.M.
			Eggnog
<i>Dinner</i>			
Vegetable soup	Vegetable soup	Strained vegetable soup	Broth with rice
Roast veal	Roast veal	Ground beef	Ginger ale with ice cream
Mashed potato	Mashed potato	Mashed potato	Coffee with cream and sugar
Buttered broccoli	Buttered carrots	Buttered carrots	
Tomato salad with French dressing	Tomato salad with French dressing	Bread whole wheat or white	
Bread whole wheat, rye or white	Bread whole wheat, rye or white	Butter	
Butter	Butter	Vanilla ice cream with chocolate sauce	
Peppermint stick ice cream	Peppermint stick ice cream	Milk	
Milk	Milk		3 P.M.
			Malted milk or butter-milk
<i>Supper</i>			
Cream of pea soup with crackers	Cream of pea soup with crackers	Cream of pea soup with crackers	Strained cream of pea soup
Macaroni au gratin	Macaroni au gratin	Macaroni au gratin	Plain gelatin with whipped cream
Head lettuce salad with Russian dressing	Head lettuce salad with French dressing	Buttered beets	Tea with cream and sugar
Bread	Bread	Butter	
Butter	Butter	Plain gelatin with whipped cream	9 P.M.
Fruit gelatin	Fruit gelatin	Tea with cream and sugar	Hot cocoa
Tea with cream and sugar	Tea with cream and sugar		

## NUTRITIONAL ADEQUACY OF HOSPITAL DIETS

In the previous chapter some of the problems which may be encountered in feeding the hospitalized patient were discussed. There is further need for observation of the patient's appetite, particularly in the long-term, chronically ill patient. In a recent study by Goodman and Dowdell,<sup>2</sup> it was found that of 431 chronically ill patients, 138 suffered from undernutrition, and studies by other investigators<sup>3, 4</sup> also warn of the need for constant watchfulness in both chronically and acutely ill patients.

The diet as the dietitian serves and writes it may meet all the doctor's specifications and be adequate for the nutritional needs of the patient, but, unless the patient eats and retains it, little has been accomplished. Here again the nurse and the dietitian must work hand in hand. Not only must the diet be made as acceptable as possible by catering to the patient's likes and dislikes, but, if he still finds it difficult to eat, every effort must be made to meet his nutritional needs in other ways.

The very ill patient, or the patient

will accept a high protein, high caloric beverage 6 times a day for a few days and then return to a tray with a renewed appetite. Even tube feeding may need to be used to maintain the patient's nutritional status, although this should never be done in a punitive fashion. Directions for such feedings will be found in Chapters 32 and 50.

<sup>2</sup> Goodman, J. I., and Dowdell, W. *Ann. Int. Med.* 43:1241, 1955.

<sup>3</sup> Rhoads, J. J. *Am. Dietet. A.* 29:297, 1953.

<sup>4</sup> Duncan, C. G. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 25:330, 1949.

Keeton<sup>5</sup> has described a method of appetite training for the patient who does not eat a sufficient amount of food to meet his needs. Beginning with 1 meal a day, at 10 A.M., then increasing it to 2 meals daily, at 10 A.M. and 4 P.M., he has been able to restore the intake of patients to 3 good meals a day and re-establish caloric and nutritive balance. More recently, Fogelman<sup>6</sup> has described the successful use of hypnosis in the restoration of appetite. Although such measures may not be feasible in many hospitals, these articles point up the prevalence of the problem and the difficulties that are encountered in meeting it.

It is easy to become discouraged with such patients, but the satisfaction of seeing them maintain good nutritional status, and often seeing them recover, is its own reward.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are some of the objectives of therapeutic diets? What patients have you observed whose diets illustrate these objectives?

2. In which ways may diets be modified to meet therapeutic needs? Illustrate with the diets of patients observed by you.

3. What is the basic dietary pattern for planning the hospital standard diets?

4. How does each standard hospital

ditional foods necessary to supply the required calories. Plan a similar menu for a patient on a general, or house, diet, also one on a soft diet. Evaluate all 3 menus for nutritional adequacy and attractiveness.

<sup>5</sup> Keeton, R. W.: *J. A. M. A.* 151:253, 1953.

<sup>6</sup> Fogelman, M. J., et al.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:519, 1956.

and means of accomplishing these objectives.

1. The total caloric value may be increased or decreased as follows:

A. Increase in energy-producing foods is needed by patients who are underweight, or whose metabolic rate is above

ness, especially those who have been on fluid diets

B. Decrease in total calories is desirable when the patient is overweight or when he is acutely ill and food is poorly tolerated

2. Variations in the balance of nutrients may be made to meet a number of conditions

#### Protein:

A. Liberal allowance is required in tuberculosis and other wasting diseases; in liver and some kidney diseases; in anemia, in wound healing; and during growth, pregnancy and lactation

B. A limited amount is sometimes ordered in certain kidney diseases.

#### Fats:

A. Fats may be increased in the diet when underweight or malnutrition

#### Carbohydrates:

A. Starches and sugars make up a

are restricted in diabetes melitus, reduced in obesity.

Purines and purine derivatives are restricted usually in gout.

#### Minerals:

A. Common salt (sodium chloride) may be increased in Addison's disease and is restricted in cardiac conditions

and in diseases of the liver and the kidney, when accompanied by edema.

B. Calcium and phosphorus are increased in rickets, osteomalacia, tetany, dental caries and acute lead poisoning. They may be decreased in the presence of kidney stones.

C. Iron is increased in nutritional and hemorrhagic anemias, and in pregnancy.

#### Vitamins:

Specific vitamins may be increased when the possibility of a deficiency

a deficiency of this vitamin.

Vitamin D—in rickets and osteomalacia.

Vitamin K—in liver or gallbladder disease, where the vitamin may not be absorbed.

Thiamine—in polyneuritis, beriberi, pellagra.

Niacin—in pellagra.

Ascorbic acid—to promote wound healing, in scurvy.

#### Water Content:

Fluids may be "forced," as in certain types of infections, or they may be restricted when so ordered, as in edema of nephritis or cardiac disease.

#### Roughage and Bulk:

A. Little or no fiber should be given in typhoid fever, in ulceration of any part of the alimentary tract or immediately following operations upon the gastro-intestinal tract.

B. Liberal amount of fiber is prescribed in the treatment of certain types of constipation.

Specific articles of food may have to be omitted when an individual is found to react unfavorably to them. This is known as food allergy.

The above outline shows how modifications may be made from the normal diet to meet special needs in the case of disease. The reasons for these adaptations will be given in the following chapters.

### *Fevers of Short Duration*

*Typhoid Fever*

*Rheumatic Fever*

*Poliomyelitis*

### *Chronic Fevers and Infections*

*Tuberculosis*

## CHAPTER NINETEEN

# Fevers and Infections

Fever is a condition that is characterized by an elevation of body temperature above normal. It always is accompanied by an increase in metabolism. In most febrile conditions the metabolic rate is increased 7 per cent for each degree Fahrenheit. As a result, the carbohydrate stores are quickly exhausted, and body protein and stored fat are used for fuel if insufficient food is eaten. There is also a loss of body fluids and salts, especially sodium chloride. In planning the diet for such patients, these factors must be kept in mind.

The advent of the antibiotics has shortened the course of many fevers from weeks to days. Typhoid fever is such an infection, and so is pneumococcal pneumonia. These now can be classed with fevers of short duration such as colds, grippe and influenza. Subacute bacterial endocarditis may run a somewhat longer course, even with antibiotics. Recently, the course of rheumatic fever has been much curtailed by the use of the hormones ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) and cortisone. A fever which may be of short duration, but in that time extremely destructive of

body tissues, is poliomyelitis. However, we still have fevers that may last for months, even years, and, therefore, may be classed as chronic. Tuberculosis is the outstanding fever of this type.

### FEVERS OF SHORT DURATION

**Metabolic Changes** In acute febrile conditions both the energy metabolism and the protein metabolism are increased. The longer the fever lasts and the greater the elevation of the temperature, the greater will be the loss of protein from the body tissues. This will be excreted chiefly in the urine in the form of nitrogen compounds. Body fluids also are lost, as well as the salts or minerals of the blood and the tissues.

### Dietary Treatment

Because of the increased metabolism and the destruction of body protein, it will be necessary, sooner or later, to increase both the caloric and the protein intake. But since the digestion is also disturbed, and because the fever is of short duration, it is often advisable to



■ How would you adapt a general, nutritional needs of a patient of average or house, diet for a chronically ill patient with a poor appetite? (See Chap. 17.)

7. Write a menu for a Full Fluid Diet which meets as far as possible the food intake.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

because such patients cannot cough. Thin gruels and thinned mashed potatoes sometimes are taken more easily than clear fluids such as tea and broth. Because with cell destruction there are also large losses of potassium from the body, orange juice, which is high in potassium, should be included frequently (See the suggested diet below).

**NURSING PROBLEMS** If in the acute phase of the disease the muscles concerned with the swallowing mechanism are involved, it may be necessary to give all nutrients by vein in the form of glucose or fructose, protein hydrolysates and electrolyte solutions. As soon as it is possible to pass a plastic tube through the nose into the stomach, tube feedings should be begun. Several types of tube feedings will be found in Chapters 32 and 50. At first the quantities will be small, but they should be increased as rapidly as the patient can tolerate them. When the ability to swallow returns, liquid feedings by mouth may be started.<sup>2</sup>

As soon as the disease subsides, and particularly if there is much tissue damage, an attempt should be made to

<sup>2</sup> Seifert, M. J. *Am Dietet A* 30: 671, 1954.

restore good nutritional status. A high caloric, high protein diet is indicated, and every attempt should be made to get these patients to eat as soon and as much as possible. A general or soft house diet (see p. 223) plus high caloric, high protein beverages between meals, if eaten, will go far toward this goal (see Chap. 50 for recipes).

Fortunately, many poliomyelitis patients recover from the disease with little or no permanent muscle damage. These patients will do well on the diet described in the foregoing paragraph and present no further nutritional problems. It is the patients with extensive loss of muscle function who, for this reason, are discouraged and may even be resistant to eating, either because it is too much trouble or they have lost

sible of the patient's own choosing and of such consistency and arrangement that it can be managed without spilling. For instance, fingers may be of more

# LIQUID DIET FOR THE ACUTE STAGE OF POLIOMYELITIS

Breakfast	Strained orange juice with lactose Hot gruel with sugar and salt Tea with sugar and lemon
10 A.M.	Strained fruit juice with added protein supplement and lactose
Lunch	Hot broth with added gelatin Strained vegetable juice with added protein supplement Lemon ice
2 P.M.	As at 10 A.M.
4 P.M.	As at 10 A.M.
Supper	Strained clear vegetable soup with added gelatin Tomato juice with added protein supplement Grapefruit juice gelatin
8 P.M.	Any of the above
10 P.M.	Any of the above

what to the appetite of the patient, will suffice through the early acute stages of the fever. It is important, of course, that

is prescribed, because the food is digested quickly and easily, and is devoid of irritating substances. Another equally important reason is that in this way the fluid intake is increased. From 3 to 4 quarts of liquid per day is often prescribed in order to prevent dehydration. Fruit juices, including lemon, orange, pineapple, tomato and grapefruit, are given frequently. Tea and coffee (not too strong) with cream and sugar may be given 2 or 3 times a day. Carbonated beverages may be used to lend variety and to increase fluid consumption.

Broths and strained soups are important for their stimulating effect, and as conveyors of salt (sodium chloride), which will be used to replace body losses of this substance as well as fluids.

Milk, of course, is an excellent foundation for a liquid diet. Its importance has been noted in previous chapters. The addition of lactose or flavored syrups increases the caloric value and adds variety. Gruels, with or without milk, are easily taken. They are warm and bland, and often well tolerated by the very sick patient. Feedings should be given every 2 hours. During convalescence certain solid foods, such as crisp toast with butter, toasted breakfast cereals (without bran), soft-cooked eggs, baked or mashed potatoes and, later, soft-cooked vegetables may be added. In other words, the liquid diet is followed by a soft diet, later by a light diet, and still later by a normal

loss has been considerable, the protein intake should be at least 2 times the normal requirement.

The diet in typhoid fever may dif-

fer somewhat from that in other acute fevers in that it should be high in calories and low in residue (see Chap 24). Milk and cream, malted beverages and gruel or ginger ale with cream are indicated in frequent feedings if the patient tolerates them. Lactose may be added for extra calories. Fruit juices had best be omitted, as they tend to distend

diet for several weeks.

The diet in rheumatic fever should be the same as that in other fevers. In the acute stage, it should be liquid and as high in calories and protein as feasible. If ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) or cortisone is used, the diet may have to be low in salt. Both these hormones tend to increase sodium reabsorption in the kidneys, which in turn causes fluid retention and edema. (See Part Four, Table 5, for sodium content of food.) In the chronic stage, the diet may be general or soft and, if carditis is present, low in sodium. (See Chap 27 for low sodium diets.)

**Poliomyelitis.** With the introduction of the Salk vaccine, it is to be hoped that the incidence of this dread infection will diminish markedly. However, a number of cases still are being reported, and the need for maintaining good nutritional status in both the acute and the chronic phases of the disease remains important. The diet in the acute stage is the same as that in fevers of short duration. Since there may be extremely rapid tissue destruction,<sup>1</sup> protein intake should be at as high a level as it is possible to obtain. In the acute stage, protein supplements may be tolerated better than milk and milk beverages, particularly if there is involvement of the trunk and the neck. Milk may increase the production of mucus in the throat, which is dangerous,

<sup>1</sup> Bower, A. G., et al. Am. J. M. Sc. 223:532, 1952

cause of the fever, the caloric needs are increased while for the same reason the appetite decreases. The food intake does not keep pace with the need, and weight loss and fatigue result.

### Dietary Treatment

Although antibiotics and other medications are doing much to control the progress of tuberculosis, they do not effect an immediate cure. Therefore, the diet continues to be highly important in treatment. There has been considerable difference of opinion in the past as to the best type of diet to prescribe. Very high protein diets have been recommended, and at other times diets high in fat were favored.

Today it is believed that the diet should be moderately high in protein to promote healing and high enough in calories to regain lost weight. When the patient has reached his ideal weight, or slightly above, the high protein diet should be continued, but the calories should be reduced to normal.

If an ambulatory patient, this should be raised to from 2,800 to 3,000 calories, reduced or modified according to age (see Chap. 10). It is known that the basal metabolism of the tuberculous patient is increased only moderately, and that destruction of body tissues (protein) is not as marked as in some other

rich in minerals and vitamins. Calcium is important for the calcification of the tuberculous nodes. Brewer and her co-workers<sup>3</sup> have shown the need for a greatly increased intake of calcium in a study of tuberculous women if they are to maintain calcium balance. Iron is necessary if there has been hemoptysis.

<sup>3</sup> Brewer, W. D., et al. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30 21, 1954.

(hemorrhage from the lungs) Getz<sup>4</sup> found low blood levels of ascorbic acid and vitamin A in patients with tuberculosis. Vitamin D is believed to be essential for the absorption and the metabolism of calcium. The B vitamins, having a role in the oxidation of food, should be increased if fever is persistent, they may also stimulate the appetite.

Of the foods especially indicated in tuberculosis, milk stands at the head of the list because of its high content of excellent protein, calcium and vitamins. At least a quart a day should be consumed. This may be taken in almost any form desired. Frequently, the cultured milks, such as acidophilus milk, yoghurt, or even buttermilk, are digested more easily than sweet milk and have at least the advantage of introducing variety into the diet.

Eggs, meat, fish, poultry and cheese should be used freely in the diet. Fruits and the nongaseous vegetables should be included because of their richness in vitamins and in minerals. Fats and carbohydrates in abundance will help to meet the caloric needs. The food should be simply prepared and easily digested.

It should always be remembered that the appetite of the tuberculous patient is very likely to be capricious, due to the toxic products of the disease. For this reason, constant attention should be paid to the variety and the attractiveness of his diet.

The diet for pulmonary tuberculosis should have the following characteristics:

1. Caloric value slightly above normal, or sufficient to maintain weight at normal or slightly above.
2. Protein 75-100 Gm.
3. Carbohydrate and fat in easily digested form.
4. High in minerals and vitamins.
5. Nourishment between meals and before retiring.

<sup>4</sup> Getz, H. R. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30 17, 1954.

importance than forks in the matter of salads. Dishes with hot-water reservoirs beneath them will keep food hot longer than the ordinary dinner plate. All food should be so arranged on the tray that it is easily reached by the patient. If he needs help, it should be given unobtrusively, so as to minimize his need of it. If he must be fed, as with patients in respirators or on rocking beds, the nurse should assume a comfortable position, either sitting or standing, so that the patient will not feel hurried.

If the family lives within visiting distance, they should be encouraged to cook and bring some of the patient's favorite dishes and feed the patient themselves if this can be arranged. These patients present nutritional problems of long duration. It is the patience

in society.

**COMPLICATIONS** Patients who are permanently immobilized have a tendency, despite more than adequate diets, to lose nitrogen and calcium from their tissues. This may happen even when they spend much of their time on rocking beds. The loss of calcium from the bones may lead to increased urinary excretion of calcium and the formation

of calcium phosphate stones in the kidney. For the moderately low calcium, low phosphorus diet used in the treatment and the prevention of such stones, see Chap. 28.

## CHRONIC FEVERS AND INFECTIONS

The regular afternoon fever, continuing perhaps for a long period of time, is usually the symptom which causes the tuberculous patient to seek medical aid. This elevation of temperature may continue for months and even years, thus becoming, indeed, a chronic condition.

### Tuberculosis

**Etiology and Symptoms.** Of the chronic infections, one of the most dreaded is tuberculosis—a malady from which the human race long has suffered. Volumes have been written about it, and it still engages the interest of hundreds of specialists in the medical profession. The infection is due to the tubercle bacillus, which may affect any or all tissues of the body, but the lungs are more commonly affected. Pulmonary tuberculosis is characterized by the elevation of temperature already mentioned, by coughing and expectoration, and by loss of weight and strength. Be-

### A SAMPLE MENU FOR A TUBERCULOUS PATIENT

Breakfast	Dinner	Supper
Citrus fruit	Soup, vegetable or cream	Tomato or fruit juice
Cereal, enriched, with half milk and half cream, sugar	Meat or poultry	Soup, consommé or cream
Egg and bacon	Potato or substitute	Fish, shellfish or cheese dish
Toast, 2 slices, or muffins	Vegetable, green or yellow, cooked	Vegetable or fruit salad
Butter or margarine	Vegetable, raw, salad	Bread or roll
Jam, jelly or marmalade	Roll or bread	Butter or margarine
Coffee with sugar and cream	Butter or margarine	Sponge cake with ice cream
	Glass of milk	Tea or coffee with cream and sugar
	Dessert, baked apple or other fruit	
10 A M	3 P M	9 P M
Malted milk made with milk	Eggnog	Hot cocoa with sweet roll or crackers
	Crackers or cookies	

cause of the fever, the caloric needs are increased while for the same reason the

### Dietary Treatment

Although antibiotics and other medications are doing much to control the progress of tuberculosis, they do not effect an immediate cure. Therefore, the diet continues to be highly important in treatment. There has been considerable difference of opinion in the past as to the best type of diet to prescribe. Very high protein diets have been recommended, and at other times diets high in fat were favored.

Today it is believed that the diet should be moderate, high in protein to

(hemorrhage from the lungs) Getz<sup>4</sup> found low blood levels of ascorbic acid and vitamin A in patients with tuberculosis. Vitamin D is believed to be essential for the absorption and the metabolism of calcium. The B vitamins, having a role in the oxidation of food, should be increased if fever is persistent; they may also stimulate the appetite.

Of the foods especially indicated in tuberculosis, milk stands at the head of the list because of its high content of excellent protein, calcium and vitamins. At least a quart a day should be consumed. This may be taken in almost any form desired. Frequently, the cultured milks, such as acidophilus milk, yoghurt, or even buttermilk, are digested more easily than sweet milk and have at least the advantage of introducing variety into the diet.

Eggs, meat, fish, poultry and cheese should be used freely in the diet. Fruits and the nongaseous vegetables should be included because of their richness in vitamins and in minerals. Fats and carbohydrates in abundance will help to meet the caloric needs. The food should be simply prepared and easily digested.

It should always be remembered that the appetite of the tuberculous patient is very likely to be capricious, due to the toxic products of the disease. For this reason, constant attention should be paid to the variety and the attractiveness of his diet.

The diet for pulmonary tuberculosis should have the following characteristics:

1. Caloric value slightly above normal, or sufficient to maintain weight at normal or slightly above
2. Protein 75-100 Gm.
3. Carbohydrate and fat in easily digested form.
4. High in minerals and vitamins
5. Nourishment between meals and before retiring

<sup>4</sup>Getz, H. R. J. Am. Dietet. A. 30 17, 1934.

weight. For example, a man weighing 70 kg but confined to bed should receive from 2,500 to 2,800 calories, if he

basal metabolism of the tuberculous patient is increased only moderately, and that destruction of body tissues (protein) is not as marked as in some other fevers. Nevertheless, the protein intake should be liberal, averaging from 75 to 100 Gm per day for adults.

The diet should include all the foods rich in minerals and vitamins. Calcium is important for the calcification of the tuberculous nodes. Brewer and her co-workers<sup>3</sup> have shown the need for a greatly increased intake of calcium in a study of tuberculous women if they are to maintain calcium balance. Iron is necessary if there has been hemoptysis.

<sup>3</sup>Brewer, W. D., et al. J. Am. Dietet. A. 30 21, 1934.

6. It should be on the basis of the light diet while the patient is confined to bed (see Chap 18).

**Typical Diet.** On page 232 is a day's diet for a patient requiring 3,000 calories and approximately 100 Gm. of protein

**Drug Complications.** It has been found that large doses of isoniazid, the antibiotic used commonly in the treatment of tuberculosis, causes rapid excretion of pyridoxine or vitamin B<sub>6</sub>. The deficiency results in peripheral neuritis, and possibly anemia. For this reason, pyridoxine may be given along with isoniazid as prevention.<sup>6</sup>

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. A patient has a basal caloric requirement of 1,800 calories and he is running a temperature of 104°. How many more calories will he need because of this temperature? What else will increase his caloric needs?

<sup>6</sup> Biehl, J. P., and Vilter, R. W.: J.A.M.A. 156, 1549, 1954

2. Write a day's liquid diet menu for a patient with an acute fever of short duration.

3. What are the characteristics of the diet used for typhoid fever? Explain the reason for each one.

4. How is the feeding of the patient countered in feeding the polio patient?

6. Plan a high protein, semisoft diet for a patient recovering from polio who has difficulty feeding himself.

7. How can the moderately low calcium, low phosphorus diet be increased in protein? In calories?

8. What factors should be considered in the feeding of patients with tuberculosis?

10. What additions can be made to the regular diet to increase the calories?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

### *General Concept of Deficiencies*

*Protein Deficiencies—Hypoproteinemia and Nutritional Edema, Kwashiorkor*

*Disorders Due to Vitamin A Deficiency*

*Thiamine Deficiency—Polyneuritis and Beriberi*

*Pellagra and Related Deficiencies*

*Riboflavin Deficiency*

*Ascorbic Acid Deficiency—Scurvy*

*Rickets, Osteomalacia, Dental Caries*

*Hemorrhagic Disease of Infants*

*Nutritional Anemia*

*Simple, or Endemic, Goiter*

*Early Diagnosis and Treatment of Nutritional Failure*

## CHAPTER TWENTY

# Nutritional Deficiencies— Subclinical and Clinical

### GENERAL CONCEPT OF DEFICIENCIES

The concept of a nutritional deficiency as a cause of specific disease developed as a result of early work with scurvy and beriberi. It was decades before other forms of deficiency

controlled lack of specific nutrients in animals and/or man, it became possible to understand the function of these nutrients in metabolism. Only with this type of knowledge could subclinical

deficiency is limited to a single nutrient. If the diet has been so inadequate as to produce obvious disease symptoms, further investigation usually will disclose other

symptoms characteristic of multiple deficiencies.

It is customary to classify deficiency states as primary and secondary primary when due to an inadequate intake of essential nutrients, secondary, or conditioned, malnutrition when due to poor or incomplete absorption or utilization of nutrients. In addition to the specific deficiency diseases such as rickets, beriberi and scurvy, which have long been recognized, research in medical sciences is discovering either primary or secondary involvement of nutrition in many diseases. Some conditions not classified as nutritional may be aggravated or even initiated by malnutrition. For instance, war and postwar findings showed an increase in intestinal diseases, ulcers and anemia associated with undernutrition in Holland in the winter of 1944 to 1945.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Stare, F. J : *Nutrition Rev.* 3 : 225, 1945



Real deficiency diseases are still encountered in some countries where food supplies are inadequate in quality and quantity. In the United States and many other countries where food supplies are reasonably adequate, only mild or subclinical malnutrition is encountered. Thus, in this chapter the subclinical deficiencies are given special consideration along with comments on the more severe conditions where they are significant for an understanding of the subclinical or where they still present a world nutrition problem.

Underweight and general malnutrition — due to insufficient amounts of food

## PROTEIN DEFICIENCIES

### Hypoproteinemia and Nutritional Edema

**Incidence.** Subclinical forms of hypoproteinemia may accompany other pathologic conditions and may occur without starvation or accompanying edema. Actually, hypoproteinemia is a fairly common complication of debilitating disease. It may occur following surgery, wounds and severe burns, and it is not an uncommon accompaniment of gastric ulcers and liver and kidney diseases. It may also be a complication of pregnancy.

Only recently has science demonstrated the clinical picture of protein deficiency and the several ways in which it may occur.

**Etiology.** Youmans<sup>2</sup> lists the following conditions as causes of protein deficiency.

1. Deficient intake of protein as related to quantity and to quality (essential amino acids).
2. Failure of absorption or utilization, as in gastro-intestinal diseases.
3. Abnormal destruction or loss from

<sup>2</sup> Youmans, J. B. JAMA. 128 439, 1945.



Fig. 50. Malnutrition in a child showing emaciation, protruding abdomen and typical facial expression. (Malnutrition and Starvation in Western Netherlands, 1944-1945, The Hague, General State Printing Office)

the body, as in nephrosis, when large quantities of albumin are excreted by the kidneys, and in severe burns, when the exudate continues for some time.

Youmans also points out the importance of the caloric intake when he says that "of almost greater importance in some cases than the actual amounts of protein is the caloric intake. This is because protein is burned for heat (calories) in the absence of sufficient fat and carbohydrates to supply energy requirements. When the amount of protein in the diet is near minimal, the use of some of it for fuel may make the supply inadequate, and amounts which appear adequate may actually be insufficient."

Severe protein starvation with edema is seldom encountered, except during wars or famines, when there are prolonged food shortages. The condition

has been reported in the histories of

several smaller communities in North Holland there were as many as 125,000 cases of hunger edema, not including infants.<sup>3</sup>

This report and others from war zones indicated that the occurrence and the severity of the edema were not always related to the degree of protein deficiency, although the two conditions were associated closely.

Well-controlled laboratory observa-

<sup>3</sup> Stare, F. J. *Op. cit.*

tions<sup>4</sup> of men restricted to starvation rations have demonstrated the complex syndrome, resulting from food restriction without the emotional and environmental stresses encountered in war-torn countries. The diet and the treatment most advantageous for recovery also were studied under controlled conditions.

**Symptoms and Pathology.** Symptoms of subclinical forms of hypoproteinemia, often without edema, may be loss of weight, strength and appetite, but, since these are characteristic of other diseases, it becomes necessary to

<sup>4</sup> Keys, Ancel. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 22: 582, 1946.



Fig. 59. Boys from Kansu Province, China. The boy at the left after 4 years spent at Shantan Bailey School, where he was well nourished. The boy at right, a stunted little coal miner of the same age, who has always had an inadequate food intake. (Food & Agriculture Organization of the United Nations)

Real deficiency diseases are still encountered in some countries where food supplies are inadequate in quality and quantity. In the United States and many other countries where food supplies are reasonably adequate, only mild or subclinical malnutrition is encountered. Thus, in this chapter the subclinical deficiencies are given special consideration along with comments on the more severe conditions where they are significant for an understanding of the subclinical or where they still present a world nutrition problem.

Underweight and general malnutrition due to insufficient amounts of food or failure to eat because of poor appetite or inability to eat are discussed in Chapter 21 or in other chapters in Part Two.

## PROTEIN DEFICIENCIES

### Hypoproteinemia and Nutritional Edema

**Incidence.** Subclinical forms of hypoproteinemia may accompany other pathologic conditions and may occur without starvation or accompanying edema. Actually, hypoproteinemia is a fairly common complication of debilitating disease. It may occur following surgery, wounds and severe burns, and it is not an uncommon accompaniment of gastric ulcers and liver and kidney diseases. It may also be a complication of pregnancy.

Only recently has science demonstrated the clinical picture of protein deficiency and the several ways in which it may occur.

**Etiology.** Youmans<sup>2</sup> lists the following conditions as causes of protein deficiency:

1. Deficient intake of protein as related to quantity and to quality (essential amino acids)
2. Failure of absorption or utilization, as in gastro-intestinal diseases.
3. Abnormal destruction or loss from

<sup>2</sup>Youmans, J ■ JAMA 128 439, 1945.



Fig 58 Malnutrition in a child showing emaciation, protruding abdomen and typical facial expression (Malnutrition and Starvation in Western Netherlands, 1944-1945, The Hague, General State Printing Office)

the body, as in nephrosis, when large quantities of albumin are excreted by the kidneys, and in severe burns, when the exudate continues for some time.

Youmans also points out the importance of the caloric intake when he says that "of almost greater importance in some cases than the actual amounts of protein is the caloric intake. This is because protein is burned for heat (calories) in the absence of sufficient fat and carbohydrates to supply energy requirements. When the amount of protein in the diet is near minimal, the use of some of it for fuel may make the supply inadequate, and amounts which appear adequate may actually be insufficient."

Severe protein starvation with edema is seldom encountered, except during wars or famines, when there are prolonged food shortages. The condition



Fig. 60. Kwashiorkor. Same child (left) with edema and (right) showing severe underlying malnutrition when the edema had disappeared following high protein feeding (Instituto de Nutrición de Centro América y Panamá, Guatemala, C. A.)

Pollack<sup>8</sup> found that extreme cases did not respond well to the use of protein hydrolysates, either orally or intravenously. They did make remarkable recoveries on thick egg-nog mixtures high in protein made from dried skim milk

theoretically should have been beneficial. Blood and plasma transfusions were also given as an emergency source of protein.

### Kwashiorkor

One of the most widespread nutritional disorders in tropical and sub-tropical areas is a syndrome ~~is~~ present ill defined but considered to be a deficiency disease. Brock and Autret<sup>9</sup> visited a large number of territories in Africa under the auspices of FAO, and their

report substantiates and expands earlier evidence of the seriousness of this disease. In this report, kwashiorkor is described as composed of 5 essential fea-

edema; fatty infiltration, cellular necrosis and fibrosis of the liver; and a heavy mortality when not treated. The term *kwashiorkor*, from an African dialect, has been explained as meaning "red boy," referring to a reddish-hair pigmentation which accompanies the disease in dark-skinned races. Went<sup>7</sup> reported later that the term in another

syndrome was first described and named in Africa, it has now been recognized in many parts of the world, particularly in Latin America, South America, Southeast Asia, Indonesia and India. It is

<sup>7</sup> Went, L. N. *Doc. Med. progr. trop.* 7, 139, 1955.

<sup>8</sup> Pollack, H. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 23:410, 1947.

<sup>9</sup> Brock and Autret. *Kwashiorkor in Africa*, FAO Pub., 1950.

resort to laboratory tests for reliable diagnosis. The blood may be tested for serum proteins—albumin and globulin—and, if these are below normal, the condition is described as hypoproteinemia. At first no obvious clinical symptoms may be noted, but the serum protein may be low enough to delay wound healing after surgery or recuperation from other diseases.

Urine tests may reveal a seepage of albumin into the urine, which of course is a source of depletion of the body protein, since a loss of 1 Gm. of albumin indicates a loss of 30 Gm. of body tissue. Nausea and vomiting also may result in the loss of protein through decreased intake.

Edema accompanying prolonged starvation has characteristics of clinical significance. According to Youmans

The edema, although not the earliest result of protein deficiency, in our present state of knowledge is about the first clinical sign of the deficiency. One of the characteristics of the edema is its

night.

In the mild form the edema is usually painless and bilateral, and develops gradually. There may be an increase in weight, any loss of body tissue being masked by the edema. Weakness, lassitude and mental depression are common, and there is likely to be polyuria, especially nocturia. When other disease symptoms are present they are apt to overshadow those due to protein deficiency.

Children deprived of adequate food with protein markedly deficient become emaciated, and growth is definitely retarded. Occasionally, they show some evidence of edema, but it is less marked

than in adults. Even after they have been receiving adequate food long enough to have regained average weight for height, they may still be under height for their age. One relief work reported surprise upon learning that little fellow who appeared to be about years old was actually 12, and this happened repeatedly. On the other hand the facial expression of such children too mature for their age.

**Treatment.** An adequate diet was

either mild or severe protein deficiency. The milder type, which may accompany or follow debilitating disease or surgery is ignored too often. Frequently the patients have poor appetites or cannot eat sufficient food to meet their needs. Even though blood or plasma transfusions have been used to meet the immediate needs of the critically ill, the continuing requirement of the convalescent for good protein at each meal is of utmost importance. This requirement may be recognized but not met when limited budgets of institutions curtail the purchase of adequate protein food.

After long periods of protein deficiency or starvation, many months may be required to restore depleted body tissues to normal. In practice, it may take some time before such persons can tolerate a fully adequate diet, and certain precautions are necessary. Persons who have been deprived of food or have had 1,000 calories or less for extended periods have a decreased capacity for food and must be provided with a graduated increase in food of the right kind. The tolerance for fat is usually low, causing diarrhea or increasing the already present. In the rehabilitation of Dutch children in England they were given 1,800 calories the first day, and this was increased to 2,400 only at the end of the first week.

In the treatment of severe emaciation and protein starvation in Europe

called by various terms, such as multiple-deficiency syndrome, protein malnutrition and, in Spanish-speaking countries, *síndrome policarencial infantil*.<sup>2</sup> The symptoms vary slightly according to reports from these scattered areas, but they are sufficiently similar to lend support to the concept that they are true protein malnutrition. Figure 60 from Scrimshaw<sup>3</sup> shows the edema and the emaciation which becomes evident when the edema disappears. Rapid weight gain and recovery follow feeding with milk or some other good protein food.

Recommendations for the prevention of kwashiorkor-type disease in children always emphasize some more adequate source of protein for children when they are weaned from mother's milk. Since it would take many years to provide adequate supplies of animal proteins, in the countries where kwashiorkor is prevalent, attention is focused upon improving the quality of the protein from vegetable origin. Peanuts, soybeans and protein-rich varieties of millet are among the plants giving good yields of protein. The improvement of legumes and other foods familiar to these people is recommended instead of introducing new foods which might not be accepted. In addition to these general suggestions, more suitable supplementary foods for weaning infants, such as dry skim milk powder, are badly needed. Artificial milk from pulses and peanuts, which can be made at home, is also suggested. By means of education and aroused interest some progress is being made.

## DISORDERS DUE TO VITAMIN A DEFICIENCY

### Night Blindness (Nyctalopia) and Glare Blindness (Hemeralopia)

**Incidence.** Mild deficiencies of vitamin A with a variety of manifestations

<sup>2</sup> Report of Third Conference on Nutrition Problems in Latin America, Rome, FAO, June, 1954.

<sup>3</sup> Scrimshaw, N. S., et al. J.A.M.A. 164: 555, 1957.

still occur in the world today. One of the early signs long associated with this deficiency is night blindness. In Labrador and Newfoundland, where this condition has been recognized for generations, the popular remedy is fish liver, which the people rarely eat as food but will take as medicine. Varying degrees of night blindness are discovered among children and adults in this country when instruments for detecting and measuring adjustment to dull light are used for routine examinations of large groups. In general, it tends to be more prevalent among low-income groups, but some cases are found in almost any group.

Glare blindness (hemeralopia), closely related and essentially similar to night blindness, was recognized when automobile drivers complained of being unable to drive at night because of the glare of headlights (Fig. 61). During the war pilots were examined especially for this condition, and a liberal intake of vitamin A was recommended as a preventive.

**Etiology and Pathology.** Both nyctalopia and hemeralopia are functional disorders resulting from the slow regeneration of visual purple in the retina of the eye. The difficulty is usually due to insufficient vitamin A to combine with the protein of the retina for the regeneration of visual purple, which is bleached to visual yellow under the influence of bright light. Regeneration of visual purple takes place in the dark, but replenishment of vitamin A from the blood stream is necessary to hasten the reaction, i.e., to permit adaptation in the shortest possible time.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** A person may have a mild degree of either night or glare blindness and not be aware of it unless his attention is drawn to it by some circumstance or special test. One person may be slower than another in adjusting to the dull light of a movie theater, but neither is aware of a difference. Of those who find it difficult to drive at night because of headlight glare, some may have a vitamin A defi-



*Fig 61 (Top) "Glare blindness" often is a symptom of vitamin A deficiency. Headlights dazzle the eyes and cause discomfort. The driver is blinded temporarily by oncoming headlights, and the edge of the road is seen with difficulty (Bottom) An adequate intake of vitamin A protects against "glare blindness" or remedies it. Properly focused headlights no longer dazzle so blindingly, and the road edge can be seen almost immediately after the headlight glare has passed.*





Fig. 62 Xerophthalmia, the result of a diet that is deficient in vitamin A. (Marriot, W. McK. *Infant Nutrition*, St. Louis, Mosby)

veals some of the pathologic changes, but diagnosis usually is based upon more careful examination with proper instruments. The more severe manifestations of vitamin A deficiency are rare in this country, but xerophthalmia may occur among children in countries where there are food shortages. It occurred during World War I in Denmark when most of the dairy products were being shipped out of the country, skim milk only being retained for home consumption. When whole milk was rationed, a pint per day per child, the eye condition was conquered promptly, proving it to have been of nutritional origin. Mild outbreaks have been reported more recently where skim-milk powder provided as a relief food was used without replacement of fat.

eye are decreased as a result of keratinization of the epithelial cells due to a vitamin A deficiency.

**Symptoms and Pathology.** The first symptoms of xerosis are itching and burning, with a mild light sensitivity, usually accompanied by redness of the lids and some inflammation. There is

probably a secondary infection, but this

ally develop hemeralopia before the ophthalmic symptoms appear. The cornea becomes dry and lusterless, and eventually opaque and soft. This infection, once started, may spread rapidly and destroy the eye before the deficiency can be corrected or the infection conquered (Fig. 63).

**Treatment.** An adequate food source of vitamin A is usually sufficient as a preventive. Obviously, a food source of vitamin A would not be sufficient to cure an acute case of xerophthalmia, and massive doses of vitamin A in the form of concentrates probably would be prescribed by the attending physician.

#### Other Conditions Due to Vitamin A Deficiency

**Cutaneous lesions** may appear early





Fig. 61 (Top) "Glare blindness" often is a symptom of vitamin A deficiency. Headlights dazzle the eyes and cause discomfort. The driver is blinded temporarily by oncoming headlights, and the edge of the road is seen with difficulty. (Bottom) An adequate intake of vitamin A protects against "glare blindness" or remedies it. Properly focused headlights no longer dazzle so blindingly, and the road edge can be seen almost immediately after the headlight glare has passed.



called by various terms, such as multiple-deficiency syndrome, protein malnutrition and, in Spanish-speaking countries, *síndrome policarencial infantil*.<sup>8</sup> The symptoms vary slightly according to reports from these scattered areas, but they are sufficiently similar to lend support to the concept that they are true protein malnutrition. Figure 80 from Scrimshaw<sup>9</sup> shows the edema and the emaciation which becomes evident when the edema disappears. Rapid weight gain and recovery follow feeding with milk or some other good protein food.

Recommendations for the prevention of kwashiorkor-type disease in children always emphasize some more adequate source of protein for children when they are weaned from mother's milk. Since it would take many years to provide adequate supplies of animal proteins, in the countries where kwashiorkor is prevalent, attention is focused upon improving the quality of the protein from vegetable origin. Peanuts, soybeans and protein-rich varieties of millet are among the plants giving good yields of protein. The improvement of legumes and other foods familiar to these people is recommended instead of introducing new foods which might not be accepted. In addition to these general suggestions, more suitable supplementary foods for weaning infants, such as dry skin milk powder, are badly needed. Artificial milk from pulses and peanuts, which can be made at home, is also suggested. By means of education and aroused interest some progress is being made.

#### DISORDERS DUE TO VITAMIN A DEFICIENCY

##### Night Blindness (Nyctalopia) and Glare Blindness (Hemeralopia)

**Incidence.** Mild deficiencies of vitamin A with a variety of manifestations

<sup>8</sup> Report of Third Conference on Nutrition Problems in Latin America, Rome, FAO, June, 1954.

<sup>9</sup> Scrimshaw, N. S., et al. *J.A.M.A.* 164: 555, 1957.

still occur in the world today. One of the early signs long associated with this deficiency is night blindness. In Labrador and Newfoundland, where this condition has been recognized for generations, the popular remedy is fish liver, which the people rarely eat as food but will take as medicine. Varying degrees of night blindness are discovered among children and adults in this country when instruments for detecting and measuring adjustment to dull light are used for routine examinations of large groups. In general, it tends to be more prevalent among low-income groups, but some cases are found in almost any group.

Glare blindness (hemeralopia), closely related and essentially similar to night blindness, was recognized when automobile drivers complained of being unable to drive at night because of the glare of headlights (Fig. 81). During the war pilots were examined especially for this condition, and a liberal intake of vitamin A was recommended as a preventive.

**Etiology and Pathology.** Both nyctalopia and hemeralopia are functional disorders resulting from the slow regeneration of visual purple in the retina of the eye. The difficulty is usually due to insufficient vitamin A to combine with the protein of the retina for the regeneration of visual purple, which is bleached to visual yellow under the influence of bright light. Regeneration of visual purple takes place in the dark, but replenishment of vitamin A from the blood stream is necessary to hasten the reaction, i.e., to permit adaptation in the shortest possible time.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** A person may have a mild degree of either night or glare blindness and not be aware of it unless his attention is drawn to it by some circumstance or special test. One person may be slower than another in adjusting to the dull light of a movie theater, but neither is aware of a difference. Of those who find it difficult to drive at night because of headlight glare, some may have a vitamin A defi-



Fig 62, Vitamin A. Testing for nutritional night blindness. (U. S. Institute of Home Economics)

ciency, but there are other possible causes. This is not a condition which causes sufficient discomfort to prompt one to seek medical advice unless it reaches an advanced stage. Various types of instruments have been developed to test for light adaptation, but none of them is entirely satisfactory. One form of adaptometer is shown in Figure 62.

**Treatment.** A daily intake of 5,000 I.U. of vitamin A is more than enough to prevent night blindness or any related condition, unless for some reason the person is unable to use this vitamin or convert carotene into vitamin A. Usu-

ally, a food source of this vitamin is

liver-oil concentrates containing true vitamin A come in the usual 5,000 or 10,000 I.U. to the capsule. For food sources of vitamin A and further discussion of the subject see Chapter 7.

#### **Xerosis and Xerophthalmia**

**Incidence.** Xerosis, an early change in the outer layers of the eye, may be a manifestation of vitamin A deficiency. Gross examination in a good light re-

Fig. 63. Xerophthalmia, the result of a diet that is deficient in vitamin A. (Marriot, W. McK.: Infant Nutrition, St. Louis, Mosby.)



veals some of the pathologic changes, but diagnosis usually is based upon more careful examination with proper instruments. The more severe manifestations of vitamin A deficiency are rare

probably a secondary infection, but this is not as severe as in xerophthalmia.

In children affected with these eye conditions, usually there are numerous other evidences of malnutrition, such as stunted growth and anemia. Adults usually develop hemeralopia before the ophthalmic symptoms appear. The cornea becomes dry and lusterless, and eventually opaque and soft. This infection, once started, may spread rapidly and destroy the eye before the deficiency can be corrected or the infection conquered (Fig. 83).

**Treatment.** An adequate food source of vitamin A is usually sufficient as a preventive. Obviously, a food source of vitamin A would not be sufficient to cure an acute case of xerophthalmia, and massive doses of vitamin A in the form of concentrates probably would be prescribed by the attending physician.

#### Other Conditions Due to Vitamin A Deficiency

Cutaneous lesions may appear early in adults and have a characteristic appearance. Papules tend to form around hair follicles on outer surfaces of arms, legs, shoulders and lower abdomen, and are described as having a "gooseflesh"

Mild outbreaks have been reported more recently where skim-milk powder provided as a relief food was used without supplement for infant feeding.

Xerophthalmia is due to a secondary infection of the cornea which occurs when the protective secretions of the eye are decreased as a result of keratinization of the epithelial cells due to

usually, with a blue light sensitivity, usually accompanied by redness of the lids and some inflammation. There is

appearance. They usually disappear when an adequate food source of vitamin A is provided.

**Respiratory-tract infections** are often aggravated by a vitamin A deficiency which allows keratinization of epithelial cells in the respiratory passages, thus reducing their natural resistance to infection. Bronchitis, sinusitis, otitis media and pneumonia are all possible consequences of such lowered resistance due to pathologic changes in the mucous membranes. The relation of vitamin A deficiency to the common cold is still an open question.

**Genito-urinary tract changes** also may occur as a result of vitamin A deficiency.

Animals as a result of a vitamin A deficiency and have also been reported in humans in India where diets deficient in vitamin A are common. More research is needed to explain complications due to epithelial cell changes resulting from this deficiency.

### THIAMINE DEFICIENCY— POLYNEURITIS AND BERIBERI

**Incidence.** Mild or chronic thiamine deficiency is more often a depletion of the whole group of B complex vitamins. Such a chronic multiple deficiency may be a contributing factor in malnutrition in children and in certain chronic diseases of middle age not ordinarily con-

more liberal supply than a lethargic person, and symptoms attributable to lack of thiamine may show up earlier than others.

Genetic differences in metabolism may be responsible for individual varia-

tions in requirements for this and other factors.

In this country, polyneuritis resulting from chronic alcoholism is the commonest form of thiamine deficiency encountered, and more often it is a multiple deficiency.

The frank deficiency disease known as beriberi is of special significance among the rice eaters of the Orient, where it still occurs, but less frequently than formerly. It has almost disappeared from Japan, where the prophylactic use of thiamine and enriched rice is common today.

Beriberi is described in Chinese history, and some of the earliest attempts to treat it are reported from Japan and the Philippines. The recognition of its cause and that better diet could cure it is one of the landmarks in the history of nutrition. Takaki, a medical officer in the Japanese marines during the 1880's, was alarmed at the number of cases of beriberi—169 on one ship with 25 deaths. He proposed a theory that the food must be at fault and helped plan an experiment to prove it. A special diet of benberi and no deaths on the trip. The 14 men who were sick had refused to eat the meat and the milk. According to the original report, Takaki attributed the improvement to an increase in nitrogen. The experiment, reinterpreted in view of modern knowledge, really demonstrated that foods containing more thiamine protected the men against the deficiency disease beriberi.

The extreme condition of human beriberi is seldom encountered in North America, except in certain isolated communities where the food supply is exceedingly limited. Such a situation formerly occurred in northern Newfoundland and Labrador, particularly during the winters following poor fishing seasons, when food became scarce and the



Fig 64 (A) Atrophic beriberi (dry). (B) Edematous beriberi (wet) with pigmentation and erosions of the skin (Hoffmann-La Roche, Inc.)

be more susceptible than the women and the children. Thanks to the program of flour enrichment, since 1944 there has been a marked decrease in the incidence of beriberi. Now it is seldom seen.

**Etiology.** Beriberi, as such, results only from a long-time deficiency such as may occur among people who eat a

spring as soon as fresh game and fresh fish were available. The men seemed to

limited diet habitually. When the thiamine intake is insufficient but not extremely deficient over an extended period of time, milder and ill-defined symptoms described below may result.

**Symptoms and Pathology.** Possible symptoms of a vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency are muscular and nervous fatigue, often vague or ill defined, with or without indigestion and constipation. Cardiovascular manifestations of this deficiency may respond to the administration of thiamine. There are other manifestations also, such as anorexia and nausea, which are improved by the same factor.

Symptoms of beriberi are gastro-intestinal disturbances, such as chronic constipation, due to decreased motility, degenerative changes in heart muscle, pain and loss of function, particularly of the lower extremities, due to a multiple neuritis. The last condition, which is most disabling, is often the only symptom recognized by the native as a part of the disease, therefore, many of

the milder cases of beriberi which do not reach the stage of paralysis never are diagnosed as beriberi. The two common types of beriberi, known as the wet form and the dry form, are closely related, although they present quite a different appearance to the casual observer (as in Fig. 64). Both types show muscle degeneration, loss of motor function and loss of sensation. In the more acute form, fluid may accumulate in certain areas, masking the real emaciation by the edema. In the dry form, which is more chronic, the emaciation is more evident because there is no edema, but the other symptoms are similar. The

lent prevent rapid progress in the improvement of food habits.

**Treatment.** Adequate food sources of thiamine are sufficient to prevent any of the deficiency conditions described,



Fig. 64 Bilateral symmetric skin lesions with pigmentation due to niacin deficiency (Yourness, J. B. *Diagnosis and Treatment of Nutritional Deficiencies*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

but, when the pathologic symptoms appear, more concentrated sources of thiamine usually are necessary for prompt recovery. Anorexia and nausea are often so severe as to preclude an adequate food intake until symptoms have been relieved by the administration of concentrates.

scribe B complex concentrates rather than pure thiamine. The dosage for therapeutic purposes is often several times the recommended allowance of 1.0 to 1.6 mg. of thiamine with other

and other fractions of the B complex.)

### PELLAGRA AND RELATED DEFICIENCIES

**Incidence.** Pellagra may occur in

spoiled corn. Sometimes it was called corn-eaters' disease. Goldberger suggested that there must be a pellagra-

niacin alone. Further investigation disclosed that usually there was a multiple deficiency of B complex factors, especially thiamine and riboflavin, as well as niacin, which accounted for certain characteristic symptoms of the disease.

and in tryptophan, one of the essential amino acids, which is a precursor of niacin in metabolism. Thus, people for whom corn is a major item of diet and who have very little animal protein obtain insufficient amounts of both niacin and its precursor tryptophan.

symmetric on the exposed surfaces of arms, legs and neck. They may appear as the earliest manifestation of the disease and look at first like a severe sunburn, later becoming rough and scaly. Since

in any part of the country in persons confined to restricted diets. This is more apt to occur when allergy to a number of protein foods limits the diet to a few items. Older people and those with self-imposed restrictions also may show pellagra symptoms.

**Etiology.** Goldberger first demonstrated that pellagra probably was a vitamin deficiency. Earlier, pellagra was thought to be due to a deficiency of protein or to an infection caused by eating

Gastro-intestinal symptoms are usu-

an anorexia (loss of appetite) or fear of food limits consumption and further ag-



gravates the condition. A lack of hydrochloric acid in the stomach accounts for some of these symptoms and also predisposes the subject to anemia.

The neurologic manifestations may

symptom of deficiency. That, combined with ignorance and poverty, has limited the introduction of adequate preventive measures in many areas. As a consequence, there are still some cases of pellagra scattered through the South that are not receiving either prophylactic or curative treatment.

**Treatment and Prevention.** Severe cases of pellagra now are hospitalized if possible and given multiple-vitamin therapy plus an adequate diet, with the result that they recover in due course. The dosage of niacin and other B complex factors is usually well above the recommended allowance of 17 to 21 mg of niacin equivalent daily and other factors in proportion. Niacinamide is the form in which this factor is administered when large doses are required.

Milk, eggs, meat, nuts and certain vegetables would supply the factors missing in the typical pellagra-producing diet of sorghum molasses, corn grits and fat back. A more varied diet is economically prohibitive among the lower-income groups. Nevertheless, educational efforts and other preventive measures among these people have been remarkably effective in reducing the number of cases of pellagra. Sporadic cases will continue to appear where poverty, isolation and ignorance exist. A Negro educator in talking to his people recommended

A garden and a cow, a smoke-house and a sow,  
Twenty-four chickens and a rooster and  
you'll live better than you uster.

### RIBOFLAVIN DEFICIENCY

**Incidence.** No well-defined deficiency syndrome or disease with a long history,

such as scurvy or beriberi, is associated with a lack of riboflavin. However, studies by Spies *et al*<sup>10</sup> show that riboflavin deficiency is one of the common clinical nutrition problems, especially among infants and children in areas where other deficiencies are endemic. As has already been mentioned, this deficiency is often associated with that of

responsible for a type of light sensitivity and dimness of vision, followed later by itching, burning and eyestrain. Later clinical manifestations are a shiny red mucosa of the lips with cracking at the corners of the mouth, known as cheilosis, a beefy red tongue and roughened skin around the mouth and the nose, often accompanied by sebaceous exudate.

A riboflavin deficiency in certain animals may interfere with normal fetal development. Until we know more about human need for riboflavin during pregnancy, an adequate supply is certainly recommended. The physiological significance of riboflavin is discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

**Treatment and Prevention.** Common food sources of riboflavin are listed in Chapter 8, but it is pertinent to emphasize that this factor is perhaps more difficult than other vitamins to obtain in adequate amounts in low-cost diets. Milk and organ meats are the richest natural sources. Enriched bread made with at least 6 per cent of dry-milk solids is also a good economical source. Dry yeast, yeast extracts and other B complex concentrates are frequently prescribed by physicians.

### ASCORBIC ACID DEFICIENCY—SCURVY

Scurvy is so rare in the United States today that a medical student or a nurse seldom has an opportunity to observe a case. Milder manifestations of this defi-

<sup>10</sup> Spies, T. D., *et al*: *Am. J. M. Sc.* 200, 25, 1940.



Fig 66. Infantile scurvy. Typical contractions of extremities from pain  
(Hoffmann-Le Roche, Inc)

ciency do occur, but these are non-specific in many cases and difficult to recognize as a deficiency syndrome. The very scarcity of the frank deficiency in the world today is a tribute to the science of nutrition. The history is significant for this reason.

**History and Incidence.** Scurvy is probably the oldest recognized deficiency disease. Although its specific relationship to ascorbic acid was not recognized until the 20th century, its prevention by the use of fresh foods was practiced much earlier. Prevalent in Europe during the 19th century and earlier, for centuries scurvy was attributed to a limited food supply. On the long voyages which followed the discovery of America, sailors often were obliged to subsist for long periods on salt fish and meats, hardtack or other breadstuffs, entirely deprived of any fresh food. The outbreaks of scurvy on such voyages were frequently so severe that there was scarcely enough of the crew left to man the vessel. In 1772, however, Captain Cook took a voyage which lasted 3 years, during which time not one man was lost because of scurvy. This fact he attributed to the use of a "sweet wort" made from barley and sauerkraut. Subsequently, limes or

lemons were included in the supplies, since they had been found to be antiscorbutic, i.e., scurvy preventive.

Scurvy probably was responsible for most of the deaths among the pilgrims in the Massachusetts Bay Colony during that first hard winter. There was an outbreak of mild scurvy in northern Maine during the depression years, the early 1930's. Other outbreaks of the disease have been associated with famine or war areas, when the food supply was limited. Its occurrence in recent years has been limited chiefly to polar expeditions or other circumstances in which fresh-food supplies were unavailable. Expert dietetic advice was sought in planning the food supplies for the more recent polar expeditions in order to avoid the possibility of a vitamin C shortage, because scurvy is greatly dreaded by explorers.

Eskimos seldom have scurvy on their native diets but are susceptible to it when they adopt the "white man's diet." It is possible that their vitamin C intake may be greater or their requirement less on their native diet.

**Symptoms and Pathology.** The principal symptoms of scurvy are restlessness, loss of appetite, soreness to the touch, sore mouth and gums with bleeding and loosening of the teeth, petechial

skin hemorrhages, and swelling of the legs with special tenderness about the knee joints. Anemia may occur as a result of the loss of blood.

Well-defined symptoms of this disease are seldom encountered in this country, but sallow skin, muddy complexion, lack of energy, and fleeting

infantile scurvy is about the only form encountered, and this is extremely rare. Irritability, retarded growth and tooth defects may also accompany this dietary deficiency.

Mild manifestations of ascorbic acid deficiency in adults may easily be overlooked or ignored. Tendency to bruise easily, slow healing of minor wounds and pin-point hemorrhages may be indications of tissue depletion of this factor.

Secondary and vague symptoms of

dietary restrictions of fresh fruits and vegetables. Recovery from surgery is hastened by the attention now given to ascorbic acid in preoperative and post-operative diets. High fever seems to create an increased demand for this factor. Although the reason for this increased requirement is still obscure, liberal supplements of ascorbic acid in concentrated form, in addition to that in the diet, may have significant influence

and the amount essential for optimum health. The recommended allowance of 70 to 75 mg. for normal adults is obviously not enough to saturate depleted tissues or to meet increased demands associated with fevers and infections. It is more than enough to prevent any symptom of scurvy. Ascorbic acid in tablet form often is prescribed in daily

use.

Food sources of this factor are entirely adequate for the prevention of scorbutic symptoms or milder manifestations. For rich food sources of ascorbic acid and for a discussion of its properties and losses in cooking, see Chapter 8. Ascorbic acid in tablet form is stable and relatively inexpensive. It is useful when fresh foods are not available or must be omitted from the diet for any

## RICKETS

**Incidence and Etiology.** The number and the severity of the cases of rickets have been reduced greatly in recent

Europe made it one of the deficiency diseases first to attract special attention. The general use today of adequate antirachitic supplements in infant feeding is chiefly responsible for the reduced incidence in northern climates. It is rare in our southern states and in tropical countries in general, where children live more out of doors and have more skin

for all these conditions, but is there an adequate supply? There is probably a wide gap between the amount of ascorbic acid necessary to prevent scurvy

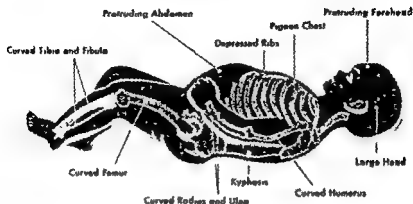


Fig. 67. The symptoms of rickets (Abbott Laboratories)

exposed to the sun. Children of dark-skinned races living in northern climates are even more susceptible to rickets than those of the white race.

The most common form of rickets is due to a vitamin D deficiency sometimes associated with a disturbance in the calcium-phosphorus ratio.

**Symptoms and Pathology.** Rickets is a disease of infancy and early childhood in which the bones do not calcify properly as they grow. They become pliable, malformed and distorted, the re-

sult being a soft, pliable skeleton. At first, since nature seems to allow the bones to increase in length to keep up with growth in other tissues, but their rigidity is decreased because there has not been a sufficient deposit of calcium salts. Consequently, we may see an infant on a high carbohydrate fattening diet looking plump and well nourished, although a roentgenogram reveals that the bones are not keeping pace with the growth of the body as a whole. When such children begin to walk, they show the characteristic signs of rickets. Prolonged and severe cases usually show stunted growth. Since teeth consist of material similar to bone, a diet or other conditions unfavorable for building bone may lead to malformation of the teeth and predispose to dental caries. Infantile tetany may be associated with a low calcium type of rickets. Tetany is discussed in Chapter 31.

**Treatment and Prevention.** The major factors involved in the prevention of rickets—calcium, phosphorus and vitamin D—have been discussed in Chapters 6 and 7. Since the geographic incidence of rickets and practical experience indicate that it is more often a deficiency in vitamin D which causes rickets in chil-

than in an emaciated one, but it is characteristic. Profuse sweating and restlessness are early symptoms of rickets in infants. Growth may not be retarded at

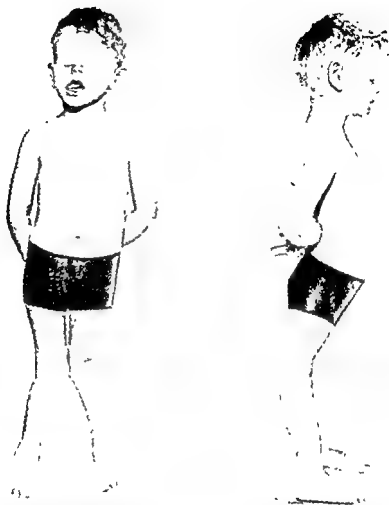


Fig 111 Child suffering from severe rickets. Note knock knees, flat feet, enlarged joints and other skeletal deformities accompanied by very poor posture. (Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation)

dren, attention is directed to the problem of adequate and reliable sources of this factor in regions where sunshine cannot act as the natural preventive agent. Obviously when children can be exposed to an adequate source of ultraviolet light (sunshine or ultraviolet lamp), sufficient vitamin D may be synthesized to regulate the utilization of

minerals for bone building. This fact probably explains the low incidence of rickets in Southern states. However, the routine exposure of children to artificial sources of ultraviolet light is neither feasible nor economical. The food sources of vitamin D are so limited as to make it quite impossible to obtain enough antirachitic potency for curative

purposes unless some supplementary source is provided.

Fish-liver oils are now standardized and labeled accurately as to vitamin D potency. Cod-liver oil is less concentrated and less expensive than most of the other more potent fish-liver oils, but the cost per unit of vitamin D should be compared when purchasing Viosterol, a solution of vitamin D in oil, may be used upon the doctor's advice when a more concentrated source of vitamin D is desirable, but there is no vitamin A in viosterol as there is in the fish-liver-oil preparations.

The present popularity of vitamin D milk as a convenient and a reliable anti-rachitic agent for infants is well founded. Since milk contains the minerals calcium and phosphorus and it is a natural food for children, it seems to be the most suitable carrier for added vitamin D. Fortified evaporated milk is especially convenient for use in vicinities where fresh vitamin D milk is not available (See Chap. 36).

**Precautions.** It is wise to caution mothers against the simultaneous use of

phosphorus content and is almost devoid of vitamin D. The disease is uncommon among people who have an abundance of food or among the poor who are agricultural workers exposed to sunshine. It occurs among the poorer middle classes who have neither good food nor sunshine.

**Treatment and Prevention.** Dietary histories of cases of osteomalacia almost always disclose multiple deficiencies. Diet for such persons must be adequate in all respects, special attention being paid to a liberal amount of good-quality protein, as well as the bone-building minerals and vitamin D. Milk, milk products, meat, eggs and legumes are both preventive and curative. Fish-liver oil or other concentrates of vitamins A and D usually are prescribed along with a good diet.

## DENTAL CARIES

**Incidence.** Contrary to the endemic or regional incidence of some other deficiencies, dental caries is so common that few readers have not experienced it themselves. It is rare indeed to find adults with absolutely perfect teeth. Figures on incidence of dental caries among population groups vary according to locality, but they are higher than for any other disease discussed in this chapter. Authorities estimate that only 2 per cent of the people in the United States have escaped having at least one dental cavity. The national cost of restoring or correcting dental defects is enormous and a big item in most family budgets.

**Etiology.** Dental caries has been variously attributed to inheritance, metabolic disturbances, specific or multiple food deficiencies, local conditions in the mouth, including composition of saliva, and lack of fluorine in the water supply. None of these entirely explains the high incidence or varying degree of susceptibility to caries encountered among children of the same family with similar dietary and mouth-hygiene habits.

quart of standard vitamin D milk meets the daily need of the average child

## OSTEOMALACIA

**Incidence and Pathology.** Osteomalacia, sometimes called adult rickets, is characterized by poor calcification of bone and resulting deformities. It resembles rickets in certain symptoms but differs in etiology because it is a degenerative change—a decalcification of bone already formed rather than faulty growth. The disease is most common in women during pregnancy and finds its highest incidence in the Orient among peoples subsisting largely upon cereals. This diet has a low calcium but high

**Prophylaxis.** The confusion which

Whether the action is local or systemic, or both, the fact remains that a diet liberal in fruits, vegetables and milk is less likely to promote dental caries than one high in cakes, cookies and candy. It is especially recommended that some raw fruit or vegetable be eaten at the end of each meal rather than the usual concentrated sweet dessert. The cleansing action on teeth of raw fruits and vegetables is well recognized. The group of investigators who consider that the regular intake of a well-balanced diet is of major importance argue that such a diet maintains high general resistance of body tissues. It is a difficult theory to prove but a practical one to follow until further research indicates the specific factors involved. The important role of calcium and phosphorus in the formation and

periments with animals show that a lack of vitamin C affects the gums and predisposes to mouth infection. Loosening of the teeth is a recognized accompaniment of scurvy.

A large group believes that the initial process of tooth decay is brought about by the action of acid on the surface of the teeth. There is evidence that this acid is formed on protected areas of the teeth by the growth of micro-organisms, such as *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, which are capable of fermenting carbohydrate to form lactic acid. Carbohydrate foods of such consistency that particles lodge in the crevices of the teeth furnish a favorable medium for the growth of such acid-producing bacteria. Lowered incidence of caries in children has been observed repeatedly when the intake of candy and sweetened foods was restricted and the use of natural fruits was encouraged, contrariwise, caries has been shown to increase in children when sugars and pastries were added to their diet under controlled conditions

bone in many respects, and that an abnormal calcium-phosphorus metabolism or a vitamin D deficiency predisposes that individual to dental decay. Such deficiencies during or preceding the eruption of the teeth undoubtedly account for some faults in structure, but

mal enamel.

Another group of workers places great

restriction and a marked increase since sweets again became available. However, the younger children, whose teeth developed during the period of low sugar intake, show a caries reduction in the postwar period, when sugar consumption is again high. Thus, the evidence suggests that the structure of the teeth themselves is important in determining the subsequent caries incidence.

Accumulating evidence<sup>11, 12</sup> of the close correlation of the incidence of dental caries and the fluorine content of the

<sup>11</sup> Dean, H. T.: *Am. J. Nursing* 52:210, 1952.

<sup>12</sup> Ast, D. B., et al.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 52:291, 296, 307, 1958

drinking water has given impetus to the use of fluorine as a prophylactic agent. Long-term experiments, such as those now in progress in Newburgh and Kingston, N. Y., Grand Rapids, Mich., and others which are well-controlled, are most encouraging. It is generally agreed that fluorine is the only known agent ordinarily included in food or water that is capable of exercising mass control of dental caries. However, the control is really effective only during the period of calcification. It may have a slight inhibitory effect in adolescents and adults.

Among the authorities who have

fluoride is through the fluoridation of the drinking water. A special committee of the National Research Council<sup>13</sup> has concluded: "In view of these considerations, your Committee recommends that any community which includes a child population of sufficient size, and which obtains its water supply from sources which are free from or are extremely low in fluorides, should consider the practicability and economic feasibility of adjusting the concentration to optimal levels. This adjustment should be in accord with climatic factors and a constant

The level of fluorine which seems to be protective without being harmful is

rine in the water supply exceeds 2 ppm, as it does naturally in certain communities in several Western states. Indeed, it was the absence of caries in people

<sup>13</sup> Ad Hoc Committee on Fluoridation of Water Supplies, Masey, K. F., Ch. Nat. Research Council, 1951.

with mottled enamel that first called attention to its protective action.

### HEMORRHAGIC DISEASE OF INFANTS

**Incidence and Etiology.** A hemorrhagic disease of infants may be due to a lack of vitamin K. The deficiency is uncommon in adults, except when something interferes with the absorption of fats and the fat-soluble vitamins which accompany them. A lack of bile flow into the intestine will interfere seriously with vitamin K absorption. The continuous use of mineral oil as a laxative is also known to interfere with vitamin K absorption. In fact, depletion of vitamin K, due to mineral oil taken during pregnancy, has caused a manifest deficiency in both mother and infant.

**Pathology.** The slow clotting time of the blood characteristic of this condition is due to too little prothrombin, the clotting agent in the blood. Vitamin K (Koagulation vitamin) was first shown to hasten the clotting time in chicks and subsequently was found to be essential for the formation of prothrombin.

**Treatment.** The use of vitamin K in are adequate for most people. (See Chap. 7)

### NUTRITIONAL ANEMIA

Anemias may be caused by nutritional deficiencies, metabolic disturbances or loss of blood by hemorrhage. Only the first type is likely to be considered a true deficiency; the others may be called conditioned malnutrition. Anemia may occur secondary to general malnutrition and other deficiency diseases (see also pellagra, scurvy and hemorrhagic disease of infants in this chapter). Formerly, nutritional anemia was associated chiefly with iron deficiency, but now it is recognized that possibly protein and





Fig. 69. Goiter in a young boy from mountains of Brazil, where the goiter problem is still serious (Divisao de Organizacao Sanitaria, Brazil)

vitamins A and C are involved. The iron story is discussed more fully in Chapter 8.

Anemia is far more common among females than males, and occurs when requirements are greatest and the drain upon stores of iron and other necessary factors is heaviest, i.e., during adolescence, pregnancy and following hemorrhage or wasting disease. Infants of either sex may develop anemia as a result of poor prenatal nutrition or insufficient food supplements during the nursing period. Other types of anemia, and especially the relation of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folacin to the macrocytic anemias, are discussed in Chapter 29.

### SIMPLE, OR ENDEMIC, GOITER

Common, or simple, goiter usually is attributed to an iodine deficiency in food. Since iodine in surface soil shows a very uneven distribution and plants

absorb iodine from the soil, the iodine content of foodstuffs varies with the locality in which they are grown. Thus we find simple goiter most common in those parts of the world where the surface soil is low in iodine. Due to increased facilities for food distribution in the United States today, city people are less confined to food grown in one locality and the incidence of simple goiter seems to be decreasing.

Iodized salt, which is on the market in most goitrous regions, has also proved to be beneficial in reducing the incidence of goiter, as evidenced by examination of schoolchildren. In one state in which goiter was almost eliminated, it again became more prevalent when the emphasis on the use of iodized salt was relaxed. If the spectacular decrease in the incidence of goiter which resulted from the use of iodized salt is to continue, more publicity must be given to it, and its use in goitrous sections of the country must be encouraged. (See Chap. 6, Iodine, and Chap. 31, Hypothyroidism.)

### EARLY DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF NUTRITIONAL FAILURE

Individuals with mild forms of deficiency diseases which usually are not recognized as clinical entities seldom apply to the general practitioner for medical aid unless more serious conditions develop, furthermore, the physician has not had any adequate criteria for recognizing these early signs. The insidious development and the delayed clinical evidence of malnutrition make the problem none the less serious. This subject is of great concern to nutritionists, public-health nurses and others, who frequently are in closer contact than physicians with children and with families living on low incomes and an inadequate food supply. There is an open field for further study and observation of these deficiency states among

## CLINICAL SIGNS OF NUTRITIONAL FAILURE AND SUGGESTED DEFICIENCY

FINDINGS	SUGGESTED DEFICIENCIES
<b>General</b>	
Underweight	Calories, protein, Ca, P, vitamins
Underheight (T)	
Pallor (T)	Iron, folic acid, B <sub>12</sub> ascorbic acid
Lack of appetite (N)	B complex, unknown
<b>Skin</b>	
Inflammation (perifolliculosis) (N)	Ascorbic acid, vitamin A
Hardening around hair follicles (follicular hyperkeratosis)	Vitamin A
Dermatitis of pellagra (N)	Niacin
Abnormal sebaceous secretion (dyssebacea) in nasolabial folds, behind ears and in body folds (N)	Riboflavin, unknown
Acne vulgaris (T)	Unknown, riboflavin
Hemorrhagic manifestations, petechiae, bruises, etc. (N)	Pyridoxine, vitamin A, ascorbic acid, vitamin K, unknown
<b>Eyes</b>	
Bloodshot (corneal vascularity)	Unknown, riboflavin
Inflammation (conjunctivitis) (T)	Vitamin A, unknown
Night blindness (nyctalopia)	Vitamin A
Light sensitivity (photophobia)	Vitamin A, riboflavin
<b>Lips and Mouth</b>	
Cracked lips (cheilosis) (N)	Riboflavin, B complex, pyridoxine
Inflammation of mouth (stomatitis) (N) with cracking at corners	Riboflavin, B complex, iron, niacin
Inflammation of tongue (glossitis) (N)	B complex, protein
Edema of tongue	Niacin, unknown
<b>Teeth</b>	
Caries (N)	Unknown
Malocclusion (T)	Vitamin D, unknown
Scorbutic gums (N)	Ascorbic acid
Gingivitis	Ascorbic acid, unknown
<b>Skeletal</b>	
Rachitic deformities—"squared" head, beaded ribs, bowed legs, knock knees (N)	Vitamin D, Ca and P
Osteomalacia in adults	Vitamin D, Ca and P
<b>Nervous</b>	
Nutritional polyneuritis	Thiamine, B complex
Combined system disease	B complex, vitamin B <sub>12</sub>
Degenerative brain disease (encephalopathic states)	Thiamine, niacin, B complex, unknown
<b>Circulatory</b>	
Beriberi heart disease	Thiamine
Nutritional edema (T)	Protein, thiamine, famine
<b>Endocrine</b>	

all groups of the population, but especially among the lower-income groups, in which the vicious circle of malnutrition, lack of strength and ambition, and continued low income offers little opportunity for real improvement.

Several attempts have been made to tabulate the signs and the symptoms associated with specific deficiencies. Jolliffe, Tisdall and Cannon<sup>14</sup> offer helpful descriptions and pictures of deficiency states. As they say, "Most physicians are familiar with the signs of advanced florid deficiency disease as they occur in classical starvation, protein deficiency, osteomalacia, rickets, scurvy, pellagra and beriberi. Most malnutrition, however, is not this advanced, easily recognized variety but is manifested by signs less fully developed, less severe, or less acute than the classic textbook descriptions imply. These lesser signs are frequently overlooked. Consequently much malnutrition remains

after the first one, resulted in pertinent findings, indicating marked improvement, as described in Chapter 1. Thus, by the techniques used, it was possible after a 4-year interval to make comparable observations, even when some of the observers had not participated in the first survey.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. When near-starvation conditions bring multiple deficiencies, which ones are apt to show up first and what should be the emphasis of relief feeding in order to do the most good for the greatest number of people?

2. If you were working in a Southern climate and encountered children who had pot bellies and were listless and inactive, would you suspect rickets or some other deficiency, and why?

3. Which deficiencies are more apt to show up in children and which in adults? How will symptoms of the same deficiency vary with age or sex?

4. Is there any evidence that education with a view to better nutrition of children during the past few decades has reduced certain deficiency diseases? If so, which ones?

5. Skin lesions and gastro-intestinal disturbances are symptoms of a deficiency disease which occurs in low-income families in our Southern states. Which specific deficiencies and food habits predispose to this condition and what is it called?

6. Families of fishermen in Labrador suffered from chronic constipation and some people used to become partially paralyzed during the winter months. Which deficiency was probably involved, and which members of the family were apt to show the paralysis first?

7. If dental caries was conspicuously less in children of a given community than in surrounding areas, what would you suspect as the protective factor, and why?

teachers can help in detecting early signs of malnutrition, which should be brought to the attention of the physician.

Recognizing the need for more experience in judging nutritional status by clinical signs, the National Research Council sponsored a Medical Survey of Nutrition in Newfoundland, where nutritional deficiencies of several types were common. The techniques used in such a rapid survey of population groups were reported<sup>15</sup> in detail with colored plates of eye, mouth and skin conditions indicative of deficiencies. A resurvey conducted in 1948,<sup>16</sup> 4 years

<sup>14</sup> Jolliffe, Tisdall and Cannon. *Clinical Nutrition*. New York: Hoeber, 1950.

8. At what age is kwashiorkor apt to occur, and why? What other names are applied to a similar syndrome in other parts of the world?
9. Mild forms of deficiency diseases undoubtedly occur more often than is known. Why are they not diagnosed earlier? What progress has been made toward earlier recognition of nutritional failure?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

## *Life Expectancy and Body Weight*

### *Obesity*

#### *Causes*

#### *Exercise*

#### *Dietary Control*

#### *Psychological Factors*

#### *Low Caloric Diets*

### *Underweight*

#### *Diet for Underweight*

#### *High Caloric Diet*

#### *Anorexia Nervosa*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE

# Overweight and Underweight

### LIFE EXPECTANCY AND BODY WEIGHT

The question of body weight is becoming a major public health problem. Until a relatively few years ago, public health workers were concerned with the control of communicable diseases and infections. Many of these have yielded to the new weapons of medical science and to persistent health education efforts. As a result, other conditions now are becoming major public health problems. Among these are overweight and, to a lesser extent, underweight.

No one knows how many people in our population are overweight, nor exactly what direct bearing weight has on mortality. But it is known, from studies of life-insurance figures, that overweight people develop diabetes, heart disease, high blood pressure, kidney disease and other life-shortening conditions earlier, and are likely to die younger than people of normal weight. They run a greater risk when surgery is

necessary and also seem to have less resistance to infections. Complications in pregnancy occur more frequently in overweight women than in those whose weight is normal.

On the other hand, weight too far below normal is not desirable. Underweight people often suffer from fatigue, have poor physical endurance, as well as lowered resistance to infection. Tuberculosis especially is found more often

correct weight plays in the preservation of health.

comprehensive article on the subject, based on data from one of our largest life-insurance companies, consider variations within 10 per cent above or below

<sup>1</sup> Armstrong, D. B., et al.: J.A.M.A. 147 1007, 1951.

average weights as normal, 10 to 20 per cent above average as overweight and more than 20 per cent above average as obesity. Twenty per cent or more below average is regarded as dangerously underweight.

The conception of what constitutes average weight itself has undergone a revision. The older weight tables for adults were based on height and age and allowed for an increase in weight with increasing age. They have now been discarded. Today, for men and women over 25, a fixed set of standards is recommended. This standard is based on the average weight at the ages of 25 to 30 and allows for differences in bodily

In a small percentage of patients the thyroidism) or the pituitary. Obesity should not be attributed to glandular deficiencies except by thorough physical examination.

In recent years there has been renewed interest in the normal physiologic controls of appetite and satiety. Most individuals maintain a balance between food intake and energy expenditure which keeps their weight comparatively stable over a period of many years. It has been postulated that there is an "appetite center" in the hypothalamus, a small area in the brain, closely connected with the pituitary gland. We know that if one tiny area in the hypothalamus is destroyed in an experimental animal, voracious appetite and extreme obesity result. Conversely, if an adjacent, equally small area in this region is destroyed, the experimental animal refuses to eat, even when food is placed in its mouth. There are many other factors which suggest that the

## OBESITY

As has already been indicated, obesity is one of the most common health hazards

## Causes

Obesity generally is due to an excessive food intake, often accompanied by sedentary habits. Some investigators<sup>2,3</sup> have shown that there is a tendency for obesity to be associated with physical inactivity, particularly in younger people. The factors influencing excessive food intake are not clearly understood, and may range all the way from a social habit of eating more than one needs to satisfying some deep-felt psychological need for food.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, M. L., et al. *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 4:35, 1956.

<sup>3</sup> Mayer, J.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:272, 1955.

is known to give a clear picture, but new findings may help us eventually to understand some of these problems. Berryman,<sup>4</sup> in a discussion of this and other possible causes of obesity says: "The fact that mere speculation on the causes of obesity is now being amplified by clinical and laboratory investigation is encouraging and highly desirable."

## Exercise

Exercise is important, since it increases the oxidation of the fat. Walking is excellent. A 300-lb. man, walking 3 miles per hour, will consume about 330

<sup>4</sup> Berryman, G. H.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:347, 1955.

## Life Expectancy and Body Weight

### Obesity

Causes

Exercise

Dietary Control

Psychological Factors

Low Caloric Diets

### Underweight

Diet for Underweight

High Caloric Diet

Anorexia Nervosa

## CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE

# Overweight and Underweight

### LIFE EXPECTANCY AND BODY WEIGHT

The question of body weight is becoming a major public health problem. Until a relatively few years ago, public health workers were concerned with the control of communicable diseases and infections. Many of these have yielded to the new weapons of medical science and to persistent health education efforts. As a result, other conditions now are becoming major public health problems. Among these are overweight and, to a lesser extent, underweight.

No one knows how many people in our population are overweight, nor exactly what direct bearing weight has on mortality. But it is known, from studies of life-insurance figures, that overweight people develop diabetes, heart disease, high blood pressure,

necessary and also seem to have less resistance to infections. Complications in pregnancy occur more frequently in overweight women than in those whose weight is normal.

On the other hand, weight too far below normal is not desirable. Underweight people often suffer from fatigue, have poor physical endurance, as well as lowered resistance to infection. Tuberculosis especially is found more often among underweight people than among those of normal weight. There seems to be no doubt that more attention should be paid to the important role which correct weight plays in the preservation of health.

The meaning of the terms *overweight*, *obesity* and *underweight* are ill defined. Armstrong and his co-workers,<sup>1</sup> in a comprehensive article on the subject, based on data from one of our largest life-insurance companies, consider variations within 10 per cent above or below

<sup>1</sup> Armstrong, D. B., et al: JAMA 147. 1007, 1951.

They run a greater risk when surgery is

average weights as normal, 10 to 20 per cent above average as overweight and more than 20 per cent above average as obesity. Twenty per cent or more below average is regarded as dangerously underweight.

The conception of what constitutes average weight itself has undergone a revision. The older weight tables for adults were based on height and age and allowed for an increase in weight with increasing age. They have now been discarded. Today, for men and women over 25, a fixed set of standards is recommended. This standard is based on the average weight at the ages of 25 to 30 and allows for differences in bodily

should not be attributed to glandular deficiencies except by thorough physical examination.

In recent years there has been renewed interest in the normal physiologic controls of appetite and satiety. Most individuals maintain a balance between food intake and energy expenditure which keeps their weight comparatively stable over a period of many years. It has been postulated that there is an "appetite center" in the hypothalamus, a small area in the brain, closely connected with the pituitary gland. We know that if one tiny area in the hypothalamus is destroyed in an experimental animal, voracious appetite and extreme obesity result. Conversely, if an adjacent, equally small area in this region is destroyed, the experimental animal refuses to eat, even when food is placed in its mouth. There are many other factors which suggest that the hypothalamus may be involved in the balance of appetite and satiety and, therefore, in the maintenance of normal weight, and possibly in the development of obesity. At present too little is known to give a clear picture, but new findings may help us eventually to understand some of these problems. Berryman,<sup>4</sup> in a discussion of this and other possible causes of obesity says, "The fact that mere speculation on the causes of obesity is now being amplified by clinical and laboratory investigation is encouraging and highly desirable."

### Exercise

Exercise is important, since it increases the oxidation of the fat. Walking is excellent. A 300-lb man, walking 3 miles per hour, will consume about 330

<sup>4</sup> Berryman, C. H.: *J Am Dietet A.* 31:347, 1935

by daily consultations and physicians. They will be found in Part Four, Table 10.

## OBESITY

As has already been indicated, obesity is one of the more serious health hazards

### Causes

Obesity generally is due to an excessive food intake, often accompanied by sedentary habits. Some investigators<sup>2,3</sup> have shown that there is a tendency for obesity to be associated with physical inactivity, particularly in younger people. The factors influencing excessive food intake are not clearly understood, and may range all the way from a social habit of eating more than one needs to satisfying some deep-felt psychological need for food.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, M. L., et al.: *Am J Clin. Nutrition* 4:35, 1956

<sup>3</sup> Mayer, J. J.: *Am Dietet. A.* 31:272, 1935



## CALORIC VALUES FOR COMMON "SNACK" FOODS

	AMOUNT OR AVERAGE SERVING	CALORIC COUNT
<i>"Just a Little Sandwich"</i>		
Hamburger on bun	3-in. patty	330
Peanut butter	1 tbsp. P.B.	330
Cheese	1 oz. cheese	280
Ham	1 oz. ham	320
<i>Beverages</i>		
Carbonated drinks, soda, root beer, etc.	6-oz. glass	80
Cola beverages	12-oz. glass (Pepsi)	150
Club soda	8-oz. glass	5
Chocolate malted milk	10-oz. glass (1% c.)	500
Ginger ale	6-oz. glass	60
Tea or coffee, straight	1 c.	0
Tea or coffee, with 3 tablespoons cream and 3 teaspoons sugar	1 c.	90
<i>Alcoholic Drinks</i>		
1 Ale	8-oz. glass	130
1 Beer	8-oz. glass	110
1 Highball (with ginger ale—ladies' style)	8-oz. glass	185
1 Manhattan	Average	165
1 Martini	Average	140
Wine, Muscatel or Port	2-oz. glass	160
1 Sherry	2-oz. glass	60
Scotch, bourbon, rye	1-oz. jigger	105
<i>Fruits</i>		
Apple	1 3-in.	75
Banana	1 6-in.	130
Grapes	30 medium	75
Orange	1 2½-in.	70
Pear	1	65
<i>Salted Nuts</i>		
Almonds, filberts, hazelnuts	12-15	95
Cashews	8-8	90
Peanuts	15-17	85
Pecans, walnuts	10-15 halves	100

(Adapted from Smith, Kline and French Laboratories)

calories, or the equivalent of 1½ ozs of body fat (see Chap. 5). Daily gymnastic exercises are also effective. The only drawback about exercising to reduce is that the appetite is increased and, if entirely satisfied, will more than overbalance the calories lost in exercise.

Strenuous exercise may be dangerous for the obese, especially if they are past middle life. The type and the amount of exercise should depend upon the age and the specific condition other than the obesity. In cardiovascular diseases exercise must be limited.

## CALORIC VALUES FOR COMMON "SNACK" FOODS (Continued)

	AMOUNT OR AVERAGE SERVING	CALORIE COUNT
<i>Candies</i>		
Chocolate bars, 5 cent sizes:		
Plain, sweet milk	1 bar (1 oz.)	155
With almonds	1 bar (1 oz.)	140
Chocolate-covered bar	1 bar	270
Chocolate cream, bon bon, fudge	1 piece 1-in. square	90-120
Caramels, plain	2 medium	85
Hard candies, Lifesaver type	1 roll	95
Peanut brittle	1 piece 2½ x 2½ x ½ in.	110
<i>Desserts</i>		
<i>Pie</i>		
Fruit-apple, etc.	½ pie 1 average serving	375
Custard	½ pie 1 average serving	265
Mince	½ pie 1 average serving	400
Pumpkin pie with whipped cream	½ pie 1 average serving	460
<i>Cake:</i>		
Chocolate layer	3-in. section	350
Doughnut, sugared	1 average	150
<i>Sweets</i>		
<i>Ice Cream.</i>		
Plain vanilla	½ qt. serving	200
Chocolate and other flavors	½ qt., ½ c.	260
Orange sherbet	½ c.	120
Sundaes, small chocolate nut with whipped cream	Average	400
Ice-cream sodas, chocolate	10-oz. glass	270
<i>Midnight Snacks for Icebox Raiders</i>		
Cold potato	½ medium	65
Chicken leg	1 average	88
Glass milk	7-oz. glass	140
Mouthful of roast	½ in. x 2 in. x 3 in.	130
Piece of cheese	½ in. x 2 in. x 3 in.	120
Leftover beans	½ c.	105
Brownie	½ in. x 1½ x 2½ in.	140
Cream puff	4 in. diam.	450

**Drugs**

Drugs or proprietary preparations to decrease the weight never should be taken without the consent and the supervision of the physician.

extract, which, being a natural, or physiologic, product, was thought to be safe, but it soon proved to be quite the contrary, except in certain well-controlled situations.

A group of drugs, derivatives of amphetamine, have been found helpful in promoting weight loss. They stimu-

late metabolism and help to burn the excess fat somewhat faster than would otherwise be the case. They should always be used in conjunction with a low caloric diet and always under the direction of a physician.

Common laxative salts sold under a variety of fancy trade names or laxative drugs sold as harmless remedies all accomplish similar results—the loss of large volumes of water through the stools. The sudden weight reduction is due to loss of water, not fat, and both the water and the resulting weight will be regained promptly as soon as water is consumed. Furthermore, permanent injury to the intestine and the digestive function may result from the repeated use of such drastic treatment. Proper laxative agents have their place in medical practice, but not as obesity cures.

### Dietary Control

Since adipose tissue is a storage for excess fuel food, the caloric intake must be below the actual daily needs if the body is to draw upon and reduce its reserve supply of body fat.

**Caloric Need.** In planning a reducing diet, the first consideration should be the determination of the normal caloric needs of the individual based on his ideal weight for height, sex, body build and degree of activity. For adults, this will vary from about 2,000 to 3,000 calories for moderate activity. The caloric value in a reducing diet may safely be cut from one fourth to one third, although it seldom is advisable to go below 1,200 calories unless there is

be reduced. However, there is considerable difference of opinion as to whether carbohydrate or fat should be cut to a minimum. The usual low caloric diet will derive approximately half its calories from carbohydrate, as in the normal diet, and reduce the fat intake to a minimum. The advantage of this division is that it follows the natural pattern of carbohydrate intake.

Recently, Young<sup>5</sup> and Cederquist and her co-workers<sup>6</sup> advocated a diet low in carbohydrate and moderate in fat content. They claim that patients find that such a diet has greater satiety value and, therefore, is easier to follow. This will be discussed at greater length later in this chapter.

Protein is needed at all times for repair of body tissues, but when this demand has been met the remainder is used as a source of energy or heat production. Since a liberal amount of good-quality protein is needed to maintain nitrogen balance on a low caloric diet, it is evident that protein should form a relatively large portion of a reducing diet. One gram of protein per kilogram of normal weight, or approximately 70 Gm. of protein per day for adults usually has been regarded as the normal allowance, but some doctors now advocate a higher intake. McLester<sup>7</sup> advises an intake of from 1.0 to 1.5 Gm. protein per kilogram of body weight. This allows for the inclusion of more meat, fish, eggs and cottage cheese, all of which have high satiety value.

**Minerals and Vitamins.** Care should be taken to see that the foods supplying calories contain all the other essentials of a normal diet, such as vitamins, minerals and bulk in quantities at least equivalent to those of a normal diet. If the total calories are very low,

<sup>5</sup> Young, C. J. *Am. Dietet. A.* 28:410, 1952.

<sup>6</sup> Cederquist, D. G., et al. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 28:113, 1952.

<sup>7</sup> McLester, J. S., and Darby, W. J.: *Nutrition and Diet in Health and Disease*, ed. 6, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1952.

supplements such as vitamins and mineral concentrates are indicated.

**Alcohol.** Since 1 gram of alcohol provides 7 calories, and since many alcoholic beverages contain carbohydrate in some form as well, they should be severely limited or entirely omitted.

**Satiety Value of Foods.** One of the greatest problems of obese patients is that they are in the habit of eating frequently and in more than average quantities. A glance at the table of "snack" foods on pages 262 and 263 will show how easy it is to add calories without being aware of it. It is essential, therefore, that the low caloric diet be as satisfying as possible. That "all gone" feeling which is so often experienced when the food intake is limited may be so severe as to cause real discomfort and become a strong temptation to overstep the prescribed diet. It has already been indicated that markedly decreasing the carbohydrate intake and allowing a moderate amount of fat may help to solve this problem. Also, protein foods, especially those very low in fat, such as skim milk and cottage cheese taken in limited quantity between meals, may satisfy the feeling of hunger without appreciably increasing the caloric intake. Broth has little food value and may be taken as desired. Fruit gelatins made with saccharin or Sucaryl may satisfy a craving for sweets. (See Chap 50 for recipes.)

Water may be taken in moderation with meals, and more freely between meals, unless restricted because of some heart or kidney complications.

### Psychological Factors in Obesity

Many patients who are overweight eat because they have nothing else to do. They may eat when they are under strain or when they feel unappreciated. They may eat because plenty of food denotes prosperity or success in life,

quite apart from the physiologic sense of satiety. The nurse or the dietitian must be prepared to give the obese patient a sense of worth by continued encouragement, even when there is occasional failure in holding to the diet. It must be remembered that an individual accustomed to overeating for many years will not find it easy to conform to a rigorous low caloric regimen.

### Faddist Diets and Nutritional Adequacy

As has already been stated, it is important that the reducing diet continue to meet the National Research Council Allowances for adequate nutrition. A glance at the accompanying 1,200 calorie diet will show that this may not be easy. Extremely restricted diets, such as often become fashionable for a time, may take off pounds, but they may also undermine the health of the individual. It is necessary to establish a new pattern of eating, with low caloric menus, especially desserts, that are attractive and satisfying (see Chap 50 for recipes). Then a person can reduce and stay reduced because he has established new habits. A sound reduction diet

tions of this pattern are made. It will be noted that bread, cereal and potatoes

low for a man who should weigh 70 Kg. or more, and thiamine and niacin are below the National Research Council



**1,200 CALORIE, MODERATE PROTEIN, LOW FAT, MODERATE  
CARBOHYDRATE DIET**

<i>Breakfast</i>	<i>Lunch</i>	<i>Dinner</i>
$\frac{1}{2}$ glass orange juice	1 oz. meat or substitute	2 ozs. meat or substitute
1 egg	Beets	Carrots
1 sl. bread	Asparagus	Spinach
1 tsp. butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ sl. bread	Tomato and lettuce salad
$\frac{1}{2}$ glass milk (4 ozs.)	1 tsp. butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ sl. bread
Coffee	Strawberries	1 tsp. butter
	1 glass milk (8 ozs.)	Prunes cooked with saccharin or Sucaryl
		$\frac{1}{2}$ glass milk (4 ozs.)

reducing the 1,000 calorie diet still further by the omission of 1 slice of bread or equivalent, 1 serving of 9 per cent vegetable and  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoonfuls butter or margarine

It will be noted that this eliminates all food fat from the diet and the

advice and under the supervision of a physician.

**Low Caloric Diets with High Protein,  
Moderate Fat and Low  
Carbohydrate Content**

As has been mentioned previously

reemphasizing hunger and weakness so often complained of by patients on reducing diets.

A typical example of this regimen contains 90 Gm. protein, 80 Gm. fat, 80 Gm. carbohydrate and 1,400 calories. (Compare this with the composition of the 1,200 calorie diet on p. 268). A menu for a day is given on page 269

**Meal Planning and Exchange Lists**

Lists of nutritive equivalents of the basic food groups were originally designed to aid in the dietary treatment of

the diabetic patient and are included in Chapter 22. They will be found to be equally valuable by the patient on restricted calories; they will give his diet as much variety as possible while staying within the caloric prescription.

**Maintenance of Weight Loss**

Once the ideal weight has been achieved, the patient should be warned not to return to his old dietary habits and should be helped to maintain his

adequately.

**Success of Antiobesity Regimens**

Because obesity is a serious health problem, much effort has been expended in weight-control programs, and much has been written on the success or the failure of the low calorie regimen to achieve normal weight ranges. Reports seem to indicate that the emotional stability of the individual greatly influences his ability to remain on a caloric-restricted diet and maintain weight loss. Young<sup>8</sup> has shown in a series of studies that the reasonably stable individual is the most likely to achieve successful weight reduction, that the anxious, tense or insecure person is less successful; and that many of those who had little or no success

<sup>8</sup> Young, C., et al.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31: 1111, 1955.

---

**LOW CALORIC REDUCING DIET**


---

**Principle:** To meet all the nutritional needs of the individual except in calories

**Foods Allowed:**

Milk	Milk, buttermilk, skimmed milk as permitted
Cheese	Made of skimmed milk (cottage cheese). Other as permitted
Butter or margarine	Limited to 3 teaspoons a day or less
Eggs	Cooked in all ways except fried or otherwise prepared with butter, cream or fat
Meats, fish, poultry	Lean roast or boiled beef, lamb, veal, pork, chicken, turkey; broiled beefsteak or lamb chops (lean meat only); fish boiled or broiled
Soups	Clear broths and strained soups
Bread, cereals, Italian pastes, potato	Whole grain or enriched as permitted. One slice of bread is approximately equivalent to a medium-sized potato or $\frac{1}{2}$ cup of rice, macaroni, spaghetti or breakfast cereal, and may be substituted for one of these.
Vegetables	These should be restricted to the 3 per cent, the 6 per cent and the 9 per cent carbohydrate groups. (See Part Four, Table 3.)
Fruits	All fresh fruits and fruits canned without sugar
Beverages	Milk, buttermilk, skimmed milk as permitted. Coffee, tea or cereal coffee, all without sugar and cream
Desserts	Fruit as above; gelatin desserts made without sugar
Condiments	As desired. Saccharin or Sucaryl may be used as sweetening in place of sugar.

(See some suggested recipes for low caloric diets in Chap. 50.)

**Foods To Be Avoided:**

Fats	
Sweet	and desserts. Saccharin or Sucaryl may be used in place of sugar if desired.
Starches	To be limited to those permitted as bread or equivalents
Miscellaneous	Alcoholic and carbonated beverages, popcorn, all other "snack" foods

---

by adding the following foods to the 1,200 caloric diet each day.

2 sl. bread or equivalent

1 small potato

1 tsp. butter or other fat

A choice of  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. Cheddar cheese, 3 ozs. cottage cheese or 1 egg.

This diet will meet more nearly the National Research Council Allowances. It is also somewhat higher in protein

than the 1,200 caloric diet and may be suited best to the needs of men who need to lose weight and to those who are not markedly overweight.

A 1,000 caloric diet may be obtained from a 1,200 caloric diet by substituting skim milk for the whole milk and omitting 1 teaspoonful of butter or margarine.

An 800 caloric diet is achieved by

## 1,400 CALORIE DIET—HIGH PROTEIN, MODERATE FAT, LOW CARBOHYDRATE\*

Breakfast	Lunch	Dinner
½ c orange juice	4 ozs ground beefchuck, cooked	4 ozs pork loin roast, cooked
1 poached egg	Baked squash, 1 serving	Canned beets, 1 serving
1 sl whole-wheat toast	6 ozs whole milk	Water-pack apricots, 1 serving
1 pat butter		6 ozs whole milk
¾ glass whole milk		

\* Adapted from Young, C. Weight reduction using a moderate fat diet, J. Am. Dietet. A 28 410, 1952

presented deep emotional problems. Stunkard and his co-workers<sup>9</sup> have recently described a so-called "night-eating syndrome," observed in some gravely obese patients. Such a patient

of severe emotional stress when an attempt was made to reduce them. The investigators concluded that it might be wiser to allow such patients to remain obese than to precipitate an emotional illness.

It has been found that obese children often have obese mothers, and that the

contributing factor within the body, such as malignancy, gastro-intestinal disorders, chronic infectious diseases and endocrine disturbances. An increase in metabolic rate due to hyperthyroidism is frequently a cause of progressive weight loss. In such cases, rest and medical treatment or surgery may be necessary, as well as a high caloric diet.

UNDERWEIGHT OWING TO MALNUTRITION or an inadequate caloric intake may be a serious condition, especially in the young. Growth is retarded, efficiency is impaired, and resistance to disease is reduced. It has been found that despite the general decrease in tuberculosis in the last few years, the disease has in-

creased daily and for a considerable length of time if the condition is not to become fixed and extend into adult life.

### UNDERWEIGHT

**Types of Leanness.** Leanness or underweight may be due to an inadequate caloric intake. A contributing factor may be excessive bodily activity, which increases the energy requirements beyond the caloric value of the food eaten. These people are usually of a so-called nervous temperament. Others are weak (asthenic leanness) with muscles poorly developed and lacking in stamina.

LEANNESS may be due to some other

25, and is worthy of medical investigation.

### Diet for Underweight

The usual cause of underweight is an inadequate diet, the inadequacy being due to either the quantity or the quality of the food supply. A deficiency in calories, protein or its component amino acids, minerals or vitamins may produce faulty nutrition with loss of weight. A careful survey of the dietary habits of the patient should reveal such inadequacies. The most common dietary cause is insufficient fuel value or calories to

<sup>9</sup> Stunkard, A. J., et al: Am J Med. 19 78, 1955.

<sup>10</sup> Hoffman, R. H.: Am J Clin. Nutrition 5 1, 1957.



# COMPOSITION OF A 1,200 CALORIE DIET<sup>1</sup>

FOOD GROUP	Amt. in Gm. MEASURE	Calo- ries	Protein Gm.	Fat Gm.	Carbo- hydrate Gm.	MINERALS		VITAMINS				
						Cal- cium Mg.	Iron Mg.	A IU	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Milk, whole	428 2 c. (1 pint)	332	17	20	24	57.6	.4	750	.13	.34	.6	6
Egg	54 1 medium	77	6	6	13	28	1.3	550	.05	.14		
Meat, fish or fowl; <sup>2</sup> Vegetables;	90 3 ozs. cooked	257	23	18		9	2.9	4,315 <sup>3</sup>	.24	.51	3.7	3 <sup>3</sup>
Deep green or yellow, cooked <sup>3</sup>	225 3 servings	54	6		12	117	2.1	9,900	.18	.27	1.5	63
Other, cooked <sup>3</sup>	150 2 servings	78	4		18	30	1.2	390	.14	.12	1.4	20
Fruits:												
Citrus <sup>4</sup>	100 1 serving	41	1		10	20	.3	95	.06	.02	.2	44
Other <sup>4</sup>	200 2 servings	140	2		36	32	1.8	900	.06	.12	1.2	40
Bread, white, enriched	48 2 slices	126	4	1	24	36	.8		.12	.03	1.0	
Butter or margarine	14 1 tablespoon	100		11		3		460				
Totals		1,205	63	56	125	849	10.8	17,880	1.03	2.10	11.6 <sup>5</sup>	176
Compare with recommended allowances <sup>6</sup>											Niacin Equiv.	
Moderately active man (70 Kg., 25 yrs. old)		3,200	70			800	10.0	5,000	1.00	1.80	.21	75
Moderately active woman (58 Kg., 35 yrs. old)		2,300	53			800	12.0	5,000	1.20	1.50	17	70

<sup>1</sup> Calculations from Table 1, Part Four, Composition of Foods.

<sup>2</sup> See Pattern dietary, page 699, for basis of calculations.

<sup>3</sup> Only if 100 Gm. liver is included once in 10 days.

<sup>4</sup> Evaluation based on figures for fresh strawberries, banana, cooked

unsweetened prunes, water-pick peaches

<sup>5</sup> The addition of coffee will add approximately 1 mg. niacin per cup.

<sup>6</sup> From the National Research Council Recommended Dietary Allowances, revised 1955.

salad oils, are more easily digested than the fat in fried foods

It will be noted that the above diet is a house, or regular, diet supplemented with cream, extra butter, high caloric desserts and nourishment between meals

### Nursing Problems

The diet must be built up gradually, otherwise the patient may not be able to tolerate the sudden increase. Care must be taken to ascertain the likes and the dislikes of the patient and to prepare the food as appetizingly as possible, both as to methods of cooking and appearance when served. Above all, the patient must be encouraged to accept the necessity for co-operating by consuming all food served to him. Low caloric soups, salads and beverages should not be eaten at the beginning of a meal, as they tend to give temporary satiety and to diminish appetite for the more substantial part of the meal.

### Anorexia Nervosa

A very severe form of underweight is occasionally found in young people, most frequently young women, which is due to mental illness. Although these patients may seem to be physically well, and may protest that they eat sufficient amounts of food, they are often 30 per cent or more underweight, and their actual food intake is negligible. Since rejection of food is part of their illness, it is best not to press the need for calories on such patients but to serve pleasing meals without comment, in the hope that, as they recover, their food intake will increase.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1 Why is obesity becoming a matter of concern to those in the field of public health?

2 What is the role of the nurse in helping a patient to maintain a reducing diet?

3 What are the underlying principles of a low caloric diet?

4 Which foods must be omitted on a low caloric diet? Which must be limited?

5 Which equivalents may be substituted for a slice of bread?

6 Plan several menus for a 1,500 calorie reducing diet for (a) a man who carries his lunch to work, (b) a man who works nights, and (c) for either of these men on Sundays or holidays

7 Which foods are of value in a low caloric diet to give it high satiety value?

8 What besides diet may be helpful in bringing about reduction of weight? What may be harmful?

9 What relationship does there seem to be between the emotional stability of an individual and his ability to persist in a low caloric diet? Are there some patients who are best left alone?

10 What are some of the reasons for a person's being underweight?

11 What additions can you make to a regular diet to increase it by 1,000 calories? Use Table 1, Part Four, for determining caloric values

12 A patient who should weigh 140

for him for a week.

13 What should the nurse's attitude be toward a patient suffering from anorexia nervosa?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

## HIGH CALORIC DIET FOR UNDERWEIGHT

## Principles:

1. . . . .
2. . . . .
3. . . . .
4. . . . .

## Foods Allowed:

Milk . . . . .	Milk and cream in abundance
Cheese . . . . .	All kinds
Fats . . . . .	Butter and margarine used freely; all other fats
Eggs . . . . .	Cooked in all ways
Meats, fish and fowl . . . . .	All varieties, bacon and fat meats are indicated if the patient tolerates them
Soups . . . . .	Preferably creamed or thick soups
Bread, cereals, Italian . . . . .	All kinds, preferably whole grain as indicated
	fruit desserts, other simple desserts
Beverages . . . . .	Tea, coffee, cocoa, served with cream and sugar, fruit juices (lactose may be added); malted preparations
Vitamin concentrates . . . . .	If ordered by the physician

(See Chap. 50 for high caloric foods and beverage recipes.)

meet the energy requirements. Therefore, calories must be increased. Not only must the normal requirement be met, but an increase of from 400 to 800 calories must be made to allow for storage. Fifty per cent above the normal is sometimes prescribed.

Vitamin supplements are sometimes prescribed, especially thiamine chloride, for stimulating the appetite and improving digestion.

The objectives of this diet are:

1. An adequate diet, as prescribed in Chapter 18
2. Additional calories, which may be obtained by (a) increasing the quantity of the foods listed in the normal pattern, by (b) increasing the carbohydrates and, to some extent, the fats, and by (c) frequent feedings to include nourishment between meals and before retiring at night.

3. An increase in protein to approximately 90 to 100 Gm. for adults in order to combat the deficiency due to previous malnutrition with loss of body tissue.

4. An abundance of vitamins and minerals, especially thiamine.

5. A reduction in bulk, if not needed as a laxative, in favor of foods with higher caloric value.

6. Easily digested foods. Carbohydrate-rich foods are especially indicated, since carbohydrate is both easily digested and quickly converted into body fat. Foods rich in fat may be used to increase the fuel value without unduly increasing the bulk, but they must be used with discretion. Greasy foods will lessen the appetite of many patients, and too much fat in any form is frequently distasteful unless cleverly disguised. The uncooked fats, such as cream, butter and



*Causes of Diabetes*  
*Symptoms*  
*Diagnostic Tests*  
*Physiologic Explanation of Body Changes*  
*Diet Therapy*  
*Insulin Therapy*  
*An Oral Therapeutic Agent*  
*Diabetic Emergencies*  
*Coma—Insulin Reactions—Surgery*  
*Diabetes in Children*  
*Diabetes in Pregnancy*  
*Teaching the Patient*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-TWO

# Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus is a chronic disease, the history of which goes back many centuries. The word *diabetes* was

Thus the copious urination and sugar in the urine, the two most characteristic symptoms, gave the name to the disease.

Diabetes mellitus, or sugar diabetes, is concerned with carbohydrate metabolism in which the whole endocrine system is involved, and particularly the

inability of the body to utilize carbohydrate normally. The carbohydrate which is not burned accumulates in the blood stream, a condition known as hyperglycemia, and is excreted later in the urine. Sugar in the urine is known as glycosuria.

It will be remembered that the pancreas plays an important role in the process of digestion. It produces an external secretion known as pancreatic juice and an internal secretion known as insulin. The external secretion aids in the digestion of protein, fat and carbohydrate in the intestine. The internal secretion is the principal factor in the utilization of carbohydrate by the body cells. The insulin is secreted by special cells of the pancreas which are arranged in clusters known as the islands of Langerhans.

creas plays an important role in the process of digestion. It produces an external secretion known as pancreatic juice and an internal secretion known as insulin. The external secretion aids in the digestion of protein, fat and carbohydrate in the intestine. The internal secretion is the principal factor in the utilization of carbohydrate by the body cells. The insulin is secreted by special cells of the pancreas which are arranged in clusters known as the islands of Langerhans.

## CAUSES OF DIABETES

Exactly what causes diabetes is not known, but there seems to be a strong hereditary tendency. The disease "runs in families." Frequently a person with diabetes knows of other members of his family who have the disease or had it when living. It also seems to afflict certain races, particularly the Jewish race. In the United States there is a high incidence of diabetes not accounted for

ard diet will be based on the carbohydrate value of the diet used prior to the appearance of urinary sugar. This amount, if much below normal needs, probably will be increased somewhat and insulin prescribed to aid in its metabolism, as described later in this chapter.

## PHYSIOLOGIC EXPLANATION OF BODY CHANGES

### How Glucose Gets Into the Blood and the Urine

**Glucose and Glycogen.** Carbohydrates such as starch, cane sugar (sucrose) and milk sugar (lactose) enter the body as food. After being acted upon by the saliva, the pancreatic and the intestinal juices, they are changed to so-called monosaccharides, or simple sugars, that pass readily through the intestinal walls into the blood stream and soon reach the liver through the portal circulation. The principal sugar formed is glucose, although there may be some fructose and galactose, all of which are transformed into glycogen when they reach the liver, as already stated in Chapter II. The liver then allows a portion of this glycogen, reconverted to glucose, to pass into the blood stream to maintain the normal blood-sugar level of 70 to 100 mg. per 100 cc. of blood and to be carried to the tissues as rapidly as there is need for it to be stored as muscle glycogen. Insulin, the internal secretion of the pancreas, is one of the controlling factors in this regulatory action, including the conversion of glucose to glycogen and its utilization by the tissues.

Recently a new hormone—glucagon—also thought to be produced in the pancreas, has been isolated. Its action is believed to control the conversion of liver glycogen back to glucose to aid in maintaining normal blood-sugar levels.<sup>2</sup>

**Insulin Deficiency.** When disease interferes with regular production of insulin, the control of the blood-sugar level is lost and the glucose cannot be

and, since it is excess material, some means for disposing of it must be found. When it reaches the level of 180 to 180 mg. per 100 cc. of blood, known as the renal threshold, glucose is excreted by the kidneys and appears in the urine.

**Mechanisms of Carbohydrate Metabolism.** The mechanisms by which the body attempts to control the carbohydrate metabolism may be likened to a great mountain stream controlled by dams and reservoirs. The first dam is probably the insulin, which, through its control, causes the reservoir—the liver—to be filled with glycogen. When, for any reason, this reservoir is broken down, the stream below is flooded, and the second dam—the kidneys—attempts to hold it in check. When it reaches a certain level there, it again overflows and in all probability will spread to the fields beyond, which, according to the simile, represent the tissues of the body. As the fields require moisture, so do the tissues require glucose, but an overabundance or flooding in either case may be detrimental.

The kidneys are also the sluiceway which eventually allows for an overflow into the urine when the flood level of sugar reaches the critical level. The original source of the sugar as it appears in both the blood and the urine is, as stated, the food supply. Of course, it comes chiefly from the carbohydrates—starch and the various sugars, but it is interesting to know that each of the other food constituents—protein and fat—can be converted into sugar and pass through to the tissues if needed for

<sup>2</sup> Korp, W., and LeComptel, P. M.: *Diabetes* 4:347, 1955.

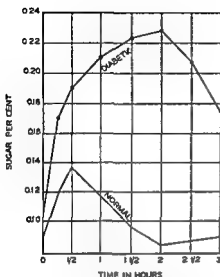


Fig 70. Glucose tolerance curve in the case of a normal and a diabetic individual. Ordinates = per cent sugar, abscissa = time after the ingestion of 100 Gm of glucose. (Bodensky Introduction to Physiological Chemistry, New York, Wiley)

diabetes mellitus, although there are a few exceptions. These include renal glycosuria, when the renal threshold for glucose is lowered, alimentary glycosuria, when too much sugar has been ingested at one time for the liver to store the excess, pentosuria, when the body fails to oxidize a certain carbohydrate called pentose, fructosuria, when fructose is not utilized, and lactosuria in nursing mothers, when lactose is produced in excess quantity. For more specific details concerning the tests when diabetes mellitus is suspected, see Special Tests, Part Four.

### Ketone Bodies in the Urine

Certain substances may appear in the urine as the result of incomplete burning of the fats. The presence of these substances, known as ketone bodies, is

indicative of a serious condition called ketosis, or diabetic acidosis, which, if not corrected, may result in coma.

### Blood-Sugar Test

Although the presence of glucose in the urine is strongly suggestive of diabetes mellitus, a blood-sugar examination is necessary to make the diagnosis certain. This test is made after a 12-hour fast; in diabetes it will show a much higher level of blood sugar than the normal level of 70 to 100 mg. per 100 cc. of blood. When this test is not conclusive, a glucose tolerance test on the blood should be made. The latter test is carried out by giving a known amount of glucose in proportion to the body weight after a 12-hour fast. The blood

test at hourly intervals for as much as 6 hours. Note the difference in the glucose tolerance curve between a normal person and a diabetic (Fig. 70).

### Dietary Tests

#### Testing the Carbohydrate Tolerance

The capacity for burning glucose is known as the patient's carbohydrate tolerance. It is the difference between the glucose equivalent of the diet and the glucose excreted in the urine. To determine this in a patient without ketosis, a calculated weighed diet of known composition, usually low in both carbohydrate and calories, is given, following which analyses are made for several days. If the urine becomes sugar free, it indicates that the patient may be able to burn more carbohydrate, and another diet with increased carbohydrate and calories is tried. This diet is continued or increased cautiously unless sugar again appears, when it is evident that the patient's tolerance has been exceeded, and in all probability his stand-

and, because two of the three ketones are acids, upset the acid-base balance, hence the name acidosis or ketosis. They are excreted in the urine with the excess sugar. One of them—acetone—is volatile. It may escape from the blood in the lungs and appear on the breath, giving a typical "ripe pear" odor.

### DIET THERAPY

**General Discussion.** As can be seen from the foregoing paragraphs, the treatment of diabetes is by diet and, if necessary, insulin. However, today there is a sharp difference of opinion over the degree of dietary restriction. The controversy is over the effect of blood-sugar levels on the eventual health of the patient. Diabetics are more susceptible than others to the pathologic changes in the blood vessels known as atherosclerosis. Not only does this occur more frequently in diabetics than in nondiabetics, but it occurs in younger age groups. There is little question that in general the duration of the diabetes is the most significant factor in the onset of blood-vessel changes, although it must be noted that some diabetics have marked damage soon after the onset of diabetes, while Joslin<sup>4</sup> cites 23 diabetics who have had the disease for 25 years or more without any demonstrable blood-vessel change.

**Chemical Method of Regulation.** The conservative group of physicians<sup>5</sup> believes that blood-sugar levels higher than normal, resulting in the presence of sugar in the urine, contribute to the

is known as the chemical method of regulation of diabetes.

**Clinical Control of Diabetes.** Dietary restrictions are difficult to maintain indefinitely, and patients again and again "break their diet." With our increased understanding of the role of food to satisfy emotional as well as physiologic needs, some physicians have come to reassess the need for very carefully restricted diets and have allowed their patients a so-called "free" diet.

and maintains his weight (or gains or loses weight as necessary). The larger part of the diet is assured of metabolism by a prescribed dose of insulin. The patient is allowed to spill excess sugar into the urine if he has eaten more carbohydrate than he can use. These physicians<sup>6</sup> claim that there is no indication that such patients have more extensive atherosclerotic changes than those kept on a strictly controlled diet, and that the less-restricted diet enables the patient to live a more nearly normal life. This method is called the clinical regulation of diabetes.

**Moderate Method of Dietary Control.** In between these two schools of thought are those<sup>7</sup> who are of the opinion that a liberal but not a "free" diet, with moderate control of the blood-sugar levels and glycosuria, is the most desirable method of treating both the disease and the patient. Mosenthal<sup>8</sup> believes that it may be of advantage to assess the personality of the patient and suit the diet more nearly to his ability to follow it. Thus a new diabetic may do best on a carefully controlled diet until he feels secure with his disease, after which the

<sup>4</sup> Joslin, E. P. JAMA 147 209, 1951.  
Keiding, N. R., et al. JAMA 150 964, 1952.  
Ricketts, H. T. JAMA 150 959, 1952.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> Dolger, H. JAMA 134 1289, 1947.  
Tobst, E. Am J Nursing 50 652, 1950.

<sup>7</sup> Mosenthal, H. Q. Ann Int. Med 29-79, 1948.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.



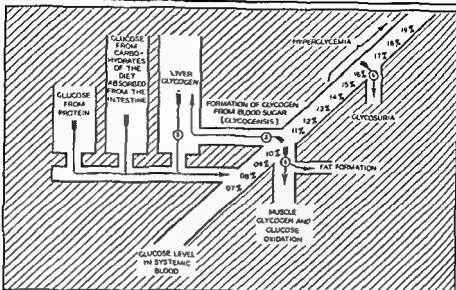


Fig 71 Schematic illustration of some of the factors which regulate the sugar concentration of the blood (1) and (2) under control of insulin and other hormones; (3) under control of sympathetic nervous system and Adrenalin; (4) regulated by renal threshold (Bodansky: Introduction to Physiological Chemistry, New York, Wiley. After Ringer and Baumann, with modifications Barker, L. F.: Endocrinology and Metabolism, New York, Appleton-Century)

repair or growth. If not in demand for immediate use, they are deaminized, as stated in Chapter 4. The nitrogenous portion is eliminated, while the glucose portion of the remainder is stored like any other carbohydrate. While there is some difference in the various kinds of protein as to the percentage of glucose which each yields, the average is 58 per cent of the total weight of protein.

Likewise, when the fats are metabolized, fatty acids and glycerol are

used. Theoretically at least, fats yield about 10 per cent glucose.

There are, therefore, three sources of glucose from which blood sugar may be derived.

	PER CENT
Carbohydrates . . . . .	100
Protein . . . . .	58
Fats . . . . .	10

The total glucose in a day's diet may be expressed by the following formula  $G = 100\% C + 58\% P + 10\% F$ .

During fasting or starvation or an insufficient food supply, the body protein and fat serve as sources of carbohydrate, though in insufficient amounts to constitute a normal supply.

### How Ketone Bodies Get into the Blood and the Urine

Fats, after digestion, find their way into the blood largely via the lymphatic system (see Chap 9). In the process of oxidation in the cell, ketones are formed and then are further oxidized to carbon dioxide and water. In untreated diabetes, when the patient is not metabolizing sufficient glucose and must depend on increased fat oxidation for his energy, ketones tend to pile up because they are produced in much greater quantity. They enter the blood stream



dietary restrictions may be relaxed somewhat.

### Dietary Prescriptions

The dietary prescription should be based on the nutritional needs of the patient. A mild case of diabetes, especially if the patient is overweight, may be controlled by diet alone, whereas the more severe diabetic will require insulin in order to maintain a good nutritional state.

The requirements for calories are the same as for normal individuals of the same sex, height, build and activity. Many normal people, however, consume a larger quantity of food than is actually required for the maintenance of health and bodily activity. The diabetic is cautioned not to exceed the actual requirements. Indeed, it is usually thought best for him to maintain himself at slightly below the average weight (see Table 10, Part Four). The energy requirements have been discussed in Chapter 5. Exercise is considered to be of therapeutic value because it lowers the blood sugar and, therefore, lessens the amount of insulin needed.

The energy requirement for a middle-aged man of average size doing sedentary work is from 2,200 to 2,500 calories, while a woman under the same conditions will require from 1,800 to 2,000 calories. The usual prescription for diabetics calls for 30 calories per Kg (2.2 lbs.) of normal body weight.

**Ratio of Protein, Fat and Carbohydrate in the Diet.** It will be remembered that for an adult the daily protein requirement is from 58 to 70 Gm. of

of fat and protein are frequently prescribed. However, in young adolescents and in physically active adults, the proportion of carbohydrate may be somewhat higher, with enough insulin prescribed to ensure metabolism.

The distribution of the carbohydrate in the day's diet is quite important in the total quantity consumed. For patients who do not require insulin, the total carbohydrate is divided equally for the meals. Since the blood sugar is usually at its height during the morning hours, some doctors advise a lower carbohydrate at breakfast, about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the day's allowance, with  $\frac{2}{3}$  at noon and  $\frac{1}{3}$  at night, even for patients not requiring insulin.

Today the use of regular insulin in diabetes is limited largely to patients undergoing surgery or ill with an infection. It may be given in conjunction with one of the slow-acting insulins, in which case the distribution of carbohydrate should follow the latter's pattern.

The slow-acting insulins are used most commonly today because only 1 dose

ing the night or the early morning, when the slow-acting insulin may still be functioning and the carbohydrate of the supper meal has been metabolized.

When protamine zinc insulin is used, the carbohydrate is most commonly divided into  $\frac{1}{3}$  for breakfast and  $\frac{2}{3}$  each at lunch and dinner, after the carbohydrate for the evening feeding has been deducted. With NPH and Lente insulins, which act slightly less slowly, the carbohydrate may be divided into thirds, or it may be given  $\frac{1}{3}$  at breakfast and  $\frac{2}{3}$  each at lunch and dinner after the evening feeding is deducted.

Globin insulin, also slow acting, may require 4 meals a day, dividing the carbohydrate  $\frac{1}{4}$  each for breakfast and mid-

tabolism of protein than from carbohydrate, and it has a high satiety value.

There is some difference of opinion among physicians as to the optimum ratio of carbohydrate to fat in the diet. Two grams of carbohydrate to one each

basic dietary pattern (see Chap. 18), and they should be planned so far as possible around the family menus, or, perhaps better still, the family's meals should be planned around the patient's diet.

The doctor's dietary prescription is given in terms of the number of grams of protein, fat and carbohydrate. This necessitates the careful calculation in terms of foods allowed and the weighing of the diet, at least at the beginning. For example, the prescription may be as follows:

Protein . . . . .	90 Gm./
Fat . . . . .	100 Gm.
Carbohydrate . . . . .	200 Gm.

To calculate such a diet, the quantities of the essential foods needed for adequate nutrition are listed and their food composition recorded. Additional foods are then added until the total composition

distributes the carbohydrate in accordance with the type of insulin prescribed.

Tables of food values must be consulted carefully. Table 1 in Part Four

useful

**Variations in Food Composition.** It must always be remembered that all tables of food values are based upon

per cent vegetables and do not begin to count the carbohydrate until the 10 per cent grouping (See Table 3 in Part Four).

There is probably more variation in cuts of meat than in vegetables. Fat is the factor of variance. In order to prevent any gross error, only lean meats should be served, unless the fat value is quite stable, as in bacon. The shrinkage of meats, owing to cooking, introduces another variable, hence, in using tables of food values, care should be taken to note whether they are based upon raw or cooked weight.

portion of water used and in the evaporation. It is well to prepare individual portions of cooked cereals, although care must be taken to use a double boiler or in some way prevent loss of material adhering to the container. A typical diabetic diet is shown on the previous page.

**Meal Planning and Exchange Lists.** A more liberal yet moderately accurate method for choosing a diabetic diet was prepared in 1930 by the American Dietetic Association and approved by the American Diabetes Association and the United States Public Health Service. The result is the booklet *Meal Planning with Exchange Lists*.<sup>10</sup> In it, foods having a more or less common composition are grouped together in such quantities that one food can be exchanged for another in each group. The patient is allowed to choose the permitted number of servings in each group according to his preference. The exchange lists are reproduced on pages 282 to 284, and recipes based on exchanges will be found in Chapter 50. The original booklet contains a good deal of additional explanatory material.

carbohydrate intervals. Some physicians allow the patient to eat freely of all 3

\* Watt, B. K., and Merrill, A. L., U. S. Dept. of Agriculture, Agriculture Handbook No. 8, 1950.

<sup>10</sup> Obtainable from The American Dietetic Association, 620 N. Michigan Ave., Chicago 11, Ill.

## SAMPLE DIABETIC DIET\*

Prescription Protein, 90 Gm, Fat, 100 Gm; Carbohydrate, 200 Gm

MEALS	FOOD ITEMS	AMOUNT ALLOWED		PROTEIN	FAT	CARBO- HYDRATE	CALO- RIES
			Gm.	Gm.	Gm.	Gm.	
Breakfast	Cantaloupe†	½	200	2		10	40
	Egg	1	54	6	6		77
	Toast	1 slice	23	1	1	12	63
	Butter or margarine†	1 teaspoon	■		4		48
	Milk	1 c	244	9	10	12	168
	Coffee						
	Light cream	2 tablespoons	30	1	6	1	60
				20	27	35	442
Dinner	Tomato juice	1 glass	200	2		8	42
	Roast beef	3 medium slices	75	18	18		240
	Brussels sprouts†	1 serving	100	4	1	10	47
	Potato	1 medium	100	2		19	■
	Bread	2 slices	46	4	2	24	126
	Butter or margarine†	2 teaspoons	10		8		72
	Grapefruit†	½	100	1		10	40
	Coffee or tea						
	Light cream	2 tablespoons	30	1	6	1	60
				32	35	72	710
Supper	Broth						
	Roast chicken	2 slices	45	9	6		90
	Peas†	1 serving	100	5		12	70
	Summer squash†	1 serving	100	1		4	18
	Lettuce and tomato†	1 serving	100	1		4	20
	French dressing	½ tablespoon	8		3	1	31
	Bread	2 slices	46	4	2	24	126
	Butter or margarine†	2 teaspoons	10		■		72
	Milk	1 c.	244	9	10	12	168
	Cherries, whole†	1 c	100	1	1	15	61
				30	30	72	652
Bedtime feeding	Milk	1 c.	244	9	10	12	168
	Crackers	2 small	11	1	1	7	40
				10	11	19	208
Day's Totals				92	103	198	2,010

\* U.S. Public Health Service

† for the day

## Planning and Calculating the Diet

## Chemically Controlled Diabetes.

The patient must be helped to realize that his health and usefulness to society depend upon his strict attention to his

diet, although for psychological reasons he must not be made to feel that he is different and that he does not share in the family life. His meals must be built around the essentials, as described in the



A series of nine meal plans<sup>11</sup> are also available, ranging from 1,200 to 3,000 calories, and of varying carbohydrate, protein and fat content. These are intended for use by the physician in prescribing for a particular patient. An example of one of these, Meal Plan No. 4, contains 90 Gm. protein, 100 Gm. fat, 220 Gm. carbohydrate and 2,200 calories. The food allowance and the meal plan for the day plus two suggested menus are reproduced on pages 286 and 287.

**Free or Nonrestricted Diabetic Diets.** As has already been stated, there is a school of diabetic specialists today who believe that no harm is done if the patient spills sugar so long as he main-

<sup>11</sup> Meal Plans 1 to 9, The American Dietetic Association, 620 N. Michigan Ave., Chicago 11, Ill.

tains his normal weight, shows no ketone bodies in the urine and has none of the classic symptoms of diabetes such as increased thirst, increased urination and weight loss. Accordingly, the patient is allowed to eat an ordinary diet, including desserts and other carbohydrate-rich

foods high in concentrated sweets to some extent but do not require the patient to follow a strict regimen. Insulin is given once a day. These physicians argue that so long as weight is maintained and no ketones are formed in excess, the patient is metabolizing enough carbohydrate and other foods for his energy needs. The remainder of the carbohydrate which is not metabolized and spills into the urine is considered as waste matter and not neces-

#### MEAL PLANNING WITH EXCHANGE LISTS FOR THE DIABETIC

(Adapted from Meal Planning with Exchange Lists, The American Dietetic Association, 620 N. Michigan Ave., Chicago 11, Ill.)

#### Foods That Need Not Be Measured

(Insignificant carbohydrate or calories)

Coffee	Gelatin (unsweetened)	Saccharin and other
Tea	Rennet tablets	noncaloric sweeteners
Clear broth	Cranberries (unsweetened)	Pepper and other spices
Bouillon (fat free)	Mustard (dry)	Vinegar
Lemon	Pickle (unsweetened)	Seasonings

#### List 1. Milk Exchanges

One exchange of milk contains 8 Gm. protein, 10 Gm. fat, 12 Gm. carbohydrate and 170 calories

This list shows the different types of milk to use for one exchange.

TYPE OF MILK	AMOUNT To Use	TYPE OF MILK	AMOUNT To Use
Whole milk (plain or homogenized)	1 c.	†Powdered skim milk (nonfat dried milk)	½ c.
*Skim milk	1 c.	Buttermilk (made from whole milk)	1 c.
Evaporated milk	½ c.	†Buttermilk (made from skim milk)	1 c.
Powdered whole milk	½ c.		

You can use one type of milk instead of another. For example, you may use ½ cup

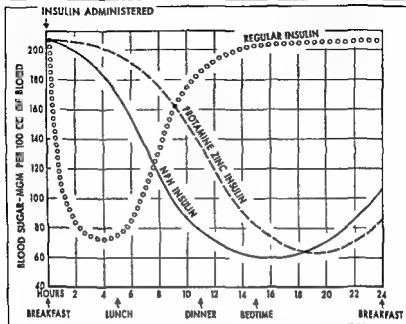


Fig 72 Graphic representation of the effects of comparable doses of various insulins on the blood-sugar level of a diabetic patient. Note the longer-lasting action of NPH insulin as compared with regular insulin and protamine zinc insulin [Adapted from a chart and used by permission of Eli Lilly and Company]

sarily contributory to the development of degenerative disease. The great advantage of this regimen is that the patient is not continually aware of his re-

### INSULIN THERAPY

Insulin, as already stated, is the internal secretion of the pancreas, produced by the islands of Langerhans. The discovery that insulin could be isolated from the pancreas of an animal, the development and the technique of its administration, and the development of commercial standards for its production together form one of the greatest contributions of the century to medical sci-

ence. Insulin is sold on the basis of its unit content, the commercial unit used being the same as that originally designed in the experimental laboratory. An insulin unit is  $\frac{1}{2}$  the quantity which will cause a 2-Kg. (4.4 lb.) rabbit to reach the blood-sugar level of 45 mg per 100 cc of blood—the convulsive level—within 5 hours. In the human being it will cause one or more grams of carbohydrate to be oxidized—usually 1 to 2 Gm.—but this varies with the patient and his condition. Insulin is sold

ments for carbohydrate

It is true that exercise increases the demand for and ability to burn carbo-



**List 4. Bread Exchanges**

One exchange contains 2 Gm. protein, 15 Gm carbohydrate and 70 calories.

This list shows the different amounts of foods to use for one bread exchange:

	AMOUNT To Use		AMOUNT To Use
Bread	1 slice	Vegetables	
Biscuit, roll (2" diam.)	1	Beans and peas, dried, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Muffin (2" diam.)	1	(Lima, navy, split pea, cowpeas, etc.)	
Cornbread (1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " cube)	1	Baked beans, no pork	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Cereals, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	Corn	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Dry, flake and puff types	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	Popcorn	1 c.
Rice, grits, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	Parsnips	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Spaghetti, noodles, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	Potatoes, white	1 small
Macaroni, etc., cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	Potatoes, white, mashed	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Crackers, graham (2 $\frac{1}{2}$ " sq.)	1	Potatoes, sweet, or yams	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Oyster ( $\frac{1}{2}$ c.)	20	Sponge cake, plain (1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " cube)	1
Salts (2" sq.)	5	Ice cream	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
Soda (2 $\frac{1}{2}$ " sq.)	3	(Omit 2 fat exchanges)	
Round, thin (1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " )	8		
Flour	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ tbsp		

Use these foods carefully because they have a lot of sugar.

**List 5. Meat Exchanges**

One meat exchange contains 7 Gm protein, 5 Gm fat and 75 calories.

This list shows the different amounts of foods to use for one meat exchange.

	AMOUNT To Use		AMOUNT To Use
Meat and poultry (medium fat)	1 oz.	Egg	1
beef, lamb, pork, liver, chicken, etc.		Fish: haddock, etc.	1 oz.
Cold cuts (4 $\frac{1}{2}$ " x $\frac{1}{2}$ " )	1 slice	Salmon, tuna, crab, lobster	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
salami, minced ham, bologna, liverwurst, luncheon loaf		Shrimp, clams, oysters, etc.	5 small
Frankfurter (8-9 per lb.)	1	Sardines	3 medium
		Cheese: Cheddar type	1 oz.
		Cottage	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.
		*Peanut butter	2 tbsp.

\* Limit peanut butter to 1 exchange a day unless the carbohydrate in it is allowed for you in your meal plan.

**List 6. Fat Exchanges**

One fat exchange contains 5 Gm fat and 45 calories

This list shows the different foods to use for one fat exchange-

	AMOUNT To Use		AMOUNT To Use
Butter or margarine	1 tsp.	French dressing	1 tbsp.
Bacon, crisp	1 slice	Mayonnaise	1 tsp.
Cream, light	2 tbsp.	Oil or cooking fat	1 tsp.
Cream, heavy	1 tbsp.	Nuts	6 small
Cream cheese	1 tbsp.	Olives	5 small
Avocado (4" diam.)	$\frac{1}{2}$		

NOTE: See Chapter 50 for recipes based on exchange allowances.

## SAMPLE MENUS

(These menus show some of the ways exchange lists can be used to vary the meal plan. Recipes will be found in Chap. 50.)

*Breakfast*

Orange juice— $\frac{1}{2}$  c.  
Eggs—2  
Toast—2 slices  
Butter—3 tsp.  
Coffee—2 tbsp. evaporated milk\*

*Lunch or Supper*

Ham and cheese sandwich (cheese—1 oz., ham—1 oz., bread—3 slices, butter—1 tsp.)  
Lettuce and tomato salad  
Mayonnaise—1 tsp.  
Apple—1 small  
Milk—1 cup (8 oz.)  
Coffee or tea

*Dinner*

Hamburg patties—3 ozs.  
Mashed potato— $\frac{1}{2}$  c.  
Carrots— $\frac{1}{2}$  c. Spinach  
Bread—2 slices  
Butter—3 tsp.  
Banana—1 small  
Coffee or tea

*Bedtime*

Milk— $\frac{1}{2}$  c. (8 ozs.)\*  
Peanut butter sandwich (peanut butter—2 tbsp., bread—2 slices)

\* 2 tbsp. evaporated milk equals  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup whole milk. Part of the milk is taken from bedtime to use at breakfast.

*Breakfast*

Prunes—2 medium  
Cereal, cooked— $\frac{1}{2}$  c.  
Milk— $\frac{1}{2}$  c. (2 ozs.)†  
Poached eggs (2) on toast—1 slice  
Butter—2 tsp.  
Coffee—2 tbsp. light cream

*Lunch or Supper*

Bologna—2 slices  
Radishes, celery, sour pickles  
Potato salad (B)—1 c. (recipe Chap. 50)  
Bread—1 slice Butter—1 tsp.  
Grapefruit— $\frac{1}{2}$   
Milk—1 cup (8 ozs.)  
Coffee or tea

*Dinner*

Tomato juice—small glass  
Roast lamb—3 ozs.  
Steamed rice—1 c.  
Green peas— $\frac{1}{2}$  c.  
Mixed green salad  
French dressing—1 tbsp.  
Bread—1 slice Butter—2 tsp.  
Fruit gelatin II (recipe Chap. 50)  
Coffee or tea

*Bedtime*

Milk— $\frac{1}{2}$  c. (6 ozs.)†  
Graham crackers—4  
American cheese—1 oz.

† Part of the milk is taken from bedtime to use at breakfast.

protamine zinc insulin  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour before breakfast, and usually II is given only once a day. The distribution of carbohydrate intake may be different from what II is when regular or crystalline zinc insulin is used, as already stated.

Because II absorbs slowly, the single morning dose may not be sufficient to control the early-morning glycosuria of a severe diabetic. However, this may be overcome by the combined use of the regular and the protamine zinc insulins. By its use, the number of injections has been reduced from as many as 4 per day to 1 or 2, in many cases fewer units are

required. Ketosis is almost completely overcome by its use.

## NPH and Lente Insulins

More recent members of the insulin family are NPH and Lente insulins. These two insulins resemble in their action a combination of regular and protamine insulins. Each takes effect more quickly and is longer lasting, although there are less likely to be late reactions, as with unmodified protamine insulin. (See Fig. 72.) The dosage may be slightly less than for unmodified protamine zinc insulin.

## ADA MEAL PLAN No. 4

For \_\_\_\_\_

Use only as your doctor prescribes Carbohydrate 220 Gm., protein 90 Gm., fat 100 Gm., calories 2,200.

This meal plan has been prepared for use with the Meal Planning Booklet.

## YOUR FOOD FOR THE DAY

AMOUNT	KIND OF FOOD	CHOOSE FROM
1 pint	Milk	List 1
Any amt.	Vegetable Exch. A	List 2A
1	Vegetable Exch. B	List 2B
4	Fruit Exchanges	List 3
10	Bread Exchanges	List 4
8	Meat Exchanges	List 5
8	Fat Exchanges	List 6

## Lunch or Supper

2 Meat Exchanges from List 5  
 3 Bread Exchanges from List 4  
 Vegetable from List 2A (any amount)  
 1 Fruit Exchange from List 3  
 2 Fat Exchanges from List 6  
 1 cup milk from List 1\*  
 Coffee or tea (any amount)

## Dinner or Main Meal

3 Meat Exchanges from List 5  
 3 Bread Exchanges from List 4  
 Vegetable from List 2A (any amount)  
 1 Vegetable Exchange from List 2B  
 2 Fruit Exchanges from List 3  
 3 Fat Exchanges from List 6  
 Coffee or tea (any amount)

Divide this food as follows:

## YOUR MEAL PLAN

## Breakfast

1 Fruit Exchange from List 3  
 2 Meat Exchanges from List 5  
 2 Bread Exchanges from List 4  
 3 Fat Exchanges from List 6  
 Coffee or tea (any amount)

## Bedtime

1 cup milk from List 1\*  
 2 Bread Exchanges from List 4  
 1 Meat Exchange from List 5

\* Part of milk may be used for coffee or tea or for cereal.

hydrate. Other factors, such as strong emotion, worry or overwork, may also affect the insulin requirement. These may have the effect of raising the blood sugar and thereby disturbing the patient's carbohydrate balance.

The first insulin developed is now known as unmodified or regular insulin in contrast with modified forms of it known as crystalline zinc, protamine zinc, NPH, Lente and globin insulins described below.

## Crystalline Zinc Insulin

uct than the most common regular insulin, inasmuch as it has a lower protein content. Crystalline insulin is supposed to give fewer allergic reactions, otherwise,

the action of this product is very similar to that of the regular, or unmodified, insulin. Both act quickly and are effective for approximately 8 to 8 hours.

## Protamine Zinc Insulin

Protamine zinc insulin was made available through the research of Hagedorn, of Denmark, and others. It is a precipitate of the regular, or unmodified, insulin and a protamine which originally was obtained from the sperm of fish. Zinc in minute quantities is added to enhance the effect of the protamine. This type of insulin is absorbed much more slowly than the original preparation produced by Banting or the crystalline zinc insulin described above. Its effect may last for a day or more, depending upon the individual, and the drop in blood sugar is more gradual. For this reason, it is advisable to give the





Fig 73 Both the patient and his wife are learning about the administration of insulin. (The New York Hospital)

### Globin Insulin

Globin insulin is a combination of an aqueous solution of insulin with the addition of the protein globin derived from hemoglobin of beef blood. This product also contains zinc chloride and is a clear solution. Its action is intermediate, between the regular and the protamine insulins. Its effect is apparent after about 2 hours and reaches its maximum in about 8 hours, when it begins to wane, gradually decreasing for another 8 hours.

Its effect, therefore, is continuous for approximately 16 hours. When given before breakfast, the peak of its activity is reached about midafternoon. For this reason, some of the more severe diabetics find it necessary to have a mid-afternoon feeding.

### Insulin Administration

The quantity of insulin prescribed may vary from 10 to 80 or more units. Usually it is given  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour before break-

vessel changes.<sup>14</sup> Thus, although much has been gained in lifespan for the young diabetic, much remains to be done.

The cause of the blood-vessel changes is much debated, as discussed earlier in the chapter. The physicians who advocate close chemical control of diabetes believe that such control may forestall the complications as long as possible, although they admit that they will eventually occur. They recommend that diabetic children and their parents be

Planning and Exchange Lists (see pp. 282-284) after an initial period of weighing.<sup>15</sup> Other physicians allow children to share family meals, perhaps limiting sweets to some extent, and giving enough insulin to prevent coma.<sup>16</sup>

be made with less emotional conflict.

Whatever the school of thought in regard to control of the diet, all physicians agree that the nutritional needs of the diabetic child are the same as those of the nondiabetic (see Chaps. 13 and 14). If there has been any marked weight loss before the disease is discovered, the diet prescribed should be such as to allow the child to recover this loss. As he grows and develops, there must be periodic readjustment of the diet. Strenuous physical activity may be compensated for by small amounts of food before the exercise.

Particularly in the adolescent years, when girls and boys grow very rapidly, it is essential that the diet keep pace

with the nutritional needs, and that in-

ments which will be necessary over the years.

### DIABETES IN PREGNANCY

Diabetes in the mother has always been a special hazard in pregnancy. There is increased fetal loss in the course of the pregnancy as well as an increased loss of infants carried to term as compared with the nondiabetic patient. In the past few years, however, by closely following the mother, obstetricians have been able to secure a far greater number of successful pregnancies than formerly.<sup>16</sup>

Again there is difference of opinion about the type of dietary control, but all physicians agree that the nutritional needs of pregnancy must be adequately met (see Chap. 12), with sufficient insulin to cover the increased food intake.

### TEACHING THE PATIENT

The education of the patient is an important aspect of his treatment. He should be taught at his own level of

principles involved in the treatment of his disease and be helped to make the necessary adjustments in his mode of living.

2. Whatever dietary regimen is prescribed, the patient should be taught

<sup>16</sup> Stephens, J. W., et al.: J.A.M.A. 161: 224, 1956.

<sup>14</sup> Marble, A. J. Am. Dietet. A. 53: 569, 1957.

<sup>15</sup> Jackson, R. L., and Beckett, S. W.: J. Am. Dietet. A. 32: 523, 1956.

and insulin, with some source of carbohydrate, such as orange juice, and any other such procedures as the physician may prescribe.

### Insulin Reactions

Insulin reactions occur when too much insulin is given, when the patient does not eat all of his prescribed diet, or when he indulges in excessive exercise before a meal.

nausea, dizziness and double vision, and eventually stupor. The treatment when the condition is discovered is the immediate administration of sugar in some form, either as one of the fruit juices or as sugar and water if the former is not easily available. This should be followed by a more slowly absorbed food mixture such as crackers or toast and milk, which will continue to feed carbohydrate into the system. It may be necessary to repeat both the rapidly and the slowly absorbed feedings for some time until all danger of insulin reaction is past.

With unmodified insulin, the onset of an insulin reaction is rapid and more dramatic. The patient may complain of nervousness and hunger, perspire profusely and become inarticulate. If untreated, stupor will result here also. Immediate administration of rapidly absorbed carbohydrate such as fruit juices or sugar in other forms is effective.

The danger of insulin reaction is that permanent brain damage may result, especially if the reactions are frequent, or if it is severe and extended so that the

especially of the slow-acting insulins, so that she may report danger signs immediately. Patients taking insulin are advised to carry 2 humps of sugar or hard candy for such emergencies.

### Surgery

Diabetics can now be operated upon with a comparative degree of safety. In emergencies, as in acute, operable infections, there need be no delay in operating. In these cases, the patient is given insulin and intravenous fluids and glucose. When there is time to pre-

of sugar and seeing that his glycogen fluid and salt reserves are adequate. A weighed diet accompanied by the use of insulin may be used in such cases.

On the morning of operation both breakfast and insulin are withheld. Occasionally, a small dose of insulin is injected before the patient goes to the operating room.

After the operation, glucose and fluids are given intravenously with sufficient insulin to metabolize the glucose. Oral feeding is started as early as possible, usually in 24 hours. At first fruit juices, ginger ale, tea and broth are given. Later a more liberal diet is resumed.

### DIABETES IN CHILDREN

The outlook for children who develop diabetes has changed markedly from the preinsulin days, when the disease invariably was fatal. Recently White<sup>13</sup> has shown that of 1,072 patients whose onset of diabetes occurred before the age of 15 and who had had the disease 20 years or more, 879 were living at the time of the study. Of the 879 patients, 71 per cent had had diabetes from 20 to 29 years, 24 per cent had had diabetes from 30 to 34 years, and 5 per cent had had the disease for more than 35 years. However, in a large percentage of such patients, complications develop after 15 to 20 years or more of diabetes. These include diminished vision and heart and kidney disease, all attributable to blood-

<sup>13</sup> White, P.: Diabetes 5 445, 1958.

nose diabetes? Describe the tests and

pened to his metabolism in bring about these two conditions? What will the treatment possibly be?

5 What percentage of carbohydrate is metabolized as glucose in the body? Of protein? Of fat? How much glucose will the body obtain from the Pattern Dietary which contains 80 Gm of protein, 100 Gm. of fat and 200 Gm of carbohydrate?

6. A diabetic patient weighs 120 lbs. His ideal weight is 125 lbs. How many calories should he have per day? How much protein?

7 The carbohydrate allowance for a diabetic patient is 150 Gm. He is being given protamine zinc insulin. How will the carbohydrate of his diet probably be divided for the day?

8 Plan a diabetic diet with the following diet order: protein 75, fat 110, carbohydrate 200, carbohydrate divided for NPH insulin. The patient is a man with a large appetite. Use Table 1, Part Four, for food composition figures. Repeat, using the Exchange Lists in this chapter. Are the two diets very different?

9. What is meant by a 15 per cent fruit? A 6 per cent vegetable?

10 Which foods are permitted for use on a diabetic diet? Which should be

avoided? Give 5 substitutions that a diabetic can make for a slice of bread.

11. What is meant by the chemical regulation of diabetes? The clinical regulation? Why is there controversy over these two methods of regulation?

12. What is meant by a "free" diabetic diet? What advantages are claimed for it?

13 Which foods should be included in the diabetic diet to make it nutritionally adequate?

14 What is insulin? How many types of insulin are there? How do they differ?

15 List the symptoms of insulin reaction due to one of the slow-acting insulins. Why should a rapidly absorbed carbohydrate be followed by a more slowly absorbed meal in treating this type of insulin reaction? List the foods that should be used.

16. What is a diabetic ketosis? What causes this condition? How is it treated?

17. How are diabetics prepared to undergo surgery?

18 What differences are there between the treatment of diabetic children and diabetic adults?

19 What precautions should be taken by a diabetic patient who is pregnant?

20. A diabetic patient is to be discharged. What should he have been taught by the time he is ready to go home? What is the nurse's responsibility in teaching diabetic patients?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.





Fig. 74. The nurse's responsibility for support and for teaching never ceases. Here the patient is surprised and pleased at the amounts and variety of foods allowed on her diabetic diet. (The New York Hospital)

that the foods served on his trays in the hospital illustrate his diet order. He should learn to evaluate what is served and be instructed as to what substitutions he can make for the foods served.

3. He should be warned against overweight and overeating.

4. He should be taught that although moderate exercise is beneficial for diabetics, as for others, strenuous activity may give rise to imbalances between his diet and insulin, and should be avoided.

5. He should learn to test his urine for sugar and for acetone if the doctor orders it. Directions for tests will be found in Part Four or in any of the diabetic manuals mentioned in the list of references under Diabetes.

6. On the advice of the physician he must be taught to administer his own insulin. (See Part Four.)

taught their symptoms and prevention.

8. He must be taught the value of good hygiene, particularly of the feet, and the need of regular meals, sufficient sleep and avoidance of excesses of any kind.

**Prognosis.** It must be remembered that a diabetic patient is never "cured" in the sense of no longer having to consider his diet. Insulin, wonderful as it is, does not cure—it merely aids, nevertheless, it enables the patient to live comfortably and to engage in life's activities, as well as having his life expectancy greatly lengthened by its use.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are thought to be some of the predisposing causes of diabetes?

2. What symptoms does a patient with diabetes have? Why does he show each one of these symptoms?

3. What tests are performed to diag-

dum the food mass is further mixed with bile and the pancreatic enzymes, and digestion begins in earnest. The digested food materials are absorbed into the body all along the small intestine, and the residue, when it enters the colon, is largely water and waste matter. The main function of the colon is to absorb water, forming the waste into a solid mass. It used to be thought that patients could be fed with nutrient enemas, such as glucose solutions, but actually very little absorption other than water takes place at this point. For further detail on digestive processes see Chapter 9.

### DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES

Two common procedures used in the

the gastro-intestinal tract by means of a fluoroscope and roentgenograms after a barium meal has been ingested.

#### Gastric Analysis

This test is carried out in the morning, before the patient has received any food. A tube is passed from the mouth into the stomach, and any gastric juice present is withdrawn. The patient is then given a "test meal" consisting of 2 slices of bread and 2 glasses of water or weak tea, or he may be given 50 cc. of 7 per cent alcohol to drink. Still another procedure is the injection of histamine, a drug that is known to stimulate the production of gastric juice. The gastric contents are then withdrawn at intervals, for an hour or longer. All samples of gastric juice, including the fasting one, are examined for the presence of undigested food, bile and blood, and tested for the quantity of free and total hydrochloric acid each contains. The amount of acid present in fasting specimens and after a test meal or histamine ranges from 20 to 70 cc. N/10 hydrochloric acid per 100 cc. of gastric juice.

that no hydrochloric acid is present. It may occur in gastric disease, and is often found in patients with pernicious anemia.

#### Roentgenography

Roentgenography of the stomach is now a most important diagnostic procedure. This may be done by x-ray photography or by direct examination with a fluoroscope. By this means the

indicative of ulcer or carcinoma, and other signs of abnormalities can be studied in detail. The barium meal is given in the morning, or at least 12 hours after the taking of food or drink.

#### PEPTIC ULCER

The term gastric ulcer denotes an eroded lesion in the stomach, usually occurring along the lesser curvature or near the pylorus. A duodenal ulcer is the same type of lesion, but is found in the duodenum. It is much more common than a gastric ulcer. Whether an ulcer occurs in the stomach or in the duodenum, the treatment is similar. They will be considered together here under the term peptic ulcer. An ulcer is always troublesome and may endanger the life of the patient, as hemorrhage and perforation of the gastric or the duodenal wall are not an uncommon occurrence. Cancer, too, may result, more frequently from gastric ulcer.

*The Pathway of Digestion*

*Diagnostic Procedures*

*Peptic Ulcer*

*Other Disorders of the Upper Gastro-Intestinal Tract*

*Cardiospasm*

*Indigestion*

*Acute and Chronic Gastritis*

*Hiatus Hernia*

*Cancer of the Stomach*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-THREE

# Diseases of the Esophagus and the Stomach

The relationship of food to the gastro-intestinal tract is an intimate one, since this organ serves as the channel of food into the body. It is not surprising, therefore, that diet therapy constitutes much of the treatment in the many diseases which affect the gastro-intestinal tract.

Since food carries many emotional overtones, it is to be expected that the emotional state of the individual will affect his digestion. Hurried meals, meals eaten under unpleasant circumstances, and generally stressful situations all take their toll of the digestive process.

considerable time it may develop into serious disease

Symptoms ascribed to gastric disorders may be due to pathologic conditions in other organs. It has been well said that the stomach is a mirror reflecting the ailments of the whole abdominal

region, and of other parts of the body as well. Chronic appendicitis, gallbladder disease, pulmonary tuberculosis and heart disease are known to be causes of gastric distress. Likewise, many of the neuroses, and even the psychoses may give rise to gastric symptoms.

## THE PATHWAY OF DIGESTION

Food passes from the mouth via the esophagus into the stomach. Here it is mixed with the constituents of the

down of food. However, the stomach serves mainly as a storage organ. It takes as long as 3 hours or more after a meal before the stomach is empty again. During this time small amounts of food are carried into the duodenum each time the pyloric sphincter opens. This is a circular muscle at the junction of the lower end of the stomach and the beginning of the intestinal tract. In the duo-

certain easily digested fats inhibit the secretion of the hydrochloric acid. Therefore, milk, eggs, cream and olive oil are especially valuable in the treatment of peptic ulcer. Meat, fish and fowl, although protein foods of excellent quality, cannot be given in the early stages of ulcer treatment, as they tend to stimulate the secretion of gastric juice (see Chap. 9).

**Frequent and Small Feedings Are Important.** Some dietary plans call for small hourly feedings, others, for feedings every 3 hours, or for 6 feedings per day. Food in the alimentary tract takes up the excess acid which otherwise would excite the pain so characteristic of ulcer, of course, with frequent feedings it is necessary to give small quantities of food and to plan the diet carefully to meet all nutritive requirements.

A mechanically nonirritating diet is low in residue and, therefore, free of substances likely to cause an abrasion or irritation when coming in contact with the eroded surface of the ulcer. Foods to be omitted are tough fibered meats,

the flow of gastric juice, such as the meat extractives found in broths, soups and gravies, tea and coffee, and all foods that might irritate the inflamed and

are prohibited for the same reason.

Recently it was shown<sup>2</sup> that many ulcer patients tolerate a variety of spices without discomfort. Certainly it is true that the judicious use of spices would make the peptic ulcer diet less monotonous. Possibly we could be less rigid about their complete omission than we

<sup>2</sup> Schneider, M. A., et al. *Am J Gastroenterology* 26:722, 1956.

are at present, without endangering the healing of the ulcer.

#### *Diet in Acute Peptic Ulcer*

For many years the Sippy diet<sup>3</sup> or modifications of it have been used successfully in the treatment of peptic ulcer. This diet begins with frequent feedings of milk or milk and cream, usually 3 ozs

#### *Diet in Convalescent Peptic Ulcer*

As the pain subsides, soft-cooked eggs, refined cereals, custard and junket are added one by one to the above regimen. Gradually other foods such as milk toast, strained cream soups and cottage or cream cheese are added or substituted. Meals should remain small and frequent. If the patient continues to improve, he is placed on a 6-feeding convalescent ulcer diet (see pp 298-299).

#### *Maintenance Ulcer Diet*

This is the diet that the ulcer patient should follow more or less for the remainder of his life. Besides the foods listed on the convalescent ulcer diet, he may include whole-grain cereals, tender meats, fish and chicken, boiled, broiled or roasted, meat soups and gravies, raw fruits and vegetables in moderation; coffee, tea and cocoa and a moderate use of condiments.

**Nutritional Adequacy.** The peptic ulcer diet in the early stages tends to be low in calories, protein, minerals and vitamins, it may even lack entirely some essentials, such as ascorbic acid. It is important, therefore, that the patient progress as soon as possible to the more liberal ulcer diet, and that mineral and vitamin supplements be considered if the patient's nutritional state demands it.

The convalescent ulcer diet may be

<sup>3</sup> Sippy, B. W.: *J.A.M.A.* 64:1625, 1915.

### Causes of Peptic Ulcer

Many theories have been advanced about the cause of these lesions. Most patients are found to have a marked increase in acid secretion and an engorged and friable gastric or duodenal mucosa. It is thought that there is a breakdown of some pin point in the mucosal wall with a resultant eating away of the surrounding tissue and the formation of a crater.

It has been observed also that the development of an ulcer seems to be related to emotional stress. Wolf and Wolff<sup>1</sup> reported their observations on the gastric mucosa in a patient with a gastric fistula. They found that "emotional conflict involving anxiety, hostility and resentment was accompanied by accelerated acid secretion, hyper-

begins with anxiety and conflict and their associated overactivity of the stomach and ends with hemorrhage or perforation is that which is involved in the natural history of peptic ulcer in human beings."

### Symptoms

such as sodium bicarbonate.

The diagnosis of ulcer is commonly made by the history of the patient, examination of the stomach contents, and the ulcer crater is often plainly visible on the roentgenogram. The pain complained of by the peptic ulcer patient when the stomach is empty is due to the

1 Wolf, S., and Wolff, H. G.: JAMA 120 670, 1942.

action of the highly acidic gastric juice on the open lesion when no food is present to dilute and neutralize the gastric juice.

**Hemorrhage and Perforation.** Sometimes hemorrhage is the first indication of the presence of an ulcer, or this may occur if the ulcer goes untreated. Sudden weakness and tarry stools, the latter due to the presence of blood, are the outstanding symptoms, and the patient is usually hospitalized at once. If perforation of the gastric or the duodenal wall accompanies the hemorrhage, the situation is even more serious, and the patient is subjected to surgery as soon as possible.

**Treatment**

**Rest,** both physical and mental, is essential in all severe cases of peptic ulcer. This may mean hospitalization or at least rest in bed for a period ranging from a few days to several weeks. Ambulatory patients may be advised to make a change of occupation if their present work requires heavy lifting or pulling.

**Medication** usually consists of antacids (alkalis) and antisecretory drugs intended to neutralize or inhibit the excess gastric acid and the pepsin activity.

**Dietary**

Undoubtedly careful dietary management is the most important factor in the treatment of peptic ulcer. The characteristics of the diet include the following:

1. Foods that neutralize and inhibit acidity

2. Frequent small feedings

3. Food that is mechanically and chemically nonirritating and nonstimulating

4. Gradual but ultimate restoration to an adequate diet

Foods that lower the gastric acidity are bland protein foods and fats. The protein combines with the free acid and thus neutralizes the acidity, and

## Foods To Be Avoided:

Fats .....	All fried foods
Meats and fish .....	Spiced and smoked meats and fish and most varieties
Fruits .....	All raw fruits except orange juice and ripe banana
Desserts .....	Pastries, nuts, raisins, currants and candies
Beverages .....	Coffee, tea, alcoholic and carbonated beverages
Condiments .....	All condiments except salt

## MENU FOR 6-FEEDING CONVALESCENT PEPTIC ULCER DIET

Breakfast	Dinner	Supper
Applesauce 1 egg, soft cooked White toast Butter or margarine Milk	Chicken, sliced Baked potato String beans purée White bread Butter or margarine Milk	Cream of spinach soup Cottage cheese White-bread toast Butter or margarine Milk
10 A.M.	3 P.M.	9 P.M.
Strained oatmeal with milk Milk	Canned peaches White-bread toast, buttered, 1 slice Milk	Gelatin dessert with whipped cream Milk

made adequate for the patient's nutritional needs if special heed is paid to including liberally all foods rich in required nutrients.

*Bleeding Ulcers*

Physicians are divided somewhat as to how best to treat a bleeding ulcer. Formerly food was withheld for from 24 to 72 hours after bleeding ceased.

hours. If, however, the patient has no gastric distress and is hungry, feeding may be begun at once. This may be a Sippy regimen, or a modification of it;

or it may be one of several diets designed especially for this condition.

Andresen's regimen<sup>5</sup> for bleeding peptic ulcer consists of a mixture of gelatin, glucose, milk and cream, given frequently. Orange juice and water may be substituted for the milk and cream if the patient does not tolerate the latter. As soon as possible the patient is placed on a convalescent peptic ulcer diet.

A very liberal diet for this condition came from Denmark some years ago, where Meulengracht<sup>6</sup> reported excellent results with it. By this treatment the patient is fed from the very onset of the hemorrhage what is termed a "full purée" supplemented by doses of iron and alkalis, although alkalis are not considered necessary or desirable by some

<sup>5</sup> Kantor, J. L., and Kasich, A. M.: *Handbook of Digestive Diseases*, St. Louis, Mosby, 1940

<sup>6</sup> Andresen, A. F. R.: *New York J. Med.* 49: 2511, 1949

<sup>7</sup> Meulengracht, E.: *Lancet* 229: 1220, 1935.

## PROGRESSIVE PEPTIC ULCER REGIMEN

## In the Acute Stage:

Milk or milk and cream ..... 3 ozs. every hour alternating with alkaline powders on the half hour

## Supplements (added one at a time).

Eggs ..... Soft cooked or poached, once or twice daily  
 Cereal ..... Cream of Wheat, rice, once or twice daily  
 Custard ..... Substituted for an egg  
 Junket ..... In addition to one of the milk and cream feedings

## Later Additions:

Milk toast ..... Made of white-bread toast and warm milk or milk and cream. May be substituted for cereal.  
 Cream soup ..... Made of bland, low-residue vegetables such as peas, carrots, spinach and asparagus  
 Cheese ..... Cottage or cream cheese. May be substituted for an egg

## Convalescent Ulcer Diet:

Milk ..... Milk, cream, buttermilk  
 Cheese ..... Cottage, cream; other mild, soft cheeses. Cheddar cheese may be added later  
 Fats ..... Butter or margarine  
 Eggs ..... Soft cooked, poached, scrambled in double boiler  
 Meats, fish, fowl ..... Scraped beef patty, minced, creamed or boiled chicken, poached fish  
 Soups ..... Cream soups only, using the vegetables listed below  
 Vegetables ..... Puréed spinach, corn, peas, beets, carrots, squash, string beans, tomato (strained infant foods may be used); mashed or baked potatoes (without skin) be substi-

Fruits ..... or baked  
 ..... ned pears,  
 ..... peaches and peeled apricots, purée of all dried fruits except figs

It is advisable to take citrus fruit juices after eating some of the other foods of the meal, or to dilute them half and half with water.

Breads, cereals, Italian pastes ..... Enriched white bread, toasted or plain; refined cereals, all ready-to-eat cereals except those containing bran; strained oatmeal, plain white crackers, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles

Desserts ..... Ice cream, plain, custard; simple puddings of rice, corn-starch, tapioca or bread without fruit or nuts, gelatin desserts (with fruit as permitted above), sponge and

physician

unfortunate results. However, many adults choose foods as unwisely, living for much of the day on doughnuts and pastries, accompanied by frequent cups of coffee or carbonated beverage, with a proper meal only in the evening. They abuse their stomachs not only with

or their volatile oils. Common gas-forming foods are cabbage and its relatives—Brussels sprouts, broccoli and cauliflower, dried peas and beans, onions, turnips, green peppers, cucumbers, radishes and melons. If any of these foods are known to be troublesome, they should be omitted from the diet. True food allergies are discussed in Chapter 26.

### *Dietary Treatment*

some meats such as veal and pork, the frying of food at too low a temperature so that fat penetrates the food, or at too high a temperature so that irritating by-products are formed—all these may cause digestive discomfort.

Overeating, especially of very fatty or very sweet foods, may cause indigestion. Fat in excess inhibits the secretion of gastric juice and delays digestion unduly. Fried foods, heavy salad dressings, rich pastries, cheeses, nuts and certain fatty fishes are frequent offenders. Concentrated sweets may also irritate the alimentary tract. Candy eaten between meals or on an empty stomach, cake with heavy icing and puddings rich with sweets and fat are conducive to indigestion.

Rapid eating, particularly when under pressure, resulting in improper chewing and "bolting" of food cannot help but cause gastric discomfort if continued over a period of time.

Fatigue and emotional strain are known to inhibit the flow of gastric juice. Rest before meals, and light, simple meals will do much to bring digestion back to normal.

Certain foods have been labeled as difficult to digest, although the reason is not always clear. Such foods as lobster, crab, sardines, peanuts and other nuts, raw apples, garlic and pickles are in this group. The gas-forming vegetables and fruits may cause discomfort, either because of coarse cellulose

the convalescent ulcer diet but embodies some of the same principles (see p 302). Milk and cream, eggs, tender meats, fish and chicken, mild, soft cheeses, refined breads and cereals, and fruits and vegetables of low fiber content are permitted. Fried foods, concentrated sweets, rich desserts, pickles, vinegar, spices and condiments should be avoided. Acid fruits and fruit juices may cause distress. Alcoholic beverages are contraindicated.

It is important that the cause of the patient's indigestion be eliminated, whether this is due to poor food habits, fatigue or other factors described in the previous pages. Meals should be regular. The diet may be divided into 3 or 4 meals, each chosen to meet the patient's needs.

patient's needs.

The table on page 302 summarizes the important points in the dietary treatment of many gastric disorders as well as of indigestion.

### *Acute and Chronic Gastritis*

**Acute Gastritis.** There is some difference of opinion as to whether acute gastritis is a functional or an organic disease. Gastritis is essentially an inflammation of the gastric mucosa. Acute gastritis may follow the ingestion of



physicians. The purée diet may be given as follows:

8 A.M.—Tea, white bread and butter

9 A.M.—Oatmeal with milk, white bread and butter

1 P.M.—Dinner (see below)

3 P.M.—Cocoa

6 P.M.—White bread and butter, sliced meats, cheese and tea

The dinner may include such foods as soup, creamed and puréed, minced and broiled meats, including liver, and poultry, broiled, baked or creamed fish; plain-cooked eggs, mashed potatoes, puréed vegetables and fruits; custard, plain ice cream and puddings—rice, cornstarch, tapioca and gelatin. White bread, crackers, butter and milk beverages are also included.

**Prognosis.** Whatever method of treatment is used, the patient must understand that ulcers heal slowly, that they often recur, and that he should be very cautious about discontinuing the prescribed diet. It may be necessary to continue the diet, with some modifications, for months and sometimes years.

### *Surgical Treatment*

Peptic ulcer tends to be recurrent, precipitated possibly by nonadherence to the dietary prescription or by a renewal of emotional tension, or both. If the ulcer proves to be resistant to medical treatment, or if it recurs fairly frequently, surgery is usually resorted to.

For the diet regimen following surgery for peptic ulcer and for the dietary treatment of the "dumping syndrome" see Chapter 32.

## OTHER DISORDERS OF THE UPPER GASTRO-INTESTINAL TRACT

### **Cardiospasm**

Cardiospasm occurs at the junction of the esophagus into the stomach, where the sphincter muscle separates the two organs. Slesinger *et al.*<sup>7</sup> have

<sup>7</sup> Slesinger, M. H., *et al.* *Gastroenterology* 25:333, 1953

shown that this is a disorder of the nervous control of the opening and the closing of the sphincter muscle. Food does not pass from the esophagus into the stomach, and vomiting and loss of weight are a common symptom. Dilatation and inflammation of the lower end of the esophagus may also result.

The patient may be treated by a series of dilations of the stricture if the cardiospasm is severe. The diet should be bland and nonstimulating (see p. 302) so as not to irritate the esophagus, and may have to be high in calories and protein if much weight has been lost. Frequent small feedings may be better tolerated than 3 large meals.

### **Indigestion**

under the sternum. Others have eructation of gastric juice or complain of frequent belching and a sense of fullness. On gastric analysis such patients may be found to have increased gastric secretion, or they may have decreased secretion, but no indication of organic gastric disease. Physicians differ as to the importance to be attached to an increase or a decrease of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice when not accompanied by other findings. Some believe that this condition is not incompatible with good health, while others feel that it may be the precursor of more serious disease. Since functional disorders may be the forerunners of organic changes, the cause of indigestion should be found and remedied.

Some of the causes of disturbed digestion are: improper selection of food, improper food preparation, overeating, rapid eating and "bolting" of food, fatigue, emotional strain; idiosyncrasies to certain foods.

The best-known example of improper selection of food is the child who eats a quantity of green apples, with the usual

unfortunate results. However, many adults choose foods as unwisely, living for much of the day on doughnuts and pastries, accompanied by frequent cups of coffee or carbonated beverage, with a proper meal only in the evening. They abuse their stomachs not only with stimulating but unsatisfying food, in no way do they meet the nutritional needs of the body, a fact which in itself may lead to poor health and in turn to poor gastric function.

Food improperly prepared may be a cause of gastric discomfort. Undercooking, especially of starchy foods and of some meats such as veal and pork, the

of gastric juice and delays digestion unduly. Fried foods, heavy salad dressings, rich pastries, cheeses, nuts and certain fatty fishes are frequent offenders. Concentrated sweets may also irritate the alimentary tract. Candy eaten between meals or on an empty stomach, cake with heavy icing and puddings rich with sweets and fat are conducive to indigestion.

Rapid eating, particularly when under pressure, resulting in improper chewing and "bolting" of food cannot help but cause gastric discomfort if continued over a period of time.

Fatigue and emotional strain are known to inhibit the flow of gastric juice. Rest before meals, and light, simple meals will do much to bring digestion back to normal.

Certain foods have been labeled as difficult to digest, although the reason is not always clear. Such foods as lobster, crab, sardines, peanuts and other nuts, raw apples, garlic and pickles are in this group. The gas-forming vegetables and fruits may cause discomfort, either because of coarse cellulose

or their volatile oils. Common gas-forming foods are cabbage and its relatives—Brussels sprouts, broccoli and cauliflower, dried peas and beans; onions, turnips, green peppers, cucumbers, radishes and melons. If any of these foods are known to be troublesome, they should be omitted from the diet. True food allergies are discussed in Chapter 26.

### *Dietary Treatment*

the convalescent ulcer diet but embodies some of the same principles (see p. 302). Milk and cream, eggs, tender meats, fish and chicken, mild, soft cheeses, refined breads and cereals, and fruits and vegetables of low fiber content are permitted. Fried foods, concentrated sweets, rich desserts, pickles, vinegar, spices and condiments should be avoided. Acid fruits and fruit juices may cause distress. Alcoholic beverages are contraindicated.

It is important that the cause of the patient's indigestion be eliminated, whether this is due to poor food habits, fatigue or other factors described in the previous pages. Meals should be regular. The diet may be divided into 3 or 6

patient's needs.

The table on page 302 summarizes the important points in the dietary treatment of many gastric disorders as well as of indigestion.

### *Acute and Chronic Gastritis*

**Acute Gastritis.** There is some difference of opinion as to whether acute gastritis is a functional or an organic disease. Gastritis is essentially an inflammation of the gastric mucosa. Acute gastritis may follow the ingestion of

### BLAND DIET

### Principles:

1. Low or soft residue and connective tissue
2. Little or no condiments, except salt in small amounts
3. Low in acid content
4. Foods simply prepared

**Foods Allowed:**

Milk . . . . .Milk, cream, buttermilk, yoghurt

boiled, broiled or roast chicken; fresh tongue, liver,  
sweetbreads, baked, boiled or broiled fish

**Soups** . . . . . With milk or cream-sauce foundation

Vegetables . . . . . Potatoes, peas, squash, asparagus tips, carrots, tender string beans, beets, spinach. (In severe cases these vegetables are puréed.)

**Fruits** . . . . . Orange juice, ripe bananas, avocados, baked apple (without skin), applesauce, canned peaches, pears, apricots, *white cherries, stewed prunes*

Bread, cereals, Italian  
pastes . . . . . White bread and rolls, crackers, all refined cereals, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles

or corn-  
s cake,  
(if tol-

### **Foods To Be Avoided:**

**Fats . . . . . Fried or fatty foods**

Desserts, sweets . . . . . Pastries, preserves, candies

Beverages ..... Alcoholic beverages, carbonated drinks unless prescribed by the doctor

Condiments . . . . . Pepper, other spices, vinegar, ketchup, horseradish, relishes, gravies

#### TYPICAL MENU FOR BLAND DIET

<i>Breakfast</i>	<i>Dinner</i>	<i>Supper</i>
Banana, ripe	Roast lamb	Cream of potato soup
Fanna with milk	Mashed potatoes	Scrambled eggs
1 egg, poached	Peas	Fresh spinach
White-bread toast	White bread	White bread
Butter or margarine	Butter or margarine	Butter or margarine
Coffee or substitute	Canned pears	Applesauce with sugar
Cream	Tea or milk	cookies
	Cream	Milk
	Small glass tomato juice	Small glass orange juice

toxic substances, such as alkalis, strong acids, alcohol and certain drugs.

THE TREATMENT should include elimination of the offending substance as soon as possible. This is accomplished by induced vomiting or by lavage, and is followed by fasting for an appropriate interval. During this time, fluids usually

cause is improper eating or drinking, he must be convinced that recovery depends upon the avoidance of the specific factor causing the irritation. The food must be easily digested and be simply and appetizingly prepared. A bland or a convalescent ulcer diet (see p. 302, also pp 298-299) will meet the needs of these patients and must be continued until the gastric mucosa is restored to its normal condition

### Hiatus Hernia

The term *hiatus* or *diaphragmatic hernia* refers to herniation of the upper part of the stomach into the thoracic cavity. Since this occurs in the area of the diaphragm through which the esophagus normally passes into the stomach, there may be constriction of the stomach at this point. The resulting discomfort may express itself as substernal pain, heartburn and poor appetite. Sometimes an ulcer will be found at the area of constriction.

The best treatment at present is thought to be conservative and medical, using antacids, pneumoperitoneum and either a bland or a convalescent ulcer diet (see p. 302, also pp. 298-299). Should the patient be overweight, reduction of weight is important, so that no superfluous tissue presses against the diaphragm. No constricting abdominal garments should be worn. In severe cases or in those which do not respond to medical therapy, surgery may be advised.

### Cancer of the Stomach

Delayed Diagnosis. Because the

effect a cure. For this reason, any continued abdominal discomfort should be investigated, even though seemingly in-

\*Texter, E. C., Jr., et al.: J.A.M.A. 160: 830, 1958.

\*Evans, A., and Maisel, B.: Am. J. Nursing 57:1290, 1957.

such as homogenized milk, or butter-milk, or a strained gruel, and repeating in half an hour if no ill effects result from the first feeding. Both the amount and the interval should be increased until from 6 to 8 ozs. are given at 2-hour intervals. Solid foods should be added to the diet slowly, crisp dry toast or crackers being the first addition to the liquid food. Toasted cereal flakes, well-cooked cereals, such as rice or Cream of Wheat, and a soft-cooked egg may be given on the third and the fourth days of feeding. A light diet (see Chap. 18) should be used when the patient's con-

only a few days.

**Chronic Gastritis.** Chronic gastritis may accompany organic disease lesions such as ulcer and cancer, or it may be a disease entity of its own. Although no specific lesion may be present, the gastric mucosa is engorged and friable, and the patient complains of continued gastric discomfort.

Causative factors may be those discussed under indigestion, such as con-

covering the cause and treating the patient accordingly. If the contributing

consequential. This is another reason why a periodic physical examination is of importance.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** Lack of appetite over a considerable period of time with loss of weight and strength are symptoms suggestive of carcinoma. Vomiting may occur and sometimes newly acquired constipation is a symptom. The absence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents is suggestive, although in the earlier stages it may be increased. Occult blood is frequently present in the stools. The most important method in diagnosing cancer is by roentgenogram. The early discovery of this condition, when surgical intervention is more likely to be successful, is of utmost importance.

**Dietary Adaptations.** When an operation has been performed, the diet should follow that outlined in the chapter on preoperative and postoperative diets (see Chap. 32).

Often in inoperable carcinoma of the stomach, patients feel that if only they could eat they would get well, therefore,

most by serving a regular house diet as long as possible and letting him choose from his tray what appeals to him.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Trace the pathway of digestion. Where do the processes of digestion chiefly take place? Why is a so-called "nutrient enema" of little value?
2. What does the doctor look for when doing a gastric analysis? Why must the patient be in a fasting state? Define hyperchlorhydria; hypochlorhydria; achlorhydria.
3. What are some of the possible causes of gastric and duodenal ulcer?

4. Of what does the patient with peptic ulcer usually complain?

5. Explain the principles underlying the dietary treatment of peptic ulcer.

6. Why is an alkaline medication given to patients with ulcers?

7. Why are milk and cream effective foods to counteract the hyperchlorhydria in peptic ulcer? Why cannot meat be given in the early stages? What foods must be omitted on a peptic ulcer diet?

8. A patient has been diagnosed as having a peptic ulcer and has been

9. A patient on a convalescent ulcer diet works from 8.00 A.M. to 5:30 P.M. and must buy his lunch. What suggestions can you make to enable him to follow his diet while at work? How can you be sure that the diet will be nutritionally adequate?

10. Using Chapter 11 as a guide, write a convalescent ulcer diet for a Jewish patient who carries his lunch to work, for a Puerto Rican elevator operator who works from 4 P.M. to midnight.

11. What are the foods allowed on the Meulengracht diet? On the Andresen regimen? What are the principles underlying the use of food in bleeding gastric ulcer?

12. Write a menu for a day for a secretary with cardiospasm; for a housewife with "chronic indigestion." Use the foods allowed on the Bland Diet.

13. What are some of the common causes of indigestion?

14. Name some of the causes of gastritis. Plan a menu for a day for a patient with acute gastritis. Is it adequate for normal nutritional needs?

15. Make out a menu for a day for an underweight patient with a hiatus hernia who has been placed on a bland diet.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Diarrhea*  
*Regional Ileitis*  
*Colitis*  
*Sprue*  
*Constipation*  
*Cancer of the Bowel, Colostomy*  
*Diverticulosis and Diverticulitis*  
*Hemorrhoids*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-FOUR

# Diseases of the Intestines

### DIARRHEA

quantity and the water content of the feces are increased, and frequently there is undigested food in the stools. The stools are semifluid and increased in number.

**Causes of Diarrhea.** Diarrhea may occur as an acute though short-lived manifestation, lasting 1 to 3 days, followed by complete recovery, or it may be the symptom of more serious disease. In the former case it may be due to food poisoning by the staphylococcus organism, to dietary indiscretion or to some cause of unknown origin. When diarrhea lasts more than a few days, or recurs after seeming recovery, the cause should be investigated thoroughly. Infections of the intestinal tract such as typhoid fever, bacillary or amebic dysentery or trichinosis may be the underlying cause of the diarrhea, there may be organic disease such as colitis or sprue, or it may be one of the

symptoms of the deficiency disease pellagra.

### Diet in Diarrhea

In an acute attack of diarrhea, food and fluids by mouth should be withheld for the first 24 hours. Tea, toast and broth are usually well tolerated at the end of this time, and the patient is soon ready for a soft and then a regular diet (See Chap. 18.)

In diarrhea of longer duration, such as is found in dysenteries, the diet should be low in residue and may have to be high in calories if there has been weight loss. Whole-grain bread and cereals and raw vegetables and fruits, except bananas and fruit juices, are omitted. Calories can be added most easily by high caloric beverages (see Chap. 50 for recipes). For the remainder of the dietary regimen see the chart on page 306.

### REGIONAL ILEITIS

Regional ileitis, as its name implies, is a disease of the ileum, although the jejunum may be involved as well. For this reason it is sometimes called re-

consequential This is another reason why a periodic physical examination is of importance

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** Lack of appetite over a considerable period of time with loss of weight and strength

tom The absence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents is suggestive, although in the earlier stages it may be increased Occult blood is frequently present in the stools. The most important method in diagnosing cancer is by roentgenogram. The early discovery of this condition, when surgical intervention is more likely to be successful, is of utmost importance.

**Dietary Adaptations.** When an operation has been performed, the diet should follow that outlined in the chapter on preoperative and postoperative diets (see Chap. 32).

Often in inoperable carcinoma of the stomach, patients feel that if only they could eat they would get well; therefore, the diet is difficult to prescribe. A bland or a convalescent ulcer diet is indicated, or even a liquid diet, particularly if there is obstruction or bleeding. However, the patient's morale may be benefited most by serving a regular house diet as long as possible and letting him choose from his tray what appeals to him

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Trace the pathway of digestion. Where do the processes of digestion chiefly take place? Why is a so-called "nutrient enema" of little value?

2. What does the doctor look for when doing a gastric analysis? Why must the patient be in a fasting state? Define hyperchlorhydria, hypochlorhydria, achlorhydria.

3. What are some of the possible causes of gastric and duodenal ulcer?

4. Of what does the patient with peptic ulcer usually complain?

5. Explain the principles underlying the dietary treatment of peptic ulcer.

6 Why is an alkaline medication given to patients with ulcers?

7. Why are milk and cream effective foods to counteract the hyperchlorhydria in peptic ulcer? Why cannot meat be given in the early stages? What foods must be omitted on a peptic ulcer diet?

8 A patient has been diagnosed as having a peptic ulcer and has been

tions can you make to enable him to follow his diet while at work? How can you be sure that the diet will be nutritionally adequate?

10. Using Chapter 11 as a guide, write a convalescent ulcer diet for a Jewish patient who carries his lunch to work, for a Puerto Rican elevator operator who works from 4 P.M. to midnight

11. What are the foods allowed on the Bland Diet? On the Andreen

12. Write a menu for a day for a secretary with cardiospasm, for a housewife with "chronic indigestion." Use the foods allowed on the Bland Diet.

13. What are some of the common causes of indigestion?

14. Name some of the causes of gastritis Plan a menu for a day for a patient with acute gastritis. Is it adequate for normal nutritional needs?

15. Make out a menu for a day for an underweight patient with a hiatus hernia who has been placed on a bland diet.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

thickening of the intestinal wall and narrowing of the lumen of the bowel. Anemia may be present due to blood loss. The most common symptoms are persistent diarrhea and pain.

### Dietary Treatment

Because of the persistent diarrhea there may be marked malnutrition. If the disease is extensive, there will be poor absorption of food, further accentuating the poor nutrition. The diet should be low in residue and high in calories and protein as under the diet for colitis (see pages following). Seasonings and cold fluids are not well tolerated and should be omitted. Vitamin supplements may have to be given as additions to the diet. If medical treatment fails to restore the patient to health, surgery may be indicated.<sup>1</sup>

### COLITIS

Colitis is an inflammatory disease of the colon. It is characterized by friability and hyperemia of the mucosa, leading to many small areas of bleeding ulceration. This may involve only a part of the rectum or the colon, but in advanced stages of the disease it usually involves the entire area of the large bowel. The stools, which may be as frequent as 15 to 20 a day, are semiliquid and contain blood and mucus. The patient suffers from the discomfort of the frequent stools, which may be accompanied by cramps, but usually also he is malnourished and often to an extreme degree. Anemia may be present due to blood loss, and the patient may be underweight. The disease is usually treated conservatively by medical means, but in advanced cases surgery may be resorted to and a colostomy performed. See page 313 for the diet in the latter case.

The etiology of colitis is unknown. No organism has been isolated as a

cause of the disease. There are indications that colitis may occur on an emotional basis, since these patients are often very painstaking and meticulous and seem to have more than an ordinary dependence on others.<sup>2</sup>

### Dietary Treatment

There are two schools of thought in regard to the dietary treatment of colitis. The frequency of the stools and the degree of bleeding and ulceration of the colon would seem to demand the use of a diet low in residue and as high in calories and protein as can be tolerated by the patient.

**High Protein.** The diet should be high in protein to rebuild lost tissue. Tender meats, with little connective tissue, fish and chicken should be included twice a day. Eggs usually are well tolerated, and two or three cooked in desserts or as egg-nogs may be given each day. Milk and cheese may or may not be tolerated. If ordinary fluid milk causes discomfort, boiled or evaporated milk sometimes can be substituted with good effect. High protein beverages should be given if the patient does not eat enough protein in his regular meals (see Chap. 50 for recipes). An inexpensive source of additional protein in the diet is dry skim milk powder, which may be added to fluid milk beverages or to other foods such as creamed dishes, mashed potatoes or desserts (see Chap. 49 for recipes).

**High Caloric.** Due to the loss of food substances in the stools and the patient's often capricious appetite, weight loss is a frequent symptom of colitis. Calories may be increased in the diet by more bread and cereals, simple desserts and jellies and also more butter and cream if the patient tolerates them. The high protein beverages mentioned in the previous paragraph may be made high caloric by the addition of lactose and chocolate or other fountain syrup.

<sup>2</sup> Grace, W. J., and Wolff, H. G.: JAMA 146:981, 1951.

<sup>1</sup> Almy, T. P., in Cecil, R. L., and Loeb, R. F. Textbook of Medicine, ed. 9, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1955.



## DIETS VARYING IN RESIDUE

FOODS	SOFT DIET	MODERATELY LOW RESIDUE DIET	VERY LOW RESIDUE DIET
Milk	Milk, buttermilk, cream	Same	Same. Boiled or evaporated milk may be tolerated better than pasteurized milk.
Cheese	Cottage, cream, Cheddar	Same	Cottage, cream only, if tolerated
Fat	Butter, margarine	Same	Same
Eggs	Cooked, poached, scrambled in double boiler	Same	Same
Meat, fish fowl	Tender chicken, fish, sweetbreads; ground beef and lamb	Same	Scraped beef, minced chicken and fish
Soups and broths	Broth, strained cream soups	Same	Broth only
Vegetables	Cooked vegetables, asparagus, peas, string beans, spinach, carrots, beets, squash; potatoes, boiled, mashed, creamed, scalloped, baked	Vegetable juice; vegetable purée, cooked asparagus tips, carrots; potatoes as for soft diet	Unseasoned vegetable juices in limited amounts
Fruits	Fruit juices, cooked and canned fruits (without skins, seeds or fiber), bananas	Fruit juice, fruit purée, ripe bananas, cooked, peeled apples, apricots, peaches, pears, plums	Fruit juices, preferably citrus, in limited amounts
Bread, cereals, Italian pastes	Whole-grain or enriched bread and cereals, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, crackers	Refined, enriched bread and cereals only, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, white crackers	As in moderately low residue
Desserts	Ices, ice cream, junket, cereal puddings, custard, gelatin, plain cake and cookies, all without fruit and nuts	Same	Same
Beverages	Tea, coffee, cocoa, milk and milk beverages, carbonated beverages	Same	Tea, Postum, coffee as permitted, milk and milk beverages if tolerated
Condiments	Salt, moderate amounts of pepper, other mild spices, sugar	Salt and sugar only	Salt in small amounts, sugar

gional enteritis. The condition is characterized by hyperplasia (enlargement due to cell increase) of the lymphatics, which eventually interferes with the

blood supply of the mucosa of that section of the intestinal tract which is affected. This in turn gives rise to edema and ulceration, scarring of the mucosa,

## GLUTEN-FREE DIET

## Characteristics:

1. All forms of wheat, rye, oatmeal, buckwheat and barley are omitted, except gluten-free wheat starch
2. All other foods are permitted freely, including fats and starches
3. The diet should be high in protein and calories, and probably in minerals and vitamins if malnutrition is present. After that, the diet should be sufficient to maintain normal growth and development in children, and normal weight in adults

## Foods Allowed:

Milk	2 glasses or more. Flavored if desired. More for children
Cheese as desired	Cottage and pot cheese only for very young children
Fats	Butter and other fats as desired (Note restrictions under "Foods To Be Avoided")
Eggs	1 to 2 a day
Meat, fish, fowl	1 or 2 servings daily (not breaded, creamed or served with thickened gravy, no bread dressings) Otherwise prepared as desired
Soups	All clear and vegetable soups, cream soups thickened with cream, cornstarch or potato flour only
Vegetables	As desired, except creamed. Include 2 servings of green or yellow vegetables and at least 1 raw vegetable daily (The last may be omitted for very young children) Rice may be substituted occasionally for potato
Fruits	As desired, 2 or 3 servings daily. Include citrus fruit once a day.
Bread and cereals	Bread made from rice, corn or soybean flour and gluten-free wheat starch only Cornflakes, corn meal, hominy, rice, Rice Krispies, Puffed Rice, precooked rice cereals
Desserts	Any of the following jello, fruit jello, ice or sherbet, homemade ice cream, custard, junket, rice pudding, cornstarch pudding (homemade) or blanc mange if thickened with cornstarch
Beverages	Milk, fruit juices, ginger ale, cocoa. (Read label to see that no wheat flour has been added to cocoa or cocoa syrup) Coffee (made from ground coffee), tea, carbonated beverages
Condiments and sweets	Salt, sugar, white or brown, molasses; jellies and jams, honey, corn syrup

## Foods To Be Avoided:

Fats	
Meat,	

stuffings

All gravies or cream sauces thickened with wheat flour  
(Continued on next page)

ing mucosa of the colon. Only refined breads and cereals, preferably enriched, should be served. Raw vegetables and fruits, with the exception of well-ripened bananas, should be omitted. In severe

bage family, turnips, onions and green peas and beans should always be avoided. See page 306 for a variety of diets restricted in residue.

**Self-Selected Diet.** If the disease is treated on the basis of an emotional disorder, the diet may be of importance only as it helps the patient to achieve some degree of independence. Under this regimen the patient is allowed to choose his own diet and is encouraged to try whatever food appeals to him, even those which would seem to be contraindicated, such as foods high in residue. The nurse and the dietitian must be supportive as well as permissive, giving the patient confidence and encouraging him to make his own decisions. As the patient's feeling of security increases, he will eat larger and more nutritious meals, with the subsequent healing of the colon and a gain in weight and strength.

**Nursing Problem.** Whichever regimen is adopted, recovery is often slow and there are likely to be setbacks. Patients with colitis are fussy about their food and often extremely hard to please. They have the irritability of the badly nourished patient and need much under-

Fortunately, patients often recover spontaneously, at least for a time, and can return to a more or less normal diet.

## SPRUE

Sprue, known also as idiopathic

sprue found in the temperate zone, known as nontropical sprue, is quite different from that of so-called tropical sprue. The latter responds dramatically to therapy with folic acid or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and an adequate diet, quickly restoring the patient to normal health and vigor. Here we shall be concerned only with nontropical sprue. Until recently it has

The sprue syndrome is characterized by diarrhea, with the passing of at least 2 or 3 stools a day. These are described as bulky, foamy, light colored and foul smelling. They contain a high percentage of fatty acids and calcium soaps, resulting from incomplete absorption in the intestinal tract. The term *steatorrhea* (fatty diarrhea) is applied to this finding, and the disease is sometimes called the "malabsorption syndrome." It occurs not only in sprue but also in similar diseases such as celiac disease (see Chap. 33). The tongue and the mouth may be so sore that eating is difficult, indicating a deficiency of the B vitamins. Anemia is a common symptom, and in the latter stages osteomalacia (loss of calcium from the bones due to lack of calcium absorption from the intestinal tract) may occur.

## Etiology

Until very recently the etiology of sprue and celiac disease was unknown. As has been indicated, it is a disorder which interferes with the absorption of fatty acids, the end-products of fat digestion, so that large amounts appear in the stool. Starches may also appear

diet. The term *gluten-free* diet, therefore, is a misnomer, and *wheat-, rye- and oat-free* is more accurate terminology.

The exclusion of all cereal grains except corn and rice from the diet may seem to be an easier matter than it actually is. Wheat-flour and wheat-bread products are used in such a variety of ways in food preparation that their elimination poses many problems. Not only must all wheat bread and rolls be omitted, both white and whole wheat, but all breaded products, bread stuffing, gravies and cream sauces thickened with wheat flour, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, biscuits, crackers, cakes and cookies made from wheat flour must be eliminated from the diet. Rye grain, with the exception of rye breads, pretzels and Ry-Krisp, is less commonly used and, therefore, is omitted more easily. Oatmeal is excluded, as it caused a recurrence of symptoms when reintroduced into the diet. Barley and buckwheat are also excluded, as their effect in the intestinal tract in this disease is not known. For adults, beer and ale must be omitted, since they may contain cereal grain residues.\*

In place of the cereals which must be excluded, bread, biscuits and cookies made from rice, corn and soy flour and wheat starch are allowed (see Chap 50, *Therapeutic Recipes*). Cornflakes, corn meal, hominy, rice, Rice Krispies, Puffed Rice and precooked rice cereals may be used. Cornstarch and potato flour can be used to thicken gravies and cream sauces. Because wheat flour is in such common usage, it is well to read the labels on all commercial foods before using them on this diet to be sure that no wheat flour has been used in their preparation. Postum, malted milk and Ovaltine are examples of commercial products made from or containing cereal grains (See *Foods Allowed and To Be Omitted* on pp 309 and 310.)

\*Slesenger, M. H., Rynbergen, H. J., et al: *J Am Dietet A* 33 1137, 1957.

Although striking improvement has been seen in most patients with non-tropical sprue on a wheat-, rye- and oat-free diet, not every case has responded in this manner. The use of cortisone with or without the diet has been of benefit to such patients.<sup>10</sup>

## CONSTIPATION

A common disturbance of the digestive tract is constipation. However, there is considerable confusion as to what is meant by this term. Although a daily bowel movement has been stressed as desirable by health experts, there are many people for whom an evacuation every other day or even every third day is normal. Moreover, evacuation may occur regularly until a temporary strain occurs, in which case there may either be an increased number of bowel movements, almost a diarrhea, or retention of the feces for a day or two, resembling constipation. The matter usually straightens itself out when the strain is relieved. However, if the person becomes anxious when no daily bowel movement occurs and begins to resort to cathartics or enemas, a vicious pattern is set up, and it may be difficult to effect a return to normal habits.

When there is no regularity of any kind in evacuation, it is well to inquire into the patient's dietary and living habits. Insufficient rest, hurried, irregular meals, a food intake which does not meet the nutritional needs of the body, and too sedentary a life all may contribute to poor bowel function. The problem here is to help the patient to accept a more regular mode of living, including a diet that meets all his nutritive requirements and a reasonable amount of exercise.

In some cases of constipation, actual changes in the bowels have occurred. One such type of constipation, called atonic, has, as its name implies, decreased tone of the musculature of the

<sup>10</sup> Adlersberg, D. *New York J. Med* 55: 3575, 1955

Soups . . . . .	All canned soups except clear broth. All cream soups unless thickened with cream, cornstarch or potato flour
Vegetables . . . . .	Any prepared with cream sauce or breaded
Bread, cereals, Italian pastes . . . . .	All bread, rolls, crackers, cake and cookies made from wheat or rye; Ry-Krisp; muffins, biscuits, waffles, pancake flour and other prepared mixes; rusks, Zwieback, pretzels, any product containing oatmeal, barley or buckwheat Breaded foods, bread crumbs All wheat and rye cereals, wheat germ, barley, oatmeal, buckwheat, kasha Macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, dumplings
Desserts . . . . .	Cakes, cookies, pastry; commercial ice cream and ice-cream cones; prepared mixes, puddings All homemade

ale  
(Read

labels )

**WARNING** Read labels on all packaged and prepared foods.

in increased quantities in the stool, although simple sugars such as glucose and those found in fruits and fruit juices are well tolerated. The diet, therefore, has been high in protein and low in starch and fat.

There are some indications to suggest that nontropical sprue may be a very severe form of sensitivity to one of the protein fractions of some of the cereal grains. In 1951, van de Kamer and his co-workers<sup>4</sup> discovered that the excretion of fatty acids in celiac disease, a disease similar to sprue, was decreased markedly when wheat, rye and oats were omitted from the diet. Both they and other investigators<sup>5</sup> have since shown that all foods are well tolerated, including fats and starch, so long as all cereal grains, except rice and corn, both very low in this protein fraction, are excluded from the diet. Wheat starch, free of wheat protein, and soya flour, obtained from soya beans, also are well tolerated.

Since the reports of these investigators, the wheat-, rye- and oat-free diet, effective in celiac disease, has been tried on patients with nontropical sprue with equally good results.<sup>6,7</sup>

#### "Gluten-Free" Diet

their patients' inability to absorb fat and, therefore, called their diet "gluten free." They have since shown<sup>8</sup> that it is a protein with a specific configuration found in all cereal grains and many other protein foods which causes the symptoms. Only wheat, rye and oats (and possibly barley which so far has not been tested on patients) carry a large enough content of this protein to make it necessary to exclude them from the

<sup>4</sup> Ruffin, J. M., et al. *New England J Med* 250:281, 1954.

<sup>7</sup> Schwartz, M. K., Slesinger, M. H., et al. *Gastroenterology* 32:232, 1957.

<sup>8</sup> van de Kamer, J. H., and Weijers, H. A.: *Acta paediat* 44:465, 1955.

<sup>4</sup> van de Kamer, J. H. et al.: *Acta Paediat* 42:223, 1953.

<sup>5</sup> Sheldon, W., and Lawson, D.: *Lancet* 2:902, 1952.

be all that is necessary to prevent constipation and straining. Other simple remedies are lemon juice in hot water or a cup of hot coffee before breakfast. Whatever procedure has helped a patient in the past should be permitted him in the hospital so long as it is not contraindicated. Only if these methods fail should cathartics be prescribed.

### CANCER OF THE BOWEL AND COLOSTOMY

In all cases of constipation, or of constipation alternating with diarrhea, particularly if these symptoms are of short duration and in the face of otherwise normal living habits, there is the possibility of neoplastic growth of some section of the colon or of the rectum. If this diagnosis is established by the use of proctoscopic and x-ray examinations, the patient is subjected to surgery. If the cancer is in the upper part of the colon, the bowel may be resected and the ends brought together and sutured. If the cancer is in the sigmoid section of the colon or in the rectum, a colostomy is usually performed. The cancerous segment of the bowel is closed off and resected. The proximal part of the colon is brought out upon the abdominal wall. This colostomy bud now becomes the permanent opening through which the bowel will discharge the feces.

#### Dietary Treatment

If an anastomosis of the bowel segments has been done, the post-operative dietary regimen is little different from the usual one, except that it may progress more slowly. Nothing is given by mouth for several days, and then a clear liquid diet may be prescribed, again for several days. This is followed by a full liquid diet. If healing is satisfactory, the patient is given nothing by mouth,

followed by clear fluids, until healing of the colostomy bud is well established. The patient is then advanced to a full liquid diet and, if this is well tolerated, to a moderately low residue diet (see p. 306). Many patients with colostomies are able to return to their regular food habits, provided that these are adequate for their nutritional needs and that they omit foods which caused discomfort before they were ill. Dericks<sup>11</sup> states.

### DIVERTICULOSIS AND DIVERTICULITIS

Diverticula, or small pouches, sometimes appear at weak points along the walls of the intestines. They may occur in the small intestine but are seen much more frequently in the colon. There may be few or many. The condition is known as diverticulosis and may or may not be a source of trouble. However, when one or more of the pouches become infected or irritated, the condition is known as diverticulitis. The infection may be due to an accumulation of feces in the pouches and may result in ulceration and perforation. In the latter case surgery is indicated.

In diverticulitis without perforation, but with pain, tenderness and sometimes fever, the treatment is much the same as for appendicitis, i.e., complete abstinence from food for from 24 to 48

<sup>11</sup> A colostomy has been performed, the patient is given nothing by mouth,

<sup>11</sup> Dericks, V. C., and Robeson, K. A.: *Pub Health Nursing* 41: 16, 1949.

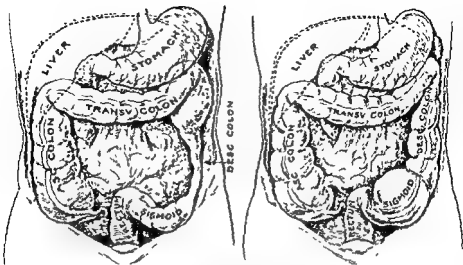


Fig. 75. [Left] Spastic constipation. Showing great constriction in the descending colon. Compare the colon in atonic constipation. [Right] Atonic constipation. Note the abnormal distention in the descending colon owing to its relaxed, atonic condition.

colon, and therefore enlargement of part or all of it. In the spastic type of constipation, there is increased tonicity, with a corresponding narrowing of part of the colon. Bowel movements in the latter case may vary from a diarrhea to constipation.

### Dietary Treatment

In most cases of so-called constipation, a normal diet (see Chap. 10) containing roughage in the form of fresh and cooked fruit and vegetables and including whole-grain bread and cereals will provide sufficient bulk to maintain regular bowel evacuation. Where such regularity needs to be re-established—for instance, following an illness in which the mobility of the patient has been greatly limited—the addition of stewed fruit and stewed fruit juices to the ordinary diet will be found helpful.

In atonic constipation it may be necessary to increase the bulk by the inclusion of a salad both at lunch and at dinner, and by an increased use of fresh fruits. Bran cereal may be of help, but occa-

sionally a bran bolus is formed which actually obstructs the bowel.

Conversely, if the patient has spastic constipation, the diet should contain only soft residue until healing and the release of spasm have taken place (see p. 306). Only refined bread and cereals and cooked fruits and vegetables should be served. This type of patient may benefit particularly from the addition to the diet of stewed fruit and fruit juices.

### Nursing Problems

Patients in the hospital, particularly those confined to bed, may suffer from constipation because of strange surroundings or inactivity. Older patients on bed rest may develop fecal impaction unless they are carefully checked for regularity of evacuation. Patients with heart disease should be prevented from straining at stool. Immobilized patients, either in a cast or for other reasons, may need help in maintaining regular bowel habits. For such patients the generous inclusion of stewed fruit and stewed fruit juices in a well-balanced diet may

## *Functions of the Liver and the Gallbladder*

### *Production and Role of Bile*

### *Metabolism and Storage*

### *Detoxification*

## *Pathologic Conditions*

### *Jaundice*

## *Diseases of the Liver*

### *Infectious Hepatitis*

### *Cirrhosis*

## *Disease of the Gallbladder*

### *Pancreatitis*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-FIVE

# Diseases of the Liver, the Biliary Tract and the Pancreas

## **FUNCTIONS OF THE LIVER AND THE GALLBLADDER**

The liver is not only the largest glandular organ of the body but one of the most important because of the diversity of functions which it performs, yet it is known as the "silent" organ because its owner is seldom aware of its presence or its functioning. It may well be compared with a modern industrial plant, performing within its confines processes of manufacturing, storing, routing and distributing and, finally, conversion of several types of waste products to non-toxic substances.

### **Production and Role of Bile**

One of the functions of the liver is the production of bile, which plays an

important part in the digestion and the absorption of fats. Bile, after its manufacture in the liver, is collected by many small bile ducts and emptied into the hepatic duct, which carries it away from the liver. The hepatic duct leads to the cystic duct and to the gallbladder. In the gallbladder the bile is concentrated by the absorption of water and also stored. When, in the course of digestion, fat arrives in the duodenum, it stimulates the production of a hormone—cholecystokinin—in certain cells of the duodenum. The hormone is carried by the blood stream to the gallbladder and its ducts, causing them to contract. The bile re-enters the cystic duct and is forced down the common duct into the intestine (see Fig. 76). The pancreatic



hours, with only sips of water or cracked ice. Gradually, liquid foods are added, then a low residue diet should be followed until all symptoms have subsided (see p. 306). When diverticulosis has been diagnosed, even though without acute symptoms, the patient should be put on a bland diet such as is found on page 302.

### HEMORRHOIDS

Hemorrhoids are varicose veins around the anal sphincter. They may be internal or external. Some of the causes of the condition are childbearing, constipation and the long-continued use of cathartics and enemas. The symptoms are bleeding, itching and pain. The purpose of the treatment is to restore normal function of the intestinal tract. A bland

ment. Surgery is used in severe cases.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are the differences between a soft, a moderately low and a very low residue diet?

2. Plan a high caloric, low residue diet for a patient suffering from amebic dysentery.

3. Why must the patient with ileitis

have a low residue diet? Can such a diet meet all the patient's nutritional requirements? How may additional calories and proteins be obtained?

4. What problems is the nurse likely to encounter in regard to the food habits of the colitis patient? What should be her attitude toward these?

5. What are the reasons for giving a colitis patient a high protein, high caloric, low residue diet? What is the rationale for allowing him self-selection in diet?

6. Why is the so-called "gluten-free" diet used in sprue? Which cereals must be omitted?

7. Write a menu for a day for a sprue patient living at home, for a secretary with sprue who eats her lunch at a drug-store counter.

8. What additions to the diet will help many patients who have a tendency to constipation?

9. Why may hospitalized patients develop constipation? Which groups especially need to be watched? Name some simple remedies by which the problem may be corrected without using cathartics.

10. Write a menu for a day for a patient who has had a colostomy. He is on a general diet but cannot tolerate gas-forming vegetables.

*See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.*

the waste product urea, while the remainder of the molecule is used as carbohydrate (58%) or fat (42%).

A very important function of the liver is the role it plays in the metabolism and

liver also supplies the antianemic factor which is concerned with the development of the red blood cells in the bone marrow (see Chap. 29)

Most of the vitamin A stored in the body is found in the liver. The conversion of carotene into vitamin A takes place in the liver. Vitamin D is also stored in the liver. The livers of fish are especially rich as storehouses of these vitamins.

It is now known that other vitamins—the B complex, ascorbic acid and, to some degree, vitamin K—are also stored there.

### Detoxification

The liver performs the function of detoxifying harmful substances into non-toxic compounds. Substances toxic to the body may be ingested with food or taken as drugs. Bacterial action in the intestinal tract has been thought to produce irritating or toxic compounds. When these are absorbed from the intestinal tract via the portal circulation, the liver alters them chemically, so that no harm is done.

The liver also is involved in the detoxification of metabolic fragments, such as ammonia. This is an intermediary product of the breakdown of amino acids to form urea. The liver is thought also to change some of the hormones to inactive substances after their work is done.

### **PATHOLOGIC CONDITIONS**

It is not surprising that an organ which performs so many functions as the liver should manifest many and far-reaching symptoms when it is diseased.

Fortunately, the liver, if given proper care and treatment, has remarkable reserve power for regeneration and repair.

### **Jaundice**

Jaundice is a symptom of a number of diseases of the liver and the biliary tract. It may be obstructive, toxic or hemolytic. Jaundice is recognized as a yellow pigmentation of the body tissues due to the presence in the blood of more than the normal amount of bile pigments.

Obstructive jaundice, which is by far the most common, may be due to inflammation in the mucosa of the ducts, to stone formation or to pressure by tumors or adhesions. These obstruct the bile flow at some point, either partially or completely.

Toxic jaundice may be caused by poisons, drugs or a virus, as in infectious hepatitis (see bottom of page).

Hemolytic jaundice, which is much less common, is caused by diseases in which the red blood cells are broken down in the body in large numbers.

**Biliousness.** A so-called bilious attack may or may not be related to a diseased liver. It is caused more frequently by overeating, by the unwise selection of foods or by constipation, although it is known that digestive disturbances are among the more common symptoms of diseases of the liver and the biliary tract.

### **DISEASES OF THE LIVER**

Two of the principal diseases of the liver in which dietary treatment plays an important role are infectious hepatitis and cirrhosis.

#### **Infectious Hepatitis**

**Etiology and Symptoms.** Hepatitis is a general term which may be used to include injury to the liver cells themselves as a result of bacterial or viral infections, toxins and drugs. The most important example of hepatitis is infectious or viral hepatitis, which used to be

duct joins the common duct just before this point.

Bile is composed of bile salts, bile pigments, cholesterol, inorganic salts and water. Approximately 500 to 1,100 cc. is produced daily.

With the aid of peristalsis and segmentation, bile emulsifies the fat in the intestinal tract by breaking up the larger globules into many smaller ones. This creates a greater surface area for the digestive enzymes to act upon.

The bile salts aid in " ferrying " the fatty acids across the intestinal wall during absorption. In diseases in which the amount of bile in the intestinal tract is diminished, we find interference with the absorption of fats and also with some of the fat-soluble vitamins.

The bile pigments are breakdown products of hemoglobin and have no known role. They give the feces the characteristic green-brown color. When bile is absent from the intestinal tract, so-called clay-colored stools result.

The function of the other constituents of bile is not known. They may be waste products.

### Metabolism and Storage

Another important function of the liver is its role in the metabolism of food. The liver stores some of the carbohydrate derived from the diet as glycogen and breaks it down to glucose as necessary in order to maintain the normal blood-sugar level of from 70 to 100 mg. per 100 cc. of blood.

With the aid of choline, derived from the amino acid methionine, some of the fats are converted to lecithin in the liver. This seems to be an essential process in order that fats may be transported to the tissues in the body. When this conversion does not occur because of disease, fat stasis in the liver results and may become a serious condition.

The liver controls the distribution of the amino acids to the tissues, where they are used for growth and tissue repair. It synthesizes some of the amino acids absorbed from the digestive tract into the plasma proteins, albumen, fibrinogen, prothrombin and possibly globulin. Excess amino acids are split into the nitrogenous portion which forms

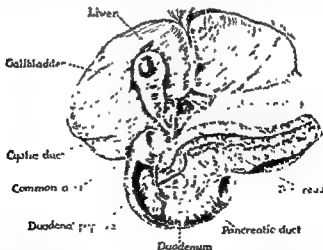


Fig. 76 The hepatic duct from the liver unites with the cystic duct from the gallbladder, forming a common bile duct opening into the small intestine. [Grainger: Physiology and Anatomy, Philadelphia, Lippincott]

## HIGH PROTEIN, HIGH CARBOHYDRATE, MODERATE FAT DIET

**Foods Allowed:**

Milk .....	Milk, buttermilk—at least a quart a day, cream.
Cheese .....	All types unless salt is restricted
Fats .....	Butter or margarine
Eggs .....	Two or more a day—boiled, poached, scrambled in double boiler, eggnog
Meat, fish, fowl .....	Two large servings a day of lean beef, veal, lamb, chicken, liver, nonfatty fish
Soups .....	All varieties
Vegetables .....	Raw or cooked tomatoes, carrots, peas, wax or string beans, spinach and other greens, asparagus, squash, beets, salad greens (Omit raw vegetables if low residue is desired) Boiled, baked or mashed potatoes
Fruits .....	Fresh, canned or stewed, juices. (Omit raw fruits if low residue is desired)
Bread, cereals, Italian pastes .....	Whole-wheat or enriched white bread, rolls, crackers, cereals, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles. (Omit whole-wheat products if low residue is desired)
Desserts .....	Ice cream and sherbet, rice, tapioca, bread and corn-starch puddings, custard, junket, gelatin, plain cakes and cookies
Beverages .....	Milk, tea, coffee, cocoa
Sweets .....	Sugar, honey, jams, jellies in increased amounts
Condiments .....	Salt as allowed

**Foods To Be Avoided.**

Fats .....	All fried foods
Meat, fish, fowl .....	All meats high in fat such as fat pork, goose and duck; fatty fish
Vegetables .....	Gas-forming vegetables such as onions, turnips, cabbage, cucumbers, radishes
Desserts .....	Pastries
Beverages .....	All alcoholic beverages
Condiments .....	Pepper, spices, horseradish, mustard, ketchup

tom that is noticed first by the patient and that leads him to seek medical advice. Another complication of portal hypertension is the formation of varices (varicose veins) in the lower esophagus, since its veins empty into the portal vein. These varices may hemorrhage and complicate the ravages of this disease.

**Dietary Treatment**

**High Protein.** As in the diet for hepatitis, the increased protein in the

diet will help to regenerate liver tissue and prevent fat stasis. It is also given in an attempt to increase the low serum proteins in the blood. Generous amounts of meat, fish and fowl should be included in the diet, as well as plenty of milk, eggs and cheese. It is sometimes difficult for the patient to consume the

called catarrhal jaundice. This disease was one of the chief causes of illness among our armed forces in World Wars I and II. It is also prevalent among civilians to some extent. It may be acquired by direct transmission of the virus or by transfusion of blood from a donor who has had infectious hepatitis. In the latter case the disease is usually called homologous serum jaundice.

Acute infectious hepatitis is characterized by elevation of temperature, headache, abdominal discomfort and loss of appetite. After a short period, lasting from a few days to 2 or 3 weeks, jaundice may appear. Usually from 4 to 8 weeks are required for recovery. If sufficient time for rest and treatment is not provided, a chronic condition such as cirrhosis may be the final outcome.

recover completely, however.

#### *Dietary Treatment*

In the acute stage of infectious hepatitis it may not be possible for the patient to consume much food because of pain and nausea, and intravenous food and fluids have to be substituted. As soon as possible the patient should be placed on a high protein, high caloric diet.

the liver. Barker *et al.*<sup>1</sup> report having successfully given 250 Gm. protein to

high in carbohydrate to provide calories and spare the protein for liver regeneration.

<sup>1</sup> Barker, M. H., Capps, R. B., and Allen, F. W. J. *J. A. M. A.* 128:997, 1943.

**Moderate Fat.** It used to be thought that the diet had to be low in fat in order to prevent deposit in the liver, but so long as enough protein is ingested there seems to be no necessity to limit the fat. Its presence in the diet adds to its palatability and increases the total food intake. For the foods allowed or limited, and for menus for the above regimen, see those listed under cirrhosis.

#### **Cirrhosis**

**Etiology.** Cirrhosis is the final stage of liver injury. It may be due to chronic alcoholism, to diseases of the circulatory system, such as Banti's disease, or to chronic infectious hepatitis discussed in the paragraphs above.

It is thought that in chronic alcoholism, cirrhosis is due to deficiencies in food intake occurring over a long period of time. The individual may get as much as 1,500 to 2,500 calories daily from the alcohol he consumes, since 1 Gm. of alcohol yields 7 calories. There is little desire for other food, and gross inadequacies in all food constituents result. This leads to fat stasis and eventual necrosis (death) of liver tissue and, finally, to replacement of liver cells by scar tissue. If the diet is changed to supply the needed nutrients, regeneration of the less-damaged liver tissue may take place, or at least further degeneration will be prevented.

**Symptoms.** Besides jaundice and marked enlargement of the liver, there may be a low level of serum proteins and nutritional edema due to protein starvation. In advanced cases, portal hypertension (increased blood pressure in the portal system) occurs, because the liver is so filled with scar tissue that circulation is impaired. This, in turn, causes diffusion of fluids and salts from the intestinal capillary bed into the peri-

HIGH PROTEIN, HIGH CARBOHYDRATE, MODERATE FAT DIET  
Solid Diet

MEALS	FOOD	AMOUNT ALLOWED	Gm	PROTEIN Gm	FAT Gm	CARBOHYDRATE Gm.	CALORIES
Breakfast	Fruit, 15%*	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	100	1		15	64
	Cereal, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	130	1		12	59
	Eggs	2	100	13	12	1	162
	Toast	2 slices	46	4	2	24	126
	Butter or margarine	1 tablespoon	14		11		100
	Jam	$1\frac{1}{2}$ tablespoons	30			21	111
	Milk	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	120	4	5	6	81
	Cream, 20%	2 ozs	60	2	12	2	120
	Coffee						
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12			12	48
				25	42	93	844
10 A.M.	Fruit juice with lactose	1 glass	240	2		26	108
		2 tablespoons	16			16	64
				2		42	172
Lunch	Meat, fish or fowl†	Large serving	120	28	16		250
	Vegetable, 3%*	1 serving	100	1		3	16
	Vegetable, 9%	1 serving	100	2		11	44
	Vegetable, 18%	1 serving	100	2		18	80
	Bread	2 slices	46	4	2	24	126
	Butter or margarine	1 tablespoon	14		11		100
	Milk	1 glass	240	9	10	12	166
	Custard	1 serving	100	5	5	11	114
				51	44	77	896
	3 P.M.	Fruit juice with lactose	1 glass	240	2		26
2 tablespoons			16			16	64
				2		42	172
Supper	As for lunch			51	44	77	896
8 P.M.	Milk	1 glass	240	9	10	12	166
				9	10	12	
Total				140	140	343	3,246

\*It will be noted that the fruit and the vegetables in this diet menu are chosen according to the classification based on Carbohydrate Content which appears in Table II, Part Four.

†Calculation based on the composition of round steak, pork (lean) chicken and haddock as found in Table I, Part Four.

To make this diet low in sodium, cook all food

without salt and limit eggs to one a day, meat to 1 2-oz serving (50 Gm.) and milk to 600 cc.

have shown that fat, which formerly was thought to be injurious in liver disease, may be consumed in reasonable amounts, from 100 to 150 Gm or even more, without any deleterious effects. The fat was shown to make the diet more palatable, and in this way the patient was encouraged to eat more food and more calories, which are essential in this disease. It should be pointed out,

however, that the fats included in these experimental diets were mostly those

**High Vitamin.** Because the previous diet has been grossly inadequate in vitamins as in all other nutrients, foods high in vitamins must be included liber-

**HIGH PROTEIN, HIGH CARBOHYDRATE, MODERATE FAT DIET\***  
Semiliquid Form

MEALS	FOOD ITEMS	AMOUNT ALLOWED		PROTEIN	FAT	CARBOHYDRATE	CALORIES
			Gm.	Gm.	Gm.	Gm.	
<i>Breakfast</i>	Orange juice with lactose	1 glass	240	2		26	108
		2 tablespoons	16			16	64
	Farina, cooked	½ c.	130	1		11	59
	Milk	½ c.	120	4	5	6	81
	Cream	2 ozs.	60	2	12	2	120
	Coffee						
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12			12	48
				9	17	74	480
10 A.M.	High protein milk†	1 glass	240	24	7	36	300
<i>Lunch</i>	Cream of celery soup	1 serving	150	4	7	11	120
	Eggs, poached	2	100	13	12	1	162
	Mashed potatoes	1 serving	100	2	11	16	123
	Purée spinach	1 serving	100	3	1	4	28
	Milk	1 glass	240	9	10	12	166
	Purée dried apricots	1 serving	100	2		32	123
				33	36	76	720
3 P.M.	High protein milk†	1 glass	240	24	7	36	300
<i>Supper</i>	Orange juice with lactose	1 glass	240	2		26	108
		2 tablespoons	16			16	64
	Farina, cooked	½ c.	130	1		12	59
	Milk	½ c.	120	4	5	6	81
	Cream, 20%	2 ozs.	60	2	12	2	120
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12			12	48
	Baked custard	1 serving	100	5	5	11	114
				14	22	85	594
8 P.M.	High protein milk†	1 glass	240	24	7	36	300
<b>Total</b>				<b>128</b>	<b>96</b>	<b>343</b>	<b>2,694</b>

\* All calculations based on Table 1, Part Four.

† See Chapter 50 for recipe

To make this diet moderately low in sodium, cook all food without salt and substitute Protinal feedings (Chap 50) or other low sodium, high protein beverage in place of the high protein milk feedings

**High Carbohydrate.** It was found experimentally in animals, and has since been shown clinically in man, that a high carbohydrate diet is well tolerated in liver disease and seems to aid in recovery. This is probably due to its protein-sparing action. A diet containing from 300 to 350 Gm. of carbohydrate is recommended. This should include breads and cereals, potatoes, nongaseous

vegetables, fruits, fruit juices, which may be fortified with lactose, jams, jellies, honey, sugar and plain hard candies

**Moderate Fat.** Experiments by Patek,<sup>2</sup> Hoagland<sup>3</sup> and their associates

<sup>2</sup> Patek, A. J., and Post, J.. J. Clin. Investigation 20:481, 1941.

<sup>3</sup> Hoagland, C. L., et al.: Am. J. Pub. Health 36 1287, 1946

the blood proteins may also produce ammonia, which is absorbed and carried to the liver.

Normally, the ammonia content of the blood is extremely low. Even a small rise, induced by an accumulation of ammonia in the liver, will produce serious neurologic symptoms, beginning with drowsiness and lethargy, and ending in coma. Other symptoms are "liver breath," a flapping tremor of the hands when the arms are extended, and sometimes disorientation. The condition may occur in either infectious hepatitis or in cirrhosis.<sup>6</sup>

The dietary treatment consists of a 30 to 50 Gm protein diet to limit the amount of protein to be deaminized and limit ammonia formation.<sup>7</sup> It should be as high in calories as possible in order that no tissue protein will be broken

out relapsing into coma. A low protein diet will be found in Chapter 28.

### DISEASE OF THE GALLBLADDER

Disease of the gallbladder may be due either to infection or the presence of gallstones. In either case, there is a great deal of pain when fat is ingested. At the beginning of this chapter we dis-

<sup>6</sup> Lambert, M. J. *Am Dietet A* 33 1005, 1957

<sup>7</sup> Schwartz, R, *et al* *New England J. Med* 251:685, 1954

cussed the mechanism by which the presence of fat in the duodenum stimulates the production of a hormone—cholecystokinin—which, when it is carried by the bloodstream to the gallbladder, causes it to contract and release bile. It can be seen readily that a meal containing much fatty food may bring on an acute attack of gallbladder pain.

heated fats are less well tolerated than uncooked fats, it is better to omit the former. Foods such as milk, eggs and butter should be allowed in limited quantities in order to meet the requirements of the adequate diet (See below).

The milk and the egg may be used as such in the diet, or they may be incorporated in cooked foods such as plain cake or custard.

The Pancreatic Part. In the case

ing operation until all inflammation in the surrounding tissues has subsided. Cholecystokinin stimulates the bile ducts as well as the gallbladder to contract, and pain from the area operated upon may still result on the ingestion of fat.

Other Considerations. Patients with gallbladder disease often show a tendency to constipation. The use of a diet plentiful in fruit and non-gas-forming vegetables (see Chap 23) and with

### RESTRICTIONS AND OMISSIONS ON A LOW FAT DIET

#### Foods Limited:

Milk to 1 pint daily  
Eggs to 1 daily  
Butter or margarine to ½ tablespoon daily  
Lean meat, fish or fowl to 1 serving daily

#### Foods Omitted:

Cream, cheese other than pot or cottage cheese  
All fried foods  
Salad oils  
All meat high in fat, such as pork, bacon, ham, goose, duck, fatty fish  
Pastry  
Nuts, olives, avocados



ally in the diet. Multivitamin supplements are also prescribed usually. Thiamine has been shown by some investigators to prevent fat deposits in the liver, so that large doses of the B complex vitamins may be given.

**Salt.** When severe ascites and possibly general edema exist, it may be necessary to limit the salt intake. Davidson<sup>4</sup> has shown that a diet restricted to 200 mg. sodium proved beneficial to 18 out of 30 patients. All foods must be cooked without salt. Because meat, milk, and

sary in this diet. Special low sodium milks and Protinal,<sup>5</sup> a protein supplement very low in sodium content, will aid in keeping the protein of the diet high while restricting the sodium. (See Chap. 27 for a 200-mg. sodium diet and Chap. 50 for recipes of low sodium, high protein beverages.)

**Roughage.** If esophageal varices are present and the diet contains much roughage, these varices may bleed and further complicate the disease. Foods to be omitted are raw fruits and vegetables, whole-grain breads and cereals, and meats high in connective tissue.

**Alcohol** is strictly prohibited.

### Feeding Problem

One of the grave problems confronting the nurse is to persuade the patient with cirrhosis of the liver to eat, for his recovery rests almost entirely on his dietary intake. Often he is toxic and may be extremely discouraged and depressed. The high protein, high carbohydrate, moderate fat semiliquid diet on page 319 may best meet his needs at first. Sometimes these patients will toler-

ate the usual hours. (A variety of such feedings will be found in Chap. 50.) The feedings should be supplemented with small trays at regular meal hours. It is gratifying to find that after 2 to 4 weeks of such a regimen, the patient is notably better and may then relish a high protein, high caloric diet such as found on page 320.

### Complications

**Esophageal Varices.** These may occur in the patient with advanced cirrhosis, as explained earlier in the chapter. If there is hemorrhage, a tube surrounded by a small balloon may be inserted into the esophagus. The balloon is inflated to apply pressure to the bleeding area. The remainder of the tube is passed into the stomach, and the patient must then be tube-fed. One such tube feeding<sup>6</sup> consists of the following:

- 1,500 cc. milk
- 3 eggs
- 120 Gm. glucose
- 100 Gm. Protinal
- 200 Gm. ground liver (lightly broiled before being added)

These materials should be mixed in a mechanical blender and strained to ensure that no particles clog the tube. This feeding supplies about 2,500 calories and 170 Gm. protein. The use of low sodium milk will reduce the sodium content, and the substitution of skim milk for whole milk will lower the fat content (but also the calories). See Chapter 32 for other tube feedings.

**Hepatic Coma.** In severe liver failure, when the number of functioning liver cells is limited, the deaminization

<sup>4</sup> Davidson, L. W. *et al.*, 1955.

<sup>5</sup> The National Drug Co.

<sup>5</sup> Sengstaken, E. W., and Blakemore, A. H. *Ann Surg* 131:781, 1950.

<sup>6</sup> See Chapter 32 for the calculation of this tube feeding.

with pancreatitis in a good nutritional state is a difficult one. The diet tends to be low in calories due to the fat restriction, and the patient's food intake is poor because of constant pain. Every effort should be made to give the patient the foods that he can tolerate, and in such quantity that his nutritional needs continue to be met.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1 How does the liver function in digestion? In the metabolism of foods? As an organ for storage? In detoxification?

2 Why is a high protein diet usually ordered in infectious hepatitis? What feeding problems may be encountered in the early stages of this disease?

3 Why is alcoholic cirrhosis considered a nutritional deficiency disease?

4 A patient is diagnosed as having cirrhosis of the liver with ascites. The doctor orders a high protein, high carbohydrate, moderate fat diet for him. Explain why such a diet has been ordered.

5 Which foods are to be used in the above diet? Which ones avoided?

6. How can this diet be changed to

make it low in salt yet keep it high in protein?

7 What is thought to be the cause of hepatic coma? Why may a low protein diet be beneficial?

8. Write a menu for a day that contains 40 Gm protein and is as high in carbohydrate as possible.

9 Why does a patient with gallbladder disease have pain on the ingestion of fat? Why may this pain persist for several months postoperatively?

10 Why is a low fat diet suggested in

which limited on a low fat diet?

12. Write a low fat general diet for a patient with gallbladder disease. Write a low fat soft diet for the same patient 3 days after operation.

13 When a low fat, low cholesterol diet is ordered, which foods should be avoided?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

## VERY LOW FAT, BLAND DIET IN 3 MEALS\*

Breakfast	Lunch	Dinner
Stewed prunes	Cottage cheese	Sliced chicken
Cream of Wheat	Toast, slightly buttered,	Baked potato
Milk, whole, $\frac{1}{2}$ glass	2 slices	Soft-cooked string beans
Coffee, if tolerated	Jelly or honey	Canned apricots
Sugar	Applesauce	Tea, sugar
	Tea, sugar	
10 A.M.	3 P.M.	8 P.M.
Toast, slightly buttered,	Fruit juice with	Crackers
2 slices	2 tablespoons lactose	Jelly or honey
Jelly or honey	Crackers	Skim milk, 1 glass
Skim milk, 1 glass		

\* This diet will contain approximately 70 Gm. protein, 25 Gm. fat, 350 Gm. carbohydrate and 1,900 calories

added stewed fruit and stewed fruit juices should correct this condition. In many cases these patients are obese. If there is overweight, the low fat diet should limit the caloric intake somewhat, but sugar, desserts, candy and other foods high in carbohydrate may also have to be limited if weight loss is to be achieved.

**Role of Cholesterol.** Cholesterol is excreted normally in the bile, and it often forms part or all of the constituents

the cholesterol content of the food intake. For cholesterol content of food see Table 4, Part Four

### PANCREATITIS

Pancreatitis, or inflammation of the pancreas, may be related to earlier disease of the biliary system, although in

tion of the pancreatic tissues, which may proceed to hemorrhagic pancreatitis

and eventual necrosis. Pain is severe, and nausea and vomiting are common symptoms.

### Dietary Treatment

The pancreas is stimulated to produce pancreatic juice by the presence of food and hydrochloric acid in the duodenum. Likewise, fat in the duodenum stimulates the flow of bile. The dietary treatment of pancreatitis, therefore, consists of foods which will not call either of these mechanisms into action.

In severe, acute pancreatitis the patient is fed nothing by mouth. In milder attacks small meals consisting largely of easily digested carbohydrate and protein may be given. Fat should be limited to 25 Gm. or less per day (see above for sample menu). During remissions of the disease the patient should be maintained on a bland low fat diet. The Bland Diet in Chapter 23 may be made low in fat by substituting skim milk for whole milk, limiting butter or margarine to 1 tablespoonful per day and eggs to 1 a day; using only lean meats, fish and fowl; and omitting cream, creamed soups and sauces, and all cheeses except cottage cheese.

Alcohol is absolutely prohibited, as it irritates the duodenum and may precipitate an attack.

The problem of keeping the patient

gens either directly or by the circulating blood. Swelling or edema of the affected organ or tissue is often an important factor in the symptoms, for example, in lips, eyes and nasal passages, and in the cerebral tissues in allergic headache or migraine. Smooth-muscle spasm is also important, as in allergic diarrhea, the action may be combined with edema, as in bronchial asthma.

This chapter is chiefly concerned with food allergies, but it should be borne in mind that any allergy, if severe, may interfere with the nutrition of the individual due to the effect on appetite and thus the general health. This is often the case with a child, whose growth and development may be retarded seriously. In all cases the nutrients in the diet should be evaluated carefully, and every effort should be made to make the diet as adequate nutritionally and as attractive as possible.

### Foods and Allergy

Proteins are considered to be the most important factors in food allergy, even though foods which cause such allergic disturbances may vary widely in protein content. Sensitivity to a food such as honey is explained as due to the associated protein in the pollen grains mixed in the honey, for it has been shown that very minute amounts of a given protein may cause allergic reaction.

Among the common allergy-producing foods, particularly in children, are wheat, eggs, milk and oranges. Other common food allergens are fish, chocolate, tomatoes and strawberries. It has been found that members of the same botanic family may have a similar allergic effect. Lemons and grapefruit are likely to cause a reaction if oranges are allergenic. Likewise, if cabbage gives rise to an allergic reaction, so may broccoli, Brussels sprouts and cauliflower.

Since some of the commonly aller-

genic foods are among those essential for good nutrition, to eliminate one or more of them from the diet may create serious nutritional problems unless effective substitutions can be made.

### Factors Affecting Allergic Manifestations

Whether or not an allergic diet is

into. Consider the severity of an al-

search for the offending food or foods is difficult process.

### TESTS FOR ALLERGY

A careful history, which should include the patient's record of all foods eaten during the preceding 3 or 4 days, with reactions noted as they occurred, may be sufficient for an accurate diagnosis. Friedenwald<sup>1</sup> states that "the best diagnostic tool in allergy is a careful history of events, conditions, and other factors related to the present illness."

finding of the offending agent."

**Skin Tests.** Numerous tests for the detection of allergy and its specific causative agents have been used by the medical profession, among the first being the skin tests known as the scratch, the patch and the intradermal. As the names indicate, the solution containing the suspected offending substance is applied either to a scratched portion of the skin or to a certain patch of skin and then covered with cellophane for 2 to 4 days. By the intradermal test the solution is injected into the superficial layers of the skin.

In the event that welts, wheals and redness develop from any of these tests,

<sup>1</sup>Friedenwald, V. E.: J. Allergy 23:420, 1952.

*Allergy and Its Manifestations*  
*Classification of Allergens*  
*Foods and Allergy*  
*Factors Affecting Allergic Manifestations*  
*Tests for Allergy*  
*Elimination Test Diets*  
*Treatment of Allergy*  
*Desensitizing Treatment*  
*Restricted Diet Treatment*  
*Teaching the Patient*  
*Skin Diseases*  
*Vitamin Deficiencies*  
*Acne Vulgaris*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-SIX

# Allergy, Skin Diseases

## ALLERGY AND ITS MANIFESTATIONS

### Classification of Allergens

Allergy is a condition of hypersensi-

be caused in one individual by one substance and in another by an entirely different substance

The offending items comprise a long list and include.

Inhalants, such as pollen, dusts and cosmetics.

Ingestants, such as foods and drugs.

Contactants, such as cosmetics, poison ivy and adhesive.

Infectants, such as bacteria, fungi and parasites.

Insect and snake bites.

Injectants, such as serums, vaccines and hormones.

Physical agents, such as heat, cold, sunlight and effort.

Authorities disagree as to the prevalence of allergy, but it is believed that possibly 10 per cent of the population show evidences of allergy to one or more substances during life

**Manifestations.** There are no typical symptoms, as in a communicable disease, partly because very different tissues of the body respond. Among the many symptoms are eczema, often of extreme nature, urticaria (hives), asthma, also sometimes very severe, redness and swelling of the eyes, running of the nose (as in hay fever), headache or migraine, and such gastro-intestinal disturbances as diarrhea and colic. The fact that many of the allergic attacks are related to the skin and the mucous membrane regions is explained partly by the extensive surface areas exposed to contact with the irritating substances or aller-

condiments. All the foods included in these diets are known to be unlikely to produce allergic reactions. The fourth diet, consisting only of milk, tapioca and sugar, is used as a last resort.

The patient is placed on one of the test diets for a period of a week. If the symptoms do not abate, he is tried on another one of the diets for the same length of time. If, at the end of the last test diet, relief has not been obtained, it is evident that causes other than food should be sought as allergic agents.

If, on the other hand, the patient is relieved of his symptoms on any one of the elimination test diets, he is kept on this for another week. Other foods, first chosen from the related test diets and then from foods in general, are added one by one, with wheat, eggs and milk last, because these three foods have been found to be the most likely to produce

allergy. If the patient shows allergic symptoms after the addition of any one food, that food may be suspected as the cause of the allergic disturbance and must be omitted from the diet.

A typical day's menu based on each of the first 3 diets will be found on this page.

### TREATMENT OF ALLERGY

Once the causal foods have been identified by one or more of the preceding tests, three courses are open.

1. To desensitize the patient gradually to those foods,

2. To limit the patient to diets which do not include the irritating foods, or

3. To try a method that recently has been employed for patients with very severe manifestations of allergy, such as intractable eczema or asthma—the use of ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone)

#### TYPICAL MENUS BASED ON DIETS 1 TO 3

##### DIET No 1

<i>Breakfast</i>	<i>Dinner</i>	<i>Supper</i>
Grapefruit	Lamb chops	Grapefruit juice
Boiled rice with maple syrup	Spinach with lemon	Lamb stew (lamb, carrots, rice)
Tea with lemon and sugar	Sweet potato	Rice bread or biscuits
	Rice bread or biscuit	Gelatin with lemon juice, sugar and pear
	Stewed pear with sugar	Tea with lemon and sugar
	Tea with lemon and sugar	

##### DIET No 2

<i>Breakfast</i>	<i>Dinner</i>	<i>Supper</i>
Stewed prunes	Roast chicken	Sliced cold chicken
Fried corn-meal mush	Baked squash	Pickled beets
Bacon	Asparagus	Ry-Krup
Tea with sugar	Corn pone	Stewed apricots with sugar
	Pineapple, canned	Tea with sugar
	Tea with sugar	

##### DIET No 3

<i>Breakfast</i>	<i>Dinner</i>	<i>Supper</i>
Grapefruit	Roast beef	Bacon
Fried potatoes	Peas	Stewed Lima beans (seasoned with bacon fat)
Soybean muffins (without eggs)	Glazed carrots (with Wesson oil)	Potato flour muffins
Tea with lemon and sugar	Lima-bean bread	Peach tapioca
	Tea with lemon and sugar	Tea with lemon and sugar

an allergic reaction is indicated. However, it has been observed that many foods may give a positive skin test without causing allergic symptoms.

### Elimination Test Diets

Because food allergy is somewhat more difficult to demonstrate by means of skin tests than other forms of allergy,

Rowe<sup>2</sup> finds the trial of elimination test diets to be more reliable (see below). As can be seen, they consist of a series of 3 diets, each containing a cereal or a starch, 1 or 2 meats, a small group of vegetables and fruits and seasonings and

<sup>2</sup> Rowe, A. H.: *Elimination Diets and the Patient's Allergies*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger, 1944

### ELIMINATION DIETS

(Rowe, A. H. *Elimination Diets and the Patient's Allergies*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1944)

Diet 1	Diet 2	Diet 3	Diet 4
Rice	Corn	Tapioca	Milk†
Tapioca	Rye	White potato	Tapioca
Rice biscuit	Corn pone	Breads made of any combination of soy, Lima, potato starch and tapioca flours	Cane sugar
Rice bread	Corn-rye muffins		
	Rye bread		
	Ry-Krisp		
Lettuce	Beets	Tomato	
Chard	Squash	Carrot	
Spinach	Asparagus	Lima beans	
Carrot	Artichoke	String beans	
Sweet potato or yam		Pears	
Lamb	Chicken (no hens)	Beef	
	Bacon	Bacon	
Lemon	Pineapple	Lemon	
Grapefruit	Peach	Grapefruit	
Pears	Apricot	Peach	
	Prune	Apricot	
Cane sugar	Cane or beet sugar	Cane sugar	
Sesame oil	Mazola	Sesame oil	
Olive oil*	Sesame oil	Soybean oil	
Salt	Salt	Gelatin, plain or flavored with lime or lemon	
Gelatin, plain or flavored with lime or lemon	Gelatin, plain or flavored with pineapple	Salt	
Maple syrup or syrup made with cane sugar flavored with maple	Karo corn syrup	Maple syrup or syrup made with cane sugar flavored with maple	
Royal baking powder	White vinegar	Royal baking powder	
Baking soda	Royal baking powder	Baking soda	
Cream of tartar	Baking soda	Cream of tartar	
Vanilla extract	Cream of tartar	Vanilla extract	
Lemon extract	Vanilla extract	Lemon extract	

\* Allergy to it may occur with or without allergy to olive pollen. Mazola may be used if corn allergy is not present.

† Milk should be taken up to 2 or 3 quarts a day. Plain cottage cheese and cream may be used. Tapioca cooked with milk and milk sugar may be taken.

aged foods, according to our labeling law, must have their contents listed. This may be of help in determining whether or not the offending food is present.

For the nurse in the doctor's office, where most allergy patients are treated, a knowledge of the preparation and the composition of foods may be of the greatest assistance to the physician and the patient. The availability commercially of many prepared foods which formerly were made in the home has made us less aware of what such foods contain. A good example is mayonnaise, now seldom prepared by the housewife. That it contains a small quantity of egg may well be overlooked, and that it may contain wheat or wheat gluten as a binder would not generally be known. The nurse and the patient together should explore every possibility in food preparation or composition so that the offending food or foods are sure to be omitted from the diet.

The wheat-sensitive patient must learn that baker's rye bread contains some wheat flour, that practically all hot breads, griddle cakes, pastries and puddings are made chiefly or partly from wheat products, that bran and gluten are wheat derivatives. Thickened gravies and sauces are to be avoided unless the thickening agent is known. Even meat dishes such as . . .

malting and cereal beverages must be avoided by the wheat-sensitive person.

For a complete description of the omissions necessary in wheat sensitivity, see Chapter 24 under "Gluten-Free Diet." For the patient allergic to wheat only, the restrictions on rye flour and oatmeal do not apply, but the remaining material will prove helpful in ensuring that all wheat products are eliminated from the diet.

The egg-sensitive patient likewise must investigate carefully all commercial

and in the preparation of roasting beverages, and that most desserts, especially cakes, puddings and ice cream, contain eggs.

The milk-sensitive patient may find that he is able to use milk that has been boiled or dried, but if sensitive to all milk, he must avoid cheese, butter and margarine (to which dry milk solids usually are added for flavor), as well as all other foods containing even infinitesimal amounts of milk. Bread as purchased usually contains some milk, therefore, the homemade product is preferable.

It is well to note here that so-called "soybean milk" is an excellent milk substitute. It is made from soybeans, a vegetable protein of good biologic value and fortified with minerals. Its nutritive value is almost equal to milk with the exception of the vitamin content.

An excellent booklet, "Allergy Recipes," is available from the American Dietetic Association.<sup>3</sup> It contains a number of recipes for wheat-, milk- and egg-free diets.

## SKIN DISEASES

The causes of skin diseases are many

how and why have not been proved definitely.

That the health of the individual has . . . expected of being causal factors, and, while much research has been done,

<sup>3</sup> American Dietetic Association, 620 N. Michigan Avenue, Chicago 11, Ill. Fifty cents.



or cortisone. These hormones do not cure, but so long as the patient is kept on small maintenance doses the symptoms are greatly relieved.

### Desensitizing Treatment

Avoidance of allergy-causing foods is not always desirable. It is difficult, for example, to supply children with the necessary food for growth if wheat or milk is eliminated from their diet. Unless the patient is severely allergic, it may be wise to try to desensitize him to such valuable but for him irritating foods. This treatment, however, should follow a period of complete abstinence from the offending food. Fortunately, it may be possible to desensitize by mouth, and, beginning with doses so minute that they cause no reactions in the person being treated, gradually the amount is increased until ordinary food portions can be tolerated.

To illustrate, one child sensitive to egg white was so desensitized over a period of 7 months by a dosage beginning with 1/1000 Gm dry or powdered egg white. Another child could tolerate at first only such small amount of egg

his milk.

Often adults may desensitize themselves successfully. A man acutely but

creasing number of drops of cream until he can resume the use of both cream and milk in his diet.

### Restricted Diet Treatment

The chief means of treating the food-sensitive patient is to restrict the diet to the foods to which the patient is not allergic, and the best means of accomplishing this is to teach the patient as explained later in the chapter.

When the food responsible for an al-

lergic disturbance is an unusual one in the individual's diet, such as strawberries, he is likely to associate the attack with the related food and is able, therefore, to eliminate it from his diet.

When patients are sensitive to a common food such as wheat, eggs or milk, all of which appear in the diet in many

containing the allergen is overlooked. Allergy recipes will be found in Chapter 50.

When the diet is very restricted, it is essential that it be evaluated for its protein, caloric, mineral and vitamin con-

or the adequacy of all nutrients in the diet except calories. For instance, if all citrus fruits must be omitted, there is little likelihood that the diet will be adequate in ascorbic acid. Similarly, if milk and cheese must be omitted, the calcium content of the diet is sure to be too low for the patient's needs. In such instances, it is important to stress those foods in the diet which are fair sources of the inadequate nutrient and, if necessary, to supplement the diet with mineral or vitamin concentrates.

Similarly, it is important that the caloric content of the restricted diet be carefully evaluated, so that weight loss does not result unless this is desirable.

### TEACHING THE PATIENT

The patient must be made food conscious of the allergen to which he is sensitive, for even minute quantities may produce attacks. He must beware of commercial products of whose composition he is not absolutely certain. This applies not only to the foods and the drinks purchased in the market, but to those served in restaurants and other eating places, for prepared foods are often mixtures of various products. Pack-

### *Cardiac Disease*

*Classification and Etiology*

*Dietary Treatment*

*Varieties of Low Sodium Diets*

### *Vascular Diseases*

*Atherosclerosis*

*Dietary Treatment*

*Hypertension*

*Dietary Treatment*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVEN

# Cardiovascular Disease

### CARDIAC DISEASE

Cardiovascular diseases constitute the greatest public health problem of the present time. More people die from this group of diseases than from any other one cause today. The longer lifespan of our population, bringing with it an increase of degenerative diseases is responsible for this to some extent. Rheumatic fever, the cause of rheumatic heart disease, often went unrecognized and untreated 20 or more years ago. We have, therefore, a large number of people with rheumatic heart disease, some of which might have been prevented. Lastly, but perhaps the most important, obesity, which predisposes to certain types of heart disease, is all too prevalent in this country.

#### Etiology of Heart Disease

Congenital heart disease is due to a defect in cardiac structure developed in fetal life. It may be so mild that it is not discovered until adulthood or even later, or it may be so severe as to be crippling from birth onward. Cardiac

surgery has restored many patients with congenital heart disease to normal life. However, there are some defects in which adequate surgery has not as yet been devised. These patients, therefore, must live under the same restrictions as other cardiacs.

Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease occur largely in children and in young adults. Again it may be varying degrees of severity. In severe rheumatic heart disease, patients are chronically ill and often underweight and they present many of the nutritional problems discussed in Chapter 17.

life.

Arteriosclerotic heart disease is found among middle-aged and old

more evidence seems to be needed in order to establish these theories as specific factors.

### Vitamin Deficiencies

Many vitamin deficiencies are known to be accompanied by skin manifestations, such as thickening, cracking, eruptions and bleeding. These have been described in Chapter 20. The treatment depends upon the correction of the deficiencies. Even when definite deficiencies may not be established, many dermatologists advise the use of high vitamin diets, often with vitamin supplementation.

### Acne Vulgaris

Acne vulgaris is defined as "an inflammation of the sebaceous glands from retained secretions." It is common to oily skins and occurs most frequently on the face, the chest and the back. The condition occurs most commonly in adolescents and young adults, and seems to be associated with abnormal response to hormonal activity in maturing indi-

viduals. High in fat also has been suggested as a causative factor.

Cormia<sup>4</sup> found that chocolate and nuts aggravated the condition in some individuals. He agrees, however, that probably the most important dietary aspect of treatment is to ensure that these adolescents have a highly nutritious diet adequate to meet their needs.

<sup>4</sup> Cormia, F. E.: *Am. J. Nursing* 57:198, 1957.

during this period of rapid physical development (see Chap. 14).

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are some common allergenic foods? Which of these are the most difficult to eliminate from the diet should they prove allergenic?

2. How can the nurse be of aid to the physician and the patient in interpreting the allergic patient's food history?

3. How may food allergies be detected when skin tests fail?

4. What is the danger when patients are kept on test diets such as elimination diets for long periods of time?

5. Plan a week's menu for a patient who must follow Rowe's Elimination Diet No. 3.

6. Name 3 foods in which wheat may be used as an ingredient and of which a patient on a wheat-free diet must be warned; 3 foods in which milk may be the "hidden" ingredient, 3 foods in which eggs are the "hidden" ingredient.

7. Look at the label of a package of margarine. Why must a patient on a milk-free diet omit this food?

8. How may an allergy diet be evaluated for nutritive content? If milk has to be eliminated, which food nutrient is likely to be inadequate? Which is likely to be low?

9. What substitute for milk is available and is nearly equal to milk in nutritive content?

10. Which foods may be substituted for wheat to retain the caloric value of the diet? Which nutrients are lost to the diet when enriched wheat bread and cereal cannot be used?

11. Which foods equal eggs for nutritive value and may be substituted for them?

12. How may a patient be desensitized to a food allergy?

## *Cardiac Disease*

### *Classification and Etiology*

### *Dietary Treatment*

### *Varieties of Low Sodium Diets*

## *Vascular Diseases*

### *Atherosclerosis*

### *Dietary Treatment*

### *Hypertension*

### *Dietary Treatment*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVEN

# Cardiovascular Diseases

### CARDIAC DISEASE

Cardiovascular diseases constitute the greatest public health problem of the present time. More people die from this group of diseases than from any other one cause today. The longer lifespan of our population, bringing with it an increase of degenerative diseases, is responsible for this in some extent. Rheumatic fever, the cause of rheumatic heart disease, often went unrecognized and untreated 20 or more years ago. We have the effect of a large number of years

alent in this country

### Etiology of Heart Disease

Congenital heart disease is due to a defect in cardiac structure developed in fetal life. It may be so mild that it is not discovered until adulthood or even later, or it may be so severe as to be crippling from birth onward. Cardiac

surgery has restored many patients with congenital heart disease to normal life. However, there are some defects for which adequate surgery has not as yet been devised. These patients, therefore, must live under the same restrictions as other cardiacs.

Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease occur largely in children and in young adults. Again it may be of varying degrees of severity. In severe rheumatic heart disease, patients are chronically ill and often underweight, and they present many of the nutritional problems discussed in Chapter 17. In the past few years cardiac surgery on the valves of the heart, often affected in rheumatic heart disease, has restored some of these patients to a more active life.

1. Congenital heart disease is

ability of the heart to maintain its function determine the severity of cardiac disease. Many older persons have little, if any involvement of the blood vessels, and in such individuals both blood pressure and cardiac function are normal.

Atherosclerotic heart disease is due to the deposit of fatty plaques in the blood vessels. It is now recognized as a distinct disease entity. The possible causative factors are obscure and at present hotly debated. When the fat plaques occur in the coronary arteries which supply blood to the heart muscle itself, the danger is ever present of clot formation, of coronary artery occlusion and damage to the surrounding heart muscle from lack of oxygen.

Other causes of heart disease are inflammation and constriction of the pericardial sac surrounding the heart muscle, syphilis and many others. If the cardiac damage is severe, the treatment is the same as for other types of cardiac disease.

Functional heart disorders may be expressed by heart pains and by disturbances in the rate and the regularity

of functional heart disorders are infection (other than rheumatic fever), fatigue, nutritional deficiencies, especially of thiamine, excessive use of tobacco and alcohol, and, very commonly, psychoneurosis. All cardiac irregularities, however, should be thoroughly investigated before being ascribed to functional causes.

### The Severity of Cardiac Involvement

Cardiac disease may be acute, as in

reserve. The severity of cardiac disease depends on the degree to which the heart is damaged and the extent to which this interferes with its function

If damage is slight, and the heart is able

may have to omit strenuous activity but otherwise will be able to perform his daily tasks without discomfort.

Decompensation, or severe heart disease, is said to occur when the heart is unable to sustain adequate circulation of blood to the tissues. The blood flow to the lungs is slowed, and oxygen uptake and carbon dioxide excretion are inadequate. The patient suffers from shortness of breath and chest pain when he performs any sort of activity. As decompensation progresses, the liver may become enlarged and edema may appear in the dependent parts of the body and,

heart failure.

When patients are chronically ill with severe heart disease, their activities must be severely restricted, and they may even have to spend much of their time in bed so that the limited oxygen supply will be sufficient for whatever activity is allowed. Drugs to strengthen the heart muscle are commonly prescribed. If edema is present, diuretic drugs to increase water excretion are usually given, and a diet restricted in salt must be followed.

### Dietary Treatment

For patients with compensated heart disease, the diet is changed only slightly, the object being to supply an adequate diet but avoid additional burdens due to overeating. If, however, the patient is even slightly overweight, the caloric value of the diet should be reduced until the patient is somewhat underweight. Some doctors advise some reduction even in those who are not overweight. By reducing the weight the heart is freer in its movements and the metabolism is decreased, thus furnishing less stimulus to its activity.

The dietary principles for treatment of this type of disease are as follows:

1. The maintenance of a diet adequate for all nutritional needs. Weight reduction if necessary (See Chap. 21.)

2. The avoidance of bulky meals to prevent distention of the stomach and constant pressure against the heart.

3. The avoidance of such foods as members of the cabbage family, dried peas and beans. These ferment easily, may cause gas in the alimentary tract and result in pressure against the heart.

4. The avoidance of any food known to the patient to be difficult to digest.

5. The avoidance of constipation and straining.

6. The avoidance or the sparing use of stimulants. Sometimes tea and coffee are limited.

7. Salt restriction, if ordered by the doctor to prevent the development of edema. The Moderately Low Sodium Diet (see p. 337) is usually prescribed.

Patients with severe decompensation or with heart failure are usually too ill to eat; the diet, therefore, is restricted very severely. Only water and fruit juices may be allowed, usually in limited amounts, or the patient may be placed on a Karrell diet, which consists of 200 cc. (6 ozs.) milk at 11 A.M., 12 noon, 4 P.M. and 8 P.M. Later, cereal gruels, toast, soft-cooked eggs, mashed or baked potatoes, vegetable and fruit purées, gelatin, custard and ice cream may be added, leading up to a Soft, Low Sodium or Very Low Sodium Diet (see pp. 338-340). No salt is used in cooking or served on the tray. The diet is best served in 5 or 6 meals to prevent fatigue in eating.

either soft or general, with the principles and the modifications as follows:

**Calories.** If the cardiac patient is overweight, it is essential that the caloric intake be diminished and that the patient lose weight. This measure tends to reduce basal metabolism and thus the work of the heart (see Chap. 21 for low caloric diets).

many cardiacs, especially those suffering from rheumatic heart disease, are underweight and undernourished. Although it may not be possible or desirable to have them gain weight, every effort should be made to make the diet nutritionally adequate in protein, minerals and vitamins (see Basic Dietary Pattern, Chap. 18).

**Protein.** The protein of the cardiac diet should meet the normal standard of 1 Gm. per Kg. of body weight. The need of adequate protein for all body processes has been well established, and therapeutic diets should provide the necessary amounts unless contraindicated by the nature of the disease.

**Carbohydrate and Fat.** When the caloric value of the diet must be reduced, the reduction should come from both carbohydrates and fats. The carbohydrates, however, should be the chief source of energy, as they are more easily digested and leave the stomach more quickly than the fats, thus providing more room for the working heart. For patients considerably below normal weight, it may be necessary to increase the intake of these foods in order to

### Dietary Management of the Chronically Ill Cardiac Patient

pressure by the stomach on the heart. It may be desirable to divide the 3 regular meals so that a part of each is served 2 or 3 hours later. The cereal and the milk from breakfast and the dessert and part of the fluid from lunch and dinner may be served as between-meal nourishment. This lessens the amount of food in the stomach at any one time and may ensure greater comfort for the cardiac patient.

**Salt and Water.** If edema is or has been present, the diet is usually limited in salt. Fluids may be restricted also, although at present most doctors believe that if the salt is limited, edema will not occur or, if present, will disappear. The sodium of the salt (sodium chloride) is the water-holding mineral of the body fluids and is found abundantly in the blood and in the fluid spaces between the cells (interstitial space). Normally we ingest a good deal of sodium each day, some of it found in the food itself and most of it added as table salt or sodium chloride in cooking processes. It is estimated that the average person consumes from 2 to 3 level teaspoons of salt per day, or about 8 to 15 Gm. This is

ham, salted crackers and salted butter are omitted and no salt is used at the table, the diet will contain approximately 2,000 to 3,000 mg. of sodium.

In the decompensated or severely ill cardiac patient, there is impaired circulation which leads to increased venous pressure. This causes a stasis of sodium and fluids in the interstitial spaces and prevents their reabsorption into the blood. With poor circulation the blood also may not reach the kidney as frequently as normally, and less excretion of sodium results. Together these two factors may cause retention of sodium and, therefore, water in the interstitial spaces. This is called edema. It usually occurs first in the dependent areas of the body farthest removed from the heart,

notably the ankles. If the disease goes on, edema may shift to the sacral region.

By lowering the sodium in the diet, there will be a decrease in the quantity of sodium circulating in the blood. This will help to draw the sodium and, therefore, water from the interstitial spaces back into the blood stream, to be excreted eventually by the kidneys, relieving the edema. Even patients with mild cardiac disease are usually placed on some degree of sodium restriction in order to prevent the development of edema.

### Varieties of Low Sodium Diets

**Terminology.** There are many degrees of salt restriction, depending on the severity of the cardiac disease and the amount of edema present. The so-called salt poor, salt free or low sodium diets contain varying amounts of sodium, depending upon the content of the natural food and the amount of salt that may be added in the preparation or cooking. Formerly, these diets were known as low salt (no salt added at the table) or salt free (no salt used in cooking or at the table). Since it has been found that the retention of sodium is the chief causative factor in edema, the word sodium now appears more frequently in the terminology.

In the following pages a group of variously restricted sodium diets is given.

**1. Moderately Low Sodium Diet, 2,000 to 3,000 Mg. Sodium.** This diet is usually ordered for the patient who has only moderate heart damage. It allows a limited amount of salt in cooking, although none is served on the tray or at the table. All salted foods such as bacon, ham, salted crackers and salted butter must be omitted.

**2. Low Sodium Diet, 600 to 1,200 Mg. Sodium.** This diet is usually prescribed for cardiac patients with edema.

**MODERATELY LOW SODIUM DIET\***  
(Contains 2,000-3,000 mg Sodium)

Follow the restrictions of the Low Sodium Diet (600-1,200 mg Sodium) with the following additions

Salt	...	..Half a level teaspoon of salt may be used in cooking or added to food each day. (Measure out, place in salt shaker, and use as desired)
Eggs	..	..May be increased to 2 a day if desired
Vegetables	.	..All fresh, frozen and canned vegetables (except sauerkraut and tomato juice cocktail) are permitted
Bread	.	..Three slices of salted commercial bread are allowed. If more bread is desired, it must be unsalted
Miscellaneous	.	..Candy, molasses and commercial syrups are permitted

All other restrictions on the Low Sodium Diet must be observed

\* From the Department of Nutrition, The New York Hospital

Salt is eliminated both in cooking and at the table, and foods of low or moderately low sodium content are chosen

**3 Very Low Sodium Diet, 200 to 400 Mg. Sodium.** This diet may be prescribed for patients with congestive heart failure and severe edema and for patients with hypertension. Only foods of relatively low sodium content are allowed. Whole milk is replaced by low sodium or dialyzed milk. The foods allowed and to be avoided on the 3 degrees of salt restriction and a menu for a day for the Low Sodium Diet will be found on pages 337 to 341. A menu for the Very Low Sodium Diet is included with the section on hypertension later in this chapter.

**Seasonings for a Salt-Restricted Diet.** Many patients have a difficult time adjusting to the omission of salt from their food. There are many seasonings and flavorings which will help to make the diet more palatable, and every effort should be made to incorporate these into the diet. A wedge of lemon will increase the flavor of many meats and vegetables. Sugar and minced parsley or mint will add variety to the vegetables. The use of brown sugar and dried fruit with cereal will almost completely mask the lack of salt. Other flavorings which may be used with good

results are salt-free tomato juice, onions, if tolerated, sweet spices such as cinna-

... ..  
bets such as puddings and ice cream. Fortunately, most spices contain only a minute amount of sodium and may be used freely. See Table 5 in Part Four for sodium content of spices. Exceptions are celery, onion and garlic salt, dried celery and parsley flakes, sodium glutamate,

come accustomed to reading the labels of all prepared products to see if salt has been added.

The method of preparation may also affect the flavor of foods. Baking, broiling or roasting, as well as frying, will make many foods more palatable.

sodium recipes).

**Use of Salt Substitutes.** A number of salt substitutes are available to patients on salt-restricted diets. One of these, labeled "seasoned," has a variety



pressure by the stomach on the heart. It may be desirable to divide the 3 regular meals so that a part of each is served 2 or 3 hours later. The cereal and the milk from breakfast and the dessert and part of the fluid from lunch and dinner may be served as between-meal nourishment. This lessens the amount of food in the stomach at any one time and may ensure greater comfort for the cardiac patient.

**Salt and Water.** If edema is or has been present, the diet is usually limited in salt. Fluids may be restricted also, although at present most doctors believe that if the salt is limited, edema will not occur or, if present, will disappear. The sodium of the salt (sodium chloride) is the water-holding mineral of the body fluids and is found abundantly in the blood and in the fluid spaces between the cells (*interstitial space*). Normally we ingest a good deal of sodium each day, some of it found in the food itself and most of it added as table salt or sodium chloride in cooking processes. It is estimated that the average person consumes from 2 to 3 level teaspoons of salt per day, or about 8 to 15 Gm. This is

tion. If all salty foods such as bacon, ham, salted crackers and salted butter are omitted and no salt is used at the table, the diet will contain approximately 2,000 to 3,000 mg. of sodium.

In the decompensated or severely ill cardiac patient, there is impaired circulation which leads to increased venous pressure. This causes a stasis of sodium and fluids in the interstitial spaces and prevents their reabsorption into the blood. With poor circulation the blood also may not reach the kidney as frequently as normally, and less excretion of sodium results. Together these two factors may cause retention of sodium and, therefore, water in the interstitial spaces. This is called edema. It usually occurs first in the dependent areas of the body farthest removed from the heart,

notably the ankles. If the disease goes untreated, edema will begin to develop in the legs and the thighs so long as the patient remains up and about. If he is put to bed, edema may shift to the sacral region.

By lowering the sodium in the diet, there will be a decrease in the quantity of sodium circulating in the blood. This will help to draw the sodium and, therefore, water from the interstitial spaces back into the blood stream, to be excreted eventually by the kidneys, relieving the edema. Even patients with mild cardiac disease are usually placed on some degree of sodium restriction in order to prevent the development of edema.

#### Varieties of Low Sodium Diets

**Terminology.** There are many degrees of salt restriction, depending on the severity of the cardiac disease and the amount of edema present. The so-called salt poor, salt free or low sodium diets contain varying amounts of sodium, depending upon the content of the natural food and the amount of salt that may be added in the preparation or cooking. Formerly, these diets were known as low salt (no salt added at the table) or salt free (no salt used in cooking or at the table). Since it has been found that the retention of sodium is the chief causative factor in edema, the word *sodium* now appears more frequently in the terminology.

In the following pages a group of

has only moderate heart damage. It allows a limited amount of salt in cooking, although none is served on the tray or at the table. All salted foods such as bacon, ham, salted crackers and salted butter must be omitted.

**2. Low Sodium Diet, 600 to 1,200 Mg. Sodium.** This diet is usually prescribed for cardiac patients with edema.

**Foods To Be Avoided:**

Milk .....	Cultured buttermilk, yoghurt
Cheese .....	All cheeses except unsalted pot or cottage cheese
Fats .....	Salted butter and margarine, salt pork and bacon fat, commercial salad dressings
Soups .....	usually processed with brine.) Shellfish All canned and frozen soups containing salt, bouillon cubes and other commercial meat extractives; dehy- drated soups
Vegetables .....	Frozen Lima beans, sauerkraut, vegetables preserved with salt. Canned vegetables and vegetable juices to which sodium or salt has been added
Bread .....	Bread, rolls, biscuits, muffins and crackers prepared with salt or soda, commercial mixes, salted matzoth; self- rising flour
Cereals .....	Dry, prepared cereals except those permitted under Foods Allowed
Desserts ..	All commercial cakes, puddings, flavored gelatin, mixes, sherbet, ice cream except as allowed. Any dessert made with salt, soda or baking powder except as allowed. Junket
Beverages ...	Fruit juices or fruitades to which salt or sodium benzoate has been added (Read labels.)
Condiments ..	Salt, celery, onion and garlic salt, monosodium glu- tamate, meat tenderizers containing sodium, commercial meat sauces, onion and parsley flakes, prepared mustard, ketchup, soya sauce, tomato paste
Miscellaneous .....	Baking powder, baking soda, pickles, olives, relishes, chewing tobacco, salted nuts, peanut butter, molasses, commercial syrups, pretzels, Fritos, potato chips and other snacks to which salt has been added, candy to which sodium benzoate has been added. All medications containing sodium

of spices added and is very palatable. However, many salt substitutes contain potassium and may be contraindicated if there is kidney damage. The patient should consult his doctor before proceeding to use a salt substitute.

Another warning for the patient on salt restriction is that he must omit such compounds as baking powder, baking soda and drugs containing sodium. Reading labels is important here also

(A recipe for low sodium baking powder

which the water is drawn being high in sodium or to the use of water softeners. The patient can obtain information about the sodium content of his city's water by contacting the department of health.

**LOW SODIUM DIET\***  
(Contains 600-1,200 mg. Sodium)

**Foods Allowed:**

Milk ... ..	Limited to 2 cups (1 pint) of milk, skim milk or cream a day. Low sodium milk as desired
Cheese ... ..	Unsalted pot or cottage cheese
Fats ... ..	Sweet butter, unsalted margarine, oils, vegetable shortenings, lard and other unsalted animal fats; unsalted homemade salad dressings
Eggs ... ..	Limited to 1 a day
Meat, fish, fowl ... ..	Limited to 3 to 5 ozs. of fresh, unsalted frozen or unsalted canned meat, fish and fowl, with exceptions as noted under Foods To Be Avoided. Liver and heart may be included in the allowance.
Soups ... ..	Unsalted broths, unsalted soup with permitted vegetables and cereals; homemade cream soups made with milk allowance
Vegetables ... ..	All fresh, frozen and unsalted canned vegetables and vegetable juices except those listed under Foods To Be Avoided. Dried navy beans or soybeans, lentils and split peas One of the following vegetables which are high in sodium content may be included once a week: artichokes, beets, celery, kale, Swiss chard, spinach, frozen peas
Fruit ... ..	Any fruit or fruit juice, fresh, canned, dried or frozen
Bread ... ..	Unsalted bread and crackers, Passover plain or thin tea matzoth
Cereals and Italian pastes ... ..	Cooked cereals prepared without salt; Muffets, Puffed Rice, Puffed Wheat, Shredded Wheat; barley, rice, grits, tapioca, cornstarch, macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, all prepared without salt
Desserts ... ..	Not more than 1 serving of pudding or ice cream per day
Beverages ... ..	salt are permitted freely. Coffee, tea, Sanka and Postum, cocoa (except Dutch process). Fresh and frozen fruitades Carbonated beverages. Ginger ale
Condiments ... ..	Pepper and other spices, herbs, vanilla and other extracts, vinegar and lemon
Miscellaneous ... ..	Sugar, white and brown, honey, jams and jellies made without the addition of sodium benzoate, hard candy, maple syrup, cream of tartar; unsalted nuts; unsalted popcorn

\* From the Department of Nutrition, The New York Hospital

**Foods To Be Avoided:**

Milk .....	Cultured buttermilk, yoghurt
Cheese .....	All cheeses except unsalted pot or cottage cheese
Fats .....	Salted butter and margarine; salt pork and bacon fat, processed in brine. (Fresh and frozen fish fillets are usually processed with brine.) Shellfish
Soups .....	All canned and frozen soups containing salt; bouillon cubes and other commercial meat extractives, dehy- drated soups
Vegetables .....	Frozen Lima beans, sauerkraut, vegetables preserved with salt Canned vegetables and vegetable juices to which sodium or salt has been added
Bread .....	Bread, rolls, biscuits, muffins and crackers prepared with salt or soda; commercial mixes, salted matzoth, self- rising flour
Cereals .....	Dry, prepared cereals except those permitted under Diets A11-1-1-2
Desserts .....	" " " " " "
Beverages .....	Junket Fruit juices or fruitades to which salt or sodium benzoate has been added. (Read labels )
Condiments .....	Salt, celery, onion and garlic salt; monosodium glu- tamate, meat tenderizers containing sodium, commercial meat sauces, onion and parsley flakes, prepared mustard, ketchup, soya sauce, tomato paste
Miscellaneous .....	Baking powder, baking soda, pickles, olives, relishes; chewing tobacco, salted nuts, peanut butter, molasses, commercial syrups, pretzels, Fritos, potato chips and other snacks in which salt has been added, candy to which sodium benzoate has been added All medications containing sodium

of spices added and is very palatable. However, many salt substitutes contain potassium and may be contraindicated if there is kidney damage. The patient should consult his doctor before proceeding to use a salt substitute.

Another warning for the patient on salt restriction is that he must omit such compounds as baking powder, baking soda and drugs containing sodium. Reading labels is important here also.

(A recipe for low sodium baking powder will be found in Chap 50.)

The drinking water in some areas of the country has a high salt content.

The patient can obtain information about the sodium content of his city's water by contacting the department of health.

**VERY LOW SODIUM DIET\***  
(Contains 200–400 mg. Sodium)

Follow the restrictions on the Low Sodium Diet (600–1,200 mg. Sodium) with further restrictions as follows.

Milk . . . . .	Only low sodium milk is allowed, at least 1 pint a day. Two ozs. of regular cream are permitted.
Soups . . . . .	Only unsalted cream soups made from low sodium milk and allowed vegetables are permitted.
Vegetables . . . . .	Omit vegetables high in sodium content: artichokes, beets, celery, kale, Swiss chard, spinach, frozen peas.
Desserts . . . . .	Allow only fruit, fruit ice, gelatin made with fresh fruit juices, unsalted desserts made from low sodium milk

Beverages . . . . . Omit carbonated beverages and ginger ale.  
All other restrictions on the Low Sodium Diet must be observed.

\* From the Department of Nutrition, The New York Hospital

*Teaching the Patient*

A booklet, "Planning Low Sodium Meals," similar to Meal Planning and Exchange Lists for the diabetic patient (see Chap. 22) is available from the Nutrition Foundation, Inc., 99 Park Avenue, New York 16, New York. It lists foods which have approximately the same sodium as well as protein, fat and carbohydrate content and may be exchanged for each other. The diet as a whole is guided by the prescription of the doctor. The booklet also contains

public health agencies and, like "Planning Low Sodium Meals," are intended to help the patient achieve the level of sodium restriction his doctor wishes him to maintain. The booklets may be obtained from the Education Department of The American Heart Association, Inc., 44 East 23rd Street, New York 10, New York. In teaching the patient on a salt-

circumstances and his cultural background. Both the wife and the husband should be taught what is required if the husband is the patient. Since an older patient may live with a son or a daughter, whoever is the homemaker should receive instruction along with the patient.

Patients who do not have adequate

They are:

Strict Sodium Restriction—500 mg. of sodium

Moderate Sodium Restriction—1,000 mg. of sodium

Mild Sodium Restriction—2,400 to 4,500 mg. of sodium

These booklets have been prepared and are sponsored by a group of interested

made by salt restriction sodium patients, in the habit of cooking with bacon or salt pork, Jewish patients, following their dietary laws of heavily salting their meats before cooking (koshering); Italian patients accustomed to the use of

**MENU FOR A LOW SODIUM DIET**  
(Containing 600 Mg Sodium)

MEAL	FOOD	AMOUNT ALLOWED	Gm	SODIUM Mg	PROTEIN Gm	FAT Gm	CARBO- HYDRATE Gm	CALO- RIES
Breakfast	Grapefruit	½ medium	100	1	1		10	40
	Unsalted oatmeal	1 serving	100	1	2	1	11	83
	Egg	1	54	85	6	6		77
	Unsalted bread	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	63
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1		8		72
	Milk	½ glass	120	60	4	5	6	82
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12				12	48
	Coffee	1 pot						
				135	15	21	51	445
Lunch	Unsalted spaghetti	¾ c.	100	1	5	1	90	149
	with unsalted tomatoes and unsalted ground beef	¾ c.	100	3	1		4	19
	Unsalted asparagus	1 oz	30	21	7	6		81
	Lettuce	1 serving	75	11	2		1	20
	Unsalted French dressing	1 serving	50	7			1	7
	Fresh pear	1 tablespoon	15			5	3	59
	Unsalted bread	1 medium	100	2	1		18	101
	Unsalted butter	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	63
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1		8		72
	Milk	1 glass	240	120	8	10	12	166
				164	26	31	82	701
Dinner	Unsalted roast lamb	3 ozs	90	81	22	17		247
	Unsalted parsley potato	1 small	100	3	2		19	83
	Unsalted carrots	1 serving	75	37	1	1	5	28
	Orange and apple salad	1 serving	100	1	1		14	90
	Unsalted mayonnaise	1 serving	100	1				52
	Tapioca pudding	1 tablespoon	15	1		11		99
	Unsalted bread	1 serving	100	100*	5	5	21	149
	Unsalted butter	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	83
	Unsalted butter	1 tablespoon	14	1		11		100
	Milk	½ glass	120	60	4	5	6	82
				291	37	31	77	901
Totals for the day				590	78	103	210	2,047

Protein, fat, carbohydrate and calorie figures from Table 1, Part Four

Sodium figures from Table 5, Part Four

\* Approximate

tomato paste and cheese. Chinese and Japanese patients for whom soy sauce is a usual accompaniment of many of their foods—all will need special help in understanding their problems. Again the nurse and the dietitian must work in close co-operation, sharing their observations so that not only will they give the patient the information that he needs

but help in the adjustments he will have to make. Chapter 11 will be found useful in learning cultural food patterns.

## VASCULAR DISEASES

### Atherosclerosis

As was explained earlier in the chapter, atherosclerosis, or fatty infiltration of

the blood vessels, is now considered a distinct disease entity. It is accompanied by a rise in the blood levels of cholesterol and of large molecules, consisting of fat and protein, called lipoproteins. It is thought that the high levels of cholesterol and lipoproteins may represent altered fat metabolism and that they bear a direct relationship to the development of atherosclerosis.

Coronary occlusion, the occlusion of one of the arteries which provide blood to the heart muscle, may occur as a result of atherosclerosis. The patient who has suffered a coronary occlusion, with the resulting damage to the heart muscle, may with appropriate treatment recover to a large degree without chronic cardiac impairment. When the coronary occlusion is severe, however, death may be instantaneous. The disease attacks men in the prime of life and is a common cause of death in the middle years. It is therefore of the utmost importance that the cause and the prevention of atherosclerosis be discovered.

The etiology of atherosclerosis is ob-

mones are a protective factor. Diabetes may predispose to the early development of atherosclerosis, although the reason is unknown. Heredity also seems to play a role, some families having a greater incidence of the disease than

vessels, which in turn may favor the laying down of fatty plaques.

Obesity and sedentary living undoubtedly have a share in the development of atherosclerosis. Life insurance company statistics show a far greater incidence of coronary artery disease in the overweight individual than in those of normal weight. It is possible that not only may decreased physical activity affect the development of overweight

but it may directly influence blood flow and the laying down of fatty plaques in the blood vessels.

Perhaps the most controversial issue is the effect of fat intake on the development of atherosclerosis. The percentage of calories derived from fat in the American diet has increased considerably in the past 50 years.<sup>1</sup> This may lead to an increase in the blood level of lipoproteins and cholesterol, and possibly stimulate the development of atherosclerosis. The type of fat has also been thought to be a factor. Animal fats such as butter, meat fats and egg fat, and hydrogenated vegetable fats, all of which contain a fair proportion of saturated fatty acids, increase the blood levels of cholesterol and lipoproteins. On the other hand, the vegetable oils such as corn, soybean and cottonseed oils, which contain a large percentage of unsaturated fatty acids, tend to lower the levels of cholesterol and lipopro-

effective agent in lowering the blood lipids. (See Chap. 3 for discussion and tables of content of essential fatty acids in food.) It is interesting to note that lowering the cholesterol content of the diet has no effect on blood-cholesterol levels, probably because the body is able to synthesize this substance as needed.<sup>2</sup>

Pyridoxine, or vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, has also been implicated in the disease, since it is involved in the metabolism of fat. It has been suggested that atherosclerosis may be due to a pyridoxine deficiency, leading to changes in fat metabolism.<sup>3</sup> Excellent reviews of the present state of our knowledge of the etiology of athero-

<sup>1</sup> McCann, M. B., and Trulson, M. J. *Am. Dietet. A.* 33:358, 1957.

<sup>2</sup> Ahrens, E. H., Jr., et al.: *J.A.M.A.* 164. 1905, 1957.

<sup>3</sup> Keys, A., et al.: *J. Nutrition* 111: 39, 1956.

<sup>4</sup> Schroeder, H. A.: *J. Chron. Dis.* 2: 28, 1955.

## A VERY LOW FAT, LOW CHOLESTEROL DIET\*

## Foods Allowed:

Milk	skim milk, and
Cheese	
Fats	vegetable
Eggs	1 egg yolk and 1 egg white
Vegetables	As desired, including potato. At least 3 to 4 servings a day, with generous servings of deep green or yellow vegetables to provide carotene for vitamin A
Fruits	As desired. At least 2 servings, 1 citrus
Bread, cereals, Italian pastes	3 or more slices whole-grain or enriched bread plus a serving of cereal. Macaroni, spaghetti and noodles as desired. Omit egg noodles
Desserts	Fruit, gelatin, angel food cake, cereal puddings made from milk allowance, fruit ices
Beverages	Skim milk, tea, coffee, carbonated beverages, cocoa made from skim milk
Miscellaneous	Jelly, jam, marmalade, honey, molasses, syrup and sugar as desired

## Foods To Be Avoided:

Milk	Whole milk
Cheese	
Fats	
Eggs	
Meats, fish, fowl	
Soups	
Bread	
	such as some types of pastry
Desserts	All except those allowed
Miscellaneous	Fish liver oils, chocolate

\* This diet will contain between 25 and 30 Gm fat and from 100 to 125 mg cholesterol. If a lower cholesterol diet is wanted, substitute a serving of cottage cheese for 1 serving of meat, fish or fowl. See Table 4, Part Four, for cholesterol content of foods.

sclerosis may be found in articles by Page<sup>6</sup> and van Itallie<sup>7</sup>

<sup>6</sup>Page, J. H., et al. J.A.M.A. 164:2047, 1957.

<sup>7</sup>van Itallie, T. B. J. Am. Dietet. A. 33:352, 1957.

## Dietary Treatment

The prevention of atherosclerosis is made difficult by the fact that we do not know its cause. Page<sup>7</sup> states:

<sup>7</sup>Op. cit.



The keypoints of nutritional common sense for better health generally, and most likely in regard to atherosclerosis specifically, consist of a balanced, varied diet which adjusts total calories to reach or maintain desirable weight, and which provides less fat, more protein from lean meat, fish, poultry and cereals, and a reasonable selection of fruits and vegetables as well as animal foods.

Stare<sup>8</sup> recommends a 2,200-calorie diet of which 30 per cent of the calories are derived from fat for individuals who may be susceptible to atherosclerosis by heredity, by obesity or by the detection of increased blood-cholesterol levels. A week's menus are included in his article.

The presence of atherosclerosis is usually not known until coronary occlusion occurs. During the acute stage of cardiac

for this restriction and the foods allowed and to be avoided on these diets will be found earlier in the chapter.

After recovery from the acute attack, the physician may advise a low fat diet in the hope of preventing a recurrence. Morrison<sup>9</sup> reports a 56 per cent survival rate in postcoronary patients placed on a diet containing 25 Gm. fat and 75 mg. cholesterol, compared with a similar

restricted on such a diet will be found on page 343. It will be seen that the diet will be low in calories because of the fat restriction but that otherwise it may be made adequate for normal nutritional needs.

### HYPERTENSION

Hypertension may result from arterio-

<sup>8</sup> Stare, F. J., et al. J.A.M.A. 164 1920, 1957.

<sup>9</sup> Morrison, L. M.: J.A.M.A. 159 1425, 1955.

sclerosis or kidney disease. It also occurs as a separate disease entity of unknown etiology. In most patients it is benign for many years, although eventually cardiac failure, cerebral hemorrhage or chronic kidney disease may follow. When hypertension occurs in young people, it is termed essential hypertension, and if this progresses rapidly to cardiac and kidney failure, it is known as malignant hypertension.

Recent work by Dahl<sup>10</sup> indicates that the salt intake of the individual may play a role in the development of hypertension. In a study of over 1,300 subjects, he found that less than 1 per cent of those who habitually had a low salt intake demonstrated hypertension, while among those ingesting an average amount of salt the incidence was 6.8 per cent, and among those with a high salt intake the number of individuals with hypertension rose to 10.5 per cent.

The following table presents the average blood pressure of men at varying ages. Any pressure that is decidedly above or below these figures is considered abnormal.

AVERAGE BLOOD PRESSURE OF MEN  
(UNITED STATES AND CANADA)

Age	Systolic	Diastolic	Pulse Pressure
20 ....	120	80	40
25 ....	122	81	41
30 ....	123	82	41
35 ....	124	83	41
40 ...	126	84	42
45 ....	128	85	43
50 ....	130	86	44
55 ....	132	87	45
60 ....	135	89	46

Use of Diet to Prevent Hypertension

<sup>10</sup> Dahl, L. K.: J. Am. Dietet. A. 34:585, 1958.

without causing unpleasant or dangerous side effects.

and that marks about the only area in

### Dietary Treatment

As in atherosclerosis, there is great difference of opinion in regard to the dietary treatment of hypertension and hypertensive diseases. In an admirable review of the subject, Page<sup>11</sup> says: "In overweight hypertensive patients the total caloric intake should be reduced,

on a low caloric diet (see Chap. 21) until his weight is at normal or just below normal levels for his height and build. After this, he should be kept on the required calories to maintain this weight.

If cardiac damage has resulted from the hypertensive disease, one of the

<sup>11</sup> Page, I H. J.A.M.A. 147:1311, 1951

### VERY LOW SODIUM DIET FOR HYPERTENSION (Contains Less Than 200 Mg of Sodium)

MEAL	FOODS	AMOUNT ALLOWED	Gm.	SODIUM* Mg	CALORIES†
Breakfast	Orange, sliced	1 medium	100	1	45
	Shredded wheat	1	30	2	100
	with low sodium milk	½ c	120	2 6	70
	Unsalted cinnamon toast	2 slices	46	14	126
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1	70
	Coffee				
	Cream, light	2 tablespoons	30	12	60
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12		48
				32 6	519
Lunch	Unsalted roast chicken	1 serving	75	56	150
	Unsalted Lima beans, fresh	1 serving	75	1	72
	Unsalted eggplant, fried	1 serving	75	2	18
	with vegetable fat	1 tablespoon	15		135
	Head lettuce	1 serving	35	5	6
	with unsalted				
	French dressing	1 tablespoon	15		45
	Bread, unsalted	1 slice	23	7	63
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1	70
	Fruit Jello (gelatin,				
	fruit juice, fruit)	1 serving	100	2	110
	Cocoa with low sodium milk	1 c	240	6.2	140
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12		48
				60 2	657
Supper	Unsalted cottage cheese	2 ozs	60	12	57
	Tomatoes, sliced	1 medium	100	11	20
	Potato, baked	1 medium	100	3	100
	Bread, unsalted	1 slice	23	7	63
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1	70
	Grapes	1 serving	100	11	70
	Coffee				
	Cream, light	2 tablespoons	30	12	60
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12		48
				41	488
Totals for day				153 8	1,864

\* Sodium figures from Table 5, Part Four

† Caloric values from Table 1, Part Four

diets low in sodium described earlier in this chapter as indicated. For kidney involvement, see Chapter 28 for dietary treatment.

**The Role of Sodium.** Experimental and clinical evidence indicates that the rigid restriction of sodium in the diet results in a decided reduction in the blood pressure of hypertensive patients. By the use of the rice diet and other diets low in sodium, Kempner,<sup>12</sup> Grollman<sup>13</sup> and others<sup>14</sup> have presented evidence that many hypertensive patients have been helped by a drastic restriction in sodium.

The Kempner<sup>12</sup> rice diet has been used in the treatment of both hypertensive vascular disease and kidney disease. Kempner<sup>12</sup> has reported beneficial results in 138 of 213 patients treated. The diet consists of rice, fruit, fruit juices and sugar, and contains approximately 2,000 calories, 20 Gm. of protein, 5 Gm. of fat and 460 Gm. of carbohydrate. It contains only 0.2 Gm. or 200 milligrams (mg.) or less of sodium. The fluid intake is limited to from 700 to 1,000 cc. of fruit juices, no water being allowed.

Kempner describes the diet as follows.

The average patient can eat 200 to 300 Gm. or 8½ to 10 ozs. of rice daily, which will provide 700 to 1,050 calories.

plain water or fruit juices, without salt, milk or fat.

The diet is supplemented with vitamins and iron. See Chapter 50 for recipes permitted on this diet.

**Very Low Sodium Diet.** Grollman<sup>17</sup> says that "it is very probable that the incidental salt restriction is responsible for the results reported recently by Kempner." Grollman chose foods of very low sodium content, limiting the sodium in the diet to 200 mg. or less. The diet follows that described under the Very Low Sodium Diet (p. 340) but must be calculated for sodium content to ensure its remaining below 200 mg. per day. (See p. 345 for sample diet and Table 5, Part Four, for Sodium Content of Foods.) The diet differs from the Moderate Sodium Restrictions in that only low sodium milks are allowed; meats, fish and fowl are chosen from those containing least sodium; no high sodium vegetables are permitted, and desserts are severely limited. The Very Low Sodium Diet is decidedly lacking in flavor. Much can be done, however, to make it less objectionable if due consideration is given to preparation, appearance and contrast in color and flavors, and the use of garnishes as well as of the seasonings mentioned earlier in the chapter.

Salt substitutes may be used, but these should be approved by the physician. Salt substitutes containing potassium are contraindicated if there is kidney disease.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why may the patient with cardiac disease develop edema?
2. Why will a diet restricted in salt aid in preventing or eliminating edema in the cardiac patient?
3. Make out a menu for a day for a 40-year-old patient suffering from cardiac disease.

soft-cooked eggs, refined bread toast,

<sup>17</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>12</sup> Kempner, W.: North Carolina M. J. 5:125, 273, 682, 117, 1944-1945.

<sup>13</sup> Grollman, Arthur, *et al.* J.A.M.A. 129:533, 1945.

<sup>14</sup> Watkin, D. M.: Am. J. Med. 9:441, 1950.

<sup>15</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>16</sup> *Op. cit.*

butter, custard and junket (within the

Which nutrients are likely to be low?  
How can some of these be made up?

5 Which foods must be omitted on all varieties of sodium-restricted diets?

6 Compare the restrictions between Moderately Low, Low and Very Low Sodium Diets

7 What are some dietary principles other than salt restriction which the cardiac patient should observe?

8 Which cooking ingredients and seasonings must a patient on a salt-poor diet be warned not to use?

9. Which seasonings, spices and condiments may be used to make a salt-poor diet more palatable?

10 What warning must be given a patient about the use of salt substitutes?

11. How may a patient obtain information about the sodium content of his city's drinking water?

12. What aids are available for teaching patients on sodium-restricted diets? How should these be used?

13 What are some of the regional and cultural food patterns which may make it difficult for a patient to adhere to a sodium-restricted diet?

14. Make out a menu for a patient on a 1,500 calorie low sodium diet who must carry his lunch

15 Look at the tables in Chapter 3 dealing with the amounts of linoleic acid in various foods. Which of these are "table fats"?

16 Make out a menu for a day for a very low fat, low cholesterol diet. Is it palatable?

17 Make out a menu for a day for a patient on a Kempner rice diet. What are some of the problems that this diet raises?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

diets low in sodium described earlier in this chapter is indicated. For kidney involvement, see Chapter 28 for dietary treatment.

**The Role of Sodium.** Experimental and clinical evidence indicates that the rigid restriction of sodium in the diet results in a decided reduction in the blood pressure of hypertensive patients. By the use of the rice diet and other diets low in sodium, Kempner,<sup>12</sup> Grollman<sup>13</sup> and others<sup>14</sup> have presented evidence that many hypertensive patients have been helped by a drastic restriction in sodium.

The Kempner<sup>15</sup> rice diet has been used in the treatment of both hypertensive vascular disease and kidney disease. Kempner<sup>16</sup> has reported beneficial results in 138 of 213 patients treated. The diet consists of rice, fruit, fruit juices and sugar, and contains approximately 2,000 calories, 20 Gm. of protein, 5 Gm. of fat and 460 Gm. of carbohydrate. It

The average patient can eat 200 to 300 Gm. or 6½ to 10 ozs. of rice daily,

allowed, with the exception of dates, avocados and any dried or canned fruit or fruit derivatives to which substances other than sugar have been added. No salt is permitted. All fruit juices are allowed, but tomato or vegetable juices are not given. Brown or white sugar may be used ad libitum. Any kind of rice is used. The rice is boiled or steamed in

plain water or fruit juices, without salt, milk or fat.

The diet is supplemented with vitamins and iron. See Chapter 50 for recipes permitted on this diet.

**Very Low Sodium Diet.** Grollman<sup>17</sup> says that "it is very probable that the incidental salt restriction is responsible for the results reported recently by Kempner." Grollman chose foods of very low sodium content, limiting the sodium in the diet to 200 mg. or less. The diet follows that described under the Very Low Sodium Diet (p. 340) but must be calculated for sodium content to ensure remaining below 200 mg. per day. (See p. 345 for sample diet and Table 5, Part Four, for Sodium Content of Foods.) The diet differs from the Moderate Sodium Restrictions in that only low sodium milks are allowed; meats, fish and fowl are chosen from those containing least sodium, no high sodium vegetables are permitted, and desserts are severely limited. The Very Low Sodium Diet is decidedly lacking in flavor. Much can be done, however, to make it less objectionable if due consideration is given to preparation, appearance and contrast in color and flavors, and to the use of garnishes as well as of the seasonings mentioned earlier in the chapter.

Salt substitutes may be used, but these should be approved by the physician. Salt substitutes containing potassium are contraindicated if there is kidney disease.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why may the patient with cardiac disease develop edema?
2. Why will a diet restricted in salt aid in preventing or eliminating edema in the cardiac patient?
3. Make out a menu for a day for a 40-year-old patient recovering from car-

soft-cooked eggs, refined bread toast,

<sup>17</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>12</sup> Kempner, W.: North Carolina M J 5, 125, 273, 6.62, 117, 1944-1945.

<sup>13</sup> Grollman, Arthur, et al.: JAMA. 129, 533, 1945.

<sup>14</sup> Watkin, D. M.: Am. J. Med 9, 441, 1950

<sup>15</sup> *Op. cit.*

<sup>16</sup> *Op. cit.*

anism may be affected, and substances normally not found in the urine, such as albumin, one of the proteins in the blood, may now be present. Conversely, substances cleared from the blood in the healthy kidney may now not be fully eliminated. Two of these are urea and, in very severe disease, potassium. They will be found in increased quantities in the blood. For these reasons a urine analysis and a blood chemistry test are often determining factors in the diagnosis of kidney disease.

### NEPHRITIS

Nephritis, known also as Bright's disease, is a general term used to denote disease of the kidney due to inflammation and resultant degenerative changes. Different parts of the nephron unit may be affected in varying degree. For example, most cases of nephritis show the principal injury in the glomeruli, but in some cases changes in the tubules may be more prominent.

**Etiology.** Nephritis may follow a generalized infection such as scarlet fever or a hemolytic streptococcal infection of the throat. Since it is the glomeruli

which are affected, this type of kidney damage is usually called glomerulonephritis. Nephritis also may occur in long-standing degenerative changes in the blood vessels as a result of arteriosclerosis. This is known as nephrosclerosis. Glomerulonephritis occurs more commonly in the younger age groups, while nephrosclerosis is associated with middle and later life.

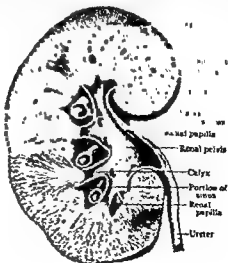
### GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Glomerulonephritis may be acute, subacute or chronic; and it may be complicated by edema or uremia, the latter being the result of the accumulation of protein waste products in the blood. Nephritis may be of short duration, as in the acute form, or of many years' duration, as in the chronic type. It is evident that no one type of diet is applicable to all kinds of nephritis.

#### Acute Glomerulonephritis

**Etiology and Symptoms.** Acute glomerulonephritis is characterized by inflammation of the kidney following some of the contagious diseases of childhood, such as scarlet fever and chicken-

Fig 77 A section through a kidney showing the cortex more or less striated due to the parallel tubules which merge into the medullary rays sections or medullae. From the apex of each medulla (renal papilla) urine passes into the renal calyx, collects in the renal pelvis, and is finally eliminated through the ureter (Piersol, G. A. Human Anatomy, Philadelphia, Lippincott).



## *Functions of the Kidneys*

### *Nephritis*

### *Glomerulonephritis*

#### *Acute*

#### *Chronic*

### *Nephrosclerosis*

### *Uremia*

### *Kidney Failure*

### *Nephrosis*

### *Kidney Stones*

## CHAPTER TWENTY-EIGHT

# Diseases of the Kidney

### FUNCTIONS OF THE KIDNEYS

The kidneys have been described as the "excretory servant of the body."

ease by changing the concentration of substances excreted in the urine. Practically all the waste products resulting from metabolism, except carbon dioxide, are carried by the blood to the kidneys, where the blood is filtered and the waste products are eliminated.

The kidneys are indeed a great filtering plant, provided as they are with about 1 million units called nephrons or renal units, each of which contributes its mite to the performance of this function. The nephron consists of a tuft of capillaries—the glomerulus—surrounded by a covering or capsule which merges into a long winding tubule. The fluid which filters through the glomerulus is a protein-free filtrate of the blood plasma. This passes through the tubules, where much

of it is reabsorbed into the blood, the

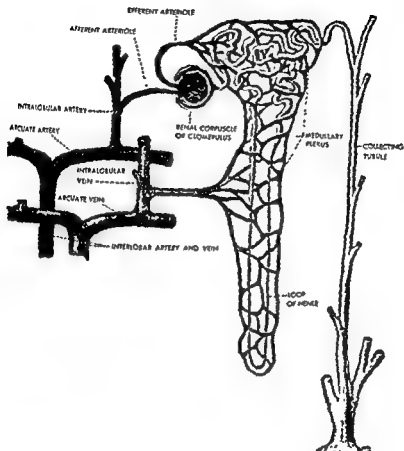
it accumulates and in due time is eliminated from the body (see Fig. 77 and Plate 3).

Water is by far the chief constituent of the urine, the quantity varying mainly with the amount taken into the body and the amount excreted by means of the skin and the lungs. Normal urine contains only about 5 per cent of solids, consisting of salts, both basic and acid, and the end-products of protein metabolism, of which the largest constituent is urea.

The kidneys are subject to disease as are other organs of the body. Infection may occur, as in pyelonephritis, there may be inflammation, as in nephritis and nephrosis, or the kidney pathways may be blocked by the formation of kidney stones. It is in the last two disease processes that diet is a factor in treatment.

In kidney disease the filtering mech-

# PLATE 3



A schematic drawing of the nephron, showing arterial and venous circulation. Water and water-soluble substances are filtered from the glomerular blood capillaries into the tubule. In the tubule, all of the glucose and most of the water, sodium and other components of the glomerular filtrate are reabsorbed into the surrounding capillary bed. The remainder passes from the collecting tubule into the pelvis of the kidney and finally by way of the ureter, into the bladder. (Sharp & Dolan: *Seminar*, vol. 5, no. 8, August, 1947)



pox. It may also follow tonsillitis, sinusitis, pneumonia or influenza. It occurs more frequently in childhood or early adult life than in later years. It may be characterized by a diminished secretion of the urine, a condition known as oliguria; by nausea and vomiting; and by edema and hypertension. The urine is cloudy due to its content of albumin, casts and red and white blood cells. The disease usually is self-limiting, and complete recovery results. In a few cases the disease may go on to chronic glomerulonephritis.

### Dietary Treatment

The aim in the treatment of such a condition is rest for the kidneys, disregarding, if necessary, for a few days the general nutrition of the patient.

Fluids should be limited to a little more than the output if oliguria is present. The total fluids usually are restricted to from 800 to 1,000 cc. Fruit juices and ginger ale may be substituted for water. As the oliguria diminishes the fluids are increased.

Salt. When edema is present the diet is restricted in salt. (See Low Sodium Diets, Chap. 27.)

Protein. In the first 2 or 3 weeks, protein may be

the first 2 or 3 weeks, protein may be

### Chronic Glomerulonephritis

tion for obtaining life insurance. The urine is usually abundant in quantity and of low specific gravity, and it may show much or comparatively little albumin and few casts. There may be morning headache, and the patient may be annoyed by the necessity of frequent urination during the night, which indicates that the kidneys are having to work overtime to complete their task. As time goes on, these symptoms become more severe; polyuria develops, the blood pressure rises, and there is urea nitrogen retention in the blood, known as uremia. Edema, which is usually present, at

of serum protein and a lowered osmotic pressure of the blood. Uremia, like coma in diabetes, is a very serious complication, the treatment for which is described later in this chapter.

### Dietary Treatment

Protein. There are two schools of thought regarding the protein content of the diet in chronic glomerulonephritis. One group holds that the loss of serum protein in the form of albumin from the kidneys must be compensated for by a relatively high protein diet. For an adult with glomerulonephritis, these physicians prescribe 60 to 70 Gm. of protein per day for normal maintenance, plus a sufficient amount to make up for the loss of protein excreted in the urine. This may bring the protein intake up to 100 to 125 Gm. a day.

The second group believes that kidney healing is more likely to occur, or at least the progression of the disease is slowed down, by the use of a low protein diet. Clinicians favoring this regimen allow no more than 40 to 50 Gm. of protein per day. With the low protein diet care should be taken to include as much as possible of the complete proteins, such as milk, meat and eggs. These should be distributed throughout the 3 meals in

order to obtain the best possible utilization. Calories from carbohydrate and fat should be high to prevent breakdown of body protein for energy needs.

**Salt.** Salt is usually restricted, whether edema is present or not, in the belief that the restriction of sodium will spare the kidney work. The edema which is often present in nephritis is due to the lowered osmotic pressure of the blood, caused by the loss of serum albumin in the urine. Lowering the salt in the diet decreases the sodium present in the blood and, it is hoped, will decrease the edema. That this is not always effective is probably due to a variety of causes, none of them clearly understood. For a variety of sodium-restricted diets see Chapter 27.

It should be noted also that salt substitutes that contain potassium, which may be permissible in cardiac disease, may be contraindicated in disease of the kidney. The kidney may not be able to eliminate potassium, and serious changes in electrolyte balance may result.

**Fluids.** Water and other fluids are usually not restricted, as a good fluid intake is essential for the removal of waste products. Fluids may be increased if urea nitrogen retention is present to any degree.

**High Protein, Low Sodium Diet.** Such a diet will be found on pages 319 and 320 in Chapter 25, noting the suggestions at the bottom of these pages for making the diet low in sodium. See also Chapter 50 for recipes for high protein, low sodium beverages.

**Low Protein, Low Sodium Diet.** This will be found on page 332. It should be noted that this diet is low in calories, which may make it inadequate for the nutritional needs of many patients. Suggestions for increasing the calories will be found at the bottom of the page.

## NEPHROSCLEROSIS

Nephrosclerosis occurs among older patients and is usually the result of arteriosclerosis and hypertension of long

standing. (See Chap. 27.) The blood supply to the kidney has decreased gradually because of the thickening of the wall and the closing of the lumen of the blood vessels. Usually this is accompanied by increased blood pressure and is characterized by urea nitrogen retention in the blood. In the more severe cases, mild or moderate albuminuria also may be present.

### Dietary Treatment

**Calories.** Many patients with arteriosclerosis and resulting kidney disease are overweight. If this is the case, the calories in the diet must be limited so that the patient will lose weight. (See Chap. 21 for low caloric diets.) If the patient is of normal weight, the diet should provide the normal caloric value, depending upon the activity of the patient, usually from 2,200 to 2,500 calories for the adult male.

**Protein.** If the urea nitrogen level of the blood is increased only slightly, the patient with nephrosclerosis may be allowed the normal amount of protein in the diet, so that his strength and vigor will be maintained. When the blood urea nitrogen is elevated markedly, indicating inability of the kidney to excrete normal amounts of this waste product of protein metabolism, it becomes necessary to restrict the patient's protein intake to minimal levels, usually between 40 and 50 Gm. daily. This must include as much of the complete protein foods as possible, and these should be distributed among the 3 meals to ensure adequate utilization. Such a diet will be found on page 352.

This diet contains only a little over 1,700 calories, possibly sufficient for the patient who needs to reduce his weight. For most patients, however, it will be too low for their energy needs, and additional nonprotein calories must be given in the form of sugar, jelly, fruit juice with added lactose and butter to increase the caloric value to the necessary level. Such an adequate caloric diet will



which help <sup>1</sup> make the low sodium diet more palatable and <sup>2</sup> the low sodium recipes in Chapter 50. Also, it needs again to be pointed out that patients with nephrosclerosis should not use salt

diets.)

**Fluids.** Water and other fluids are usually given liberally in order to flush out urea and other waste products being retained, unless there is kidney failure with oliguria (scanty urine). In such cases, the amount of fluid given is closely correlated with the fluid loss not only from the kidneys but also from estimated losses from the skin and the lungs

### UREMIA

All degrees of urea nitrogen retention in the blood are called uremia. In the terminal stages of either glomerulonephritis or nephrosclerosis, uremia may be severe, indicating almost complete loss of kidney function. The diet should be low in protein and salt, and fluids by mouth are adjusted to the output. Limiting the potassium in the diet is not necessary unless kidney failure occurs. The patient is critically ill, however, and he may be able to take little,

sodium.

Should persistent vomiting occur, <sup>1</sup> may be treated by alternating dry foods

ale, hot tea or barley water with sugar or fruit juices.

### KIDNEY FAILURE

Kidney failure may occur as the terminal stage of nephritis, or it may be due to hemorrhage or other temporary, although severe, restriction of blood flow to the kidney. In kidney failure little if any urine is produced, and all the waste products are retained in the blood. If an artificial kidney is available, it may be used to filter the blood of its waste products. If this is not possible, control by dietary treatment is indicated.

#### *Dietary Treatment*

must be entirely eliminated from the

The latter is particularly dangerous, as a

are given by Kolff<sup>1</sup> and appear on page 354. Hard candy may also be given. Such restriction in foods is difficult for the very ill patient, and the nurse and the dietitian must constantly reassure him about its necessity.

As the kidney recovers its function, other foods very low in protein, sodium and potassium may be added, such as unsalted cooked rice, unsalted bread and

<sup>1</sup> Kolff, W. J.: *Am. J. Med.* 12:667, 1952.

## LOW PROTEIN, LOW SODIUM DIET

MEAL	FOOD ITEMS	AMOUNT ALLOWED	Gm.	SODIUM Mg	PRO- TEIN Gm.	FAT Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE Gm.	CAL- ORIES
<i>Breakfast</i>	Orange juice	$\frac{1}{2}$ glass	100	1	1	.	11	44
	Unsalted toast	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	63
	Unsalted butter	2 teaspoons	10	1	.	8	.	71
	Unsalted oatmeal	1 serving	100	.	2	1	11	63
	Milk	$\frac{1}{2}$ glass	120	60	4	5	6	83
	Cream	4 tablespoons	60	24	2	12	2	122
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12	.	.	.	12	48
	Coffee							
				93	11	27	54	495
<i>Lunch</i>	Unsalted omelet	1 egg	54	65	8	6	..	81
	Unsalted tomato, broiled	2 halves	100	3	1	..	4	20
	Potato, baked	1 small	100	3	2	..	23	88
	Apple and celery salad	1 small	90	.	..	..	14	54
	Unsalted mayonnaise	1 stalk	10	10	.	.	1	4
	Unsalted bread	1 tablespoon	13	.	.	10	.	92
	Unsalted butter	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	63
	Unsalted butter	1 tablespoon	14	1	.	11	..	100
	Milk	1 glass	240	120	8	10	12	166
				210	19	38	66	678
<i>Supper</i>	Unsalted pot roast	Small serving	45	32	12	10	.	139
	Unsalted carrots	1 serving	75	38	1	.	5	23
	Unsalted onions	1 serving	75	8	1	.	7	28
	Unsalted roast potatoes	1 serving	100	3	2	.	19	83
	Unsalted bread	1 slice	23	7	2	1	12	63
	Unsalted butter	2 tablespoons	10	1	.	8	.	72
	Grapefruit	$\frac{1}{2}$ medium	100	1	1	.	10	40
	Coffee							
	Cream	2 tablespoons	30	12	1	6	1	60
	Sugar	1 tablespoon	12	.	.	.	12	48
				102	20	25	66	557
Totals for the day				405	50	90	186	1,750

To increase the calories, fruit juices with lactose may be given between meals, and cream may be substituted for part of the milk without altering appreciably the protein or the sodium content.

mit the

Sodium

prevent the breakdown of body protein for energy, which would add to the already accumulated end-products of protein metabolism in the blood.

Salt. Although edema seldom is present in the early stages of nephrosclerosis,

salt often is restricted moderately to save the kidney work. If edema occurs, the salt should be limited as outlined above (See also salt-restricted diets in Chap. 27.) Attention is called again to foods and flavors listed in Chapter 27



## BUTTER AND SUGAR MIXTURES FOR KIDNEY FAILURE

**Frozen Butter and Sugar Pills**

200 Gm. cane sugar  
200 Gm. unsalted butter

Cream sugar and butter together, roll into small "pills," place in refrigerator until solid. 2,250 calories

**Butter and Sugar Soup**

200 Gm. cane sugar  
20 Gm. flour  
200 Gm. unsalted butter  
600 cc. water  
Coffee or rum extract

Mix sugar and flour together. Add enough water to make a paste. Add the melted butter. Cook 20 minutes in double boiler. Add remainder of water and flavor with coffee or rum extract. 2,300 calories

crackers, butter, sugar, a few vegetables, ginger ale, root beer and some other carbonated beverages, until the patient can again tolerate a diet which meets his nutritional needs. (See Tables 1 and 5, Part Four, for protein, sodium and potassium content of foods)

**NEPHROSIS**

True nephrosis is characterized by severe loss of serum albumin from the kidney, resulting in marked edema. It occurs only in young children and will be discussed in the chapter on children's diseases (Chap. 33).

The condition sometimes referred to as the nephrotic syndrome of nephritis is so called because of the massive al-

perparathyroidism, in which disease oversecretion of the parathyroid hormone causes loss of calcium from the bones, resulting in a high blood level of calcium with increased excretion of calcium in the urine.

Normally, the urine is slightly acid and, when it becomes alkaline, either from an excess of foods rich in alkaline minerals (see Acid-Base Balance, Chap. 6) or from infection, stones composed chiefly of calcium salts of oxalates, phosphates and carbonates may occur. On the other hand, uric acid and cystine stones develop in an abnormally acid urine.

**Dietary Treatment**

**Calcium Phosphate Stones.** The dietary treatment of kidney stones depends on the chemical composition of the stone. A successful method of treating calcium phosphate stones with an aluminum hydroxide gel and a moderately low calcium and low phosphorus diet has been reported by several inves-

ages may be of value. Recipes will be found in Chapter 50.

**KIDNEY STONES**

**Etiology.** Kidney stones or urinary calculi, varying in size from fine gritty particles to those which fill the pelvis of the kidney, sometimes form in either the kidney or the bladder. They may be caused by injury to epithelial cells lining

operation, but they have a tendency to recur. The above regimen has prevented such recurrence. The aluminum hydrox-

<sup>2</sup> Shorr, E., and Carter, A. C. J.A.M.A. 144 1549, 1950

<sup>3</sup> Spellman, H. M., and Marshall, V. F.: J. Urol. 73.680, 1955.

## **Anemias**

Due to Loss of Blood

Due to Deficiencies

Nutritional Anemias

Megaloblastic Anemia

Pernicious Anemia

Dietary Recommendations for Blood Donors

Diseases Affecting the White Blood Cells

## **CHAPTER TWENTY-NINE**

# **Diseases of the Blood**

Since the blood carries the products of digestion to all tissues of the body, distributes oxygen to the cells and removes waste products, its function is vital, and any abnormal condition of it immediately interferes with the work of the body as a whole. Under certain conditions the blood plasma may have a deficiency or an excess of certain dissolved materials, but that is dependent upon other conditions in the body and will be discussed elsewhere. The red and white corpuscles and the blood platelets are the factors usually affected in diseases of the blood-forming organs.

The erythrocytes or red cells in the blood, which normally number about 5,000,000 per cu. mm. in the male and about 4,500,000 per cu. mm. in the female, are short lived and must be replaced.

Other than food deficiencies are responsible for most types of anemia, consequently, diet cannot be the only factor concerned in the treatment of these conditions.

## **ANEMIAS**

Anemia may be defined as any clinical syndrome associated with a deficiency in the quantity of blood or in the number of red cells.

Anemias and their treatment will be found in a recent article by Lichtman.<sup>1</sup> However, from the point of view of the strictly nutritional aspects, anemias may be classified into two types, those due to:

1. Loss of blood (hemorrhage)
2. Deficiency of certain substances essential to hemoglobin or red-cell formation.

## **ANEMIAS DUE TO LOSS OF BLOOD**

After hemorrhage with consequent loss in blood volume, the quantity is first restored to normal by water taken from the tissues. The thirst which often accompanies hemorrhage is the body's

<sup>1</sup> Lichtman, H. G.: J.A.M.A. 167:735, 1958

plays a very important part in supplying the necessary materials for blood building. Unfortunately, the dietary treatment of anemias is not so simple as it at first appears, because a variety of causes



adequacy. Foods Allowed and Foods To Be Avoided will be found on page 355.

**Uric Acid Stones.** Since uric acid is an end-product of purine metabolism, a low purine diet is recommended. This is discussed under Gout, Chapter 31.

**Acid and Alkaline Ash Diets.** The

tant that the patients maintain a liberal intake of fluids. This will tend to keep the urine dilute and prevent the precipitation of salts, which are the precursors of stone formation.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are the functions of the kidney? Which diseases of the kidney may occur that interfere with these functions?

2. In which circumstances is protein usually restricted in the diet? What is the purpose of such restrictions? When may protein be increased? Why?

3. Why is salt usually limited in kidney disease?

4. Which flavors and seasonings will make a sodium-restricted diet more palatable?

5. Why are salt substitutes containing potassium usually not allowed in nephritis?

6. Make out a menu for a day for a high protein, low sodium diet, using some of the recipes given in Chapter 50.

7. Add 500 calories to the low protein, low sodium menu in this chapter without increasing the protein or salt content.

8. Make out a menu for a day for a bland, low protein, low sodium semi-liquid diet for a patient critically ill with nephrosclerosis and uremia.

9. Why are sugar-butter mixtures used as food in kidney failure? Can you think of some of the objections a patient might make to this regimen? How would you answer these?

10. Look at Table 5 giving sodium

account.

11. Make out a menu for a day for a patient who has been operated on for calcium phosphate kidney stone and has been placed on a moderately low calcium and phosphorus diet. Does it meet nutritional needs? Which nutrient is low?

in the intestinal tract (most of the calcium and the iron) or in the urine. By changing the composition of the diet, the urine may be made either acid or alkaline. An acid urine may aid in dissolving alkaline stones and prevent their further formation. Likewise, an alkaline urine may affect acid stones in the same manner. Higgins<sup>4</sup> has successfully used this method in treating kidney stones.

Most vegetables and fruits will yield an alkaline ash and, therefore, aid in the formation of an alkaline urine. Meats, fish, fowl, eggs and cereals will give an acid ash when metabolized and cause the urine to be acid. Since much of the calcium of milk is re-excreted in the intestinal tract while the remainder of its mineral content is excreted in the

acid and cystine stones, vegetables and fruits should predominate, while meat, eggs and cereals are somewhat restricted. Conversely, on an acid ash diet, prescribed for calcium phosphate and calcium carbonate stones, meat, eggs and cereals are liberally included, and vegetables and fruits are restricted. A pint of milk is included on either diet. All foods should be in sufficient quantities to maintain the patient's weight.

<sup>4</sup> Higgins, C. C.: J. Urol 63 117, 1952.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

iron and protein, to be at the top of the list of foods that promote blood regeneration.

### hemoglobin regeneration

Besides liver, which should be included at least once a week, lean meat, eggs, whole-grain and enriched bread and cereals and potatoes are common and good food sources of iron and, in the case of meat and eggs, of protein. Other foods valuable for iron content which are listed in Table 1 are:

mon use, molasses. See the bar chart in Chapter 8 for iron content of common foods.

**Medications.** When it is necessary to restore the hemoglobin level promptly, iron medication as well as a diet high in protein and iron are indicated. Fortunately, most patients respond well to such a regimen.

### Megaloblastic Anemia

Megaloblastic anemia is due to a deficiency of the vitamin folic acid (folacin). It is a macrocytic (large cell) type of anemia but differs in several respects from pernicious anemia. It occurs very occasionally in pregnancy and sometimes in sprue. The cause is thought to be either a grossly inadequate diet or a disorder in the absorption and the utilization of folic acid. The anemia responds dramatically to therapy with folic acid. Infants born of mothers with this type of anemia may also develop the disorder. Treatment with folic acid effects a rapid response. Of course, if the anemia is due to a poor food intake, it is essential that the diet be improved in all respects.

### Pernicious Anemia

Pernicious anemia differs markedly from the anemias previously discussed in that it is characterized by deficient

formation of red cells. As the disease progresses the number of red blood cells decreases, while the size increases. These large cells are called macrocytes. In contrast with the nutritional anemias, pernicious anemia is associated with a disorder of the bone marrow. It is associated with a deficiency of a substance called intrinsic factor.

are formed in the red bone marrow and are not released into the blood stream until they reach a so-called mature stage, at which time they contain no nucleus. In pernicious anemia, the cells do not mature normally and they are not released in sufficient numbers from the red bone marrow, which, therefore, becomes overcrowded with these immature cells.

The cause of pernicious anemia is thought to be the lack of a so-called intrinsic factor, a component of the gastric juice. This intrinsic factor is essential for the absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, the anti-anemic factor which is stored in the liver until needed by the bone marrow for the maturation of red blood cells. Liver and liver extract, long recognized as effective therapeutic agents in pernicious anemia, are potent sources of the anti-anemic factor. However, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> has superseded the use of liver preparations. Both the anemia and the neurologic symptoms, if present, respond promptly to this substance.

During the first few days of treatment there is a marked increase in the number of immature red cells in the blood. These cells are called reticulocytes, because when they are stained the center appears as a mesh or network. After a few days this disappears, and the cells appear as normal erythrocytes. The cell count and hemoglobin continue to increase until the normal levels are reached, and these are maintained as long as therapy is continued. Appetite and digestion also improve.

mechanism for demanding an increased intake of water. If necessary, some of the blood volume may be restored by transfusion. The blood must then be improved in quality by the production of more red cells and hemoglobin. In an otherwise normal individual recovery is spontaneous, but the red cells are replenished more rapidly than is hemoglobin. The latter will be restored gradually, but the speed of its restoration seems to depend largely upon the diet of the individual. The necessary food materials must be supplied in the diet in order that each of these red cells may contain the normal amount of hemoglobin.

### ANEMIAS DUE TO DEFICIENCIES

This group includes the anemias caused by two types of deficiencies.

1. Deficiency in substances necessary for hemoglobin formation, such as iron, protein, and folic acid. These are sometimes called secondary anemias.

2. Deficiency in substances necessary for red-cell formation and the release of these cells from the bone marrow.

#### Nutritional Anemias

**Iron-deficiency anemias** are most often encountered in infancy, in adolescence, in pregnancy and in diseases which interfere with the absorption or the utilization of iron.

**IN INFANCY.** Normally the quantity of iron stored in the liver of the newborn infant is sufficient for blood building, even on the low iron diet of milk ingested for the first 2 to 3 months, although from then on foods containing iron should be included in the infant's diet. Anemia in infancy may be due to an inadequate prenatal storage of iron. This deficiency may be caused by the inadequate intake of iron-rich foods by the mother during her pregnancy; by prematurity, when there has not been time enough to lay down a storage of iron; or by multiple births, when the maternal supply of iron, ordinarily ade-

quate for one infant, may not have been sufficient for two or more.

Later in the first year of the infant's life, if a variety of foods has not been added to his diet, anemia may occur as a dietary deficiency disease.

**IN ADOLESCENCE.** Anemia may occur in adolescent girls for a variety of reasons. It may be associated with excessive menstruation, not compensated for by an adequate dietary intake of iron. The

of nutritional anemia is far more prevalent among young women than is generally supposed, and is bound to interfere with health and vigor.

**IN PREGNANCY.** If the mother's diet is not rich in iron-containing foods, a temporary state of anemia may occur owing to withdrawal of body iron by the fetus. Adequate storage of iron in the fetus appears to depend largely on the amount of iron in the mother's diet. Anemia in either the mother or the infant will be prevented if care is taken to include a generous supply of the iron-rich foods in the diet.

**LACK OF ABSORPTION.** In diseases complicated by low gastric acidity, the iron in the diet may not be absorbed, because iron will remain in solution only in an acid medium. Medications, both of hydrochloric acid and iron, often are necessary to keep the hemoglobin level at normal figures, although the diet should be investigated for possible inadequacies.

#### Dietary Treatment of Hemorrhagic and Nutritional Anemias

An increased supply of iron and protein is the important factor to stress in a diet which must be adequate also in all other dietary essentials. Whipple<sup>2</sup> and his co-workers found liver, high in both

<sup>2</sup> Whipple, G. H., and Robscheit-Robbins, F. S.: *Am J Physiol* 72: 408, 1925.

iron and protein, to be at the top of the list of foods that promote blood regeneration. Other investigators have shown experimentally that diets high in iron but inadequate in protein will not promote hemoglobin regeneration.

Besides liver, which should be included at least once a week, lean meat, eggs, whole-grain and enriched bread and cereals and potatoes are common and good food sources of iron and, in the case of meat and eggs, of protein. Other foods valuable for iron content which should appear frequently in the diet are kidney, heart, green, leafy vegetables, dried fruits such as apricots, prunes and figs, the legumes and, where it is in common use, molasses. See the bar chart in Chapter 6 for iron content of common foods.

**Medications.** When it is necessary to restore the hemoglobin level promptly, iron medication as well as a diet high in protein and iron are indicated. Fortunately, most patients respond well to such a regimen.

### Megaloblastic Anemia

Megaloblastic anemia is due to a deficiency of the vitamin folic acid (folacin). It is a macrocytic (large cell) type of anemia but differs in several respects from pernicious anemia. It occurs very occasionally in pregnancy and sometimes in sprue. The cause is thought to be either a grossly inadequate diet or a disorder in the absorption and the utilization of folic acid. The anemia responds dramatically to therapy with folic acid. Infants born of mothers with this type of anemia may also develop the disorder. Treatment with folic acid effects a rapid response. Of course, if the anemia is due to a poor food intake, it is essential that the diet be improved in all respects.

### Pernicious Anemia

Pernicious anemia differs markedly from the anemias previously discussed in that it is characterized by deficient

formation of red cells. As the disease progresses the number of red blood cells decreases, while the size increases. These large cells are called macrocytes. In contrast with the nutritional anemias, pernicious anemia is associated with a disorder of the bone marrow. It is accompanied by low gastric acidity. Sometimes tingling of the hands or the feet occurs, indicating damage to the central nervous system. Normally, the red cells are formed in the red bone marrow and are not released into the blood stream until they reach a so-called mature stage, at which time they contain no nucleus. In pernicious anemia, the cells do not mature normally and they are not released in sufficient numbers from the red bone marrow, which, therefore, becomes overcrowded with these immature cells.

The cause of pernicious anemia is thought to be the lack of a so-called intrinsic factor, a component of the gastric juice. This intrinsic factor is essential for the absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, the anti-anemic factor which is stored in the liver until needed by the bone marrow for the maturation of red blood cells. Liver and liver extract, long recognized as effective therapeutic agents in pernicious anemia, are potent sources of the anti-anemic factor. However, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> has superseded the use of liver preparations. Both the anemia and the neurologic symptoms, if present, respond promptly to this substance.

During the first few days of treatment there is a marked increase in the number of immature red cells in the blood. These cells are called reticulocytes, because when they are stained the center appears as a mesh or network. After a few days this disappears, and the cells appear as normal erythrocytes. The cell count and hemoglobin continue to increase until the normal levels are reached, and these are maintained as long as therapy is continued. Appetite and digestion also improve.

### *Dietary Treatment of Macrocytic Anemia*

A good supply of both protein and iron is as essential for this type of anemia as it is in the nutritional and the hemor-

and milk beverages, eggs, very tender meat, fish and poultry, mashed potatoes and strained vegetables and fruits such as are sold for infants are good and usually are well tolerated.

If ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) or cortisone is used in treatment, the diet may have to be low in salt, as these hormones are known to increase sodium reabsorption in the kidney. (See Chap. 27 for low-sodium diets.)

over, many patients with macrocytic anemias have a long history of a poor food intake. Therefore, the diet should be increased in vitamins and minerals in addition to iron and protein, and be adequate in calories.

### **DIETARY RECOMMENDATIONS FOR BLOOD DONORS**

In the past 10 years it has become increasingly common for individuals to donate a pint of blood once or twice a year, or even more frequently, to be used for hospital or Red Cross blood banks. Although there are no harmful effects if this is not repeated too often, it is wise for such a person to adhere to a diet adequate in all nutritional respects and well supplied with iron and protein.

### **DISEASES AFFECTING THE WHITE BLOOD CELLS**

Of the diseases affecting the white blood cells, leukemia is the most common. As in all chronic diseases, it is important to maintain good nutrition. Often this is difficult because of the pa-

painful. Therefore, food should be soft so as not to require much chewing. It should not be heavily salted or spiced; sharp fruit juices should be omitted, and such beverages as coffee and tea should not be given to the patient too hot. Milk

### **STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. What are some of the causes of nutritional anemia?

2. Which food habits of some adolescent girls may lead to nutritional anemia? Which foods are likely to be omitted? (See Chap. 14.)

3. Which foods need to be increased in pregnancy to ensure that the mother will receive sufficient iron for her own needs and those of the fetus? (See Chap. 12.)

4. At what age should solid foods be added to the baby's diet? List some of these. Which of them are high in iron? (See Chap. 13.)

5. Which foods supply the largest amount of iron in the diet? Which common foods are good sources of iron?

6. Why is an adequate supply of protein as necessary as iron in the treatment of nutritional anemia?

7. Write a menu for a day containing 12 mg. of iron. Do not use liver or other organ meats this day. Is it easy to obtain as much iron as this each day?

8. What is the function of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in pernicious anemia? How does this anemia differ from the nutritional anemias?

9. Plan a menu for a day for a patient with leukemia who has developed sore and bleeding gums, making it as adequate nutritionally and as attractive as possible.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

*Diseases of the Musculoskeletal System*

*Arthritis*

*Muscular Dystrophy*

*Collagen Diseases*

*Diseases of the Nervous System*

*Epilepsy*

*Ménière's Syndrome*

*Mental Illness*

CHAPTER THIRTY

## Diseases of the Musculoskeletal and the Nervous Systems

### DISEASES OF THE MUSCULO- SKELETAL SYSTEM

#### Arthritis

Arthritis is an inflammatory process which involves the joints. It may accompany an infection, but more commonly it is a disease entity. The two major classifications are (1) rheumatoid or

arthritis.

Rheumatoid arthritis occurs more frequently than osteoarthritis and usually starts in early adult life. Women are much more susceptible to it than men. The cause of rheumatoid arthritis is unknown. It is a painful disease, accompanied by swelling and eventual deformity of the joints. A few patients recover from the acute, initial attack, but in many patients the disease becomes chronic.

#### *Dietary Treatment*

Many dietary regimens, such as the low carbohydrate diet and the low caloric diet, have been advocated. A high dosage of vitamin D also has had its day, but after much trial and effort the consensus is that optimum nutrition in every respect is of the utmost importance.

Patients with rheumatoid arthritis are frequently underweight and malnourished. If they are in much pain, appetite may be lost. If they are very much crippled, particularly in the hands and the arms, eating may present a constant problem. Food should be placed so that it can be reached easily. Plastic utensils, cups and glasses, light in weight, are handled more easily by the crippled person than heavier silverware and china. Especially designed eating utensils such as those pictured on page 363 may prove helpful.

As has been stated earlier, the diet should provide optimum nutrition. Milk,

### *Dietary Treatment of Macrocytic Anemia*

A good supply of both protein and iron is as essential for this type of anemia as it is in the nutritional and the hemor-

over, many patients with macrocytic anemias have a long history of a poor food intake. Therefore, the diet should be increased in vitamins and minerals in addition to iron and protein, and be adequate in calories.

### **DIETARY RECOMMENDATIONS FOR BLOOD DONORS**

In the past 10 years it has become increasingly common for individuals to donate a pint of blood once or twice a year, or even more frequently, to be used for hospital or Red Cross blood banks. Although there are no harmful effects if this is not repeated too often, it is wise for such a person to adhere to a diet adequate in all nutritional respects and well supplied with iron and protein.

### **DISEASES AFFECTING THE WHITE BLOOD CELLS**

Of the diseases affecting the white blood cells, leukemia is the most common. As in all chronic diseases, it is important to maintain good nutrition. Often this is difficult because of the pa-

painful. Therefore, food should be soft so as not to require much chewing. It

not be given to the patient too hot. Milk

and milk beverages, eggs, very tender

If ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) or cortisone is used in treatment, the diet may have to be low in salt, as these hormones are known to increase sodium reabsorption in the kidney. (See Chap. 27 for low-sodium diets.)

### **STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. What are some of the causes of nutritional anemia?

2. Which food habits of some adolescent girls may lead to nutritional anemia? Which foods are likely to be omitted? (See Chap. 14.)

3. Which foods need to be increased in pregnancy to ensure that the mother will receive sufficient iron for her own needs and those of the fetus? (See Chap. 12.)

4. At what age should solid foods be added to the baby's diet? List some of these. Which of them are high in iron? (See Chap. 13.)

5. Which foods supply the largest amount of iron in the diet? Which common foods are good sources of iron?

6. Why is an adequate supply of protein as necessary as iron in the treatment of nutritional anemia?

8. What is the function of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in pernicious anemia? How does this anemia differ from the nutritional anemias?

9. Plan a menu for a day for a patient with leukemia who has developed sore and bleeding gums, making it as adequate nutritionally and as attractive as possible.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

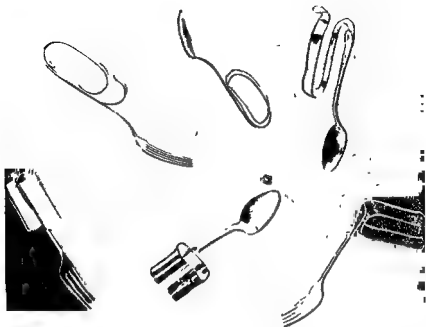


Fig 79 Self-help devices for use in eating. Feeding utensils may be bent or shaped or have metal strips attached to fit the needs of an individual patient (The Institute of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, New York University—Bellevue Medical Center. From Morrissey and Zimmerman: *Helps for the handicapped*, Am. J. Nursing 53:454, 1953)

Low sodium milk should be substituted for about half the regular milk intake each day. Tender whole meats, fish and chicken may be permitted and whole vegetables of low fiber content substituted for the strained vegetables on the Convalescent Ulcer Diet. Coffee, tea and meat broths and gravies should be avoided, for they stimulate the flow of gastric juice more than most foods. The use of spices, allowed on sodium-restricted diets, must be limited on this regimen.

Osteo-arthritis usually occurs in persons beyond middle life and, like rheumatoid arthritis, is found more frequently in women than in men. It is a painful disease, and, although it does not cause the deformity of rheumatoid

arthritis, the stiffness which the joints develop is very uncomfortable. It is thought to be a natural accompaniment of old age. Corticotropin (ACTH) and cortisone are not recommended.<sup>1</sup>

These patients often present a healthy appearance, although they are usually

that the dietary treatment should be directed toward attaining a normal weight (see Chap 21).

Gout may produce a condition resembling arthritis which results some-

<sup>1</sup> Cecil, R. L., and Loeb, R. F. *Textbook of Medicine*, ed. 9, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1955.





Fig. 78 Self-help devices for use in eating. When grasp is entirely absent, an elastic webbing cuff may be made to fit over the metacarpals of the hand. A leather strip that has been doubled and stitched in form a pocket is attached to the palmar side of the cuff. A spoon or a fork may be inserted into this pocket. [The Institute of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, New York University—Bellevue Medical Center. From Morrissey and Zimmermann: *Helps for the handicapped*, Am. J. Nursing 53:454, 1953]

eggs, meat, fish and chicken should be included in liberal amounts. Plenty of fruits and vegetables, and whole-grain and enriched bread and cereals will provide minerals and vitamins. Calories must be adequate and, if the patient is underweight, should be increased. The diet may be divided into 6 meals if the patient tires easily. If the appetite is poor, it may be best to limit the between-meal feedings to a bedtime snack, preferably a milk drink.

**Medications.** Two hormones—cortisone, similar to the hormones produced by the adrenal cortex, and corticotropin (ACTH), produced by the pituitary,

doses of one or the other hormone to remain comfortable.

Unfortunately, the continued use of these hormones may cause serious complications. Administered adrenal cortex hormones added to those normally produced by the body may lead to an increase in sodium reabsorption in the kidney and eventual edema. This calls for a diet restricted in sodium. It has also been found that the long-continued use of these hormones increases the hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice and may lead to peptic ulcer. A diet to prevent both edema and the development of peptic ulcer would be a low sodium convalescent ulcer diet.

Applying the limitations of the Mild Sodium Restricted Diet on page 337 in the Convalescent Ulcer Diet on page 298, small amounts of salt would be

mones do not cure the disease as shown by the prompt return of symptoms when the medication is withdrawn. Therefore, the patient must continue to take small

and Dilantin Sodium are the most effective means of controlling the seizures. In most instances this method of treatment has replaced other types of therapy. For some years the ketogenic diet was used widely in the treatment of epilepsy, especially for young children.

are advised, along with the drug therapy of choice, to eat a diet that will supply them with all the requirements of normal nutrition for their age and activity.

### Ketogenic Diet

Should a ketogenic diet be ordered, the following paragraphs give the char-

acteristics of such a diet. In order to obtain a state of ketosis, the diet must be very high in fat, very low in carbohydrates and moderate to low in protein. In metabolism, all of the carbohydrate, a little over half the protein and 10 per cent of the fat are converted to glucose. The remainder of the fat and the protein will produce ketone acids as intermediary metabolic products. These tend to accumulate in the body, producing a state of ketosis, which, if maintained continuously, may be effective in reducing epileptic seizures.

The ketogenic diet is difficult to follow, since the high fat, low carbohydrate intake does not lend much variety, and the large amounts of fat are often distasteful. It is an expensive diet as well,

### KETOGENIC DIET FOR A CHILD 7 TO 9 YEARS OF AGE 1,950 Calories, 40 Gm. Protein

FOOD	CALCULATION (Protein, 40 Gm ; Fat, 189 Gm ; Carbohydrate, 20 Gm.)			
	AMOUNT Gm	PROTEIN Gm.	FAT Gm	CARBOHYDRATE Gm.
<i>Breakfast</i>				
Fruit, 6%				
(or vegetable juice 100)	50	1		3
Cream, 40%	100	2	35	3
Butter or margarine	20		16	
1 egg	50	6	■	
Bacon with fat	20	2	13	
Bran soya muffin, 1	.	2	3	..
<i>Dinner</i>				
Roast beef (med. fat)	30	7	7	.
Vegetable, 3%	100	2		3
Fruit, 6%	50	1		3
Cream, 40%	50	1	18	1
Butter or margarine	25		20	.
Bran soya muffin, 1		2	■	.
<i>Supper</i>				
American cheese	30	8	10	1
Vegetable, 3%	100	2	.	3
Cream, 40%	100	2	35	3
Butter or margarine	25	.	20	.
Bran soya muffin, 1	.	2	3	.
Total	.	40	189	20

times in a permanent deformity or a crippling of the joints. For further information see Chapter 31.

### Muscular Dystrophy

Muscular dystrophy is a disease of the muscle fibers, causing progressive muscular weakness. It is accompanied by a defect in the metabolism of creatine. Large amounts are excreted in the urine, and the ability of the muscles to retain ingested creatine is impaired.<sup>2</sup> Because deficiency of vitamin E in experimental animals causes a disease similar to muscular dystrophy, it has been postulated that there may be a defect in the utilization of vitamin E by patients with this disease. However, the administration of vitamin E does not alter the course of the disease.

**Creatine Tolerance Test.** This test was devised to evaluate the extent of muscle damage involved in muscular dystrophy. The patient is given a known amount of creatine by mouth, and the urine is collected for a period of 3 to 5 days to determine how much of the ingested creatine has been excreted. In the normal person, much of the creatine would be retained by the body. In a patient with muscular dystrophy, the amount of creatine excreted in the urine above the control level indicates the extent of muscle involvement.

**Creatine-Creatinine Free Diet.** In order that foods which give rise to creatine in the body may not interfere with the test, a creatine-creatinine free diet is given for the period of the test. All meat, fish and fowl, as well as meat broths and gravies, are omitted. Gelatin, obtained from connective tissue, must not be given. Prunes, plums and cranberries are omitted, as they contain compounds which may be metabolized to creatine in the body. Commercial protein concentrates should not be given. Milk,

eggs and cheese and all other foods in the normal adequate diet are allowed.

### Collagen Diseases

A group of diseases involving the connective tissue of the body are grouped together under the name of collagen disease. Among these are lupus erythematosus, dermatomyositis, polyarteritis and scleroderma.<sup>3</sup> They are often treated

nevertheless, there may be an increase in such reabsorption when they are given in medication over and above the hormones that the adrenal cortex produces naturally. For this reason a low sodium diet may be ordered during the period of treatment. See Chapter 27 for varieties of low sodium diets.

### DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

#### Epilepsy

Epilepsy is a disorder which has afflicted mankind for many centuries. It is more often a disease of childhood and adolescence, but about one fourth of the known patients are adults.

Its chief symptom may be momentary loss of consciousness, called petit mal attacks, which may hardly be noticed, or the symptoms may be more severe, with accompanying convulsions. Contrary to popular belief, epilepsy does not cause mental deterioration except in a small percentage of cases. Most children can carry a normal level of schoolwork and some are far above average in intelligence. Both children and adults should be helped to lead lives as near normal as possible, as tension increases the number and the severity of seizures.

#### Treatment

Various therapies have been tried in the treatment of this condition. At the present time such drugs as phenobarbital

<sup>3</sup> Cecil, R. L., and Loeb, H. F.: *Op. cit.*

<sup>2</sup> Milhorat, A. T., in Cecil, R. L., and Loeb, H. F.: *Textbook of Medicine*, ed. 9, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1955

for the dietary treatment of constipation will be found in Chapter 24. Chapters 17, 18 and 20 will also be found helpful in the dietary care of this group of patients.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Make out a menu for a high caloric diet for a patient with rheumatoid arthritis who has a poor appetite. Use "easy-to-eat" foods.

2. Make some suggestions for losing weight to a patient with osteoarthritis who is overweight and inactive because of the disease.

3. What type of eating utensils may be substituted for silver and china in the badly crippled arthritic patient?

4. Why may sodium have to be restricted in the diet when cortisone or ACTH is used?

5. What may happen to the quantity of gastric juice produced in a patient on long-term cortisone or ACTH therapy?

6. Write a day's menu for a patient on a moderately low sodium, convalescent gastric ulcer diet.

7. Which foods must be omitted on a creatine-creatinine free diet? Which foods may be given freely to maintain the protein in the diet?

8. What are the principles underlying the use of the ketogenic diet?

9. What types of diet have been advocated in treating Ménière's syndrome? Why?

10. What are some of the dietary problems encountered in mentally ill patients?

11. What nutritional problems are likely to occur among elderly and senile patients?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

and calls for patience and co-operation on the part of the family and the patient if it is to be effective. The diet must be adhered to for a period of from one to several years.

A sample diet for a child 7 to 9 years old may consist of 40 Gm. protein, 190 Gm. fat and 20 Gm. carbohydrate. The ratio of glucose to ketones produced in metabolism from such a diet is approximately 1:3, which is most likely to result in ketosis.

The diet must be calculated individually and should be weighed. Calories will probably be adequate, but vitamin supplements and some form of calcium and possibly iron should be added. A sample menu for this diet appears on page 365.

### Ménière's Syndrome

Ménière's syndrome comprises a group of symptoms which include dizziness and gastro-intestinal disturbances associated with unilateral defects in hearing and in equilibrium. This syndrome is thought to be due to a swelling of the vestibular apparatus of the ear caused

### Treatment

Dietary treatment is based on abstinence from foods in which the patient is sensitive or a low sodium acid ash diet and ammonium chloride as advocated by Furstenberg<sup>4</sup> (See Chaps. 27 and 28 for salt-restricted and acid-ash diets.) Some cases respond also to vitamin therapy. Atkinson<sup>5</sup> advises a high protein, high vitamin diet with the addition of niacin in the acid form, largely for its effect as a vasodilator. For elderly people he advises another factor of the B complex, thiamine, as it is milder in its effects on the blood vessels. Because Ménière's syndrome or disease is a vaso-

spastic condition, he also states that smoking should be forbidden.

### Mental Illness

There is no specific diet therapy for mental illness. However, many problems of nutrition may occur in mentally ill patients. In the depressed patient, all interest in food may be lost, and patience and skill are necessary to encourage him to eat. The overactive patient may not be able to sit still long enough to eat. The delusional patient may project his fears and suspicions toward his food and, therefore, refuse it. Again every effort must be made to maintain such patients in a good state of nutrition. When it is not possible to persuade them to eat, it may become necessary to resort to tube feeding. Several varieties of these will be found in Chapter 32.

Mentally ill patients undergoing insulin therapy do not need a therapeutic diet if their general state of nutrition is good. The insulin which has been administered is counteracted at the end of each treatment by a large dose of glucose, either by mouth or by vein. This brings the blood sugar back to normal levels and gives the remaining insulin the necessary sugar to metabolize. For details on the action of insulin in the body, see Chapter 22.

Anorexia nervosa, typified by extreme underweight, is the manifestation of one form of mental illness. It has been discussed in Chapter 21.

Bedridden patients, particularly the old and senile, should be watched to see that they eat sufficient food and a variety of foods. These patients will turn to the foods to which they have been long accustomed, such as bread, tea and perhaps soup, to the neglect of other, more nutritious, foods. It is in this group of patients that nutritional deficiencies most often occur. If teeth are lacking, a soft diet rather than a general house diet is indicated. (See Chap. 18.) In the old or the bedridden patient, there may be a tendency to constipation. Suggestions

<sup>4</sup> Furstenberg, A. C., et al. *Ann Otol, Rhin & Laryng* 43 1035, 1934.

<sup>5</sup> Atkinson, M. *JAMA* 116 1753, 1941.

toes should be included in the diet. Cream may be substituted for part of the milk. It is best to divide the food intake into 5 to 8 meals a day. The patient may find it useful to carry crackers and a cube of cheese with him to control attacks.

### HYPERTHYROIDISM

**Etiology.** Hyperthyroidism, as the name indicates, is a condition characterized by an excessive secretion of the thyroid gland. It is known also as thyrotoxicosis, Graves's disease or Basedow's disease. The chief symptoms are nervous irritability, fatigue, weakness, rapid pulse, loss of weight and a high basal metabolic rate. The high metabolic rate, of course, accounts for the loss of weight, for it will be remembered that the thyroid gland through its internal secretion is probably the chief regulator of energy metabolism. The rate of metabolism is increased from 15 to 20 per cent above normal in mild cases to 75 per cent or more in severe cases. When the metabolic rate is excessive, not only are the

nutrients in the body burned too rapidly, but even the tissues are drawn upon as a source of additional fuel.

#### Drug Treatment

Treatment consists of suppression of the production of thyroxin by drugs or by radioactive iodine, or by excision of the gland.

#### Dietary Treatment

It is important that extra food be given and that the patient rest to prevent unnecessary expenditure of energy. When the metabolic rate is excessive, it may be necessary to increase the food intake to from 4,000 to 5,000 calories. The high caloric diet (see Chap. 21), therefore, is indicated until normal weight has been reached and the basal metabolic rate has returned to normal levels. Since many of the vitamins, especially those of the B complex, function as parts of metabolic enzymes, it may be necessary to increase the vitamin content of the diet by the use of supplements to provide for the increased me-

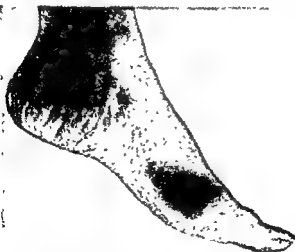


Fig. 20 Acute gouty arthritis of great toe (Cecil and Loeb: *Textbook of Medicine*, ed. 3, Philadelphia, Saunders.)

*Spontaneous Hypoglycemia*  
*Hyperthyroidism*  
*Hypothyroidism*  
*Gout*  
*Tetany*

## CHAPTER THIRTY-ONE

# Miscellaneous Metabolic Disturbance

### SPONTANEOUS HYPOGLYCEMIA

**Etiology.** Spontaneous hypoglycemia is not a clinical entity in itself but a disturbance of the carbohydrate metabolism which may be caused by a number of seemingly unrelated factors involving the liver, the pancreas and other organs of the endocrine system, as well as the nervous system. One of the chief causes, however, is hyperinsulinism, or an overproduction of insulin by the pancreas. This may be a functional disturbance, or it may be due to a tumor of the pancreas.

**Symptoms.** The symptoms are almost identical to those produced by overdoses of insulin in the treatment of diabetes mellitus.

**Hypoglycemia, or low blood sugar, is accompanied by attacks of weakness, trembling and sweating which occur**

and, because of this similarity to peptic ulcer, it is sometimes mistaken for this condition.

#### *Dietary Treatment*

A carefully planned and regulated dietary regimen is quite as important in hyperinsulinism as in diabetes mellitus where hypoinsulinism is the causative factor. The objective of treatment is to supply the body with sources of glucose in as continuous a flow as possible in order to prevent a marked rise in the blood sugar which stimulates the islet cells to produce insulin. For this reason the diet must be low in carbohydrate, while the more slowly digested and metabolized proteins and fats may be given abundantly. The diet should contain from 120 to 150 Gm protein, 150 to 200 Gm fat, sufficient to meet the caloric needs, and not more than 50 to 75 Gm carbohydrate. The carbohydrate should be in the form of the more slowly

the night. In severe cases there may be unconsciousness, convulsions and hysterical symptoms. This disease is characterized by extreme hunger—indeed, it is often known as the hunger disease. Abdominal discomfort, which is also characteristic, is relieved by taking food

used. Fatty meats, bacon, eggs, the low carbohydrate vegetables and fruits (see Table 3, Part Four), butter, mayonnaise and limited amounts of bread and pota-

due to increased formation of uric acid in the body, and not to an inability of the kidney to excrete this substance.

Treatment consists of the administration of alkali to neutralize the uric acid, and the use of a low purine diet.

#### Dietary Treatment

Since purine metabolism is disturbed, it is obvious that foods giving rise to purines should be used sparingly. All cellular tissues contain nucleoproteins from which purines are derived. Richest sources of nucleoproteins are organ meats such as liver, kidney, heart and

structure, contain no nucleoprotein and, therefore, are not a source of purines. They may be used freely in the diet.

Plant foods giving rise to small amounts of purines are whole-grain breads and cereals, dried beans, peas and lentils, and asparagus, cauliflower and spinach. The use of this group of foods should probably be somewhat restricted in the diet.

Fat is thought to prevent the excretion of uric acid from the kidney, and the diet, therefore, is usually low in fat. Calories may be made up by carbohydrate foods unless the patient is overweight, in which case the calories should be restricted.

Cutman<sup>1</sup> advises a diet low in fat and virtually free of purines during an acute attack of gout. Milk, cottage cheese and eggs are given in sufficient quantity to

but most physicians restrict their use.

Milk and eggs, having no cellular

<sup>1</sup> Cutman, A. B., and Yu, T. F., J. A. M. A. 157:1090, 1935.

#### MODERATELY LOW PURINE DIET

Milk . . . . . 2 to 3 cups. Skim milk may be substituted if fat is limited.

Cheese . . . . . As desired. Use cottage cheese only if fat is limited.

Eggs . . . . . 1 a day. (See note below.)

Fats . . . . . Butter and other fats as desired unless fat is limited.

Meat, fish, fowl\* . . . . 2 to 3 ozs. 3 to 5 times a week, or daily if allowed. Use lean beef, pork, fish.

Vegetables . . . . .

Fruits . . . . . As desired. Use citrus fruit daily.

Bread, cereals and

Italian pastes . . . . Use white, enriched bread and cereals, macaroni, spaghetti and noodles as desired. Whole-grain breads and

\* If gout, these should be omitted. Add 1 or 2 extra eggs.



tabolism. All stimulants such as coffee, tea, alcohol and tobacco are limited or omitted, depending on the doctor's orders.

### HYPOTHYROIDISM

Hypothyroidism is marked by a deficient secretion of the thyroid gland. It is also known in its advanced stage as myxedema. It is characterized by a low metabolic rate, ranging from minus 15 per cent to minus 30 per cent or more, and may be said to be the antithesis of hyperthyroidism. Because of the low metabolic rate these patients gain weight rapidly. The treatment for this condition consists of medication in the form of

terized by acute attacks of so-called gouty arthritis which may last for days or weeks, during which time certain joints, especially of the great toe and of the hands (see Figs. 80 and 81), become swollen and inflamed. Tophi,

appear entirely until another occurs.

The cause of the disturbance in purine metabolism is not known. Purines are formed in the breakdown of the nucleoproteins found in food. Purines, however, are also synthesized by the body's

ciency. (See Chaps. 6 and 20)

### GOUT

**Etiology and Symptoms.** Gout is a metabolic disorder, associated with altered purine metabolism. It is charac-

to the kidneys for excretion in the urine. In gout the level of the blood uric acid is increased, and there are deposits of sodium urate crystals in and about the joints. Eventually there may be destruction of bone (see Fig. 81) and permanent deformity. It is believed that the increased levels of blood uric acid are



Fig. 81. Bones of the hand of a normal person (left) and of one with far-advanced gout (right), showing marked skeletal changes. [The Department of Radiology, The New York Hospital]

*Preoperative Diets*  
*Postoperative Diets*  
*Specific Considerations*  
*Special Routines for Operations on the Gastro-intestinal Tract*  
*\* Tonsillectomy Diet*  
*Radical Surgery of the Mouth and the Throat*  
*Tube Feedings*  
*Burns*

## CHAPTER THIRTY-TWO

# Surgical Nutrition; Burns

### PREOPERATIVE DIETS

The type of preoperative treatment given will depend upon the type of operation, whether minor or major, and the time interval before the operation.

*Emergency operations do not permit of*

*about 24 hours preparation time.*

one

The dietary treatment of the patient in preparation for an operation depends on his condition. This is determined by physical examination and various clinical tests. For so-called subclinical deficiencies a dietary history may prove to be of value. The conditions that may have to be combated in diseases requiring major surgery are listed below.

### Symptoms Requiring Attention

1. **Loss of Weight, Strength and Recuperative Power.** Every effort should be made in such patients to increase the intake of nutritious and easily

digestible foods, such as milk or milk and cream, eggs, fruit juices fortified with lactose, high protein beverages and as much other food as the patient can tolerate without discomfort.

2. **Dehydration, or Loss of Body Fluids.** This condition may exist if there has been vomiting, diarrhea or loss of weight. The remedy consists of filling up the reservoirs of the tissues with fluids—by mouth and by intravenous infusions. In dehydration there may also be loss of salts from the tissues. Body chlorides are lost through vomiting, and sodium is then excreted via the kidney. To remedy this condition sodium chloride may be given with glucose intravenously.

3. **Loss of Glycogen from the Body Stores: in the Liver and Muscular Tissues.** To correct this condition carbohydrates should be given abundantly. Fruit juices with added lactose and hard candies are excellent sources. Glucose may be given intravenously.

4. **Hypoproteinemia, or Depletion of Serum Protein.** A high protein, high carbohydrate diet and transfusions of blood or plasma are given in preparation for surgery.

butter and other fats should be limited. When the patient has begun to recover, a moderate serving of meat, fish or fowl is added daily. The patient is kept on a moderately low purine diet to forestall further attacks if possible. See page 371 for foods allowed on a low purine diet.

### TETANY

**Etiology.** Tetany, otherwise known as spasmophilia, is a term applied to a disturbance of muscular function characterized by convulsions or other muscular spasms. It occurs much more frequently in children than in adults, although it is not uncommon in pregnancy. Sometimes the cause is due to hypoparathyroidism. It frequently occurs when some of the parathyroid glands have been removed by thyroidectomy, although there may be other causes, the exact nature of which is not always known. It is associated with disturbances of mineral metabolism, characterized usually by one of two abnormalities: (1) hypocalcemia (low blood calcium), or (2) alkalosis.

**Hypocalcemia** may be due not only to an endocrine disturbance but to a deficiency of the food intake or to a loss of calcium such as occurs in pregnancy, in osteomalacia and in fatty diarrhea. The food deficiency may be due to lack of calcium in the diet, to inability to absorb calcium or to a nonutilization of it, caused by vitamin D deficiency. The treatment, therefore, consists of large quantities of milk to provide calcium and such measures as will increase the absorption and the utilization of calcium, such as exposure to sunlight or ultraviolet light and the administration of vitamin D in the form of viosterol or

certain fish-liver oils. Calcium salts also may be administered to increase this mineral in the blood.

**Tetany due to alkalosis** may be caused by an excessive intake of base-forming or alkaline compounds, such as sodium bicarbonate, or by losses of the acids such as hydrochloric acid occasioned by prolonged vomiting. When tetany occurs from alkalosis, the treatment consists of the administration of acid therapy such as hydrochloric acid and other measures which will restore the acid-base balance of the body.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Plan a day's menu for a patient with hyperinsulinism. He is on a diet of 100 Gm. protein, 180 Gm. fat and 75 Gm. carbohydrate.

ordinary diet

4. A man weighing 150 lbs. has gout and is suffering from an acute attack.

a Plan an adequate menu for a day for him from the foods given under Moderately Low Purine Diet but omit meat, fish and fowl.

b Does this diet adequately meet all the patient's nutritional needs? (See Chap. I.)

c Which foods should be avoided entirely on a low purine diet?

d. Change your menu to make it low in fat but add enough carbohydrate foods to keep the caloric value the same

5. What are the causes of tetany? How is it treated?

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

days preceding the operation in order to have the gastro-intestinal tract as clear of partially digested food as possible. Usually, no food or fluid is allowed after midnight of the day before operation.

## POSTOPERATIVE DIETS

### Specific Considerations

The state of nutrition of the patient following operation must be maintained, but, owing to the toxicity of the anesthetic, nausea is likely to occur. The

supplies this. Of even greater importance may be the need for protein, since it is essential for the healing of wounds. Blood transfusions to supply serum proteins as well as to counteract blood loss are a routine procedure immediately after major operations. Protein hydro-

is also important. The normal avenues of fluid intake by beverage, food and metabolism of food are greatly decreased because of the inability to take anything by mouth. The usual avenues of excretion continue and may even be increased by vomiting, hemorrhage and exudation. Therefore, the intravenous use of fluids is extremely important. Usually they are given immediately after the operation to prevent dehydration and shock.

Maintenance of salt balance is equally necessary. Salts may be lost by the same routes by which fluid is lost. The use of physiologic saline is indicated

given in one solution

**Food by Mouth.** Except in operations on the gastro-intestinal tract, the first thing given by mouth is water in

vomiting, other liquids, such as tea with sugar, ginger ale and broth, are added next.

From this stage the patient will progress to a full-liquid, a soft and, finally, a general house diet. (See Chap. 18) With the early ambulation for surgical patients in vogue at the present time, there is a much more rapid recovery from the postoperative state and, therefore, a rapid increase in the diet. It is not uncommon for a patient to be on a general diet by the second postoperative day. The great advantage of this rapid progression in dietary intake is that there is little loss in the nutritional state of the patient and, therefore, more rapid recovery.

**Complications.** In patients in whom recovery from surgery is slowed for some reason, the problem of maintaining nutrition may become acute. Holden<sup>1</sup> has shown that both weight and tissue nitrogen losses occur very rapidly when post-surgical patients do not have a sufficient caloric intake. Intravenous glucose and amino acids cannot be given in sufficient quantities to meet caloric and protein needs; consequently, body protein and fat are broken down. For some years research has been carried on to perfect a

patient's caloric needs and prevent weight and tissue loss. Until such time, every effort must be made to increase the food intake by mouth. When it is not possible for the patient to eat all the food served to him, tube feedings may have to be resorted to (See end of this chapter)

<sup>1</sup> Holden, W. D., et al: *Ann. Surg.* 14 563, 1957.

5. **Edema or Retention of Body Fluid in the Tissues.** If this is the result of a low level of serum proteins, it is treated as above. Cardiac edema will be treated with a sodium-restricted diet and appropriate diuretics and cardiac drugs.

6. **Anemia.** This frequently occurs when there are hemorrhagic lesions. Foods high in iron may be given, but time seldom permits the restoration of hemoglobin by this means of therapy. Usually, blood transfusions are given to these patients.

7. **Vitamin-Deficiency States.** These may occur for varying reasons. In patients who have had a nutritionally inadequate diet, either because of inability to eat or because such a diet was unobtainable, vitamin supplements accompanying as nutritive a diet as the patient can tolerate will do much to correct the condition. Such patients may show some of the other failures of nutrition, such as low serum protein levels and anemia, mentioned above.

Patients with liver or gallbladder disturbances may have had difficulty in the absorption of vitamin K, a fat-soluble vitamin which needs bile salts for absorption. This vitamin may be given by injection if hypoprothrombinemia is present.

As ascorbic acid is essential for wound healing, it may be given as a prophylactic measure by mouth or intravenously, as part of an infusion.

8. **Retention of Urea and Other Nonprotein Nitrogen Products in the Blood.**

travenously, since it also may act as a diuretic.

9. **Ketosis.** This may exist because of an inability to eat and, therefore, an excessive burning of body fats. The treatment for this condition is to increase the carbohydrate intake, either by mouth or intravenously.

## General Considerations

From the foregoing outline it is evident that the dietary treatment in preoperative conditions must be given careful consideration. If any one of the conditions mentioned above exists, it should be treated before the patient undergoes operation (except in emergencies); otherwise, complications may result.

Even in patients in good nutritional state, the preoperative diet is important to enable them to withstand the shock of operation and the deprivation of food for the first few days of the postoperative period with as little nutritive loss as possible.

Foods high in carbohydrate will aid in providing a good store of glycogen. Protein for sale should be as high as pos-

or by intravenous infusion

Special preoperative procedures may be necessary for certain conditions. For instance, if there is to be an operation on the large intestine or the rectum, a low residue diet will be necessary for several days preceding the operation. Diabetics must be well controlled before elective surgery is undertaken. Patients with hyperthyroidism should be gaining weight before operation is performed.

All food is withheld immediately before operation as undigested food in the gastro-intestinal tract may cause vomiting with the possibility of aspiration of food into the bronchi, or it may give rise to distention postoperatively. The length of time for the withholding of food depends upon the type of operation. In preparation for minor surgery no food is allowed on the day of the operation, unless the operation is delayed until the afternoon, in which case a light breakfast of cereal, toast, coffee and fruit juices may be given.

For abdominal operations, a clear or full fluid diet may be ordered for 2 or 3

days preceding the operation in order

## POSTOPERATIVE DIETS

### Specific Considerations

The state of nutrition of the patient following operation must be maintained, but, owing to the toxicity of the anesthetic, nausea is likely to occur. The

supplies this. Of even greater importance

are a routine procedure immediately after major operations. Protein hydro-

is also important. The normal avenues of fluid intake by beverage, food and metabolism of food are greatly decreased because of the inability to take anything by mouth. The usual avenues of excretion continue and may even be increased by vomiting, hemorrhage and exudation. Therefore, the intravenous use of fluids is extremely important. Usually they are given immediately after the operation to prevent dehydration and shock.

Maintenance of salt balance is equally necessary. Salts may be lost by the same routes by which fluid is lost. The use of physiologic saline is indicated

given in one solution

Food by Mouth. Except in operations on the gastro-intestinal tract, the first thing given by mouth is water in

sips as soon as the nausea stops. If preferred, bits of ice may be held in the mouth; this supplies small amounts of water. If the sips of water do not cause vomiting, other liquids, such as tea with sugar, ginger ale and broth, are added next.

From this stage the patient will progress to a full-liquid, a soft and, finally, a general house diet (See Chap. 18). With the early ambulation for surgical patients in vogue at the present time, there is a much more rapid recovery from the postoperative state and, therefore, a rapid increase in the diet. It is not uncommon for a patient to be on a general diet by the second postoperative day. The great advantage of this rapid progression in dietary intake is that there is little loss in the nutritional state of the patient and, therefore, more rapid recovery.

Complications. In patients in whom recovery from surgery is slowed for some reason, the problem of maintaining nutrition may become acute. Holden<sup>1</sup> has shown that both weight and tissue nitrogen losses occur very rapidly when post-surgical patients do not have a sufficient caloric intake. Intravenous glucose and amino acids cannot be given in sufficient quantities to meet caloric and protein needs; consequently, body protein and fat are broken down. For some years research has been carried on the perfect a fat emulsion which can be given by vein,

weight and tissue loss. Until such time, every effort must be made to increase the food intake by mouth. When it is not possible for the patient to eat all the food served him, tube feedings may have to be resorted to (See end of this chapter.)

<sup>1</sup> Holden, W. D., et al.: Ann. Surg. 146: 583, 1957.

### Special Routines for Operations on the Gastro-Intestinal Tract

within the tract itself. The principles of the diet, therefore, are that it be non-

mate aim in the treatment of patients who are recuperating from gastro-intestinal surgery; but the patient should be

warned that the return may be slow and that it is imperative that he follow the regimen carefully.

Most surgeons have their own preferred schedules which they wish to have followed, but most of them incorporate the principles stated above. By way of illustration, however, a typical regimen is given.

**Diet in Surgery of the Stomach or the Duodenum.** This operation may consist of resection of a large part of the stomach and a section of the duodenum, either for cancer or for peptic ulcer. The usual procedure is to give nothing by mouth for from 24 to 48 hours after the

### SUGGESTED DIETARY REGIMEN FOLLOWING OPERATIONS ON THE STOMACH OR THE DUODENUM

DAY AFTER OPERATION	FOOD ALLOWED
1 and 2	Nothing by mouth
3	30 cc. water every hour while awake
4	60 cc. water alternating with 60 cc. milk every hour while awake
5	90 cc. milk every hour while awake plus Cream of Wheat at breakfast Soft-cooked or poached egg at supper
6	120 cc. milk every hour while awake plus Cream of Wheat at breakfast Cream soup made of purged bland vegetables such as peas, carrots,

### SAMPLE DIET. DAY 10

Breakfast	Lunch	Supper
Diluted orange juice	Cream of spinach soup	Poached egg on toast
Soft-cooked egg	Mincd chicken	Milk, $\frac{1}{2}$ glass
White-bread toast	White-bread toast	Canned peaches
Butter	Butter	
Postum, cream	Milk, $\frac{1}{2}$ glass	
10 A M.	3 P M.	III P M.
Cream of Wheat	Baked custard	Milk, 1 glass
Sugar	Milk, 1 glass	Lemon gelatin
Milk, 1 glass		Sponge cake

operation and to provide for the body's nutritional needs by intravenous fluids. After this, water in small amounts is

stimulating or mechanically irritating foods.

This routine, while it is necessary because of the site of the operation, calls for a period of 1 or 2 weeks when food intake is most inadequate. Intravenous feeding will aid in meeting nutritional needs to some extent, but it is important that the patient's food intake be increased as rapidly as possible, so that health and strength may be regained.

If a large part or all of the stomach has been resected, pernicious anemia may make its appearance 2 or 3 years following the surgery, when liver stores of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> are exhausted. The intrinsic factor produced by the normal stomach and essential for the absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> may be entirely absent. Fortunately, adequate therapy with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is a simple matter if the physician is aware of this possible complication.<sup>2</sup>

**The Dumping Syndrome.** Most patients undergoing gastric surgery develop a new pouch by stretching the remaining stomach tissue. This now acts

"dumping syndrome"

In this syndrome, the ingested food is not held in the remaining stomach pouch but is "dumped" in its entirety into the jejunum 15 to 30 minutes after eating. Because it is concentrated in comparison with the body fluids, water is withdrawn from the circulatory system into the intestines. This may lower the total blood volume sufficiently to

cause lowered blood pressure and symptoms of cardiac insufficiency, characterized by sweating, faintness and nausea. About 2 hours after a meal, a further effect may appear. Because the quantity of food which has been "dumped" into the jejunum is large, absorption, especially of carbohydrate, is very rapid. This leads to an overproduction of insulin and to an eventual drop of the blood sugar level below normal fasting levels. The symptoms of mild insulin

comfort is associated with the ingestion of food. Moreover, the unusual activity of the digestive tract may cause diarrhea and loss of food, further increasing the tendency toward malnutrition and weight loss.

#### Dietary Treatment

The control of these manifestations by dietary measures is not an easy matter. Hayes<sup>3</sup> found that it was necessary to hospitalize the patient in order to find the exact dietary regimen suited to his needs. Beginning with small amounts,

low in carbohydrate to prevent the hypoglycemia (low blood sugar) referred to in a previous paragraph.

Such a diet would be given in at least 6 or possibly 8 small meals. Eggs, meat, liver, fish, poultry and cheese are well tolerated, but whole milk sometimes causes difficulty. Dry skim milk may be more acceptable. Luptonem,<sup>4</sup> a commercial food concentrate high in protein and fat and low in carbohydrate, may be substituted for whole milk if the phy-

<sup>2</sup> Hayes, M. A.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31: 133, 1935

<sup>4</sup> The Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Mich.

<sup>2</sup> Halsted, J. E., et al.: *New England J. Med.* 251:161, 1934.



## HIGH PROTEIN, HIGH FAT, LOW CARBOHYDRATE "ANTIDUMPING" DIET\*

## General Directions.

1. This diet should be divided into 6 to 8 meals a day.
2. Omit fluids with meals, especially at breakfast. They may be taken half an hour following meals.
3. No food, especially fluids, should be eaten chilled or very cold.

## Foods To Be Included and To Be Avoided:

Milk	...	1½ pints whole milk or yoghurt. Should not be taken too cold.
Cream	...	½ pint heavy cream or ¾ pint light or sour cream
Cheese	...	1 oz. or more. All cheeses are allowed, but cream cheese is preferred.
Fats	...	5 tablespoons butter, margarine, oils, fats, mayonnaise, French dressing
Eggs	...	3 eggs, in any form desired. (Eggnogs for between-meal feedings may be made from milk, cream, eggs and vanilla.)
Meat, fish, fowl	...	8 ozs. or 2 large servings. (Do not include bread crumbs or stuffing, or thickened gravies.)
Soups	...	None with meals. Broth, bouillon or unthickened soups may be taken between meals.
Vegetables	...	2 servings, including 1 green or deep yellow. If tolerated, 1 vegetable may be served raw as a salad, with mayonnaise added. Omit sweet potatoes, corn and Lima beans. White potatoes are allowed only as a substitute for bread
Fruits	...	2 servings, including 4 ozs citrus juice or fruit. Use fresh, cooked or canned unsweetened fruits or fruit juices. Prune juice and banana only if substituted for bread

## Bread, cereals, Italian

pastes ... 4 slices of bread or equivalent.

*Bread Equivalents*

Crackers, graham ..... 2 medium

Cereal, cooked . . . . . 2 rounded tablespoons

Rice, macaroni,

noodles, spaghetti ..... ½ c. cooked

Banana ..... ½ medium

Prune juice . . . . . 4-oz. glass

Potato, white . . . . . ½ medium

Desserts . . . . .

\* Adapted from the Antic  
York Hospital.

Beverages ..... Milk,† unsweetened eggnog, tea and coffee  
 Miscellaneous .. . . . Unsalted nuts, if tolerated. Moderate amounts of salt, spices, ketchup, Saccharin and Sucaryl for sweetening

#### Foods To Be Omitted:

Sugar, jellies, jams, honey, syrups, molasses, candies, alcoholic and carbonated beverages, cakes, cookies, hot breads, pastries, puddings, frozen fruits, figs; dates, thickened gravies and cream sauces, cornstarch, tapioca, potato flour and barley

tables, except gaseous ones, fresh and unsweetened canned fruit, a limited amount of potato, bread and crackers, and occasional cereal make up the carbohydrate allowance. Sugar should not be used in any form. Sucaryl and saccharin may be used for sweetening. Some patients do better when fluids are taken at other than mealtimes, especially at breakfast (See Foods To Be Included and To Be Avoided on pages 378 and 379.)

A less severe sign of nutritional difficulty following gastrectomy may be fail-

in an effort to help him gain weight and strength.

The dietary adjustment to this syndrome is a slow process and is best

customary to continue the low fat diet for from 3 to 6 months following operation. Cholecystokinin, the hormone produced in the duodenum by the presence

of fat, not only stimulates the contraction of the gallbladder but also of the smooth muscle in the common duct and the ampulla of Vater, the opening of the common duct into the intestinal tract. Even with the gallbladder removed, there is possibility of pain from contraction of these other areas upon the ingestion of considerable amounts of fat. This is the indication, therefore, for a low fat diet. The restrictions for this diet will be found in Chapter 25.

Diet in Ileostomy or Colostomy. This diet is described in detail in Chapter 24.

Following operation for hemorrhoids or other rectal surgery, an opiate usually is given to prevent defecation. A residue-free diet is also given for 2 or 3 days to avoid a bowel movement.

#### Tonsillectomy Diet

After a tonsillectomy or other minor mouth or throat operation, cold fluids only are allowed for the first 24 hours to prevent bleeding from the operative area. Sharp fruit juices must not be given, as they will cause pain. Toast or other food which may irritate the operative site must be avoided, as it may cause coughing. Water, milk, vanilla ice

cream and bland fruit juices such as pear or white cherry juice are permitted. The adult patient may find iced tea or iced coffee refreshing. On the second day, warm but not hot liquids are added. Soft bland foods such as milk toast, custard, soft-cooked egg, soft-cooked cereals and vegetable purées may be permitted on the third and the fourth days. The patient usually discovers what foods will slip down easily; it may be from several days to a week before a regular diet can be resumed.

### Radical Surgery of the Mouth and the Throat

Following radical surgery of the mouth or the throat, the patient may have to follow a liquid diet for a long

to be as nearly normal as possible. Variety in the liquid diet can best be obtained by means of a food blender or liquefier. With such an appliance meat as well as other foods can be liquefied, so that a diet approaching the usual pattern can be served. Instead of a succession of soups, eggnogs and other liquids, dinner may consist of meat, potatoes, vegetables, fruit and pudding, all liquefied. Soft and liquid diets may also be prepared by putting the food through a food mill or sieve and adding liquids. If these devices are not available, commercially prepared baby foods can be used since they contain only a small amount of seasoning.<sup>5</sup>

The tray should be served in the usual fashion, so that the patient will have the pleasure of sight and odor of food to stimulate his appetite.

### Tube Feedings

There are many occasions when, because of operation, accident or uncon-

<sup>5</sup> Cancer Nursing, A Manual for Public Health Nurses, National Cancer Institute and the New York State Department of Health, revised 1955

sciousness, the patient must be fed by tube. If this type of feeding is to be continued for some time, it is important that the diet be adequate for all nutritional needs and yet liquid in consistency.

If the patient is conscious, and as soon as his condition will allow, a variety of liquid food prepared by blender, as described under Radical Surgery of the Mouth and the Throat, is to be preferred in place of a prepared tube feeding.

In the unconscious patient, it is particularly important for the nurse to realize that good nutrition is essential in the prevention of pressure sores and decubitus ulcers. Immobilization causes an increased breakdown of protein tissue, which must be replaced by a more than adequate amount of protein in the diet. (See Chap. 17.) Unconscious patients sometimes resist being fed, but that should not deter the nurse from seeing that an adequate intake of food is achieved each day.

Tube Feeding 1, on page 381, supplies approximately 170 Gm. protein and 2,400 calories. It is high in protein and is well above the Recommended Dietary Allowances (see Chap. 10) for calcium, iron and the vitamins, with the exception of thiamine, which is adequate. If strained liver (for infants) is used in place of fresh liver, the feeding will be low in ascorbic acid, in which case the vitamin should be supplied by medication.

This feeding may be made low in sodium by substituting Lonalac<sup>6</sup> or other low sodium milk for the regular milk. It may be made low in fat by using skim milk in place of whole fluid milk. It has to be remembered that the latter will also lower the caloric value.

Tube Feeding 2, on page 382, uses a variety of common foods, mixed in a blender and strained. It is thought that a mixture of foods as they com-

<sup>6</sup> Mead Johnson and Company, Evansville, Ind.

TUBE FEEDING I\*

FOOD	MEASURE	Weight Gm.	Calo- ries	Protein Gm.	Fat Gm.	Carbo- hydrate Gm.	MINERALS		VITAMINS				
							Cal- cium Mg.	Iron Mg.	A IU	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Milk	1 1/4 quarts	1,500	1,020	52	60	75	1,770	15	2,400	60	255	15	15
Eggs	3	150	239	19	13	1	80	40	1,090	15	43	1	
Glucose	4 ozs	120	480			120							
Protein†	1/4 c.	100	360	61		30							
Liver, lightly broiled‡	7 ozs	200	272	40	6	13	14	13.3	87,800	53	666	27.4	63
Totals			2,371	172	84	238	1,804	18.7	91,890	127	964	29.0	77

## Totals

\* From Bengtaker, R. W., and Blahemore, A. H.: *Ann Surg* 131: 731 1950.  
 † A low sodium, high protein product derived from casus (National Drug Company).  
 ‡ Composition figures are for uncooked beef liver. Figures will differ slightly following cooking or if a different animal liver is used. If strained liver (infant food) is used, the figures will differ considerably. See Table 2, Part Four.

Directions: Broil liver lightly cut in small pieces and remove veins. Add to rest of ingredients in mechanical blender and mix for 10 minutes. Strain through fine sieve, place in bottles with covers, label and refrigerate. Shake before pouring. Tube feeding should be warmed to body temperature over hot water before being served to the patient.  
 Note: (1) This feeding contains approximately 1,210 mg sodium. By using Lonale (Mead Johnson) or other low sodium milk, the sodium content may be reduced to approximately 500 mg (2) To lower the fat content, use skim instead of whole milk.

cream and bland fruit juices such as pear or white cherry juice are permitted. The adult patient may find iced tea or iced coffee refreshing. On the second day, warm but not hot liquids are added. Soft bland foods such as milk toast, custard, soft-cooked egg, soft-cooked cereals and vegetable purées may be permitted on the third and the fourth days. The patient usually discovers what foods will slip down easily, it may be from several days to a week before a regular diet can be resumed.

### Radical Surgery of the Mouth and the Throat

Following radical surgery of the mouth or the throat, the patient may have to follow a liquid diet for a long

to be as nearly normal as possible. Variety in the liquid diet can best be obtained by means of a food blender or liquidizer. With such an appliance meat as well as other foods can be liquefied, so that a diet approaching the usual pattern can be served. Instead of a succession of soups, eggnogs and other liquids, dinner may consist of meat, potatoes, vegetables, fruit and pudding, all liquefied. Soft and liquid diets may also be prepared by putting the food through a food mill or sieve and adding liquids. If these devices are not available, commercially prepared baby foods can be used since they contain only a small amount of seasoning.<sup>5</sup>

The tray should be served in the usual fashion, so that the patient will have the pleasure of sight and odor of food to stimulate his appetite.

### Tube Feedings

There are many occasions when, because of operation, accident or uncon-

<sup>5</sup> Cancer Nursing, A Manual for Public Health Nurses, National Cancer Institute and the New York State Department of Health, revised 1955.

sciousness, the patient must be fed by tube. If this type of feeding is to be continued for some time, it is important that the diet be adequate for all nutritional needs and yet liquid in consistency.

If the patient is conscious, and as soon as his condition will allow, a variety of liquid food prepared by blender, as described under Radical Surgery of the Mouth and the Throat, is to be preferred in place of a prepared tube feeding.

In the unconscious patient, it is particularly important for the nurse to realize that good nutrition is essential in the prevention of pressure sores and decubitus ulcers. Immobilization causes an increased breakdown of protein tissue, which must be replaced by a more than adequate amount of protein in the diet. (See Chap. 17.) Unconscious patients sometimes resist being fed, but that should not deter the nurse from seeing that an adequate intake of food is achieved each day.

Tube Feeding 1, on page 381, supplies approximately 170 Gm. protein and 2,400 calories. It is high in protein and is well above the Recommended Dietary Allowances (see Chap. 10) for calcium, iron and the vitamins, with the exception of thiamine, which is adequate. If strained liver (for infants) is used in place of fresh liver, the feeding will be low in ascorbic acid, in which case the vitamin should be supplied by medication.

This feeding may be made low in sodium by substituting Lonalac<sup>6</sup> or other low sodium milk for the regular milk. It may be made low in fat by using skim milk in place of whole fluid milk. It has to be remembered that the latter will also lower the caloric value.

Tube Feeding 2, on page 382, uses a variety of common foods, mixed in a blender and strained. It is thought that a mixture of foods as they com-

<sup>6</sup> Mead Johnson and Company, Evansville, Ind.

monly appear in the diet may prevent the occurrence of diarrhea, which so often complicates the care of the tube-fed patient. The apple juice is included for this reason, even though it contributes less of the essential nutrients than most fruit juices.

This feeding contains 125 Gm protein and approximately 1,800 calories. It is well above the Recommended Dietary Allowances, except for thiamine, which should be added by medication. Calories may be added by increasing the cream and the farina, or by the addition of glucose or salad oil. The latter should be added in small quantities only, as it may cause diarrhea. Calories may be decreased by omitting cream, by using skim instead of whole milk, or both.

A variety of beverages suitable for tube feedings will be found in Chapter 50. If one of these is to be used for a



Fig. 82 If the patient must be fed by tube, the feeding should be served in an attractive and appetizing manner, so that it reflects that this is food and not a medication. (Paul Parker)

milk may be substituted in any of these

milk

A variety of commercially prepared tube feedings are available. Most of these more than meet the Recommended Dietary Allowances when used in sufficient quantity. They tend to be somewhat more expensive than the tube feedings given here.

All tube feedings should be given slowly to prevent diarrhea. If diarrhea is constant, the addition of 2 tablespoons of strained apple sauce or  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz of fluid pectin (such as Certo) in 1 quart of feeding may be beneficial. Tube feedings may also be given by a drip method to prevent diarrhea.

**Nursing Problem.** Most patients find it difficult to accept tube feeding. Again the nurse plays a decisive role in the adjustment that the patient makes to this procedure. In an excellent article on the subject of tube feeding, Smith<sup>†</sup> says: "The nursing care of the patient with a nasogastric tube in place may be relatively easy and pleasant for both the nurse and the patient, or it may be difficult, untidy and distressing. Whichever it is depends in large measure on the nurse's attitudes and her appreciation of the patient's feelings."

### BURNS

Severe burns are a surgical problem

and much of the fluid and protein are lost through exudation. There is also excess

<sup>†</sup> Smith, A. V.: *Am. J. Nursing* 57:1451, 1957.

# TOBE FEEDING 2\*

Food	Measur- e	Weight Gm	Calo- ries	Protein		Carbo- hydrate Gm	MINERALS		VITAMINS				
				Gm.	Gm.		Cal- cium Mg.	Iron Mg.	A IU.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Milk	1½ pints	750	510	100	30	38	885	8	1,500	.30	1.28	.8	8
Eggs	2	100	162	13	12	1	54	2.7	1,140	.10	.29	.1	
Cream, light, 18%	¾ c.	100	204	8	20	4	97	.1	830	.03	.14	.1	1
Farina, enriched, cooked	1 c.	200	53	2	.	18	6	.4		.08	.06	.4	.
Bread, white, enriched	3 slices, no crusts	50	133	5	2	28	40	.9		.12	.07	1.1	.
Meat,† strained infant food													
Beef	3½ ozs.	100	100	17	3		10	40			.20	3.0	..
Liver	3½ ozs.	100	103	16	4	1	24	7.1	19,200	.04	2.14	6.4	..
Vegetables,† strained infant food													
Carrots	3½ ozs.	100	23	1	..	7	23	.7	8,430	.03	.03	.3	3
Peas	3½ ozs.	100	10	3	..	7	17	1.3	600	.10	.07	1.0	7
Protinall‡	¾ c.	60	216	37	..	18						..	3
Apple juice	1½ c.	300	150			42	18	1.5	120	.06	.09	.	3
Orange juice, fresh													
Water added to 2 500 cc	¾ c.	100	44	1		11	19	2	190	.03	.03	.2	40

\* From the Department of Nutrition, The New York Hospital  
† It is suggested that meats and vegetables be changed daily. This will alter the food composition somewhat. See Table 1, Part Young  
‡ A low sodium, high protein product derived from casein (National Dairy Company)  
Directions: Place all ingredients in mechanical blender and mix for 10 minutes. Strain through fine sieve, place in bottles with covers.

Label and refrigerate. Shake before pouring. Tube feeding should be warmed to body temperature over hot water before being served to the patient.  
Note: Calories may be added by increasing the cream and the farina, or by the addition of glucose or a small quantity of salad oil. Calories may be decreased by omitting cream, by using skim instead of whole milk, or both.

*Nutrition in Sick Children*  
*Feeding Difficulties in Infants*  
*Deficiency Diseases of Infants*  
*Infections*  
*Malnutrition, Underweight, Obesity*  
*Nutrition in Crippled Children*  
*Diseases Specific to Children*  
*Diseases Common to Children and Adults*

## CHAPTER THIRTY-THREE

# Nutrition in Diseases of Infancy and Childhood

### PROBLEMS OF NUTRITION IN SICK CHILDREN

When children become ill they tend to regress to an earlier developmental level. This is often the case with eating habits. A baby who has been drinking from a cup will refuse fluids given this way but may accept them eagerly from a bottle. Self-feeding gives way to wanting to be fed. Also, the type of food the sick child will accept often is limited. The wisest response is to let him have his way. When he feels better, he will return quickly to his more recently acquired food practices and will

be easier for him to eat smaller meals more frequently. Occasional surprises will help him to look forward to mealtimes. A "picnic" lunch or a tea party with mother or friends may stimulate the sick child to eat more than he would otherwise. There may be need of greater variation in the preparation of food.

with brown sugar and dates or prunes is high in nutritive value and a pleasant change from other sweetened cereals.

Nutrition may become a serious problem in the child who is chronically ill or is suffering from an illness of considerable duration. Not only must enough food be eaten to meet the immediate nutritional needs, but growth and development must also be provided for. If the sick child has a poor appetite, it may

be easier for him to eat smaller meals more frequently. Occasional surprises will help him to look forward to mealtimes. A "picnic" lunch or a tea party with mother or friends may stimulate the sick child to eat more than he would otherwise. There may be need of greater variation in the preparation of food.

circumstances (see Chap. 17). It is essential that their protein and milk intake be kept high by generous servings of meat, fish, poultry, eggs, milk and cheese. If the immobilization is likely to be of long duration, such as follows paralytic poliomyelitis, the problem is



sive tissue breakdown, lasting for a period of weeks, as evidenced by tre-

average negative nitrogen balance of 10.4 Gm daily, equivalent to a protein deficiency of 65 Gm.

In the first few days of treatment, plasma and whole blood, electrolyte solutions and protein hydrolysates are given by vein to combat the immediate losses of these substances. As soon as possible a high protein, high caloric diet, supplemented with high protein, high caloric beverages, is prescribed. From 125 to 150 Gm protein and from 3,000 to 5,000 calories will meet the needs of the severely burned patient, but it may not be possible for him to ingest such a large quantity of food, and tube feedings may be necessary for a time (See Chap. 25 for high protein, high caloric diets.) Calories may be further increased by adding butter, cream and sugar.

Patients who are burned about the mouth and the face may need to be tube-fed. This should not be done, however, until the end of the first week of treatment. Badly burned patients usually have a gastro-intestinal atony the first few days after injury and do not tolerate tube feedings. (See the earlier

portive care of the severely burned patient by nurses, doctors, dietitians and

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What are some of the nutritional deficiencies that may be met preoperatively in the surgical patient? How may these be corrected?

2. Why is the treatment of hypoproteinemia of importance both before and after operation?

3. Why is food withheld from the patient immediately prior to operation?

4. Which nutrient solutions may be administered by vein before the patient is able to take food by mouth?

5. List the foods permitted on a clear fluid diet. Which foods are omitted on a soft diet?

6. Which nutritional problems are likely to occur in the patient with a slow postoperative recovery? What are the dangers?

7. List the postoperative dietary regimens usually prescribed for a patient

syndrome? What type of diet has been devised to meet this condition? Which foods must be omitted? Which limited?

9. Plan a tonsillectomy diet for an adult for the first postoperative day.

10. Plan a menu for a patient with a radical mouth operation who is on a fluid diet, making it as nearly normal as possible.

11. How may the sodium in Tube Feeding 1 be decreased? How may the fat be decreased? How may the calories in Tube Feeding 2 be increased? Decreased?

12. Give directions for preparing a tube feeding.

13. How may diarrhea be controlled in a patient who is being tube-fed?

14. What is the major nutritional problem in burns?

15. Find 5 different high protein, high caloric beverages in Chapter 50 that may appeal to a patient with burns.

\* Artz, P., and Sorooff, H. S. J.A.M.A. 159.411, 1955.

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.

complied with. Especially, during an illness is not the time for a child to have to learn to eat new foods or to acquire new skills in eating unless he does this on his own initiative.

Children are subject to many diseases that are common to adults, as well as to some serious diseases which are associated primarily with childhood. Infants may develop feeding difficulties such as vomiting, colic, diarrhea and constipation. Both infants and children suffer from a variety of infections. Nutritional deficiencies in infants and young children still occur despite our knowledge. *Malnutrition, accompanied by underweight or obesity, occurs much too frequently when we consider the knowledge and the resources available to us.*

## FEEDING DIFFICULTIES IN INFANTS

### Vomiting and Regurgitation

Vomiting may result from a number of causes and may or may not be a serious symptom. In regurgitation only small amounts of food are lost, while in vomiting the contents of the stomach are expelled.

Acute vomiting and should be referred promptly to the physician. The occasional vomiting, however, is usually caused by overdistention of the stomach due to the ingestion of too large or too frequent feedings or to the swallowing of air. It may also be due to an imbalance of the food constituents, especially to an oversupply of fat, causing delayed emptying of the stomach. The cause should be determined and the feedings adjusted accordingly.

Regurgitation may be avoided by "burping" the infant once or twice during a feeding. This is done by holding the baby so that his stomach is against

the mother's shoulder and gently patting him on the back until the air bubble comes up.

### Colic

A baby who has hard crying spells

again. Making sure he is warm may help. Mothers are apt to think that his feeding is wrong, but changing the feeding usually does not help. Spock<sup>2</sup> says that these babies seem to grow and gain weight better than most, and that generally the condition disappears at the age of 3 to 4 months.

### Diarrhea and Dysentery

Diarrhea is a common ailment of in-

fantly fed babies than in breast-fed babies.

**Causes of Diarrhea.** Because a baby digests much larger quantities of food for his weight as compared with an adult, his digestive system is much more easily upset. Diarrhea in infants may be caused by infection, in the bowel itself or anywhere in the body. He may obtain the infection from someone in the family who is ill, or he may get it from his food. Therefore, leftover formula

supplemental milk is abnormally rapid in diarrhea, much of the food is either undigested or at least unabsorbed, therefore, the child loses weight rapidly and soon shows symptoms of malnutrition.

<sup>2</sup> Spock, B. *Baby and Child Care*, New York, Duell, 1957.



Fig 83. Lunches taste better when they are eaten in company with other children in the hospital. (General Hospital, Greenville, South Carolina)

even more serious, and every effort must be made to maintain good nutrition (see Chap 19)

If an infant or a child must be hospitalized, one of the immediate problems may pertain to food. The child is in strange surroundings, among strange people, moreover, he is ill. All the concepts of child feeding discussed in Chapters 13 and 14 are applicable; besides this, the child must be given a great deal of freedom about his food, even to the point of allowing him to refuse it. Some children will eat only bread and butter and drink milk for the first few days in the hospital, as these foods are most reminiscent of home. This may often be the case with children from homes

other children in his group and become more self-sufficient.

Some hospitals have daily visiting hours for parents in the late afternoon and the early evening, so that they may feed and play with their children. This has been extended still further by a few hospitals who permit the mother, or both parents, to stay with the child for as much time as they can spare, day or night, for the duration of the child's hospitalization.<sup>1</sup> Not only does this minimize the trauma of separation from the mother, but the child's nutrition is less likely to suffer.

Other ways of helping the child to feel at home in the hospital is to have him eat with other children of his age at a table as soon as this is feasible. Most of all, it is important that mealtimes be a happy time, with no pressures about cleaning up plates, drinking all the milk or withholding dessert because some rule about eating habits has not been

should be met by the nurse with warmth and understanding. If the child is not too ill, he will soon follow the lead of

<sup>1</sup> Hoble, M: *Am J. Nursing* 57:865, 1957

grossly inadequate diets, with the milk intake too high and other foods too low in variety and quantity.

Treatment consists of iron medication, coupled with vitamins, since the intake of the latter is also unusually low in a restricted diet and because ascorbic and folic acids are necessary for blood formation. The diet should be changed as quickly as possible to the foods normally eaten by the patient's age group (see Chaps 13 and 14). The mother or the nurse may encounter considerable resistance at first, because the child will

salty broth. As the fever subsides, the appetite usually becomes progressively better, and the food intake increases accordingly. If the illness has been prolonged with loss of weight, a diet increased in calories, protein and vitamins is indicated. Some of the suggestions made at the beginning of this chapter may be found helpful. (See also Chap 19.)

## MALNUTRITION, UNDERWEIGHT, OBESITY

### Malnutrition

Although, fortunately, obvious deficiency diseases are becoming rare, there are many children who do not grow and develop as they should because of poor food intake. Some of the causes of malnutrition have been discussed in the foregoing pages and in Chapter 14. One must realize that there is danger of poor nutrition whenever a child is ill, and that an effort has to be made at all times to help him maintain as good nutritional status as is possible. Children with rheumatic fever often become underweight. Emotionally disturbed children may refuse to eat or may eat a one-sided diet. In all cases of illness in children, attention to their nutritional needs should form part of the nursing care from the very first, and not after symptoms of malnutrition have begun to manifest themselves.

### Underweight

Children vary greatly in their rate of growth. If a child gains weight and grows in height at a regular rate, even though he is somewhat thinner than other children of his height and age, there is no cause for alarm. The child who fails to grow and gain regularly should have not only his food habits but also his patterns of sleep, rest and exercise investigated and corrected where necessary. Between-meal feedings, especially at bedtime, added to a normal, adequate food intake, as well as suffi-

### Infantile Scurvy

Scurvy may appear in infants due to lack of knowledge on the part of the mother, to inaccessibility of fruit juices high in ascorbic acid or to changing food habits in the family. Woodruff<sup>6</sup> reports an increasing incidence of scurvy in a Southern city, where parents had been taught not to give their babies "pot liquor" from vegetables cooked with salt pork or bacon but had failed to substitute the suggested fruit juices. Nurses and other health workers need to be on guard constantly to be sure that nutrition instruction is understood and followed through. (For other and more severe manifestations of nutritional deficiencies, see Chap 20.)

## INFECTIONS

Infections characterized by fever usu-

freely and to return to regular food intake as soon as possible. If the child has a sore throat, do not aggravate it by giving such fluids as acid fruit juices or

<sup>6</sup> Woodruff, E. W.: J.A.M.A. 161:448, 1956

which must be combated in the treatment. There is loss of water (dehydration), as well as loss of nutrients. The

no food is given until the diarrhea subsides.

is no return of diarrhea, a half and half mixture of boiled skim milk and water may be given, then increased to boiled skim milk alone, after which the baby is tried on a dilute formula. All feedings

formed. Acid milks are also available in powdered form and are much more easily prepared. The fine curd and the acidity of the milk are thought to make this type of formula easier to digest by

are more severe than diarrhea, including the presence of blood, pus and mucus in the stools. Unless properly diagnosed and treated, it may become recurrent or chronic.

Since the diarrhea or the dysentery is caused by an infection of the intestinal tract itself and may continue for an indefinite time, even when treated with antibiotics, the principal concern is to maintain the hydration and the nutrition of the infant. The progression of fluid and formula as described under diarrhea may also be used in dysentery. There may be more setbacks and slower progress due to the severity of the infection.

## Constipation

Constipation in infancy is not infrequently

mothers are concerned when the baby has only one bowel movement per day or on alternate days. The number of movements per day is not of so much importance as the consistency of the stools. If the feces are hard and expelled with difficulty, then the child may be said to be constipated and should be treated accordingly.<sup>3</sup>

The formula may be made more laxative by changing the type of sugar used. Prune juice or strained prunes, given once or twice a day, may remedy the situation. For the older child, an increase in the diet of whole-grain bread and cereals and of vegetables and fruits may be of help. If the constipation persists, the doctor should be consulted.

## DEFICIENCY DISEASES OF INFANTS

### Nutritional Anemia

Iron-deficiency anemia appears most often in premature babies or in babies whose mothers had an inadequate intake of iron in pregnancy.<sup>4</sup> Full-term infants, kept too long on a diet of milk, known to be low in iron, without the addition of other foods, may also develop iron-deficiency anemia. The anemia

<sup>3</sup> Infant Care, Children's Bureau, U. S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Publ. No. 8, 1955.

<sup>4</sup> Woodruff, C. W.: J.A.M.A. 162:659, 1958.

<sup>5</sup> Price, J. P., and Hart, W. M.: J.A.M.A. 148:5, 1952.

a week. The diet must include a least a quart of milk, 1 egg, 1 or 2 servings of

ripe fruits (see Table 3, Part Four), 2 to 4 servings of bread and cereal; and 1 tablespoonful of butter or margarine. Such a diet will contain from 1,500 to 1,600 calories. The use of skim milk for whole milk will reduce the calories by approximately 300. Gelatin desserts made with Sucaryl and clear broth may be given as desired for "fill-up" foods (See Chap. 50 for low caloric recipes.)

**Psychological Aspects.** The work of Hilde Bruch<sup>8</sup> has indicated that much

prudence involved. Encouragement will help more than scolding, even when the diet has not been followed, and a personal interest in the child is of paramount importance.

The principles involved in the treatment are explained further in the chapter on underweight and overweight (see Chap. 21).

## NUTRITION PROBLEMS OF CRIPPLED CHILDREN

### Cleft Palate

Infants born with a cleft palate usually also have a cleft lip. The latter is repaired a few days after birth, but the repair of the palate must be postponed for from one to several years if the surgery is to be successful. This leaves the infant for a length of time with a cleft in the roof of the mouth directly connected with the

normal infants

Additional foods should be given as for the normally developing infant, although some adjustments may have to be made. If orange juice irritates the mucous membranes of the mouth and the nose, ascorbic acid will have to be substituted. Strained vegetables may have to be thinned out with milk or broth and given by bottle, or the baby may take them better when thickened with the crumbs of a graham cracker. "Chewy" foods, such as bread crusts, should be introduced as early as possible to aid in developing proper jaw muscles and placement of teeth. Pasty foods, such as peanut butter, cooked cheese dishes, leafy vegetables and creamed foods, all of which may form a part of the diet of the 3 year old, are poorly managed by the child with a cleft palate, as they stick to the roof of the mouth.

Because it takes these children so much longer to eat than normal children, there is a constant danger of malnutrition. The person feeding such a child needs patience and perseverance and, above all, freedom from anxiety so as not to communicate this to the child and impair the feeding process still further.

Directly following surgical closure of the cleft palate the most important aspect of feeding is to keep the repaired area clean and free of strain on the suture line. The diet is liquid and semiliquid for as long as 3 weeks (see Chap. 18). Feedings must be given by

<sup>8</sup> Bruch, Hilde. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 20: 361, 1944.

<sup>9</sup> Zickfoose, M.: *Children* 4: 225, 1957.

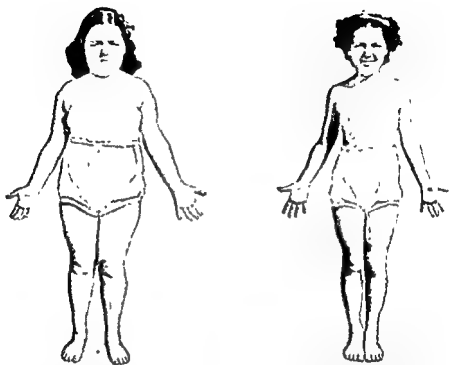


Fig. 18. Weight loss of 30 pounds over a period of 7 months in a 10-year-old girl. The personality improvement is at least as striking as the changes in anatomic contour. (Hoffman, R. H.: Obesity in childhood and adolescence, *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 5:1, 1957)

cient sleep, are indicated as necessary for the underweight child.

### Obesity

Overweight is due to an excess of food intake over and above the bodily requirement. This may be due in some cases to a lowered basal metabolism, but it is usually due to overeating and lack of exercise. Hoffman<sup>7</sup> stresses the need of weight loss early in life so that patterns of overeating may not be permanently established. He emphasizes that markedly overweight children are handi-

capped not only physically but emotionally. In a study of 60 obese children, he was able to obtain weight loss in all of them by diet and the judicious use of an anorexic drug. The parents, as well as the children, were involved in the effort to lose weight. At the end of 4 months, the children averaged a weight loss of approximately 20 lbs. and demonstrated notable improvement in posture and in mood.

The low caloric diet for a growing child should be calculated carefully so that no essential nutrients, with the exception of calories, are omitted. Weight loss should not exceed from 1 to 2 lbs.

<sup>7</sup> Hoffman, R. H.: *Am J Clin. Nutr.* 5:1, 1957.



Fig. 86 Guiding the hand may be necessary at first when a child with cerebral palsy is learning to feed himself. Mealtime should be quiet and relaxed with all possibilities of excitement eliminated (National Society for Crippled Children and Adults)

help him to take fluids without spilling. Spoons with special handles, easy to grasp, will encourage self-feeding, though it may be necessary to make the

as apple sauce and mashed potatoes, rather than peas or sliced, canned peaches

The aim for children with cerebral palsy is not only to achieve and maintain good nutrition but to help them to lead as normal a life as possible. Martin,<sup>10</sup> in

an excellent article on feeding these children, gives the following 3 rules as a guide

- 1 Strive for an adequate diet based on the same nutritional standards established for normal children.

- 2 Prepare his meals as nearly like those of the family as practicable. . . . Make him feel that he belongs to the family, that he is like—not different from—the other members.

- 3 Make the rehabilitation period one of steady progression. Consider each phase of his training in eating only a stepping stone to the next. Don't keep him on baby-type foods longer than necessary.

(For a discussion of the nutritional





Fig 85. This little girl with cerebral palsy takes her fluids via a nipple attached to a tube.  
(National Society for Crippled Children and Adults)

cup or the side of a spoon, never by nipple or straw.

When healing has taken place, the child is returned to his regular diet. Those who have carious teeth or poor occlusion may continue to have difficulties in eating until good dental care has overcome this defect also.

### Cerebral Palsy

Children with cerebral palsy present very special nutrition problems. Their constant movement, particularly in the athetoid type of palsy, increases the need for calories, yet the lack of neuromuscular control may make it difficult for them to drink from a cup or otherwise feed themselves. The over-all nutrition is often poor, due to difficulties in eating. They tend to be underweight and seem to be very susceptible to dental caries. It is essential that the diet of these children meet all their nutri-

tional requirements and that it be served in as concentrated a form as possible.

Milk puddings, custards, cereals cooked in milk, eggnogs, added butter or margarine on potatoes and bread, and creamed foods add calories and other nutrients without increasing bulk. The addition of dry skim milk to cooked cereals, meat loaf and puddings will increase the child's protein and calcium intake. The substitution of undiluted evaporated milk for the same quantity of whole milk in cooking reduces the amount of liquid that needs to be taken and increases the food value.

Foods that can be eaten in the hand, such as sandwiches, hard-cooked egg cut in quarters, whole vegetables and orange sections (rather than orange juice), will encourage the child to feed himself. Drinking from a tube, as in Figure 85, or the use of a cup fitted with a device to reduce the rate of flow of liquid to the child's mouth will



Fig 86. Guiding the hand may be necessary at first when a child with cerebral palsy is learning to feed himself. Mealtime should be quiet and relaxed with all possibilities of excitement eliminated. (National Society for Crippled Children and Adults)

help him to take fluids without spilling. Spoons with special handles, easy to grasp, will encourage self-feeding, though it may be necessary to guide the child's hand until he becomes skilled enough to eat by himself. Foods should be those easily eaten with a spoon, such as apple sauce and mashed potatoes, rather than peas or sliced, canned peaches.

The aim for children with cerebral palsy is not only to achieve and maintain good nutrition but to help them to lead as normal a life as possible. Martin,<sup>10</sup> in

<sup>10</sup> Martin, E. A. *Crippled Child*, Oct-Dec, 1956. Obtainable from National Society for Crippled Children and Adults, Inc., 111 South LaSalle Street, Chicago 3

an excellent article on feeding these children, gives the following 3 rules as a guide:

- 1 Strive for an adequate diet based on the same nutritional standards established for normal children
- 2 Prepare his meals as nearly like those of the family as practicable. Make him feel that he belongs to the family, that he is like—not different from—the other members
- 3 Make the rehabilitation period one of steady progression. Consider each phase of his training in eating only a stepping stone to the next. Don't keep him on baby-type foods longer than necessary.

(For a discussion of the nutritional

problems of the poliomyelitis patient crippled by paralysis see Chap. 19.)

## DISEASES SPECIFIC TO CHILDREN

### Nephrosis

Nephrosis occurs most commonly in children from 2 to 5 or 6 years old. It differs from nephritis in that, although it is characterized by massive albuminuria and edema, there is no loss of red and white blood cells in the urine and no urea nitrogen retention in the blood, at least in the early stages. The most distressing symptom is the edema. Fortunately, the use of the pituitary hormone ACTH or cortisone often effects a diuresis and subsequent lessening of the edema. It is not known at present whether or not these hormones also affect the recovery of kidney function.

#### Dietary Treatment

Because children with nephrosis are usually severely and chronically ill, most physicians prefer that every effort be made to maintain the child in good nutrition rather than to prescribe restrictions in the diet. The picture of a child with kwashiorkor, a severe protein de-

ticularly the severe underlying malnutrition which becomes obvious when the edema has disappeared.

The child should be offered all the foods common to his age group. It may be necessary to concentrate the diet in order to get maximum nutrition in the

dings, ice cream and cream soups, as

regain the nutritional status lost during the exacerbation of the disease.

### Celiac Disease

*Celiac disease is a chronic condition*

*the disease is characterized by the following symptoms:*

1. A prominent, protruding abdomen.
2. Voluminous, frequent, pale stools, semifluid, containing abnormally large amounts of unabsorbed fatty acids. (The stool may also contain undigested starch grains.)
3. Marked retardation of growth.
4. In cases of long standing, edema of the face and the extremities, a sore and red tongue, excessive irritability and other signs and symptoms indicating extreme malnutrition.

It is known that the pancreatic enzymes are present in normal amounts in the duodenum; hence, the conclusion is that the cause of these symptoms is lack of absorption rather than failure of digestion.

#### Dietary Treatment

**Restricted Starch, High Protein, Low Fat Diet.** Andersen<sup>11</sup> represents the school of thought which eliminates all starch and most of the fat from the diet in the first stage of treatment. She allows a plentiful supply of protein, which is well digested and absorbed, and a restricted variety of vegetables and fruits. Of the latter, bananas are especially well tolerated and, if eaten in sufficient amounts, will provide the bulk of the calories needed by the celiac patient.

The initial diet would permit choice of the following foods, depending on the age of the child and the severity of the disease.

Protein or boiled skim or whole milk  
Sieved or minced liver and beef

<sup>11</sup> Andersen, D. H., and Mike, E. M.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:340, 1955.

Uncreamed cottage (pot) cheese  
 Hard-cooked or coddled eggs  
 Orange, grapefruit or tomato juice  
 Ripe bananas, banana purée, banana powder, apple sauce, scraped raw apple  
 Strained green beans, carrots or squash.

As has already been indicated, the small child with celiac disease may present a picture of moderate to severe malnutrition. Since the above foods are well tolerated, the total food intake may be quite large and, despite the limitations of the diet, may more than meet the nutritional requirements. However, most physicians prescribe added vitamins and mineral supplements.

The patient is usually kept on the above regimen for a period of months or even longer. With clinical improvement, fats in the form of butter and peanut butter, and starches such as zwieback, Melba toast, crisp toast, and 2 or 3 arrowroot crackers or Social Tea biscuits are gradually permitted. Further additions are strained or chopped asparagus, beets, peas, spinach and tomatoes, ripe pear, cooked or canned apricots, peaches and peaches, and a greater choice of fruit juices. Lamb, chicken and fish are now also included in the diet.

The diet is gradually liberalized to include such starches as potato, rice, cereals (omitting wheat and rye initially), angel food and sponge cake, and popcorn. Last to be added and used in moderation are untoasted bread, macaroni, spaghetti and noodles.

"Gluten-Free" Diet. In 1951, three Dutch investigators<sup>12</sup> discovered that the excretion of fatty acids in celiac children was decreased markedly when wheat, rye and oats were omitted from the diet. They, Sheldon,<sup>13</sup> and other in-

vestigators have since found that all foods are well tolerated, including fats and starch, so long as all cereal grains except rice and corn, both free from gluten, are excluded from the diet. When wheat gluten was added to such a diet, the excretion of fatty acids promptly recurred. On the other hand, the addition of gluten-free wheat starch caused no increase in fatty acid excretion. All children with celiac disease placed on a "gluten-free" diet, even those very seriously ill, made remarkable recoveries on such a regimen.

The Dutch investigators<sup>14</sup> have since shown that it is the configuration within the cereal protein molecule of wheat, rye and oatmeal that presents the problem, and that gliadin, another wheat protein, is equally offensive. (For further discussion see Sprue in Chap. 24.)

It would seem, then, that celiac disease may well be an acute sensitivity to the proteins found in wheat, rye and oat grain, and that all these proteins must be excluded from the diet of patients with this disease. As no data are available for the action of buckwheat and barley, it would seem wise to exclude these also from the diet. Corn and rice, which were well tolerated, protein-free wheat starch, and soy flour are all permissible and may be used as substitutes for the cereals which must be omitted.

The exclusion of all cereal grains except corn, rice, protein-free wheat starch and soy flour is not an easy matter. Ordinary wheat flour particularly appears in so many guises other than bread, such as bread stuffings, bread crumbs, thickenings for gravies and cream soups, spaghetti, macaroni, noodles and many other foods, that labels must be watched carefully to detect its presence. Recipes for bread, biscuits and cookies made from permitted flours are included in Chapter 50, Therapeutic Recipes. The table list-

<sup>12</sup> Dicke, W. K., Weijers, H. A., and van de Kamer, J. H.: *Acta paediat.* 42: 34, 97, 223, 1953.

<sup>13</sup> Sheldon, W., and Lawson, D.: *Lancet* 2: 902, 1952.

<sup>14</sup> van de Kamer, J. H., and Weijers, H. A.: *Acta paediat.* 44: 465, 1955.

ing the Foods Allowed and Foods To Be Avoided on the "Gluten-Free" diet will be found under Sprue in Chapter 24.

### Pancreatic Insufficiency

Cystic fibrosis of the pancreas is a congenital disease resulting in a marked decrease or the entire absence of pancreatic enzymes. The stools contain undigested food, particularly fat, and the disease was originally confused with celiac disease. However, the absence of pancreatic enzymes shows that this disease is due to an inability to digest food rather than to an interference with its absorption, as in celiac disease.

Because so much undigested food is lost in the feces, the diet should be high in calories (30% to 50% above normal requirements). The protein in the diet should also be markedly increased to

supplemented with vitamins, particularly the fat-soluble ones. Usually pancreatin (commercially extracted pancreatic juice) is given with each feeding to aid digestion.

Children with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas may also have involvement of the mucus glands of the lungs. Recently it has been shown that these children lose larger than normal amounts of so-

to prevent heat prostration.

### Phenylketonuria

Phenylketonuria is an inborn defect in the body's ability to metabolize the amino acid phenylalanine. The quantity of phenylalanine in the blood stream

week to a few months of age. In phenylketonuria, there seems to be a substance present which has a deleterious effect on the development of the nervous system, resulting

In the last decade an attempt has been made to treat phenylketonuria with a diet free of phenylalanine or very low in it. If the treatment is started very early, when symptoms are first exhibited and before brain damage has occurred, the results are encouraging. In older children with established mental deficiency, the diet has not been effective.<sup>15</sup>

Because phenylalanine is found in about the same proportion in all food proteins, a commercially prepared product, Ketoni<sup>16</sup>, free of phenylalanine has been made available. It contains all the other amino acids and the mineral salts necessary for the growing infant. Calories and fluid are made up by adding salad oil, sugar and water, and the whole is prepared as a formula feeding. All the vitamins must be given by supplementation, as none is present in Ketoni. For children beyond the formula stage of feeding, the mixture may be given as a thick soup or paste.

When phenylalanine has disappeared from the urine, in about 3 weeks, 5 Gm of natural protein is added to the diet. This quantity provides the phenylalanine necessary for tissue growth without causing a rise in blood levels or excretion into the urine. Commercially strained baby foods such as fruits, vegetables and cereal are best for this purpose, as the label on the can or the jar gives the quantity of protein it contains. By using foods low in protein, a greater variety of foods can be included. The mother

<sup>15</sup> Armstrong, M. D., et al. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 5:543, 1957.

<sup>16</sup> Merck, Sharp and Dohme, Philadelphia. The accompanying booklet gives full details for preparation of the formula and for the addition of other foods.

the first symptom noted. The infant is normal at birth, but phenylalanine may appear in the urine as early as from a

should be careful, however, not to exceed the allowance of 5 Gm. of protein.

It is suggested that the natural food be mixed with the Ketoniol formula so that the child will not refuse the latter. Children on such a restricted diet must be watched very carefully to avoid severe nutritional failure due to inadequate protein or caloric intake.

The length of time the diet must be continued and the prognosis are uncertain. In a few of the cases reported<sup>17</sup> there are indications that at the end of 18 months to 2 years of treatment a return to a normal diet does not interfere with the further development of the child.

### Galactosemia

Galactosemia is another inborn defect of metabolism in which, as its name indicates, the body is not able to utilize galactose. Normally this sugar, derived from the lactose in milk, is converted to glucose in the liver. This does not occur in infants suffering from this disorder, the blood level of galactose rises, and the sugar is found in the urine. Such infants develop early nutritional failure, enlargement of the liver and the spleen, jaundice, mental retardation and cataracts. On removing galactose from the diet there is striking improvement. All symptoms regress and may even disappear entirely except for the mental retardation once this is established.<sup>18</sup>

Milk is the only food source of galactose, therefore, it must be eliminated. Fortunately, there are several commercially available substitutes such as Nutramigen,<sup>19</sup> soybean milk and meat base formula<sup>20</sup> which are quite satisfactory for growth and do not contain lactose or galactose.

<sup>17</sup> Armstrong, *Op cit*

<sup>18</sup> Isselbacher, K. J. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 5:527, 1957

<sup>19</sup> Mead Johnson, Evansville, Ind.

<sup>20</sup> Gerber Products Company, Fremont, Mich.

## DISEASES COMMON TO CHILDREN AND ADULTS

### Cardiac Disease

Congenital heart disease and cardiac damage due to rheumatic fever are discussed in Chapter 27.

### Diabetes

The two schools of thought in regard to the dietary treatment of diabetes have been discussed in Chapter 22. Particularly in the treatment of children with diabetes, opinion is sharply divided about the effect of strict control of the diabetes on the rate of development of vascular complications. Marble,<sup>21</sup> who belongs to the school that holds that such complications can be held off by strict control, outlines the plan for treatment as follows:

1 The diet should be entirely adequate in terms of protein, minerals, vitamins and calories.

2 Carbohydrate should be limited in general to 200 Gm., and certainly to 225 Gm. a day.

3 Between-meal snacks, adjusted in content to the type of insulin program being used, should be provided.

4 Reasonable constancy of dietary pattern from day to day should be achieved.

In order to carry out this dietary program, parents—and the patient if he is old enough—are taught to calculate and weigh the diet until they are reasonably accurate in evaluating quantities. After this the portions of food may be estimated, but a return to weighing is suggested for short periods of time to keep the diet accurate.

Many physicians, believing in a reasonable degree of control in the child diabetic, find Meal Planning and Exchange Lists of greater usefulness than using a calculated and weighed diet (see Chap. 22).

Lastly, those leaning toward the so-

<sup>21</sup> Marble, A.: *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:509, 1957.

ing the Foods Allowed and Foods To Be Avoided on the "Gluten-Free" diet will be found under Sprue in Chapter 24.

### Pancreatic Insufficiency

Cystic fibrosis of the pancreas is a congenital disease resulting in a marked decrease or the entire absence of pancreatic enzymes. The stools contain undigested food, particularly fat, and the disease was originally confused with celiac disease. However, the absence of pancreatic enzymes shows that this disease is due to an inability to digest food rather than to an interference with its absorption, as in celiac disease.

Because so much undigested food is lost in the feces, the diet should be high in calories (80% to 50% above normal requirements). The protein in the diet should also be markedly increased to

supplemented with vitamins, particularly the fat-soluble ones. Usually pancreatin (commercially extracted pancreatic juice) is given with each feeding to aid digestion.

Children with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas may also have involvement of the mucus glands of the lungs. Recently it has been shown that these children lose larger than normal amounts of so-

to prevent heat prostration.

### Phenylketonuria

Phenylketonuria is an inborn defect in the body's ability to metabolize the

week to a few months of age. In phenylketonuria, there seems to be a substance present which has a deleterious effect on

In the last decade an attempt has been made to treat phenylketonuria with a diet free of phenylalanine or very low in it. If the treatment is started very

children with established mental deficiency, the diet has not been effective<sup>15</sup>

Because phenylalanine is found in about the same proportion in all food proteins, a commercially prepared product, Ketoni<sup>16</sup> free of phenylalanine has been made available. It contains all the other amino acids and the mineral salts necessary for the growing infant. Calories and fluid are made up by adding salad oil, sugar and water, and the whole is prepared as a formula feeding. All the vitamins must be given by supplementation, as none is present in Ketoni. For children beyond the formula stage of feeding, the mixture may be given as a thick soup or paste.

When phenylalanine has disappeared from the urine, in about 3 weeks, 5 Gm of natural protein is added to the diet

into the urine. Commercially strained baby foods such as fruits, vegetables and cereal are best for this purpose, as the label on the can or the jar gives the quantity of protein it contains. By using foods low in protein, a greater variety of foods can be included. The mother

<sup>15</sup> Armstrong, M. D., et al.: *Am J. Clin. Nutr.* 5 543, 1957

<sup>16</sup> Merck, Sharp and Dohme, Philadelphia. The accompanying booklet gives full details for preparation of the formula and for the addition of other foods.

the first symptom noted. The infant is normal at birth, but phenylalanine may appear in the urine as early as from a

19. Why should calories and protein be increased in the diet of a child with  
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. What is galactosemia? How may galactose be eliminated from the diet? Name 2 nutritionally adequate substitutes.
22. What are some of the dietary problems of the child with rheumatic  
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Name an "elimination diet" suitable for a small child suspected of having  
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_
  - d. \_\_\_\_\_
  - e. \_\_\_\_\_
25. \_\_\_\_\_
26. \_\_\_\_\_
27. \_\_\_\_\_
28. \_\_\_\_\_
29. \_\_\_\_\_
30. \_\_\_\_\_
31. \_\_\_\_\_
32. \_\_\_\_\_
33. \_\_\_\_\_
34. \_\_\_\_\_
35. \_\_\_\_\_
36. \_\_\_\_\_
37. \_\_\_\_\_
38. \_\_\_\_\_
39. \_\_\_\_\_
40. \_\_\_\_\_
41. \_\_\_\_\_
42. \_\_\_\_\_
43. \_\_\_\_\_
44. \_\_\_\_\_
45. \_\_\_\_\_
46. \_\_\_\_\_
47. \_\_\_\_\_
48. \_\_\_\_\_
49. \_\_\_\_\_
50. \_\_\_\_\_
51. \_\_\_\_\_
52. \_\_\_\_\_
53. \_\_\_\_\_
54. \_\_\_\_\_
55. \_\_\_\_\_
56. \_\_\_\_\_
57. \_\_\_\_\_
58. \_\_\_\_\_
59. \_\_\_\_\_
60. \_\_\_\_\_
61. \_\_\_\_\_
62. \_\_\_\_\_
63. \_\_\_\_\_
64. \_\_\_\_\_
65. \_\_\_\_\_
66. \_\_\_\_\_
67. \_\_\_\_\_
68. \_\_\_\_\_
69. \_\_\_\_\_
70. \_\_\_\_\_
71. \_\_\_\_\_
72. \_\_\_\_\_
73. \_\_\_\_\_
74. \_\_\_\_\_
75. \_\_\_\_\_
76. \_\_\_\_\_
77. \_\_\_\_\_
78. \_\_\_\_\_
79. \_\_\_\_\_
80. \_\_\_\_\_
81. \_\_\_\_\_
82. \_\_\_\_\_
83. \_\_\_\_\_
84. \_\_\_\_\_
85. \_\_\_\_\_
86. \_\_\_\_\_
87. \_\_\_\_\_
88. \_\_\_\_\_
89. \_\_\_\_\_
90. \_\_\_\_\_
91. \_\_\_\_\_
92. \_\_\_\_\_
93. \_\_\_\_\_
94. \_\_\_\_\_
95. \_\_\_\_\_
96. \_\_\_\_\_
97. \_\_\_\_\_
98. \_\_\_\_\_
99. \_\_\_\_\_
100. \_\_\_\_\_

See Bibliography in Part Four for other pertinent material on the topics discussed in this chapter.



called "free" school believe that it is particularly difficult to keep children, and especially adolescents, on carefully controlled diets. Many physicians feel that the emotional trauma of keeping children on such diets is more harmful

than the child.

### Allergy

Acute food allergies, such as allergy to cow's milk, to orange juice and to egg, are not uncommon in children. They may appear very early in life and are most often exhibited as severe eczema

a soybean preparation or a meat base formula<sup>22</sup> is an adequate substitute. An "elimination diet" suitable for older children consists of lamb, rice, carrots, pears and soybean "milk." Vitamins must be added as supplements. The problems of allergy are discussed in Chapter 26.

### Epilepsy

Epilepsy rarely occurs during infancy, but it may appear from very early childhood on. The dietary treatment is discussed in Chapter 30.

### Nephritis

The dietary treatment of this disease is discussed in Chapter 28.

## STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What may the mother or the nurse expect of a child's food habits when he is ill?

2. Name some of the nutritional prob-

lems in chronic illness or in illness of more than short duration. How may we try to meet these?

3. How can a child be helped to adjust to eating his food in the hospital?

4. What would you tell the mother of a "colicky" baby?

5. What are the causes of diarrhea and dysentery? What dietary measures are indicated for each?

6. What additions can be made to the feedings of an infant having constipation?

7. What are some of the causes of nutritional anemia in young children? How may they be prevented?

8. What precautions must be taken when a food pattern is changed in a family?

9. How are acute fevers in childhood treated by diet?

10. What are some of the causes of malnutrition in children?

11. List some of the causes of underweight.

12. Why should obesity in the child be treated promptly? Which foods must be included in a low caloric diet to keep it adequate for the nutritional needs of the obese child?

13. What should be the relationship between the obese child and the person treating him?

14. How may the nutritional problems of the child with cleft palate be met? What are some of the difficulties?

15. What nutritional problems are common to the child with cerebral palsy? How may some of these be met?

16. Why do many physicians permit the child with nephrosis to eat what he wishes?

17. Make out a menu for a day for a 2-year-old child with celiac disease on a restricted starch, high protein, low fat diet, using the foods allowed early in the treatment of the disease.

18. Plan a day's diet for a 5-year-old child with celiac disease on a "gluten-free" diet.

<sup>22</sup> Gerber: *Op. cit.*

### PART THREE

## Food Selection and Preparation

Part Three deals with Food Selection and Preparation. Although the nurse today is not often required to prepare food for an individual patient, her role as a teacher and an interpreter of good health practices demands that she have a sound knowledge of food as it appears on the family table. Whether she works at the bedside or in the community as a public health, school or industrial nurse—in fact, in all areas where she functions—she is expected to have reliable information on many matters pertaining to the maintenance of health and the treatment of disease. Not the least of these pertains to food and its preparation.

The nurse should know something of the variety of available foods and of how

these may contribute to a pleasing and palatable menu. A knowledge of the effect of methods of preservation and of cooking processes on the retention or the destruction of food nutrients will help her to interpret these data to the public. An appreciation of which foods a given recipe is likely to contain will aid her in knowing whether or not such a food is permissible on a given therapeutic diet. Lastly, if the nurse can make practical suggestions for making a therapeutic diet more palatable and, therefore, more acceptable, it is more likely to be followed. The following section has been written to help her obtain some of this information and to give her some experience in the preparation of food that is "good to eat."



### PART THREE

## Food Selection and Preparation

Part Three deals with Food Selection and Preparation. Although the nurse today is not often required to prepare food for an individual patient, her role as a teacher and an interpreter of food

these may contribute to a pleasing and palatable menu. A knowledge of the effect of methods of preservation and of cooking processes on the retention or the destruction of food nutrients will help her to interpret these data to the public. An appreciation of which foods a given recipe is likely to contain will aid her in knowing whether or not such a food is

nurse—in fact, in all areas where she functions—she is expected to have reliable information on many matters pertaining to the maintenance of health and the treatment of disease. Not the least of these pertains to food and its preparation.

The nurse should know something of the variety of available foods and of how

written to help her obtain some of this information and to give her some experience in the preparation of food that is "good to eat."



# Introduction to Food Selection and Preparation

Food selection in a broad sense covers more than the choice of an adequate amount of variety foods. It includes planning for the day good meals which will be not only adequate nutritionally but satisfying to the appetite and to the taste. Foods which contrast in food value, color, flavor and texture, and blend, or, as it is often expressed, "go together," should be chosen to make up a meal.

## ADEQUATE MENU FOR A DAY

An adequate and attractive menu for a day can be planned very easily on the basic dietary pattern which was discussed in Chapter 18. This can be varied from day to day, as well as from week to week, and there need be little repetition of the various items which make up a meal unless, as may be the case when it comes to breakfast, there is a preference for one type of menu. The basic dietary pattern, which includes 1 pint of milk, 1 serving of meat, 1 egg, 1 serving of some other protein food, 2 servings of fruit (one of the citrus variety, or tomatoes), 1 serving of a green

or a yellow vegetable, 1 serving of another vegetable, 1 small potato, 3 slices of whole-grain or enriched bread, 1 serving of another cereal of the same type, 3 pats of butter or margarine, will provide an adequate, or almost adequate, amount of every dietary essential excepting calories. This allows for the use of sugar and shortening, which add so much to the texture and the flavor of so many cooked dishes, for the use of butter, cream or oil as dressing for vegetables and salads, and for the inclusion of extra fruit and other foods which have appetite appeal. The total amount in excess of the basic pattern should depend upon the caloric requirement rather than on the appetite alone.

It is not necessary to make any dietary calculation in planning meals for the normal person. It is good practice, however, to consider weight as one of the indications of normality. If weight is greater than average, menus should follow as closely as possible the basic pattern without caloric additions. If weight is under, it may be well to increase the amount of milk and eggs and in choose



Fig. 87. An attractively set tray tempts the appetite.

or provide foods which will especially tempt the appetite. Food will often alleviate fatigue and a condition which

main meal of the day may be served at noon or in the evening, to suit convenience and preference. The basic pattern calls for meat, potatoes, some other vegetable and a dessert, with the addition of a salad if not used at another meal. The same general plan may be followed for the lighter meal, either luncheon at noon or supper in the evening, when a supplementary protein other than meat may be the main dish. This may be in the form of a soup made with

a milk base, or an egg or a cheese dish. Such dishes will sometimes be used as the main source of protein. Recipes will be found in Chapter 40 (Eggs), Chapter 42 (Cheese) and Chapter 38 (Cereals). Recipes for use of dried vegetables (legumes), which are also high in protein, will be found in Chapter 49 (Family-size Inexpensive Recipes). A dessert, which adds satisfaction to both luncheon and dinner, gives another opportunity for the use of milk and eggs.

The preparation of each meal depends first of all upon having all ingredients on hand. The order of preparation of each dish, so that all will be ready at the meal hour, should be considered first. If a baked product is in the meal plan, the oven should be preheated at the proper temperature, and time should be allowed for this as well as for baking. The time indicated for the proper cook-

ing of meat, fish, eggs and vegetables should be estimated in order that they may be served as soon as they are cooked. Salad ingredients should be taken out of the refrigerator, where they have been placed in order to be crisp, and put together just before serving time. The table or the tray should be set so as to be ready when the food is at its best. Dishes for hot food should be warm, while those for cold food should be cold, or even chilled in the refrigerator.

### FOOD FOR THE PATIENT

One of the responsibilities of the nurse is to make sure that the patient for whom she is caring is provided with appropriate, well-cooked and attractively served food. This is particularly important when the condition of the patient demands the restriction of certain foods. The food preferences of the patient must be considered, and, if foods to which there is a prejudice must be included, they should be made as attractive as possible in seasoning or flavor and appearance.

When food preferences are based upon national or regional food habits, the problem is even more difficult. For instance, in the case of a patient on a general diet who refuses milk as a beverage, effort should be made to use an extra amount in cooked dishes. These, however, will not always be acceptable to patients whose tastes have been conditioned by habits.

The nurse should be familiar with the contributions of food but also cookery methods. Through this knowledge she will be better able to help the patient to adjust to a prescribed diet.

Often, the nurse will be responsible for tray arrangement. Clean, crisp linen and suitable dishes, heated or chilled according to the food to be served, and

color with the food often make a dish more tempting. Fresh sprigs of parsley, strips of pimientos or green pepper may often be used to good advantage with main dishes. A few berries, cherries, strips or segments of other fruits of bright color may add an interesting note to a plain dessert. A flower laid on the tray or placed in a low vase which cannot easily be upset may add a finishing touch. It is worth while to take pains with the preparation and the serving of food.

### USE OF RECIPES

A recipe is a formula by which the

preparation is begun. The recipes in the following chapters are for as small quantities as possible to ensure successful results.

The use of small utensils for the preparation of small recipes is an aid to success. A pint saucepan, a very small double boiler, a small strainer, a small drip coffee pot and a small teapot will make the preparation of small quantities easier and more successful than would be the case otherwise. It should be noted that the time allowance for small recipes is usually shorter than for the preparation of those of family size. Most small-quantity recipes prepared on top of the stove should be cooked over low heat. Temperature and time should be regulated carefully when individual baking dishes are used.

### MEASURING INGREDIENTS

For the successful use of a recipe accurate measurements are important, particularly in the case of flour, sugar, shortening and leavening agents, such as bak-





Fig. 88. Only level measures are accurate measures. (Institute of Home Economics, U. S. Department of Agriculture)

ing powder and soda. Flour and confectioner's sugar must be sifted before being measured.

For the sake of texture and flavor, certain variations may be made according to taste after the basic preparation has been accomplished. At this time, for instance, more liquid may be added to a soup or a sauce recipe, and more seasoning may be added to taste to any dish. In fact, the cook should form the habit of tasting with a critical palate every dish which she prepares before serving.

For measuring the following

or a set of measuring cups of the above volumes; tablespoons and teaspoons of regulation sizes or a set of measuring spoons.

To measure dry material by the cup,

before measurement. Granulated sugar may be measured easily, but brown sugar should be packed firmly into the cup. Before measuring honey or syrup, rinse the cup with cold water.

Measurement of butter and margarine, when in  $\frac{1}{2}$ -lb. sticks, may be made by accurate division. One stick corresponds to the measurement of  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup. To measure bulk fat, pack firmly into cup to the desired mark of measurement. Except for pastry, fat should be at room temperature. (An easy way of measuring  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of shortening is to fill the cup to half mark with cold water and add shortening enough to cause water to rise

to the 1-cup mark. To measure  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup, fill with cold water to the three-quarter mark.)

To measure dry ingredients by the tablespoon or the teaspoon, fill until heaping and, with the cutting edge of a knife, brush off all that extends above the edge of the spoon. If one half spoonful is desired, divide the contents of the

eight is desired, divide the remaining one fourth crosswise and push off the portion not needed. If one third of a spoonful is desired, divide the contents of the spoon crosswise into thirds, pushing off the undesired portion.

To measure spoonfuls of liquid dip the spoon into the liquid.

TABLE OF MEASURES AND APPROXIMATE WEIGHTS

3 teaspoons	1 tbsp
16 tablespoons	1 cup
$\frac{1}{2}$ cup	1 gill
2 cups	1 pt.
4 cups	1 qt.
2 pints	1 qt.
4 quarts	1 gal.
1 tablespoon butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
• 1 tablespoon liquid	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
1 tablespoon flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
1 tablespoon sugar	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
• 1 cup liquid	8 ozs.
1 cup flour	4½ ozs.
1 cup butter	8 ozs.
1 cup sugar	7 ozs.

• Water or milk

To measure butter or other solid fats, pack solidly into the spoon and level with a knife

## The Metric System and Its Equivalents\*

The metric system of weights and measures is commonly used in all types of scientific work. Dietary prescriptions are usually written in this system. The unit of volume is the liter (approximately 1 quart) of water which weighs 1,000 Gm. or 1 Kg

Below is given a table of metric weights and measures and their equivalents. When preparing weighed diets, extreme accuracy is necessary, but for rough estimates approximate figures may be used.

## COOKERY TERMS

**Cream:** to soften shortening and to blend with sugar by rubbing with a wooden spoon.

**Cut in:** to blend shortening with flour with pastry blender or two knives.

**Dice:** to cut in small square pieces.

**Fold:** to add whipped cream or beaten egg whites with a careful cutting motion.

**Mince:** to cut or to chop fine

**Purée:** to press food through a sieve.

**Sauté:** to cook in a small amount of fat.

**Sear:** to brown quickly over direct heat or in oven

**Shred:** to cut or to tear in thin strips.

**Simmer:** to cook in liquid just below boiling point

**Steep:** to let stand in hot liquid below boiling point.

## CARE OF UTENSILS AND DISHES

Intelligent planning for the use of

\* For additional equivalents see Table 8, Part Four

1 liter (by volume)	= 1,000 cubic centimeters (cc.) = 1.06 qts.
1 liter (by weight)	= 1 kilogram (Kg) = 1,000 Gm. = 2.2 lbs.
1 oz.	= 28.34 Gm.
1 Gm.	= 1 cc.
1 tsp.	= 5 cc.
1 tbsp.	= 14 cc. approximately figured at 15 Gm.
2 tbsp. (1 oz.)	= 28 cc. approximately figured at 30 Gm.
1 cup	= 225 cc. approximately figured at 240 Gm.

utensils and dishes and their care after use is a factor in efficient food preparation. This includes the following points:

1. When both dry and liquid materials are to be measured, use the measuring cup first for the dry ingredients, then for the liquids.

2. Rinse cooking utensils as soon as possible. Use hot water for those which have contained sugar, syrup or fat. Wipe greasy utensils with soft paper before rinsing. For eggs or starchy ingredients, use lukewarm water.

3. Wash cooking utensils as soon as possible. This makes meal preparation and dishwashing neater and easier.

4. When water is hard, a water softener is recommended before soap is used. A "soapless soap" which is a detergent may replace both water softener and soap.

5. Order of dishwashing: rinse dishes and stack in an orderly pile to the left of sink. Wash in this order: glass, silver, small table dishes, then serving dishes. Place washed dishes in drainer and rinse with very hot water, or rinse in very hot water and place on towel. If dishes shine and do not streak, further drying by the towel is unnecessary. Place dried dishes on tray to return to cupboards.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

## CHAPTER THIRTY-FIVE

# Beverages

### BEVERAGES IN THE MENU

In the opinion of most persons, a meal is incomplete without a beverage, which in its simplest form may be a glass of cold water, chilled with ice if desired. This is usually part of the service of the invalid's tray, even if an additional

Coffee and tea have no food value unless served with cream and sugar. Cocoa in itself will increase the food value of the milk which is used in its preparation. Coffee, tea and cocoa all have a certain amount of stimulating power. Generally this is an asset, especially at breakfast time.

A cold beverage other than water may be used at any meal, with the exception of breakfast, especially in warm weather. Iced coffee, tea or cocoa, a carbonated beverage or a fruit drink usually is chosen. These beverages, however, are used all the year round between meals as a refreshment. Milk, eggnog and other cold beverages made with milk or with milk and eggs are valuable for serving between meals when the caloric or the protein content of the diet needs to be increased. Wine and other liquors, which are used occasionally to provoke appetite or to stimulate or flavor, furnish additional calories.

With few exceptions, everyone enjoys a hot beverage on the breakfast table. Usually coffee is the choice, and it may also be the preference with other meals. Some persons prefer tea at breakfast, but it is more commonly used at other meals. Cocoa is a good choice for the children's breakfast, especially if a cold rather than a hot cereal is served. A few older persons take cocoa for breakfast, and may enjoy it, as will the children for lunch or supper. For most children, however, milk is the indispensable beverage at every meal.

Hot beverages should be hot when they reach the patient and cold beverages cold. The former is particularly important, as a lukewarm cup of a beverage which is supposed to be hot may

utensils and dishes and their care after use.

Materials are to be measured, use the measuring cup first for the dry ingredients, then for the liquids.

2. Rinse cooking utensils as soon as possible. Use hot water for those which have contained sugar, syrup or fat. Wipe greasy utensils with soft paper before rinsing. For eggs or starchy ingredients, use lukewarm water.

3. Wash cooking utensils as soon as possible. This makes meal preparation and dishwashing neater and easier.

4. When water is hard, a water softener is recommended before soap is used. A "soapless soap" which is a detergent may replace both water softener and soap.

5. Order of dishwashing: rinse dishes and stack in an orderly pile to the left of sink. Wash in this order: glass, silver, small table dishes, then serving dishes. Place washed dishes in drainer and rinse with very hot water, or rinse in very hot water and place on towel. If dishes shine and do not streak, further drying by the towel is unnecessary. Place dried dishes on tray to return to cupboards.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

Tea contains practically the same constituents as does coffee. The principal ingredient is theine, similar to caffeine. Tannin is also found, as well as a small amount of an essential oil which gives it tea flavor and aroma. It is important that tea should be made just before serving. According to Hutchinson, an English author, one cup of tea as ordinarily made "contains about one grain of caffeine and twice or three times as much of tannic acid." This statement probably refers to the way it is made in England, where it is usually stronger than in this country. The physiologic effects of tea are much the same as those of coffee. Most persons, however, seem to be less susceptible to the effects of tea than to those of coffee.

**Herb Teas.** Infusions of various herbs are used in beverages and called tea. With the exception of maté, from a South American shrub, they are generally lacking in stimulation but are pleasant and refreshing.

### Cocoa and Chocolate

Cocoa and chocolate are produced from cocoa beans, which grow in pods from about 5 to 8 inches long upon a tropical (or subtropical) tree. They are then dried and bagged and sent to the manufacturing plant, where they are cleaned, sorted and roasted. Then they are cracked, and the beans are ground into a thick, oily liquid that is run into molds for bitter chocolate. For sweet chocolate, sugar is mixed with the mass before cooling and molding. For cocoa, some of the "butter" is removed before the liquid is cooled. This allows it to be ground into a soft, floury powder that is known as cocoa. Chocolate and cocoa, unlike tea and coffee, have a high nutritive value. The roasted beans, and likewise the bitter chocolate, contain approximately 50 per cent fat, about 18 per cent protein, 10 per cent starch and 7 per cent sugar. Like tea and coffee they also contain a stimulant and tannin. The stimulant, known as theobromine,

belongs to the same group of chemical substances as does caffeine and has approximately the same physiologic effects, though not to such a marked degree. Since only a small amount of cocoa or chocolate is used in making the beverage, there is only a small amount of stimulant in one cup, and the chief nutritive value of the drink lies not in the cocoa but in the amount of milk and sugar used with it. Cocoa should not be confused with Coca-cola, which is the product of a different plant and contains considerable caffeine.

### Cold Beverages

Cold beverages may be used with meals or between meals. They are more appetizing when chilled, but care should be used in serving an iced beverage to a bedfast patient.

Fruit juices, freshly squeezed, and canned or diluted frozen concentrates are general favorites and are usually allowed. Sometimes combinations of beaten egg with fruit juices are given. Eggs may be combined with milk, sweetened and flavored for a variety of so-called egg-nogs. Milk in its usual form, or as buttermilk or acidophilus milk, is the staple beverage in the invalid diet. Malted milks of various flavors may be used. Evaporated milk shaken with fruit juices and cracked ice is useful in some cases where it is difficult for the patient to take fresh milk. Sometimes effervescent waters or ginger ale is well taken by invalids. In certain cases they are specifically ordered. Iced tea, coffee and cocoa may be used between or with meals in some conditions. The choice of beverage will depend largely upon whether it is given for its food value or merely as refreshment. In any case, a cold drink served between meals adds interest to the monotonous hours in the daily routine of the invalid.

### Alcoholic Beverages

Alcohol is the product of fermentation of sugar: sugars found in such foodstuffs

ruin the enjoyment of what otherwise would be a good meal.

### Coffee

Coffee is obtained from the berry of a tropical tree which bears fruit all the year. The beans are removed from the berry, dried, cured and hulled before they are sent to be roasted in the countries where the coffee is to be consumed.

Blends of various kinds of coffee are used to produce the special aroma and flavor typical of an individual brand. The period of time allowed for roasting also affects the flavor. The roasted beans must be ground in order to allow the water to come in contact with as large a part of the coffee substance as possible. The fresher the grind, the better the flavor of the beverage. As coffee is seldom ground at home today, it should be purchased either freshly ground or in vacuum containers. After a container is opened and the coffee comes in contact with air, loss of flavor begins. It has been found that loss is delayed by keeping coffee in a cool place. Theoretically, the finer the grind, the greater the flavor released. The choice of "regular" or drip-grind coffee will depend upon which type of coffee pot is used.

The coffee bean has no caloric value,

given to children.

Caffeine may be removed to the extent of 95 per cent or more. Decaffe-

coffee.

Tannin is another of the soluble products which may be found in the decoction. Unlike caffeine, which is so soluble that it dissolves quickly when liquid

comes in contact with ground coffee, tannin requires several minutes for its complete extraction. Long boiling or standing on the grounds brings out a characteristic bitter flavor.

The ordinary cup of coffee, as it is made in the United States, contains from 2 to 3 grains of caffeine. Strong coffee may contain as high as 4 grains per cup, but the amount of tannin will depend largely upon the method by which it is made, as it increases with prolonged cooking.

The choice of a brand of coffee is influenced by the blending of different kinds of beans by the distributors, and also by a light or a heavy roast. A heavier roast than that which is liked best for a breakfast beverage may be preferred for after-dinner coffee.

### Tea

Tea as a beverage is the infusion made from the leaves of *thea*, an evergreen bush. The smaller and the younger leaves produce the more delicate flavor and, therefore, demand the higher prices. The very tender young leaves at the end of the branches make Orange Pekoe or Flowerly Pekoe tea.

After the leaves are gathered, they are put into trays or upon shelves and allowed to dry or wither in order to reduce the amount of moisture in them. They are next passed through rollers to extract more of the moisture. The masses of rolled leaves are then broken up, and, if green tea is desired, they are then

fermented before they are fired.

A soluble, or "instant," tea is available and has found its most popular use in the preparation of iced beverages. While it may be used in the preparation of a quick cup of hot tea, it is not always acceptable to connoisseurs, who have decided preferences in regard to the type and the quality of tea in leaf form



Fig. 89 Coffee should be poured after the tray is ready

of heat in place of the starches and the sugars. In cases of collapse, alcohol may act as a quick restorative. Like drugs, it never should be given to patients unless it is prescribed by the physician.

In its own form, wine, and most commonly sherry or port, is used in the invalid diet. Sherry, brandy, whisky and rum are used most often as flavorings for such beverages as eggnog and fruit drinks. Beer or ale may be prescribed in certain high caloric diets, especially when for some reason milk cannot be

taken. It should be noted that these beverages compare with milk merely in caloric value.

#### GENERAL RULES AND RECIPES FOR BEVERAGES

##### Coffee

A patient who is fond of coffee will be even more critical than usual with regard to it during illness or convalescence. The use of fresh coffee is important (see p. 410), as is the "grind," which should be suited to the type of



## ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES\*

	AVERAGE PORTION	CAL. per PORTION	ALCOHOL Per Cent	CARB. Per Cent	RANGE OF ALCOHOL Per Cent
<i>Distilled Liquors</i>					
Benedictine	20 cc.	80	42	30	35-50
Crème de menthe	20 cc.	74	36	30	35-50
Brandies	20 cc.	65	45	{Sugar sometimes added}	35-50
Rum	50 cc.	153	44		40-50
Whiskies	50 cc.	145	42	.	40-53
Gin	50 cc.	140	40	.	35-50
<i>Wines</i>					
Champagne	135 cc.	112	10	1-4	9-12
Red	120 cc.	95	12	.	10-16
White	120 cc.	89	12	.	10-16
Port	30 cc.	45	17	3-5	15-20
Sherry	30 cc.	42	17	3	15-22
<i>Malt Liquors</i>					
Ale	250 cc.	155	6	5	3-6
Beer	250 cc.	80	4	1	3-8
<i>Cider</i>					
Sweet	250 cc.	70	1	5	1-6
Fermented	250 cc.	130	5	0-13	1-6

\* The above table is compiled from a number of authentic sources. There are, of course, differences in composition of various brands, as indicated by the range of alcohol. When it was possible to obtain more than one analysis, average figures were used.

as fruits or sugar produced from starch by a malting process. Alcoholic beverages are of two types: those which are produced by fermentation only, such as ale, beer and most wines, and those in which the fermenting substances are distilled to yield a distillate with a higher percentage of alcohol than can be secured by fermentation only. In alcoholic beverages, the alcoholic concentrations are often increased by fortification or rectification, i.e., by the addition of alcohol or strong alcoholic distillates (neutral spirits). By such procedures the alcoholic content of wines which are not distilled may be as high as from 20 to 24 per cent.

Since Federal, and sometimes state, taxes are based on the alcoholic content,

the exact amount must be stated on the label of a retail product of a given manufacturer. It may be stated as percentage of alcohol, e.g., muscatel, 20 per cent, or as "proof alcohol" content. By this latter method 50 per cent alcohol is called 100 proof, and a whisky labeled "90 proof" would contain 90 per cent of 50 per cent alcohol or 45 per cent pure alcohol. For general use see table on this page.

For a time considerable importance was attached to the value of alcohol as a food, owing to the fact that alcohol, when burned, yields energy as heat, although it is not capable of being stored in the body as other food constituents are. For this reason it formerly was used sometimes in diabetic diets as a source



Fig. 89 Coffee should be poured after the tray is ready.

of heat in place of the starches and the sugars. In cases of collapse, alcohol may act as a quick restorative. Like drugs, it never should be given to patients unless it is prescribed by the physician.

In its own form, wine, and most commonly sherry or port, is used in the invalid diet. Sherry, brandy, whisky and rum are used most often as flavorings for such beverages as eggnog and fruit drinks. Beer or ale may be prescribed in certain high caloric diets, especially when for some reason milk cannot be

taken. It should be noted that these beverages compare with milk merely in caloric value.

### GENERAL RULES AND RECIPES FOR BEVERAGES

#### Coffee

A patient who is fond of coffee will be even more critical than usual with regard to it during illness or convalescence. The use of fresh coffee is important (see p. 410), as is the "grind," which should be suited to the type of

pot. If possible, a small drip pot should be used to make coffee, especially for the invalid's tray. A proportion of 2 level tablespoons to three quarters of an 8-oz. measuring cup of water is now the accepted proportion. For certain heavier types of coffee, the proportion of water may be increased to 1 cup. A patient may prefer a brew weaker than this. The fineness of the grind also affects the strength of the coffee. A medium "regular" grind is chosen for the boiling and the percolating methods of coffee making, while a finer grind labeled "Drip Grind" should be used for drip and vacuum pots. For after-dinner coffee, a double measurement of coffee is generally used.

**Boiling.** Pour freshly boiling water on the coffee and let it come to the boil. Settle with a little cold water, and set aside in steep for 2 or 3 minutes. Broken egg shells may be mixed with the ground coffee before water is added.

**Percolating.** Pour freshly boiling water over coffee after it has been put in basket. Set over the heat, let boil several minutes after beverage begins to bubble in the glass top. Do not over-percolate. Remove basket containing grounds.

**Drip Method.** Heat pot by rinsing with boiling water or by allowing the separate sections, including cover, to heat around a utensil in which water is being brought to the boil. Adjust basket over lower section and measure coffee

**Vacuum Method.** Boil water in lower portion of coffee "machine." After water boils, adjust upper sections and add coffee. Continue boiling and, when water rises into upper section, stir 30

all returned to lower pot. Remove upper section. If the coffee-maker demands the use of a filter cloth, wash and keep under water when not in use.

### **Decaffeinated Coffee**

**Procedure:** Decaffeinated coffee almost caffeine free is available in vacuum cans and may be prepared by any of the foregoing methods.

### **Instant Coffee**

**Procedure:** Soluble powdered coffee dissolves instantly in water which has just come to the boil. To allow the coffee to boil for 1 or 2 minutes improves the flavor. A caffeine-free powdered coffee is also available.

### **Iced Coffee**

**Procedure:** Prepare coffee by any of the above methods, using a double proportion of coffee to water, then pour over chopped ice in a tall glass. Add more ice, if necessary, and serve at once with powdered sugar and plain or whipped cream.

### **Tea**

**Procedure:** The proportion of 1 teaspoon of tea or 1 tea ball to 1 cup water is generally used.

Heat the teapot by pouring boiling water into it a few minutes before it is needed. Empty; put tea into the pot. Pour over it water that has just come in a boil and let stand for from 3 to 5 minutes, then serve with lemon, sugar and cream or milk, as preferred. A covered pot of boiling water always should be served with the pot of tea on the tray in case weak tea is preferred.

### **Instant Tea**

Instant tea, which can be made quickly, is now available. It is popular in the preparation of iced tea. Follow the directions on the package.

### **Iced Tea**

**Procedure:** Follow directions for making

## Cocoa and Chocolate\*

## Cocoa

## Ingredients:

2 teaspoons cocoa

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

ALTERNATIVE: 1 T. SUGAR, 2 T. PREPARED, 4 TO 5 tablespoons cocoa syrup (see below) may be stirred into 1 cup hot milk. Serve with whipped cream. Yield: 1 serving

NOTE: An "instant" sweet cocoa mix can be used for both hot and cold beverages, and it is convenient to have on hand. Certain brands contain dry milk solids as well as sugar, others are merely sweetened. Water or milk should be added according to the directions on the package

## Chocolate

Procedure: Follow directions for cocoa, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  square unsweetened chocolate cut in small pieces for the cocoa

## Iced Chocolate or Cocoa

Procedure: Follow directions for cocoa or chocolate and cool. Pour over chopped ice in tall glass and serve with whipped cream.

## Iced Mocha

Procedure: Combine equal parts of iced coffee and iced chocolate. Flavor with vanilla extract or powdered cinnamon to taste. Serve in tall glass with whipped cream.

## Cocoa Syrup

## Ingredients.

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cocoa

1 cup cold water

1 cup sugar

 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla extract

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

Procedure: Mix cocoa and water in 1½-quart saucepan and stir over low heat until mixture thickens and boils. Add sugar and salt, stir until dissolved. Boil 3 minutes, add vanilla extract, pour into pint jar and seal. After opening, store in refrigerator. This syrup will keep indefinitely and may be used as a flavoring for milk drinks or as a sauce for puddings and ice creams. Yield: 1 pint

## Milk-and-Egg Beverages\*

## Eggnog

## Ingredients:

1 egg

Salt

1 tablespoon powdered sugar

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

1 tablespoon brandy

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

## Chocolate Eggnog

Procedure: Follow directions for eggnog (see above) substituting 1 tablespoon cocoa syrup (above) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla extract for brandy

## Molasses Eggnog

Procedure: Follow directions for Eggnog, substituting molasses for powdered sugar.

## Orange Eggnog

## Ingredients:

1 egg yolk

2 teaspoons sugar

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice

1 teaspoon lemon juice

1 tablespoon cream

1 egg white

Procedure: Beat egg yolk until foamy and

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "

" " " " " "



Fig. 90. Banana milk shake

### Malted Milk, Hot

#### Ingredients.

4 tablespoons malted milk powder

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup hot water

**Procedure:** Moisten malted milk powder with enough hot water to make a smooth paste, then add remaining water gradually, stirring constantly. A little salt or celery salt may be added as seasoning, or 2 teaspoons sugar and a few drops of vanilla extract may be added as a flavoring. **Yield:** 1 serving

### Chocolate Malted Milk

#### Ingredients.

2 tablespoons malted milk powder

1 tablespoon cocoa syrup

1 cup milk

2 tablespoons cream

**Procedure:** Mix malted milk powder and syrup, stir in milk gradually, add cream and beat with a rotary egg beater until well blended. Pour over chopped ice in tall glass. **Yield:** 1 serving



Fig 91. Tomato juice may be chosen as a breakfast fruit or it may be served between meals.

### Molasses Malted Milk

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons molasses
- 3 tablespoons malted milk powder
- 1 cup milk, hot or cold

**Procedure:** Blend molasses with malted milk powder. Stir in hot or cold milk. Beat with rotary beater and serve at once. Yield 1 serving.

### Milk Shake

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons sugar
- 1 cup milk
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Mix sugar, milk and vanilla in a shaker or glass fruit jar. Add shaved ice. Fasten cover tight and shake well. When milk is frothy, strain into tall glass and serve at once.

Yield 1 serving.

### Molasses Milk Shake

**Procedure:** Follow directions for Milk Shake, substituting molasses for sugar.

Add cinnamon, mace or nutmeg to taste.

**Banana Milk Shake****Ingredients:**

1 fully ripe banana

smooth and creamy. Add cold milk and mix thoroughly or shake. Yield: 1 large-size drink or 2 medium-size drinks. For frosted banana milk shake, add 3 tablespoons vanilla ice cream before serving; for molasses banana milk shake, beat in 2 tablespoons molasses and nutmeg to taste.

**Milk Punch****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

1 egg yolk

1 tablespoon sugar

Dash nutmeg and cinnamon

 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons rum

To 1 cup milk add 1 egg yolk, 1 tablespoon sugar, dash nutmeg and cinnamon, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons rum. Beat thoroughly.

Yield: 1 serving.

ing.

**Fruit Beverages**

Fruit juices are the usual choice for breakfast. They are much used in their own simple form or as a basis for refreshing between-meal beverages. (For preparation see Chap. 39.)

**Orangeade****Ingredients:**

1 tablespoon sugar

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice

1 tablespoon lemon juice

Procedure: Mix sugar and water in a small saucepan, stir over low heat until sugar dissolves. Boil 1 minute and chill. Add fruit juices, pour over cracked ice in a tall glass. Yield: 1 serving.

**Lemonade****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons sugar

1 cup water

 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons lemon juice

Procedure: Combine sugar and water, stir until dissolved. Add lemon juice, strain and pour over cracked ice in a tall glass. Yield: 1 serving.

**Egg Lemonade****Ingredients:**

1 egg

2 tablespoons sugar

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water

2 tablespoons lemon juice

Procedure: Beat egg and sugar together, add water and lemon juice. Strain over cracked ice in a tall glass. Yield: 1 serving.

**Mint Fruitade****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  cups boiling water $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar

2 mint sprigs, crushed

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup pineapple or grapefruit juice

Juice of 1 lemon

Procedure: Boil water and sugar 3 minutes, add crushed mint. (If fresh mint is not obtainable, use 2 tablespoons dried spearmint.) Let stand from 5 to 10 minutes, strain and add fruit juices. Pour over cracked ice in a tall glass. Yield: 2 servings.

**Fruit Yoghurt Beverage****Ingredients:**

1 container yoghurt

 $\frac{1}{2}$  can frozen grape or orange concentrate

Procedure: Beat yoghurt with the frozen juice concentrate until blended. Serve in tall parfait glasses or sherbet glasses. Yield: 2 servings.

**Canned and Frozen Fruit Juices**

Canned and frozen fruit juices can be obtained in great variety and are useful in the diet of the patient. The canned fruit juices may be served undiluted. The frozen concentrates should be diluted according to directions on the

be stored in the freezing unit of the refrigerator until they are to be used. Suggested combinations are: pineapple and

grapefruit, orange juice and grapefruit juice, grape and lemon or orange juice, prune with lemon juice. Canned and bottled juices may be combined with frozen juices. Canned tomato juice is largely used. Often a dash of lemon juice is added. For lunch or dinner, it may be served chilled or heated almost to boiling point.

### Wine Beverages

#### Mulled Wine

##### Ingredients:

- 1 1-inch stick cinnamon
- 3 cloves
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup white or red wine

**Procedure:** Combine cinnamon, cloves, sugar and water in a small saucepan and boil 2 minutes, strain. Add hot mixture gradually to wine and heat. Serve hot. Yield: 1 serving

#### Wine Cooler

Place  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup white wine in tall glass. Add cracked ice and fill glass almost to top with

carbonated water. Garnish with sprigs of fresh mint or with fresh berries or seeded sweet cherries. Yield: 1 serving

For suggestions for preparation of highly nutritious beverages, see Chapter 50

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Which beverages are considered to be accessory to a meal? Give the reasons for your choice.

2. Outline the principles of preparing coffee as a beverage. Which method is considered best and why?

3. Outline the principles of making tea. Give reasons for the choice of this method.

4. List beverages suitable for serving between meals as refreshment. Which of these would supply a worth-while amount of vitamin C?

5. List beverages which may be taken for additional nourishment.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.



*Safe Milk*  
*Composition of Milk*  
*Food Value*  
*Digestibility*  
*Milk in the Menu*  
*Use of Milk in Recipes*

## CHAPTER THIRTY-SIX

# Milk

Milk, although not a perfect food, is the best single food which nature provides and the only animal food biologically intended for food. Each animal provides for its young the food substance

and the discussion of milk in this chapter will be limited in general to cow's milk. The adaptations which must be made in infant feeding were discussed in Part One, Chapter 13. While milk is particularly important until growth is completed, it is an asset to the diet throughout life.

### SAFE MILK

The safety of the milk supply is as important as the safety of the water supply. Many cities and most states have set up standards for cleanliness and bacteria content. All milk must be pasteurized or comply with standards set for what is known as certified milk. Nowhere else in the world is the milk supply as uniformly good as it is in the United States.

In the absence of a good supply of pasteurized milk, fresh milk should be

pasteurized or boiled at home, or evaporated or dry milk should be used. Evaporated and dry milk are sterilized or pasteurized in factory preparation, in the course of which they lose little of their nutritive value. Large quantities of dry milk were manufactured during World War II for shipment abroad, and the consumer now is profiting from the new and efficient methods of preparation developed during that period.

Most of the dry milk on the market is in skimmed form and sells at a low price. For this reason, its use has increased immeasurably in the last few years. It is also an invaluable source of nutrients when calories must be limited, as in a reducing diet or when fat must be avoided for any other reason. During manufacture, the curd of both the canned and the dry milk is broken up, and for this reason the milk is easily digested. For the same reason, doctors advise that fresh milk be boiled when used for infant feeding. Sweetened condensed milk has a higher fuel value than other milk because of the large amount of sugar used in its preparation, but, because of the high sugar content, usually it is not prescribed by the doctor for infant or invalid.

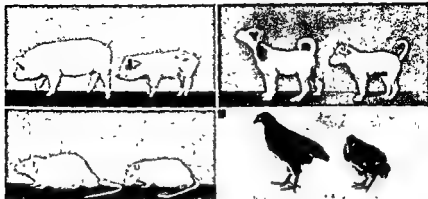


Fig 92. Demonstrates the case for milk. Pigs in the top left-hand picture are female littermates. They were the same size when 3 weeks old. The larger pig had milk added to its food, the smaller animal had no milk. The same is true of the dogs and of the rats and the chicks, which are siblings (National Dairy Council)

### COMPOSITION OF MILK

This liquid which we know as milk is a yellowish-white fluid which is a solu-

### APPROXIMATE AVERAGE COMPOSITION OF COW'S MILK

	PER CENT
Protein	35
Fat	39
Sugar	49
Minerals	07
Water	870

While a certain minimum amount of fat is desirable and often designated by law, the food value of milk does not depend so much upon that as upon the quality of the proteins, the minerals and the vitamins which are present throughout the whole milk. Contrary to opinion, even skim milk is a more valuable food from the nutritive standpoint than cream. When milk is skimmed, most of the fat and of the vitamin A and a small amount of the riboflavin are removed with the cream, but it still scores high on other counts.

The milk of different breeds of cattle varies as to the amount of the total solids and of fat. The content of each may vary with the season of the year.

State standards usually take into account both the fat content and the total solids. The requirements in general

### FOOD VALUE

The test of the nutritive value of a food lies in its ability to satisfy the needs of the body.

In nutritive value, milk stands high. For fuel purposes, average milk gives 666 calories a quart. A 2-year-old child needs about 1,200 calories, and the quart of milk which he must have to get the other dietary essentials will give him half the calories that he needs. The fat and the sugar, which with the protein furnish the milk calories, are present in forms which are very easily digested.

The sugar is in the form of lactose, which does not ferment readily or cause digestive upsets, and it also aids in preventing the growth of the putrefactive bacteria which develop in the intestines and sometimes cause digestive disturbances.

The quality of the protein in milk is excellent, which means that it contains the amino acids needed to build new tissue. This is invaluable when it is realized how much new tissue a child must build each year until he arrives at maturity. In the first year a baby triples his weight. The quart of milk which the 2-year-old takes will furnish him with enough protein of the best kind. Older children will get more of their protein from other sources. Adults should get some of the amount they need from milk as well as from other sources. It is also important to note that the protein in

The mineral substances found in milk are important. The trace of iron present is easily available. Calcium and phosphorus, necessary factors in forming bone, are furnished in large amounts by milk, on which children depend for an adequate supply during the time that the framework of their bodies is being built. A lack of either mineral may cause rickets.

In a series of experiments with children from 1 to 13 years of age carried out by Columbia University, 1 quart of milk produced optimum storage of calcium. It was observed that even when supplemented with calcium from vegetables, a pint of milk did not produce the same results. Reports show that optimum storage has been obtained on a pint of milk, but only when the children studied were already in good physiologic condition.

Milk is relatively rich in vitamin A and contributes enough thiamine to make it valuable in a diet where it is used liberally. The riboflavin content

also contributes certain amounts of niacin. The vitamin B<sub>6</sub> content is low and is probably influenced by the period of storage. As milk is such an uncertain source of this vitamin, it cannot be counted upon as a major source of supply.

The vitamin D in natural milk is not sufficient to protect children against rickets. However, it is now common practice to reinforce both fresh and condensed milk with vitamin D.

product has found a place for itself in the low caloric diet, as all fat is removed. It can be reconstituted with water instantly for use as a beverage or to replace fresh milk in any recipe. It is not always necessary to reconstitute it, as it may be mixed with the other dry ingredients listed in the recipe and the necessary amount of water added.

Whole dry milk is not in general distribution but is available for infant feeding.

Cream has a fat content of from 18 to 40 per cent, depending upon whether it is sold as "light" coffee cream or "heavy" whipping cream. Comparing food value with cost, cream is much more expensive than milk. In the high caloric diet it may be useful if the fat is well tolerated.

## DIGESTIBILITY

Because milk has a high food value and is so easily digested, it is an important factor in the diet of the sick. Often it may be prescribed for persons who have been unable, or who have thought they were unable, to take it as a beverage. When the prejudice is merely against the flavor, "chocolate milk"—now generally distributed by dairies—may be well taken, if it is allowed. Homogenized milk, prepared by a process which reduces the size of the fat

globules and makes a more perfect emulsion, is often tolerated better than regular milk.

Sometimes it may be necessary to prepare milk specially for example, to boil it, which makes a smaller curd for digestion, or to mix it with carbonated waters. In some cases evaporated or dry skim milk drinks flavored with orange juice or cocoa will be taken more easily than fresh milk. Buttermilk may be preferred to milk in other liquid form and is comparable with skim milk in nutritive value.

Other products which sometimes can be used successfully are yoghurt and milk.

may be found useful are cream and cottage cheese.

### MILK IN THE MENU

**Milk a Necessity.** It is not hard to convince the majority of people that children must have milk in their diet, although the importance of an adequate amount is not always realized. It is not so easy to persuade adults that they, too, need milk. Even if they are getting an adequate supply of protein from other

fortunately, milk in such forms is as nutritious as when taken as a beverage. When a specific sensitivity to milk exists, it may have to be omitted, but in that case special care should be taken to keep the diet adequate. Sometimes milk in canned or dried form or boiled fresh milk can be taken by those who are allergic to fresh milk. It should be noted also that milk in canned and in dried form is convenient and economical for use in general cookery.

**Summation of Value of Milk.** The value of milk in the diet may be summed up as follows:

Milk contains more food essentials in better proportions than most other foods.

Milk is an excellent source of both calcium and phosphorus.

Though milk contains only a small amount of iron, that amount is in an easily available form.

Milk proteins are of the best quality for tissue growth and repair, and are especially valuable as a supplement to the incomplete proteins of grains.

The fat of milk is in an emulsified form and is easily digested.

The only carbohydrate in milk—lactose—increases calcium absorption from the intestine and inhibits putrefaction in the colon.

Milk is a good source of vitamin A and riboflavin, and contributes thiamine. It is also an excellent carrier of vitamin D when fortified.

Milk should be considered a necessity, not a luxury, because it furnishes more of the protective food factors for the money than any other food.

### USE OF MILK IN RECIPES

Milk is an ingredient in unnumberable recipes, such as those classified under Beverages, Desserts and Soups and in other chapters. When used either by itself or as an ingredient of a cold beverage, it is usually desirable to have it chilled. When it is to be served hot, either by itself or as an ingredient, gen-

the use of more laxative foods, the second, by suggesting that a glass of milk be taken instead of a second slice of bread or a second helping of dessert. In a reducing diet it is important that some milk be included, as, when the amount and the variety of food are cut down, special care must be taken to supply the minerals and the vitamins.

**How Milk May Be Taken.** Milk may be taken in the form of custards, soups, cocoa and other milk dishes;

eral practice is to place it in the top of a double boiler and heat over hot water. This prevents scorching, which injures flavor. Even in a double boiler, milk should not be overheated, as this causes the formation of scum. If scum forms, it may be beaten into the milk with a rotary egg beater

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Should milk be considered an almost perfect food? Compare the con-

tributions of  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint milk with a 6-oz. bottle of a soft drink.

2. The importance of a safe milk supply is recognized. Which forms of milk are safe to use?

3. Discuss the digestibility of milk. If it is not well taken in fresh form, how can this difficulty be overcome?

4. Outline the reasons for use of milk in the family diet.

5. List 10 recipes in which a large amount of milk is called for.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

## CHAPTER THIRTY-SEVEN

# Fats, Sweetenings, Seasonings and Flavorings

Fats, sweetenings, seasonings and flavorings are grouped together in this chapter because of their importance in cookery and their contributions to the preparation of good meals. When they are used in combination with other ingredients, they have one or more functions, the most important perhaps being the property which they all share of tying together other foods so that texture or flavor, or both, may be interesting. Among fats, for instance, butter and margarine have a large use as spreads for bread, when their function is somewhat the same as when fat is used as an ingredient of a recipe. Sugar, honey and syrup among sweetenings and salt and pepper among seasonings have common use as accessories at meals.

### FATS

For their weight, fats have the highest fuel value of any food. Butter and fortified margarine differ from other fats

spreads and shortenings, and in liquid fats, which are known as oils and have their largest use for frying and as an ingredient of salad dressings.

All hard fats share a characteristic

All types of fat are used for frying, but only liquid fats known as oils are used in the preparation of salad dressings. Bland oils, which may be a product of corn, cottonseed, peanuts or soybeans, especially the first two, are more largely used than olive oil for dressings in this country.

### Butter

Butter is made from milk fat, which is known as cream. As some moisture and curd remain after the cream is churned, butter generally contains about 85 per cent fat. This gives it a very high

eral practice is to place it in the top of a double boiler and heat over hot water. This prevents scorching, which injures flavor. Even in a double boiler, milk should not be overheated, as this causes the formation of scum. If scum forms, it may be beaten into the milk with a rotary egg beater.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Should milk be considered an almost perfect food? Compare the contributions of  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint milk with a 6-oz. bottle of a soft drink.
2. The importance of a safe milk supply is recognized. Which forms of milk are safe to use?
3. Discuss the digestibility of milk. If it is not well taken in fresh form, how can this difficulty be overcome?
4. Outline the reasons for use of milk in the family diet.
5. List 10 recipes in which a large amount of milk is called for.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

content per unit of weight. All have a more or less concentrated caloric value in ratio to their concentration. This is highest in sugar and lowest in syrups. White sugar, which is highly refined, contributes only calories. Brown sugar, maple sugar and syrup, and corn syrup and honey have a very small mineral content, but molasses is considered a good source of minerals, particularly iron. Honey and molasses both contribute small and varying amounts of the vitamins of the B complex.

In order of volume the sweetenings used in food preparation and as table accessories are sugar, molasses, corn syrup, cane syrup, honey, and maple sugar and syrup. Of these, honey has perhaps the oldest history, except for the Frigid Zones, its production is world wide. Sugar from the cane has been known

in a solid form, although brown sugar is used to some extent. Both granulated and tablet sugar are used for sweetening coffee and tea. Powdered and confectioners' sugar, both fine in texture, have some use in cookery and on the table.

Honey and all forms of syrup have some use in recipes and also as a table accessory for griddle cakes and hot breads. There is some use for corn syrup in preparation of the infant's formula. Molasses is used less at the present time as a spread than as an ingredient in cooking.

All these products have the power of satisfying appetite. This may be an asset or a liability, depending upon how they are used in the diet. The custom of serving a dessert has proved to be good, as it provides the final satisfaction to a meal. On the other hand, sweets should not be eaten to any extent between

tapped and the sap concentrated by boiling. The juice of the sugar cane also had some use at an early date, but it is only within the last few centuries that methods were developed for producing sugar in the many forms in which we know it today. It is only in comparatively modern times that the sugar beet has become a source of the world's sugar supply. It is a still shorter time since methods of extracting sweetening from corn to produce a thick syrup were evolved. A small amount of corn sugar is also produced, most of it for commercial use. Some use of dextrose, a form of corn sugar, is made in the invalid diet when it is desirable to increase caloric value without oversweetening a beverage or a dessert.

Sugar has become the staple sweetening since the large volume of production has made it less expensive than other forms of sweetening. Sugar from both cane and beets is used in the United States. Both types have the same sweetening power. Most recipes which call for sugar indicate the granu-

lated form of sweets, be taken after meals. Dried fruits, in which the natural sugar has become concentrated, are also classified as confections, although they are far less sweet than candy.

Artificial sweeteners are in common use today as calorie spacers. They are also used by those who must curtail sugar intake for other reasons. These sweeteners are organic compounds which taste sweet but have no food value. The common ones in use are saccharin and the cyclamates (either the



- Does not permit sale of yellow margarine  
 ▨ Imposes license fees and/or taxes upon sale of margarine  
 □ No restrictions or impositions on margarine  
 A Requires vitamin A enrichment  
 B Imposes a tax on margarine which contains fat or oil from nonmaritime sources

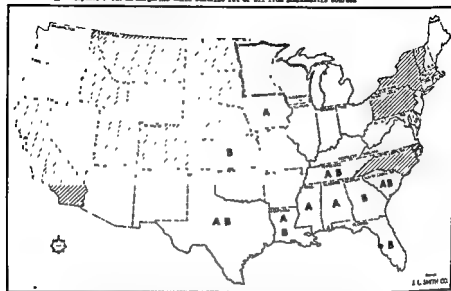


Fig. 93. Showing the situation in the United States with regard to restrictions and taxes on the sale of margarine and to vitamin A enrichment.

fuel value—about 220 calories to the ounce. Fat is digested less quickly than protein or carbohydrate and thus gives satiety value to a meal.

In addition to its fuel value, butter is an excellent source of vitamin A and may contain some vitamin D. The average vitamin A potency of the total output of creamery butter is 15,000 international units per pound. The effect upon the vitamin A content of storage and handling has been found to be negligible.

The quality of butter, of which flavor is the favorite spread.

### Margarine

Margarine is the term used to cover shortenings which most nearly approximate butter in consistency and in flavor.

Public demand resulted in the repeal of Federal taxes on the product and of restrictions on the sale of colored margarine in interstate commerce. State regulations vary, however, in regard to kinds of fats that may or may not be used, and also in taxes exacted on its sale. Only two states prohibit the sale of yellow margarine. In general, the repeal of Federal taxes and the attractive packaging in stick form of most margarines have increased the consumption.

The fuel value is equal to that of butter. While margarines are almost entirely lacking in natural vitamin content, many are now fortified with 15,000 international units vitamin A per pound, and several states make enrichment a requirement.

### SWEETENINGS

All forms of natural sweetenings rank next to fat with regard to their caloric

whom food is prepared are an important factor in appetite appeal. In the convalescent diet there is a special need for careful seasoning. Sometimes bland foods are preferable, but even these need a certain amount of seasoning and

considered when meals are prepared for him. An intelligent use should be made of the many accessories which add to the interest of food.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What properties have fats, sweetenings, seasonings and flavorings in

common? In which respects may they differ?

2. How may fats be classified? Outline the specific purposes for which various types of fats are used.

3. Compare butter and margarine for food value.

4. Which products are grouped under sweetenings? Which has become the staple sweetening and for what reason?

5. Which 2 sweetenings have no caloric value? May they be used freely without injury to health?

6. Which seasonings and flavorings are used most? Which has the most important place and why?

7. Discuss the proper use of seasonings and flavorings.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

use of the noncaloric sweeteners in these amounts is hazardous to health. Actually, most persons who use them make only a partial substitution for sugars, because real sugar is necessary in certain baked products for texture and tenderness. They have a large use, however, in certain bottled beverages that supply flavor without extra calories.

When nonnutritive sweeteners are used in cooking, it is well to recognize that saccharine may give a bitter flavor, especially after heating, whereas the cyclamates do not seem to have this disadvantage. Experience teaches a person how much of either type to use, and equivalents are suggested on the labels. Suitable quantities are suggested in the low caloric and diabetic recipes given in Chapter 50.

### SEASONINGS AND FLAVORINGS

There is no cut-and-dried distinction between the terms *seasoning* and *flavoring*. As generally applied, salt, pepper, herbs and certain spices are considered seasonings, as are such highly flavored foods as onions, cheese and tomatoes. The word *flavoring* generally is used to describe extracts of vanilla, almond, lemon, etc., fresh fruit juices and chocolate and coffee which are combined with

sary savor, although care should be taken not to use it so generously that the natural flavor of foods is injured. Also, tastes differ with regard to the amount of this seasoning, and for this reason it is better to undersalt than to oversalt a dish.

When the diet must be salt free or salt low, it is important to make good use of other seasonings. Dishes may be made palatable if the seasonings and the herbs which must be used for flavor are properly blended. For sodium content of spices, see Table III and low sodium recipes (Chap. 50). Salt substitutes should be used only when prescribed by the physician, as some of them are harmful. (See Chap. 27.)

Next to salt, pepper is the most common seasoning. In almost every pantry mustard, ginger, cloves, nutmeg and cinnamon will be found, and perhaps celery salt, curry powder, whole cloves, bay leaf, and other leaf or powdered herbs such as sage, thyme and marjoram. Among fresh herbs, parsley and chives are the most commonly used. Onions are always kept on hand, and fresh garlic or salt may be a staple seasoning. Other vegetables such as carrots and mushrooms are often used for their seasoning value. In the broad sense, meat stock and highly flavored fats such as bacon drippings, butter and olive oil may be classified as seasonings. A commercial seasoning, monosodium glutamate, which tends to bring out the natural flavor of foods, is available. It may be used in cooking or as a condiment. Lemon juice, vinegar and bottled sauces such as Worcestershire and catsup are also used to add piquancy to food.

Among flavorings, vanilla extract is in most common use. This may be supplemented by extracts of innumerable flavors, by wine, brandy and rum, by fruit juices and grated orange and lemon rind, and by a variety of spices some of which are also used as seasonings.

Seasonings and flavorings used to suit the taste of the person or the family for

craving, has the most important place among seasonings. The search for it started as soon as vegetable foods necessarily began to replace a meat diet which satisfied the needs of the body in this respect. The first trading posts are believed to have originated at points where representatives of tribes met to exchange hides and furs for the precious condiment. Salt was valued not only for its seasoning power but for the part it played in the preservation of meat and



Fig. 94. Cereal is an accepted part of the American breakfast

Most breakfast cereals are cooked wholly or partly at the factory, some cooking in the home kitchen being required in the latter case. The fact that generally these cereals are eaten with a generous amount of milk adds to their importance in the diet.

The cereals are the hard kernels or seedlike fruits of certain plants of the grass family. In proximate composition the whole-grain cereals are similar, although the products made from them may vary decidedly in flavor and in texture.

	PER CENT
Water . . . . .	10 to 12
Proteins . . . . .	10 to 14
Carbohydrates . . . . .	65 to 78
Fat . . . . .	1 to 8
Mineral matter . . . . .	1 to 2

(Cereals yield from  
1,800 to 1,800 calo-  
ries per lb.)

The seed kernel of the grain plant is composed of three parts: germ, endosperm and bran coat. Figure 8, p. 22, shows the structure of a grain of wheat and may be taken as typical of all cereals.

Grains in their natural form supply certain minerals and vitamins. As most of them are milled for flour and treated in a variety of ways for the production of breakfast cereals, the mineral and vitamin content is greatly reduced. The present custom of enriching breads and cereals is believed to be responsible for an improvement in the nutritional health of the American people (See Chap. 2, p. 27.)

### TYPES OF CEREALS

Cereals form the largest crops throughout the world, and cereal foods are present in large proportion in most

*Types of Cereals*  
*Food Value*  
*Digestibility*  
*Place in Menu*  
*Preparation*  
*Breakfast-Cereal Recipes*  
*Rice Recipes*  
*Macaroni and Noodle Recipes*

## CHAPTER THIRTY-EIGHT

# Cereals and Cereal Products

The ancient Romans called the goddess of the grains and the harvests Ceres, and from her name the word *cereal* is derived. Because of their widespread cultivation, the comparative ease of transportation, their keeping qualities and the great variety of products which may be manufactured from them, cereals are now one of the great staples of human diet, as they were in prehistoric days, when food was used where it was grown.

In the United States, in spite of the great variety of foods available, cereals form the basis of practically every meal, as they do in most other countries. *Cereal habits have changed greatly since*

mush known as hasty pudding and for the journey-cakes known as johnnycake or hoecake, and for the huge loaves of yeast bread baked in the brick oven usually heated only once a week. Flour was also used for the many pies which during the winter were frozen and used as needed. In some sections of the country, doughnuts were made daily.

Later, biscuits were sometimes baked in tin ovens in front of the fireplace, but muffins and fine cakes were not used commonly until a century or so ago, when the kitchen range came into use. Chapter 48 will be devoted to the use of flour in the preparation of baked products in use today. Macaroni and other products of this type made from flour were unknown, but rice was used largely in the South as a vegetable and to some extent in the North for puddings.

The Industrial Revolution brought factory methods of milling flour which produced products of better texture, although at the expense of some minerals and vitamins. Breakfast cereals, even oatmeal, with the exception of the previously mentioned corn-meal mush, which was used as often for supper as for breakfast, were not part of the American diet until about a century ago. Oatmeal was used principally at first for the preparation of gruels for the sick and was sold only in drugstores. The modern treatment by cereal manufacturers of grains for breakfast use has brought such products great popularity.

able source of protein when they are used as a supplement to milk and also the other proteins of animal origin, such as meat, fish and cheese. A breakfast cereal with milk is largely used, and bread often appears at all three meals of the day. The fact that cereals are among the cheapest foods makes their contribution of protein doubly important.

The mineral and the vitamin B complex content of the whole grain are higher than those of milled grains, but eating habits and the fact that whole grains and their products spoil more easily than the refined grains make it impractical to urge universal use of whole

grains in the general diet. For this reason, enrichment of cereal grains, including wheat, rice and corn, is now widespread.

The food value of a breakfast cereal is indirectly increased by the fact that a liberal amount of milk is taken with each bowl of cereal. A series of experiments conducted at the State University of Iowa, and known as the "Iowa Breakfast Studies," included the comparison of two basic breakfasts. Each provides the same caloric and protein content equal to one fourth of a day's requirement. The result showed that the vegetable protein in cereals, when supplemented by the proper amount of milk, was as adequate as the animal protein, and the excretion of thiamine and niacin was at the same level.

The contribution of cereals and bread to recommended daily allowances is graphically portrayed in Figure 95, which shows the contribution of 4 servings of these products divided among the 3 meals of the day.

### DIGESTIBILITY

Cereals are easily digested by the normal person. The fact that they are not made ready for absorption as quickly as sugar, the simplest form of carbohydrate, is usually an advantage. For this reason they aid in keeping the stomach filled to the proper point. Refined cereals are bland in flavor and in texture, and this may be an advantage in certain conditions. Whole cereals, on the other hand, are advantageous in some cases, as they may stimulate the digestion of other products. However, the roughage in the form of bran which they contain may be a disadvantage.

### PLACE IN THE MENU

**Breakfast Cereals.** Ready-to-eat cereals and those which need cooking in the home kitchen have a large use at breakfast. The occasional addition of raisins, dates or other dried fruit to a

BASIC CEREAL AND MILK BREAKFAST PATTERN\*

FOOD ITEM	WEIGHT OF SERVING Gm	PROTEIN Gm	CALORIES
Fruit or juice	77	0.4	68
Cereal (dry)	30	3.2	110
Toast (2 slices)	50	4.2	130
Sugar	10		40
Butter	10	0.1	73
Whole milk	480	16.8	330
TOTAL		24.7	751

BASIC BACON, EGG AND MILK BREAKFAST PATTERN\*

FOOD ITEM	WEIGHT OF SERVING Gm	PROTEIN Gm	CALORIES
Fruit or juice	98	0.5	86
Egg (soft boiled)	50	6.4	79
Bacon	30	4.2	93
Toast (2 slices)	60	5.2	158
Jelly	20	0.1	61
Butter	15	0.1	109
Whole milk	240	8.4	165
TOTAL		24.9	751

\* Published by Cereal Institute, Chicago, Ill., 1957.

diets the world over. They are well called the staff of life of every country, whether they are eaten in loaf form or as a boiled or a parched grain. Various racial groups tend to cling to the cereals to which they have been accustomed, as is illustrated by the extensive use of rice by Orientals in countries where wheat is more plentiful. The commonly used cereals have certain distinctive characteristics.

Barley is used after the germ and the bran have been removed. The first form known is pearly barley. When this is broken up into smaller bits, "instantaneous" barley is obtained, and barley flour is made by grinding the "pearls." Barley water, made from the flour, has been used a good deal in feeding infants and the sick. It contains very little nourishment but has a soothing influence on the mucous membrane of the digestive tract.

Buckwheat is not botanically a cereal, as it does not belong with the grasses, but it serves the same purpose in the diet. The bran is removed, and the rest of the kernel is rolled and bolted.

Oat preparations vary little from the original grain. In "oatmeal," therefore, is found a concentrated and valuable cereal which scores higher in protein, fat, minerals and most vitamins than any other cereal. It loses less between the field and the table than is usually the case with the other cereals.

Wheat is the cereal which is more generally used than any other in the United States. It lends itself to bread-making better than any other grain because of its richer gluten content. It is also used in various forms for breakfast cereals.

Rye is similar to wheat in most respects but is not used in the United States as extensively as wheat.

Rice, the staple food of the Orient, is used as an accessory food in this country. In its brown, unrefined form, it supplies certain minerals and vitamins which are largely lacking in white rice,

the refined product generally used. These are also present in wild rice, which comes from a different botanical

initiated. Converted rice has much the same cooking qualities and flavor as the milled rice grain. The moist heat to which it is subjected tends to drive some of the soluble B complex vitamins from the hull into the kernel, so that the B complex in the milled grain is increased. Precooked rice, which is now available in packaged form and needs only to be brought to a boil, covered and allowed to stand 10 minutes, has become increasingly popular.

Corn or maize contains a higher percentage of oil than any other cereal, except oats. Because of its low gluten content, it does not give a flour which can be used well in making leavened doughs. The different kinds of corn are practically the same in composition, although yellow corn has a higher vitamin A content than white corn. Corn meal, cornstarch, samp and hominy are all made from field corn. Corn meal is available in enriched form in some Southern states.

## FOOD VALUE

### The caloric contribution of cereals

them, both because they are used customarily at every meal and because they are low in cost. Research has shown, however, that they are more than a supplement to other foods.

The protein content of grains ranges in general from 11 Gm. per 100 Gm. of uncooked rice to 14 Gm. per 100 Gm. of uncooked oatmeal. While it is not of such high quality as the protein from animal sources, it has been found that when it is supplemented by even a small amount of milk, it is a good source

Cereals may be regarded as a valu-

tray Ready-to-eat cereals now come packed in a variety package. It should be noted that the roughage content, which varies greatly, may be a factor in the choice of one or another.

Rice, corn meal or hominy and buckwheat grits are used largely in the South and in every other section by certain national groups as accompaniments to meat and as a foundation for main dishes. Examples are Southern spoon bread, hominy pudding, Italian polenta and gnocchi, the Russian kasha or buckwheat grits and the general use of rice by all Orientals.

Macaroni, spaghetti and noodles are grouped as pastes or "pasta," but they are actually cereal products. A special form of hard wheat is used in their manufacture. From the same paste, macaroni, spaghetti and the even thinner vermicelli are produced. For noodles there is an addition of eggs. A few of these products are now fortified with extra protein. Paste products need only a small amount of cooking in boiling salted water to make them tender, they should not be overcooked. They are generally used in combination with a highly seasoned sauce. Grated cheese is usually



Fig 96. A baked apple and a ready-to-eat cereal may be used either for breakfast or for a light supper.



**CONTRIBUTION OF A BOWL OF CEREAL, MILK AND SUGAR  
TO DAILY FOOD REQUIREMENT**

	RECOMMENDED DAILY DIETARY REQUIREMENTS*	SUPPLIED BY 1 OZ. (1 C.) CEREAL 3½ OZS. (¾ C.) MILK 1 TSP. SUGAR	PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL DAILY REQUIREMENT
Calories	2,300	216	9
Protein	55 Gm.	7.5 Gm.	13
Calcium	0.8 Gm.	.16 Gm.	20
Iron	12 mg.	1.1 mg.	9
Thiamine	1.2 mg.	.24 mg.	20
Riboflavin	1.5 mg.	.22 mg.	15
Niacin equivalent	17.0 mg.	6 mg.	35

\* Based on 1958 Recommended Allowance for women 25 years of age.

from the time spent in a steady position

to-eat cereals make a good topping or coating for a variety of foods and may be used as a foundation for quick pastry.

So far as food value is concerned, it makes little difference whether a hot cereal or a ready-to-eat cereal from the

same type of grain is used. An ounce of one in dried form, whether it is cooked at home or made ready for consumption at the factory, will equal an ounce of another. The preference of a patient for one cereal or another is the first consideration. In general, unless the patient likes the same product day after day, a variety will add interest to the breakfast

## BREAD AND CEREALS

Contributions of 4 Servings to Recommended Daily Allowances Average Adult

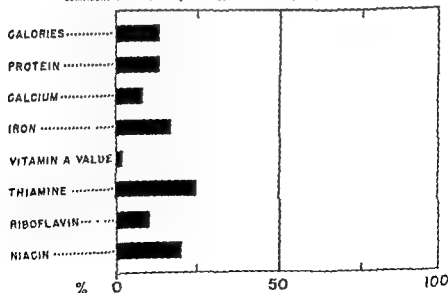


Fig 95. (Agriculture Information Bulletin No 160, 1956)



Fig 118 Equal amounts of rice, cooked and uncooked, showing difference in volume (Institute of Home Economics, U. S. Department of Agriculture)

amount of water, just before they are to be used

## BREAKFAST-CEREAL RECIPES

### Basic Recipe for Cooking Cereal in Small Quantities

Ingredients and time required for cooking are given in the table below

**Procedure:** Have the water boiling in the top of a small double boiler over direct heat. Add salt, then add the cereal very slowly to the boiling water, stirring constantly. Boil 5 minutes, stirring constantly. Place over hot water in the under part of double boiler. Cover and allow to cook the necessary period of time. If too dry, add

**Procedure:** See general directions for cooking cereals (above). Cook 1 hour. Add more water if necessary. Strain and serve plain or with cream. Yield: 2 servings

### Barley Flour Gruel

Ingredients.

- 1 tablespoon barley flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons cold water

### Oatmeal or Barley Gruel

Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rolled oats or whole barley
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups boiling water

## RICE RECIPES

The most common methods of cooking rice are boiling and steaming. For the first method, plenty of rapidly boiling water is necessary. When the rice is tender, it should be drained, rinsed with hot water, drained again and then placed for a few moments over boiling water or in the oven so that it will be

### DIRECTIONS FOR COOKING BREAKFAST CEREALS

KIND	AMOUNT OF CEREAL	LIQUID	SALT	TIME
Rolled Oats	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	1 c	$\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon	15-30 min.
Wheatena	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	1 c	$\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon	15-30 min.
Corn meal	$2\frac{1}{2}$ tablespoons	1 c	$\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon	15-30 min.
Other fine cereals	$2\frac{1}{2}$ tablespoons	1 c	$\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon	15 min.



Fig. 97. Hot cereal for breakfast

considered a necessary accessory. While these products are sometimes used as an accompaniment to meat, they often form the main dish of a meal in which a small amount of meat may, or may not, be used. Vermicelli is generally used as an addition to a meat soup, to which it gives body and food value.

Breads and other products made with flour will be discussed in Chapter 48 (Bread, Batters and Doughs). As bread in some form is used at every meal by most persons, it has an important place in the menu.

### PREPARATION

Ready-to-eat cereals, usually packed in cartons lined or covered with waxed paper, need no home preparation unless it is some time since the box was opened, when—and especially in warm weather—they may need to be crisped in the oven before use.

Porridge-type cereals such as oatmeal, ground-wheat products and corn meal need a certain amount of cooking with water. Most cereals of this type are precooked under pressure at the factory and, therefore, need only short cooking in the home.

With the availability of modern cooking utensils and ranges equipped with regulated burner control, a double boiler is generally not necessary for cooking. It is usually recommended, however, for cereals such as corn meal, hominy, buckwheat grits, and old-fashioned oatmeal and for the preparation of gruels which have not been cooked at the factory. If the latter are to be served several days in succession, the small recipes listed below may be doubled or tripled. After straining, the gruels may be covered and stored in the refrigerator. They may be reheated, with the addition of a small

**Baked Macaroni with Tomato****Ingredients**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup broken or elbow macaroni
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 teaspoon minced onion
- 1 teaspoon minced green pepper
- 1 teaspoon minced celery
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup canned tomatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 2 tablespoons soft breadcrumbs
- 1 teaspoon melted butter

**Procedure:** Cook macaroni in boiling salted water until tender (from about 8 to 10 minutes) and drain. Melt butter, add onion, green pepper and celery, and cook 2 minutes over low heat. Add tomatoes, salt and drained macaroni. Blend well, add more salt if necessary, and place in a small greased baking dish. Mix breadcrumbs with 1 teaspoon melted butter and sprinkle over macaroni. Bake in a moderate oven (350° F.) until crumbs are browned.

**Spaghetti Preparation**

**Procedure:** Cook spaghetti according to directions on package and dress with well-seasoned tomato sauce. Serve with grated cheese, preferably of the Parmesan type.

**Noodles with Browned Crumbs**

**Procedure:** Cook one sixth of the contents of a package of noodles as directed on package and drain. Melt 2 teaspoons butter, add 1 tablespoon soft breadcrumbs, and 1

serving

**Noodles with Cheese Sauce**

**Procedure:** Cook one sixth of the contents of a package of noodles as directed on package and drain. Prepare half the recipe for rich cheese sauce (see p. 503) and toss noodles into this mixture. Yield: 1 serving

**Other Suggestions for Noodles**

Prepare as directed on package and serve with 1

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Outline the changes in cereal consumption from Colonial times to the present.
2. Which grains are used most commonly in the United States today?
3. Compare the nutritive contributions of an average serving of cooked oatmeal with those of an average serving of a ready-to-eat cereal.
4. Which type of cereals should be used when roughage must be avoided? Which cereals when roughage is an advantage?
5. Discuss the nutritive contribution made by cereals in general.
6. Which cereal products are known as pastes? From which grain are they prepared?
7. In which circumstances is it advisable to cook the porridge-type cereals longer than the directions on the package advise?

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

*Note:* This is the method recommended.

use as a dessert, or when it is desirable to obtain a very tender texture. Another method now recommended is to place the rice in twice as much salted water, cover, bring to a boil over high heat, then continue cooking about 15 minutes over very low heat. Precooked rice should be cooked according to directions on the package. If rice is to be served with meat, it may be cooked a few minutes in butter, oil or other shortening before water is added.

### Boiled Rice—Method I

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup rice
- 3 cups boiling water
- ½ teaspoon salt

**Procedure:** Look over rice and wash thoroughly. Add slowly to boiling salted water. Boil actively about 20 minutes until tender. Place in strainer, rinse with hot water. Cover with a towel and place over boiling water to fluff. Yield: 1 serving.

### Boiled Rice—Method II

**Procedure:** Combine rice with twice as much cold salted water. Cover and bring to a boil. Reduce heat to low and simmer about 15 minutes.

### Steamed Rice

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup rice
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup hot milk

*Note:* This is the method recommended.

*Note:* This is the method recommended.

### Baked Rice and Cheese

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup cooked rice
- ½ cup cream sauce (p. 503)
- ½ cup grated cheese
- 2 tablespoons soft breadcrumbs
- 1 teaspoon melted butter
- ½ teaspoon paprika

**Procedure:** Mix rice lightly with hot cream sauce and grated cheese. Place in small greased baking dish. Mix breadcrumbs lightly with melted butter. Place on top of rice.

### Baked Rice with Tomato

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup cooked rice
- 1 teaspoon minced onion
- 1 teaspoon minced parsley
- ½ cup condensed tomato soup
- 1 tablespoon grated cheese

**Procedure:** Mix rice with onion, parsley and tomato soup, and place in a greased individual baking dish. Sprinkle with grated cheese and bake in a moderate oven (350° F.) about 10 minutes until cheese is melted. Yield: 1 serving.

## MACARONI AND NOODLE RECIPES

Macaroni, spaghetti and noodles, often known as pastas, should be cooked in plenty of boiling salted water until tender but not too soft. They should be drained, rinsed with hot water and drained again before being used as a foundation for a dish. Time of cooking will vary slightly with the brand of product used, and for this reason directions on the package should be followed.

### Baked Macaroni with Cheese

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup broken or elbow macaroni
- ½ cup grated cheese
- ½ cup cream sauce or milk
- Salt
- Pepper
- 1 tablespoon butter

**Procedure:** Cook macaroni in 2 cups boiling salted water from 8 to 10 minutes (until tender). Drain and arrange in small greased baking dish. Sprinkle with salt, pepper and cheese, and add cream sauce or milk. Cover macaroni. Dot with butter and bake in moderate oven (350° F.) until cheese is melted and slightly brown, from about 15 to 20 minutes. Yield: 1 serving.



Fig 99. A refreshing fruit salad

constitution should be stored in the freezing compartment of the refrigerator.

frozen. After reconstitution, flavor will be retained for at least 24 hours with only a slight loss of ascorbic acid if the container is covered.

**Vitamin A.** Most fruits supply vitamin A in varying amounts. The best sources are apricots, cantaloupes, yellow peaches and prunes, all of which show

**Mineral Content.** Fresh fruits are comparatively low in minerals, but in general they supply an appreciable amount of iron. Dried fruits, because of the removal of water, are more concentrated sources of all factors. When they

are soaked and cooked, they return to the approximate composition of fresh fruits. For fruits, fresh or dry, the most iron is found in apricots, avocados, bananas, dates, figs, grapes, raisins, prunes, raspberries and strawberries.

**Caloric Value.** The caloric value of fruits is comparatively low, and chiefly from carbohydrates, usually in the form of sugar. Dried fruits are high in calories, even after their water content is restored. The caloric value of canned fruits and frozen fruits is increased according to the amount of sugar used in their preparation. The avocado pear and the olive are distinguished from all other fruits by their high fat content, which gives them a comparatively high caloric value.

### Digestibility

Fruits are easily digested by normal persons. The sugar content is in the form of glucose and fructose, which are ready

## **Fruits**

*Food Value*

*Digestibility*

*Place in the Menu*

*Preparation*

*Recipes*

*Dried Fruits*

*Canned Fruits*

*Canned Fruit Juices*

*Frozen Fruits*

## **Nuts**

## **CHAPTER THIRTY-NINE**

# **Fruits and Nuts**

Fruits and nuts have been grouped for discussion in this chapter because of their botanical relationship. As they have little in common in regard to food value or use in the menu, their functions as food will be considered separately.

### **FRUITS**

Fruits make a strong appeal to the appetite through the senses of sight, smell and taste. Shape, color, delightful aroma and delicious flavor all contribute to popularizing this group of foods and to making it easy to find a place for them on the menu, to which they contribute nutritionally.

#### **Food Value**

The most important contribution of fruit to the diet is its vitamin content, particularly ascorbic acid, commonly known as vitamin C, which is supplied by fresh fruits in varying amounts. Clinical experience indicates that many adults in the United States do not get enough of this vitamin, more often be-

cause of lack of appreciation of its value and food sources than of its cost.

**Ascorbic Acid.** The best sources of ascorbic acid are fruits of the citrus family, tomatoes, cantaloupes and strawberries. Papayas, guavas and acerola cherries grown in Florida, Hawaii and Puerto Rico are exceptionally high in vitamin C content. While fruits such as apples, pears and grapes do not contribute largely, they may be a significant source if eaten liberally in raw form. During cooking and canning there is a varying loss. In general, there is a good retention. A comparison of the average amount of ascorbic acid content of canned fruit juices with that of fresh orange juice is shown by Figure 100.

Frozen fruit juice concentrates prepared by a high vacuum process compare well with fresh juice. Orange juice after reconstitution with water may average nearly as high as the fresh juice, depending upon the month in which it was packed.

Frozen fruit concentrates before re-



Fig 101. Preparation of grapefruit for salad.

fruit and oranges may be combined with other fruits for a compote

### Preparation

#### *Fresh Fruits*

Large fruits such as apples, pears, peaches, plums, oranges and grapefruit should be washed in order to remove any traces of spray which may be present. If the fruit is to be served

erator until just before serving, when they should be washed thoroughly to remove spray and drained well after washing. Strawberries should be hulled, unless they are to be served whole around a mound of sugar. Grapes and cherries should be washed thoroughly and drained as dry as possible.

Melons should be ripe but not over-ripe. They should be chilled and prepared just before serving. Cantaloupes should be sectioned, other melons cut in slices, and the seeds carefully removed. Sliced lime or lemon may be served with honeydew or casaba melon.

**Peaches.** Peaches, if ripe, should be kept in the refrigerator. If green, they should be allowed to ripen at room temperature. If they are to be served whole, they should be washed and dried. If



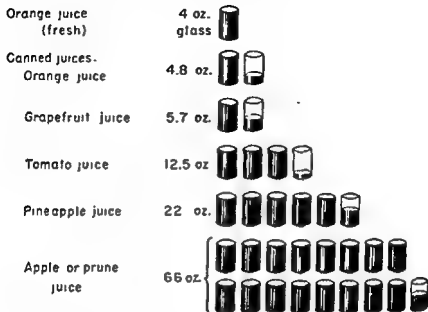


Fig. 100 Amounts of canned fruit juices necessary to supply the same amount of vitamin C as 4 oz. of fresh or frozen orange juice (two thirds of day's requirements).

for immediate absorption and thus require no digestion in the alimentary tract. With color, odor and flavor all combining in what the appetite and, therefore, stimulate the flow of the digestive juices, digestion and absorption are naturally rapid.

Fresh fruit should be ripe, but not overripe. Bananas, when the skins are flecked well with brown, may be used even in the diet of children and invalids. For infants they should be mashed or strained. Certain fruits which are not well tolerated in raw form are easily digested when cooked.

### Place in the Menu

The custom of serving fruits twice a day, for breakfast and at some other meal, is good standard nutrition practice. It applies in illness as well as in health if there is no therapeutic reason, which there seldom is, against it. The appetite of a patient may often be tempted more by fruits than by any other type of dessert, and, as fruits need little preparation, this will often be a convenience. Use may be made of a large variety of fresh, frozen, canned and cooked dried fruits according to their availability in the market.

Generally, a citrus fruit is chosen for breakfast. For lunch or dinner, another type of fresh fruit or some cooked or canned fruit may be served unless the patient prefers a citrus fruit more than once a day. In this case, orange juice might be offered for breakfast and grapefruit in the fresh or broiled form for dessert at another meal. Both grape-

Seedy berries and apple skins are not always well taken, as they may be irritating to some persons.

careful not to cut pulp, then loosen each section of skin carefully and turn inward fruit.

### Recipes Raw Fruits

#### Fresh Fruit Compote

**Procedure.** A combination of fresh fruits is known as a compote or a cup. The fruits should be put together and sweetened with

be topped with a tablespoon of lemon, orange or pineapple ice

#### Ambrosia

**Procedure.** When used as a dessert, it is served with a garnish of fruit. It is a combination of fruit, cream, sugar and lemon juice. It is served in a bowl or on a platter.

#### Avocados

**Procedure.** Select ripe avocados which are slightly soft to the touch. The skin of a ripe avocado is usually dark green. Prepare fruit just before ready to serve so that flesh will not darken. Cut in half, remove pit. Serve without paring with lemon juice or catsup in the cavity as a first course. Pare and slice for use in salads or dice for fruit cup.

### Cooked Fruits

#### Apple, Baked

##### Ingredients

1 apple  
2 tablespoons brown sugar  
1 teaspoon butter  
cinnamon or nutmeg and fill apple with  
sugar and butter. Bake in oven at 350° for 30 minutes.

glazed by sprinkling with sugar and placing under the broiler a few minutes until sugar melts. Serve hot or cold. Yield: 1 serving

**NOTE.** If practical, bake several apples at the same time.

#### Applesauce

**Procedure.** Wash, core and slice 3 tart

#### Stewed Apples

##### Ingredients

2 cooking apples, medium size  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar

low heat until sugar is dissolved. Add cinnamon or nutmeg. Drain apples, and cook in syrup until transparent. Add boiling water to syrup if it thickens during cooking. Serve hot or chill before serving. Yield: 2 servings

**NOTE.** A few cinnamon drops will give flavor and color.

#### Banana, Baked

**Procedure.** Peel banana, place in shallow baking dish and brush with melted butter.

in shallow dish. Sprinkle cooked banana with lemon juice and powdered sugar.

#### Grapefruit, Broiled

**Procedure.** Wash and dry grapefruit, and cut in halves crosswise. Remove seeds, loosen pulp in sections and remove center cores. Place fruit in baking pan, sprinkle each half with 2 tablespoons brown sugar and dot with 1 teaspoon butter. Broil 6 inches from low broiler heat about 15 minutes.

**NOTE.** Add 1 tablespoon of wine or rum to each half, if desired.

they are to be served sliced, they should be peeled and sliced just before they are to be served. Sprinkling with lemon juice will delay change in the color which is caused by exposure to air. They may be sprinkled with sugar at time of slicing, or sugar may be passed with them.

**Pears.** Pears, if ripe, should be washed and placed in the refrigerator. Otherwise they should be allowed to ripen at room temperature. They are generally served whole and unpeeled. A large juicy pear of the Comice variety may be halved just before it is served if desired.

**Pineapple.** Pineapple should be kept at room temperature. The easiest method of preparation is to cut the fruit in thick slices, pare each slice and then shred with a fork. Sugar is generally necessary, and the flavor will be improved if it is added to the shredded fruit half an hour before serving. It should then be allowed to stand at room temperature, not in the refrigerator. The fruit may be cut in wedges and served around a mound of powdered sugar.

**Citrus Fruits.** Oranges and grapefruit are used for table service more than any other type of citrus fruit, as they are in season throughout the year. Tangerines are available during some of the

in wedges. For either purpose, the seeds should be removed. The squeezed juice of either often serves as a flavoring for cold drinks and some desserts and sauces. Citrus fruits are usually stored in the refrigerator, although they will keep some time at room temperature. There is, however, a general preference for chilled citrus fruit.

Oranges are served in juice form more often than any other. Fresh grapefruit juice is sometimes used. Both should be chilled in the refrigerator before they are cut and squeezed. Ice should not be put in the juice as it

dilutes it. While the juice can be stored in the refrigerator for a time without changing nutritive value, flavor will change with too long storage. Fresh orange juice is now offered in many markets. If juice must be strained, a coarse strainer is recommended to remove seeds, as a goodly proportion of the vitamin C remains in the pulp.

Frozen juice concentrates should be stored in the freezing compartment of the refrigerator. After thawing, the concentrates should never be refrozen. The contents of a can should be diluted with three times as much water. One third of the standard size 8-oz. can, enough for one serving, may be diluted and the remainder of the still frozen contents returned to the freezing compartment. In order to incorporate air, the diluted juice should be stirred or shaken in a covered container. After reconstitution, flavor will be retained for at least 24 hours.

**Large oranges and grapefruit** may be served in the shell after they are halved and the segments have been loosened. To prepare, run a sharp knife between the peel and the pulp and loosen the segments from the fiber which separates them but do not cut the fiber partitions. As citrus fruits have a large amount of natural sweetness, they should be served without sugar. Sugar may be added if desired. Both oranges and grapefruit may be served in sections by themselves or in combination with other fruits as a compote or in salad. They should be pared deeply enough to remove the inner fiber of the skin, after which the sections may be lifted out without destroying the shape. Seeds, if present, should be carefully removed. Navel and Valencia oranges, which are free or almost free of seeds, may be pared and sliced. These oranges and tangerines are sometimes served whole after the rind has been sectioned and turned back around the fruit. To section the rind, run a sharp knife 5 or 6 times from stem to blossom end, being

commonly used are peanuts, walnuts, pecans, almonds, cashews and Brazil nuts. Coconut, especially in dried, shredded form, is also largely used.

### Food Value

The protein content of nuts is generally high, although there is a wide range in this, as will be seen by consulting the Table of Percentage Composition. The protein is of good quality, although not equal in every respect to that furnished by animal products such as meat, milk, fish, cheese and eggs. With the exception of chestnuts, which are low in fat as well as in protein, the fat content is exceedingly high, and the oil obtained from peanuts and coconut has a larger use than these products in their own form. Most nuts are good sources of the vitamins thiamine, riboflavin and niacin. They contribute the minerals calcium, phosphorus, iron and copper in varying amounts according to the particular nut. Among the nuts in everyday use, almonds and Brazil nuts furnish the most iron.

### Digestibility

Because of the high fat content, nuts digest slowly. Chopping or grinding improves digestibility. In the form of nut butter and combined with other foods, there is usually no digestive difficulty. Peanut butter may be used in sandwiches or as an ingredient of a dish.

### Use in the Menu

In general, nuts are considered an accessory to a meal, except in the vegetarian's diet, when it is necessary to draw protein from all vegetable sources. Peanut butter is the only form in which nuts are used as a staple part of a meal. Chopped nuts are often used in cakes and in cookies, and as a flavor or a garnish for various types of puddings and other desserts. They may occasionally be used as a topping for creamed dishes and vegetables or as an accessory to them. As nuts are used so little in the invalid's diet, no specific recipes accompany this chapter.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. For what reason have fruits and nuts been grouped together for discussion in this chapter? Compare their nutritive contributions.
2. What are the most important contributions of fruits to the diet? List the best sources of ascorbic acid; of vitamin A.
3. List the fruits which supply appreciable amounts of minerals.
4. Discuss the place of fruit in the menu.
5. What are the 3 most valuable nutritive contributions made by nuts?
6. Compare the digestibility of nuts with that of fruit.
7. Discuss the use of nuts.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.





Fig 102. Poached eggs on toast ready for a meal.

the stomach as well as in the intestines, which is of advantage in certain dietary disturbances

Unless there is an allergy to eggs, they will seldom cause any digestive disturbance, whether they are served in raw or in cooked form. The yolk of the raw or the hard-cooked egg may be added to the infant's food formula at a very early stage, particularly because of its iron and vitamin potency. The

there is a prejudice against them. They can be disguised easily in sauces, desserts and other "made" dishes. In the event that eggs must be eliminated completely from the diet, which, fortunately, is rare, care must be taken to supply other foods high in the same nutrients. In general, however, eggs will be found to be one of the most important constituents of the nourishing and easily digested diet so important in convalescence. Combined with milk or fruit juice, they are used in a liquid and a semi-liquid diet, and the first solid food is often an egg in soft-cooked or poached form. Scrambled eggs and omelet follow. Later, combinations of poached or boiled eggs with savory sauces may ap-

#### PLACE IN THE MENU

It is not a difficult matter to find a place in the diet for eggs, even when

*Food Value*  
*Average Composition*  
*Digestibility*  
*Place in the Menu*  
*Principles of Cookery*  
*Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY

# Eggs

Egg production has increased largely and consistently in recent years. This has been accomplished through modern scientific production, which has resulted in a greater number of eggs per hen without material increase in size of flocks.

The ideal standard is 1 egg a day if possible. Unless there is an allergy to eggs or unless for any reason the physician orders them to be omitted, eggs have an especially high place in the diet for a number of reasons. They are well liked by almost everyone. Nutritionally they score well. They are easily digested, are quick to prepare, and can also be used as an ingredient in many dishes.

### FOOD VALUE

The food value of eggs can be most fairly estimated by comparing them with meat and milk. They score slightly higher than meat on most counts. The protein, as would be expected from an animal food, is of the same high quality as that of meat and milk.

In iron content, eggs equal meat. They supply vitamin A and riboflavin and a small amount of thiamine. When eggs are cooked, approximately 20 per cent of thiamine and riboflavin is lost.

Eggs are a poor source of vitamin C and niacin.

Most of the food value of the egg other than protein is concentrated in the yolk, in which most of the minerals and the vitamins are to be found. Both yolk and white contain protein, but the fat content is to be found in the yolk alone.

### AVERAGE COMPOSITION

While eggs differ in size, and for this reason in food value, 1 average egg does not differ materially from another in composition. There should be no prejudices in favor of either brown or white eggs. In spite of the fact that Bostonians will pay 10 cents a dozen more for brown eggs and that New Yorkers will do the same for white eggs, there is no difference in food value or in flavor. The color of the yolk may vary with the ration of the hens, the theory that highly colored egg yolk necessarily contains more vitamin A is not based on sound scientific evidence.

### DIGESTIBILITY

Eggs are easily digested by almost everyone, whether in raw or in cooked form. The fat is in an emulsified state like that of milk and can be digested in

remain at room temperature for some time

Low temperature and short cooking are desirable for most egg dishes, as the

by being allowed to stand covered in water that has been brought to the boiling point. Hard-cooked eggs, prepared

be eaten

## RECIPES

### Coddled Eggs

Procedure. Place 2 cups boiling water in

ance of about twice as much time as for boiled eggs must be made for coddled eggs. A 3-minute boiled egg will be about the same firmness as one coddled for 11 minutes. If eggs are taken directly out of the refrigerator, allow 1 extra minute for coddling.

### Hard-cooked Eggs

### Stuffed Eggs

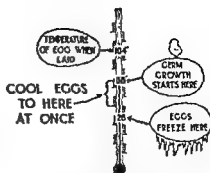


Fig 104 Critical temperatures of eggs in the shell. [U. S. Department of Agriculture]

paste may be added. Refill whites with mixture and sprinkle with paprika or minced parsley. Allow 1 egg for each serving.

### Poached Eggs

Procedure: Place boiling water to the depth of 1 inch in a skillet. Add dash of salt. Break each egg into saucer, slip egg into boiling water. Remove from heat, cover, let

### Eggs Poached in Milk

Procedure: Follow preceding directions for poached eggs, substituting hot milk for water. Serve eggs on toast and pour hot milk over them.

### Eggs Poached in Butter

Procedure: Place 1 teaspoon butter in a small frying pan and melt over low heat. Break each egg into saucer and slip into frying pan. Remove from heat, cover, let stand about 5 minutes (until eggs are firm). If a harder egg is desired, let stand over low heat 1 more minute.

### Poached Egg with Cheese Sauce

#### Ingredients

- 1 lb grated cheese (1/2 cup)
- 1/2 cup evaporated milk
- 1 slice toast
- 1 egg, poached
- Salt and pepper to taste





Fig. 103. Poached egg with cheese sauce.

pear on the invalid's tray for lunch or supper.

Fresh eggs of the best quality should

patient against this valuation in places which grade eggs before marketing, Grade AA or A quality should be chosen whenever eggs are to be served in their own simple form. Grade B eggs are satisfactory for use as an ingredient

cool storage. Size, by the way, is not a basis for grading.

For commercial use shelled eggs have long been frozen or dried. Flavor and cooking quality deteriorate during storage, and for this reason there is only small retail distribution. Both frozen and dried eggs are used largely by bakers and confectioners.

### PRINCIPLES OF COOKERY

As soon as eggs come from the market they should be placed in the refrigerator in the carton in which they are packed, unless there is a special compartment for egg storage. Good-quality eggs have clean shells and should not be washed before storage, as washing removes the

and packaged for shipment. at some distance may pass the "candling" test better than an egg only a few days from the nest but not subjected to immediate cooling. Good-quality eggs, under proper storage conditions, will pass the Grade A test after some time in

be-  
hen  
ake,  
with  
d to

**Creamed Eggs****Ingredients**

- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1½ teaspoons flour
- ½ teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- ½ cup milk
- 1 hard-cooked egg

**Procedure.** Melt butter in small saucepan, add flour and seasonings, stir until smooth. Stir in milk slowly and cook over low heat, stirring constantly until sauce thickens and boils. Shell and slice hard-cooked egg, add to hot sauce, reheat and pour over slice of buttered toast. Garnish with minced parsley.  
Yield. 1 serving

**NOTE:** A dash of Worcestershire sauce or 1 teaspoon of ketchup may be added to the cream sauce after it has thickened.

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Compare the food value of eggs with that of milk and meat.
2. Discuss the digestibility of eggs.
3. Outline the principles of egg cookery.
4. List a few simple recipes for cooking eggs suitable for use in the early stages of convalescence.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

Procedure: Beat the eggs in a small bowl. Add the milk and salt. Stir well. Pour the mixture into a small, shallow, greased baking dish. Bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

### Plain Omelet

#### Ingredients:

- 2 eggs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- 2 tablespoons water
- 1 tablespoon butter

Procedure: Beat eggs until well blended.

spatula from handle of frying pan to outer edge. Slip onto a hot plate and garnish with parsley. Yield: 1 serving

### Foamy Omelet

#### Ingredients:

- 2 egg yolks
- 2 tablespoons water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- 2 egg whites
- 1 tablespoon butter

Procedure: Beat egg yolks with water and seasonings until very foamy. Beat egg whites until stiff and fold into first mixture. Melt butter in small frying pan, add omelet mixture and shake over low heat until omelet is slightly brown on the bottom. Test by lifting with spatula. Place frying pan in moderate oven (350° F.) about 5 minutes (until omelet is dry on top). Remove from oven and make a shallow cut through center at right angles to handle, fold and slip on to hot plate. Yield: 1 serving.

### Scrambled Eggs

#### Ingredients:

- 2 eggs
- 2 tablespoons milk or cream
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- 1 tablespoon butter

Procedure: Beat eggs just enough to mix yolks and whites, stir in milk or cream and

seasonings. Melt butter in small frying pan or in top of double boiler. Stir over low heat or hot water as eggs become firm. Stir only enough to prevent eggs sticking to pan. Serve once. Yield: 1 serving

### Shirred Eggs

Procedure: Break 1 or 2 eggs into a small, shallow, greased baking dish. Sprinkle with minced onion and minced green pepper. Add condensed tomato soup just to cover eggs and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

buttered soft bread crumbs and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

### Baked Eggs with Cheese

Procedure: Break 1 or 2 eggs into a small, shallow, greased baking dish. Sprinkle with minced onion and minced green pepper. Add condensed tomato soup just to cover eggs and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

cheese. Add top milk just to cover eggs and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

### Baked Eggs Espagnole

Procedure: Break 1 or 2 eggs into a small, shallow, greased baking dish. Sprinkle with minced onion and minced green pepper. Add condensed tomato soup just to cover eggs and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

### Baked Eggs, Savory

Procedure: Break 1 or 2 eggs into a small, shallow, greased baking dish. Sprinkle with minced ham. Cover with buttered soft crumbs and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

### Baked Eggs with Spinach

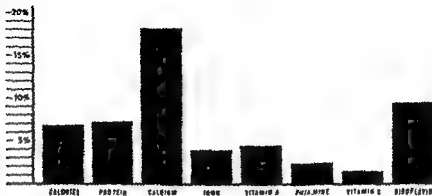
Procedure: Line a small, shallow, greased baking dish with well-seasoned chopped cooked spinach. Break 1 or 2 eggs on the spinach. Sprinkle with salt and pepper, and minced onion if desired. Add top milk just to cover eggs and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) about 15 minutes (until eggs are firm). Yield: 1 serving

# CHOCOLATE PUDDING

(MADE WITH MILK)

½ CUP

200 CALORIES



CONTRIBUTION TO DAILY FOOD NEEDS OF AN ADULT

Figure 10%

custards, gelatin desserts and ice cream may all appear on the patient's tray, but there is seldom any reason for serving rich puddings and pies.

Small portions are usually more acceptable than large ones, as, when appetite is poor, the very sight of a large portion may be unappetizing.

Serving dishes for desserts should be chosen carefully. Plates for cold desserts should be chilled and for hot ones should be warmed.

Garnishes for desserts should be simple and of contrasting color.

## RECIPES

### Fruit Desserts

Classified under fruit desserts are whips, soufflés and creams, which are combinations of strained fruit pulp with eggs or whipped cream, and baked fruit puddings for which sliced fruit is combined with bread or a rich dessert dough. The desserts in the first group are light, in the second, heavier.

**Fruit Whips.** A fruit whip is a combination of beaten egg white and sweetened fruit pulp. Stewed prunes or apricots, applesauce or fresh strawberries, raspberries or peaches may be used. The amount of fruit necessary for a whip will vary with the amount of juice combined with the pulp. The final product should be stiff enough to hold its shape and should be served in a sherbet glass. A custard sauce or whipped cream may be served with a whip.

### Basic Recipe for Fruit Whip 1

#### Ingredients

1 egg white

Dash salt

2 tablespoons sugar

½ cup strained cooked fruit pulp or ¼ cup strawberries or raspberries, crushed and sugared

1 teaspoon lemon juice

**Procedure:** Beat egg white with salt until stiff, add sugar, fold in fruit pulp and lemon juice. Add more sugar, if necessary, and pile in sherbet glasses. Yield: 2 servings.

*Functions of Desserts*  
*General Rules for Serving*  
*Fruit Desserts*  
*Custards and Puddings*  
*Gelatin Desserts*  
*Frozen Desserts*  
*Sauces*

## CHAPTER FORTY-ONE

# Desserts

"The mission of dessert is being that of a comforter of the stomach, which, being already appeased, nevertheless requires a little reflex flattery," says Elwanger in his *Pleasures of the Table*. This mission is perhaps more important in the menu of the convalescent than in any other.

### FUNCTIONS OF DESSERTS

Desserts have several functions, however, in the patient's diet. Perhaps the first is the satisfaction that most people feel in having an attractive sweet at the end of a meal. At the same time, it is often possible to supply nutrients particularly needed by a patient in a form to tempt appetite. When it is necessary to increase caloric content of a diet, desserts may be counted upon to furnish

citrus type, are generally the best choice for dessert. Dessert recipes adapted for special therapeutic diets will be found in Chapter 50. For the preparation of fresh fruits see Chapter 39.

Desserts fall into several general categories, which, however, overlap in many cases. For instance, simple combinations of milk and eggs are known as custards. When the same ingredients are thickened with gelatin, they fall into the classification of gelatin desserts. When thickened with a cereal such as cornstarch or flour, or when combined with bread, they are usually known as puddings.

Frozen desserts are generally acceptable and are valuable because they are both refreshing and nourishing. As good-quality ice cream and ices are commonly available in manufactured form, they will seldom be prepared in the home. Recipes for a few frozen desserts which can be frozen satisfactorily in the automatic refrigerator are included in this chapter.

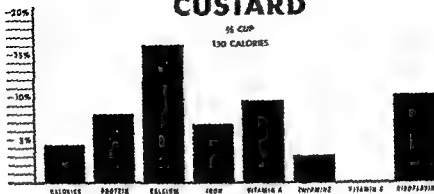
### GENERAL RULES FOR SERVING DESSERTS

As a rule, desserts for the patient must be light and easy to digest. Fruits,

using special protein concentrates. When calories must be kept low or there is any reason for increasing the vitamin C content, fresh fruits, especially of the

# CUSTARD

½ CUP  
130 CALORIES



All Values for 1/2 Cup (130 Calories)

CONTRIBUTION TO DAILY FOOD NEEDS OF AN ADULT

Source: Food Values in Homes and Schools, Revised Edition, United States Department of Agriculture

Figure 106

if desired. Cooking time will be slightly shorter in this case. Vanilla may be added for flavoring, if desired.

## Caramel Custard

**Procedure:** Follow directions for baked custard. Before placing custard in cups, butter them liberally and put 1 tablespoon caramel syrup (see below) in the bottom of each cup.

## Caramel Syrup

**Procedure:** Place ½ cup sugar in small frying pan, stir constantly over low heat until sugar melts and forms a syrup. Add another ½ cup sugar and continue stirring until dissolved. Add ½ cup boiling water very carefully and stir over low heat until syrup is smooth. Yield: Approximately ½ cup.

## Bread Pudding

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for baked custard. Remove crust from 1 slice buttered bread, cut slice in half and put in the bottom of a small baking dish. Pour custard mixture over bread. Bake according to directions for baked custard. Serve hot or cold. Yield: 2 servings.

## Cream Custard

### Ingredients

- 1 egg white
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- Dash salt
- ½ cup thin cream
- Nutmeg

**Procedure:** Mix egg white, sugar and salt, add cream and stir until sugar is dissolved and egg white thoroughly mixed with cream. Pour into custard cups, sprinkle with nutmeg and make according to directions for baked custard. Yield: 2 small servings.

## Soft Custard

### Ingredients

- 2 egg yolks, or 1 egg
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- Dash of salt
- 1 cup milk, whole or skim
- ½ teaspoon vanilla or almond

**Procedure:** Place egg yolks, sugar and salt in top of a small double boiler or saucepan and stir until blended. Add milk slowly and stir over hot water or over direct low heat until the custard when tested coats a metal spoon. Place utensil at once in cold water to cool quickly. Add flavoring and chill. Serve

**Basic Recipe for Fruit Whip II****Ingredients:**

- 1 egg white
- Dash salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup crushed fruit, fresh, canned or frozen
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice

Procedure: Combine egg white, sugar, salt, fruit and lemon juice in a bowl. Beat egg white until stiff peaks form. Fold in fruit and lemon juice. Spoon into sherbet glass. Yield: 1 liberal serving.

**Lemon Cream****Ingredients:**

- 1 egg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- Dash salt
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon grated lemon rind
- 1 tablespoon boiling water

Procedure: Place egg yolk, sugar, salt, lemon juice, lemon rind and boiling water in a bowl. Beat until thick. Move from heat, add 1 egg white. Beat until stiff peaks form. Fold into rice mixture. Just before serving stir and pile in sherbet glass. Yield: 1 liberal serving.

move from heat, add 1 egg white. Beat until stiff peaks form. Fold into rice mixture. Just before serving stir and pile in sherbet glass. Yield: 1 liberal serving.

**Pineapple Cream****Ingredients:**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiled rice (p. 438)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons crushed pineapple
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cream

Procedure: Combine rice with crushed pineapple. Whip cream and fold into rice mixture. Serve in sherbet glass. Yield: 1 liberal serving or 2 small servings.

**Baked Rhubarb Pudding**

Procedure: Line bottom and sides of small greased baking dish with buttered bread. Sprinkle with sugar. Layer of sliced rhubarb.

Dot  
75°

the

rhubarb

**Brown Betty****Ingredients:**

- 2 slices bread
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 cup thinly sliced apples

 **$\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar** **$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon**

Procedure: Trim crusts, dice bread and sauté in butter until browned. Arrange in alternate layers with apples, sugar and cinnamon in small greased baking dish. Cover and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 20 minutes. Remove cover and bake until brown. Serve hot with cream. Yield: 2 servings.

**Custards and Puddings**

Custards, which are combinations of eggs and milk, sweetened and flavored, are natural carriers of protein. To increase this content further, see High-Protein Recipes on page 555. For texture and flavor they must be baked in hot water or cooked over hot water in a double boiler. Directions must be followed exactly as to length of time to cook, as overcooking will cause some of the ingredients in baked custards to separate or whey.

Desserts usually known as puddings, of which tapioca cream, rice pudding, blanc mange and bread pudding are

ingredients of a custard. Junket, in which milk is thickened by use of a rennet tablet, is sometimes known as a custard, although no eggs are used in its preparation.

**Baked Custard****Ingredients**

- 1 cup milk
- 1 egg
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- Dash salt
- Nutmeg

Procedure: Scald milk. Beat egg slightly, stir in sugar, salt and milk, continue stirring until sugar is dissolved. Strain and pour into custard cups. Sprinkle with nutmeg and bake in a pan of hot water in moderate oven (375° F.) about 30 minutes. To test, insert knife into custard. When no custard adheres to knife, take from oven at once and place cups in cold water. Yield: 2 servings.

NOTE: 2 eggs instead of 1 may be used.

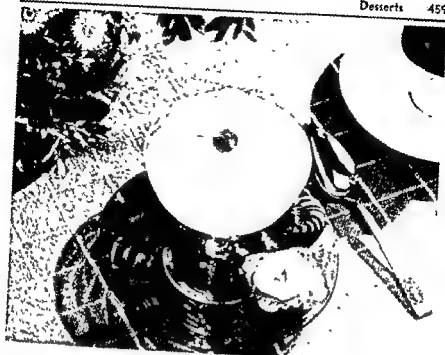


Fig 107 Fruit snow pudding ready to serve

purchase. These come in a variety of flavors and call for the addition of milk or water and short cooking or a period of freezing time in the automatic refrigerator. Many of them compare favorably with desserts prepared by a home recipe.

### Gelatin Desserts

Gelatin desserts serve several purposes in the diet. Clear jellies may serve as a medium for the use of extra fruit juice. Jellyed desserts made with eggs and milk will be a medium for increasing protein. For a low calorie dessert, Sucaryl or saccharin may be used.

### General Directions for Gelatin Desserts

Unflavored gelatin should be softened in cold water, then dissolved in hot liquid or over hot water. The contents of 1 envelope of unflavored gelatin

equal 1 tablespoon. Flavored gelatin should be prepared according to directions on package. It should be noted that fresh pineapple cannot be used in gelatin mixtures, although canned pineapple juice and fruit can be used successfully. Gelatin desserts are usually poured into molds and cooled somewhat before being placed in the refrigerator. The jelly will set completely in small molds in about 2 hours. It is not necessary to rinse the molds with water.

To unmold gelatin set mold in lukewarm water  $\frac{1}{2}$  minute. Loosen edge of dessert with sharp knife. Wipe bottom of mold, place serving plate over mold and invert, shaking gently. If dessert does not loosen, return to lukewarm water for  $\frac{1}{2}$  minute.

When a jellyed mixture is used as a base for fruit jellies and desserts made with milk and eggs, it should be chilled



with whipped cream or pour over sliced oranges, berries, stewed pears, boiled rice or sponge cake. Yield: Approximately 1½ cups custard

### Custard Rice Pudding

**Procedure:** Follow directions for soft custard, increasing amount of sugar to ¾ cup. Have ready ¾ cup boiled or steamed rice and fold into hot custard mixture. Pile into sherbet glasses and sprinkle with grated nutmeg or grated orange rind and chill. Yield: 2 servings

**NOTE:** ¾ cup seedless raisins or drained crushed pineapple may be folded into the rice before being added to the custard.

### Fluffy Custard

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup milk
- ¾ cup sugar
- 1 tablespoon flour
- Dash of salt
- 2 egg yolks, slightly beaten
- 2 tablespoons brandy, rum or sherry
- 2 egg whites, stiffly beaten

**Procedure:** Scald ¾ cup milk in top of double boiler. Mix sugar, flour and salt, stir into beaten egg yolks. Stir in cold milk to make a smooth paste and stir into scalded milk. Continue stirring over hot water until

berries or sliced fruit. Yield: Approximately 1½ cups custard.

### Tapioca Cream

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon quick-cooking tapioca
- Dash salt
- 1½ tablespoons sugar
- 1 egg
- 1 cup milk
- ½ teaspoon vanilla

into stiffly beaten egg white. Pour into bowl or sherbet glasses and chill. Yield: 3 servings

### Golden Tapioca

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for tapioca cream, substituting 2 tablespoons brown sugar for 1½ tablespoons sugar.

### Cornstarch Pudding

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup milk
- 1½ tablespoons cornstarch
- 1 egg yolk, slightly beaten
- 2½ tablespoons sugar
- Dash of salt
- ½ teaspoon vanilla extract
- 1 egg white, stiffly beaten

**Procedure:** Scald ¾ cup milk in top of double boiler. Stir remaining milk into cornstarch to make a smooth paste. Stir into the scalded milk and continue stirring until slightly thickened. Cover and cook over hot water 10 minutes. Combine slightly

cream, custard sauce (see SOFT CUSTARD, p. 457, Chocolate Sauce, p. 463) or crushed sweetened fruit. Yield: 3 servings

For chocolate cornstarch pudding, add ½ square shaved chocolate to milk before scalding and allow to melt.

Other variations may be made by adding 2 tablespoons shredded coconut or 3 to 4 crumbled macaroons to the mixture before adding beaten egg white.

### Junket

#### Ingredients:

- ½ junket tablet
- ½ tablespoon cold water
- 1 cup milk
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- ½ teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Crush junket tablet and dissolve in cold water. Heat milk until lukewarm. Add sugar and vanilla, stir until dissolved. Stir in dissolved junket and pour

in package form. Yield: 4 servings

### Prepared Puddings

Many prepared mixes for puddings and frozen desserts are now available for



Fig 108 Ice cream may be attractively served in a glass dish

Beat egg with sugar and salt, stir the hot mixture into this. Place in small double boiler and stir over hot water until mixture thickens slightly. Add vanilla extract and chill until mixture begins to set. Fold in stiffly beaten egg white and pour into bowl or sherbet glasses. Serve with whipped cream or sweetened crushed fruit. Yield 3 servings.

#### Savarian Cream

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for Spanish cream, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup whipped cream for the stiffly beaten egg white.

#### Caramel Spanish Cream

**Procedure:** Follow directions for Spanish cream, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup brown sugar, firmly packed, for 2 tablespoons sugar. The

in the refrigerator until it begins to set; that is, when the consistency is somewhat like that of a thick syrup or an unbeaten egg white. After the remaining ingredients are added, the mixture is poured into a mold and placed in the refrigerator until firm.

### Lemon Jelly

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoon unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- 3 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup lemon juice

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in cold water, add boiling water and stir until dissolved. Add sugar, stir until dissolved, add cold water and lemon juice. Strain and pour into molds. Chill in refrigerator until set and unmold according to general directions. Yield. 2 servings.

### Snow Pudding

**Procedure:** Follow directions for lemon jelly. Chill until set. Remove from refrigerator and unmold.

sauce (see Soft Custard, p. 457)

### Fruit Snow Pudding

**Procedure:** Fill sherbet glasses one third full of snow pudding mixture. Arrange sections of peeled ripe pears or peaches on this and top with more of the pudding mixture.

### Orange Jelly

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for lemon jelly, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice for 3 tablespoons lemon juice.

### Orange Charlotte

**Procedure:** Follow directions for orange jelly. Chill until set. Remove from refrigerator and unmold.

replace the whipped cream.

### Jellied Fruit

**Procedure:** Follow directions for lemon jelly (above), reducing lemon juice to 2 tablespoons. Chill until jelly begins to set. Fold in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sliced fruit such as peaches, bananas, strawberries, raspberries, cut orange or grapefruit sections, stewed or canned apricots, prunes, canned peaches or pineapple. Not more than 3 fruits are usually combined.

### Coffee Jelly

#### Ingredients:

- 2 teaspoons unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- 1 cup strong hot coffee
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- Dash salt

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in cold water, add hot, freshly made coffee, sugar and salt, stir until dissolved. Pour into molds, chill until set. Unmold. Garnish with whipped cream. Yield. 2 servings.

### Coffee Charlotte

**Procedure:** Follow directions for coffee jelly and finish preparation according to directions for Orange Charlotte.

### Wine Jelly

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoon unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- 3 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sherry wine

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in cold water, add boiling water and stir until dissolved. Add sugar, fruit juices and wine. Strain and pour into molds. Chill until set. Unmold and garnish with whipped cream. Yield. 2 servings.

### Spanish Cream

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoon unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- 1 egg
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- Dash salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla extract

**Procedure:** Scald milk. Soften gelatin in cold water and dissolve with scalded milk.

**Procedure** Combine ingredients in sauce pan and mix thoroughly. Stir over very low heat until thick and smooth. Serve hot or cold. Beat well before serving. Yield: 3 servings.

### Chocolate Sauce

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  square chocolate
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- Dash salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla extract
- 1 teaspoon butter

**Procedure:** Chop chocolate into small pieces.

Place in saucepan with water and sugar. Stir over low heat until chocolate is melted. Add salt and vanilla extract. Stir in butter. Serve hot over ice cream, sponge cake or angel food. A ball of ice cream may be served with the cake. Yield: 3 servings.

**Quick Chocolate Sauce**  
**Procedure:** Cut in small pieces half of a 4-oz. bar milk chocolate into a small sauce-

pan and stir over hot water until chocolate is melted.

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1 Desserts can play an important place in the diet. For what reasons?

2 A dessert should be light and easy to digest. Which classes of dessert will fill these requirements?

3 Fruit desserts should be appetizing and easy to digest. Discuss these factors.

4 Gelatin may be used advantageously in the preparation of desserts. With which other foods is it often combined? What are the basic rules for the preparation of a gelatin dessert?

5 Custards are excellent desserts. Explain this statement.

6 Ice cream is the standard dessert in the diet for a convalescent. For what reasons?

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

unmolded dessert may be garnished with whipped cream and toasted almonds, if desired. Undiluted evaporated milk may be substituted for the milk.

### Mocha Spanish Cream

**Procedure:** Follow directions for Spanish cream. Add 1 teaspoon instant coffee to hot

### Molasses Mousse

**Ingredients:**

- 2 teaspoons unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup (7 oz. can) undiluted evaporated milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup molasses
- 1 teaspoon grated orange rind
- 2 teaspoons orange juice

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in cold water. Scald half the milk, add to gelatin and stir

Yield 3 servings.

### Frozen Desserts

Frozen desserts play an important part in the diet. Almost everyone likes

than that of sherbet.

**Ice Cream.** If ice cream is not to be

soften slightly at room temperature.

Ice cream may be piled in a chilled sherbet glass or on a chilled plate. Vanilla ice cream may be varied by garnishing with sweet crushed fruit, such as strawberries, raspberries or peaches, or by using a chocolate sauce (p. 463) or a butterscotch sauce (this page).

**Refrigerator Desserts.** Special recipes are necessary for desserts which are to be frozen in an automatic refrigerator. Except in a "freezer" or in a special low-temperature compartment, these desserts cannot be prepared satisfactorily in very small quantities. Mixes especially designed for frozen dishes can be purchased or the following recipes may be used instead.

### Vanilla Ice Cream (Automatic Refrigerator)

**Ingredients:**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup (7 $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. can) sweetened condensed milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons vanilla
- 1 cup heavy cream

**Procedure:** Mix sweetened condensed milk, water and vanilla. Chill. Whip cream to custardlike consistency. Fold into chilled mixture. Place in freezing unit or special compartment of refrigerator until half frozen. Scrape mixture into bowl. Beat until smooth but not melted. Replace in freezing unit until frozen. (Total time of freezing from 2 to 4 hours.) Yield 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  pints

### Chocolate Ice Cream

Yield 1 pint.

other ingredients.

### Coffee Ice Cream

**Procedure:** Follow directions for vanilla ice cream (above), substituting strong coffee for water. Decrease vanilla to  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon.

### Orange Ice Cream

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for vanilla ice cream (above), substituting orange juice for water and  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon grated orange rind for the vanilla.

### Sauces

#### Butterscotch Sauce

**Ingredients:**

- 1 egg yolk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup brown sugar, firmly packed
- 1 tablespoon water
- 1 tablespoon butter



Fig. 109. Tray with an assortment of cheeses and crackers, and a fruit bowl

finished product. Then it is sold as "creamed" cottage cheese. Considerable of the calcium is lost in the process of manufacture, and it is not a good source of this mineral. Most of the vitamin A is also removed in the manufacture of butter and cream, of which *any* cheese is an important by-

one eighth of the cheese production in the United States. With the exception of Liederkranz, which originated in this country, domestic products are called by the names of the foreign types of cheese which they closely resemble. The label bears the name of the country in which the cheese is manufactured.

All types of cheese can be counted upon to furnish flavor to a meal, whether the cheese is used as an ingredient of a dish or as an accompaniment.

#### FOOD VALUE

As has been stated in a previous chapter, milk is the best single food provided by nature. Lost in the process of the manufacture of cheese are a small amount of the protein content, a portion of the milk sugar, certain mineral salts and some of the water-soluble vitamins.

cream added, which gives it a higher caloric value.

**Luxury Cheeses.** Other varieties of cheese, sometimes known as luxury or epicurean cheeses, are used more as an accessory in a meal than as a staple part of it. They account for not more than

*Types of Cheese*  
*Food Value*  
*Digestibility*  
*Use of Cheese in the Menu*  
*Principles of Cookery*  
*Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-TWO

# Cheese

The general term *cheese* is applied to any product made from the concentrated curd of milk. Cheese is considered to be the first manufactured food, the process for which was probably discovered accidentally when milk was stored in a bag made from the stomach of a cow, which contains rennin. The action of rennin upon milk causes the curds and the whey to separate. While a certain amount of the milk nutrients remains in the whey, the majority remains in the curd, which provides a large amount of the natural food value in milk in concentrated form.

Both food value and flavor of the many types of cheese which are available today depend upon the percentage composition and the methods of ripening which are used in production. The ancient rennet method is still used in modern cheese manufacture for some types of cheese, while for others the curd and the whey are separated by means of lactic acid through adding pure cultures of bacteria to the milk. While a very small amount of cheese is made in Europe from the milk of sheep and goats, cow's milk is the basis for the great majority of both domestic and foreign types of cheese.

### TYPES OF CHEESE

Until comparatively recent times, and due perhaps to the abundance of meat in the United States, cheese was used more as an accessory than as a staple food.

Cheddar cheese was formerly known as "store" cheese, as it was the first commercial type, although there was always home production of cottage cheese. Now, however, the manufacture of cheese and cheese spreads has become a large commercial industry. Much of the cheese of the Cheddar type used in the United States today is processed and packaged. The processing, which includes pasteurization, produces a standard product. However, it lacks the pungent and the individual flavor of a fine Cheddar cheese prepared and allowed to ripen naturally. A great variety of spreads prepared from a cheese base, and some of them seasoned or flavored with other savory ingredients, is now available.

Cottage cheese, made from pasteurized skim milk, is next in order of consumption to Cheddar cheese. Because of the absence of cream, the caloric value is much lower than that of Cheddar unless extra cream is added to the



Fig 109. Tray with an assortment of cheeses and crackers, and a fruit bowl.

finished product. Then it is sold as "creamed" cottage cheese. Considerable of the calcium is lost in the process of manufacture, and it is not a good source of this mineral. Most of the vitamin A is also removed in the manufacture of butter and cream, of which cottage cheese is an important by-product, both from the nutrition and the economic standpoint.

Cream cheese, which, like cottage cheese, is not ripened and is, therefore, also a perishable product, is made from whole milk with a certain amount of cream added, which gives it a higher caloric value.

**Luxury Cheeses.** Other varieties of cheese, sometimes known as luxury or epicurean cheeses, are used more as an accessory to a meal than as a staple part of it. They account for not more than

... products are called by the names of the foreign types of cheese which they closely resemble. The label bears the name of the country in which the cheese is made.

### FOOD VALUE

As has been stated in a previous chapter, milk is the best single food provided by nature. Lost in the process of the manufacture of cheese are a small amount of the protein content, a portion of the milk sugar, certain mineral salts and some of the water-soluble vitamins.





Fig. 110 Toasted cheese sandwich with rabbit sauce

However, the retention of the large amount of protein and fat, calcium, phosphorus, riboflavin and vitamin A, except in cottage cheese, makes cheese a valuable food. The distinctive flavor characteristic of ripened cheese and its high protein content make it an unusually acceptable meat alternate.

#### DIGESTIBILITY

In general, cheese is easily digested. However, the high fat content and the strong flavor of ripened cheese make it unsuitable in some conditions for use on the patient's tray. Cottage and cream cheeses, because of their lower degree of concentration and milder flavor, can generally be used early in convalescence. Later, Cheddar cheese may be used in combination with other foods as an ingredient for a main dish or as a filling for a sandwich. One of the finer types of cheese accompanied by crackers may serve as a dessert. The serving of crackers or bread with cheese is good

nutritional practice. The favorite American dessert of pie with cheese is more appropriate after a light meal than a heavy one.

#### USE OF CHEESE IN THE MENU

Until the beginning of the century, little use was made by Americans of cheese as an ingredient or as the basis of the main dish for a meal. American Cheddar, sliced for use as a sandwich filling and cut in wedges for serving with pie, and cottage cheese as an accessory to the main course appeared occasionally on the table. Grated cheese had some use as a flavoring for sauces, for macaroni and other foods, and as a topping for creamed dishes. In some households it was used occasionally as a "rabbit."

The increased availability of variations of the Cheddar type of cheese, sold by the package, by the pound or in spread form, each with its own distinctive name and flavor, has stimulated the use of cheese on the table. Cottage and



Fig 111 Cheese soufflé

cream cheese among all the famous...

because most of them have such distinctive flavor, the fine "luxury" types of cheese are reserved as a general rule for serving after meals, although occasionally they appear with salad. For a special salad dressing, Roquefort or blue cheese is a favorite ingredient.

### PRINCIPLES OF COOKERY

When cheese is used...

to use a double boiler and to cook the cheese over hot water. For baked cheese dishes, a low temperature is generally used, and sometimes directions call for

placing the dish containing the cheese mixture in a pan of hot water.

When a high temperature is used, as for...

cooked by any method.

### RECIPES

#### Cheese Soufflé

##### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons butter or margarine
- 2 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  pound (1 cup) Cheddar cheese, flaked
- 2 egg yolks
- 8 egg whites, stiffly beaten

Procedure Melt butter or margarine in a

beating after each addition. Fold into the stiffly beaten egg whites. Pour into greased 1-pint casserole and bake in slow oven (300° F.) 1 hour or in moderately hot oven (425° F.) 35 minutes. Yield: 2 generous servings.

### Cheese Fondue

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup milk
- ½ cup soft bread crumbs
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup grated Cheddar cheese
- 1 egg yolk, unbeaten
- 1 egg white, stiffly beaten

**Procedure:** Combine milk, bread crumbs and salt. Cook over low heat, stirring with a fork until mixture is smooth and bubbling.

greased 1-pint baking dish in moderate oven (350° F.) until golden brown (about 25 minutes). Yield: 2 servings.

### Toasted Cheese

#### Ingredients

- ½ cup grated Cheddar cheese
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon paprika
- 1 egg
- ½ cup milk

**Procedure:** Grease thoroughly a small pie pan or 4-inch au gratin dish. Grate cheese

ing. **NOTE:** ½ teaspoon mustard may be added.

### Welsh Rabbit

#### Ingredients:

- 1 egg
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon paprika
- 2 tablespoons milk
- ½ cup grated Cheddar cheese

**Procedure:** Break egg into top of small double boiler or small saucepan. Beat until foamy, stir in other ingredients and cook over hot water, stirring constantly until smooth and thick. Pour over toast and serve at once. Yield: 1 serving.

### Tomato Rabbit

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup grated Cheddar cheese
- ½ cup condensed tomato soup

**Procedure:** Combine cheese and tomato soup in top of small double boiler or small saucepan. Stir over hot water until mixture is smooth and thick. Pour over toast and serve at once. Yield: 1 serving.

**NOTE:** This recipe may be used as a sauce for toasted cheese sandwich.

For other recipes using cheese, see Chapter III (Cereals, Macaroni, Noodle and Rice Recipes) and Chapter 43 (Breads, Toast and Sandwich Recipes).

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. List the types of cheese most commonly used. List the types of cheese which you have eaten.
2. Compare the food value of milk with cheese.
3. Give the reasons why cheese is considered to be a good substitute for meat.
4. Which cheese is low in fat? Suggest recipes for its use.
5. Consult Table 1, Part Four, and list comparative contributions of milk, cheese and meat in regard to mineral content.
6. Discuss the digestibility of cheese. Why is it better to use cheese with bread or crackers?
7. Outline the principles of cheese cookery.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

*Trends in Meat Consumption*  
*Safe Meat*  
*Types of Meat and Poultry*  
*Food Value*  
*Digestibility*  
*Meat and Poultry in the Menu*  
*General Principles of Cookery*  
*Effect of Cooking on Food Value*  
*Care of Meat*  
*Meat Recipes*  
*Choice and Preparation of Poultry*  
*Poultry Recipes*  
*Broths, Soups and Juices*

## CHAPTER FORTY-THREE

# Meats and Poultry

The term *meat* is used to cover poultry as well as the flesh of larger animals. Beef, lamb, mutton and pork are most commonly used. Meat is so generally liked that those who can afford it use it daily, with the possible exception of Friday. The preference for the flavor of meat, as well as its value as a food, makes it an important factor in the menu of most American families.

### TRENDS IN MEAT CONSUMPTION

The consumption of meat has been comparatively heavy in the United States, although far less so than in pioneering days. Finding meat abundant and cheap, the settlers of the new lands made it a large part of their diet, to which it added savor as well as bulk. There was then a smaller variety of other foods available than at present. The rising costs of meats and the increased variety of other foods available

in the markets have changed the emphasis on meat as a preponderant part of the diet. The reaction to the custom of eating meat at every meal lowered the consumption markedly and resulted in its being considered by some a luxury rather than a necessity. However, the experimental work of the past years has shown that it is difficult to obtain an adequate amount of protein of high quality without the use of a substantial amount of meat in the daily diet. As shown in Figure 112, there is no significant difference in the protein content of various types of meat.

### SAFE MEAT

Meat is a protein food, therefore, special precautions must be used in slaughtering, storing and shipping. Because meat is often transported long distances, the Federal Government can enforce rigid inspection of the large

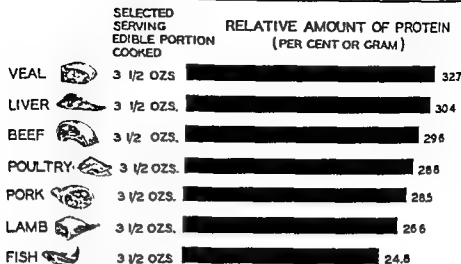


Fig 112. Relative amounts of protein in 3½-oz. serving (cooked). (National Live Stock and Meat Board, Chicago.) Meat data, with exception of liver, based on research by R. M. Leverton, Ph.D. (1958)

meat companies which conduct interstate business. Local authorities should

meat to hang long enough to become tender. Tenderness depends upon this period of hanging, as well as upon the age of the cattle and upon the way in which they were fed. The importance of the careful handling and refrigeration of meat cannot be overestimated, for very high bacterial counts have been reported

the shelf of the refrigerator or quickly at room temperature. If not to be used the day of purchase, frozen meat should be stored in freezing compartment of the refrigerator.

Meat in general should be stored loosely covered with paper in the refrigerator as soon as it comes from market. Ground meat and organs such as liver and kidneys, which are highly

For special precautions with regard to ensuring the safety of pork through long cooking see page 475

Frozen meats, for which various cuts are trimmed and made ready for cooking, are now available in packaged form. Although they may be cooked while still frozen, it is generally preferable to allow them to thaw slowly on

## TYPES OF MEAT

### Beef

Beef, coming as it does from such a large animal, varies greatly in its texture, and this means that special care

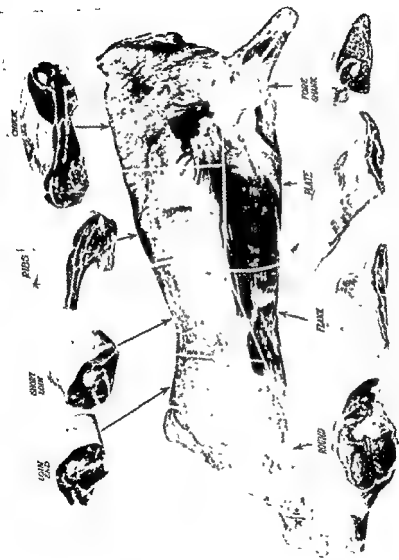


Fig. 113 The various cuts of beef {Public Relations Department, Swift & Company, Chicago}  
(Continued on page 472)

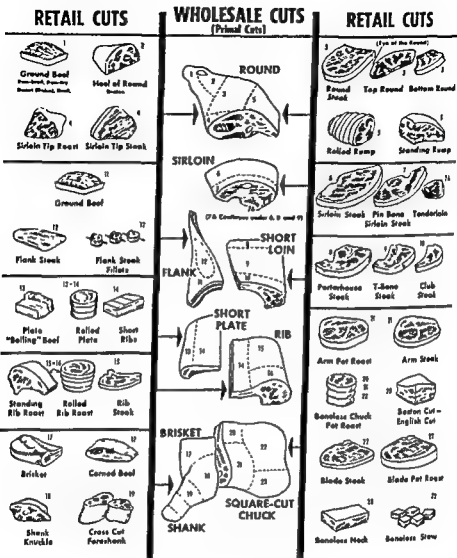


Fig 113 (Continued) Meat packers sell most of their beef in the form of quarters—forequarters and hindquarters. To meet the specific needs of retailers, hotels and others, beef is also sold as Wholesale Cuts.

quarter are better pot-roasted or stewed. Bony portions such as the shin and the shoulder are used for soups.

When beef is used for the patient, a small club steak, a "minute" steak, thinly sliced from the round, or a piece of the tenderloin, or fillet which can be broiled quickly is usually chosen.

Beef, unlike other meats, when either broiled or roasted is generally preferred rare or medium.

### Veal

Veal is the meat of a young calf not less than 3 weeks old at the time of slaughter. The best veal comes from milk-fed calves from 6 to 8 weeks old. Veal cuts may be used as soon as dressed, as they are not improved by hanging.

Formerly, veal was considered more indigestible than beef, but experiments have shown that young veal is digested as easily as mature beef. Veal is lacking in flavor and fat, and for this reason fat may be added in the process of cooking. More seasoning should be added than for other meats. It should be cooked thoroughly to soften the large amount of connective tissue which it contains.

### Lamb and Mutton

Lamb is the meat of the young sheep. Mutton is the meat of the mature animal. The dividing line between lamb and mutton is not based entirely on age. The meat from a well-bred and well-fed animal of 1 year or a year and a half may still be considered lamb, while the meat from a poorly fed animal of 1 year may be considered mutton. Lamb will be tender without a period of hanging, while mutton, like beef, should be hung to ripen.

For invalids, lamb chops, either loin or rib, are used more often than the other cuts, although a slice of meat from a well-done roast may be served. Chops should always be broiled, not fried.

### Pork

Pork is the meat of the pig or hog and is used extensively throughout the world. A large amount of fat is embedded in the tissues of the hog, and pork contains more fat than any other meat. Therefore, it is more slowly digested. Fresh pork should have firm, pinkish white flesh, with firm, clear, white fat.

### Variety Meats

The organs and the glands of animals are known as variety meat or sundries. Among these, tongue has long been a staple. Next to this, the most commonly used has been the liver. The discovery that this organ was so high in food value, especially in its contribution of iron and certain vitamins, caused a large demand for it. The price of delicate calf's liver doubled and tripled. This caused increased use of beef liver. Lamb and pig liver, which have always been used to some extent, are now more in demand. Next in popularity to liver are veal and lamb kidneys, but beef kidney, which is generally less expensive, is also used. Sweetbreads have always been considered a delicacy. Their source is the thymus gland of the calf and the lamb. Lamb sweetbreads are so small that they are seldom seen in market. The pancreas, which is sometimes known as the stomach sweetbread, is occasionally available.

Other portions which belong in this classification of variety meats are heart from the calf or beef, tripe which is obtained from the fatty interlining of the stomach of the beef or calf, and brains which are somewhat like sweetbreads in texture and in flavor.

### TYPES OF POULTRY

Chickens, geese, ducks and turkeys are the common domestic birds used as food, although chickens are the most plentiful among fowls. Capons (male birds castrated at an early age) are highly prized for their fine flavor and



PER CENT

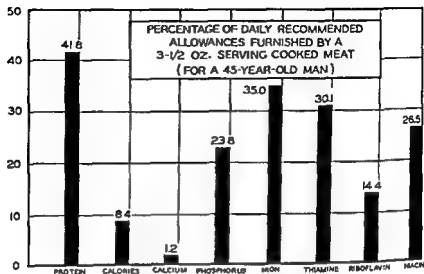


Fig. 114. Per capita meat consumption in 1957, based on research by M. Leaverton, Ph D (National Live Stock and Meat Board, Chicago)

large proportion of light meat. Guinea hen, squab, partridges and other game are luxuries used when obtainable. Because of modern methods of incubation, chickens may be hatched and marketed at any time of the year, so that broilers and fryers are no longer limited to the spring output. In many places it is now possible to buy various parts of chicken, and this is particularly convenient in cooking for the convalescent.

The quality of poultry has been standardized to a great extent by modern methods of breeding, care and feeding. Modern methods produce birds with a higher proportion of meat, and tenderness is ensured through prevention of exercise. The birds come to market in

same care after it reaches the home kitchen.

Chickens, the most largely used type of poultry, are known by various terms which indicate size and, to some extent, tenderness. This is shown in the accompanying chart.

Squab .....	8-14 lbs.
Broiler .....	14-24 lbs.
Fryer .....	24-34 lbs.
Roaster .....	3 lbs. or over
Fowl .....	4 lbs. or over

The quality of poultry depends upon the texture and the flavor of the flesh, as well as upon the distribution of flesh and fat on the carcass. Exercise affects the flavor and the texture of the meat, and the extractives are increased. A chicken that has been allowed to run will develop tough leg muscles and have a lessened amount of tender or white meat. The age of a chicken determines its flavor to a large extent—at first, advantageously, and afterward, disadvantageously.

that of the best fresh-killed bird. However, it should be kept frozen at the market. As poultry is as perishable as meat in general, it should be given the

## FOOD VALUE

The largest contribution of meat to the diet lies in the fact that it provides protein of high quality that can be readily digested and utilized. At the same time, meat furnishes an appreciable amount of phosphorus and iron. These constituents vary in amount in ratio to the fat and the lean content, as they are found only in lean tissue. As meat is always eaten in cooked form, the nutritive value table is based on this fact. A recent and valuable contribution has been made by Leverton and Odell,<sup>1</sup> of Oklahoma State University. The report shows that the nutritive values of meat by modern methods of butchering and trimming are higher in protein and lower in fat.

So far as vitamin content is concerned, meats in general are good sources of the B complex, especially thiamine and niacin. The internal organs, such as liver and kidney, are richer in vitamins than the muscle tissue. Lean pork is much higher in thiamine than are other meats. Liver is an exceedingly good source of vitamin A, and it also contributes some vitamin C and B complex.

The preference for meat is so great that it is difficult to plan satisfying and adequate meals without its use.

## DIGESTIBILITY

The high coefficient of digestibility, from 97 to 98 per cent, is an asset which meat shares with milk and eggs. It is digested not only completely but rapidly. Since it pleases the palate and because it is easily digested, chicken is used in the diet of the patient more often than other meats. White meat is slightly more easily digested than dark, because the fibers are held together less firmly and there is less fat in white meat. There is

no support for the opinion that dark meat produces more uric acid than white.

## MEAT AND POULTRY IN THE MENU

Under the general term meat, poultry is included with beef, veal, lamb and pork. Some form of meat should be served at least once a day unless there is some specific reason for its exclusion from the diet.



## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF COOKERY




**Meat.** In cooking meat, two principles should be observed in the interest of flavor and texture. Tender cuts, if the flavor is to be preserved, should be cooked without water, which its texture does not demand. Broiling and roasting are the accepted methods for these cuts. A constant low temperature of approximately 300 to 325° F is now generally recommended for roasting in order to prevent shrinkage and to produce consistent results. This is particularly important in cooking large quantities. When a high temperature is used at first, it should be lowered to 350° F after the meat is browned. Uncovered pans should be used for roasting. For less tender cuts, the use of some liquid is necessary. Pot roasts are often seared by browning in hot fat before the liquid is added, and cooking is continued in a covered utensil. For soups, where the aim is to draw the flavor into the liquid, part of the meat may be seared for flavor and the remainder put directly into cold water and simmered for a long time, the pot being covered for the first portion of the cooking.

**Pork.** Fresh pork should be cooked until every vestige of pink coloring in the flesh has disappeared. Particular care should be taken to follow directions for cooking which come with the tenderized smoked hams now so generally distributed. The meat itself becomes tender enough to eat before the cooking process has been sufficient to kill trichina spiralis which may be present. Unlike any other

<sup>1</sup> Leverton, R. M., and Odell, C. V., *The Nutritive Value of Cooked Meat*, Miscellaneous Publ. M P -49, Oklahoma State University, March, 1938.

# MEAT COOKERY GUIDE

COOKING METHODS	BEEF CUTS	VEAL CUTS	PORK CUTS	LAMB CUTS	VARIETY MEATS
<b>ROASTING</b> 	Standing Rib Rolled Rib Sirloin Chuck Ribs (high quality) Rump (high quality) Loaf	Rolled Shoulder Cushion Shoulder Arm Roast Blade Roast Rib Loin Rump Leg	Loin Rolled Shoulder Cushion Shoulder Fresh Ham (port leg) Smoked Picnic Smoked Shoulder Butt Smoked Ham Sausages Sliced Salt Pork	Cushion Shoulder Rolled Shoulder Breast with Pocket Rolled Breast Rack Leg	Liver (beef-veal-port-lamb)
<b>BROILING and PAN BROILING</b> 	Rib Steaks Club Steaks T-Bone Steaks Porterhouse Steaks Sirloin Steaks Chuck Steaks (high quality) Rump Steaks (high quality) Patties	Veal is not broiled or pan-broiled	Fresh pork is not broiled or pan-broiled Smoked Ham Slices Sliced Bacon Sliced Canadian-style Bacon Smoked Shoulder Butt Slices	Rib Chops Loin Chops Shoulder (arm or blade) Leg Steaks Patties Choplets (from breast stuffed with ground lamb)	Liver (veal-lamb) Kidney (lamb) Sweetbreads (beef-veal-lamb)

 <p><b>FRYING</b></p>	Thin Steaks (tender or pounded) Patties	Chops Cutlets Steaks Patties	Sausage Sliced Salt Pork	Thin Chops or Thin Steaks	Liver (all kinds if cut thin) Tripe (after pre-cooking in water) Sweetbreads Brains
 <p><b>BRAISING</b></p>	Chuck (arm or blade) Rump Round Heel of Round Brisket Plate Short Ribs Flank Shanks Ox-tails	Breast Rib Chops Loin Chops Shoulder Chops Cutlets Patties	Rib Chops Loin Chops Shoulder Chops or Steaks Fresh Ham Slices	Breast Neck Slices Shanks Riblets Shoulder (arm or blade)	Liver (beef pork) Kidney (beef veal-pork) Heart (beef-veal-pork-lamb) Tripe (beef) Sweetbreads (beef-veal-lamb)
 <p><b>COOKING IN LIQUID (Stew and Large Cuts)</b></p>	Neck Shank Plate Brisket Flank Heel of Round Ox-joints Corned Beef	Neck Shoulder Shanks Flank	Hocks Shanks Feet Backbones Neck Bones Spareribs Smoked Picnic Smoked Shoulder Butt Smoked Ham Shanks Smoked Spareribs Smoked Hocks	Neck Steaks Shoulder Breast	Kidney (beef-veal-pork-lamb) Heart (beef-veal-pork-lamb) Tongue (beef-veal-pork-lamb) Tripe (beef) Sweetbreads (for pre-cooking) Brains (for pre-cooking)

# MEAT COOKERY GUIDE



COOKING METHODS	BEEF CUTS	VEAL CUTS	PORK CUTS	LAMB CUTS	VARIETY MEATS
<b>ROASTING</b> 	Standing Rib Rolled Rib Sirloin Chuck Ribs (high quality) Rump (high quality) Loaf	Rolled Shoulder Cushion Shoulder Arm Roast Blade Roast Rib Loin Rump Leg	Loin Rolled Shoulder Cushion Shoulder Fresh Ham (pork leg) Smoked Picnic Smoked Shoulder Butt Smoked Ham Sausages Sliced Salt Pork	Cushion Shoulder Rolled Shoulder Breast with Pocket Rolled Breast Rack Leg	Liver (beef-veal- pork-lamb)
<b>BROILING and PAN BROILING</b> 	Rib Steaks Club Steaks T Bone Steaks Porterhouse Steaks Sirloin Steaks Chuck Steaks (high quality) Rump Steaks (high quality) Patties	Veal is not broiled or pan-broiled	Fresh pork is not broiled or pan- broiled Smoked Ham Slices Sliced Bacon Sliced Canadian- style Bacon Smoked Shoulder Butt Slices	Rib Chops Loin Chops Shoulder (arm or blade) Leg Steaks Patties Choplets (from breast stuffed with ground lamb)	Liver (veal-lamb) Kidney (lamb) Sweetbread (beef-veal- lamb)



Fig. 157 Broiled lamb loin chop served with vegetables

by cooking in water and contribute flavor to the stock in ratio to its concentration. The small amount of protein is in the form of gelatin. Soups made with meat stock are appetizing rather than nourishing.

### CARE OF MEAT

All fresh and cooked meat must be stored in the refrigerator. Fresh meat and poultry should be lightly but not tightly covered with waxed paper. Chopped meat and glandular meats should be used the day they are purchased or stored in the freezing compartment of the refrigerator. Leftover cooked meat should be covered before being stored on the shelf of the refrigerator and should be put to use within a reasonable time before there is the slightest change in flavor.

Quick frozen meats, of which chicken

is the most commonly used, will defrost in from 3 to 4 hours at room temperature. If they are not to be used on the day of purchase, they should be stored in the freezing compartment of the refrigerator. No attempt should be made to refreeze after thawing. If only a portion of a carton is required, that portion should be cut off and allowed to thaw, and the remainder should be placed at once in the freezing compartment.

### MEAT RECIPES

#### Broiled Steak

**Procedure:** If only 1 portion of steak is to be prepared, a cut from the tenderloin is generally used. Allow from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb for each serving. Small club steaks are delicious when broiled, but they will weigh at least 1 lb. Steaks are usually cut at least 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick, although very thin steak known as

food animal, a pig or a hog is susceptible to trichinosis, which may be passed on to humans if measures to kill any parasites present are omitted. As the presence of these is not apparent, there is no way of judging whether or not pork contains them until some time after it has been eaten and symptoms of trichinosis appear. Under the present methods of production and slaughtering, the only insurance is thorough cooking in the home kitchen.

### EFFECT OF COOKING ON FOOD VALUE

As practically all meat is eaten in cooked form, research has been con-

cerned with the loss of natural vitamin content in cooking. Experiments have shown that some of the vitamins in various cuts of meat are affected differently by the same methods of cooking. Frying, for instance, does not reduce the thiamine content, but it has some effect upon riboflavin and more on niacin. On the other hand, braising and stewing reduce thiamine to a greater extent than they do riboflavin and niacin. Results from roasting and broiling are about the same with regard to all three of the vitamins. (See Fig. 116.)

Soups prepared from meat and bones have very little food value. The extractives, which are soluble, are drawn out

## VITAMIN RETENTION IN COOKING MEAT

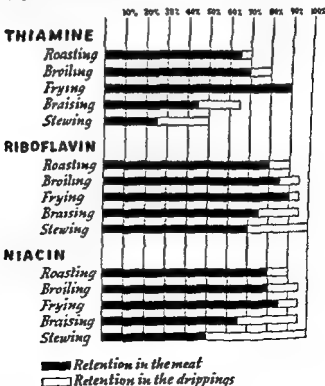


Figure 116

(National Livestock and Meat Board, Chicago)

Preheat oven to 325° F. Roast at this moderately slow temperature. For any rolled boned roast increase time allowance 10 minutes per lb. according to directions for each type of roast

### Roast Beef

**Procedure:** For rare roast beef, allow from 21 to 25 minutes per lb., or until meat thermometer reads 140° F. For medium roast beef, allow from 27 to 35 minutes per lb., or until thermometer reads 160° F. For well-done roast beef, allow from 35 to 40 minutes per lb., or until thermometer reads 170° F.

### Roast Lamb

**Procedure:** For medium roast lamb, allow

### Roast Fresh Pork

**Procedure:** Allow 45 minutes per lb., or until meat thermometer reads 185° F.

### Roast Veal

**Procedure:** Allow 30 minutes per lb., or until thermometer reads 170° F.

### Baked Ham

Most hams on the market today have been tenderized during curing. They may be baked without previous soaking or broiling, except in the case of "country ham." If directions are given on the wrapper, they should be followed.

### Brown Gravy for Roasts

**Ingredients:**

- 1 cup drippings from roast
- 3 tablespoons flour
- 2 cups cold water or stock
- Salt
- Pepper

**Procedure:** Remove roast to hot platter. Pour off drippings if they exceed more than 1/2 cup. Add some milk or cream to the drippings.

small frying pan, reduce flour and water accordingly and follow directions.

### Miscellaneous

#### Bacon

Bacon may be pan-fried, broiled or baked. When 1 portion is prepared for the invalid's tray, the pan-frying method will be used generally. Usually 2 or 3 strips of bacon are allowed for each serving.

#### Baked Bacon

**Procedure:** Arrange strips of bacon in baking pan. Bake in moderately hot oven (400° F.) until golden brown. Drain on soft paper.

#### Pan-fried Bacon

**Procedure:** Place bacon without separating into strips in cold frying pan. Cook over low heat 2 or 3 minutes. Separate strips and turn occasionally until golden brown. Drain on soft paper.

#### Broiled Kidneys

**Procedure:** Choose 1 veal kidney or 2 lamb kidneys for each serving. Split kidney, remove membrane and tubes, and soak in salted water 20 minutes. Drain and dry, dip in melted butter. Preheat broiling oven 5 minutes. Arrange alternate pieces of kidney and 1-inch squares of bacon on metal skewers, and broil 3 inches from the heat about 15 minutes, turning occasionally.

#### Pan-broiled Liver

Calf's liver is generally used for the patient's tray because it is both tender and delicate in flavor. Liver from beef, lamb or pig, which is less expensive, is also very good when properly cooked.

**Procedure:** Have liver sliced 1/2 inch thick. Wipe with cloth and remove skin and tubes



"minute" steak may be cooked by a special method. Allow 3 1/2 lb. for a serving.

and broil from 2 to 3 inches below heat. Sear meat on both sides, reduce heat and continue cooking, turning occasionally. If an electric range is used, the door of the broiler should be kept slightly open. For each 1/2 lb. of meat allow 10 to 15 minutes.

### Pan-broiled Steak

Procedure: Wipe meat with cloth; heat heavy frying pan and grease with fat.

with salt and pepper, spread with softened butter if desired.

### Minute Steak

Procedure: Heat heavy frying pan until very hot and grease liberally. Sear steak quickly on both sides, lower heat and cook 2 minutes on each side. Sprinkle with salt and pepper, spread with softened butter if desired.

### Broiled Hamburg

Ingredients:

1/2 lb ground beef

1/2 teaspoon salt

Dash pepper

1/2 teaspoon cream or evaporated milk

Procedure: Mix beef with seasonings and moisten with cream or evaporated milk. Form into a thick cake. Make an indentation in the center and broil under moderate heat about 7 minutes on each side. Serve on 1/2 cup water.

3 minutes on each side. Allow 1/2 lb. for a serving.

### Broiled Lamb Chops

Procedure: Select loin or rib chops, single or double as desired. Follow directions for broiled steak or pan-broiled steak. For single chops allow from 10 to 15 minutes. For double chops from about 15 to 20 minutes.

### Pan-broiled Pork Chops

Procedure: Have chops cut about 1 inch thick. Wipe with cloth, sprinkle with salt and pepper and dredge with flour. Heat heavy frying pan and brown chops lightly on both sides in their own fat, turning frequently. Pour off excess fat as chops cook. Cover and cook over very low heat from 25 to 30 minutes (until tender).

### Broiled Ham

Procedure: Preheat broiling oven 15 minutes. Trim skin and wipe meat with cloth, cut fat round edge in several places. Broil 3 inches below moderate heat, turning occasionally. Allow 10 minutes for slice 1/2 inch thick and 20 minutes for one 1 inch thick. After ham is broiled it may be sprinkled with brown sugar and returned to broiler just long enough to melt the sugar. Allow 1/2 lb for each serving.

### Pan-broiled Ham

Procedure: Trim skin and wipe meat with cloth, cut fat round edge in several places. Heat heavy frying pan and grease with fat from ham. Cook over moderate heat turning often until well browned. Allow 1/2 lb for 1 serving.

### Veal Steak

Procedure: Select veal steak cut 1/2 inch thick. Dredge with flour, salt and pepper, and sauté in a small amount of butter or bacon fat, turning constantly until brown. Add 1/2 cup water, cover and simmer from 20 to 30 minutes (until tender). Allow 1/2 lb for 1 serving.

### Roasting

Tender cuts of meat such as ribs of beef, pork, lamb, etc.

### General Directions for Roasting

Wipe meat with cloth, rub with salt and pepper and place fat side up in uncovered roaster. If meat thermometer is used, insert in the thickest part of the meat.

to buy any portion of chicken desired, this is helpful when meat is being re-introduced into the diet and when white meat of chicken has been specified by the physician. It is also convenient when the convalescent patient has a special desire for some particular chicken dish.

As it may be necessary for the nurse to supervise the preparation of boiled chicken, the method of preparation is included in this chapter. When chicken or other fowl is to be served at the family table, some of the breast meat should be reserved for the patient, unless other portions are preferred.

Poultry is generally purchased dressed and drawn. It may be ordered split for broiling or cut in pieces for frying or other purposes. If singeing is necessary, hold the bird over direct heat and turn until all the hair has disappeared. Then wash inside and out under running water. Remove pieces of red spongy lungs, remove oil sac above tail with a sharp knife and pin feathers with tweezers.

Broilers and fryers entirely ready for cooking can be purchased packaged, both fresh and frozen. The price per pound of edible meat is no more than that for other poultry which is weighed before it is completely dressed.

Proper cooking, which develops and holds the delicate flavor of the meat, is important in preparing chicken for the

chicken after the broth has been extracted for soup. A very palatable broth may be made from the bones of roast chicken or turkey if a pressure cooker is used. Baby or squab chickens and Rock Cornish hens are about the same size as squab, the term used for young pigeon. As each provides 1 serving, they may be used to advantage for the single person or small family.

## POULTRY RECIPES

### Boiled Chicken

**Procedure:** Choose a 5-lb fowl and have it disjointed at market. Wash and place in kettle with 1 quart boiling water. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup celery leaves or 1 stalk celery, 1 sliced onion, 1 bay leaf, 4 peppercorns and 1 tablespoon salt. Bring to boiling point, cover, and let simmer over low heat about 2 hours or until tender. The time will de-

cups diced cooked chicken

### Fricassee of Chicken

#### Ingredients

- 1 boiled chicken
- 4 tablespoons butter
- 6 tablespoons flour
- 2 cups chicken stock
- 1 cup top milk
- Salt
- Pepper
- 2 tablespoons chopped parsley

**Procedure:** Follow directions for boiled chicken (see preceding recipe). Drain and reserve stock. Melt butter, add flour, stir until well blended, and add chicken stock and milk gradually. Stir constantly over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. Add

meat and seasonings. Reheat

### Creamed Chicken

#### Ingredients

- 1 tablespoon chicken fat or butter
- 2 teaspoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup chicken stock
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced cooked chicken
- 1 teaspoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Melt butter, stir in flour and seasonings, and when well blended add chicken stock and milk slowly, stirring constantly over low heat until the mixture thickens and boils. Add chicken and parsley.

if this has not already been done at the store. Dredge with *seasoned flour*. Cook in hot, well-greased frying pan about 5 minutes, turning occasionally until well browned. Add more fat as needed. Bacon fat or butter is used generally for cooking liver. Care should be taken not to overcook liver, for long cooking will make it tough. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. for 1 serving.

### Broiled Sweetbreads

**Procedure:** Wash sweetbreads, cover with boiling water, add 1 teaspoon vinegar and  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt. Bring to boiling point, cover and simmer over low heat 15 minutes. Drain, plunge in cold water, drain again and remove membrane and veins. Drain and dry. Preheat broiling oven and grease rack. Brush sweetbreads with melted butter or salad oil and sprinkle with salt and pepper. Broil 3 inches below the heat about 10 minutes, turning occasionally. Serve with melted butter flavored with lemon juice. Allow 1 sweetbread for 1 serving.

### Creamed Sweetbreads

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  boiled sweetbread
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 tablespoon flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cream
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Prepare and boil sweetbread according to directions in preceding recipe, cut sweetbread into small pieces. Melt butter, stir in flour, salt and pepper; when blended stir in milk and cream gradually, and continue stirring over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. Add lemon juice and parsley. Add sweetbread, reheat and serve on hot toast or in a croustade. Yield 1 serving.

### Creamed Dried Beef

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup shredded dried beef
- 2 teaspoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Procedure:** Melt butter in a small frying pan, add beef and cook until light brown

Sprinkle with flour and blend. Add milk gradually, stirring constantly over low heat until mixture thickens and boils. Serve on toast or on hot biscuits as desired. Yield: 1 serving.

### Baked Hamburg

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. ground beef
- Dash salt
- Dash pepper
- Dash mustard
- 1 small onion, sliced
- Melted butter

**Procedure:** Mix beef with salt, pepper and mustard. Form into flat cake, place in greased baking pan, top meat with overlapping onion slices and brush with butter. Bake about 10 minutes in moderately hot oven (400° F.). Yield: 1 serving.

### Scraped Beef

**Procedure:** Take a piece of round steak scrape with tablespoon to free from the connective tissue, season with salt and serve as desired. It may be spread between slices of bread and served as a toasted sandwich or it may be formed into a ball and pan broiled slightly.

### Meat Stews

For meat stews and other family-size meat recipes, see Chapter 49.

## CHOICE AND PREPARATION OF POULTRY

The term *poultry* is used to describe domestic birds such as chicken, squab, turkey, guinea hen, goose and duck, and game such as quail, partridge and pheasant. Chicken and turkey are used more than any other form of poultry in

served for use a day or two later. A nurse may be called upon to roast squab, baby chicken or partridge, or to prepare a broiler.

As it is now possible

markets



Fig. 118. Jellied consommé is refreshing on a warm day

over the cup or cream soup dish in which the soup is served.

Hot crackers or Melba toast should be served separately on a small plate. Croutons may be placed in the soup just before it is to be served.

### Jellied Consommé (Bouillon)

#### Ingredients.

- 1 tablespoon unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup well-seasoned soup stock or canned consommé
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- 1 slice or  $\frac{1}{2}$  lemon
- 1 teaspoon minced parsley

and minced parsley or with cooked or canned small mushrooms

### Jellied Tomato Bouillon

**Procedure** Follow directions for jellied consommé, substituting well-seasoned tomato juice for the soup stock or consommé.

### Jellied Madrilene

**Procedure** Follow directions for jellied consommé, using equal parts of soup stock or consommé and well-seasoned tomato juice.

Note Jellied Madrilene can be purchased in canned form. The can should be chilled in the refrigerator before it is opened. It should be beaten lightly with a fork before being served in bouillon cup.

### Vegetable Soup

**Procedure** Dice cooked vegetables, canned or fresh tomatoes, boiled rice or barley,

Reheat and serve on hot toast or split baking powder biscuits (p 531) or in tart shells. Garnish with strips of pimiento if desired. Yield 1 serving.

**NOTE:** Chicken stock may be replaced by  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cream.

### Casserole of Creamed Chicken

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for creamed chicken. Place in small, buttered baking dish, sprinkle with buttered bread crumbs or with grated cheese and bake about 15 minutes in a moderately hot oven (400° F.) until lightly brown.

### Creamed Chicken with Mushrooms

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for creamed chicken, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sliced cooked or canned mushrooms for an equal amount of chicken.

### Broiled Chicken

**Procedure:** Select broiler weighing from 2 to

heat and let stand  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour to finish cooking by retained heat. Serve with cream gravy if desired. To make cream gravy follow directions for cream sauce (p 503), substituting some of the fat in which the chicken has been cooked for the butter. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb for 1 serving.

### Roast Squab

**Procedure:** Clean squab, rub lightly inside and out with butter, and sprinkle with salt and pepper. Place breast side up in uncovered pan and roast in a very hot oven (500° F.) for 15 minutes until brown. Turn breast side down, reduce heat to slow (325° F.) and continue roasting about 20 minutes (until meat is tender). Serve with currant jelly.

*Roast with well-seasoned*

### Roast Baby Chicken

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for roast squab.

### Roast Partridge

**Procedure:** Follow directions for roast squab (above).

### Chicken Livers

**Procedure:** Chicken livers may be sautéed 2 or 3 minutes in butter or may be halved, dipped in melted butter or salad oil and placed on skewer for broiling under a moderate heat for about 2 minutes on each side.

## BROTHS, SOUPS AND JUICES

Meat soups, broths and juices are valued more because of the way in which they stimulate appetite than because of the very small amount of food value they contribute. As good quality canned broths and soups can be purchased, only a few recipes are given in this section.

**To Serve Soup.** Bouillon cups or cream soup dishes rather than soup plates should be used and should be heated before soup is served. Covered soup bowls should be used when available, otherwise a saucer may be placed

skin side down on broiler rack 3 inches below heat. Cook from 30 to 40 minutes, turning several times and basting frequently with melted fat. Serve on hot plate with extra melted butter if desired.

A broiler may be baked in the oven from 30 to 50 minutes until tender. A high temperature (500° F.) should be used for the first 15 minutes, then reduced to moderate (375° F.). It should be basted occasionally with fat which accumulates at bottom of the pan. One serving  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 lb.

### Fried Chicken

**Procedure:** Have chicken cut into pieces for serving. Wipe with damp cloth and sprinkle with salt and pepper. Dredge liberally with flour and rub flour into flesh. Dredge again, continue rubbing until no more flour can be absorbed. Fry in hot fat, which should be at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in depth in frying pan. Lard or vegetable shortening is used generally. Turn chicken constantly until golden brown. When tested with fork, the juice should be colorless. If chicken is not tender by the time it is brown, cover and remove from

*Food Value*  
*Shellfish*  
*Other Foods Grouped with Fish*  
*Digestibility*  
*Place in the Menu*  
*Selection and Care*  
*Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-FOUR

# Fish, Including Shellfish

Fish and meat compare well in the chief nutritive constituent protein. Fish, however, has fewer extractives, which are responsible for the characteristic flavors of meat. While various types of fish have a certain individuality of flavor, except in the case of shellfish, they do not differ in the important

more of the nutritive value is lost in boiling fish than in baking or broiling.

As will be seen in Table 1, Part Four, there is little difference in the protein content of the various fish. There is a great difference, however, in the fat content, which varies from less than 1 per cent to more than 12 per cent. This factor has led to the classification of fish under two heads: fish low in fat and fish high in fat. The amount of fat in all fish varies somewhat with the season of the year, with the time of spawning and with changes in feeding conditions. It may be noted that certain fish which have very little fat in the edible portion have a comparatively large amount in the liver. Fish liver furnishes oil which is high in both vitamins A and D. Cod and halibut are commonly used, but mackerel, tuna, swordfish and several other species yield liver oils which are more potent.

Salt-water fish are valuable because of their iodine content. The iron content is lower than that of meat.

communities far from sources of production to have a regular distribution of good-quality fresh fish. Canned fish,

### FOOD VALUE

Weight for weight, fish is not generally so high in calories as meat, because of the lower fat and the higher water content. Fish is rich in gelatin, which is soluble in hot water. For this reason

may be obtained in both fresh and

cooked noodles or vermicelli may be added to any type of stock. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of any one of these products or in combination to 1 cup stock. If fat is allowed in the diet, diced raw vegetables such as carrots, potatoes, turnips and minced onion may be cooked 2 minutes in a small amount of butter before the addition of stock. The saucepan should be covered and the soup cooked until the vegetables are tender. Canned consommé, bouillon cubes or instant broth dissolved in water may replace stock.

### Chicken Broth

Yield: 1 quart

family table, some of the stock from the boiled chicken which forms its base may be reserved for use on the patient's tray. The stock should be chilled, then skimmed, so as to be free of fat before it is reheated for the patient.

### Beef Juice

#### Ingredients:

$\frac{1}{2}$  lb lean beef  
Salt

Procedure: Broil beef (about 4 inches square and 1 inch thick) on both sides. Two minutes should be sufficient.

Lay beef on a plate, sprinkle with salt, cut in pieces, place in meat press or potato ricer and squeeze out all the juice. Yield. About 2 ozs or 4 tablespoons juice.

Sufficient juice for 2 servings is generally prepared at one time. To warm the second portion, place the juice in a cup, set cup in boiling water, stir juice constantly until it is a little more than lukewarm and serve at once.

### Beef Tea

#### Ingredients:

1 lb. chopped lean beef  
1 pint cold water  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

Procedure: Place finely chopped or ground beef in a fruit jar. Add cold water and allow to stand 1 hour. Place jar in a saucepan of cold water with a cloth on the bottom of pan under the glass and heat the water over low heat. Be careful not to let it boil. Keep below boiling for 2 hours. Then slowly in-

ing or in reheating. Yield: 4 servings.

(For soups other than those made from meat, see Chap. 47.)

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the change in trend in meat consumption in the United States.
2. Why must meat be handled carefully in its preparation for market and also in the home kitchen?
3. Give the reasons why meat is considered to be a valuable part of the diet. State why liver and other organs have a particularly high rating.
4. Discuss the digestibility of meat. Why is the white meat of chicken often served early in convalescence?
5. Outline the principles of meat cooking. Why should particular precautions be used in cooking pork?
6. Compare the vitamin values of raw and cooked meats.
7. What is the value of meat soups, broths and juices?

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

## SHELLFISH

### Oysters

Oysters are among the most important of the shellfish. The usual season for oysters opens the first of September and closes the first of May. They are not a desirable article of food during the summer, which is the spawning season. After harvesting, oysters should be kept alive until required for use.

Among the best-known varieties are blue points, lynnnavens, rockaways, saddle rocks, shrewsburys, etc. Such names formerly indicated the localities from

given commonly to oysters not exceeding 2 or 2½ inches in length.

Oysters may be contaminated by water polluted by sewage. Oyster beds which supply commercial distributors are located in safe waters. Shucked oysters may become contaminated in the process of shelling, because of improper handling.

Oysters in the shell may be served raw, broiled or baked, and out of the shell stewed, creamed, scalloped, fried and roasted. In choosing oysters those with tightly closed shells should be selected. Shucked oysters should have a good odor, should not be ropy or slimy, and should not be "bloated" by placing them in fresh water. When oysters are cooked, the period should always be short to avoid toughening.

### Clams

Clams rank next to oysters in impor-

Clams are most abundant during the closed oyster season. Little-neck clams are served raw and often take the place of blue points on hotel and restaurant menus. They do not differ much from oysters in food value.

Quahogs, or large clams, are used for chowder, broth and frying. Soft-shelled clams are boiled, steamed and used in chowders. In choosing clams, those with unbroken shells should be selected. If open, they should close quickly when

they are tapped. If they do not close, they are not fit for use.

### Mussels

Mussels are not generally used for food in the United States, but are used extensively in France, Holland and England. They are found in both fresh and salt water.

### Scallops

Scallops, like oysters, are bivalves, but only the muscle, which opens and closes

the shell, is eaten.

Scallops are usually served broiled or baked.

Scallops are also served in chowder.

quart or a pound and may be broiled, fried, baked or used for chowder.

### Lobsters

Lobsters are salt-water crustaceans and are found in large numbers in the

Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

Lobsters are usually served broiled or baked.

Live lobsters heavy for their size should be chosen. There should be an active, quick response to touch. After boiling, the tail should spring back when straightened out. This test shows that the lobster was alive before cooking.

Lobsters may be served boiled, baked, creamed or broiled.

Large crawfish are sometimes called

very small round clam is known as the little neck.



canned form. The roe of the sturgeon, which is known as caviar, is obtainable in salted form. So-called fresh caviar is mildly salted and packed in tin or in glass. It is much more expensive than the caviar which is more highly salted, packed in barrels for export and later canned. Caviar, which was once a common product in the United States before the American sturgeon was practically exterminated, is now imported from Russia. A small amount of inexpensive white-fish caviar is produced in the United States. In contrast with shad roe, which is used as a main dish, caviar is used merely as an appetizer and seldom has a place in the diet of an invalid.

Shellfish may be divided into two classes: mollusks and crustaceans. Mollusks include oysters, clams, mussels and scallops; crustaceans include lobsters,

are all of approximately the same composition. As a class, they are high in protein and low in fat.

## COMPOSITION OF TYPICAL FISH

KIND	WATER Per Cent	PROTEIN Per Cent	FAT Per Cent	CALORIES per 100 Gm.	CALORIES Per Lb.
<i>Low in Fat</i>					
Bass	77	21	2	102	463
Cod	83	17	Tr.	68	309
Flounder	83	15	1	68	322
Haddock	82	18	Tr.	63	309
Pike	80	19	1	85	388
Trout, brook	78	19	2	88	427
<i>High in Fat</i>					
Bonito	68	24	7	159	722
Herring	67	18	13	139	631
Mackerel	68	19	12	184	835
Salmon, Pacific	68	17	17	221	1,003
Shad	70	19	10	166	754
White Fish	70	23	7	135	704

## PROXIMATE COMPOSITION OF SHELLFISH

DESCRIPTION	WATER Per Cent	PROTEIN Per Cent	FAT Per Cent	CARBO- HYDRATE Per Cent	CALORIES per 100 Gm.	CAL- ORIES Per Lb.
Clams, long and round	80	13	1	2	82	372
Crabs	80	17	3	1	86	390
Lobsters	79	16	2	1	86	390
Mussels	77	14	2	5	94	427
Oysters	80	10	2	8	82	372
Scallops	80	15	Tr.	3	72	327
Shrimps	86	27	1	1	85	386

## SHELLFISH

### Oysters

Oysters are among the most important of the shellfish. The usual season for oysters opens the first of September and closes the first of May. They are not a desirable article of food during the summer, which is the spawning season. After harvesting, oysters should be kept alive until required for use.

Among the best-known varieties are blue points, lynnnavens, rockaways, saddle rocks, shrewsburys, etc. Such names formerly indicated the locality in which the oysters were grown, but this no longer holds, the name generally denoting merely the size of the oyster. For example, the name *blue point* is now given commonly to oysters not exceeding 2 or 2½ inches in length.

Oysters may be contaminated by water polluted by sewage. Oyster beds which supply commercial distributors are located in safe waters. Shucked oysters may become contaminated in the process of shelling, because of improper handling.

Oysters in the shell may be served raw, broiled or baked.

Only tightly closed shells should be selected. Shucked oysters should have a good odor, should not be ropy or slimy, and should not be "bloated" by placing them in fresh water. When oysters are cooked, the period should always be short to avoid toughening.

### Clams

Clams rank next to oysters in importance.

are dug with shovel and rake. The long soft-shelled clams are found in the mud.

very small round clam is known as the little neck

Clams are most abundant during the closed oyster season. Little-neck clams are served raw and often take the place of blue points on hotel and restaurant menus. They do not differ much from oysters in food value.

Quahags, or large clams, are used for chowder, broth and frying. Soft-shelled clams are boiled, steamed and used in chowders. In choosing clams, those with unbroken shells should be selected. If open, they should close quickly when

### Mussels

Mussels are not generally used for food in the United States, but are used extensively in France, Holland and England. They are found in both fresh and salt water.

### Scallops

Scallops, like oysters, are bivalves, but only the muscle which opens and closes the shell is used for food. Two types of scallops are found in the waters of the Atlantic and the Gulf of Mexico. Those which are found in shallow waters are smaller and more tender than the deep-sea scallops. Scallops are sold by the quart or pound and may be broiled, fried, baked or used for chowder.

### Lobsters

Lobsters are salt-water crustaceans and are found in Atlantic waters from Newfoundland to New Jersey. They are most plentiful in summer. Lobsters have a dark-greenish hard shell which turns red during cooking.

Live lobsters heavy for their size should be chosen. There should be an active, quick response to touch. After boiling, the tail should spring back when straightened out. This test shows that the lobster was alive before cooking. Lobsters may be served boiled, baked, creamed or broiled.

Large crawfish are sometimes called

lobster. The flavor is not unlike that of lobster. Frozen South African rock lobster tails are now in rather general distribution in city markets. As the fish are taken from the very cold antarctic current, trimmed and fast-frozen immediately, the quality of the meat is very good and suitable for boiling and broiling. The tails range in size from 4 to 11 ounces.

### Crabs

Several types of crabs are found along

from Atlantic waters.

### Shrimps

Atlantic and the Pacific coasts. A large

canned form shelled, devilled frozen shrimp—some of which is breaded—is also available.

### OTHER FOODS GROUPED WITH FISH

**Turtles.** Both fresh- and salt-water turtles are used. The green turtles grow to an enormous size, some weighing from 50 to 100 pounds. They are used principally for making soups, some of the flesh being included in the soup.

**Terrapins.** Terrapins are found in fresh and salt water, and are shipped

little. The diamond-back terrapin is the most famous variety. Only the female is used for food, the choicest or "full cow" terrapin containing eggs.

**Frogs' Legs.** Frogs' legs are utilized in some parts of the United States, only the hind legs being eaten. They are easily digested and have a very delicate flavor, much like the white meat of chicken. They are served broiled or fried.

### DIGESTIBILITY

Fish, in general, is easily digested because of its short and tender muscle fibers. The controlling factor of digestibility is its fat content; in the richer varieties the fat delays food passage

be consulted.

Shellfish vary greatly in the rapidity with which they are digested. Oysters are among the most valued foods for the patient because they digest easily. Lobster is seldom used because of the coarseness of the meat and the strong flavor. Other shellfish are usually well tolerated, although there may be allergies toward one or more of the members of the shellfish family and occasionally to other types of fish as well.

### PLACE IN THE MENU

Fish and shellfish may be used to advantage in the convalescent's diet if the patient likes this type of food. The texture of fish is so tender that it may be introduced as soon as solid food is allowed. Fish such as salmon and shad, whose flesh contains fat, is sometimes reserved for later use. Oysters are used more than any other shellfish, although clams, crabmeat and shrimp will offer a desirable variety during the latter part of convalescence. Lobster may have a place on a tray prepared for a convalescent patient under no dietary restrictions.



Fig. 119. Broiled halibut steak with two vegetables.

### SELECTION AND CARE OF FISH

Fish is offered on the market today in a number of different forms. Coastal cities and regions bordering on the Great Lakes are small points of fish supply.

packed in cartons before freezing are available in most markets. Frozen fish should not be defrosted until just before it is to be used. Fish should be stored in a covered utensil in the refrigerator. When frozen fish is bought in cartons of family size, it should be allowed to thaw on the shelf of the refrigerator or at room temperature for a number of hours, then

preservation—drying, smoking, salting and pickling. By such methods fish will keep in good condition a long time. Fish so treated is generally purchased just before it is to be used.

### FISH RECIPES

The general rule for cooking fish may be summed up in one sentence: short cooking just before serving is most important. This rule is particularly applicable in the case of broiled and pan-broiled fish, which after cooking dries out quickly. The test for cooking is simple. When tried with a fork, the flesh should flake. Sliced or quartered lemon is the chosen garnish for fish for both

lobster. The flavor is not unlike that of lobster. Frozen South African rock lobster tails are now in rather general distribution in city markets. As the fish are taken from the very cold antarctic current, trimmed and fast-frozen immediately, the quality of the meat is very good and suitable for boiling and broiling. The tails range in size from 4 to 16 ounces.

### Crabs

Several types of crabs are found along the Atlantic and the Pacific coasts. Soft-shelled crabs are small Atlantic crabs which have shed their shells. The meat of the hard-shelled crab is usually picked after boiling and shipped packed in ice.

from Atlantic waters.

### Shrimps

Shrimps from Southern waters, which are used commonly, actually belong to the prawn family. True shrimps are found to some extent along both the

also available.

### OTHER FOODS GROUPED WITH FISH

**Turtles.** Both fresh- and salt-water turtles are used. The green turtles grow to an enormous size, some weighing from 50 to 100 pounds. They are used principally for making soups, some of the flesh being included in the soup.

**Terrapins.** Terrapins are found in fresh and salt water, and are shipped from the South packed in seaweed. They are in season from November to April. Like the lobster, they are cooked alive. Because of the scarcity of terrapin and the increased cost, they are used very

little. The diamond-back terrapin is the most famous variety. Only the female is used for food, the choicest or "full cow" terrapin containing eggs.

**Frogs' Legs.** Frogs' legs are utilized in some parts of the United States, only the hind legs being eaten. They are easily digested and have a very delicate flavor, much like the white meat of chicken. They are served broiled or fried.

### DIGESTIBILITY

Fish, in general, is easily digested because of its short and tender muscle fibers. The controlling factor of digestibility is its fat content; in the richer varieties the fat delays food passage.

be consulted.

Shellfish vary greatly in the rapidity with which they are digested. Oysters are among the most valued foods for the patient because they digest easily. Lobster is seldom used because of the coarseness of the meat and the strong flavor. Other shellfish are usually well tolerated, although there may be allergies toward one or more of the members of the shellfish family and occasionally to other types of fish as well.

### PLACE IN THE MENU

Fish and shellfish may be used to advantage in the convalescent's diet if the patient likes this type of food. The texture of fish is so tender that it may be introduced as soon as solid food is allowed. Fish such as salmon and shad, whose flesh contains fat, is sometimes reserved for later use. Oysters are used more than any other shellfish, although clams, crabmeat and shrimp will offer a desirable variety during the latter part of convalescence. Lobster may have a place on a tray prepared for a convalescent patient under no dietary restrictions.

**Procedure:** Leftover cooked fish or canned tuna fish, salmon, crabmeat or shrimp may be used. Melt butter, stir in flour, salt and pepper. When well blended, add milk slowly, stirring constantly over low heat until the mixture thickens and boils. Add fish, nutmeg and more salt if necessary. One teaspoon lemon juice may be added if desired. Reheat, serve on toast or in patty shell. Sprinkle with minced parsley or chives. Yield 2 servings.

### **Creamed Fish with Mushrooms**

**Procedure:** Follow directions for creamed fish (see above), adding 3 tablespoons sliced cooked or canned mushrooms with the fish.

### **Codfish, Creamed**

#### **Ingredients**

- ½ cup salt codfish
- ½ cup cream sauce (p. 503)

**Procedure:** Soak codfish in cold water 20 minutes. Remove some of the salt, drain. Cut in small pieces and combine with cream sauce, from which salt has been omitted, and heat thoroughly. Yield 1 serving.

### **Scalloped Fish**

#### **Ingredients**

- 2 tablespoons butter
- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- ½ teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- 2 teaspoons lemon juice
- ½ cup flaked cooked or canned fish

**Procedure:** Leftover cooked fish or drained canned tuna fish or salmon may be used. Melt butter, add crumbs and stir with a fork until well mixed. Add salt, pepper and lemon juice. Arrange fish and crumbs in alternate layers in a small, greased baking dish. Bake about 30 minutes in a hot oven (450° F.) until crumbs are golden brown. Yield 2 servings.

## **SELECTION AND CARE OF SHELLFISH**

Great care must be taken in the handling and the preparation of shellfish for shipment. Lobsters, oysters and clams in the shell are packed in ice and shipped alive to market points. South African

rock lobster tails are fast-frozen for shipment to distant points. Shucked oysters are packed in metal containers or waxed cartons which should be refrigerated or surrounded with ice. Shucked oysters are also quick-frozen after packing in cartons. They should not be thawed until ready to use. Both soft- and hard-shell crabs are shipped alive, but the majority of the meat from the latter is boiled, picked, placed in can and packed in ice for shipment. Scallops are usually sold in fresh form, although a few are now frozen. All shellfish after purchase should be stored in the refrigerator and used within 24 hours.

## **SHELLFISH RECIPES**

### **Creamed Oysters**

#### **Ingredients**

- 1½ tablespoons butter
- 1½ tablespoons flour
- ½ teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- ½ cup milk
- 6 oysters
- 1 tablespoon diced raw celery

**Procedure:** Melt butter in a small saucepan, stir in flour, salt and pepper, stir in milk gradually and continue stirring over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. Add drained oysters and celery and cook over low heat about 2 minutes until edges of the oysters curl. Serve on hot toast or in patty shell, garnish with strips of pimiento or minced parsley. Yield 1 serving.

### **Panned Oysters**

#### **Ingredients**

- 6 oysters
- ½ tablespoon butter
- Salt
- Pepper

**Procedure:** Drain the oysters, pour into hot dry saucepan and cook, stirring constantly until edges curl. Add butter and seasoning. Serve on toast. Yield 1 serving.

### **Scalloped Oysters**

**Procedure:** Follow directions for scalloped fish (on this page), substituting 6 raw oysters for the flaked fish.

appearance and flavor. If a sauce is used, it should be flavored either with lemon or some other pungent ingredient.

### Fish, Baked Fillets

**Procedure:** Wash fish fillet and wipe with cloth. Roll in seasoned flour, corn meal

tartare sauce in a lettuce cup, if desired, and lemon quarter.

**Tartare sauce** Mix 1 teaspoon finely minced olives or pickles and a few drops onion juice with 1 tablespoon mayonnaise.

### Broiled Fish

**Procedure:** Wash fish thoroughly, wipe with cloth. Brush with melted butter or salad oil, sprinkle with salt and pepper. Place skin side down on well-greased broiler rack, broil 2 inches from heat from 10 to 15 minutes (until brown). The flesh should flake when tried with a fork. Serve with melted butter and sliced lemon. Allow 1 small fish or  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. fish fillet for each serving.

### Broiled Halibut Steaks

**Procedure:** Let halibut thaw at room temperature until thawed enough so that steaks can be separated. Place on greased pre-

Sprinkle with salt, pepper and chopped

### Pan-broiled Fish

**Procedure:** Wash fish thoroughly and wipe with cloth. Roll in seasoned flour, corn meal

### Poached Fish (Boiled Fish)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 teaspoon butter
- 1 teaspoon chopped celery
- 1 teaspoon chopped carrot
- 1 sliced onion
- 1 peppercorn
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon vinegar
- 2 cups water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  pound fish fillet

**Procedure:** Melt butter, add vegetables and cook  $\frac{1}{2}$  minute. Add seasonings, vinegar and water. Cover and bring to boiling point. Boil 5 minutes. Wash fish, tie in cheesecloth, place in water and let simmer from 20 to 30 minutes, until fish flakes when tried with a fork. Remove from cheesecloth and drain. Serve with egg, cheese or hollandaise sauce (see Sauces for Vegetables, p. 503) or chill and flake for use in recipes for creamed or scalloped fish (see below). Yield: 1 generous serving

### Egg Sauce for Fish

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter or margarine
- 1 tablespoon flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup fish stock
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sweet or sour cream
- 2 teaspoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  hard-cooked egg
- 1 teaspoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Melt butter or margarine in small saucepan, stir in flour. When well blended, stir in the stock. Continue stirring over low heat until mixture thickens slightly. Stir in cream. Add lemon juice and hard-cooked egg white cut into pieces. Add salt, if needed. Reheat and pour over poached fish fillet. Sprinkle with sieved hard-cooked egg yolk and minced parsley.

**NOTE:** Milk may replace the cream if a less rich sauce is desired.

### Creamed Fish

#### Ingredients

- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons butter
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup top milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup flaked fish
- Nutmeg
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley or chives

*Botanical Classification*  
*Food Value*  
*Digestibility*  
*Canned Vegetables*  
*Frozen Vegetables*  
*Dehydrated or Dried Vegetables*  
*Place in the Menu*  
*Preparation and Cooking*  
*Dressings*  
*Miscellaneous Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-FIVE

# Vegetables

Under the term *vegetables* are grouped foods representing practically every part of edible plants, leaves, stems, seeds and seed pods, flowers, roots, tubers and fruits. While vegetables vary in nutritive content, in general they make an important contribution, especially because of the vitamins and the minerals that they contribute (see Chaps 8-8). This apparently is controlled by the nature of each plant. The nature of the soil in which vegetables are grown does not seem to have much bearing upon the nutritive content. However, if the soil is properly fertilized, the yield per

## BOTANICAL CLASSIFICATION

Botanically, vegetables fall into different classifications according to plant structure. However, this does not indicate in general their nutritive value.

**Leafy Vegetables** The leafy vegetables—often called green vegetables—contain less than 10 per cent of solid matter. Outstanding members of the group are spinach, cabbage, Brussels sprouts, lettuce and greens of all sorts.

any considered a root because of the need of sugar in its preparation and the way in which it is used in the menu. Kohlrabi is a combination of stem and root.

**Roots and Tubers** Vegetables which grow underground are classified as roots and tubers. Of these, beets, carrots, salsify, turnips, sweet potatoes and parsnips are true roots, while potatoes, Jerusalem artichokes and peanuts, the last used almost entirely as nuts, are tubers.

variety they give to the diet through texture, flavor, odor and color (see Chap 2).



**Baked Oysters Casino****Ingredients:**

- 1/2 oysters, in shells
- 1 tablespoon finely minced green pepper
- 1 strip bacon, finely minced
- 1/2 tablespoon lemon juice
- Dash pepper

**Procedure:** Have raw oysters opened at market. Arrange on half shells on pie plate. Sprinkle each with minced green pepper, minced bacon, lemon juice and pepper. Bake in hot oven (450° F.) about 10 minutes (until edges of oysters curl). Yield: 1 serving

**Clams, Steamed****Ingredients:**

- 1 pint clams
- 1/2 cup boiling water
- 2 tablespoons butter, melted
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice

**Procedure:** Scrub clams with brush and wash under running water until sand has been removed. Place in kettle with boiling

1 serving

**Scallops, Baked**

**Procedure:** Wash and drain 1/2 lb scallops. Roll in seasoned fine dry bread crumbs. Arrange in small, greased, shallow baking dish. Sprinkle with melted butter or with 1-inch pieces cut bacon. Bake under broiler about 4 inches from moderate heat about 10 minutes.

**Scallops, Scalloped**

**Procedure:** Follow directions for scalloped fish (p. 493), substituting 1/2 cup whole bay scallops or 1/2 cup cut sea scallops for the flaked fish.

**Shrimps en Brochette**

**Procedure:** Arrange cooked shrimps alternately with 1-inch pieces bacon on metal

**South African Rock Lobster Tails**

1. Broil 1/2 lb tails on a broiler of oiled broil-

about 1 minute for each ounce in weight should be allowed after water reboils. Drain lobster tails, drench with cold water and cut inner membrane or shell with scissors. Pull out meat with fingers. Tails may be

5 minutes. Turn, spread with butter or margarine and broil 6 to 9 minutes, depending upon size, until meat is tender when tried with a fork.

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Compare fish and meat for food value and flavor.
2. Name several types of fish that could be used when necessary to keep fat intake low.
3. Which shellfish appear most commonly on the menu? Which are chosen most often for the convalescent diet, and why?
4. Give the principles for the selection and the care of fish.
5. State the principles for cooking fish.

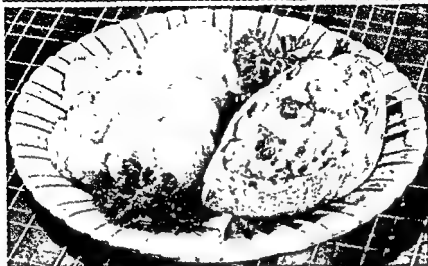


Fig 120. A vegetable plate showing a golden sweet potato or yam with delicate white cauliflower

tables are exceedingly variable, depending upon the type of vegetable and the method of cooking. Furthermore, available data are meager and difficult to evaluate. The percentage of loss may be reduced materially by cooking in little water.

In some countries, where fresh fruits are scarce and expensive. Thus, it is worthy of note that broccoli, Brussels sprouts, kale, green peppers and potatoes, all of which are grown and used in northern climates, retain more than 50 per cent of their vitamin C when properly cooked.

**Mineral Content.** The mineral content of vegetables is significant in the diet. The calcium, the phosphorus and the iron make them as a class useful contributors to the specific needs of the body for these minerals. At the same time, the alkaline residue which they leave after digestion and absorption tends to balance the acid residue of meats and cereals and thus aids in main-

taining the neutrality of the blood. Reference to Table 1, Part Four, will show that legumes—under which heading are included dried beans and peas and lentils—have particularly high mineral value. Of course, this will be reduced per serving after they have been soaked and cooked, but they are still good source. Potatoes, because they are eaten so often, make a larger contribution of minerals than would appear from composition figures.

Leafy green vegetables are naturally high in mineral content, but not all of this is available. Knowledge of the availability is at present inadequate. The utilization of the calcium depends upon the amount of oxalic acid present. While greens score well in the case of iron, it may be only partially available. When vegetables are cooked, there may be some loss of minerals in the cooking water. This is another reason why a minimum amount of water should be used and the vegetable liquor either served with the vegetable or used in a sauce or soup.

or underground stems. Onions are actually bulbs.

**Flower Vegetables.** Cauliflower and broccoli are examples of the flower type of vegetable. The tips of asparagus are flower buds. Brussels sprouts may be classified as a flower or as a leafy vegetable.

**Fruits Classed As Vegetables.** Vegetables which are essentially the fruits of the plants are tomatoes, peppers, cucum-

legumes. All are found in seed form, encased in pods. Both pods and seeds of young beans are eaten in the form of snap beans. Peas and some beans are shelled and used as green vegetables. In dried form, peas, beans and lentils are largely used and, unlike other vegetables, serve as a meat substitute because of their high protein content. Soybeans, which are high in both protein and fat, differ from other legumes. Grains which are used for flour and other cereal products are also seeds.

**Edible Fungi.** The fungi are plants characterized by an entire lack of chlorophyll, the green coloring matter which enables plants to make food from the carbon dioxide of the air. The edible varieties are commonly known as mushrooms, the inedible are popularly called toadstools, especially the injurious ones, many of which are extremely poisonous. Research work in regard to the food value of cultivated mushrooms shows

demonstrate. Green and yellow vegetables are the best sources of carotene, the provitamin A. First on such a list are dandelion greens, carrots, turnip greens, spinach, sweet potatoes, kale, beet greens, collards and mustard greens. Next in order come winter squash, broccoli, chard, lettuce, tomatoes, asparagus, green peas and string beans. (See Fig. 19, Chap. 7.) White celery and peeled cucumbers are lacking in this vitamin, but Pascal celery probably will be found to be as rich as its color would indicate, and it is already known that unpiped cucumbers supply vitamin A.

Vegetables in general are a more important source of ascorbic acid than has been recognized, as almost all contribute at least a small amount. The tomato is the most important source, not only because of its natural high content but because this is not destroyed by the canning process. Because tomatoes are used so much, they are more important in the meal plan than some other vegetables which are not eaten daily but may rate higher in ascorbic acid content. The best contributors in order of ascorbic acid content are turnip greens, green pepper, broccoli, kale, mustard greens and Brussels sprouts. Cauliflower, spinach and cabbage come next in order. Potatoes, white or sweet, while less high in vitamin C than some of the other vegetables, are used in such quantities that they add materially to the total of the day. This is also true of lettuce and other salad greens when they are used often. (See Fig. 23, Chap. 8.)

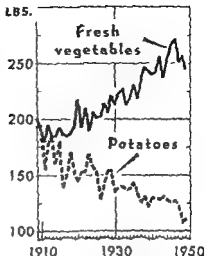
As can be seen by consulting Table 1, Part Four, and illustrations in Chapter 8, vegetables supply varying amounts of thiamine, riboflavin and niacin of the B complex group. Again, greens are high on the list as a source. Peas and potatoes also rate well. Even when amounts are small, vegetables as a class play a part in the accumulation of the daily total of the B complex.

**Vitamin Loss in Cooking.** The losses of vitamins in the cooking of vege-

## FOOD VALUE

In general, vegetables are valued more highly for their vitamin and mineral contributions than for their other nutrients. They differ greatly, however, in these respects, as a comparison of one vegetable with another through consultation with Table No. 1, Part Four, will

**Fig 121. Showing consumption of vegetables per person.** The per capita consumption of fresh vegetables, including melons, has increased about one sixth since 1909, while the consumption of commercially canned vegetables has more than doubled. On the other hand, per capita consumption of potatoes decreased about one third during the period 1909 to 1943, and sweet-potato consumption declined about one fourth.



sary low temperature. There is an increasing use of the home freezer for this purpose by those who raise their own products.

Frozen products, fresh and of good quality, prepared and packed properly for freezing, lose little of their natural food value during storage at the proper temperature.

### DEHYDRATED OR DRIED VEGETABLES

Dehydrating by some means of drying is the oldest method of preserving vegetables. Except in the case of the legumes such as peas, beans and lentils, this process had been superseded largely by canning and freezing until war demands for conservation of space in shipment created a new interest in dehydrated products. Many research projects in the interest of preserving flavor, texture and vitamins of vegetables and some fruits were undertaken with varying success. These products were known as dehydrated foods in contrast with dried beans and peas. As with the latter, it is necessary to reconstitute them by soaking in cold water for a specified time before

cooking. Instant mashed potatoes, a comparatively new product, need no soaking and only the addition of boiling water and milk to be ready for serving. They have been accepted with enthusiasm. They can be successfully prepared in family or smaller quantities.

### PLACE IN THE MENU

A well-rounded menu will have vegetables in some form at both midday and evening meals. Effort should be made to serve at least 2 vegetables besides potatoes, one of them in raw form as a salad or relish. One green or yellow vegetable is suggested for daily use. When a variety of such vegetables is not available, a double portion of any leafy green vegetable in salad form may be used.

### PREPARATION AND COOKING

Under modern conditions of growing, shipping and distributing, almost all fresh vegetables can be found in market throughout the year, regardless of season. To supplement the fresh vegetables which are shipped from the South and

Protein is to be found in the dried legumes in a quantity which qualifies them as a substitute for animal protein. However, its quality is not so high, and it is not so well utilized in the body. Soybeans are in a somewhat different classification, as their caloric value is chiefly in the form of protein and fat, and they are almost starch free. The quality of the protein is good, and its comparative value is being studied further. While the percentage value of the protein in most fresh vegetables is not high, it is enough to be considered.

**Caloric Value.** The caloric value of vegetables is generally inverse to water content. The range in value is from

as protein as well as in carbohydrate, the caloric contribution is generally supplied by the starch content, in which potatoes are particularly high. A few vegetables, notably beets and sweet potatoes, are comparatively rich in sugar. Certain young vegetables, such as peas and corn, have carbohydrate in the form of sugar which changes to starch as the vegetables mature. Available carbohydrate, which is the sum of starch, dextrin and sugar, has been determined for

case of soybeans

Almost all vegetables contain large amounts of the nondigestible forms of carbohydrate known as cellulose and hemicellulose, which are useful as bulk residue without unduly increasing the daily caloric intake

### DIGESTIBILITY

The normal person can digest vegetables easily. Tender young vegetables are often served raw as relishes or salads.

To the standard list of salad vegetables, which includes greens, tomatoes, cucumbers, celery, cabbage, onions and radishes, have now been added thinly sliced carrots, green peppers, turnups and flowerets of cauliflower. However, discretion should be used in offering a convalescent patient salads and relishes of pungent flavor.

Discretion also should be shown in serving cooked vegetables, as some

for feeding infants may be found a convenience.

### CANNED VEGETABLES

Canned vegetables provide out-of-season products which contribute practically the same food value as cooked fresh vegetables. Canning factories are distributed throughout the country in the center of producing districts. The products are picked as soon as they have reached the proper stage and are taken immediately to the factories, where they are cleaned, prepared and packed at once in cans or glass jars, which then are subjected to pressure heat. The scientific methods used for the preservation of perishable foods guarantee that the products will be safe and wholesome.

### FROZEN VEGETABLES

Quick-frozen vegetables are now widely accepted as equal or superior in food value to fresh vegetables other than those freshly picked from the garden. Ready as they are for cooking, they have proved to be a great convenience. The distribution of commercial products has widened every year as dealers became convinced that it was worth while to purchase the refrigerated equipment necessary for their storage. In large cities, stores which deal only in frozen products are increasing in numbers. Many towns offer locker facilities where green vegetables and other products may be frozen and stored at the neces-

the loss of natural flavor and texture. Some research work done at the University of Southern California showed that a very small amount of soda had no effect upon the vitamin content of peas cooked a minimum time which was shortened by the use of the soda. It is not known as yet whether or not other

vegetables react in the same manner. However, the practice of adding soda is not recommended, because both in the home and in institutions, vegetables are apt to stand for a time before being eaten, and if left over and warmed up the soda tends to increase vitamin losses and still further affect flavor and texture.

### General Rules for Cooking

1. Use only enough water to cover the bottom of the pan to a depth of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. (Exceptions to this rule are noted by an asterisk.) Spinach and other tender greens need no water.

2. Bring water to boiling point and add salt before vegetable is added.

3. Cover tightly and cook over low heat only until vegetables are tender.

4. Do not drain vegetables of mild flavor after cooking, unless the liquid is to be used in preparing a sauce.

5. Vegetables may be baked in tightly covered casseroles when the oven is being used for some other purpose. The time of cooking will be about one and a half times again as long as for boiling.

6. Variations from the general rules: whole artichokes, cauliflower and cabbage should be placed head up in utensil, and the amount of water should be increased to 1 inch. Stalks of asparagus and broccoli cook best in a large skillet. The stalks should be arranged side by side in the boiling salted water. The skillet should be covered. For corn on the cob, potatoes, parsnips and turnips, water to a depth of 1 to 2 inches will be needed, depending upon the

be used

### Timetable for Cooking

As vegetables differ in texture according to maturity, directions for cooking time can only be approximate.

Vegetable	Minutes	Vegetable	Minutes
Artichokes		Dandelion greens . . . . .	10-20
American or Jerusalem . . . . .	15-20	Eggplant . . . . .	10-15
French or Globe* . . . . .	20-30	Kohlrabi . . . . .	20-30
Asparagus* . . . . .	15-20	Mushrooms . . . . .	7-10
Beans		Okra . . . . .	20-25
String . . . . .	15-30	Onions . . . . .	20-40
Lima . . . . .	20-30	Parsnips* . . . . .	30-50
Beets . . . . .	20-60	Peas . . . . .	6-15
Beet greens . . . . .	10-20	Potatoes*	
Broccoli* . . . . .	15-25	White . . . . .	20-30
Brussels sprouts . . . . .	10-20	Sweet . . . . .	20-30
Cabbage . . . . .	5-10	Spinach . . . . .	6-10
Carrots . . . . .	15-30	Squash	
Cauliflower . . . . .	10-30	Summer . . . . .	10-20
Celery . . . . .	10-15	Winter . . . . .	20-30
Corn . . . . .	5-10	Turnips* . . . . .	15-60
Cucumbers . . . . .	10-15		

\* See General Rules for Cooking, No. 1, above

the Far West to markets thousands of miles away and the local products which are in season, there are as well the quick-frozen vegetables, the quality and the price of which are stable throughout the year. In addition, there is an ever-increasing variety of canned vegetables. With so much from which to choose there is no reason, except a dislike of certain products, why the menu should not be varied daily. Prejudices against certain vegetables may often be overcome by serving them well cooked with attractive dressings.

The care of vegetables in the home kitchen, for use in either raw or cooked form, is important. The length of time during which they will keep in good condition depends upon the type and the facilities for storage. Root crops, such as turnips, potatoes, carrots and beets, lose their ascorbic acid content slowly, and should be kept in a

such as string beans. Vegetables such as peas and Lima beans should not be shelled until just before they are to be cooked if a large loss is to be avoided. All green vegetables show less loss under refrigeration than under room temperature. Experiments show that when stored in the refrigerator salad greens, celery, young carrots, peas, radishes, parsley, broccoli, cauliflower and tomatoes should be covered, while cucumbers, green and Lima beans, eggplant and summer squash may be left uncovered.

For detailed directions for vegetables to be served raw, see the next chapter on salads and relishes.

Vegetables should be washed thoroughly to remove soil and traces of spray. Root vegetables should be scrubbed, asparagus, spinach and other greens should be washed under running water to remove sand. Vegetables such as po-

tatoes and carrots should not be pared or scraped until just before they are to be used. Peas and beans should not be shelled or corn husked until just before they are to be cooked. Outer leaves of

water to draw out insects, only a few minutes should be allowed. Soaking should be done before cutting or shredding. A larger loss of vitamins occurs when vegetables are cut in small pieces. Grated carrots, for instance, lose vitamins more quickly than the sliced vegetable.

When possible, vegetables should be cooked whole rather than sliced or shredded.

carrots demand a longer time to cook than those which have been sliced. All vegetables should be cooked as short a time as possible, as long cooking destroys vitamins and changes flavor, color and texture. Only a small amount of water should be used when vegetables are boiled. There will be a very small amount of evaporation if the utensil is tightly covered and if cooking is done over low heat. A heatproof glass pot will demonstrate this fact, although the same results are achieved by any type of saucepan when the cover really fits. The use of a pressure cooker for cooking vegetables has improved the quality of some of those served on the American table, although for many young green vegetables little time is saved, and the results are no better than when the above directions are followed in using the saucepan.

The use of baking soda in the cooking of green vegetables has been frowned upon by nutritionists, because an alkali such as soda is known to hasten destruction of the vitamins of the B complex and ascorbic acid. Good cooks also have objected to the use of soda because of

butter, with cream or with a sauce. Butter and cream are used more often with vegetables than any other dressing. Vegetables cooked in a small amount of water need not be drained. When ready to serve, add 1 or 2 tablespoons butter

serves as a garnish and is poured over the drained vegetable just before it is served. Sauces of this type may be served in a separate dish if desired.

### Flavored Butters

The butter may be melted and combined with lemon juice to taste before the vegetable is dressed. Spinach, string beans, cauliflower, broccoli, asparagus and beets may be dressed with lemon butter. Minced parsley may be added with the butter for dressing potatoes. Cut mint leaves may be used with peas. Butter may be browned slightly in a separate utensil and poured over such vegetables as cauliflower, broccoli or asparagus. A few grated dry bread crumbs may be browned in butter for dressing cauliflower, broccoli, asparagus and onions.

### Sauces

Sauces should blend or contrast in flavor with the vegetable with which they are to be served. They must be smooth and not too thick. When made

possible after preparation, but if not, it should be well beaten before being combined with the vegetable.

### Cream Sauce

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter or margarine
- 2 teaspoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk or milk and vegetable stock

**Procedure:** Melt butter or margarine in a small saucepan, stir in flour and seasonings. Stir in milk gradually and continue stirring over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. Yield 3 servings.

**NOTE:** Add extra seasoning according to vegetable. This may be minced parsley, minced chives or grated onion, finely chopped celery, grated carrot or lemon juice. For dressing potatoes or macaroni, reduce flour to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons.

### Cheese Sauce

**Procedure:** Follow directions for cream sauce. When sauce has thickened stir in 2 tablespoons grated cheese.

### Chestnut Sauce

**Procedure:** Follow directions for cream sauce. When sauce has thickened add 2 tablespoons cut roasted chestnuts.

### Quick Hollandaise Sauce

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for cream sauce. When sauce has thickened, combine 2 teaspoons lemon juice with 1 slightly beaten egg yolk and 1 tablespoon butter or margarine and stir rapidly into sauce.

### Hollandaise Sauce

#### Ingredients.

- 1 egg yolk
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice

hot, but not boiling, water, and stir vigorously until butter is melted. Add remaining butter, continue stirring until butter is melted and sauce begins to thicken. Remove from heat at once. Yield 2 servings.

**Rich Cheese Sauce**

#### Ingredients.

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup processed cheese
- 2 tablespoons cream
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika

**Procedure:** Processed cheese comes in package form under various brand names and melts easily. Combine cheese, cream and paprika in a small saucepan, stir over very



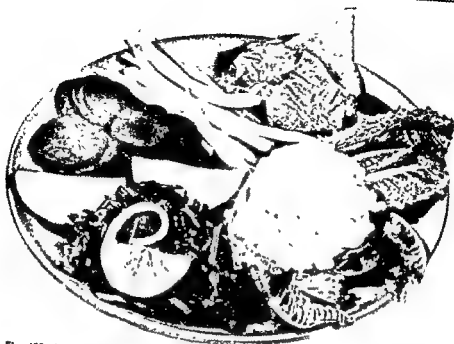


Fig 122 A vegetable plate with baked potato, hot sliced beets, beet greens garnished with lemon, carrot strips and cottage cheese.

### General Directions for Frozen Vegetables

Frozen vegetables are packed in cartons, and if not to be used within 8 hours should be placed in the freezing compartment of the refrigerator, where they will remain solidly frozen. They need not be thawed before cooking. If they have thawed, no attempts to refreeze them should be made. Quick-frozen vegetables may be cooked according to directions for other fresh vegetables. Place in boiling salted water, cover and continue cooking until tender. The time of cooking is generally a little shorter than that indicated for fresh green vegetables.

### General Directions for Canned Vegetables

As canned vegetables are already thoroughly cooked, they need only heating

and dressing to make them ready for the table. The liquid from the can may be drained and boiled 2 or 3 minutes in order to evaporate some of it. The vegetables may then be heated in this liquid. Canned tomatoes are of course an exception, as they are canned in their own juice.

### General Directions for Dried Vegetables

Dried vegetables most commonly used are beans, peas and lentils. In some localities dried mushrooms are obtainable. Most dried vegetables need to be soaked before they are cooked. Any exception to this rule will be noted on the package and the time for cooking given

### DRESSINGS

Vegetables may be dressed with melted butter, brown butter or lemon

**Spinach**

**Procedure:** Remove roots and other leaves with sharp knife, place in pan and allow water from faucet to run over leaves. Remove leaves to another pan and repeat process until no sand accumulates in the bottom of the pan. Cook in covered utensil without extra water. When tender, dress without draining or drain and reserve liquid for soup. Cooked spinach may be chopped before dressing with butter or margarine, cream or French dressing or cream sauce.

*Notes: Cooked spinach may be substituted for*

**Baked Squash**

**Procedure:** Wash, halve and seed 1 small acorn squash. Brush with butter or mar-

oven (400° F) 30 minutes until tender.  
Yield 2 servings

**Baked Tomatoes**

**Procedure:** Wash 1 medium-sized tomato and cut in half. Arrange halves in baking

1 serving

**Broiled Tomatoes****Stewed Tomatoes**

**Procedure:** Wash and peel 2 medium-sized tomatoes, cut in quarters and put in small saucepan. Add 1 slice onion and salt, pepper and sugar to taste. Cook over low heat about 10 minutes and add 1 table-

serving

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. ■ the botanical classification of vegetables an indication of food value?
2. What are the most valuable contributions vegetables make to the diet? List the vegetables in order of ascorbic acid content.
3. Discuss the losses of vitamins from vegetables due to cooking.
4. Compare the nutritive contributions of fresh, canned and frozen vegetables.
5. What care should vegetables be given in the home kitchen? In storage? In preparation for cooking?
6. Give the general rules for cooking vegetables and the reasons for the accepted method.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

by heat until cheese is melted. This recipe

when there is an allergy toward fresh milk, may replace the cream. Yield: 3 servings.

## MISCELLANEOUS RECIPES

### Creamed Mushrooms

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup ( $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.) mushrooms
- 1 tablespoon butter or margarine
- 2 teaspoons flour
- $\frac{1}{4}$  teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup top milk
- Onion salt to taste

**Procedure:** Wash mushrooms. Remove stems and slice, discarding tough ends. Peel mushrooms if necessary. Young, tender mushrooms need not be peeled. Slice caps or leave whole. Melt butter or margarine in

thickens and boils. Add onion salt. Serve on hot toast or in croustades (p. 527). Yield: 1 liberal serving or 2 small servings.

### Sautéed Mushrooms

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup ( $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.) mushrooms
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons butter or margarine
- $\frac{1}{4}$  teaspoon salt
- Pepper

**Procedure:** Prepare mushrooms according

on hot toast. One teaspoon minced onion may be cooked with the mushrooms. Yield: 1 liberal serving.

### Buttered Onions

**Procedure:** Wash and peel 4 white onions. Melt 1 tablespoon butter or margarine in small heavy saucepan, add onions, cover and cook over low heat about 20 minutes (until onions are tender). No seasoning is

needed; the flavor of the onions will be sweet and delicate. Yield: 1 serving

### Baked Potatoes

**Procedure:** Wash and scrub 1 medium-sized or large potato. Grease skin lightly with butter or other fat. Bake on rack of moderately hot oven (400° F.) from 40 to 60 minutes, until potato is soft when pressed with a towel. Remove from oven, break skin open, put a pat of butter or margarine in opening, sprinkle with paprika and serve at once. If there is to be a delay in serving it, wrap in cloth and keep in warm place.

### Baked Potatoes, Stuffed

**Procedure:** Bake potato according to direction in preceding recipe. Remove from oven,

and pile lightly in potato shell. Put in hot oven (450° F.) and bake about 10 minutes (until lightly browned). Yield: 1 serving.

### Mashed Potatoes\*

**Procedure:** Scrub 2 medium-sized or 1 large potato. Boil in salted water until tender. Drain, peel and put through ricer. Add 1 tablespoon butter or margarine and enough hot milk to give a creamy consistency. Add salt and pepper to taste, beat until fluffy and serve at once. Yield: 1 serving.

### Stewed Potatoes

#### Ingredients

- 1 tablespoon butter or margarine
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced cooked potatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup top milk
- Salt, pepper
- 1 teaspoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Melt butter or margarine in small heavy frying pan, add potatoes and

1 serving

\* Instant mashed potatoes, prepared according to directions on package, are excellent.



Fig. 123 An attractive fruit salad combination

Volume 12, Chapter 12, Page 123

shake off as much water as possible and place in a tightly covered container or a plastic bag, or wrap in a towel or sheet of cellophane or foil. Place in refrigerator in a cold place (but above freezing temperature) and allow to crisp for at least an hour. Greens will keep fresh and in good condition for a number of days under this treatment.

#### OTHER SALAD VEGETABLES

for sandwiches or used as a basis for other ingredients, they are acceptable. Shredded lettuce sandwiches usually are attractive to children and invalids for luncheon.

To prepare lettuce and other greens for serving, wash the heads in several waters, pulling the leaves apart,

Cabbage is a favorite ingredient for salad. Also, it is often used by itself and when mixed with a cooked dressing is known as cole slaw. It may be served on bright green salad leaves or garnished

*Leafy Vegetables in Salads*  
*Other Salad Vegetables*  
*Salad Combinations*  
*Salad Dressings*  
*Salads and Relishes in the Menu*  
*Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-SIX

# Salads and Relishes

The term *salad* now covers innumerable combinations of vegetables, fruits and other food materials which are served crisp and cold with a dressing.

Salads may be divided into two classes. In the first are those which act as appetizers or savories. Except for the dressing served with them, they have little fuel value but are important from the point of view of minerals and vita-

Mayonnaise should be placed on top of a mixed vegetable or a fruit salad rather than mixed with it.

The term *relish* is used to describe raw vegetables such as celery, radishes, carrot strips and others which are served without a dressing. They may replace the salad, or they may be served in addition with the soup or with the main course.

## LEAFY VEGETABLES IN SALADS

The most popular and plentiful of the salad plants is lettuce, but there are many other delicious succulent leaves which, when they can be obtained, may be used to take its place. The quality of lettuce which can be obtained all the year round in almost all sections of the country has improved enormously in the last few years, for its growing popularity has given it a greater market value. Boston and iceberg lettuce, the most plentiful, are different in flavor and in texture, and equally satisfactory to serve as salads. Romaine, escarole, Chinese cabbage, endive of two types and water cress are other greens which should be considered when they are in the market. The leaves of raw spinach and tender

nutritive value and protein content from

the main course for luncheon, but they seldom appear on the dinner table.

pitcher and combined with the salad after the tray has been taken to the patient's room, or the dressing may be mixed with the greens just before the salad is put into the bowl.

Salads made of mixed vegetables and of fruits garnished with salad greens may be served on a salad plate

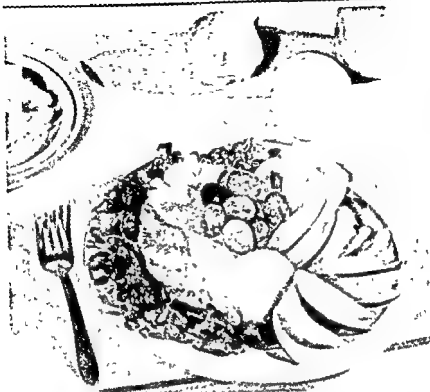


Fig 524 Fruit salad plate may be a good choice for luncheon or supper

usually liked and furnish variety and attractiveness to the patient's tray

### **SALAD DRESSINGS**

French dressing is used more often for invalids than any other kind. This is a simple combination of oil, vinegar or lemon juice and seasonings. Olive oil is considered best for the preparation of dressing, but some people do not care for its flavor. Salad oils made from corn, cottonseed, peanuts or soy have bland flavor and have better keeping qualities than olive oil. Care must be taken to keep the oil as nearly airtight as possible and in a cool place. If the bottle is clear glass, keeping it in a dark place is an added precaution against rancidity.

Rancid oil served even once by mistake may cause a patient to refuse to take salad again, and thus make it more difficult to introduce the proper amounts of fruits and vegetables into the diet. After the bottle or the can has been used, the top should be wiped carefully.

Oil is also an asset when a diet of high nutritive value is necessary. Mineral oil should not be used in a salad dressing, as it inhibits the absorption of the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E and K. Because it has no caloric value, it was often used in both French dressing and mayonnaise for the reducing diet. Salad dressing should be savory but not overseasoned with condiments, particularly for a patient. If vinegar is forbidden, lemon

cream dressing. Minced onions or chives are generally used in combination with cucumbers. To prepare, wash before placing in refrigerator. If chilled thoroughly, it is not necessary to crisp in salted water after slicing. Cucumbers may be served pared or unpared.

Tomatoes are also used as an ingredient of a mixed salad, or they may be served in sliced form with a French dressing. Sometimes the whole tomato, from which some of the pulp has been removed, is stuffed with a mixed vegetable salad. To prepare, wash and place in the refrigerator to chill, or remove

be kept wrapped or covered in refrigerator

Carrots are a favorite ingredient of a salad. Young carrots, after the removal of part of the tops, should be covered and placed in the refrigerator. They should be scraped and cut just before they are to be used.

**Other Salad Ingredients.** Finely cut sticks of yellow or white turnip, cauliflower, green pepper and American artichokes in raw form are sometimes used in mixed salads. Many leftover cooked vegetables such as carrots, string beans, peas or cauliflower may also be used. Cooked spinach mixed with a well-seasoned French dressing may be pressed into small molds, chilled in the refrigerator and served on a bed of salad greens.

**Substitutes for Salads.** Raw vegetables may be served as relishes rather than in salads. This may be desirable

when rich food must be avoided. Tender hearts of celery, crisp radishes and carrot sticks are most commonly used. Flow-ers of cauliflower, strips of turnips and young scallions may also be used if allowed.

### SALAD COMBINATIONS

The simplest and best salads which will be most used in the patient's diet are the green leaves served with a dress-

type, or water cress should appear occasionally on the tray. Cabbage, if finely cut, may also be used and should find favor because it is the cheapest green vegetable during most of the year. A variation in the garnish, a ring of green pepper or pimiento, a brightly colored radish or a piece of beet shaped attractively will suggest variety, even when the basis of the salad is the same.

**Fruit Salads.** When fruits are used for salad, care should be taken in their combination. Usually salads are more appetizing when few varieties are used in the same combination. Grapefruit and white grapes with a cherry garnish, orange and date, or grapefruit and melon are more attractive both to sight and to taste than a mixture of all of them.

**Heavier Salads.** When the heavier salads are used as main dishes for lunch or supper, cheese and eggs are recommended. Meat or fish, mixed with mayonnaise or cooked dressing, makes a combination which may be too rich for some patients. A stuffed egg, a mold of cottage or cream cheese accompanied by a mixed vegetable salad or by the green leaves alone, is usually well liked. A small amount of mayonnaise may be used as a garnish when it is allowed.

**Gelatin Salads.** Gelatin combined with tomato or fruit juices provides a means of putting extra vegetables and fruits into the diet. Gelatin salads are

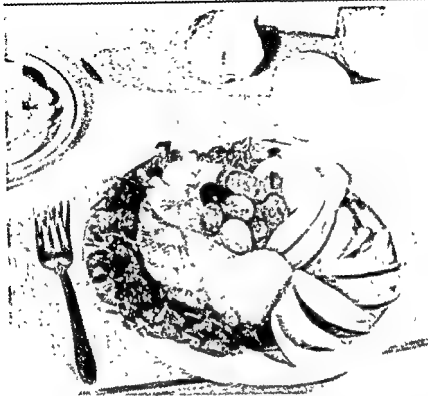


Fig. 124 Fruit salad plate may be a good choice for luncheon or supper

usually liked and furnish variety and attractiveness to the patient's tray

### **SALAD DRESSINGS**

French dressing is used more often for invalids than any other kind. This is a simple combination of oil, vinegar or lemon juice and seasonings. Olive oil is considered best for the preparation of dressing, but some people do not care for its flavor. Salad oils made from corn, cottonseed, peanuts or soy have bland flavor and have better keeping qualities than olive oil. Care must be taken to keep the oil as nearly airtight as possible and in a cool place. If the bottle is clear glass, keeping it in a dark place is an added precaution against rancidity.

Rancid oil served even once by mistake may cause a patient to refuse to take salad again, and thus make it more difficult to introduce the proper amounts of fruits and vegetables into the diet. After the bottle or the can has been used, the top should be wiped carefully.

Oil is also an asset when a diet of high nutritive value is necessary. Mineral oil should not be used in a salad dressing, as it inhibits the absorption of the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E and K. Because it has no caloric value, it was often used in both French dressing and mayonnaise for the reducing diet. Salad dressing should be savory but not overseasoned with condiments, particularly for a patient. If vinegar is forbidden, lemon



juice may be substituted for it in most dressings. If oil is forbidden or not liked, lemon juice by itself or mixed with orange juice will give a desirable flavor.

Mayonnaise, an emulsion of oil, egg yolks and acid, should usually be thinned with lemon juice rather than with vinegar. A little catsup or chili sauce added to mayonnaise may be used instead of other seasoning as a variation. It gives color as well as savor to the salad.

**Sour-Cream Dressing.** There is no dressing more useful than sour-cream dressing. Commercial sour cream sometimes labeled "salad cream," should be purchased as such, as unfavorable bacteria instead of the lactic acid type may develop in pasteurized cream kept under home conditions. Whipped sweet cream may replace sour cream if an extra amount of vinegar is added to the recipe (see p. 514).

**Cooked Dressing.** A cooked dress-

for use with fruit.

### SALADS AND RELISHES IN THE MENU

Through the use of salads and relishes, both the nutritive quality and the attractiveness of the meal can be im-

they contribute practically all their natural vitamin and mineral content.

greens there can always be variety in both flavor and appearance. If the patient prefers a mixed green salad and welcomes its appearance daily, there is no reason why it should not be served. Different dressings may be served, or

the standard French dressing may appear daily, according to the taste of the patient.

2. They should be attractive to the eye.

3. They should be simple rather than elaborate.

4. They should have a dressing which is well but moderately seasoned.

5. They should be varied either as to combination or to dressing from day to day.

### Preparation of Relishes

Celery, radishes and carrot strips are the relishes most used. Scallions, flowerets of raw cauliflower, strips of young turnip and green pepper and thin wedges of cucumber may also be used.

flavored cottage or cream cheese or with a blend of a highly flavored cheese with cream or cottage cheese.

All vegetables should be washed carefully and trimmed. Carrots should be scraped before being sliced into thin strips. Although it is customary to soak these vegetables for half an hour or more in salted water, some of the nutrients may be lost. This will also be the case when they are allowed to stand after they have been prepared. Vegetables to be served as relishes should preferably be prepared just before they

relishes are more appetizing when chilled, there may be a good reason for preparing them an hour or two before serving. A salt shaker on the invalid's tray should accompany relishes.

## RECIPES FOR SALADS

## Vegetable Salads

## Mixed Green Salad

**Procedure:** Crisp lettuce, romaine or other salad greens may be combined with any raw vegetable such as sliced cucumbers, radishes, sliced onions, shredded carrots, cabbage, green pepper or sliced skinned tomatoes. The ingredients must all be crisp and cold and tossed with French dressing just before they are served. For preparation of cucumbers and tomatoes see cucumber salad and tomato salad on this page.

## Mixed Vegetable Salad

**Procedure:** Cooked vegetables such as diced beets, peas, Lima beans and shredded string beans may be combined with a small amount of shredded raw carrots or diced celery and well-seasoned French dressing. Minced onions or chives may be added if desired. Serve in lettuce cup with mayonnaise on the side. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup mixed vegetables for 1 serving.

## Potato Salad

**Procedure:** Mix  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold diced potatoes with  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced celery, 1 teaspoon minced onion and 1 tablespoon French dressing. Just before serving add 1 tablespoon mayonnaise or cooked salad dressing. Serve on lettuce and garnish with minced parsley or green pepper. Yield: 1 serving.

## Tomato Salad

**Procedure:** Scald tomato 1 minute in boiling water. Drench with cold water and drain. Peel and slice or cut into eighths, dress with French dressing. Add sliced onion, diced celery or sliced cucumber if desired. Serve on bed of lettuce with mayonnaise on the side. Yield: 1 serving.

Small skinned tomatoes may be cut in quarters and almost to stem end and arranged on lettuce. The tomato cup may be filled with mixed vegetable, chicken or fish salad.

A slice may be removed from the stem end and the center pulp removed, in which case fill center with any fish, meat or vegetable salad. Serve on lettuce and garnish with mayonnaise.

## Asparagus Salad

**Procedure:** Arrange drained and chilled cooked or canned asparagus on bed of lettuce or romaine. Sprinkle with French dressing and garnish with strips of pimiento. Grated cheese may be sprinkled over the asparagus if desired. Allow from 4 to 6 asparagus stalks for 1 serving.

## Cabbage Salad

**Procedure:** Mix shredded cabbage with French dressing, cooked salad dressing, sour-cream dressing or mayonnaise. Add minced onion, green pepper or pimiento to the salad or use as a garnish. Serve in lettuce cup or on other salad greens. Allow 1 cup shredded cabbage for 1 serving.

## Cucumber Salad

**Procedure:** Wash and chill cucumbers. Pare and slice. If cucumbers have not been chilled, they may be placed in salted ice water for about 15 minutes after being sliced, and then drained. Dress with French dressing or sour-cream dressing, add minced onions, scallions or chives if desired. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  cucumber for 1 serving.

## Jellied Vegetable Salad

## Ingredients

- 1 teaspoon granulated gelatin
- 1 tablespoon cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- 2 teaspoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice or mild vinegar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup finely diced celery
- 2 teaspoons chopped green pepper

small molds. Chill until set. Unmold on salad plate and garnish with lettuce or other salad greens. Serve mayonnaise on the side. Yield: 2 servings.

**NOTE:** Shredded cabbage may replace part or all of the celery.

## Cheese and Egg Salads

## Cottage Cheese Salad

**Procedure:** Mix  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cottage cheese with 1 teaspoon minced onion or chives and 1

teaspoon minced parsley. If dry cheese is used, moisten with cream. Pack in a small buttered custard cup and chill for half an hour. Unmold and serve with water cress or shredded lettuce. Serve with French dressing. Yield: 1 serving

### Cream Cheese Salad

Procedure: Soften cream cheese with fork. Add a small amount of cream if necessary. Form cheese into balls and roll in minced parsley or paprika. Serve on bed of water cress and sprinkle with French dressing. The cheese may be flavored with minced chives or minced onion if desired. Allow from 1 to 2 ozs cheese for 1 serving.

### Stuffed Egg Salad

Procedure: Follow directions for stuffed eggs (p. 451). Serve on lettuce and garnish with mayonnaise

## Fruit Salads

### Apple and Celery Salad

Procedure: Pare, core and dice  $\frac{1}{2}$  medium-sized apple, combine with an equal amount of diced celery and enough mayonnaise to moisten. Serve in a lettuce cup and garnish with mayonnaise and with 2 or 3 pecans or walnut halves. Yield: 1 serving

### Fresh Fruit Plate

Procedure: Arrange alternately berries in season, sliced pineapple, sliced melon or sections of grapefruit or orange round edge of plate and sprinkle with French dressing. In the center place lettuce cup containing mayonnaise. Cream cheese balls may be used as a garnish. Serve as main luncheon dish.

### Grapefruit and Orange Salad

Procedure: Arrange alternate sections of grapefruit and orange on leaf of lettuce or romaine. Sprinkle with French dressing and garnish with sliced ripe olives or green pepper. Allow 3 sections each of grapefruit and orange for 1 serving. Sliced pared avocado may replace the orange or the grapefruit

### Melon Salad

Procedure: Cut peeled cantaloupe, honeydew or watermelon into balls or cubes. One

cup of melon balls and 1 cup of grapes or 8 to 10 balls for 1 serving.

### Jellied Fruit Salad

Procedure: Follow directions for jellied

### Mixed Fruit Salad

Procedure: Almost any combination of mixed fresh or canned fruits may be used

used as ingredients for fruit salads. Generally, not more than 3 or 4 fruits are combined. The fruit should be chilled and combined just before it is to be served. Arrange fruit on lettuce, sprinkle with French dressing and garnish with mayonnaise or cooked fruit salad dressing. Allow about  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup mixed fruit for 1 serving

## Meat and Fish Salads

### Chicken Salad

Procedure: Combine  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced cooked chicken with an equal amount of diced

olives or with sliced hard-cooked egg. Cooked pork or veal may replace the chicken. Yield: 1 serving

### Crabmeat Salad

Procedure: Follow preceding directions for chicken salad, substituting baked fresh or canned crabmeat for chicken. A teaspoon minced onion may be added if desired.

### Shrimp Salad

Procedure: Cooked, fresh or canned shrimps may be used. Remove black vein. Arrange on lettuce, sprinkle with French dressing and serve Russian dressing on the side. Allow from 4 to 6 shrimps for 1 serving.

## RECIPES FOR SALAD DRESSINGS

Recipes are given in family quantities as they can be stored in refrigerator. They may be halved if desired

### Cooked Salad Dressings

#### Cooked Fruit Salad Dressing

##### Ingredients

- 2 egg yolks
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  - - - - -

#### Cooked Salad Dressing

##### Ingredients

- 2 teaspoons salt
- 1 teaspoon dry mustard
- 4 teaspoons sugar
- Dash cayenne
- 2 tablespoons flour
- 2 eggs or 4 egg yolks, slightly beaten
- 1 cup scalded milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vinegar

Procedure: Mix dry ingredients in small saucepan or in top of double boiler. Add slightly beaten eggs or yolks, stir in milk and vinegar. Stir over low heat or over hot water until mixture thickens. Chill and, when ready to serve, thin with sour cream. Store in covered jar in refrigerator. Yield: About  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups

### French Dressings

#### Basic French Dressing

##### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon dry mustard
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil
- 2 tablespoons mild vinegar

Procedure: Mix - - - - -

allowed. Yield,  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup

#### Chiffonade Dressing

Procedure: Add 1 teaspoon each minced

#### Fruit French Dressing

##### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil
- 2 tablespoons orange juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  - - - - -

just before serving. Yield: About  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup.

#### Roquefort Dressing

Procedure: Add crumbled Roquefort cheese to French dressing

### Mayonnaise

#### Mayonnaise

##### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon dry mustard
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon sugar
- 1 egg yolk
- 2 tablespoons lemon juice or vinegar
- 1 cup salad oil

Procedure: Mix mustard, salt and sugar, add egg yolk and mix well. Stir in 1 teaspoon lemon juice or vinegar, add oil gradually drop by drop at first while beating with

initially 2-3 cups

NOTE: Commercial mayonnaise may be varied by the addition of lemon juice, or vinegar and savory seasonings

#### Russian Dressing

Procedure: Combine mayonnaise with an equal amount of chili sauce. Minced

chopped onion and minced chopped green pepper may be added.

### Other Dressings

#### Bacon Dressing

Ingredients:

1 strip bacon

1 teaspoon sugar

2 tablespoons vinegar

Procedure: Cut bacon in 1-inch squares

lettuce, shredded cabbage, young spinach

leaves or other salad green Yield: 1 serving.

#### Sour-Cream Dressing

Ingredients:

1 teaspoon salt

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup sour cream

Vinegar to taste

Procedure: Mix seasonings, add cream and

beat well. Add vinegar. Whipped sweet cream may be used if extra vinegar is added. One teaspoon minced onion or chives may be added. Yield: About  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup

### STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Salads as now served may be divided into 2 classes. What are these classes?

2. Probably the most popular and the most plentiful salad plant is lettuce. Name some other salad plants.

3. It has been the custom to discard the outer green leaves of salad plants. Why should these leaves be used?

4. When fruits are used for salad, care should be taken in their combination. Why?

5. Plan a luncheon featuring an appropriate salad as a main dish.

6. Plan a luncheon or a supper using an appropriate salad as an accessory to a main dish.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

*Ready-To-Use Soups*  
*Clear Soups*  
*Unthickened Milk Soups*  
*Cream Soups*

## CHAPTER FORTY-SEVEN

# Soups

Soup, which in the normal diet is often considered an accessory to the meal, may have a more important place in the diet of the ill and the convalescent. A liquid diet will be ordered by the physician for a short or a long period when a patient is unable to handle solid food, or when appetite for any type of food may be completely lacking and the patient may be more easily persuaded to take nutritious food in liquid form. A soup made with milk may carry a worth-while amount of important nutrients. A hot clear soup, while contributing little nutritively, is sometimes "comforting to the stomach" and may serve to stimulate digestive secretion and thereby create a desire for other food. For this reason, a clear soup makes a good beginning for lunch or dinner, even after the patient has begun to take food in meal form. In cases where a high caloric diet is part of the treatment, a cream soup, or at least one made with milk, may be preferred at the beginning of the meal.

### READY-TO-USE SOUPS

The nurse, who will have many duties to perform for her patient besides that of preparing an appetizing tray for each meal, will often take advantage of the variety of canned and frozen soups

of excellent quality and flavor which are now available. The bouillon cubes and powders with a meatlike flavor and the condensed meat extract may also be useful on occasions when a quickly prepared hot liquid is desirable. Higher in food value are the dehydrated vegetable soups, which may have a place on the menu when the patient has returned to normal diet.

Both canned and dehydrated vegetable soups may be diluted with milk, both to increase food value and to improve flavor. In the beginning of convalescence, a comparatively large amount of milk should be used when the patient does not care for the normal amount of seasoning. Cream may be used for dilution if it is desirable to increase the calories. Tomato juice, hot or cold, with or without extra seasoning, can serve as a quick and easy soup. A combination of tomato and clam juice may be purchased already mixed, or the products may be bought separately and combined. Chicken consommé may also be combined with either of the above-mentioned products.

### CLEAR SOUPS

Clear soups are prepared from both meat and poultry. Directions and recipes for these will be found in Chapter

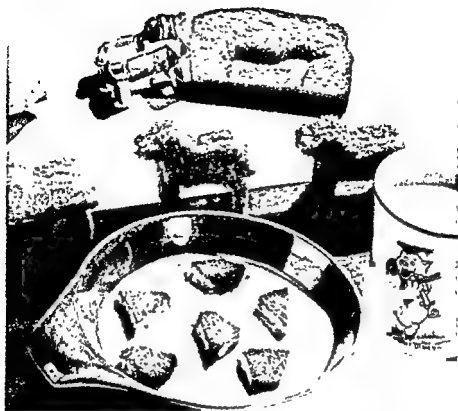


Fig. 125. An attractive tray for the sick child—soup and sandwiches cut in animal shapes.

**43, Meats.** Clams furnish the one fish product used for broth which may also be called a clear soup. A combination of chicken stock and clam broth is particularly good.

#### Clam Broth

##### Ingredients:

- 6-10 clams in shell
- 1 cup water
- Dash salt
- Paprika

**Procedure:** Choose chowder clams, if possi-

to settle, strain, reheat, add salt and paprika to taste, and serve hot. Yield: 1 serving.

Clam broth may be served hot or cold with 1 heaping teaspoon whipped cream into which a little salt and paprika have been beaten.

#### Consommé Bellevue

##### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup chicken stock

cream. Yield: 1 serving.

#### UNTHICKENED MILK SOUPS CHOWDERS AND STEWS

**Basic Recipe for Soups with a Milk Base.** Soups with a milk base

opened. The clams may be served at once in the shell or in any other way. Allow broth

are used largely in the patient's diet. Among these an oyster stew is popular. Well-seasoned, finely cut or puréed cooked vegetables may be combined with milk and cream, with milk and chicken or other white stock, without the addition of any thickening. When several vegetables are used, or when fish and vegetables are combined, soups of this type are known as chowders. Unthickened soups may be useful when there is an allergy to wheat.

### Celery Soup

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup diced celery
- 2 slices onion
- ½ cup water
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup top milk
- Dash pepper
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Combine celery, onion, water and salt, cover and cook over low heat until celery is tender (about 5 minutes). Heat milk and bring almost to boiling. Combine with celery-onion mixture. Add more seasoning if necessary and serve garnished with minced parsley. Yield: 1 serving.

### Potato Soup

#### Ingredients:

- 1 medium-sized potato
- 2 slices onion
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup milk
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley
- Dash pepper

**Procedure:** Pare and dice potato, add enough water to cover, then onion and salt. Cover and cook until potato is tender. Strain and force through a sieve. Heat milk, combine with potato and stir over low heat until very hot. Add butter, parsley and pepper, heat well. Add more salt if necessary. Yield: 1 serving.

**Note:** Instant mashed potatoes may be used, according to directions on package.

### Vegetable Chowder with Milk

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter
- ½ cup diced vegetables (potato, celery, carrots, peas)

2 slices onion

½ cup water

½ cup milk

Salt

Pepper

**Procedure:** Melt butter, add vegetables, cook 2 minutes, stirring constantly. Add water, cover and cook about 10 minutes (until vegetables are tender). Add milk, season to taste with salt and pepper and reheat. Yield: 2 servings.

### Oyster Stew

#### Ingredients:

- 4-6 oysters
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 cup milk
- ½ teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- Dash paprika

**Procedure:** Look over oysters to remove any pieces of shell which may be present. Melt butter, add drained oysters and cook 2 minutes until edges curl. Add remaining ingredients and cook over low heat until milk is thoroughly heated. Stir occasionally during cooking. Yield: 1 serving.

## CREAM SOUPS

A combination of thin cream sauce with a purée of vegetable or fish, or with a rich stock which is usually chicken or veal, is known as a cream soup or a bisque. If a soup of this type is not thickened, it may "separate," leaving melted fat on the top, which is unattractive. Cream sauce is used to "bind" the materials and to make a smooth, creamy soup. A general rule is to use one half as much vegetable or fish pulp as cream sauce. As it is impossible to make cream sauce in a very small quantity, each of the recipes which follow will furnish 1 generous serving, which may be used to provide a goodly part of the meal, or 2 servings when soup is to be served as a first course.

Often the choice of cream soups will be made when leftover cooked vegetables are on hand. As they will need further cooking to make them soft enough to go through a sieve, the direc-





Fig. 126. A milk vegetable soup with parsley garnish.

tions which follow for the preparation of vegetable purée may be used for both raw and cooked vegetables. Puréed vegetables may be purchased in canned form. While both vegetables and the

should be added if necessary, consistency of the soup is thicker than cream, a little more milk should be added and the soup reheated. For high caloric soup, one half the milk in the recipe for basic cream sauce may be replaced by cream, or extra butter may be added just before serving. With highly flavored vegetables, undiluted evaporated milk or a double amount of powdered milk when reconstituted with water may be used to increase both caloric and protein content.

**Purées.** Cream soups are sometimes called purées. The fish or vegetables used in their preparation are forced through a very fine sieve in order to produce a particularly smooth soup.

**Bisques.** The term bisque is generally used for cream soup made from

shellfish, or it is sometimes applied to a vegetable cream soup. Sometimes the shellfish are chopped rather than pressed through a purée sieve.

### Basic Cream Sauce for Soup

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter
- 2 teaspoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Procedure:** Melt butter in small saucepan, stir in flour and seasonings. Stir in milk gradually and continue stirring over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. If there is an allergy to wheat, 1 teaspoon cornstarch may replace 2 teaspoons flour. Yield Approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sauce.

### Fresh Vegetable Purée for Cream Soups

**Procedure:** Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup finely diced vegetables, such as celery, carrots or asparagus,  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced beets, potatoes, onions, or cut or canned corn, 1 cup fresh or canned peas, 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups spinach or lettuce leaves in flavor 1 portion of cream soup. Place vegetables in small saucepan, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water,  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt and a dash sugar. Add 1 or 2

slices onion if allowed. Cover and cook over low heat until vegetables are tender and force through sieve or ricer.

### Canned Vegetable Purée

**Procedure:** Drain vegetable, combine  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced vegetable with  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup liquid from can. Follow preceding directions or use canned strained vegetables (baby food).

### General Recipe for Cream Soup

**Ingredients:**

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup vegetable purée

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup basic cream sauce

Seasonings

**Procedure:** Prepare purée. Make cream sauce, add purée and boil well. Add more

salt and pepper to taste and other seasonings. Add according to suggestions given below and reheat. Cream soups may be garnished with 1 tablespoon whipped cream sprinkled with paprika. Yield: 1 serving.

### Cream of Asparagus Soup

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Add a few drops lemon juice and garnish with cooked asparagus tips.

### Cream of Celery Soup

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. If desired, the celery may be finely chopped instead of being forced through a sieve. Garnish with minced parsley, water cress, chives or grated raw carrot.

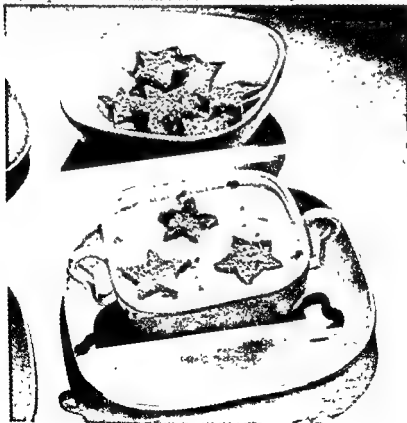


Fig. 127. Cream soup with star-shaped crackers.

**Cream of Corn Soup**

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Use fresh grated corn or canned corn, cream style.

To make purée: use milk instead of water and cook 10 minutes in the top of a double boiler. The purée may be unstrained if it is so desired. Garnish with strips of pimiento.

**Cream of Mushroom Soup**

**Ingredients:**

- 1/2 cup sliced mushrooms
- 1/2 cup water
- 2 tablespoons butter
- 2 teaspoons flour
- 1/2 teaspoon salt
- Dash pepper
- 1/2 cup milk

**Procedure:** Wash and stem mushrooms. *Summer stems in water until tender.* Cut

milk slowly, stirring constantly over low heat until soup thickens and boils. Add mushrooms and more salt if desired. If desired, a teaspoon minced onion may be cooked in the butter with the mushrooms. Yield 1 serving.

**Cream of Onion Soup**

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Garnish with minced parsley, grated cheese or minced roasted chestnuts.

**Cream of Pea Soup**

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Add sugar and nutmeg to taste and garnish with paprika or minced cooked bacon.

**Cream of Potato Soup**

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Garnish with minced parsley, chives or water cress.

**Cream of Spinach Soup**

**Procedure:** Follow general recipe for cream soup. Add sugar, nutmeg and a few drops lemon juice.

**Cream of Tomato Soup**

**Ingredients:**

- 1/2 cup canned tomatoes
- 1/2 bay leaf
- 2 cloves
- 1/2 teaspoon sugar
- 1/2 teaspoon celery salt
- 1 sliced onion
- Speck baking soda
- Dash pepper
- Basic cream sauce (p. 518)

**Procedure:** Combine tomatoes, bay leaf, spices, seasonings and onion. Bring to boiling point and cook 5 minutes over low heat. Add baking soda and strain into cream sauce. Mix thoroughly and add more salt and pepper to taste. Reheat and garnish with whipped cream. Yield 1 serving.

**Oyster Bisque**

**Ingredients:**

- 6 oysters
- 1/2 cup milk
- 1/2 slice onion
- 1 sprig parsley
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 2 teaspoons flour
- 1/2 teaspoon salt
- Pepper

**Procedure:** Pick over oysters, drain and chop. Combine chopped oysters and drained liquor, and bring to boiling. Press oysters and liquor through a sieve. Scald milk with onion and parsley and strain. Melt butter, stir in flour, salt and pepper, and when well blended add strained milk slowly, stirring constantly over low heat until mixture thickens and boils. Add oysters and more salt if necessary. Reheat and garnish with minced parsley or paprika. Yield 1 serving.

**Clam Bisque**

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for oyster bisque, substituting clams for oysters.

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Why may soup have an important place in the diet of the convalescent? Compare the contributions of a clear and a milk soup.

2. Distinguish between milk soups, chowders and stews

3. Define a *cream soup*. What other terms are also used to describe cream soups?

4. Plan a luncheon or a supper using a clear soup and other dishes appropriate for serving with this type of soup

5. Plan a luncheon or a supper which includes a cream soup

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

*Grain for Bread*  
*Commercial Versus Homemade Yeast Breads*  
*Yeast-Bread Standards*  
*Yeast in Bread-Making*  
*Quick Breads*  
*Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-EIGHT

# Breads, Batters and Doughs

Primitive man, perhaps in a lean season when animal food was scarce, added to the wild fruits which were his first source of vegetable food the wild grains that grew on the plain. Soon a primitive mill, made from two stones, ground them. They were then mixed with water and baked between the hot stones which he had learned to use as an oven after the discovery of the use of fire for cooking.

The first use of yeast as a leavening

of such importance in the story

of bread-making. Later, when all the arts, including cookery, lapsed, yeast bread remained a staple food. Much of it was very coarse, and even the lord and the lady of the manor had white bread only on special occasions.

After the Renaissance, better grains and methods of milling were introduced. Yeast was the only leavening known until comparatively modern times. The "quick" breads, often known as "hot" breads, are seldom used to any extent in any country except the United States. Corn, or maize, was the only grain indigenous to this country, and it was prepared at first by mixing with water and baking in primitive fashion. Eventually, a form of leavening known as pearl-ash, a by-product of wood ashes, came into use. This was followed by commercial baking soda or saleratus, and later by baking powder. It was not until after the invention of the kitchen range a century or so ago that quick breads, in the modern sense, became a factor in the menu.

opened a fine bread, and according to history the Roman bakeries of later date were owned by Greeks.

The Romans introduced grains ap-

Although bread is not quite so important a feature of the diet at the present time, when such a variety of foods is available, it remains a staple and is served in some form in most households.

## COMPARISON OF WHITE, ENRICHED AND WHOLE-WHEAT FLOUR

Percent of recommended allowance  
in 100 grams of flour

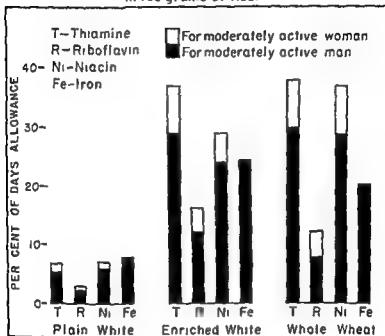


Figure 128

at all three meals of the day. The yeast loaf is the standard choice

### GRAIN FOR BREAD

Various types of ground grain, called flour, are used for bread. The experience of the ages has taught that wheat furnishes the most satisfactory flour for fine-quality bread. In the United States it is the only grain used to any great extent. Because of the large amount of gluten which wheat contains and which "develops" through kneading, wheat is ideal for a yeast bread. It is equally good for the baking-powder

breads which are not kneaded. For these reasons wheat is considered the most important of the bread cereals in this country. In some European countries rye and barley are used largely. Rice is not used in bread-making, although it is used to a larger extent than any other grain in the world, as half the world's population use rice as their staple food.

**Whole and Milled Grains** In preparing cereals for bread-making the primitive machinery of our early ancestors merely crushed the grain. Later, the coarsest of the bran was removed.

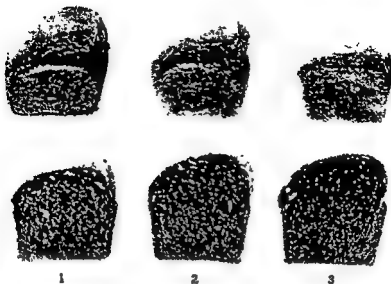


Fig. 129. Loaves of bread showing effect of milk on texture and appearance. Loaf 1 was made with water, Loaf 2 with whole skimmed milk, Loaf 3 with powdered milk. Note the improvement in the general appearance of the whole loaf and the better texture in 2 and 3. This is due to the use of milk. Milk has the further advantage of increasing the nutritive value of the bread. (University of Illinois)

The modern roller-milling of wheat is a more complicated process, particularly designed to produce a pure white flour. Such flour contains none of the bran or germ and represents 70 per cent or less of the wheat kernel. The germ and the

as whole-grain flour or manufactured into whole-grain or "bran" cereals. The taste, the appearance and the keeping quality of white flour and products made from it are largely responsible for the predominating use of this type of flour in this country.

In an effort to improve the nutritive value of the white loaf, which has become the bread of choice, a program

for restoring flour and bread to nearly whole-grain value was initiated during World War II through the concerted efforts of nutritionists and the milling industry. Bread flour and all-purpose flour were enriched according to Federal specifications. Legislation was passed which made it obligatory for all bread made by commercial bakeries to be enriched for the duration of the war. In the following years, legislation has made enrichment mandatory in more than half of our states. In addition, a corn- and rice-enrichment program has been initiated in the Southern states (see Chap. 2).

Commercial bread may be enriched by the addition of minerals and vitamins or by the use of enriched flour. A study of the chart "Comparison of

White Enriched and Whole-Wheat Flour" shows the great improvement in nutritive value accomplished by the addition of thiamine, riboflavin, niacin and iron to white flour. This enrichment puts it about on a par so far as these factors are concerned with whole-wheat flour.

Several large baking companies are now offering loaves with higher protein, mineral and vitamin content as indicated on the labels.

### YEAST-BREAD STANDARDS

The United States Department of Agriculture has devised certain standards to which not only the homemade loaf but also the commercial product should conform in most respects. Because of the present custom of wrapping bakery bread, the crust is softer than that of a homemade or an unwrapped loaf. There has been a trend toward a softer crumb than that supplied by a homemade loaf. French and Italian bread, and other typical foreign breads which have a crisp crust, are not wrapped. As these breads generally are made with water rather than with milk, and as no shortening is used, the nutritive contribution may be less than that of the standard loaf. Further, they become stale more quickly. However, they are chosen by some because of their special flavor and crisp crust. Special types of loaves made with eggs, extra shortening and sometimes sweetened with honey, have been offered to meet the demand for what is considered a homemade type of loaf. They are sold at a higher price and have a limited but growing distribution. Many of the large commercial bakers offer loaves of rye, gluten, whole wheat and sometimes cracked wheat and oat.

Early was used for bread made in home kitchens, has been generally superseded by dry, granular yeast. This is

purchase. The type of granular yeast now on the market has a quicker action than that formerly offered, and results are as good as when the compressed product was used. In whatever form yeast is used, it contains millions of living organisms which reproduce rapidly when given food in the form of sugar (or starch, which is convertible into sugar), a suitable temperature and moisture. The generally available yeasts on the market are pure and begin to act when provided with the above necessities. Much more consistent results are obtainable when the present standardized yeasts are used than when our grandmothers made yeast at home by allowing the wild yeast plants to ferment potato water or flour and water.

### RECIPES USING YEAST BREAD AS A FOUNDATION

Sliced bread is often used for toast and may be thick or thin according to preference. For Melba toast, thinly sliced bread must be used. For croutons, either thick or thin bread may be used. For sandwiches of the luncheon or picnic type, thick slices are usually preferred, while for tea sandwiches the thinner slices are desirable. Bread crumbs, both soft and dry, are used as a topping or a coating for other foods. They are also used to make a stuffing for fowl and other meats.

### TOAST RECIPES

#### Toast

Procedure: The crusts may be trimmed if desired before toasting in the broiling oven.

### YEAST IN BREAD-MAKING

Compressed yeast, which custom-





Fig. 129. Slices of bread showing effect of milk on texture and appearance. Loaf 1 was made with water, Loaf 2 with whole skimmed milk, Loaf 3 with powdered milk. Note the improvement in the general appearance of the whole loaf and the better texture in 2 and 3. This is due to the use of milk. Milk has the further advantage of increasing the nutritive value of the bread. (University of Illinois)

The modern roller-milling of wheat is a more complicated process, particularly designed to produce a pure white flour. Such flour contains none of the bran or

as whole-grain flour or manufactured into whole-grain or "bran" cereals. The taste, the appearance and the keeping quality of white flour and products made from it are largely responsible for the predominating use of this type of flour in this country.

In an effort to improve the nutritive value of the white loaf, which has become the bread of choice, a program

for restoring flour and bread to nearly whole-grain value was initiated during World War II through the concerted efforts of nutritionists and the milling industry. Bread flour and all-purpose flour were enriched according to Federal specifications. Legislation was passed which made it obligatory for all bread made by commercial bakeries to be enriched for the duration of the war. In the following years, legislation has made enrichment mandatory in more than half of our states. In addition, a corn- and rice-enrichment program has been initiated in the Southern states (see Chap. 2).

Commercial bread may be enriched by the addition of minerals and vitamins or by the use of enriched flour. A study of the chart "Comparison of

**Cheese Toast**

**Procedure** Follow preceding directions for cream toast. After sauce has thickened, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup grated cheese, stir until melted and pour over toast.

**Cream Tomato Toast**

**Procedure.** Follow directions for Cream Toast, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup tomato juice or  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup condensed tomato soup for  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk.

**Cinnamon Toast**

**Procedure:** Sprinkle hot buttered toast with mixed sugar and cinnamon. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon and 1 tablespoon sugar for each slice of toast.

**Special Cinnamon Toast**

**Ingredients**

- 2 slices bread
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon

**Procedure.** Trim crust from sliced bread, cream butter, sugar and cinnamon. Spread on bread and cut in finger lengths. Bake in moderate oven ( $350^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) from 10 to 12 minutes (until slightly brown). Yield, 1 serving.

**CROUTONS**

**Procedure:** Remove crusts evenly with a long, sharp knife from sliced bread, reserve crusts for dry crumbs. Cut bread into cubes or fancy shapes and bake in a moderate oven ( $325^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or brown lightly in butter in a small frying pan. Stir occasionally with either method.

**CROUSTADES**

**Procedure** Cut a slice of bread  $2 \times 3$  inches from loaf. Trim crust evenly and remove enough crumb from center to form a box. Brush with melted butter and bake in moderately hot oven ( $400^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) until brown and crisp.

**TOAST WATER**

**Ingredients:**

- 3 slices Melba toast
- 1 cup boiling water
- Salt

**Procedure** Break toast into small pieces and pour boiling water over it. Let stand for 1 hour, strain, add salt and serve hot or

cold. If desired, a teaspoon of wine or cream and sugar to taste may be added. Toast water is usually given, however, to postoperative or very sick patients who can take only the slightest amount of nutriment, and it is therefore usually served plain. Yield, 1 serving.

Toasted crackers may be used in place of Melba toast.

**PREPARATION OF CRUMBS****Fine Dry Crumbs**

**Procedure.** Dry crusts or bread slices in slow oven until crisp enough to roll. Place on towel, fold over and crush with rolling pin.

**Soft Crumbs**

**Procedure** Use bread 1 day old or more, but not dried out. Rub slices together or grate, discarding crusts. Three slices of bread  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick will make about 1 cup crumbs.

**SANDWICHES****General Directions**

When a sandwich is to serve as the main luncheon dish, sliced bread or bread cut  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick may be used. For dainty sandwiches to serve with salads or with tea, thinly sliced bread should be used. Canapés, which are merely open sandwiches, usually garnished attractively, may replace the thin filled sandwiches. If loaf bread is used, a long thin knife, preferably with a saw edge, should be chosen and kept absolutely vertical while the loaf is cut, in order that slices may be of even thickness. Bread a day old will slice more easily than fresh bread. Unless sandwiches are to be toasted, the bread should not be purchased more than a day ahead. Butter should be allowed to soften at room temperature, but should not be melted. If not quite soft enough to spread, it may be worked with a stiff knife with a rounded end until the desired consistency is reached.

The crusts are often removed from the bread for luncheon, supper and tea.

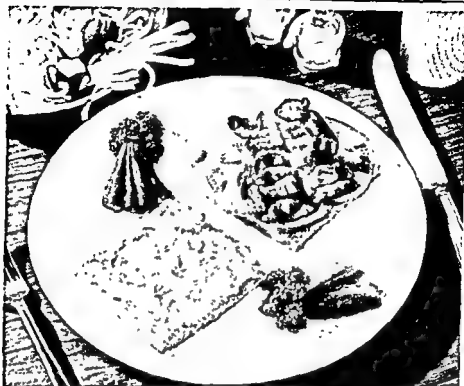


Fig 130. Open-face sandwiches, cottage cheese, bacon and tomato.

of the gas or the electric stove, or in the electric toaster. The latter may be used in

tered as soon as it is made. Buttered toast should never be put under the heat of the broiler. If it cannot be served immediately, it may be kept warm by the retained heat of the broiling oven after the heat has been turned off. Toast made in the kitchen should be wrapped in a napkin to keep it as hot as possible.

Melba toast is made from thinly sliced bread and should be baked in a very slow oven (250° F) until golden brown. It may be served hot or cold, and is often ordered for the invalid diet.

### Milk Toast

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup milk
- Salt to taste
- 2 slices buttered toast

Procedure. Heat milk in double boiler, add salt. Serve in heated pitcher with toast arranged in a hot cereal bowl. Pour milk over 1 slice of toast at a time when serving. Cream may be substituted for half the milk.

Yield. 1 serving

### Cream Toast

#### Ingredients:

- 1 tablespoon butter
- 1 tablespoon flour
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 cup milk
- 2 slices buttered toast

Procedure: Melt butter in a small saucepan, stir in flour and salt, stir in milk gradually and continue stirring over low heat until sauce thickens and boils. Pour at once over buttered toast. Garnish with minced parsley or paprika.

Yield. 1 serving

**Cheese Toast**

Procedure. Follow preceding directions for cream toast. After sauce has thickened, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup grated cheese, stir until melted and pour over toast.

**Cream Tomato Toast**

Procedure. Follow directions for Cream Toast, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup tomato juice or  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup condensed tomato soup for  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk.

**Cinnamon Toast**

Procedure. Sprinkle hot buttered toast with mixed sugar and cinnamon. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon and 1 tablespoon sugar for each slice of toast.

**Special Cinnamon Toast****Ingredients**

- 2 slices bread
- 1 tablespoon butter
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon

Procedure. Trim crust from sliced bread, cream butter, sugar and cinnamon. Spread on bread and cut in finger lengths. Bake in moderate oven ( $350^{\circ}$  F.) from 10 to 12 minutes (until slightly brown). Yield 1 serving.

**Croulons**

Procedure. Remove crusts evenly with a long, sharp knife from sliced bread, reserve crusts for dry crumbs. Cut bread into cubes or fancy shapes and bake in a moderate oven ( $325^{\circ}$  F.) or brown lightly in butter in a small frying pan. Stir occasionally with either method.

**Croustades**

Procedure. Cut a slice of bread 2 x 3 inches from loaf. Trim crust evenly and remove enough crumb from center to form a box. Brush with melted butter and bake in moderately hot oven ( $400^{\circ}$  F.) until brown and crisp.

**Toast Water****Ingredients**

- 3 slices Melba toast
- 1 cup boiling water
- Salt

Procedure. Break toast into small pieces and pour boiling water over it. Let stand for 1 hour, strain, add salt and serve hot or

cold. If desired, a teaspoon of wine or cream and sugar to taste may be added. Toast water is usually given, however, to postoperative or very sick patients who can take only the slightest amount of nutriment, and it is therefore usually served plain. Yield 1 serving.

Toasted crackers may be used in place of Melba toast.

**PREPARATION OF CRUMBS****Fine Dry Crumbs**

Procedure. Dry crusts or bread slices in slow oven until crisp enough to roll. Place on towel, fold over and crush with rolling pin.

**Soft Crumbs**

Procedure. Use bread 1 day old or more, but not dried out. Rub slices together or grate, discarding crusts. Three slices of bread  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick will make about 1 cup crumbs.

**SANDWICHES****General Directions**

When a sandwich is to serve as the main luncheon dish, sliced bread or bread cut  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick may be used. For dainty sandwiches to serve with salads or with tea, thinly sliced bread should be used. Canapés, which are merely open sandwiches, usually garnished attractively, may replace the thin filled sandwiches. If loaf bread is used, a long thin knife, preferably with a saw edge, should be chosen and kept absolutely vertical while the loaf is cut, in order that slices may be of even thickness. Bread a day old will slice more easily than fresh bread. Unless sandwiches are to be toasted, the bread should not be purchased more than a day ahead. Butter should be allowed to soften at room temperature, but should not be melted. If not quite soft enough to spread, it may be worked with a stiff knife with a rounded end until the desired consistency is reached.

The crusts are often removed from the bread for luncheon, supper and tea.

sandwiches. This should be done evenly with a comparatively long sharp knife, and it is easier to do after the sandwiches are filled. For this reason, filling should not go completely to the edge, this avoids waste. Bread is often toasted, sometimes on both sides and sometimes on one side, for luncheon or supper sandwiches before they are filled. Dainty sandwiches may be toasted after filling.

When chicken, fish, cheese or peanut butter is used as the main ingredient of the filling, sandwiches may sometimes serve as meat alternates, and even the dainty sandwiches may be counted upon to add somewhat to the protein content of the diet. When salad greens are included with the sandwich filling, they should be crisp. If shredded, they are easier to eat. Luncheon or supper sandwiches should be cut into strips, either lengthwise or diagonally, unless they are to be served "open face," when they will be eaten with a fork. For these, spreads contrasting in flavor and in color may be used. Well-seasoned cottage cheese, for instance, may be spread on one slice of bread or toast, while bacon and tomatoes may be used on the other.

## LUNCHEON OR SUPPER SANDWICHES

### Chicken or Turkey Sandwiches

**Method 1:** Thinly sliced chicken or turkey between slices of buttered bread is often preferred as a chopped filling for a luncheon or a supper sandwich. This may be seasoned merely with salt and pepper. Crisp lettuce may be placed on top of the meat and spread with mayonnaise.

**Method 2:** Chopped chicken or turkey may be mixed with mayonnaise and seasoned with a small amount of onion if allowed and liked. For a salad sandwich, the meat should be chopped coarsely and combined with celery as well as mayonnaise. For a minced chicken or turkey sandwich, the meat may be finely ground or chopped, or a chicken or turkey paste may be used.

### Meat Sandwiches

**Procedure:** Use directions for chicken or turkey sandwiches. Chili sauce or catsup may replace the mayonnaise.

### Fish Sandwiches

**Procedure:** Cooked or canned salmon, tuna fish, lobster, crabmeat or flaked shrimp may be used. For 1 sandwich allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup fish, 2 tablespoons minced celery and mayonnaise to moisten.

### Cream or Cottage Cheese Sandwiches

Minced olives, chopped nuts, chives or minced onion and parsley may be mixed with the cheese.

### Peanut Butter Sandwich

**Procedure:** For 1 sandwich use from 2 to 3 tablespoons peanut butter. If too thick to spread, moisten with cream or milk or with chili sauce or ketchup, which will add flavor. Serve between slices of buttered bread, or bread toasted on one side only. If desired, toasting may be done after sandwich has been filled. A tart jelly may be spread on top of the peanut butter.

### Peanut Butter and Bacon Sandwich

**Procedure:** Mix 2 tablespoons peanut butter with 1 tablespoon cream or chili sauce. Mince 1 strip cooked bacon and mix with peanut butter. Spread on 1 slice hot buttered toast or on 2 buttered halves of finger roll. The latter may be put under the broiler for 2 minutes if desired.

### Salad Sandwich Roll

**Procedure:** Split a soft finger roll and spread with softened butter. Pile chicken, crab or shrimp salad on each half. Garnish with slices of mango, papaya or pineapple or

may be given with chicken or fish and the other half with creamed butter mixed with deviled ham or anchovy paste

### Bacon and Tomato Sandwich with Lettuce

Procedure: Toast 2 slices bread and trim crusts. Put 1 slice on warm plate, cover with crisp lettuce and thick slices of skinned tomatoes. Arrange crisp bacon on top of tomatoes and cover with other slice of toast. Cut diagonally into 3 sections. The tomatoes may be spread with mayonnaise if desired.

### Cheese Dream

Procedure: Toast 1 slice bread on one side. Trim crust and butter untoasted side. On this arrange thin slices of American cheese. Sprinkle with paprika and spread with prepared mustard if desired. Place under broiler about 3 inches from heat and toast until cheese melts. Minced uncooked bacon or 2 strips of bacon may be placed on top of cheese before it is toasted. Serve with sliced skinned tomatoes if desired.

### Club Sandwich

Procedure: Toast 3 slices of bread lightly, trim edges evenly with long sharp knife and spread with butter. On the first slice arrange leaves of crisp lettuce and slices of cooked chicken. Spread with mayonnaise and cover with second piece of toast. On this arrange sliced tomatoes. Spread tomatoes with mayonnaise and top with broiled bacon. Cover with third slice of toast and cut diagonally into 3 sections. Garnish with lettuce and stuffed olives.

### Grilled Sardine Sandwich

Procedure: Toast 1 slice bread on one side and trim crust. Arrange drained sardines on untoasted side, place under broiler about 5 inches from heat and toast about 10 minutes until sardines are thoroughly heated. Place on warm plate and sprinkle with lemon juice or serve with a lemon quarter.

### Hot Mushroom Sandwich

Procedure: Use 2 slices buttered bread or 2 slices buttered toast. Trim crusts. Put 1 slice bread or toast on warm plate and cover with creamed mushrooms (p. 504). Cover with other slice and garnish with parsley or with sliced hard-cooked egg.

## TEA SANDWICHES

Softened butter, cream cheese or a meat paste is generally the basis of filling for dainty sandwiches. The thinly sliced bread may be spread with softened butter or with cheese. The butter and the cream cheese may be flavored with minced water cress plus a little lemon juice and onion juice, if allowed. Anchovy paste may also be used as a flavoring. Cream cheese may be thinned with sweet or sour cream and flavored with minced olives or chopped nuts. The meat paste should be thinned with sweet or sour cream and may be seasoned to taste. The spread slices of bread may be covered with unspread slices if desired and cut with a sharp knife into squares or diamonds or with a fancy cutter. Open sandwiches, or canapés as they are called, may be garnished with sliced hard-cooked eggs, sliced olives or strips of pimiento or green pepper, if allowed. The spread slices, after the crusts have been trimmed evenly, or may be rolled and then fastened with a toothpick and garnished at the end with sprigs of parsley or water cress.

## QUICK BREADS

The leavening or the raising of dough can be produced by the combination of an acid with an alkali, sodium bicarbonate or baking soda. This action is quite fast, and for that reason is used in the preparation of doughs and batters for quick breads such as muffins, griddle cakes, biscuits, cakes and cookies. Molasses and soda or sour milk and soda are used for certain products, but

tartrate powders. (2) Acid salts of phosphoric acid which give the powders the name of phosphate. (3) Compounds of aluminum. The aluminum compound used at present is sodium aluminum

sulfate. The manufacturers have designated this powder by the initials of the acid salt S.A.S. (4) Combinations of any of the above acid ingredients. The combination most frequently used is that of (2) and (3). This combination powder is frequently designated as S.A.S. phosphate, and is commonly known as "double-acting" baking powder.

The chief difference between these powders is the reaction time in the cold. The tartrate powders react very quickly with the production of the carbon dioxide gas. Therefore, the mixtures containing them should not be beaten after the ingredients are thoroughly mixed, since the beating tends to drive out the gas. This is especially true of thin mixtures.

The aluminum salt S.A.S. is relatively insoluble in the cold dough or batter and requires heat to produce complete reaction. It therefore reacts after the time of

stand from 10 to 15 minutes at room temperature before baking. The phosphate is more soluble than the aluminum salt, but less soluble than the tartrate. It is intermediate in its reaction time.

At one time there was much discussion in regard to the wholesomeness of various baking powders, especially those containing aluminum compounds. Later research work with this type of baking powder, however, has resulted in confirmation of the theory that aluminum salts in the quantities in which they are usually found in breadstuffs are harmless. As baking powders of this type are inexpensive, they are used largely today. When a combination powder replaces a baking powder of another type in a recipe, about one third less should be used.

Baking-powder mixtures will figure only slightly in the diet of the patient. Bran, whole-wheat and gluten muffins

are the only baking-powder breads used to any extent. When baking-powder mixtures are used, they should be baked thoroughly.

**Other Methods of Raising Batters.** The raising of batter may be done by air and steam. Sponge cakes and angel cakes, which contain no chemical leavening agents, are raised by the expansion of the air beaten into the thin batter, and also by the steam generated from the heating of the water in the mixture. Steam plays the principal part in raising preparations which are made from thin batter—so thin that it allows the force of the steam to raise it.

**Doughs and Batters.** A mixture of flour and other ingredients combined with just enough liquid so that the dough may be rolled is known as a dough, while a thinner mixture is known as a batter. The latter usually contains eggs. Biscuits, cookies and pastry are examples of doughs; griddle cakes, muffins, popovers and waffles are examples of batters. All-purpose flour is the choice for doughs and for all batters excepting fine cake, for which a highly refined cake flour is preferable.

To obtain a tender texture, both doughs and batters should be handled as little as possible. Doughs should be rolled only enough to produce the proper thickness; batter should be stirred just enough to moisten the dry ingredients thoroughly.

Recipes for biscuits and muffins of the standard type follow. Additional recipes for biscuits and muffins and for cookies and cakes will be found under "Allergy Recipes," Chapter 50.

### BISCUIT AND MUFFIN RECIPES

Biscuits and muffins, often known as quick breads, are easy to prepare. Because of the comparatively small amount



Fig 131. Mixing bran muffins

ingredients, there should be no over-stirring or beating. Muffin batter need not be free of lumps to produce a standard product that is light with a fluffy tender crumb free of large holes. Biscuit dough should be kneaded lightly just long enough to smooth it in order to obtain a light, tender product.

Both biscuits and muffins should be served as soon as possible after they come from the oven and should be arranged in a napkin for serving. Left-over products may be reheated in a roll warmer or in the oven, if they are wrapped, or they may be split and toasted.

### Baking Powder Biscuits

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup sifted flour
- 1½ teaspoons baking powder
- ½ teaspoon salt
- ¼ tablespoons shortening
- ½ cup milk (about)

**Procedure** Mix and sift the dry ingredients together. Work in the shortening with tips of fingers or cut in with 2 knives. Add the liquid all at once, mixing with a knife gently until flour is dampened. Then stir quickly just until dough follows knife round bowl (about 30 strokes altogether). Pat or roll to ¼ inch in thickness. Cut into rounds with a biscuit cutter. Press trimmings together lightly, pat or roll and cut into rounds. Place on ungreased baking sheet and bake in a hot oven (450° F) from 1½ to 15 minutes. Yield 8 biscuits.

### Drop Biscuits

**Procedure** Follow directions for baking powder biscuits. Increase milk to ¾ cup and omit kneading. Drop by tablespoons on ungreased baking sheet.

### Muffins

Family-size recipes for muffins demand only 1 egg. For this reason, and because a large number of muffins may be baked as easily as a small number, it



well to prepare large recipes if the other members of the family besides the patient like hot breads. For a small recipe, beat egg before dividing into equal halves. The remaining half may be used for some other purpose in cooking. Both family-size and small-quantity recipes are given for muffins.

### Plain Muffins

#### *Family Size*

##### **Ingredients:**

- 2 cups sifted flour
- 3 teaspoons baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 egg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons melted shortening
- 1 cup milk
- Yield 10 small muffins

#### *Small Quantity*

##### **Ingredients:**

- 1 cup sifted flour
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons baking powder
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  egg
- 1 tablespoon melted shortening
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- Yield 8 small muffins

**Procedure:** Mix and sift the dry ingredients. Beat egg thoroughly and stir in melted shortening. Add milk and stir well. Stir this mixture all at once into the dry ingredients until they are just moist (about 15 strokes). Drop into greased muffin pans and bake in hot oven (425° F.) about 20 minutes if small muffin pans are used, from 25 to 30 minutes if large pans are used.

### Corn-Meal Muffins

**Procedure:** Follow directions for plain muffins below. For family-size recipe: combine 1 cup sifted white flour with  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup corn meal. For small-quantity recipe: combine  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sifted white flour with  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup corn meal.

### Whole-Wheat Muffins

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for plain muffins. For family-size: combine 1 cup sifted white flour with the other dry ingredients and sift together. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup unsifted whole-wheat flour to this mixture. For small quantity combine  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sifted white flour with the other dry ingredients and sift together. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup unsifted whole-wheat flour to this mixture.

### Rich Muffins

#### *Family Size*

##### **Ingredients:**

- 2 cups sifted flour
- 3 teaspoons baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup shortening
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- 1 egg
- 1 cup milk
- Yield 10 small muffins

#### *Small Quantity*

##### **Ingredients:**

- 1 cup sifted flour
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 2 tablespoons shortening
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  egg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- Yield 8 small muffins

**Procedure:** Mix and sift dry ingredients. Cream shortening, add sugar and cream until fluffy. Stir in egg. Add dry ingredients alternately with milk, beating well after each addition. Bake in greased muffin pans in moderately hot oven (425° F.) from about 20 to 30 minutes.

### Sally Lunn

**Procedure:** Follow preceding directions for rich muffins. Pour batter into a greased cake pan 8 inches square. Sprinkle with  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar mixed with 1 teaspoon cinnamon. Bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) 10 minutes.

**Bran Muffins***Family Size***Ingredients.**

- 2 tablespoons shortening
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- 1 egg
- 1 cup bran
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- 1 cup sifted flour
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Yield 16 muffins

*Small Quantity***Ingredients**

- 1 tablespoon shortening
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  egg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup bran
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sifted flour
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- Yield 8 muffins

**Procedure** Cream shortening and sugar thoroughly. Add unbeaten egg and beat

well. Stir in bran and milk. Let soak until most of moisture is taken up. Add sifted dry ingredients and stir only until flour disappears. Bake in greased muffin pans in moderately hot oven (400° F) about 30 minutes.

**STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Outline the use of grain in bread through history to the present day.

2. Why is wheat the chosen flour for a yeast bread? Why was refined white flour used as a staple ingredient?

3. What additions to refined flour were obligatory during World War II? Should this program be continued?

4. Compare the relative amounts of various nutrients in white, in enriched and in whole-wheat flours.

5. Which leavenings are used for raising quick breads? Give examples of their use.

6. How does a dough differ from a batter? How should each be handled so that the texture will be fine?

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.

*Soups*  
*Meat Dishes*  
*Cheese Dishes*  
*Miscellaneous Main Dishes*  
*Fish Dishes*  
*Desserts*  
*The Use of Dry Skim Milk*  
*Special Recipes*

## CHAPTER FORTY-NINE

# Inexpensive Family-Size Recipes

The public-health nurse may find it necessary to help a family to utilize the food budget in such a way that food will be adequate. When a nutritionist is attached to the staff of the public agency with which the nurse works, a menu and recipe service will be available for distribution. As all social agencies do not have the advantage of the services of nutritionists, inexpensive family-size recipes are given in this chapter.

The following group of recipes can be suggested by the nurse to families in need of low-priced nutritious foods. The ingredients of the recipes have been chosen with due regard for cost. Evaporated milk, for instance, is generally less expensive than fresh milk. Instant nonfat dry milk is in general distribution under several brand names. Not all families are familiar with it, and as it is the most inexpensive form of milk, it may be important to demonstrate the

tions on economical food selection and menu planning.

Kitchen equipment often is limited, and dishes which can be made with utensils on hand should be chosen. If an oven is not available, dishes which can be cooked on top of the stove should be suggested. In the absence of a measuring cup, an 8-oz. glass may be used.

Another factor—and one of great importance—that must be considered is the customary food pattern of the family. This may be based upon national or regional customs that in many respects may be adequate although different from the common American choice of foods. The comparison below of the main dishes typical of 12 different countries, compiled by the Food and Nutrition Section, Welfare and Health Council, New York City, exemplifies this fact.

## SOUPS

### Bean Soup

#### Ingredients:

1½ cups navy beans  
½ cup diced carrot

2 medium-sized onions, sliced  
2 bay leaves  
6 cups boiling water  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk, about  
Salt  
Pepper

**Procedure.** Soak beans 12 hours and drain. Put beans, vegetables, bay leaves and water in saucepan. Cover and simmer over low heat until beans are soft, about 2 hours, stirring occasionally to prevent burning. Force through a sieve. Add enough milk to desired consistency. Season with salt and pepper. Reheat and serve. Yield 6 generous servings.

**NOTE** A meat bone, if one is on hand, may be cooked with the beans. Peas and lentils may be used in place of the beans. They may be cooked without soaking if directions on package so state.

### Milk Vegetable Chowder

#### Ingredients

4 tablespoons butter or other fat  
1 medium-sized onion, sliced

3 cups mixed diced vegetables  
(potatoes, celery, carrots)  
2 cups boiling water  
2 cups milk or 1 cup evaporated milk  
diluted with 1 cup water  
Salt, pepper

**Procedure:** Melt butter, add onion and cook 3 minutes. Add vegetables and cook 3 minutes, stirring constantly over low heat. Add water and cook until vegetables are tender. Stir in milk slowly and heat. Season to taste with salt and pepper. Yield 6 servings.

**NOTE** Cooked leftover vegetables may replace part of the fresh vegetables and should be added with the milk.

### Fish Vegetable Chowder

**Procedure:** Use recipe for milk vegetable chowder. Reduce amount of diced vegetables  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups and add from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb cut boned fish. Leftover cooked fish may be used if it is added when the vegetables are almost tender.

## FOOD CUSTOMS

AREA	COUNTRY	MAIN DISH	INGREDIENTS
North America	U. S. A.	Beef stew	Beef, carrots, onions, potatoes
	Mexico	Chili con carne	Chopped beef, onions, green peppers, beans, tomatoes, fat
South America and Caribbean	Brazil	Coxadino	Beef, carrots, onions, tomato, celery
	Cuba	Picadillo Cubana (Cuban hash)	Ground beef and pork, onions, green peppers, capers, tomato paste, olives, raisins
Europe	England	Steak and kidney pie	Round steak, kidneys, onions, beef stock, flour, pie crust
	Denmark	Frikadeller (meat balls)	Ground beef and pork, flour, potatoes, eggs, onions, milk
	Poland	Zrazy Po Krakowski (beef roll-ups)	Round steak, onions, bread crumbs, flour, egg, butter
Africa	Egypt	Eggplant and ground beef casserole	Ground beef, onion, eggplant, butter, tomato sauce
	Liberia	Perleau rice	Chicken, tomato paste, brown rice, onions, ham, cabbage, flour, fat
Near East	Israel	Fish soup	Mixed fish, onion, oil
Far East	India	Chicken curry	Chicken, onions, tomato, green pepper, butter, cottage cheese
	China	Lot Tzu Fan Kare Ngou Yuk (beef with peppers and tomatoes)	Beef, green peppers, tomatoes, cornstarch

## MEAT DISHES

**Goulash****Ingredients:**

- 1 lb. stewing beef
- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. lean pork
- 2 pig or lamb kidneys
- 4 tablespoons bacon fat
- 3 tablespoons minced onion
- 1 cup canned tomatoes
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 4 medium-sized potatoes, pared and cut in cubes

**Procedure:** Cut meat in 1-inch cubes and split kidneys. Remove membrane and tubes from kidneys, soak in salted water 30 minutes and slice. Heat bacon fat in heavy frying pan, add onion and meat and sauté until onions and meat are brown. Add tomatoes, salt and pepper, and mix well. Cover and let simmer slowly 1 hour. Uncover, add potatoes, cover and cook until potatoes are tender. Add a little water and more salt if necessary. Yield: 6 servings.

**Liver, Sautéed**

**Procedure:** Have beef, lamb or pork liver sliced  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick. Wipe with cloth and remove skin and tubes. Dredge with flour. Cook in hot, well-greased frying pan about 11 minutes, turning occasionally until well browned. Add more fat as needed. Season with salt and pepper. Be careful not to overcook liver. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb for each serving.

**Baked Liver with Vegetables****Ingredients:**

- 1 lb. beef liver, sliced
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 4 onions
- 2 carrots
- $2\frac{1}{2}$  cups canned tomatoes

**Procedure:** Wipe liver, season with salt and pepper. Roll in flour. Cut onions and carrots in small pieces, put in frying pan, add sliced liver and canned tomatoes. Cover. Bake in moderate oven (375° F.) or

**Meat Loaf****Ingredients:**

- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk or water
- 1 lb. chopped beef
- 1 egg (may be omitted)
- 1 onion, finely chopped
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper

**Procedure:** Soak bread crumbs in milk. Add other ingredients and mix well. Place in greased baking pan and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 30 minutes, or until brown. A chopped carrot or green pepper may be added, if desired. Yield: 4 servings.

**Meat Stew****Ingredients:**

- 2 lbs. stewing beef or lamb
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 7 onions
- 4 cups boiling water
- 1 bay leaf
- 4 cloves
- 6 carrots
- 6 potatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup flour

**Procedure:** Wipe meat and cut in 1-inch pieces. Sprinkle with salt and pepper and brown in its own fat. Peel and slice 1 onion, cook with meat until yellow. Add water, bay leaf and cloves, cover and cook over low heat  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours. Add scraped carrots and remaining peeled onions; cook  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. Add peeled potatoes and cook until potatoes are tender. Mix flour with cold water to a smooth paste and stir into stew. Add more salt if necessary. Stir until gravy begins to thicken. Yield: 6 liberal servings.

**Note.** The carrots may be replaced by 2 cups diced turnips.

**Swedish Meat Balls****Ingredients:**

- 2 cups soft bread crumbs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- 2 tablespoons minced onion
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil or bacon fat
- 1 lb. chopped beef
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon nutmeg
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika
- 1 egg, slightly beaten
- 2 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Procedure:** Soak bread crumbs in milk 10 minutes. Sauté onion in half the oil or bacon fat until light brown. Add to meat with seasonings and slightly beaten egg. Add soaked bread crumbs and put mixture through meat grinder. Form in small balls and sauté in frying pan in remaining fat until light brown on all sides. Sprinkle with flour, coating each, and cook 5 minutes. Add milk, cover and cook 5 minutes. Yield 16 to 18 small balls.

### Liver and Sausage Ring

#### Ingredients:

- 1 lb liver (beef, calves', pork or lamb)
- 1 lb pork sausage meat
- 2 tablespoons chili sauce
- 2 tablespoons horseradish
- 1 tablespoon grated onion
- 2 beaten eggs
- 2 cups dry bread crumbs
- 1 cup water

**Procedure:** Cover liver with hot water. Cover and simmer 5 minutes. Put through food grinder, using fine plate. Add the remaining ingredients and mix thoroughly. Fill greased 8½-inch ring mold. Bake in moderate oven (350° F) 1 hour. Serve with chili sauce. Yield 8 servings.

### Braised Heart with Apples

#### Ingredients:

- 1 lamb heart
- Salt
- Pepper
- Flour
- ½ tablespoon drippings
- 1 tablespoon brown sugar
- 1 clove
- 1 small bay leaf
- ½ lemon, sliced
- ¾ cup water
- 1 apple, sliced

Season on top and add water. Cover tightly and simmer until tender. Add apple and continue cooking 15 minutes.

### Heart Fricassee

#### Ingredients:

- 1 lamb heart
- Flour
- 1 tablespoon bacon drippings
- ½ teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- 2 tablespoons diced onion
- ¾ cup canned tomatoes

**Procedure:** Wash heart and trim off hard parts as necessary. Cut each half in about 4 pieces. Dredge in flour and brown in bacon drippings. Season. Add onion and brown. Add tomatoes and cover tightly, simmering until tender. Yield 2 servings.

### Creole Kidney

#### Ingredients

- ½ beef kidney
- Flour
- 2 slices bacon
- 1 small onion, chopped
- 1 tablespoon chopped green pepper
- ½ cup tomato juice
- Salt
- Pepper
- 1 bay leaf
- ½ tablespoon flour
- Water

**Procedure:** Remove tubes from kidney and cut into ½-inch slices. Dredge with flour.

Add tomato juice, salt, pepper and bay leaf. Cover closely and simmer about ½ hour. Mix flour and water in a paste. Add a small portion of the hot mixture, stirring to prevent lumping, then add this to the rest of the hot creole and cook until thickened, stirring constantly. If desired, this may be served on toast points. Yield 1 serving.

### CHEESE DISHES\*

#### Main Dish Stuffed Potatoes

##### Ingredients:

- 2 large potatoes
- 1 cup cottage cheese
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 1½ tablespoons melted fat
- ½ to 1 teaspoon salt

\* Health Council of Greater New York.

## MEAT DISHES

## Goulash

## Ingredients:

- 1 lb stewing beef
- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. lean pork
- 2 pig or lamb kidneys
- 4 tablespoons bacon fat
- 3 tablespoons minced onion
- 1 cup canned tomatoes
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 4 medium-sized potatoes, pared and cut in cubes

Procedure: Cut meat in 1-inch cubes and

until onions and meat are brown. Add tomatoes, salt and pepper, and mix well. Cover and let simmer slowly 1 hour. Uncover, add potatoes, cover and cook until potatoes are tender. Add a little water and more salt if necessary. Yield 6 servings.

## Liver, Sautéed

Procedure: Have beef, lamb or pork liver sliced  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick. Wipe with cloth and remove skin and tubes. Dredge with flour. Cook in hot, well-greased frying pan about 5 minutes, turning occasionally until well browned. Add more fat as needed. Season with salt and pepper. Be careful not to overcook liver. Allow  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb for each serving.

## Baked Liver with Vegetables

## Ingredients:

- 1 lb beef liver, sliced
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 4 onions
- 2 carrots
- 2 cups canned tomatoes

Procedure: Wipe liver, season with salt and pepper. Roll in flour. Cut onions and carrots in small pieces, put in frying pan, add sliced liver and canned tomatoes. Cover. Bake in moderate oven (375° F) or cook over low heat on top of stove about 30 minutes (until liver is tender). Add more seasoning, if necessary. Yield 6 servings.

## Meat Loaf

## Ingredients:

- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk or water
- 1 lb chopped beef
- 1 egg (may be omitted)
- 1 onion, finely chopped
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper

Procedure: Soak bread crumbs in milk. Add other ingredients and mix well. Place in greased baking pan and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 30 minutes, or until brown. A chopped carrot or green pepper may be added, if desired. Yield 6 servings.

## Meat Stew

## Ingredients:

- 2 lbs. stewing beef or lamb
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 7 onions
- 4 cups boiling water
- 1 bay leaf
- 4 cloves
- 6 carrots
- 6 potatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup flour

Procedure: Wipe meat and cut in 1-inch pieces. Sprinkle with salt and pepper and brown in its own fat. Peel and slice 1 onion; cook with meat until yellow. Add water, bay leaf and cloves, cover and cook over low heat  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours. Add scraped carrots and remaining peeled onions, cook  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. Add peeled potatoes and cook until potatoes are tender. Mix flour with cold water to a smooth paste and stir into stew.

2 cups diced turnips.

## Swedish Meat Balls

## Ingredients:

- 2 cups soft bread crumbs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- 2 tablespoons minced onion
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil or bacon fat
- 1 lb chopped beef
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon nutmeg
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika
- 1 egg, slightly beaten
- 2 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Scalloped "Ham," Potatoes and Carrots****Ingredients**

- 1 can luncheon meat or
- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb frankfurters
- 2 tablespoons fat
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons flour
- 1 can condensed cream of mushroom soup, undiluted
- 1 cup milk\*
- 3 cups pared sliced potatoes
- 1 cup scraped sliced carrots
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup minced onion
- Salt and pepper

**Procedure** Heat oven to 375° F. Slice luncheon meat or split frankfurters lengthwise. Brown lightly on both sides in fat in skillet. Stir flour into fat left in skillet, add soup. Then slowly stir in milk. Heat to just

minutes. Uncover, bake 15 minutes longer or until potatoes are tender. Yield 4 to 6 servings.

**Macaroni Meat Casserole****Ingredients**

- 1 cup uncooked macaroni
- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- 1 tablespoon chopped onion
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 2 eggs, beaten
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 1 cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup ground beef or
- 1 cup diced cooked meat
- 1 8-oz. can tomato sauce, heated

**Procedure** Set oven for moderately slow, 325° F. Cook macaroni until tender, according to package directions. Drain. Mix with crumbs, onion, pepper, eggs, salt, milk and meat. Turn into a 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -qt. greased casserole. Bake 40 to 45 minutes or until a knife inserted in center comes out clean. Serve topped with tomato sauce. Yield 6 servings.

\* Fluid, evaporated, diluted with equal amounts of water, or reconstituted nonfat dry milk.

**Macaroni with Frankfurters****Ingredients:**

- 8 ozs elbow macaroni, about 2 cups
- 6 tablespoons margarine or bacon drippings
- 1 small onion, grated
- 6 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 3 cups milk
- 1 package (8 ozs) processed sharp American cheese
- 6 frankfurters

**Procedure:** Cook macaroni in large amount boiling salted water until tender, drain, place in greased 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -qt casserole. While macaroni cooks, melt margarine in medium-size saucepan, blend in onion, flour, salt, stir in milk. Cook over low heat, stirring constantly until sauce thickens and boils 1 minute. Slice cheese into sauce, heat and stir until cheese melts. Pour over cooked macaroni in baking dish, stir with fork to blend. Score frankfurters with sharp knife, arrange on top, pressing them lightly into macaroni mixture. Bake in moderate oven (350° F) 30 minutes, or until brown and bubbly on top. Yield 6 servings.

**Baked Macaroni with Tomatoes****Ingredients:**

- 1 package macaroni
- 4 tablespoons bacon fat
- 1 medium-sized onion, sliced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup minced green pepper
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups canned tomatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb sliced cheese

**Procedure:** Cook macaroni as directed on package, rinse, drain and arrange in greased 2-qt casserole. Melt bacon fat in frying pan, add onion and green pepper, and cook 1 minute. Add tomatoes, salt and pepper (adding more if necessary) and pour over macaroni. Cover with sliced cheese. Bake in moderately hot oven (400° F) about 20 minutes (until cheese melts). Yield 6 liberal servings.

**Scalloped Potatoes****Ingredients:**

- 6 medium-sized potatoes
- Salt
- Pepper
- 2 tablespoons flour
- 2 cups evaporated milk diluted with
- 2 cups water



**Procedure:** Bake potatoes in moderately hot oven (375° F.) about 15 to 20 minutes until lightly browned on top and thoroughly heated. Yield 4 servings.

fat; sprinkle with paprika. Bake in moderately hot oven (375° F.) about 15 to 20 minutes until lightly browned on top and thoroughly heated. Yield 4 servings.

**Cheese and Vegetable Casserole**

**Ingredients:**

- 1½ cups milk\*
- 2 tablespoons margarine
- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- 8 ozs. grated process American Cheddar cheese (1½ cups)
- 2 tablespoons minced onion
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- ½ teaspoon salt
- 3 eggs, well-beaten
- 1 cup drained, cooked or canned vegetables

**Procedure:** Heat oven to 325° F. Heat milk with margarine. Pour over bread crumbs in mixing bowl. Add next 4 ingredients. Mix well. Slowly stir in eggs. Arrange vegetables in greased 1½-qt. casserole, pour cheese mixture over them. Set casserole in pan, filled with warm water up within 1 inch of top of casserole. Bake 75 minutes, or until silver knife, inserted in center, comes out clean. Serve as is or with mushroom sauce. Yield. 4 servings.

**Gnocchi with Cheese Sauce**

**Procedure:** Add 1 teaspoon salt to 3 cups water and bring to boil. Sprinkle ½ cup quick-cooking farina gradually into boiling

beaten egg. Stir until mixture is thick. Pour into greased pan or dish (about 8 x 8 inches) and chill well. Cut into 1½-inch squares and place in greased shallow baking dish. Pour cheese sauce over this.

\* Fluid, or evaporated, diluted with equal amounts of water, or reconstituted nonfat dry milk

**Cheese Sauce for Gnocchi**

**Ingredients:**

- 3 tablespoons margarine
- 2 tablespoons flour
- 1 teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 1 teaspoon dry mustard
- 1 teaspoon finely chopped onion
- 2 cups milk, or 1 cup evaporated milk and 1 cup water
- ½ pound cheese, shredded

**Procedure:** Melt margarine over low heat. Add flour, salt, pepper, mustard and onion and stir until well blended. Remove from heat. Gradually stir in milk and return to moderate heat. Cook, stirring constantly, until thick and smooth. Add cheese, reserving ½ cup to sprinkle on top, and stir over low heat until cheese is melted. Pour sauce over gnocchi and sprinkle with the ½ cup cheese. Bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 30 minutes. Yield. 6 servings.

**MISCELLANEOUS MAIN DISHES**

**Spanish Beans with Liver**

**Ingredients**

- 1 12-oz. package red kidney beans (1½ cups)
- 1 qt. cold water
- 1 cup canned tomatoes
- 2½ teaspoons salt
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 1 bay leaf
- 2 sliced medium onions
- 1 minced peeled clove garlic
- ½ cup fat or salad oil
- ½ lb. sliced beef liver
- 1 tablespoon flour

1. Add to beans with tomatoes and next 3 ingredients. Fry onions and garlic in fat in a skillet until tender, then add them to beans, reserving oil. Cover, bring to boil and simmer 2 hours or until beans are tender. Meanwhile, dredge liver in flour and fry in reserved oil in skillet until brown on both sides. Cut liver in ½-inch strips, then fold into beans and serve. Yield 4 to 5 servings.

cups. Add to beans with tomatoes and next 3 ingredients. Fry onions and garlic in fat in a skillet until tender, then add them to beans, reserving oil. Cover, bring to boil and simmer 2 hours or until beans are tender. Meanwhile, dredge liver in flour and fry in reserved oil in skillet until brown on both sides. Cut liver in ½-inch strips, then fold into beans and serve. Yield 4 to 5 servings.

**Baked Beans, New York Style**

**Procedure** Follow preceding recipe for baked beans, New England style, substituting  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup brown sugar, firmly packed, for the molasses. Also, marrow beans may be used to replace the pea beans. If desired, the salt pork may be sautéed from 3 to 5 minutes before combining with the beans.

**NOTE** If an oven is not available, beans may be "baked" by simmering in a heavy covered pot on top of the stove. More liquid may be added during the cooking, if necessary.

**Chili Con Carne****Ingredients**

- 2 tablespoons bacon fat
- 1 medium-sized onion, minced
- 1 clove garlic, peeled
- 1 lb. chopped beef
- 2 cups canned or cooked kidney beans
- 1 teaspoon salt
- Pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon chili powder
- $2\frac{1}{2}$  cups canned tomatoes

**Procedure** Cook onion and garlic in bacon fat, seasonings and tomatoes, mix well. Put in greased 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -quart casserole, sprinkle with cheese and bake in moderate oven (375° F) from 15 to 20 minutes, or cover and cook over low heat on top of stove. Yield 6 servings.

**Lima Beans, Baked****Ingredients**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. diced salt pork
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sliced onions
- 1 cup diced carrots
- 3 cups boiled dried Lima beans
- $2\frac{1}{2}$  cups canned tomatoes

**Procedure.** Cook salt pork 5 minutes in heavy frying pan, add onions and carrots, and sauté over medium heat 5 minutes. Add cooked, drained Lima beans, mix well and place in greased casserole. Add tomatoes, cover and bake in moderate oven (350° F) about 3 hours (until beans are tender). Yield 11 servings.

**NOTE** Use leftover baked Lima beans as foundation for soup.

**FISH DISHES****Codfish, Creamed****Ingredients**

- 2 cups salt codfish
- 4 tablespoons butter or margarine
- 4 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 2 cups milk

**Procedure** Soak codfish in cold water 20 minutes to remove some of the salt, drain. Cut in small pieces. Melt butter or mar-

**Baked Cod Fillets Florentine****Ingredients**

- 1 pkg. frozen chopped spinach
- 2 tablespoons margarine
- 2 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 2 tablespoons chopped onion
- 1 cup milk
- 1 pkg. frozen cod fillets
- Dash of pepper
- 1 cup soft bread crumbs
- 2 tablespoons melted margarine

**Procedure** Set oven for hot, 425° F. Cook spinach according to package directions.

**Fish Pie****Ingredients**

- 2 cups baked cooked fish
- 1 cup medium white sauce
- 2 teaspoons onion juice
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice
- 2 cups mashed potatoes
- 2 tablespoons grated cheese
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup fine bread crumbs
- 2 tablespoons melted margarine

**Procedure:** Wash and pare potatoes and cut in very thin slices. Place potatoes in greased 2-qt baking dish. Sprinkle with salt, pepper and flour. Pour in milk so that it can be seen through the top layer. Cover and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 30 minutes. Remove cover and continue baking about 15 minutes longer, until potatoes are tender and a brown crust has formed on the top. Yield. 8 servings

**NOTE:** If desired, 2 tablespoons minced onion may be added to the potatoes. Left-over minced ham may be added.

### Spanish Rice

#### Ingredients:

- ½ cup salad oil
- 1 clove garlic, peeled
- 1 medium-sized onion, minced
- ½ cup chopped green pepper
- 3 cups boiled rice
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 2½ cups canned tomatoes

**Procedure:** Heat salad oil in large frying pan. Add garlic, onion, green pepper and rice, and cook 3 minutes, stirring constantly. Add salt and tomatoes. Mix well, cover and cook over low heat until tomato juice is absorbed, about 15 minutes. Yield. 6 servings

**NOTE:** Add 1 cup chopped cooked meat, if desired

### Spaghetti, Italian Style

#### Ingredients

- ½ cup salad oil or bacon fat
- 1 clove garlic, peeled
- ½ lb chopped beef or veal
- 3 tablespoons minced green pepper
- 3 tablespoons minced onion
- 2½ cups canned tomatoes
- 1 4-oz can tomato paste
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 2 teaspoons sugar
- 1 cup boiling water
- 1 package spaghetti
- Grated cheese

**Procedure:** Heat salad oil or bacon fat in heavy saucepan. Add garlic and chopped beef or veal, green pepper and onion, and sauté 10 minutes, stirring frequently, until meat is well browned. Remove garlic if de-

sired. Force tomatoes through a sieve and add tomato paste, salt, sugar and water. Let simmer uncovered over low heat about 1½ hours, until mixture is thick. Stir occasionally to prevent sticking. Cook spaghetti as directed on package, rinse, drain and arrange on hot platter. Pour sauce round it and sprinkle with cheese. Yield 6 servings.

### Toasted Cheese

#### Ingredients:

- 1 teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon dry mustard
- ½ teaspoon paprika
- ½ lb cheese
- 2 eggs
- 1 cup milk

**Procedure:** Mix seasonings in greased 9-inch pie pan. Flake cheese with a fork or grate into pan. Break eggs over cheese, add milk and mix with fork. Set in pan of hot water and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) until set, from about 35 to 40 minutes. Yield 4 servings

**NOTE:** 1 instead of 2 eggs may be used.

### Baked Beans, New England Style

#### Ingredients:

- 1 qt. pea beans
- ½ lb salt pork
- 1 tablespoon salt
- 1 teaspoon dry mustard
- ½ cup molasses

1 . . . . .

simmer over low heat until beans are tender when tested. To test, take up a few beans with spoon and blow. When skins break, the beans are tender. Drain beans and  
2 of each work

..

boiling water, if necessary, to cover beans entirely. Cover and bake in very slow oven (250° F) from 6 to 8 hours. Add more water when necessary. Uncover and bake 30 minutes longer (until a brown crust has formed). Yield 10 to 12 servings.

**NOTE:** If desired, 1 medium-sized onion, minced, may be baked with the beans.

water. Bake in moderate oven (375° F.) until set, about 35 minutes. The custard is cooked when mixture does not adhere to knife when inserted. Cool quickly by placing cups in cold water. Yield: 6 custards.

### Bread Pudding

#### Ingredients

- 3 tablespoons softened butter or margarine
- 4 to 5½-inch slices bread
- 2 eggs or 4 egg yolks, slightly beaten
- ½ cup sugar
- ¼ teaspoon salt
- 1 cup evaporated milk diluted with
- 1 cup water, and scalded
- ½ teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Butter bread and arrange in baking dish. Combine slightly beaten eggs or egg yolks, sugar and salt. Add hot milk slowly and stir until sugar is dissolved. Stir in vanilla. Pour mixture over bread, place baking dish in pan of hot water and bake in slow oven (325° F.) until custard begins to set, about 40 minutes. Serve hot or chilled. Yield: 6 servings.

### Chocolate Blanc Manger

#### Ingredients

- 1½ cups evaporated milk
- 1½ cups water
- 4 tablespoons cornstarch or 8 tablespoons flour
- 5 tablespoons cocoa
- 6 tablespoons sugar
- ¼ teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Mix milk with 1½ cups water in top of double boiler and scald over hot water. Mix cornstarch or flour, cocoa, sugar and salt. Stir in remaining water to this mixture, and when smooth stir into scalded milk. Stir over hot water until thick. Cover and continue cooking 5 minutes or more over the hot water. Stir in vanilla, pour into bowl or 6 custard cups and chill. Yield: 6 servings.

### Fruit Custard Pudding

#### Ingredients

- 1 cup evaporated milk
- 1½ cups cold water
- 2 tablespoons cornstarch
- 1 egg
- ¼ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup sugar
- ½ teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Mix milk with 1 cup cold water and scald in top of double boiler over hot water. Mix cornstarch with remaining cold water (½ cup) to a smooth paste and stir into scalded milk. Beat egg slightly, add salt and sugar, and mix with a small portion of the hot mixture, then add slowly to the contents of the double boiler. Stir until thickened. Add vanilla. Serve over sliced bananas or oranges, berries or other fruit, or with cottage pudding.

### Rice Pudding

#### Ingredients

- ½ cup rice
- 2 cups evaporated milk diluted with
- 2 cups water
- ¼ teaspoon salt
- ½ cup sugar
- ¼ teaspoon nutmeg

**Procedure:** Combine all ingredients and pour into well-greased baking dish. Bake in very slow oven (250° F.) about 2 hours, stirring at least 3 times during the first hour to break crust that forms. Do not stir during last hour of cooking. Chill before serving. Yield: 6 servings.

**Note:** Add ½ cup raisins before baking, if desired.

### Scandinavian Prune Pudding

#### Ingredients

- ½ lb. prunes
- ¾ cups water
- 1 1-inch stick cinnamon
- ½ cup sugar
- ¼ teaspoon salt
- 5 tablespoons cornstarch
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice

**Procedure:** Wash prunes, cover with 3 cups water and let stand 2 hours. Cook in covered saucepan until soft, about 20 minutes. Drain, save juice and pit prunes. Return fruit and juice to saucepan, and add cinnamon. Combine sugar, salt and cornstarch. Mix with remaining cold water and add to fruit. Cook over low heat, stirring constantly, until mixture thickens, about 5 minutes. Remove cinnamon, add lemon juice, pour into mold and chill. Yield: 6 servings.

**Procedure:** Mix fish, white sauce and seasonings. Pour into greased baking dish. Smooth mashed potatoes over top. Sprinkle with cheese and combined crumbs and margarine. Bake in hot oven (400° F.) 20 minutes. Yield 6 to 8 servings.

**Medium White Sauce:** Melt 2 tablespoons margarine in heavy saucepan. Add 2 tablespoons flour, mix well. Add 1 cup milk. Cook, stirring constantly, until thickened. Season with salt and pepper. Yield. 1 cup

### **Creole Fish and Potatoes**

#### **Ingredients:**

- 1 lb. package hadlock fillets, quick-frozen
- 3 tablespoons bacon drippings or fat
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup onions, sliced
- 3 cups potatoes, raw, sliced
- 1 tablespoon flour
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoons salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups canned tomatoes (No. 2 can)

top of potatoes, cover. After the mixture begins to bubble, continue cooking about 15 minutes. Yield 4 servings.

### **Tuna-Egg Scallop**

#### **Ingredients:**

- 1 7-oz. can light or white tuna
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- 2 tablespoons butter or margarine
- 4 tablespoons flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon dry mustard
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups milk
- 3 hard-cooked eggs, chopped
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Tabasco
- 1 cup soft buttered bread crumbs

**Procedure:** Drain oil from tuna and reserve. Break tuna into pieces and add lemon juice. Melt butter or margarine, add tuna

with buttered bread crumbs. Bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 25 minutes, or until crumbs are lightly browned. Yield 4 to 6 servings.

### **Tuna Fish Loaf**

#### **Ingredients:**

- 2 cups tuna (about 13 ozs.)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup soft bread crumbs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- 2 eggs
- 1 teaspoon salt
- Cayenne
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- 1 tablespoon chopped parsley

**Procedure:** Flake fish in its own oil. Soak bread crumbs in milk for 5 minutes. Stir in unbeaten eggs, seasonings and fish. Pour mixture into greased loaf pan and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) for 40 minutes until firm in the center. Yield. 4 servings.

## **DESSERTS**

### **Baked Apple Pudding**

#### **Ingredients**

- 7  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch slices bread
- 4 tablespoons butter or margarine
- 3 sliced apples
- 1 cup sugar

**Procedure:** Butter bread slices. Place in pan. Add apples and sugar. Bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 25 minutes.

### **Baked Rhubarb Pudding**

**Procedure:** Follow recipe for baked apple pudding, substituting 4 cups rhubarb for the apples. If rhubarb is very tart, more sugar may be added.

### **Baked Custard**

#### **Ingredients**

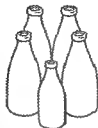
- 3 eggs, slightly beaten
- 3 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups evaporated milk diluted with 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups water

#### **Nutmeg**

**Procedure:** Combine slightly beaten eggs, sugar, salt and milk, and stir until sugar is dissolved. Pour into custard cups, sprinkle with nutmeg and place cups in pan of hot

# MILK IN DIFFERENT FORMS

THE FOLLOWING ARE ABOUT EQUAL IN FOOD VALUE



ONE POUND PACKAGE NONFAT  
DRY MILK SOLIDS (DRY SKIM  
MILK) PLUS 6 1/4 OUNCES BUTTER  
OR VITAMIN "A" FORTIFIED FAT

4 1/2 QUARTS WHOLE MILK  
Figure 132

5 1/2 CANS EVAPORATED  
MILK 14 1/2 OUNCES EACH CAN

use water as the liquid in the recipe. For example, if your recipe calls for 1 cup milk, add 3 tablespoons dry skim milk to other dry ingredients before mixing or sifting. Then follow recipe but use 1 cup water instead of the cup of milk listed in recipe.

## SPECIAL RECIPES FOR USING DRY SKIM MILK

Dry skim milk may be used conveniently in some recipes without reconstituting with water.

### Basic Cream Sauce

#### Ingredients

- 2 tablespoons fat
- 2 tablespoons flour
- 1/2 tablespoons dry skim milk
- 1/4 teaspoon salt
- 1 cup water (or water in which vegetables were cooked)

**Procedure:** Melt fat. Remove from heat. Mix flour, dry skim milk and salt. Add to fat, mixing until well blended. Gradually add water, stirring until well mixed. Cook over low heat, stirring constantly until thick and smooth, about 5 minutes. Yield about 1 cup.

### Potato Chowder

#### Ingredients

- 1 teaspoon salt
- 6 cups boiling water
- 4 medium-sized potatoes, thinly peeled and sliced

1 1/2 cups dry skim milk

1/2 lb. salt pork, diced, or 3 tablespoons

vegetable shortening

1 medium-sized onion, sliced

1 green pepper, diced

4 tablespoons chopped celery leaves, if desired

**Procedure:** Add salt to the boiling water and boil potatoes 5 or 8 minutes, or until tender. Drain. Save water. There should be from 4 1/2 to 5 cups. Mash potatoes. Gradually beat in 1/2 cup dry skim milk with fork or spoon. Beat in 1/2 cup reserved potato water. Add remaining dry skim milk. Mix well. Add remaining potato water. Cook salt pork until browned. Add onion, green pepper and celery leaves. Cook 5 minutes, or until tender and lightly browned. Add to potato mixture. Bring to boiling point, stirring frequently. Yield 4 to 5 servings.

### Fish Chowder

#### Ingredients

- 3 tablespoons fat
- 2 medium-sized onions, sliced
- 2 cups diced potatoes (about 2 medium sized)
- 1/2 lb. fish, cut in pieces (uncooked)
- 1 carrot, sliced, if desired
- 2 teaspoons salt
- 1/2 teaspoon pepper
- 7 1/2 cups water
- 3 tablespoons flour
- 1 1/2 cups dry skim milk

**Molasses Cake****Ingredients**

- 2½ cups sifted flour
- ¾ teaspoon baking soda
- 1 teaspoon baking powder
- ¾ teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon cinnamon or allspice
- 1 teaspoon ginger
- ¾ teaspoon cloves
- 1 egg
- ¾ cup melted shortening
- 1½ cups molasses
- ¾ cup hot water

**Procedure.** Mix and sift dry ingredients. Beat egg, stir in melted shortening and molasses. Add sifted dry ingredients alternately with hot water, beating well after each addition. Bake in a greased 9 x 9 x 2 pan in moderate oven (300° F.) 45 minutes. Cut into squares; serve hot or cold. Yield 16 portions.

**One-Egg Cake (Cottage Pudding)****Ingredients.**

- 2 cups sifted flour
- 3 teaspoons baking powder
- ¾ teaspoon salt
- ¾ cup shortening
- 1 cup sugar
- 1 egg
- ¾ cup milk
- 1 teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Mix and sift flour, baking powder and salt. Cream shortening, add sugar slowly and cream until fluffy. Add unbeaten egg and beat well. Add sifted dry ingredients alternately with milk, stirring well after each addition. Add vanilla. Bake in 2 greased 9-inch layer-cake pans, or in greased muffin pans, in moderate oven (375° F.) about 25 minutes, or bake in 1 greased 8-inch square pan in moderate oven (350° F.) about 50 minutes. Cool and frost as desired or use hot with sauce for cottage pudding. Yield 2 layers, about 16 medium-sized cup cakes or 1 square.

**Molasses Cookies****Ingredients:**

- 1 teaspoon soda
- 1 tablespoon warm water
- 2½ cups sifted flour
- 1 teaspoon ginger
- 1 teaspoon cinnamon
- ¾ teaspoon salt
- ¾ cup shortening
- ¾ cup sugar
- ¾ cup molasses

**Procedure:** Dissolve soda in warm water and set aside to cool. Mix and sift flour, spices and salt. Cream shortening, add

to make a stiff dough. Roll out thin on a lightly floured board. Cut into shapes and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) from 8 to 10 minutes. Yield 4 dozen cookies

**THE USE OF DRY SKIM MILK**

As nonfat dry milk is the most inexpensive form of milk, it can be used to great advantage in the limited food budget. Another advantage is that it can be kept in the package on the kitchen shelf without refrigeration. It has the same food value as skimmed fresh milk. Standard recipes may be used if the powdered dry milk is combined with water in equal amount to the milk indicated in the recipe.

**Reconstitution of Dry Skim Milk****Ingredients:**

- 3 tablespoons dry skim milk + 1 cup water can be used instead of 1 cup milk
- 6 tablespoons dry skim milk + 1 pint water can be used instead of 1 pint milk
- ¾ cup (12 tbsps) dry skim milk + 1 quart water can be used instead of 1 quart milk

**Procedure:** Consult label on package of nonfat dry milk for method of reconstitution. Nonfat dry milk or, as it is often called, dry skim milk is available in powdered form under several brand names. It dissolves instantly in cold water, and it is not necessary to shake or beat the mixture, as was the case formerly. A chocolate-flavored milk of this type is also distributed in the retail market.

convenient to use dry skim milk in any form. To use dry skim milk in dry form, just add dry skim milk to the other dry ingredients, such as flour, and then

## Recipes

*Low Caloric*

*Diabetic*

*High Caloric, High Protein*

*Allergy*

*Ketogenic*

*Gluten Free*

*Low Sodium*

## CHAPTER FIFTY

# Recipes for Therapeutic Diets

### LOW CALORIC RECIPES

Cookery for those who must reduce weight or for any other reason must limit the caloric content of the diet may involve both subtraction and addition. This will depend upon the dietary regimen prescribed by the physician. In most dietary prescriptions, the reduction of fats, oil, sugar and flour in the quantities used in standard recipes is necessary. In the interests of flavor, however, certain additions to or replacements in low caloric recipes can well be made. For instance, lean meats that lack natural fat and must be cooked with little fat often will be more palatable when onion, garlic, tomato, celery, chives and other herbs are used. These seasonings are also valuable in salad dressings, especially when they are made without oil. It should be remembered that some of the above seasonings especially those of the onion, garlic and chives group, are among the most likely to cause digestive disturbances. For this reason the patient should be consulted before using them. There are a number of savory dressings with low caloric count that are suitable for use with both vegetable and fruit salads, as well as with greens.

When a low fat diet is prescribed, skim milk, now generally available in dry as well as in fresh form, is satisfactory in soups, desserts and some beverages, and may be used with cereal.

For those who find it difficult to eliminate sweets, saccharin and Sucaryl are palatable when they are used according to tested recipes.

Another product, unflavored gelatin, that has low caloric value, is sometimes an asset in meal preparation, as it gives body that may otherwise be absent in a jellied soup, a salad or a dessert. It extends the apparent size of fruit combinations, and it may serve in the same way when used as an extender for meat or fish. It may also be used with fruit and vegetable juices to increase protein content without materially increasing the caloric count.

Many of the recipes suitable for use in Diabetes (see Diabetic Recipes, pp 552 to 555) will also be found useful in a reducing diet.

### Beverages

Saccharin or Sucaryl may be substituted for sugar in any beverage in which the other ingredients comply in the proportion allowed on the special diet. The



Procedure: Melt drippings. Add onions. Cook until soft and light brown in color.

Add remaining ingredients. Cook 10 minutes. Yield 6 generous servings.

### Creamed Noodles with Carrots

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup diced carrots
- $\frac{1}{2}$  package noodles
- 3 tablespoons drippings
- 1 medium-sized onion, sliced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup dry skim milk
- 4 tablespoons flour
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- 2 cups carrot stock
- $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 cup leftover diced chicken or meat, if available, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup grated cheese

Procedure: Cook carrots covered in 2 cups boiling salted water until tender. Drain and reserve liquor. Cook noodles in generous amount of boiling salted water until tender and drain. Melt drippings in frying pan, add onion and cook over low heat until yellow. Mix dry skim milk, flour, salt and pepper. Sprinkle over the reserved carrot liquor and beat until well blended. Add

Yield 6 servings.

NOTE: Leftover cooked carrots and noodles (2 cups) may be used. Water may replace the carrot stock. String beans, peas or cabbage, or a mixture of vegetables, may replace the carrots.

### Apple Crumble

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sifted flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup dry skim milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup butter, margarine or other

#### shortening

- 3 tablespoons sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon nutmeg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon cinnamon, if desired
- 3 cups sliced apples (or about 1 large apples, sliced)

Procedure: Preheat oven to 350° F. Arrange apples in shallow, well-greased

baking dish. Sprinkle apples with flour mixture. Bake in moderate oven (350° F.) about 25 minutes, or until apples are tender. Remove cover and bake 10 minutes longer, or until crumbs are brown. Good hot or cold with milk or cream. Yield, 6 servings.

### Baked Custard

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup dry skim milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 3 eggs, slightly beaten
- 3 cups boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla

Procedure: Preheat oven to 350° F. in center comes out clean. Yield, 6 servings.

### Cocoa

#### Ingredients:

- 5 tablespoons cocoa
- 5 tablespoons sugar
- Dash of salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups dry skim milk mixed with 1 qt. water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla, if desired

ings.

## **Recipes**

*Low Caloric*

*Diabetic*

*High Caloric, High Protein*

*Allergy*

*Ketogenic*

*Gluten Free*

*Low Sodium*

## **CHAPTER FIFTY**

# **Recipes for Therapeutic Diets**

### **LOW CALORIC RECIPES**

Cookery for those who must reduce weight or for any other reason must limit the caloric content of the diet may involve both subtraction and addition. This will depend upon the dietary regimen prescribed by the physician. In most dietary prescriptions, the reduction of fats, oil, sugar and flour in the quantities used in standard recipes is necessary. In the interests of flavor, however, certain additions to or replacements in low caloric recipes can well be made. For instance, lean meats that lack natural fat and must be cooked with little fat often will be more palatable when onion, garlic, tomato, celery, chives and other herbs are used. These seasonings are also valuable in salad dressings, especially when they are made without oil. It should be remembered that some of the above seasonings, especially those of the onion, garlic and chives group, are among the most likely to cause digestive disturbances. For this reason the patient should be consulted before using them. There are a number of savory dressings with low caloric count that are suitable for use with both vegetable and fruit salads, as well as with greens.

When a low fat diet is prescribed, skim milk, now generally available in dry as well as in fresh form, is satisfactory in soups, desserts and some beverages, and may be used with cereal.

For those who find it difficult to eliminate sweets, saccharin and Sucaryl are palatable when they are used according to tested recipes.

Another product, unflavored gelatin, that has low caloric value, is sometimes an asset in meal preparation, as it gives body that may otherwise be absent in a jellied soup, a salad or a dessert. It extends the apparent size of fruit combinations, and it may serve in the same way when used as an extender for meat or fish. It may also be used with fruit and vegetable juices to increase protein content without materially increasing the caloric count.

Many of the recipes suitable for use in Diabetes (see Diabetic Recipes, pp 552 to 555) will also be found useful in a reducing diet.

### **Beverages**

Saccharin or Sucaryl may be substituted for sugar in any beverage in which the other ingredients comply in the proportion allowed on the special diet. The

**Procedure:** Melt drippings. Add onions. Cook until soft and light brown in color. Add potatoes, fish, salt, pepper, carrot and 6½ cups water. Cover and cook gently about 15 minutes or until potatoes are tender. Mix together flour and dry skim milk. Slowly add remaining 1 cup of water, mixing until smooth. Add to chowder, stirring constantly. Cook 5 minutes or until thickened. Yield 6 generous servings.

### Creamed Noodles with Carrots

#### Ingredients:

- 2 cups diced carrots
- ¾ package noodles
- 3 tablespoons drippings
- 1 medium-sized onion, sliced
- ¾ cup dry skim milk
- 4 tablespoons flour
- 1 teaspoon salt
- ½ teaspoon pepper
- 2 cups carrot stock
- ¾ to 1 cup leftover diced chicken or meat, if available, or ¾ cup grated cheese

**Procedure:** Cook carrots covered in 2½ cups boiling salted water until tender. Drain and reserve liquor. Cook noodles in generous amount of boiling salted water until tender and drain. Melt drippings in frying pan, add onion and cook over low heat until yellow. Mix dry skim milk, flour, salt and pepper. Sprinkle over the reserved carrot liquor and beat until well blended. Add slowly to onions, while stirring constantly over low heat. Continue stirring until

Yield 6 servings

**Note:** Leftover cooked carrots and noodles (2 cups) may be used. Water may replace the carrot stock. String beans, peas or cabbage, or a mixture of vegetables, may replace the carrots.

### Apple Crumble

#### Ingredients:

- ¾ cup sifted flour
- ¾ cup dry skim milk
- ¾ cup butter, margarine or other

shortening

3 tablespoons sugar

½ teaspoon nutmeg

½ teaspoon salt

1 teaspoon cinnamon, if desired

3 cups sliced apples (or about 2 large apples, sliced)

**Procedure:** Mix flour, dry skim milk, sugar, nutmeg, salt and cinnamon. Cut shortening in with 2 knives or pastry blender until mixture is crumbly.

Arrange apples in shallow, well-greased baking dish. Sprinkle apples with flour mixture. Bake in moderate oven (350° F.) about 25 minutes, or until apples are tender. Remove cover and bake 10 minutes longer, or until crumbs are brown. Good hot or cold with milk or cream. Yield. 6 servings.

### Baked Custard

#### Ingredients:

- ¾ cup dry skim milk
- ¾ cup sugar
- ½ teaspoon salt
- 3 eggs, slightly beaten
- 3 cups boiling water
- ½ teaspoon vanilla

Sprinkle with nutmeg. Place in pan of hot water and bake in a moderate oven (375° F.) about 30 minutes, or until knife inserted in center comes out clean. Yield. 6 servings.

### Cocoa

#### Ingredients:

- 5 tablespoons cocoa
- 5 tablespoons sugar
- Dash of salt
- ¾ cup water
- 1½ cups dry skim milk mixed with 1 qt. water
- ½ teaspoon vanilla, if desired

**Procedure:** Mix cocoa, sugar and salt with ¾ cup of water until smooth. Boil over direct heat 2 minutes, stirring all the time. Add dry skim milk mixed with water. Heat to boiling. Add vanilla. Yield 5 or 6 servings.

*ectipes*  
*Low Caloric*  
*Diabetic*  
*High Caloric, High Protein*  
*Allergy*  
*Ketogenic*  
*Gluten Free*  
*Low Sodium*

## CHAPTER FIFTY

# Recipes for Therapeutic Diets

### LOW CALORIC RECIPES

Cookery for those who must reduce weight or for any other reason must limit the caloric content of the diet may involve both subtraction and addition. This will depend upon the dietary regimen prescribed by the physician. In most dietary prescriptions, the reduction of fats, oil, sugar and flour in the quantities used in standard recipes is necessary. In the interests of flavor, however, certain additions to or replacements in low caloric recipes can well be made. For instance, lean meats that lack natural fat and must be cooked with little fat often will be more palatable when onion, garlic, tomato, celery, chives and other herbs are used. These seasonings are also valuable in salad dressings, especially when they are made without oil. It should be remembered that some of the above seasonings, especially those of the onion, garlic and chives group, are among the most likely to cause digestive disturbances. For this reason the patient should be consulted before using them. There are a number of savory dressings with low caloric count that are suitable for use with both vegetable and fruit salads, as well as with greens.

When a low fat diet is prescribed, skim milk, now generally available in dry as well as in fresh form, is satisfactory in soups, desserts and some beverages, and may be used with cereal.

For those who find it difficult to eliminate sweets, saccharin and Sucaryl are palatable when they are used according to tested recipes.

Another product, unflavored gelatin, that has low caloric value, is sometimes an asset in meal preparation, as it gives body that may otherwise be absent in a jellied soup, a salad or a dessert. It extends the apparent size of fruit combinations, and it may serve in the same way when used as an extender for meat or fish. It may also be used with fruit and vegetable juices to increase protein content without materially increasing the caloric count.

Many of the recipes suitable for use in Diabetes (see Diabetic Recipes, pp. 552 to 555) will also be found useful in a reducing diet.

### Beverages

Saccharin or Sucaryl may be substituted for sugar in any beverage in which the other ingredients comply in the proportion allowed on the special diet. The

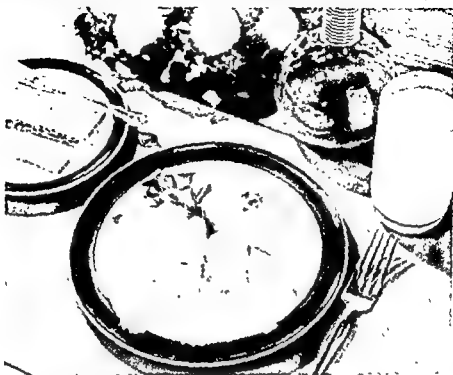


Fig. 123. A satisfying luncheon that is low in calories.

usual allowance for 1 cup of unsweetened liquid is  $\frac{1}{2}$  gr. saccharin tablet or  $\frac{1}{8}$  Gm. Sucaryl tablet or  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Sucaryl solution.

### Soups

Soups made from meat stock, strained,

This also is true when these products are jellied or bought in the form of "madrilene." Clam juice also lacks calories. Any of these clear soups may be flavored

milk vegetable soup made without stock, while higher in caloric count, will be much lower than a cream soup.

### Jellied Consommé

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- 2 cups well-seasoned soup stock or consommé
- Sliced lemon
- Minced parsley

**Procedure.** Soften gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup stock. Heat remainder of stock and stir into gelatin. Chill. When set, beat lightly with a fork and serve in soup cups. Serve each with slice of lemon dipped in parsley. Yield, 3 or 4 servings.

### Tomato Madrilene

**Procedure:** Follow directions for jellied consommé (above), substituting 1 cup tomato juice cocktail for 1 cup stock or consommé. If a highly seasoned madrilene is desired,

tion, will still have a low caloric count, as it will when it is jellied. In this same class is a vegetable soup when made with either a stock or tomato juice. A



Fig 134 Gelatin is a good stretcher for low caloric foods in salads, entrées and desserts.

add Worcestershire sauce and Tabasco to taste. Serve sprinkled with finely cut Pascal celery or green pepper. Place wedge of lemon on side of plate.

### Milk-Vegetable Soup

#### Ingredients:

- 2 slices onion
- 1 small stalk celery
- 1 small carrot
- 1 cup skim milk
- Salt
- Paprika
- Chives or parsley

**Procedure:** Peel, slice and chop onion. Chop celery. Scrape and chop carrot. Combine with milk in top of double boiler and cook about 15 minutes until vegetables are tender. Season to taste and serve sprinkled with minced chives or parsley. Yield: 1 serving.

### Meats

Roasting and broiling are the easiest methods to use for cooking meat when calories must be limited. Roasting should be done on a rack, as, in this way, most of the fat will drip into the bottom of the pan. Extra fat may be trimmed after the meat is sliced and before it is served. Broiling is, of course, always done on a rack. However, pan-broiling calls for a skillet. Sprinkle skillet surface with salt by means of a shaker. In the case of veal, rub surface lightly with fat before adding salt. If fat accumulates in the pan, it should be poured off during the cooking. When cooking has been completed, the meat should be placed on a paper towel and turned so that extra fat will be absorbed before it is served. For hamburger cakes, lean beef should be ground espe-

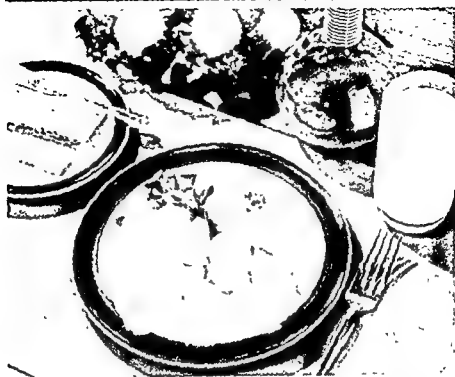


Fig. 133. A satisfying luncheon that is low in calories.

usual allowance for 1 cup of unsweetened liquid is  $\frac{1}{2}$  gr. saccharin tablet or 1 Gm. Sucaryl tablet or  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Sucaryl solution.

### Soups

Soups made from meat stock, strained,  
2 rounded heaping

with tomato juice and savory seasonings  
1 rounded heaping

with tomato

milk vegetable soup made without stock, while higher in caloric count, will be much lower than a cream soup.

### Jellied Consommé

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- 2 cups well-seasoned soup stock or consommé
- Sliced lemon
- Minced parsley

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup stock. Heat remainder of stock and stir into gelatin. Chill. When set, beat lightly with a fork and serve in soup cups. Serve each with slice of lemon dipped in parsley. Yield: 3 or 4 servings.

### Tomato Madrilene

**Procedure:** Follow directions for jellied consommé (above), substituting 1 cup tomato juice cocktail for 1 cup stock or consommé. If a highly seasoned madrilene is desired,

- 2 cups canned tomatoes
- 1 tablespoon tarragon vinegar
- 1 teaspoon Sucaryl solution
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon paprika

**Procedure:** Trim crusts from bread. Cut

cups

### Buttermilk or Yoghurt Dressing

#### Ingredients

- 1 cup buttermilk or yoghurt
- 1 tablespoon minced onion
- 1 tablespoon minced green pepper
- 1 tablespoon minced celery
- 1 tablespoon catsup
- 1 tablespoon herb vinegar
- Salt to taste

**Procedure:** Mix ingredients thoroughly and let stand 1 hour or more to ripen flavor. A peeled clove of garlic may be placed in the dressing and removed before dressing is used. The use of yoghurt produces a thicker dressing. Yield: About 1 cup

### Cooked Dressing

#### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  envelope unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vinegar
- 1 teaspoon mustard
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon paprika
- 1 egg, beaten

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in cold water. Dissolve with boiling water and add vinegar. Mix seasonings and stir into beaten egg. Add hot liquid slowly and stir over low heat until mixture begins to thicken. Chill thoroughly and beat before serving. Yield: About  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups

### Zero Salad Dressing

(May be used in any amount)

#### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup tomato juice
- 2 tablespoons lemon juice or vinegar
- 1 tablespoon onion, finely chopped
- Salt and pepper
- Chopped parsley or green pepper, horseradish or mustard, etc., may be added, if desired.

**Procedure:** Combine ingredients in a jar with a tightly fitted top. Shake well before using.

### Desserts

In a reducing diet, fresh fruits are the usual choice for dessert. Frozen fruits are packed in a syrup, but this is very light.

When milk is a dessert ingredient, fresh skim milk or reconstituted dry milk may be used. Jellyed desserts and low caloric custards may be made with fresh skim milk or with reconstituted dry milk. They may be sweetened with Sucaryl.

Sucaryl, available both in tablet and liquid form, may be used as sweetener. The latter is convenient, as the tablets

Saccharin, the first of the artificial sweeteners, when used in a recipe may give the product a slightly bitter taste.

Both Sucaryl and saccharin tablets, easily carried in a small container, have their largest use as a sweetener for coffee and tea. They dissolve quickly in a hot beverage.

Most of the recipes suitable for a reducing diet are appropriate for use in a diabetic diet.

Most of the recipes will provide 4 servings, as these desserts keep well in the refrigerator and can be varied by serving with different fruits. The recipes can, of course, be halved if desired.

### Blanc Manger

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold skim milk
- 2 teaspoons Sucaryl solution
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups scalded skim milk
- 1 teaspoon vanilla or mint extract

**Procedure:** Soak gelatin in cold milk 5 minutes. Add Sucaryl and salt to scalded milk.



cially, as normal hamburger contains a comparatively large amount of fat.

Braising is a method used for less tender cuts of meat. The meat should be browned according to directions for broiling, after which liquid is added. A stew for which the meat is cut in pieces calls for the same initial preparation. If fat accumulates in the liquid during the long cooking, the meat should be drained, the liquid chilled and the hardened fat skimmed. The meat then may be reheated in the remaining liquid.

Leftover cooked meat may be combined with vegetables and well-seasoned gelatin mixture. See jellied fish salad on this page.

### Fish

The best methods for cooking fish for a low caloric diet are "poaching" (simmering gently in water in a covered utensil) and baking in greased foil. Fish also may be broiled on a greased broiler rack if the fish is sprinkled lightly with milk or tomato juice. Frying is impractical without the use of a generous amount of fat. Poached fish (see above) may be used to advantage in a jellied salad, "Dietetic Tuna" packed in brine is useful in a low caloric diet.

### Baked Fish in Foil

**Procedure:** Grease pieces of foil about 3 times the size of fish fillet. Season fillet. Place on foil and fold over fillet. Press edges together to seal tightly. Bake in hot oven (450° F) about 25 minutes.

### Jellied Fish Salad

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 drop Sucaryl solution
- 3 tablespoons vinegar
- 1 8-ounce can tuna fish, flaked
- $\frac{1}{2}$  green pepper, minced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  small onion, minced
- 3 stalks celery, minced

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water. Add boiling water, salt and Sucaryl,

and stir until gelatin is dissolved. Add vinegar. Cool. When jelly is nearly set, stir

cooked meat or chicken may be substituted for the tuna fish.

### Vegetables

Special care must be taken in cooking vegetables so as to retain all their natural flavors (see Chap. 45). They must be particularly well seasoned, as the use of butter as a dressing must be limited. Minced parsley, chives or sweet onion, minced celery or green pepper often is a welcome addition. Tomatoes may be used in combination with certain vegetables.

### Salads

Salads have a valuable place in a reducing diet. Such large portions of vegetables and fruit salads may be used that a limited meal will appear to be more satisfying as well as actually to be so. The occasional use of an "aspic base" for fruits or vegetables, or a combination of both, is recommended. Cottage cheese also may be put to good use in salads. Although salad oil in dressings must be avoided or limited in content, there are a number of savory dressings that can be prepared without its use.

### Spicy Salad Dressing

#### Ingredients:

- 1 medium celery stalk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  green pepper, seeded
- 1 small onion, peeled
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 1 teaspoon Sucaryl solution
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vinegar
- 1 drop Tabasco

**Procedure:** Grind vegetables together. Add salt and Sucaryl to vinegar. Add Tabasco. Combine with vegetables. Yield, About  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup.

### Tomato Dressing

#### Ingredients:

- 1 slice soft bread
- 1 clove garlic, peeled



and stir until thoroughly dissolved. Add to softened gelatin and stir until thoroughly dissolved. Chill until as thick as unbeaten egg white. Add flavoring and beat until

thoroughly dissolved. Add to gelatin and stir until dissolved. Add lemon juice. Pour into serving dish or mold and chill until set. Yield, 4 servings.

Yield, 4 servings

### Baked Custard

#### Ingredients:

- 2 teaspoons Sucaryl solution
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 3 cups scalded skim milk
- 3 eggs
- 1 teaspoon vanilla extract
- Nutmeg

**Procedure:** Add Sucaryl and salt to scalded milk and stir until thoroughly dissolved. Beat eggs until yolks and whites are blended thoroughly and stir in the hot milk

are done. Remove from hot water at once and chill. Nutmeg may be sprinkled over the custards before or after baking.

### Applesauce

**Procedure:** Wash apples. Halve and remove blossom ends. Slice without paring. Place in saucepan with water enough to cover. Cover saucepan and cook until apple pulp is soft. Rub through coarse sieve. Measure pulp. To 1 pint strained pulp add 1 teaspoon or more Sucaryl solution to taste. Beat thoroughly to dissolve and add salt to taste. Cinnamon or nutmeg to taste also may be added.

### Lemon Jelly

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- 2 cups cold water
- Rind of  $\frac{1}{2}$  lemon
- 1 tablespoon Sucaryl solution
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 4 tablespoons lemon juice

**Procedure:** Soften gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water. Place remaining water in saucepan and add lemon rind. Bring to boiling and remove rind. Add Sucaryl and salt; stir until

### Jellied Grape Juice

#### Ingredients:

- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Sucaryl solution
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 cup reconstituted frozen grape juice

## DIABETIC RECIPES

Although, for the most part, diabetics can choose their diets from the foods on the family menu, there are times when so-called "mixed" dishes add desirable variety. The following recipes are based on the material included in the chapter on diabetes. Their source is the pamphlet *Meal Planning and Exchange Lists* prepared by and available from The American Dietetic Association.

### Lemon Gelatin

(May be used in any amount)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 teaspoon unflavored gelatin
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons cold water
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water

**Procedure:** Put cold water in top of double boiler, add gelatin, let stand 10 minutes at room temperature. Place pan over boiling water to dissolve gelatin. If desired, Sucaryl solution to flavor may be added. Remove from stove. Add lemon juice and  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of water. Chill. To make Coffee Gelatin omit lemon juice and use  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup coffee in place of  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of water.

### Orange Gelatin

(1 serving equals 1 fruit from List 3)

**Procedure:** Use  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice in place of water in recipe for lemon gelatin.

**Pineapple Gelatin**

(1 serving equals 1 fruit from List 3)

**Ingredients:**

- 1 teaspoon unflavored gelatin
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of water
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup pineapple juice

**Procedure:** As for Lemon Gelatin**Fruit Gelatin I**

(1 serving equals 1 fruit from List 3)

One serving of any fruit from List 3 may be added to lemon gelatin, such as  $\frac{1}{2}$  small banana

**Fruit Gelatin II**

(1 serving equals 2 fruits from List 3)

One serving of any fruit from List 3 may be added to orange or pineapple gelatin.

**Fruit Ice**

(1 serving equals 1 fruit from List 3)

**Ingredients:**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice or  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup pineapple juice
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- 1 egg white
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water

**Procedure:** Combine fruit juice and water, freeze. Stir mixture often while it is freezing. When almost hard, fold in one stiffly beaten egg white.

**Fresh Fruit Cup**

(1 serving equals 1 fruit from List 3)

Any fruits in List 3 may be combined to make a fruit cup. One half cup of mixed fruits equals 1 serving. Example:

- Orange grapefruit, pineapple
- Apple, grapefruit, strawberries
- Peach, orange, blackberries
- Grapes, orange, melon
- Melon, grapefruit, banana

**Baked Custard**(1 serving equals  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk and 1 Meat Exchange)**Ingredients:**

- 1 egg
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- Few grains salt

into a custard cup and sprinkle with nutmeg. Set in pan of hot water and bake in a moderate oven (350° F.) for about 45 minutes. (Other flavors such as almond, lemon, orange or maple may be used in place of vanilla.)

**Cheese Fondue**

(1 serving equals 1 Bread Exchange and 2 Meat Exchanges and 1 cup milk)

**Ingredients:**

- 1 egg
- 1 cup milk
- 1 slice bread, cubed
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cheese, diced (1 oz.)

In place of cheese,  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup (1 oz.) of chopped ham, chicken, tuna fish or salmon may be used.

**Meat Stew**

(1 serving equals 2 or 3 Meat Exchanges and 1 Bread Exchange and 1 serving vegetable from List 2B and 1 Fat Exchange)

**Ingredients:**

- 1 teaspoon fat
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup mixed vegetables, list 2B (carrots, peas, onions)
- 2 or 3 ozs meat, cubed
- 1 small potato
- Salt and pepper to taste

**Procedure:** Brown meat in fat. Add 1 cup water, salt, pepper and a few celery leaves for seasoning. Simmer slowly until meat is tender. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vegetables, List 2B, and

**Baked Chicken and Rice**

(1 serving equals 1 Bread Exchange and 1 or 2 Meat Exchanges)

**Ingredients:**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cooked rice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup diced chicken (1 or 2 ozs.)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup clear broth
- Salt and pepper
- Chopped parsley, onions, celery, mushrooms, green pepper, pimiento or tomatoes may be added for variety, if desired.

**Procedure:** Combine the above ingredients

and place in dish. Bake in a moderate oven until brown.

Noodles or spaghetti may be used in place of rice. For the chicken, any type of meat or fish, such as lamb, ham, tuna or shrimp, may be used.

### Fish Chowder

(1 serving equals 1 Fat Exchange and 1 Bread Exchange and 1 or 2 Meat Exchanges and 1 cup milk)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 teaspoon fat
- $\frac{1}{2}$  small onion, chopped
- 1 small potato, sliced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{3}{4}$  cup cooked fish (1 or 2 ozs.)
- 1 cup milk
- Salt and pepper

**Procedure.** Cook fish in salted water. Melt fat in saucepan, brown the onion. Add cooked fish, sliced potato,  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water in which fish was cooked. Cover and cook for 15 minutes until potatoes are tender. Add milk and seasonings.

### Vegetable Soup

(1 serving equals 1 vegetable from List 2B)

#### Ingredients

- 1 cup meat stock or bouillon cube and 1 cup water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup mixed vegetables: carrots, peas
- $\frac{1}{2}$  small onion, chopped
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cabbage, shredded
- 1 stalk celery, diced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup tomato juice

1 . . . . .

### Potato Salad I

(1 serving equals 1 Bread Exchange)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cooked potato, diced
- 1 or 2 tablespoons Zero salad dressing
- Salt, pepper, chopped onion, celery, parsley, green pepper, as desired

**Procedure.** Combine ingredients and serve

### Potato Salad II

(1 serving equals 1 Fat Exchange and 1 Bread Exchange)

#### Ingredients.

Use recipe for Potato Salad I except that 1 teaspoon of mayonnaise may be used in place of Zero salad dressing.

### Potato Salad III

(1 serving equals 1 Bread Exchange and 1 Meat Exchange and 1 Fat Exchange, if desired)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 hard-cooked egg, sliced, may be added to recipe for Potato Salad I or II
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup (1 oz.) diced ham, bologna or frankfurter or 5 small shrimps may be used in place of egg.

### Zero Salad Dressing

See under Low Caloric Recipes

### Italian Spaghetti

(1 serving equals 1 or 2 Meat Exchanges and 1 or 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  Bread Exchanges and 1 Fat Exchange)

#### Ingredients

- 1 teaspoon fat
- $\frac{1}{2}$  small onion, chopped
- 2 tablespoons tomato paste
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- Salt, pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup tomatoes
- 1 or 2 ozs. ground meat

more as needed, add more water. Serve on  $\frac{1}{2}$  or 1 cup cooked spaghetti. One or 2 teaspoons grated cheese may be used.

### Macaroni and Cheese

(1 serving equals 1 Bread Exchange and 1 or 2 Meat Exchanges and  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cooked macaroni
- $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{3}{4}$  cup diced cheese (1 or 2 ozs.)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- Salt, pepper, dash of mustard

**Procedure.** Cook cheese and milk together in double boiler until smooth. Add macaroni and mix well. Bake in moderate oven about 20 minutes or until brown.

In place of macaroni,  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cooked rice, noodles or spaghetti may be used.

### Mixed Vegetable Salad

(May be used in any amount)

#### Ingredients.

Any combination of vegetables from List 2A may be used, such as:

- 1 Lettuce, cucumber, celery, green pepper



Fig 135. A hearty breakfast orange juice, egg, toast, coffee and milk

2. Chucory, tomato, radish
3. Lettuce, parsley, raw cauliflower, tomato
4. Escarole, tomato, cucumber
5. Cabbage, celery, green pepper
6. Lettuce, watercress, cucumber
7. Lettuce, raw spinach, radish

Procedure: Salad may be combined with Zero salad dressing. French dressing or mayonnaise, depending upon fat allowed in the meal plan

### HIGH CALORIC, HIGH PROTEIN RECIPES

There are a good many ways in which the calorie or the protein content, either of a beverage or a dish, may be increased. For convenience, some

### To Increase Calories

1. Use lactose in addition to sugar. Beta lactose is preferable to ordinary lactose, as it may be stirred directly into the recipe instead of having to be dissolved in hot water before being added.
2. Replace part of the milk with cream or evaporated milk.
3. Add a ball of ice cream to any milk or fruit drink, ginger ale or root beer.
4. If an electric blender is available, any fresh, canned or soaked dried fruit may be combined with milk.

### To Increase the Protein Content

1. Beat 1 or 2 tablespoons of dry milk into the fresh milk to be used for a recipe by sprinkling the dry milk over the fluid milk in a bowl and beating with a rotary egg beater until completely blended.



Fig. 136 Protein may be increased by the use of extra dry skim milk in desserts and cookies.

2. Use  $\equiv$  eggs instead of 1 in recipes which call for eggs, or add 1 well-beaten egg to any cold beverage made with milk.

3. Add 1 or 2 tablespoons of one of the many protein supplements which are manufactured by a number of drug and chemical companies. Some of these are low in sodium, which may be of advantage when a high protein, low sodium diet is desired. Suggestions for the addition of these will be found in the pamphlets which accompany the products.

4. Add gelatin to hot broth, diluted condensed soups or homemade soups.

5. Add egg whites to fruit juices.

#### Consommé with Gelatin

##### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold consommé or  $\equiv$  cup water and
- 1 bouillon cube
- 1 envelope unflavored gelatin

**Procedure:** Add consommé or water and bouillon cube  $\equiv$  gelatin in saucepan. Stir constantly over low heat until gelatin is dissolved and bring almost to boiling. Yield 1 generous serving

#### Condensed Soup with Gelatin

##### Ingredients.

- 1 can condensed soup
- 2 envelopes unflavored gelatin
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups milk

**Procedure:** Place contents of can of condensed soup in saucepan. Soak gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk. Add remaining milk to condensed soup and heat. Add softened gelatin and stir constantly over low heat until gelatin is dissolved. Bring almost to boiling and serve at once. Or pour into soup cups and chill until set. Or pour into small molds and, when set, turn out and serve with salad greens. Yield 3 to 4 servings

#### Fruit or Vegetable Juice with Gelatin

**Procedure:** In top of small double boiler, soften 1 envelope unflavored gelatin in  $\frac{1}{2}$

cup cold fruit or vegetable juice. Stir over boiling water until gelatin is thoroughly dissolved. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of chilled fruit or vegetable juice.

### High Caloric, High Protein Feeding

#### Ingredients:

- 1 pint milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup nonfat dry milk
- 2 eggs
- 1 pint ice cream
- Vanilla or other flavoring to taste

**Procedure:** Add milk to dry milk to make a smooth paste. Beat in eggs. Add ice cream and flavoring and mix well. Yield: 6 generous servings.

### High Caloric Fruitade

#### Ingredients

- 1 tablespoon sugar
- 3 tablespoons beta lactose
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup orange juice or pineapple juice

**Procedure:** Add sugar to lactose and fruit juices. Mix thoroughly, chill and serve. Yield: 1 serving.

### Ginger-Ale Ice-Cream Soda

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vanilla ice cream
- 1 small bottle ginger ale

**Procedure:** Put ice cream in a tall glass and pour half the ginger ale over it. Stir until well mixed, then add the remainder of the ginger ale. Serve at once. Yield: 1 serving.

**Note:** Root beer may replace ginger ale.

### High Caloric Chocolate Milk Shake

#### Ingredients:

- 3 tablespoons beta lactose
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons cocoa syrup
- 2 tablespoons heavy cream
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Procedure:** Mix lactose, syrup, cream and milk. Beat with rotary egg beater until slightly foamy. Yield: 1 serving.

### High Caloric Eggnog

#### Ingredients:

- 1 egg
- 3 tablespoons beta lactose
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- 2 tablespoons cream
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Beat egg and add lactose, milk,

cream and vanilla. Mix thoroughly, chill and serve. Yield: 1 serving.

### High Caloric Custard

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons sugar
- 4 tablespoons beta lactose
- 1 cup thin cream
- 1 egg
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla
- Nutmeg

**Procedure:** Add sugar and lactose to warm cream. Add egg, vanilla and nutmeg.

### High Protein Custard

**Procedure:** In above recipe substitute milk for cream and increase eggs to 2.

### High Caloric Cereal Gruel I

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup farina
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon salt
- 2 cups boiling water
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups hot milk
- 6 tablespoons beta lactose

**Procedure:** Add farina slowly to salted boiling water and cook over direct heat until thickened. Cook over water for  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. Add hot milk and lactose. Yield: 6 servings.

### High Caloric Cereal Gruel II

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons pearl barley or oatmeal
- $\frac{1}{8}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 cup water
- 2 tablespoons beta lactose
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cream
- Sugar or additional salt to taste

**Procedure:** Add barley or oatmeal slowly to salted boiling water and simmer slowly for 1 hour over direct flame. Strain the liquid into another pan, add lactose and cream and sugar or salt to taste, reheat and serve. Yield: 1 or 2 servings.

### Protein Fruitade

#### Ingredients:

- 2 tablespoons Protinal\*
- 1 cup fruit juice

\* National Drug Company.



**Procedure:** Make a paste of the Protinal with a small amount of fruit juice. Add remaining fruit juice and chill. Stir or shake well before serving. **Yield:** 1 generous or 2 medium servings

### Fruit Juice with Egg White

#### Ingredients:

- 1 egg white
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup fruit juice (tomato, orange, pineapple or grape juice, etc.)

**Procedure:** Cut egg white with 2 knives. Add fruit juice and beat just enough to blend. Avoid beating to a froth. **Yield:** 1 serving

### Ginger Ale, Grape Juice with Egg White

#### Ingredients:

- 2 egg whites
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup each liquid ingredient

**Procedure:** Beat egg whites to stiff peaks. Add liquid ingredients and beat until thoroughly blended. **Yield:** 1 generous serving or 2 medium

### Lemonade with Egg White

#### Ingredients:

- 4 teaspoons dextrose
- Hot water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold water
- 2 tablespoons lemon juice
- 1 egg white

**Procedure:** Dissolve dextrose in a little hot water. Add remaining ingredients and beat until thoroughly blended. **Yield:** 1 generous serving or 2 medium

### High Protein Milk Shake

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup Protinal
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- 1 cup milk

**Yield:** 1 serving

**NOTE:** Lonalac\* may be substituted for the milk to make this beverage low in sodium. Lactose may be added for extra calories.

\* Mead Johnson Co

### High Caloric, High Protein, Low Sodium Eggnog

#### Ingredients:

- 100 Gm. beta lactose
- 7 eggs
- 500 Gm Lonalac (dry)
- 500 cc. 18 per cent cream
- Water to make up to 2,000 cc.

**Procedure:** Place in rotary mixer and mix until well blended. **Yield:** 8-10 servings.

### High Protein Eggnog

#### Ingredients:

- 1 egg white
- 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons dry skim milk
- 1 egg yolk
- 1 tablespoon dextrose or sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- Vanilla
- Nutmeg

**Procedure:** Beat egg whites to stiff peaks. Add remaining ingredients and beat until thoroughly blended. **Yield:** 1 generous serving or 2 medium

### High Protein Malted Milk

#### Ingredients:

- 2 egg whites
- 3 tablespoons malted milk powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

### High Protein Milk

#### Ingredients:

- 2 egg whites
- 4 tablespoons dry skim milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

**Procedure:** Add milk, sugar and flavoring to taste. Blend well. **Yield:** 1 generous serving

### High Protein, Low Sodium Beverage

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup Lonalac (dry)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- 1 quart water
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups Protinal



Fig. 137 Bran muffins ready for serving

**Procedure** Make a thin paste of the Lonalac, sugar and part of the water. Add the remainder of the water and beat with a rotary egg beater until smooth. To 2 cups of the liquid Lonalac gradually add the Protinal by sprinkling it on top and beating until smooth. Add the remainder of the liquid Lonalac and beat. Chill. Stir well before using. Do not warm. Yield 5 or 6 servings.

**Variation** Fruit juice may be used in place of Lonalac. This will change the proteins but not the sodium content.

**NOTE** There is a variety of low sodium, high protein beverages on the market, any of which may be used as above.

### ALLERGY RECIPES

The preparation of food for a patient with allergy may be a real problem, especially when the more common types of food produce allergic symptoms. It is not too difficult to eliminate fish, shellfish and certain vegetables and fruits, but when the offenders are milk, eggs

and wheat—all of which are used in the preparation of everyday meals—meal planning and preparation call for constant consideration. When the allergy is to milk alone, water may be substituted for milk in any standard recipe. When

made from other grains or from potatoes can be used in certain recipes, few of which, however, are as satisfactory as when standard wheat flour is used. The crisp rye wafers that are obtainable in every grocery store are used largely for patients allergic to milk, wheat and eggs, as they are free of all of these

For thickening sauces and gravies, cornstarch may be substituted for flour, half as much as the standard proportion being used. Ready-to-eat cereals such as cornflakes or crisp rice cereal may replace bread and cracked crumbs for toppings and for coating foods for frying. They may also be used in combination with fruits for baked desserts and for pie shells.

#### Combinations of Flour To Be Used in Place of 1 Cup Wheat Flour

1 Rye flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
Potato flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
2. Rye flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
Potato flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
3 Rice flour (10 tbsp.)	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
Rye flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup
4 Soy flour	1 cup
Potato starch flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup

When substitutes for wheat flour are used, the resulting products cannot be scored by the standards used for breads made with wheat flour alone, especially when eggs must be omitted. It is sometimes difficult to purchase flours other than wheat, and usually a "health store" is the only place where they can be found. If possible, light-rye rather than whole-rye flour should be chosen, as the whole-rye flour spoils rather quickly.

Corn meal and ground rolled oats are two products which can be used to advantage, as they are always available and are generally acceptable.

When small quantities of various flours are to be combined and when coarse flours are used, it is not necessary to sift the flour before measuring, but combinations of flours should be thoroughly mixed and sifted with the other dry ingredients. Most muffins and biscuits have better texture when made in small sizes. If small muffin pans and biscuit cutters are not available, decrease the indicated oven temperatures by 25° and increase the baking time slightly for larger products.

Additional recipes, suitable for patients allergic to wheat only, will be found under Gluten-Free Recipes.

For further information with regard to recipes for the allergic patient, the nurse is referred to "Allergy Recipes" published by The American Dietetic Association.

In the following recipes the letters W-E-M denote the absence of wheat, eggs and milk, according to the initial or initials used.

#### Rye Bread (W-E-M)

##### Ingredients:

- 1 package or cake yeast, active dry or compressed
- 1½ cups water
- 2 tablespoons sugar
- 1½ teaspoons salt
- 2 tablespoons melted shortening
- 5 cups light-rye flour (approximately)

**Procedure:** Crumble compressed yeast or empty envelope of dry yeast into large bowl. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water (warm for dry, lukewarm for compressed yeast) and 1 teaspoon sugar. Stir and let stand 15 minutes. Add re-

until smooth and elastic. Place in greased bowl, cover with a towel and let rise over hot water until double in bulk. Divide into

two parts and shape each on floured board, kneading until mixture can be shaped into a loaf. Place in greased bread pan and let rise until double. Bake in a moderately hot oven (425° F.) until lightly browned (about 15 minutes). Lower temperature to 350° F. and continue baking about 30 minutes more.

### Rolls Oats Biscuits (W-E-M)

#### Ingredients

- 2 cups finely ground rolled oats
- 1 teaspoon salt
- 3 teaspoons baking powder
- 8 tablespoons shortening
- $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  cup water

**Procedure:** Mix ground oats thoroughly with salt and baking powder. Cut in or rub in shortening until mixture is as fine as coarse corn meal. Stir in enough water to make a stiff dough. Pat out and cut into rounds. For a drop biscuit, add more water and drop by tablespoonfuls on baking sheet. Bake in hot oven (450° F.) from 10 to 12 minutes. Yield 12 small biscuits.

**Note:** 1 cup light-rye flour may replace 1 cup ground rolled oats.

### Rye and Corn-Meal Muffins (W-E-M)

#### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup light-rye flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup corn meal
- 3 teaspoons baking powder
- 1 tablespoon sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- 1 tablespoon melted shortening

**Procedure:** Sift dry ingredients together. Stir in water and shortening, continue stirring until blended. Bake in well-greased muffin tins in moderately hot oven (400° F.) from 20 to 25 minutes. Yield 6 small muffins.

### Old-fashioned Johnnycakes (W-E-M)

#### Ingredients

- 1 tablespoon bacon droppings
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup corn meal
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1 tablespoon sugar

**Procedure:** Add shortening to boiling water. Stir in corn meal, salt and sugar and stir over low heat until mixture thickens. Drop by tablespoonfuls on preheated well-greased

griddle and bake until lightly browned on both sides. Lower heat under griddle and bake 5 minutes more, turning often. Yield 6-8 cakes.

### Crisp Corn Pone (W-E-M)

**Procedure:** Prepare batter for Old-fashioned Johnnycakes. Spread mixture on well-greased 9-inch pie pan. Dot with butter or margarine and bake in moderately hot oven (450° F.) 20 minutes. Place under heat of preheated broiler about 5 minutes until lightly browned. Cut in pie-shaped pieces and serve with butter or gravy.

### Butterscotch Wafers (W-M)

#### Ingredients

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup unsifted rye flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup shortening
- 1 cup brown sugar, firmly packed
- 1 egg, well beaten
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup chopped nut meats

**Procedure:** Mix flour, baking powder and salt. Melt shortening, stir in sugar and mix well. Remove from heat and stir in well-beaten eggs. Stir in sifted dry ingredients to which nut meats have been added. Drop by  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoonfuls on greased baking sheet and bake in slow oven (325° F.) about 15 minutes. Cool slightly, then remove carefully with a thin knife or spatula. If cookies harden on sheet, return to the oven for a few minutes. Yield about 34 dozen cookies 2 inches in diameter.

### Quick Chocolate Drops (W-E)

#### Ingredients

- 2 squares chocolate, melted
- $\frac{1}{4}$  cups (14-oz. can) sweetened condensed milk
- 2 cups chopped nut meats or 3 cups shredded coconut

**Procedure:** Blend melted chocolate with condensed milk. Stir in chopped nut meats or coconut and mix well. Drop by teaspoonfuls on greased baking sheet and bake in moderate oven (350° F.) from 15 to 20 minutes. Yield 4 dozen cookies 1 inch in diameter.

**Note:** This recipe may be halved if there is some other use for the condensed milk. These cookies keep indefinitely, however, and it may be more practical to make up the entire recipe.

**Rice Krispies Marshmallow Squares (W-E-M)****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  cup vegetable shortening $\frac{1}{2}$  lb eggless marshmallows(about 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  dozen) $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla1 package crisp rice cereal (5 $\frac{1}{2}$  ozs.)

**Procedure:** Cook shortening and marshmallows in double boiler (about 30 minutes). Add vanilla and beat thoroughly to blend. Put Rice Krispies in large greased bowl and pour on marshmallow mixture, stirring briskly. Press into shallow greased pan. Cut into squares when cool. Yield: 32 2-inch squares.

**Meringues (W-M)****Ingredients:**

1 egg white

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar

Dash salt

 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Beat the egg white until stiff and dry. Beat in gradually half the sugar and the salt. Fold in remaining sugar and vanilla extract. Drop meringues by tablespoonfuls on ungreased baking sheet, piling mixture high in center. Bake in slow oven (275° F) from about 40 to 45 minutes.

**Apple Tapioca (W-E-M)****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  cup uncooked tapioca (1 $\frac{1}{2}$  ozs.) $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon nutmeg $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon cinnamon

**Procedure:** Pare, core and slice apples. Put into greased 8-inch baking dish. Add boil-

cover and stir in a mixture of  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup of the sugar, tapioca, salt and spices. Mix thoroughly. Bake, uncovered, 5 minutes longer,

then stir mixture well. Sprinkle top with remaining sugar and dot with remaining  $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoon butter. Bake 10 minutes longer, or until tapioca is clear. Serve warm or cold. Yield: 4 servings.

**Apple Strudel (W-E-M)****Ingredients:**

5 cups cornflakes

3 cups sliced apples

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar, granulated or brown

Cinnamon

3 tablespoons butter or margarine

**Procedure:** Put layer of cornflakes in greased 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -quart casserole. Cover with layer of apples. Add half the sugar, sprinkle with cinnamon and dot with one third of the butter or the margarine. Add another layer of cornflakes, remaining apples and sugar. Sprinkle with cinnamon and dot with more butter or margarine. Put a layer of

cream. Yield: 8 servings.

**Note:** Add about 2 tablespoons water to strudel before baking if apples are not juicy. Sprinkle few drops lemon juice over apples if they are not tart.

**Cream Sauce (W-E)****Ingredients:**

1 tablespoon shortening

1 tablespoon cornstarch

 $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

Few grains pepper

1 cup milk

**Procedure:** Melt shortening. Stir in cornstarch, salt and pepper. Stir in milk. Stir

**Rice Stuffing (W-E-M)****Ingredients:** $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rice $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

3 cups boiling water

 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced celery $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced onion $\frac{1}{2}$  cup fat5 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups (1 package) crisp rice cereal

2 tablespoons minced parsley

1 tablespoon poultry seasoning

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup stock or water

**Procedure:** Wash rice thoroughly in a sieve and drain well. Add rice to boiling salted water slowly so that water continues to bubble. Boil rapidly 15 to 20 minutes until rice is tender. Drain in sieve. Brown celery and onion in fat. Stir in rice and mix well. Crush Rice Krispies into coarse crumbs. Add parsley, seasonings and stock. Combine with rice and mix thoroughly. Yield: 5 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups stuffing.

**Note:** Stuffing may be baked in a covered casserole in moderate oven (375° F) for 25 minutes.

### KETOGENIC DIET

The ketogenic diet is extremely low in carbohydrate and must be carefully calculated for protein, fat and carbohydrate content. The usual types of bread are seldom permitted on this regimen. The following recipe for muffins may have some use as a substitute.

#### Bran-Soy Muffins

**Ingredients:**

15 Gm. Battle Creek cooked bran or

White Rose cooked bran

25 Gm. soy flour

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon baking powder

25 Gm. butter, sweet

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup water

2 egg yolks

2 egg whites, stiffly beaten

**Procedure:** Mix dry ingredients. Melt butter. Add water and melted butter to the dry-ingredient mixture. Fold in egg yolks and stiffly beaten egg whites. Bake in 12 small lightly greased muffin tins in moderately hot oven (425° F) 15 to 20 minutes. Each muffin contains 0.1 Gm. carbohydrate, 1.8 Gm. protein and 3 Gm. fat.

### GLUTEN-FREE RECIPES

The "gluten-free" diet calls for the omission of all wheat and rye flours, oatmeal, barley and buckwheat. Corn meal, rice and rice flour and wheat starch may be used freely. The following recipes use the permitted flours only. A few other suitable recipes will be found under Allergy Recipes.

### Guide for Substituting Rice Flour in Standard Recipes

- 1 Substitute  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rice flour for 1 cup regular flour
- 2 More liquid (very small amount) may decrease graininess
- 3 Baking time may be slightly longer.

### Gluten-Free Bread

**Ingredients:**

1 cup unsifted rice flour or 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cup gluten-free wheat starch (Celanese Products Co.)

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

3 teaspoons baking powder

4 tablespoons vegetable shortening

4 tablespoons sugar

2 egg yolks

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

2 egg whites, well beaten

1 ripe, medium size banana

**Procedure:** Measure flour, baking powder and salt. Combine and sift. Cream softened shortening, then cream with sugar until well blended. Stir in unbeaten egg yolks. Add flour alternately with the milk, beating after each addition. Fold in the well-beaten egg whites. Mash banana well and fold in mixture. Spread batter into well-greased loaf pan (8 x 4 x 3 inches). Bake in preheated slow oven (325° F) about 45 minutes until crumb is dry when tested with toothpick. If a browner loaf is desired, temperature may be raised to 450° F for the last 10 minutes of baking. Remove bread from oven. Let stand 5 minutes. Loosen loaf with spatula and turn out on rack. Cool before slicing. The banana may be omitted if desired.

#### Rice Flour Muffins

**Ingredients:**

1 cup unsifted rice flour

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

3 teaspoons baking powder

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup vegetable shortening

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar

2 egg yolks

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk

2 egg whites

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla, lemon or almond

flavoring

**Procedure:** Measure rice flour, baking powder, salt and sift together twice. Cream softened shortening, add sugar and cream together. Stir in egg yolks. Add flour mixture alternately with milk, beating after

each addition. Fold in well beaten (but not dry) egg whites. Spoon into a well-greased muffin tin. Bake 30 minutes in a 325° F. (moderate oven) or until lightly browned. Yield: 6 muffins.

### Spoon Bread

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup boiling water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup white corn meal
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 1½ teaspoons baking powder
- 1 tablespoon soft butter
- 2 eggs, well beaten

**Procedure:** Pour boiling water over corn meal. Beat in milk, salt, baking powder, butter and eggs. Pour into buttered 1-quart casserole or baking dish. Bake in 400° F. (moderately hot) oven 35-45 minutes or until just set. Serve piping hot with butter. Yield: 4 servings

### Southern Corn Muffins

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup boiling water
- 1 cup white corn meal
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup milk
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt
- 2 teaspoons baking powder
- 1 tablespoon soft butter
- 1 egg, well beaten

**Procedure:** Pour boiling water over corn meal. Beat in milk, salt, baking powder,

### Baked Indian Pudding

#### Ingredients:

- 1 quart milk
- 1 cup yellow corn meal
- 1 teaspoon salt
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup molasses
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- 1½ teaspoon cinnamon
- 2 tablespoons butter

**Procedure:** Scald 1½ cups of the milk, pour over corn meal to which salt has been

very slow oven (250°) 5 to 6 hours. Serve hot or cold with whipped cream or ice cream.

**NOTE:** The pudding is very thin when put in the oven. It will thicken and caramelize as it bakes. Yield: 6-8 servings.

### Rice Flour Brownies

#### Ingredients

- 2 squares unsweetened chocolate (2 ozs.)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup shortening (margarine)
- 1 cup sugar
- 2 eggs
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rice flour, sifted twice before measuring
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon baking powder
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

**Procedure:** Melt chocolate and shortening

Spread into a greased 8 inch square pan.

the top is touched. Cool slightly, cut into squares. Yield: 16 2-inch squares.

### Rice Flour Sponge Cake

#### Ingredients

- 2 eggs, separated
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rice flour, sifted twice before measuring
- 1 teaspoon lemon juice
- Grated rind of  $\frac{1}{2}$  lemon
- Dash of salt

**Procedure:** Sift together rice flour, sugar and salt. Beat egg yolks until thick and lemon colored. Add lemon juice and rind to egg yolks. Beat egg whites until stiff but not dry. Fold egg yolk mixture and flour mixture alternately in small amounts into beaten egg whites with rubber spatula. Pour into a small loaf pan that has been lined with wax paper. Bake in a 350° (moderate) oven 25-30 minutes.

### Rice Flour Drop Cookies

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup rice flour, sifted twice before measuring
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

1 teaspoon baking powder  
 ½ cup shortening (margarine)  
 ¾ cup sugar  
 ½ teaspoon vanilla  
 1 egg  
 2 tablespoons milk

**Procedure.** Sift together rice flour, salt and baking powder. Cream shortening until light and fluffy. Add sugar gradually, beating thoroughly. Add vanilla and egg, and beat until well combined. Add rice-flour mixture and milk alternately, beginning and ending with rice-flour mixture. Allow dough to stand ½ hour (preferably in the refrigerator) before baking. Drop by teaspoon on a greased cookie sheet. Bake in 375° oven 12-15 minutes. Remove from pan while hot and cool on a rack. Yield: 3 dozen cookies, thin brown edged.

### LOW SODIUM RECIPES

When the physician has prescribed a low sodium diet, salt as a seasoning must be avoided completely. This applies not only to its use on the table and in cookery but also to the selection of processed or manufactured products such as canned and some frozen vegetables, salad dressings, meat sauces such as ketchup and chili sauce, with the exception of Tabasco sauce, and to bread and some cereals. Only canned foods and breads whose labels indicate that no salt or sodium compounds have been added should be chosen.

In order to make the diet more appetizing, it may be desirable to prepare certain homemade quick breads and perhaps cakes and cookies. If this is the case, a druggist can make up a low sodium baking powder according to the recipe included in this section. In the preparation of such foods only unsalted shortening may be used, and salt must be omitted.

#### Low Sodium Baking Powder

Potassium bicarbonate	33.8 Gm.
Cornstarch	23.0 Gm.
Tartaric acid	7.5 Gm.
Potassium bitartrate	56.1 Gm.

Substitute 1½ teaspoons low sodium baking powder for 1 teaspoon regular baking powder.

#### Cereals Processed Without Salt

Among cereals, those on the following list\* are processed without salt. (No salt should be used in preparing the hot cereals.)

Barley  
 Corn meal, popped corn  
 Cracked wheat, wheat germ  
 Shredded wheat, puffed wheat  
 Wheatena, Wheatworth  
 Cream of Wheat, regular  
 Oatmeal, regular  
 Farina, regular  
 Groats  
 Maltex  
 Puffed grains  
 Instant Ralston  
 Macaroni, spaghetti  
 Rice, puffed rice, wild rice

#### Spices and Herbs To Flavor Unsalted Foods

Cooked foods and salads may be made more palatable with the use of spices and herbs if these are low in sodium content. With the exception of products such as garlic, onion and celery salt, that are combinations of these condiments with salt, and of celery and parsley flakes, the majority of spices are low in sodium (see Table 5, Part Four).

Certain herbs and spices have been found to blend or contrast better than others with various foods. The following suggestions may be found useful.

Allspice, meat  
 Angelica, bitters, sauces, meat  
 Anise, bread  
 Bay leaf, meat, soup, fish  
 Basil, salad, egg dishes, tomatoes  
 Caraway seed, meat, vegetables, cheese

\* Harker, H. R. - The Cook Book for Low Sodium Diet, The American Heart Association, Inc., 1950.



Celery seed: meat, vegetables, salad, soup

Chervil: salad, soup, fish sauces, egg dishes

Chili powder: meat, vegetables

Cloves: meat, fruits, desserts

Cumin: meat, vegetables

Curry (salt free): meat, vegetables

Dill: meat, fish, vegetables, soup

Garlic: meat, salad

Ginger: meat

Leeks: soup, meat

Mace: meat, sauces, cakes, sweets

Marjoram: meat, vegetables, salad, fruit

Mint: beverages, meat, confections, desserts

Mustard, dry: meat, fish, salad

Nutmeg cake, desserts

Onion: meat, salad, vegetables

Oregano: meat, tomato sauce

Parsley: salad, soup, meat, vegetables, garnish

Pepper: meat, vegetables, salad, dressing

Poppy seeds: meat, macaroni products

Poultry seasoning: stuffings, meat

Rosemary: salad, meat, fish

Saffron: meat, fish, rice

Sage: poultry and fish stuffing

Tabasco: meat, vegetables, soup, salad dressing

Tarragon: salad, soup, meat

Thyme: stuffing, soup, meat

A number of "salt substitutes" are available which owe their flavor to other mineral salts than sodium. The most ac-

used without permission of the physician

\* Tabasco sauce contains 400 to 500 mg of sodium per 100 cc. The quantity used in a recipe is so small, however, that its contribution to the total sodium content of a dish is negligible.

## Tomato Juice Cocktail (Unsalted)

### Ingredients:

1 cup unsalted tomato juice

1 tablespoon lemon juice

1 teaspoon sugar

Celery seed

Minced onion

Procedure: Combine ingredients and chill. Shake or stir well before serving. Yield: 2 servings.

## Tomato Aspic (Uns.)

### Ingredients:

2 cups unsalted tomato juice

1 bay leaf

4 whole cloves

1 slice onion

6 peppercorns

1 envelope unflavored gelatin

1 tablespoon lemon juice

Procedure: Measure  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cups tomato juice into saucepan. Add bay leaf, cloves, onion

and simmer until firm, serve as a basis for a salad. Or break up with fork before placing in soup cups. Yield: 4 servings

## French Dressing (Uns.)

### Ingredients:

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon paprika

$\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon salt

1 cup.

1 cup.

### Variations:

1. Substitute grapefruit juice for the vinegar.

2. Add  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup strained fresh tomato pulp

## Liver-Rice Loaf (Uns.)

### Ingredients:

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup cooked unsalted rice

$\frac{1}{2}$  cup chopped cooked unsalted liver

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup unsalted bread crumbs
- 1 egg yolk, well beaten
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup Lonalac
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon sage
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoon unsalted melted butter

**Procedure:** Combine ingredients, except the butter. Form into loaf and place in greased pan. Pour melted butter over mixture. Bake in slow oven (325° F) 1 hour. Serve with unsalted tomato sauce. Yield: 3 servings.

### Meat Patty (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  lb ground beef
- 2 teaspoons minced onion
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon dry mustard
- Few grains pepper

**Procedure:** Combine all ingredients and form into 2 small patties. Brown on both sides in a skillet lightly greased with unsalted fat. Add a few drops of water and continue cooking, covered, until meat is done. Yield: 2 servings.

### Veal Casserole (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 lb veal cutlet
- Flour
- Pepper
- 3 tablespoons olive oil
- $\frac{1}{2}$  garlic, peeled
- 2 tomatoes, peeled and sliced
- 2 tablespoons flour
- 1 cup water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon basil
- 1 tablespoon minced parsley

**Procedure:** Dredge meat with flour and pepper. Heat oil and garlic. Brown meat on both sides in the oil. Remove garlic. Arrange tomatoes in casserole and arrange meat on top. Stir 2 tablespoons flour into oil re-

- 3 tablespoons unsalted fat
- 2 onions, peeled and sliced
- 1 small green pepper, seeded and sliced
- 1 bay leaf
- 3 cloves
- 2 tablespoons minced carrot
- 2 cups unsalted tomatoes

1 "

4 to 5 servings

### Lamb Stew (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  lbs stewing lamb
- Flour
- Pepper
- 4 tablespoons unsalted fat
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sliced onions
- 1 bay leaf
- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  cups diced potatoes
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced carrots
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup diced turnips

**Procedure:** Cut meat in 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch cubes.

with aqua 5 minutes before ready to serve. Sprinkle with minced parsley before serving. Yield: 4 to 5 servings.

### Chicken Tabasco (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 2-lb dressed broiler
- $\frac{1}{2}$  lime or lemon
- 2 tablespoons melted unsalted butter
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Tabasco
- 1 teaspoon sugar
- Chopped parsley

**Procedure:** Clean and wipe chicken dry. Rub surface of chicken with the cut lime or lemon, squeezing to keep the juice flowing. Combine melted butter and Tabasco and brush chicken with the mixture. Sprinkle lightly with sugar. Place in broiler pan, skin side down. Broil for 10 minutes as far from the heat as possible. Raise chicken 4 inches from heat and turn

### Savory Steak (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 flank steak
- Flour
- Pepper

**Brown Beef Stew (Uns.)****Ingredients:**

- 2 lbs lean beef (boned chuck, round or rump)
- 1 teaspoon paprika
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  tablespoons flour
- 3 tablespoons salad oil or unsalted butter
- 3 cups water
- 1 bay leaf
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Tabasco
- 4 cloves
- $\frac{1}{2}$  small white onions, peeled
- $\frac{1}{2}$  medium carrots, scraped
- 3 medium potatoes, peeled and halved

**Procedure.** Have beef cut in 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch pieces. Blend together paprika, pepper and flour. Roll pieces of meat in flour mixture. Melt fat in heavy kettle. Add meat and brown on all sides. Add water, bay leaf, Tabasco and cloves. Cover and simmer 2 to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  hours until meat is almost tender. Add onions, carrots and potatoes. Cover and cook until vegetables are tender. Yield: 6 to 8 servings.

**Veal Stew (Uns.)****Ingredients:**

- 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  lbs shoulder of veal
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup salad oil or unsalted butter
- 1 clove garlic, minced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon pepper
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon powdered thyme
- $\frac{1}{2}$  bay leaf
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon Tabasco
- 4 fresh tomatoes, peeled and diced
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water

**Procedure.** Have veal cut into 2-inch pieces. Heat oil or butter in heavy skillet. Add garlic and meat and brown meat well. Add remaining ingredients. Cover and cook over low heat 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  hours, or until meat is tender. Yield: 6 servings.

**Meat Loaf (Uns.)****Ingredients:**

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup ground beef
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup soft, unsalted bread crumbs
- 1 tablespoon minced onion
- 4 tablespoons unsalted tomato juice
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon dry mustard

- Pepper
- Chopped parsley
- Bay leaf

**Procedure:** Combine all ingredients, except bay leaf, and mix thoroughly with wet hands. Shape into a loaf and place in a baking pan. Cover with bay leaf and bake in moderate oven (375° F.) 1 hour. Yield: 2 servings.

**Creamed Tuna Fish (Uns.)****Ingredients:**

- 3 tablespoons unsalted butter or other shortening
- 3 tablespoons flour
- 2 cups milk
- 1 tablespoon lemon juice
- Paprika
- 1 can low sodium "dietetic" tuna

**Procedure:** Melt butter or other shortening in double boiler or over low direct heat. Stir in flour. Stir in milk and continue stirring until sauce thickens. Add lemon juice and paprika. Add tuna, flaked but not drained, and reheat. Serve over rice or macaroni cooked without salt. Yield: 4-5 servings.

**Vegetables**

Fortunately, a number of vegetables are low in sodium, and their use adds variety to restricted meals. As no salt can be used in cooking, every care must be taken to preserve the natural fresh flavor. They should be of the best quality when purchased and should be cooked in as small an amount of water as possible. The use of certain spices (see p. 565) with unsalted butter, cream or salad oil may be desirable. The combination of lemon juice with sweet butter also makes a good dressing for certain

canned without salt, according to the following list, are generally allowed:

- |                  |           |
|------------------|-----------|
| Asparagus        | Corn      |
| Beans (green)    | Endive    |
| Broccoli         | Lettuce   |
| Brussels sprouts | Mushrooms |
| Cabbage          | Onions    |
| Carrot           |           |

Peppers	Soybeans
Potatoes (sweet or white)	Squash
Radishes	Tomatoes
Rutabagas	Turnip greens

(Use also fresh or specially canned peas and Lima beans, dried beans, dried peas, lentils)

### Scalloped Potatoes (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

4 medium potatoes  
2 tablespoons unsalted butter  
2 tablespoons flour  
1 to 2 tablespoons minced onion  
Pepper  
2 cups milk (about)

**Procedure.** Pare potatoes and cut in thin, crosswise slices. Reserve enough potatoes for a top layer. Place half the potatoes in a buttered baking dish (use unsalted butter). Cover with half the fat cut into tiny bits or melted. Sprinkle with half the flour, onion and pepper. Repeat. Top casserole with remaining potatoes. Pour in milk until it can be seen between pieces of potatoes. Cover and bake in moderate oven (350° F) for ½ hour. Uncover and bake for 1 hour longer or until tender and brown on top. Yield: 4 servings.

**Note:** If it is desired to lower the sodium content still more, use Lonolac instead of milk.

### Sweet Potato and Apple Casserole

#### Ingredients:

1 large sweet potato, boiled, unsalted  
½ cup applesauce  
Sugar  
Cinnamon

**Procedure:** Place in buttered casserole alternate layers of sliced sweet potato and applesauce. Top with sugar and cinnamon and heat in oven until hot. Serve immediately.

### Breads

#### Bread (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

½ cup liquefied low sodium milk  
1½ teaspoons sugar  
2 tablespoons unsalted shortening  
½ package or cake yeast, active dry or compressed

¾ cup water (warm for dry, lukewarm for compressed)

3 cups sifted all-purpose flour

**Procedure:** Scald milk. Stir in sugar and

until over time to grease on sides. Cover with oil and let rise in warm place for

and let rise again in warm place until double in bulk. Bake in moderate oven (350° F) about 1 hour, or until done. Yield: About 20 slices.

### Cinnamon Toast (Uns.)

**Procedure.** Mix cinnamon with granulated sugar, using 1 part cinnamon to 3 parts sugar. Sprinkle this mixture generously over hot unsalted buttered toast made from unsalted bread, and serve hot.

### Popovers (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

1 egg  
½ cup low sodium milk or water  
½ cup sifted flour

**Procedure:** Break egg into bowl, add milk or water, and beat with rotary beater until well blended. Add sifted flour all at one time and continue beating until mixture is smooth and as thick as heavy cream. Bake in hot, greased iron muffin pans or glass or earthenware custard cups in hot oven (450°

### Desserts

### Peppermint Tapioca (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

1 egg yolk  
1½ cups liquefied low sodium milk  
3 tablespoons quick-cooking tapioca  
½ cup sugar  
2 drops peppermint oil  
1 egg white

**Procedure:** Mix egg yolk with a little low sodium milk in top of double boiler. Add remaining milk, tapioca and sugar. Cook 5 to 8 minutes, stirring occasionally, until mixture thickens slightly and tapioca is clear. Add flavoring. Beat egg white until stiff. Pour hot tapioca mixture over it, stirring in gently. The mixture will be thin, but it will thicken as it cools. Serve with cold chocolate sauce. Yield: 4 servings.

**NOTE:** Vanilla extract may replace the peppermint oil.

### Chocolate Sauce (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 cup liquefied low sodium milk
- 1 square chocolate or  $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cocoa (not Dutch process cocoa)
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- 1 tablespoon flour
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Scald milk and chocolate in top of double boiler until chocolate is melted. Mix dry ingredients. (If cocoa is used instead of chocolate, mix with the flour and the sugar. Pour scalded milk on dry ingredients and return to double boiler. Stir until thick. Add vanilla. Serve hot or cold as desired. Yield: 1½ cups.

### Fruit Sherbet (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup lemon, orange or lime juice
- 2 teaspoons grated lemon, orange or lime rind
- 1 cup sugar
- 1½ teaspoons unflavored gelatin
- 2 tablespoons cold water
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup hot liquefied low sodium milk
- 1 cup cold liquefied low sodium milk
- 1 egg white, stiffly beaten
- 1 drop food coloring (optional)

**Procedure:** Turn cold control of automatic refrigerator to coldest setting. Combine juice, rind and sugar and let stand until sugar is dissolved. Soften gelatin in cold water. Dissolve in hot low sodium milk and add to sugar mixture. Slowly stir in

creamy. Return to freezing tray. Retreeze until just firm enough to serve. Yield: 6 servings.

### Apple Cobbler (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup softened unsalted butter
- 1 cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sifted all-purpose flour
- 4 cups sliced apples
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup water
- 1 teaspoon cinnamon

**Procedure:** Heat oven to 350° F. Grease 10 x 6 x 1½-inch baking dish. Cream butter and sugar together. Blend in flour, mixing well. Place apples in baking dish. Sprinkle with water and cinnamon. Spread flour mixture on top of apples. Bake in moderate oven (350° F.) 40 to 45 minutes. Serve warm with or without vanilla sauce. Yield: 6 servings.

### Chocolate Pudding (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- 1 square unsweetened chocolate
- 1½ cups scalded liquid Lonalac
- 2½ tablespoons cornstarch
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup sugar
- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup cold liquid Lonalac
- $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon vanilla

**Procedure:** Put chocolate and scalded Lonalac in top of double boiler and heat over boiling water until chocolate has melted. Beat with rotary beater until well blended. Mix cornstarch and sugar and stir into cold Lonalac. Stir into scalded Lonalac mixture in top of double boiler. Continue stirring over boiling water until mixture has thickened. Cover and cook for 10 to 15 minutes. Remove from heat and add vanilla. Pour into molds or sherbet glasses and chill until firm. Yield: 4 to 6 servings.

The following recipes are extremely low in sodium and may be included in the Kempner Rice Diet.

### Apricot Rice (Uns.)

#### Ingredients:

- $\frac{1}{2}$  cup packaged precooked rice
- 1½ cups apricot nectar
- 3 tablespoons sugar

**Procedure:** Combine rice and apricot nectar in saucepan. Mix just until all rice is moistened. Bring quickly to a boil over high heat, uncovered, fluffing rice gently once or twice with a fork. (Do not stir.) Cover and

summer 15 minutes. Remove from heat and let stand 10 minutes. Add sugar, mixing lightly. Cool to room temperature. Yield 4 servings.

### Pineapple Rice (Uns.)

#### Ingredients

- 1/2 cup packaged precooked rice
- Pineapple juice plus water to make 1 1/2 cups
- 1/2 cup drained canned crushed pineapple
- 1/2 cup sugar

**Procedure:** Combine rice and pineapple juice and water in saucepan. Mix just until all rice is moistened. Bring quickly to a boil over high heat, uncovered. Fluffing rice gently once or twice with a fork (Do not stir). Cover and simmer 5 minutes. Remove from heat. Let stand 10 minutes. Add pineapple and sugar, mixing lightly. Cool to room temperature. Then chill about 1 hour. Yield 4-5 servings.

### Baked Rice with Fruit (Uns.)

#### Ingredients

- 1/2 cup rice, steamed in unsalted water
- 1/2 cup canned apricots, peaches, blue plums, stewed apples or rhubarb

**Procedure:** Combine the drained rice and fruit (including some juice) in a casserole. Sprinkle with brown sugar and place under a broiler until sugar has melted and top of the mixture is browned. Yield 2 servings.

### Puffed Rice Balls (Uns.)

#### Ingredients

- 1 cup sugar
- 1/2 cup water
- 2 teaspoons lemon juice
- 3 cups puffed rice

**Procedure:** Boil the sugar, water and lemon juice to the hard-ball stage (285° F). Pour the syrup very quickly over the puffed rice in a bowl. Make into small balls, allowing to cool on waxed paper.

See Bibliography in Part Four for books on Cookery.







TABLE 1

## Composition of Foods

### Edible Portion in Common Measures

#### EXPLANATION OF TABLE

This table of food values gives proximate composition and mineral and vitamin content of most foods in common use in the United States. It includes processed and prepared foods where such foods would not be consumed in the natural state. The foods have been arranged alphabetically for convenience. The values for 100-Gm. portions are

the common measures of Table 1. For the sources of data compiled in this publication and other pertinent information it is recommended that the student read the preamble to Handbook No. 8, by B. K. Watt and A. L. Merrill, *Composition of Foods—Raw, Processed, Prepared*, published by the Department of Agriculture in 1950.

#### RELIABILITY OF DATA

Research in food values has demonstrated repeatedly that the composition of foods is variable, due to differences in variety, soil and climate in which grown, the method of handling, and the sampling and the analyzing. The values given are usually averages of several determinations on a variety of samples and frequently include a wide range of values; therefore, it seems unnecessary to retain decimals where they are of questionable significance. Thus the values for calories and for grams of protein, fat, carbohydrate and water are given in whole numbers, and fiber is carried to one decimal place only.

Minerals and vitamins listed on the

right hand pages are all measured in milligrams (mg.), except for vitamin A, which is still usually given in International Units (I.U.). In order to be consistent in the use of mg., it is necessary to use decimals for measuring the complex vitamins because they are present in such small amounts.

The common measures for 100-Gm. or other quantities commonly used are only approximate. For instance, 100 Gm. of most liquids would measure about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a cup. Since this is not a convenient fraction for measuring, the designation  $\frac{2}{3}$  cup scant has been used. This would mean about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  tbsp. less than  $\frac{2}{3}$  cup.

The individual nutrients in foods have been determined by many different laboratories and the data assembled by the Department of Agriculture or other agencies. The frozen-food samples were taken from the 1953 and the 1954 production seasons, and values were determined by Burger *et al.* in 1956.

#### FOOD ENERGY

The major difference in this table from previous editions is in the calculation of calories, the units used for expressing food energy. In this edition, as in Handbook No. 8, calories have not been calculated by applying the general calorie factors 4, 9 and 4 to the percentage composition of protein, fat and carbohydrate, respectively, as usually has been done before. Instead, more specific factors have been developed for individual foods, the digestibility and the physiologic value of each being taken into consideration. It will be found, therefore, that this modification of earlier practices may give slightly different energy values for certain foods from those to which we have become accustomed.

# SIGNS AND SYMBOLS USED

An asterisk in the table indicates an item for which the composition has been calculated from a recipe

Parentheses denote imputed values for which little or no experimental evidence was available, for which there was relatively little basis for imputing a value from another form of the food, or for which reported data were not considered to be suitable.

Dashes show that no basis could be found for imputing a value, although there was some reason to believe that a measurable amount of the constituent might be present.

The designation Tr. (trace) is used to indicate values that would round to zero with the number of decimal places carried in these tables. Thus Tr. means 0.4 Gm or less of protein, fat, carbohydrate or water, or 0.04 mg or less of iron.

## REFERENCES USED IN COMPILING FOOD TABLES

Bowes, A. deP., and Church, C. E.  
Food Values of Portions Commonly Used  
Available from A. deP. Bowes, 7th and  
Delancey Streets, Philadelphia, 1956

Kellogg's Ready-to-Eat Cereals Nutritive  
Values, 1956

National Canners Association Canned  
Food Tables, 1957.

Watt, B. K., and Merrill, A. L.: Com-  
position of Foods—Raw, Processed, Pre-  
pared, U.S.D.A. Agriculture Handbook No.  
8, 1950

**TABLE 1**  
**COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION**

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Almonds, unblanched	100 15	% c. 12-15 nuts	597 90	19 3	54 8	20 3	2.7 .4	5 1
Apple: Raw	100	1 small 2 in. diam.	58	Tr.	Tr.	15	1.0	84
Frozen, sliced	100	% c. sliced	92	Tr.	Tr.	24	.7	75
Apple Betty*	100	% c.	150	2	3	31	.8	64
Apple juice, fresh or canned	100 249	% c. scant 1 c.	50 124	Tr. Tr.	0 0	14 34		88 215
Apple sauce, canned								
Unsweetened	100	% c. scant	42	Tr.	Tr.	11	1.6	88
Sweetened	100	% c. scant	72	Tr.	Tr.	20	.8	80
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	17	Tr.	Tr.	5	Tr.	25
Apricots:								
Raw	100	3 medium	51	1	Tr.	13	.6	85
Canned.								
Solids and liquid water pack	100	% c. scant	32	1	Tr.	18	.3	91
Syrup pack (or frozen)	100	% c. scant	80	1	Tr.	21	.4	77
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	17	Tr.	Tr.	■	Tr.	25
Dried, sulfured	100	{ 20 large or 30 small halves	262	5	Tr.	67	3.2	94
Cooked, sweetened fruit and liquid*	100	% c.	123	2	Tr.	32	.9	66
Frozen	100	% c.	98	1	Tr.	25	.6	73
Asparagus:								
Cooked, fresh or frozen	100	% c. cut or 6-7 spears	20	2	Tr.	4	.8	93
Canned.								
Green, drained, solids	100	% c. cut or 6-7 spears	17	2	Tr.	3	.8	93
Frozen, spears	100	% c. cut or 6-7 spears	24	3	Tr.	4	.8	92
Avocados, raw	100	% peeled	245	2	26	5	1.8	65

Tr (trace) ■ used to indicate values that would round to zero with the number of decimal places carried in this table. Thus Tr means 0.4 Gm. or less of protein, fat, carbohydrate or water.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg.	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Almonds	100 15	254 38	475 71	4.4 .7	0 0	.25 .04	.67 1	4.6 .7	Tr. Tr.
Apples: Raw	100	6	10	.3	90	.04	.02	.2	5
Frozen, sliced	100	5	6	.5	17	.01	.03	.2	7
Apple Betty	100	15	25	1	160	.06	.04	.5	1
Apple juice	100 249	6 15	10 25	.5 1.2	40 90	.02 .05	.03 .07	Tr. Tr.	1 2
Apple sauce: Unsweetened or sweetened	100 30	4 1	8 2	.4 .1	30 20	.02 Tr.	.01 Tr.	Tr. Tr.	1 1
Strained									
Apricots: Raw	100	16	23	.5	2,790	.03	.05	.8	7
Canned, water or syrup pack (or frozen)	100	10	15	.3	1,350	.02	.02	.3	4
Strained	30	6	9	(.3)	(480)	Tr.	Tr.	(.1)	(1)
Dried, sulfured	100	86	119	4.9	7,430	.01	.16	3.3	12
Cooked, sweetened	100	24	34	1.4	2,110	Tr.	.04	.9	8
Frozen	100	10	19	.9	1,700	.02	.04	.8	27*
Asparagus: Cooked	100	19	53	1.0	1,040	.11	.17	1.2	23
Canned Green	100	16	43	1.7	600	.08	.10	.9	15
Frozen spears	100	23	69	1.2	780	.18	.15	1.3	29
Avocados, raw	100	10	38	.6	290	.06	.13	1.1	16

Tr. See footnote on page 575

Notes: Parentheses indicate imputed values for which little or no experimental evidence was available, for which there was relatively little basis for imputing a value from another form of the food, or for which reported data were not considered to be suitable.

\*—ascorbic acid added in processing.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Bacon, broiled or fried	100 18	12 strips 2 strips	607 97	25 4	55 9	1 Tr.	0 0	13 8
Bacon, Canadian, raw	100	3½ ozs.	231	22	15	Tr.	0	56
Bananas, raw	100	1 medium	88	1	0	23	.6	73
Barley, pearled, light dry	100	¾ c.	349	8	1	79	.5	11
Beans, common or kidney. Red kidney, canned or cooked, solids and liquids	100	¾ c. scant	90	6	Tr.	16	.9	76
Canned, baked Pork and molasses	100	¾ c. scant	125	6	3	19	.9	70
Pork and tomato sauce	100	¾ c. scant	113	6	2	18	1.0	72
Beans, Lima: Cooked, fresh or frozen	100	¾ c.	95	5	Tr.	18	2.0	75
Canned, drained solids	100	¾ c. scant	95	5	Tr.	18	2.0	75
Beans: Snap green: Cooked, fresh or frozen (small amount water, short time)	100	¾ c.	22	1	Tr.	5	.5	93
Canned, drained solids	100	¾ c.	22	1	Tr.	5	.5	93
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	6	1	Tr.	1	.3	27
Wax or yellow: Canned, drained solids	100	¾ c. scant	22	1	Tr.	5	.5	93
Beef cuts, medium fat: Chuck, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	309	26	22	0	0	51
Flank, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	314	25	23	0	0	51

Tr See footnote on page 578

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Bacon, broiled or fried	100 16	25 4	255 41	33 .5	0 0	.48 .00	.31 .05	4.8 .8	0 0
Bacon, Canadian	100	13	210	33	0	.91	.25	5.2	0
Bananas, raw	100	8	28	6	430	.04	.05	.7	10
Barley, pearled	100	16	189	(20)	0	12	.08	3.1	0
Beans: Red kidney, canned solids and liquids Canned, baked	100	40	124	19	0	.05	.05	.8	0
Pork and molasses	100	58	113	2.1	30	.05	.04	.5	2
Pork and tomato sauce	100	41	113	1.8	80	.05	.04	.5	2
Beans, Lima: Cooked	100	29	77	1.7	290	.14	.09	1.1	15
Canned	100	29	77	1.7	180	.03	.05	.5	6
Beans: Snap green Cooked, fresh or frozen	100	36	23	.7	660	.07	.10	.5	14
Canned	100	36	23	1.7	500	.04	.05	.4	5
Strained	30	9	7	.2	140	.01	.02	.1	1
Wax or yellow, canned	100	36	23	1.7	120	.04	.05	.4	5
Beef cuts, cooked Chuck	100	11	117	3.1	0	.05†	.20†	4.1†	0
Flank	100	11	117	3.0	0	.05†	.20†	4.1†	0

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value.

† Prepared by broiling or pot roasting. Use of drippings would add approximately 33 per cent more thiamine and niacin and 25 per cent more riboflavin.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm	
<b>Beef cuts (Continued)</b>								
Hamburger, cooked	100	3½ ozs.	364	22	30	0	0	47
	50	1 patty	182	11	15	0	0	24
Porterhouse, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	342	23	27	0	0	49
Rib roast, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	319	24	24	0	0	51
Round, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	233	27	13	0	0	59
Rump, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	378	21	32	0	0	46
Sirloin, cooked	100	3½ ozs. without bone	297	23	22	0	0	54
<b>Beef, canned.</b>								
Corned beef hash	100	3½ ozs.	141	14	6	7	.2	70
Roast beef	100	3½ ozs.	224	25	13	0	0	60
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	30	5	1	0	0	23
<b>Beef, corned, boneless, medium fat</b>	100	3½ ozs.	216	25	12	0	0	59
<b>Beef, dried or chipped</b>	100	3½ ozs.	203	34	6	0	0	48
	60	2 ozs.—average serving	115	19	4	0	0	29
<b>Beef and vegetable stew*</b>	100	¾ c. scant	107	6	8	7	.4	79
<b>Beer (average, 4 per cent alcohol)</b>	100	¾ c. scant	48	1	0	4		90
<b>Beets, cooked or canned, drained solids</b>	100	¾ c.	41	1	Tr.	10	.8	88
<b>Beet greens, cooked</b>	100	¾ c.	27	2	Tr.	6	1.4	90
<b>Beverages, carbonated:</b>								
Ginger ale	100	3½ ozs.	35			9		91
Other, including cola type	100	3½ ozs.	46			12		88
<b>Biscuits, baking powder, made with enriched flour*</b>	100	3 biscuits 2-in. diam.	342	8	10	52	.2	27

Tr See footnote on page 576

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Beef cuts (Continued)									
Hamburgers	100	9	158	28	0	.08	.10	.48	0
Patty	50	5	79	14	0	.04	.10	.24	0
Porterhouse	100	11	170	30	0	.06	.18	.47	0
Rib roast	100	10	185	30	0	.06	.18	.43	0
Round	100	11	224	34	0	.08	.22	.55	0
Rump, cooked	100	8	85	25	0	.04†	.15†	.31†	0
Sirloin, cooked	100	10	175	29	0	.06	.19	.48	0
Beef, canned									
Corned beef hash	100	26	146	18	Tr	.03	.14	.29	0
Roast beef	100	16	116	24	0	.02	.23	.42	0
Strained	30	3	43	1.2	0	Tr.	.06	.9	0
Beef, corned, medium fat	100	20	106	43	0	.02	.24	.34	0
Beef, dried, chipped	100	20	404	51	0	(.07)	(.32)	(.38)	0
	■	11	229	29	0	(.04)	(.18)	(.22)	0
Beef stew	100	13	75	11	1,070	.05	.06	1.5	6
Beer (4 per cent alcohol)	100	4	26	0	0	Tr	.03	.2	0
Beets, cooked or canned	100	21	31	.7	20	.02	.04	.3	7
Beet greens, cooked	100	118‡	45	3.2	7,440	.05	.16	.4	15
Beverages									
Ginger ale	100								
Cola type	100								
Biscuits, baking powder with enriched flour	100	218	193	1.8	0	.23	.22	2.0	0

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

† Prepared by broiling or pot roasting. Use of drippings would add approximately 50 per cent more thiamine and niacin and 25 per cent more riboflavin.

‡ Calcium may not be available because of the presence of oxalic acid.



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Blackberries.								
Raw	100	% c.	57	1	1	13	4.2	83
Canned, solids and liquids.	100	% c. scant	43	1	1	9	2.0	89
Water pack	100	% c. scant	86	1	Tr	23	2.9	76
Syrup pack								
Blueberries.								
Raw	100	% c.	61	1	1	13	1.2	83
Frozen without sugar	100	% c.	56	1	Tr.	14	1.5	85
Canned, solids and liquid.	100	% c. scant	37	Tr.	Tr.	9	1.0	90
Water pack	100	% c. scant	98	Tr.	Tr.	28	1.0	73
Syrup pack								
Bouillon cubes	100 4	25 cubes 1 cube	48 2	(1) Tr.	3 Tr.	0 0	0 0	5 Tr.
Brains, all kinds, raw	100	3% ozs.	125	10	9	1	0	79
Bran (breakfast cereal, almost wholly bran)	28	1 oz	95	3	1	21	2.0	1
Bran flakes (40 per cent bran)	100 28	2% c. % c.	359 101	10 3	2 1	80 22	3.5 1.0	4 2
Bran, raisin	100	2 c	350	9	2	79	3.0	6
Brazil nuts, shelled	100	% c.	646	14	66	11	2.1	5
Breads.*								
Boston brown bread made with de- germed corn meal, enriched	100	2 sl 3x% in.	219	5	2	46	3	45
Cracked wheat bread made with enriched flour	100 23	4 sl 1 sl	259 60	9 2	2 1	51 12	.5 .1	36 9
French or Vienna breads, enriched or unenriched	100	3% ozs.	270	8	3	52	.2	36

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

Ltrr	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg.	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Blackberries:									
Raw	100	32	32	.9	200	.04	.04	.4	21
Canned, water or syrup pack	100	18	19	(.7)	180	.01	.02	.2	6
Blossberries:									
Raw	100	16	13	.8	280	(.02)	(.02)	(.3)	18
Frozen without sugar	100	10	13	.8	67	.03	.06	.5	7
Canned, water or syrup pack	100	11	6	(.5)	40	.01	.01	.2	18
Bouillon cubes	100 4						1.80 .07	25.6 1.0	0 0
Brans	100	16	350	3.6	0	.23	.26	4.4	18
Bran cereal	28	24	350	2.9	0	11	.09	3.0	0
Bran flakes	100 28	57 16	602 170	4.6 1.3	0 0	.35 10	.18 .05	8.5 2.4	0 0
Bran, raisin	100	60	500	4.5	0	.30	.18	7.0	0
Brass nuts	100	186	693	3.4	Tr	86			
Breads:									
Boston brown bread, enriched	100	185	158	2.9	140	.13	.17	1.9	0
Cracked wheat bread, enriched	100 23	83 19	126 29	2.0 .5	0 0	.25 .06	.19 .04	2.5 .6	0 0
French or Vienna Unenriched	100	24	71	.7	0	.05	.06	.9	0
Enriched	100	24	71	1.8†	0	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0

Tr See footnote on page 578.

Note: Parentheses indicate suspected values.

† Iron, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin are based on the minimum level of enrichment specified by the Federal Security Agency.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Protein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBOHYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Breads (Continued)</b>								
Italian bread, enriched or unenriched	100	3½ ozs.	263	9	1	54	.2	35
Raisin bread, enriched	100	4 sl.	284	7	3	58	.2	30
	23	1 sl.	65	2	1	13	Tr.	7
Rye bread, American (½ rye, ½ clear flour)	100	4 sl.	244	9	1	52	.4	35
	23	1 sl.	57	2	Tr.	12	.1	8
White bread, unenriched, 4 per cent nonfat milk solids†	100	4 sl.	275	9	3	52	.2	35
	23	1 sl.	63	2	1	12	Tr.	9
White bread, enriched								
2 per cent nonfat milk solids	100	4 sl.	276	8	3	52	.2	35
	23	1 sl.	64	2	1	12	.	..
4 per cent nonfat milk solids†	100	4 sl.	275	9	3	52	.2	35
	23	1 sl.	63	2	1	12	.	.
6 per cent nonfat milk solids	100	4 sl.	276	11	3	52	.2	34
	23	1 sl.	63	2	1	12	.	.
Whole wheat bread	100	4 sl.	240	11	11	49	1.5	37
	23	1 sl.	55	2	1	11	.4	9
Bread crumbs, dry	100	1 c	385	11	5	72	.2	9
Breakfast foods See individual grain, as corn, oatmeal, etc.								
Broccoli, flower stalks, fresh or frozen	100	½ c.	28	3	Tr.	5	1.1	90
Brussel sprouts, fresh or frozen	100	½ c.	36	3	Tr.	7	1.2	88
Buckwheat flour, light	100	1 c. sifted	347	6	1	80	.5	12
Bun, hamburger. See Rolls.								

Tr See footnote on page 576

† When the amount of nonfat milk solids in commercial bread is unknown, use bread with 4 per cent nonfat milk solids

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
<b>Breads (Continued)</b>									
Italian bread									
Unenriched	100	13	77	7†	0	.05†	.07†	1.0†	0
Enriched	100	13	77	18	0	.24	.15	2.2	0
Raisin bread, enriched	100	80	104	18†	10	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0
	23	18	24	4	Tr	.06	.04	.5	0
Rye bread, American	100	72	147	16	0	.18	.08	1.5	0
	23	17	34	4	0	.04	.02	.4	0
White bread, unen- riched, 4% nonfat milk solids	100	79	92	.6	0	.05	.11	.9	0
	23	18	21	.1	0	.01	.02	.2	0
White bread, enriched, 2 per cent nonfat milk solids	100	65	81	18†	0	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0
	23	15	19	.4	0	.06	.04	.5	0
4 per cent nonfat milk solids	100	79	92	18†	0	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0
	23	18	21	.4	0	.06	.04	.5	0
6 per cent nonfat milk solids	100	92	101	18†	0	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0
	23	21	23	.4	0	.06	.04	.5	0
Whole wheat bread	100	96	263	2.2	0	.30	.13	3.0	0
	23	22	60	.5	0	.07	.03	.7	0
Bread crumbs	100	111	129	2.6	0	.27	.22	3.1	0
Breakfast foods. See individual grain.									
Broccoli	100	43	60	.7	1,850	.07	.13	.6	78
Brussels sprouts, cooked	100	22	62	.9	560	.1	.11	.6	87
Buckwheat flour, light	100	11	88	1.0	0	.08	(.04)	(.4)	0

Tr See footnote on page 575

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values

† Iron, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin are based on the minimum level of enrichment specified by the Federal Security Agency.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Butter	100 14	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant 1 tbsp.	716 100	1 Tr.	81 11	Tr. Tr.	0 0	16 2
Buttermilk, cultured (made from skim milk)	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	36	4	Tr.	5	0	91
Cabbage Raw	100	wedge $3\frac{1}{2} \times 4\frac{1}{2}$ in.	24	1	Tr.	5	1	92
Cooked (small amount of water short time)	100	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ c.	24	1	Tr.	5	1	92
Cabbage, celery or Chinese, raw	100	1 c., 1-in. pieces	14	1	Tr.	2	.5	95
Cakes:								
Angel food	100 40	2 pieces 2-in. section	270 108	8 3	Tr. Tr.	59 24	0 0	32 18
Foundation, plain icing	100	3-in section, layer cake	342	5	9	60	.1	24
Foundation, fudge icing	100	3-in section, layer cake	349	4	12	59	.2	24
Fruit, dark	100	3 pieces $2 \times 2 \times \frac{1}{2}$ in	354	5	14	56	1.2	23
Plain cake and cup cakes	100	2 cup cakes	327	8	8	57	.1	27
Plain cake and cup cakes, iced	100	2 cup cakes	322	5	8	62	.1	25
Sponge	100 40	8 large pieces 2-in section of 8-in cake	291 117	8 3	5 2	54 22	.2 1	32 12
Candy:								
Candied or glacé peel —lemon, orange or grapefruit peel	100	3 $\frac{3}{4}$ ozs.	316	Tr	Tr	81	2.3	17
Butterscotch*	100	3 $\frac{3}{4}$ ozs.	410	0	9	86	0	5
Caramels*	100	3 $\frac{3}{4}$ ozs.	415	3	12	78	0	7
Chocolate, sweetened, milk	100 30	3 $\frac{3}{4}$ ozs. 1 oz	503 143	(8) (2)	34 10	56 16	5 2	1 Tr.

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note Parentheses indicate imputed value

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg.	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Butter	100 14	20 3	16 2	0 0	3,300† 460†				0 0
Buttermilk, cultured	100	(118)	93	.1	Tr.	.04	.18	.1	1
Cabbage, Raw	100	46	31	.5	80	.06	.05	.3	50
Cooked	100	46	31	5	90	.05	.05	.3	31
Cabbage, celery, Chinese, raw	100	43	41	9	260	.03	.04	4	31
Cakes									
Angel food	100 40	6 2	24 10	3 1	0 0	.01 Tr.	.14 .05	.2 1	0 0
Foundation, plain icing	100	101	96	.4	120	.02	.07	.2	0
Foundation, fudge icing	100	98	101	.4	120	.02	.08	.2	0
Fruit, dark	100	97	126	2.8	160	.14	.14	1.1	0
Plain cake	100	155	137	.4	120	.03	.08	.3	0
Plain cake, iced	100	117	104	.4	90	.02	.07	.2	0
Sponge	100 40	28 11	110 44	1.4 6	520 210	.05 .02	.15 .06	.2 .1	0 0
Candy:									
Candied or glacé peel—lemon, orange or grapefruit	100								
Butterscotch	100	20	7	1.8	0	0	Tr.	Tr.	0
Caramels	100	126	90	2.3	170	.02	.14	.1	Tr.
Chocolate, sweetened milk	100 30	216 61	253 80	9 6	150 40	10 .03	.33 .11	.3 .2	0 0

Tr. See footnote on page 578

Note. Parentheses indicate imputed values

† Year-round average

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS    EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Candy (Continued)								
Chocolate, sweetened, milk, with almonds	100	3% ozs.	532	(8)	39	50	6	1
	30	1 oz.	151	(2)	11	14	.2	Tr.
Fudge, plain*	100	3% ozs.	411	2	11	81	.8	5
Hard	100	3% ozs.	383	0	0	99	0	1
Marshmallows	100	3% ozs.	325	3	0	81		15
Peanut brittle*	100	3% ozs.	441	8	18	73	.8	2
Cantaloupe, raw	100	½ melon, 5 in. diam.	20	1	Tr.	5	.6	94
Carrots:								
Raw	100	2 carrots, 5¼ x 1 in. or 1 c. grated	42	1	Tr.	9	1.0	88
		½ c.	30	1	1	6	.8	92
Cooked	100	½ c.	30	1	1	6	.8	92
Canned.								
Drained solids	100	½ c.	30	1	1	6	.8	92
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	7	Tr.	0	2	.3	28
Cashew nuts, roasted or cooked	100	3% ozs.	578	19	48	27	1.3	4
	30	1 oz.	164	5	14	8	.4	1
Cauliflower:								
Raw	100	1 c. flower buds	25	2	Tr.	5	.9	92
Cooked, fresh	100	1 c. scant	25	2	Tr.	5	.9	92
Frozen, raw	100	1 c. scant	22	2	Tr.	4	.8	93
Celery, bleached								
Raw	100	2 large stalks or 1 c. diced	18	1	Tr.	4	.7	94
Cooked	100	½ c. diced	18	1	Tr.	4	.7	94
Cereal foods (infant food), dry, precooked	100	½ c. dry	364	14	2	73	1.4	6
	30	1 oz.	103	4	1	21	.4	2
Chard, leaves and stalks, cooked	100	½ c.	21	1	Tr.	4	.9	92

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	WT.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg.	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Candy (Continued)									
Chocolate, sweetened, milk, with almonds	100	206	249	2.1	140	.13	.51	(1.1)	0
	30	58	71	.8	40	.04	.14	(.3)	0
Fudge, plain	100	48	67	.5	220	.01	.07	.1	Tt.
Hard	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Marshmallows	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Peanut brittle	100	38	124	2.0	30	.09	.05	4.9	0
Cantaloupe, raw	100	17	16	.4	3,420	.05	.04	.5	53
Carrots:									
Raw	100	39	37	.8	12,000	.06	.06	.8	6
Cooked	100	26	26	.8	12,500	.05	.05	.4	4
Canned									
Drained solids	100	88	26	.8	17,570	.02	.02	.3	8
Strained	30	7	7	.2	2,530	.01	.01	.1	1
Cashew nuts, roasted or cooked	100	46	428	5.0		.63	.19	2.1	.
	30	13	121	1.4		.18	.05	.6	.
Cauliflower:									
Raw	100	22	72	1.1	90	.11	.10	.6	80
Cooked	100	22	72	1.1	90	.06	.06	.5	23
Frozen, raw	100	19	42	.8	30	.06	.06	.5	52
Celery:									
Raw	100	50	40	.5	0	.05	.04	.4	7
Cooked	100	50	40	.5	0	.04	.03	.3	5
Cereal (infants), dry, precooked	100	651	686	33.9	0	1.19	.46	4.9	0
	30	183	194	9.6	0	.34	.13	1.4	0
Chard, cooked	100	103†	36	2.5	3,110	.04	.06	.4	17

Tt. See footnote on page 576

Note. Parentheses indicate imputed values.

† Calcium may not be available because of the presence of oxalic acid.



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Cheese:</b>								
Blue mold, domestic type	100	3% ozs.	368	22	31	2	0	40
	30	1 oz.	104	6	9	1	0	12
Camembert	100	3% ozs.	299	18	25	2	0	52
	30	1 oz.	85	5	7	1	0	16
Cheddar	100	3% ozs.	398	25	32	2	0	37
	30	1 oz.	113	7	9	1	0	11
Cheddar, processed	100	3% ozs.	370	23	30	2	0	40
	30	1 oz.	105	7	9	1	0	12
Cottage, from skim milk	100	% c.	93	20	1	2	0	77
	30	1 oz.	27	6	Tr	1	0	23
Cream cheese	100	3% ozs.	371	9	37	2	0	51
	30	1 oz.	106	3	11	1	0	15
Limburger	100	3% ozs.	345	21	28	2	0	45
	30	1 oz.	97	6	8	1	0	14
Parmesan	100	3% ozs.	393	36	26	3	0	30
	30	1 oz.	112	10	7	1	0	9
Swiss	100	3% ozs.	370	28	28	2	0	39
	30	1 oz.	105	8	8	1	0	12
Swiss, processed	100	3% ozs.	353	26	27	2	0	40
	30	1 oz.	101	8	8	1	0	12
<b>Cherries:</b>								
Sour, sweet and hybrd, raw	100	1 c. whole or % c. pitted	61	1	1	12	.3	83
Red, sour, pitted, canned	100	% c. scant	48	1	Tr.	12	.1	87
<b>Chicken:</b>								
Raw:								
Broilers, total edible	100	3% ozs.	151	20	7	0	0	71
Roasters, total edible	100	3% ozs.	200	20	13	0	0	66
Hens, total edible	100	3% ozs.	302	18	25	0	0	56
Fryers (cut-up pieces)								
Breast	100	3% ozs.	104	23	1	0	0	75
Leg	100	3% ozs.	112	21	3	0	0	75
Canned, boned meat only	100	3% ozs.	199	30	8	0	0	62

Tr See footnote on page 576.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg.	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Cheese:									
Blue mold, domestic	100	315	339	(.5)	(1,240)	.03	.81	.4	0
	30	89	98	(.1)	(350)	.01	.17	.1	0
Camembert	100	105	184	.5	(1,020)	.04	.75	1.1	0
	30	30	52	.1	(290)	.01	.21	.3	0
Cheddar	100	725	495	1.0	1,400	.02	.42	Tr.	0
	30	208	140	.3	400	.01	.12	Tr.	0
Cheddar, processed	100	673	787	.9	(1,300)	.02	.41	Tr.	0
	30	191	223	.3	(370)	Tr.	.12	Tr.	0
Cottage	100	98	189	.3	(20)	.02	.31	(.1)	0
	30	27	54	.1	(10)	.01	.09	Tr.	0
Cream cheese	100	83	97	.2	(1,450)	(.01)	.22	.1	0
	30	19	27	.1	(410)	Tr.	.06	Tr.	0
Limburger	100	590	393	.6	1,230	.08	.50	.2	0
	30	167	111	.2	360	.02	.14	Tr.	0
Parmesan	100	1,160	823	.4	(1,060)	.02	.73	.2	0
	30	329	233	.1	(300)	.01	.21	.1	0
Swiss	100	925	563	.9	1,450	.01	(.40)	(.1)	0
	30	282	160	.3	410	Tr.	(.11)	Tr.	0
Swiss, processed	100	837	867	.9	1,390	.01	.40	.1	0
	30	251	248	.3	390	Tr.	.11	Tr.	0
Cherries:									
Raw	100	18	20	.4	620	.03	.08	.4	8
Canned	100	11	12	(.5)	720	.03	.02	.2	8
Chicken:									
Raw:									
Broilers	100	14	200	1.5	0	.08	.16	10.2	0
Roasters	100	14	200	1.5	0	.08	.16	8.0	0
Hens	100	14	200	1.5	0	.08	.16	8.0	0
Fryers:									
Breast	100	14	212	1.1	0	.07	.09	10.5	0
Leg	100	15	188	1.8	0	.10	.24	5.8	0
Canned	100	14	143	1.5	0	.04	.16	6.4	0

Tr. See footnote on page 578

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Chickpeas or garbanzos, dry, whole seed, raw	100	½ c.	359	21	5	61	5.3	11
Chili sauce	100 17	½ c. scant 1 tbsp.	98 17	3 1	Tr. Tr.	24 4	.7 .1	13
Chocolate: Bitter or unsweetened	100 30	3½ ozs. 1 oz. square	504 142	(6) (1)	53 15	29 8	2.6 .8	2 1
Sweetened, plain	100	3½ ozs.	472	(2)	30	63	1.4	1
Chocolate beverage, made with milk*	100 250	½ c. scant 1 c.	99 239	3 8	5 13	11 26	.1 .3	81 202
Chocolate syrup	100 20	½ c. 1 tbsp.	209 42	(1) Tr.	1 Tr.	57 11	.6 .1	39 8
Clams, long and round. Raw, meat only	100	3½ ozs.	81	13	1	3	.	80
Canned, solids and liquid	100	3½ ozs.	51	8	1	2		87
Cocoa beverage, made with all milk	100 250	½ c. scant 1 c.	95 236	4 10	5 13	11 27	.1 .3	79 198
Cocoanuts: Fresh, meat	100	1 c. shredded	359	3	35	14	3.2	47
Dried, shredded (sweetened)	100	3½ ozs.	556	4	39	53	4.1	3
Coleslaw*	100	½ c.	86	1	6	8	.9	84
Collards: Cooked (boiled in small or moderate amount of water)	100	½ c.	40	4	1	7	1.2	87
Frozen, raw	100	½ c.	31	3	Tr.	6	1.0	90

Tr See footnote on page 578

Note. Parentheses indicate imputed value

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Chickpeas, dry	100	92	375	7.1	Tr	.55	17	1.5	(2)
Chili sauce	100 17	(12) (2)	(18) (3)	(8) (.1)	(1,880) (320)	(.09) (.02)	(.07) (.01)	(2.2) (.4)	(11) (2)
Chocolate: Bitter or unsweetened	100 30	98 28	446 126	(4.4) 1.2	60 20	.05 01	.24 .06	1.1 .3	0 0
Sweetened, plain	100	(63)	(257)	2.8	(30)	(.03)	(.15)	(.6)	0
Chocolate beverage, with milk*	100 250	104 260	92 230	.2 .5	140 350	.03 .08	.16 .40	.1 .3	1 2
Chocolate syrup	100 20	(15) (3)	(86) (17)	(1.4) (.3)					
Clams: Raw	100	(96)	(139)	(7.0)	110	.10	.18	(1.6)	
Canned	100	87	125	6.3	(80)	(.05)	.10	1.1	
Cocoa beverage, with milk	100 250	119 298	114 285	.4 1.0	160 400	.04 .10	.19 .46	.2 .5	1 3
Cocoanuts: Fresh, meat	100	21	98	2.0	0	.10	.01	.2	2
Dried, shredded	100	43	191	3.6	0	Tr	Tr.	Tr.	0
Coleslaw	100	39	27	.4	70	.05	.04	.2	41
Collards: Cooked	100	249	58	1.6	7,630	.08	.24	(1.7)	44
Frozen, raw	100	191	53	1.1	6,800	.07	.16	.7	63

Tr. See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

† Calcium may not be available because of the presence of oxalic acid.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Cookies:</b>								
Assorted or plain	25	1 cookie, 3 in. diam	109	2	3	19	.	1
Butterscotch, icebox	25	2 small	120	1	6	15	.1	1
Molasses, icebox	25	2 small	120	1	5	17	0	1
Oatmeal	25	1 large, 3½ in. diam.	114	2	4	18	Tr.	1
Sugar	20	1 cookie, 3 in. diam.	64	1	3	9	.	1
<b>Corn, sweet:</b>								
Cooked, fresh or frozen	100	½ c. or 1 small ear	85	3	1	20	.8	76
Canned								
Cream style	100	½ c. scant	80	2	1	19	.8	81
Whole kernel	100	½ c. scant	64	2	1	16	.8	81
<b>Corn bread or muffins*</b> made with. Whole ground corn meal	100	2 muffins, 2½ in. diam.	215	7	6	35	.6	49
Enriched, degermed corn meal	100	2 muffins, 2½ in. diam	219	7	5	37	.2	49
<b>Cornflakes (added thia- mine, niacin and iron)</b>	100	4 c.	372	8	Tr.	86	.6	4
	28	1 c., 1 oz. pkg.	103	2	Tr.	24	.2	1
<b>Corn and soy shreds (added thiamine and niacin)</b>	100	2½ c.	384	18	Tr.	74	1.0	3
	■	¾ c., 1 oz. pkg	103	5	Tr.	21	.3	2
<b>Corn grits, degermed, white.</b>								
Unenriched, cooked*	100	¾ c. scant	51	1	Tr.	11	.1	87
Enriched, cooked*	100	¾ c. scant	51	1	Tr.	11	.1	87
<b>Corn meal, white or yellow</b>								
Degermed, unen- riched, cooked*	100	¾ c. scant	50	1	Tr.	11	.1	88
Degermed, enriched, cooked*	100	¾ c. scant	50	1	Tr.	11	.1	88
<b>Corn pops, sugared</b>	28	1 c.	107	1	Tr.	26	.1	
<b>Corn, popped. See Popcorn.</b>								

Tr. See footnote on page 578.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Cookies:									
Assorted, plain	25	6	16	.2	0	.01	.01	.1	0
Butterscotch	25	11	22	.5	22	.05	.03	.3	0
Molasses	25	25	17	.8	24	.05	.04	.4	0
Oatmeal	25	12	35	.5	27	.06	.04	.2	0
Sugar	20	5	12	.2	25	.03	.03	.2	0
Corn:									
Cooked	100	5	52	6	390†	.11	.10	1.4	8
Canned									
Cream style	100	4	56	.6	113†	.03	.05	1.0	5
Whole kernel	100	4	50	.8	130†	.03	.05	.9	5
Corn bread or muffins made with Whole ground corn meal	100	141	216	1.7	130†	.15	.18	.8	0
Enriched, degermed corn meal	100	139	185	1.9	130†	.17	.23	1.3	0
Cornflakes	100	5	42	1.8	0	.42	.07	2.1	0
	25	2	12	.5	0	.12	.02	.6	0
Corn and soy shreds	100	85	184	4.2	0	.67	.14	2.1	0
	25	24	52	1.2	0	.19	.04	.6	0
Corn grits:									
Unenriched, cooked	100	1	10	.1	Tr	.02	.01	.2	0
Enriched, cooked	100	1	10	.3	Tr	.04	.03	.4	0
Corn meal:									
Unenriched, cooked	100	1	14	.2	40†	.02	.01	.1	0
Enriched, cooked	100	1	14	.4	40†	.06	.04	.5	0
Corn pops	25	3	8	.5		.12	.05	.6	0

Tr See footnote on page 576

† Vitamin A based on yellow corn; white corn contains only a trace.

‡ Based on recipe using white corn meal; if yellow, the vitamin A value is 236 I.U.

§ Based on recipe using white corn meal; if yellow, the vitamin A value is 235 I.U.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm	Fat Gm	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm	Fiber Gm	
Cowpeas, immature seeds, cooked	100	½ c.	94	7	1	16		75
Crabs, Atlantic and Pacific, hard shell, canned or cooked, meat only	100	¾ ozs.	104	17	3	1		77
Crackers: Graham Saltines Soda, plain or oyster crackers	14	2 medium	55	1	1	10	.1	1
	8	2 crackers	34	1	1	8	Tr.	1
	1	2 crackers, 2½-in. square or 10 oyster crackers	43	1	1	7	Tr.	1
Cranberries: Raw Sauce, sweetened, canned or cooked	100	1 c.	48	Tr.	1	11	1.4	87
	100	½ c scant	198	Tr.	Tr.	51	.4	48
Cream, Light, table or coffee Heavy or whipping	100	½ c. scant	204	3	20	4	0	73
	15	1 tbsp.	30	Tr.	3	1	0	11
	15	1 tbsp.	49	Tr.	5	1	8	9
Cucumbers, raw	100	½ of 7-8 in. cucumber	12	1	Tr.	3	.5	96
Currants, red, raw	100	1 c.	55	1	Tr.	14	4.0	84
Custard, baked* Pudding Canned, strained Infant food	100	½ c scant	114	5	5	11	0	77
	100	½ c.	108	3	3	18	.1	75
	30	1 oz	31	1	1	5	Tr.	23
Dandelion greens, raw or cooked	100	½ "	44	3	1	9	1.8	86
Dates, "fresh" and dried	100	½ c. pitted	284	2	1	75	2.4	20

Tr. See footnote on page 876

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	WT.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Cowpeas, immature seeds, cooked	100	37	182	2.5	390	.29	.08	.8	20
Crabs, canned or cooked	100	45	182	9		(.05)	(.06)	(2.5)	
Crackers, Graham Saltines	14 8	3 2	28 7	3 .1	0 0	.04 Tr	.02 Tr	.2 1	0 0
Soda, plain or oyster crackers	11	2	11	.1	0	.01	.01	.1	0
Cranberries: Raw	100	14	11	8	40	(.03)	(.02)	.1	12
Sauce, canned or cooked	100	(8)	(7)	(3)	(30)	(.02)	(.02)	(.1)	2
Cream, Light	100 15	97 15	77 12	1 0	830 120	.03 Tr	.14 .02	.1 Tr	.1 Tr
Heavy	15	12	9	0	220	Tr	.02	Tr	Tr
Cucumbers, raw	100	10	21	3	0	.03	.04	.2	8
Currents, red, raw	100	38	33	9	120	.04			36
Custard, baked Pudding	100	114	119	.5	340	.05	.20	.1	Tr.
Canned, strained Infant food	100 30	92 28	82 23	3 1	220 60	.02 Tr	.12 .04	.1 Tr	.1 Tr.
Dandelion greens Raw	100	187	70	3.1	13,650	.19	.14	(8)	38
Cooked	100	187	70	3.1	15,170	.13	.12	(7)	18
Dates	100	72	60	2.1	60	.09	.10	2.2	0

Tr. See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Doughnuts, cake type	100	3 doughnuts	425	7	21	53	.2	19
Eels, raw	100	3½ ozs.	162	19	9	0	0	72
Eggplant, raw	100	3½ ozs.	24	1	Tr.	6	.9	93
Eggs, fresh, stored or frozen:								
Raw or cooked								
Whole	100	2 medium	162	13	12	1	0	74
54		1 medium	77	6	6	Tr.	0	38
White	100	3 medium	50	11	0	1	0	89
31		1 medium	15	3	0	Tr.	0	27
Yolk	100	6 medium	361	16	32	1	0	49
17		1 medium	61	3	5	Tr.	0	8
Cooked, omelet or scrambled*	100	made with 2 small eggs	171	11	13	2	0	73
Dried, whole	100	1 c.	592	47	42	3	0	5
Endive or escarole, raw	100	3½ ozs.	20	2	Tr.	4	.8	93
Evaporated milk. See milk								
Farina.								
Unenriched, cooked*	100	½ c. scant	44	1	Tr.	9	0	89
Enriched, cooked	100	½ c. scant	44	1	Tr.	9	0	89
Fats, cooking (vegetable fat)	100	½ c.	884	0	100	0	0	0
12 5		1 tbsp.	110	0	13	0	0	0
Figs:								
Raw	100	3 small	79	1	Tr.	20	1.7	78
Canned, syrup pack, solids and liquid	100	3 figs and 2 tbsp. syrup	113	1	Tr.	30	.9	89
Dried	100	5 figs	270	4	1	58	5.8	24
Fig Bars	100	4 large	350	4	5	78	1.7	14

Tr See footnotes on page 576.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Doughnuts	100	73	286	(7)	140	16	13	1.2	0
Eels	100	16	202	.7	1,800	.28	.37	1.4	
Eggplant	100	15	37	.4	30	.04	.05	.6	5
Eggs, hen, fresh, stored, frozen									
Raw or cooked									
Whole	100	54	210	2.7	1,140	10	.29	.1	0
	54	26	101	1.3	550	.05	.14	Tr.	0
White	100	6	17	.2	0	0	.26	(1)	0
	31	2	5	1	0	0	.08	Tr.	0
Yolk	100	147	586	7.2	3,210	.27	.33	Tr.	0
	17	25	100	1.2	550	.05	.06	Tr.	0
Cooked, omelet or scrambled	100	81	194	2.1	1,040	.08	.27	.1	0
Dried, whole	100	190	767	8.8	3,740	.34	1.06	.2	0
Endive or escarole	100	79	56	1.7	3,000	.07	12	4	11
Evaporated milk See milk.									
Farina:									
Unenriched, cooked	100	3	13	.1	0	.01	.01	1	0
Enriched, cooked	100	3	13	.2	0	.04	.03	.2	0
Fats, cooking (vege- table fat)	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	12.5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Figs:									
Raw	100	54	32	6	60	.06	.05	.3	2
Canned, syrup pack	100	35	21	.4	50	.03	.03	.4	Tr
Dried	100	186	111	3.0	80	.16	.12	1.7	0
Fig bars	100	69	69	1.3	0	.02	.06	.9	0

Tr See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Fish:</b>								
Bluefish								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	124	21	4	0	0	75
Baked	100	3½ ozs.	155	27	4	0	0	69
Fried	100	3½ ozs.	205	29	10	5	0	61
Cod.								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	74	17	Tr.	0	0	83
Dried	100	3½ ozs.	375	82	3	0	0	18
Flounder, raw	100	3½ ozs.	68	15	1	0	0	83
Haddock								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	79	18	Tr.	0	0	81
Fried	100	3½ ozs.	158	19	6	7		67
Halibut.								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	126	19	5	0	0	75
Broiled	100	3½ ozs.	182	26	9	0	0	64
Herring								
Atlantic, raw	100	3½ ozs.	191	18	13	0	0	67
Pacific, raw	100	3½ ozs.	94	17	3	0	0	80
Smoked, kippered	100	3½ ozs.	211	22	13	0	0	61
Mackerel								
Atlantic:								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	188	19	12	0	0	68
Canned	100	3½ ozs.	182	19	11	0	0	68
Pacific, canned	100	3½ ozs.	180	21	10	0	0	66
Salmon								
Raw Pacific, Chinook or King	100	3½ ozs.	223	17	17	0	0	63
Pacific, broiled or baked	100	3½ ozs.	170	28	6	Tr.	0	65
Canned.								
Chinook or King	100	3½ ozs.	203	20	13	0	0	65
Pink or hump- back	100	3½ ozs.	143	21	6	0	0	70
Sockeye or red	100	3½ ozs.	173	20	10	0	0	67
Sardines.								
Atlantic type, canned in oil, drained solids	100	3½ ozs.	214	26	11	1		57
Pacific type, Pilchards								
Natural pack	100	3½ ozs.	200	18	14	1	0	65
Tomato sauce	100	3½ ozs.	216	18	15	2	2	63

Tr See footnote on page 576.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg.	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Fish:									
Bluefish									
Raw	100	23	243	6		.12	(.09)	1.9	
Baked	100	23	293	.7		.12	.11	2.2	
Fried	100	19	243	6		.11	.11	2.1	
Cod									
Raw	100	10	194	.4	0	.06	.09	2.2	0
Dried	100	(50)	891	3.6	0	.08	.43	10.9	0
Flounder, raw	100	61	195	.8		.06	.05	1.7	
Haddock									
Raw	100	23	197	.7		.05	.08	2.4	
Fried	100	18	182	6		.04	.09	2.6	
Halibut									
Raw	100	13	211	.7	440	.07	.06	9.2	
Broiled	100	14	267	.8		.06	.07	10.5	
Herring									
Atlantic, raw	100		256	1.1	110	.02	.15	3.4	
Pacific, raw	100				100	.02	.22	(2.2)	
Smoked, kippered	100	66	254	(1.4)	0	Tr	.28	(2.9)	
Mackerel									
Atlantic									
Raw	100	5	239	1.0	(450)	.15	.35	8.4	
Canned	100	185	274	2.1	430	.06	.31	5.8	
Pacific, canned	100	260	288	2.2	30	.03	.33	8.8	
Salmon									
Raw Pacific	100		(289)	(.9)	310	.10	.23	7.2	9
Cooked Pacific	100		(417)	(1.2)		.10	.28	8.1	
Canned †									
Chinook, King	100	154	299	9	230	.03	.18	7.3	0
Pink, humpback	100	187	236	.8	70	.03	.18	8.0	0
Sockeye, red	100	239	344	1.2	230	.04	.16	7.3	0
Sardines									
Atlantic type, drained solids	100	386	586	2.7	220	.02	.17	4.8	0
Pacific type									
Natural pack	100	(381)	(168)	4.1	(30)	(.01)	(.30)	(7.4)	0
Tomato sauce	100	381	168	4.1	30	.01	.27	5.3	0

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

† If bones are discarded, calcium content would be much lower. Bones equal about 2 per cent of total contents of can.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<i>Fish (Continued)</i>								
Shad, raw	100	3% ozs.	168	19	10	0	0	70
Swordfish								
Raw	100	3% ozs.	118	19	4	0	0	76
Broiled	100	3% ozs.	178	27	7	0	0	65
Tuna fish, drained solids	100	3% ozs.	198	29	8	0	0	50
Frog legs, raw	100	3% ozs.	73	16	Tr.	0	0	82
Fruit cocktail, canned, solids and liquids	100	% c. scant	70	Tr.	Tr.	19	.4	81
Gelatin, dry:								
Plain	100	% c.	335	86	Tr.	0	0	18
	10	1 tbsp	34	9	0	0	0	1
Dessert powder	90	3-oz. pkg.	324	8	Tr.	76	0	1
Gelatin dessert,* ready to serve.								
Plain	100	% c. heaping	65	2	0	15	0	83
With fruit added	100	% c. heaping	71	1	Tr.	18	.2	81
Gingerbread*	100	2 pieces, 2x2x2 in.	327	4	12	52	.1	90
Grapefruit:								
Raw	100	% small	40	1	Tr.	10	.3	89
Canned in syrup, solids and liquid	100	% c. scant	72	1	Tr.	19	.2	80
Grapefruit juice:								
Fresh or frozen reconstituted	100	% c. scant	36	1	Tr.	9	.1	90
Canned.								
Unsweetened	100	% c. scant	38	1	Tr.	10	.1	89
Sweetened	100	% c. scant	52	1	Tr.	14	.1	85
Grapefruit-orange juice blend, canned or frozen reconstituted								
Unsweetened	100	% c. scant	40	1	Tr.	10	.1	89
Sweetened	100	% c. scant	52	1	Tr.	14	.1	85

Tr. See footnote on page 578

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE I (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg.	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Fish (Continued)									
Shad, raw	100		260	.5		(15)	.24	(8.4)	
Swordfish									
Raw	100	19	193	.9	1,580	.05	.05	9.1	
Broiled	100	20	251	1.1	2,300	.05	.06	10.3	0
Tuna fish, drained solids	100	(8)	(351)	(1.4)	80	.05	12	12.8	0
Frog legs, raw	100	18	147	1.1	0	.14	.25	1.2	
Fruit cocktail, canned	100	9	12	.4	160	.01	.01	.4	2
Gelatin, dry:									
Plain	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Dessert powder	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Gelatin dessert, ready to serve:									
Plain	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
With fruit	100	0	11	.3	110	.03	.02	.2	3
Gingerbread	100	114	71	2.5	100	.04	.08	1.0	0
Grapefruit:									
Raw	100	22	18	.2	Tr.	.04	.02	.2	40
Canned in syrup, solids and liquids	100	13	14	.3	Tr.	.03	.02	.2	50
Grapefruit juice:									
Fresh or frozen	100	8	13	.3	Tr.	.04	.02	.2	40
Canned, unsweetened or sweetened	100	8	12	.3	Tr.	.03	.02	.2	35
Grapefruit-orange juice blend, canned or frozen, unsweetened or sweetened	100	9	15	.3	40	.05	.02	.2	38

Tr See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Grapes, raw: American type (slip skin) as Concord, Delaware, Niagara and Scuppernong	100	1 bunch, 3½x3 in.	70	1	1	15	.5	82
European type (adherent skin) as Malaga, muscat, sultanina, Thomp- son seedless and Tokay	100	¾ c.	66	1	Tr.	17	.5	82
Grape juice, bottled, commercial	100	3½ ozs.	67	Tr.	0	18		81
Guavas, common, raw	100	1 large	70	1	1	17	5.5	81
Heart: Beef, lean, raw	100	3½ ozs.	108	17	4	1	0	77
Calf, canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	23	4	1	Tr.	0	22
Chicken, raw	100	3½ ozs.	157	21	7	2	0	70
Pork, raw	100	3½ ozs.	117	17	5	Tr.	0	77
Honey, strained or extracted	21	1 tbsp.	62	Tr.	0	17		4
Honeydew melon, raw	100	wedge 1½x7 in.	32	1	0	7	.4	91
Ice cream, plain	100	¾ c.	207	4	13	21	0	62
	62	1 container, 3½ fluid ozs.	129	3	8	13	0	37
Jams, marmalades, preserves	20	1 tbsp.	55	Tr.	Tr.	14	.1	6
Jellies	20	1 tbsp.	50	0	0	13	0	7
Kale: Cooked, fresh or frozen	100	1 c.	40	4	1	7	1.2	87
Frozen, raw	100	1 c.	31	3	1	5	9	90

Tr See footnote on page 576.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg.	P Mg.	Fe Mg.	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Grapes, raw American type (slip skin)	100	17	21	.6	80	.06	.04	.2	4
European type (adherent skin)	100	17	21	.6	80	.06	.04	.2	4
Grape juice, bottled	100	10	10	.3		.04	.05	(.2)	Tr.
Coconut	100	30	29	7	250	.07	.04	1.2	302
Heart: Beef, raw	100	9	203	4.6	30	.58	.89	7.8	6
Call (infant food)	30	3	43	1.0		.02	.23	1.3	
Chicken, raw	100	23	142	1.7	30	.12	.01	3.2	6
Fork, raw	100	23	132	2.7	30	.43	1.24	6.0	6
Honey	21	1	3	.2	0	Tr.	.01	Tr.	1
Honeydew melon	100	(17)	(16)	(.4)	40	.05	.03	.2	23
Ice cream, plain	100	123	69	.1	520	.04	.10	.1	1
	62	76	61	.1	320	.03	.12	.1	1
Jams, etc.	20	2	2	1	Tr.	Tr.	Tr.	Tr.	1
Jellies	20	(2)	(2)	(.1)	Tr.	Tr.	Tr.	Tr.	1
Kale:									
Cooked	100	225	62	2.2	8,350	.07	.23	1.7	51
Frozen, raw	100	134	50	1.1	8,150	.05	.15	.3	64

Tr. See footnote on page 578.

Note. Parentheses indicate imputed values.



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Kidneys, raw.								
Beef	100	3% ozs.	141	15	8	1	0	75
Pork	100	3% ozs.	114	16	5	1	0	77
Sheep	100	3% ozs.	105	17	3	1	0	78
Kohlrabi:								
Raw	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. diced	30	2	Tr.	7	1.1	90
Cooked	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	30	2	Tr.	7	1.1	90
Lamb:								
Rib chop, cooked	100	3% ozs.	418	24	35	0	0	40
Shoulder roast cooked	100	3% ozs.	342	21	28	0	0	50
Leg roast, cooked	100	3% ozs.	274	24	19	0	0	56
Canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	30	4	1	0	0	24
Lard	100 14	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. 1 tbsp	902 126	0 0	100 14	0 0	0 0	0 0
Lemons	100	1 medium, 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ x 2 in.	32	1	1	9	.9	89
Lemon juice, fresh and canned unsweetened	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	24	Tr.	Tr.	8	0	91
Lentils, dry, split	100	3% ozs.	339	24	1	60	1.7	12
Lettuce, raw, headed and other types	100	4 large leaves	15	1	Tr.	3	.6	85
Limes	100	2 medium	37	1	Tr.	12	(.9)	86
Lime juice, fresh	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	24	Tr.	0	8	0	91
Liver.								
Beef								
Raw	100	3% ozs.	136	20	3	8	0	70
Fried	100	3% ozs.	208	24	8	10	0	57
Calf, raw	100	3% ozs.	141	19	5	4	0	71
Chicken, raw	100	3% ozs.	141	22	4	3	0	70
Pork, raw	100	3% ozs.	134	20	5	2	0	72
Sheep or lamb, raw	100	3% ozs.	136	21	4	3	0	71

Tr. See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Kidneys, raw.									
Beef	100	9	221	7.9	1,150	.37	2.55	.64	13
Pork	100	11	248	8.0	130	.58	1.74	.98	13
Sheep	100	13	237	9.2	(1,150)	.51	2.42	.74	13
Kohlrabi									
Raw	100	46	50	6	Tr	.06	.05	.2	61
Cooked	100	46	50	6	Tr	.04	.04	.2	37
Lamb									
Rib chop, cooked	100	11	200	3.0	0	14	.26	5.6	0
Shoulder roast, cooked	100	9	188	2.6	0	12	.22	4.8	0
Leg roast, cooked	100	10	237	3.1	0	.14	.25	5.1	0
Canned, strained	30	5	48	.7	0	.01	.07	1.1	0
Lard									
	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	14	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Lemons	100	40	22	.6	0	.04	Tr.	.1	50
Lemon juice, unsweetened	100	14	11	1	0	.04	Tr.	.1	50
Lentils, split	100	34	292	7.4	570	.56	.24	2.2	5
Lettuce:									
Headed	100	22	25	.5	540	.04	.08	.2	8
Leaf type	100	62	20	1.1	1,620	.04	.08	.2	18
Limes	100	(40)	(22)	(.6)	0	(.04)	Tr.	(.1)	27
Lime juice	100	(14)	(11)	(1)	0	(.04)	Tr.	(1)	27
Liver									
Beef									
Raw	100	7	358	6.6	43,900	.26	3.33	13.7	31
Fried	100	8	486	7.8	53,500	.26	3.96	14.8	31
Calf, raw	100	6	343	10.6	22,500	.21	3.12	16.1	36
Chicken, raw	100	16	240	7.4	32,200	.20	2.46	11.8	20
Pork, raw	100	10	382	18.0	14,200	.40	2.98	16.7	23
Sheep or lamb, raw	100	8	364	12.6	50,500	.40	3.28	16.9	33

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Liver, canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	30	5	1	Tr.	0	23
Lobster:								
Raw	100	3% ozs meat	88	16	2	1	0	79
Canned	100	3% ozs.	92	18	1	Tr.	0	77
Loganberries, raw	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	62	1	1	15	1.4	83
Macaroni:								
Unenriched.								
Dry	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. elbow type	377	13	1	77	.4	9
Cooked*	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. elbow type	149	5	1	30	.2	61
Enriched.								
Dry	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. elbow type	377	13	1	77	.4	9
Cooked*	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. elbow type	149	5	1	30	.2	61
Macaroni and cheese, baked*	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	211	8	11	20	.1	58
Mangos, raw	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ medium	66	1	Tr.	17	1.0	81
Margarine, fortified	100 14	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant 1 tbsp.	720 101	1 Tr.	81 11	Tr. Tr.	0 0	16 2
Marmalades. See Jams, marmalades, pre- serves.								
Mayonnaise. See Salad dressings								
Meat. See Beef, Lamb, Pork, Veal.								
Milk, cow:								
Fluid (pasteurized and raw)								
Whole	100 244	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant 1 c.	68 166	3.5 8.5	4 10	5 12	0 0	87 212
Nonfat (skim)	100 246	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant 1 c.	36 87	3.5 8.6	Tr. Tr.	5 13	0 0	91 222

Tr. See footnote on page 576.

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Liver (infant food)	30	7	79	2.0	5,440	01	61	1.8	
Lobster:									
Raw	100	61	184	6		(13)	06	(1.9)	
Canned	100	65	192	.8		(03)	.07	(2.2)	
Loganberries	100	35	19	1.2	(200)	(03)	(07)	(3)	24
Macaroni:									
Unenriched									
Dry	100	22	165	15	0	.09	.06	2.0	0
Cooked	100	9	65	.6	0	.02	.02	.5	0
Enriched									
Dry	100	22	165	2.9†	0	.88†	.37†	6.0†	0
Cooked	100	9	65	1.1	0	17	.10	14	0
Macaroni and cheeses:									
Unenriched	100	191	169	.5	450	.03	.16	.4	Tr.
Enriched	100	191	169	.7	450	.10	.20	.9	Tr.
Mangos	100	9	13	.2	6,350	06	06	.9	41
Margarine	100	20	16	0	3,900				0
	14	3	2	0	460				0
Marmalades. See Jams, marmalades, preserves.									
Mayonnaise. See Salad dressings									
Meat. See Beef, Lamb, Pork, Veal.									
Milk, cows:									
Fluid (pasteurized and raw).									
Whole	100	118	93	.1	(160)	.04	17	.1	1
	244	288	227	.2	(390)	.09	.42	.3	3
Nonfat	100	123	97	.1	Tr.	.04	.18	.1	1
	244	303	239	.2	(10)	.09	.44	.3	3

Tr. See footnote on page 376

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value

† Iron, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin are based on the minimum level of enrichment specified under the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Milk, cow (Continued)								
Canned.								
Evaporated (unsweetened)	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	138	7	8	10	0	74
Condensed (sweetened)	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	320	8	8	55	0	27
Dried								
Whole	100	1 c. scant	492	26	27	38	0	4
	8	1 tbsp.	39	2	2	3	0	Tr.
Nonfat solids (skim)	100	1 c. scant	362	38	1	52	0	4
	7%	1 tbsp	28	3	Tr.	4	0	Tr.
Malted†								
Dry powder	30	1 oz.	115	4	2	20	0	Tr.
Beverage	270	1 c.	281	12	12	32	0	210
Chocolate flavored*	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	74	3	2	11	0	83
	250	1 c.	185	8	6	27	0	207
Milk, goat, fluid	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	64	3	4	5	0	87
	244	1 c.	164	8	10	11	0	212
Molasses, cane:								
First extraction or light	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	252			65		24
Second extraction or medium	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	232			60		24
Third extraction or blackstrap	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	213			55		24
Muffins, made with enriched flour*	100	2 muffins, 2½-in. diam.	280	8	8	42	.1	37
Mung bean sprouts, raw	100	1 c.	23	3	Tr.	4	.7	92
Mushrooms, canned, solids and liquid	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	11	1	Tr.	4		93
Mustard greens:								
Cooked	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	22	2	Tr.	4	.8	92
Frozen	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	20	2	Tr.	3	.9	93

Tr. See footnote on page 578

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

† Based on unfortified products

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
 MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg.	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Milk, cow (Continued)									
Canned Evaporated	100	243	195	.2	400	05	36	.2	1
Condensed	100	273	228	.2	(430)	05	39	.2	1
Dried.									
Whole	100	949	728	.6	1,400	30	1.46	.7	6
	8	76	58	Tr.	110	02	12	.1	1
Nonfat solids	100	1,300	1,030	.8	(40)	35	1.96	1.1	7
	7%	98	77	Tr.	Tr	03	15	.1	1
Malted									
Dry powder	30	81	107	.6	290	09	15		0
Beverage	270	364	332	.8	630	18	.56		3
Chocolate flavored	100	109	91	.1	90	03	16	1	1
	250	272	228	.2	230	08	40	.2	2
Milk, goat	100	129	106	.1	(160)	04	.11	.3	1
	244	315	259	.2	(390)	10	.26	7	2
Molasses, cane:									
Light	100	165	45	4.3		07	.06	.2	
Medium	100	290	69	6.0			.12	1.2	
Blackstrap	100	579	85	11.3		.12	.18	1.6	
Muffins, with en- riched flour	100	206	191	1.6	100	18	.21	1.5	0
Mung bean sprouts	100	29	59	.8	10	07	09	.5	15
Mushrooms, canned	100	(7)	(90)	(8)	0	02	.25	2.0	
Mustard greens									
Cooked	100	220	38	2.9	7,180	.06	18	.7	45
Frozen, raw	100	115	45	1.6	6,000	04	.12	4	34

Tr See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Noodles (containing egg), enriched, cooked*	100	5 c.	87	2	1	13	.1	84
Oat cereal, ready-to-eat (added vitamins and minerals)	100 25	4 c. 1 c.	396 100	15 4	7 2	70 18	2.0 .4	4 1
Oatmeal or rolled oats: Cooked* Precooked (infant food), dry	100 30	½ c. 1 oz.	63 106	3 4	1 1	11 20	.2 .5	85 2
Oils, salad or cooking	100 14	½ c. 1 tbsp.	884 124	0 0	100 14	0 0	0 0	0 0
Okra, cooked	100	9 pods	33	2	Tr.	7	1.0	90
Olives, pickled Green Ripe, Mission	65 65	10 olives 10 olives	72 106	1 1	7 12	2 1	.8 1.0	50 48
Onions: Mature Raw  Cooked Young, green	100 100 100	1 onion, 2½-in. diam ½ c 12 small, with- out tops	45 38 45	1 1 1	Tr. Tr. Tr.	10 9 11	.8 .8 1.8	88 90 88
Oranges	100	1 small	45	1	Tr.	11	.6	87
Orange juice: Fresh Canned, unweetened	100 100	½ c. scant ½ c. scant	44 44	1 1	Tr. Tr.	11 11	.1 .1	88 88
Orange juice concentrate: Canned Frozen Undiluted Reconstituted	100 100 100	3% ozs. 3% ozs. 3% ozs	229 149 47	4 3 1	1 1 Tr.	58 37 11	.2 .2 .1	35 58 83
Oysters, meat only, raw	100	5-8 medium	84	10	2	7		81

Tr. See footnote on page 676

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Noodles, enriched, cooked	100	4	35	.5	30	14	.06	10	0
Mat cereal, ready-to-eat	100 25	160 40	350 88	4.1 10	0 0	.82 .20	19 (11)	19 .5	0 0
Oatmeal Cooked	100	9	67	.7	0	10	.02	.2	0
Precooked (infant food)	30	225	226	89	0	36	.10	.7	0
Oils	100 14	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0
Okra, cooked	100	82	62	.7	740	06	.06	.8	20
Olives, pickled Green	65	48	9	.9	160	Tr			
Rupe, Mission	65	48	9	.9	40	Tr	Tr		
Onions: Mature	100	32	44	.5	50	03	.04	.2	9
Raw	100	32	44	.5	50	02	.03	.2	8
Cooked	100	135	24	.9	(50)	(03)	(04)	(2)	24
Oranges	100	33	23	.4	190	08	03	.2	49
Orange juice. Fresh	100	19	16	2	(190)	(11)	03	.2	49
Canned, unsweetened	100	10	18	.3	(100)	.07	(11)	.2	42
Orange juice concentrate, Canned	100	81	89	16		.37	08	11	221
Frozen	100	34	60	.5	20	.24	.05	.7	188
Undiluted Reconstituted	100	11	16	1	5	.06	01	.2	47
Oysters	100	94	143	56	320	.15	.20	1.2	

Tr See footnote on page 676

Note Parentheses indicate imputed value



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm	
Oyster stew: <sup>a</sup> 1 part oysters to 3 parts milk by volume	100	½ c. scant	91	5	5	5		53
Pancakes (griddle- cakes) * Wheat (home recipe), with enriched flour	100	4 cakes, 4 in diam.	218	7	9	27	.1	55
Buckwheat, with buckwheat pan- cake mix	100	4 cakes	176	6	8	21	.5	62
Papayas, raw	100	½ c., ½ in. cubes	39	1	Tr.	10	.9	89
Parsley, common, raw	3%	1 tbsp. chopped	1	Tr.	0	Tr.	Tr.	2
Pumpkins, cooked	100	½ c	60	1	1	14	2.1	84
Peaches: Raw	100	1 peach, 2½x2 in. diam	46	1	Tr.	18	.6	87
Canned, solids and liquid.	100	½ c scant	27	1	Tr.	7	.3	92
Water pack	100	½ c scant	68	Tr.	Tr.	18	.4	81
Syrup pack	30	1 oz.	17	Tr.	Tr.	4	.1	25
Strained (infant food)	100	3½ ozs.	87	Tr.	Tr.	22	.4	77
Frozen, sliced	100	½ c.	265	0	1	00	3.5	54
Dried, sulfured. Uncooked	100	4-5 halves, 2 tbsp. fluid	120	1	Tr.	31	1.0	67
Cooked, sugar added*	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	100
Peanuts, Virginia type, roasted, shelled	100 9	½ c 1 tbsp. chopped	559 50	27 2	44 4	24 2	2.4 .2	3 Tr.
Peanut butter	100 16	1 tbsp.	576 92	26 4	48 8	21 3	2.0 .3	2 Tr.

Tr See footnote on page 576

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thi- amine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Oyster stew	100	117	110	1.5	280	.06	.18	.4	.
Pancakes. Wheat with en- riched flour	100	158	154	1.3	200	.18	.21	1.3	Tr.
Buckwheat	100	249	362	1.2	110	.16	.16	9	Tr
Papayas, raw	100	20	16	3	1,750	.03	.04	.3	56
Parsley	3%	7†	3	.2	290	Tr.	.01	.1	7
Parsnips, cooked	100	57	80	.7	0	.06	.10	2	12
Peaches Raw	100	8	22	.6	880	.02	.05	9	8
Canned Water pack	100	5	14	.4	450	.01	.02	.7	4
Syrup pack	100	5	14	.4	450	.01	.02	.7	4
Strained	30	2	5	.3	180	.01	.01	.2	1
Frozen, sliced	100	4	13	.5	120	.01	.03	.7	40†
Dried, sulfured									
Uncooked	100	44	126	6.9	3,250	.01	.20	5.4	19
Cooked, sugar added	100	12	35	1.9	900	Tr	.05	1.4	4
Peanuts	100	74	393	1.9	0	.30	.13	16.2	0
	9	7	35	.2	0	.03	.01	1.5	0
Peanut butter	100	74	393	1.9	0	.12	.13	16.2	0
	16	12	63	3	0	.02	.02	2.6	0

Tr. See footnote on page 616

† Calcium may not be available because of the presence of oxalic acid.

‡ Ascorbic acid added in processing

**TABLE 1 (Continued)**  
**COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION**

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Pears:</b>								
Raw	100	1 med. pear, 2½x2 in.	63	1	Tr.	16	1.4	83
Canned, solids and liquid:								
Water pack	100	¾ c. scant	31	Tr.	Tr.	8	.7	81
Syrup pack	100	2 med halves	68	Tr.	Tr.	18	.8	81
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	15	Tr.	Tr.	4	.3	26
<b>Peas, green:</b>								
Immature.								
Cooked fresh or frozen	100	¾ c. drained	70	5	Tr.	12	2.2	82
Canned								
Solids and liquid	100	¾ c. scant	68	4	Tr.	13	1.4	82
Drained solids	100	¾ c.	91	5	1	17	2.5	77
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	14	1	Tr.	2	.3	26
Mature dry seeds, split	100	¾ c.	344	25	1	62	1.2	10
<b>Pecans</b>	100 7%	1 c. halves 1 tbsp. chopped	696 52	9 1	73 6	13 1	2.2 .2	8 Tr.
<b>Peppers, green</b>								
Raw	100	1 large	25	1	Tr.	6	1.4	92
Cooked, parboiled, then baked	100	1 large or 2 small	26	1	Tr.	6	1.6	92
<b>Persimmons, Japanese, raw</b>	100	1 medium	78	1	Tr.	20	1.9	78
<b>Pickles:</b>								
Dill, cucumber	100	1 large	11	1	Tr.	2	.4	93
Fresh, cucumber (as bread and butter pickles)	100	¾ c.	70	1	Tr.	17		80
Sour, cucumber or mixed	100	¾ c.	11	1	Tr.	2	.4	95
Sweet, cucumber or mixed	100	¾ c.	108	1	Tr.	28		71

Tr See footnote on page 576

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg.	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Pears:									
Raw	100	13	16	.3	20	.02	.04	.1	4
Canned									
Water pack	100	8	10	.2	Tr	.01	.02	.1	2
Syrup pack	100	8	10	.2	Tr	.01	.02	.1	2
Strained	30	3	4	(.1)	10	Tr.	.01	.1	Tr.
Peas:									
Immature									
Cooked	100	22	122	1.9	720	.25	14	2.3	15
Canned									
Solids and liquid	100	25	67	1.8	540	11	.06	1.0	8
Drained solids	100	32	77	2.1	670	12	.06	1.0	9
Strained	30	5	18	.4	180	.03	.02	.3	2
Mature, split	100	33	268	5.1	370	77	28	8.1	2
Pecans	100	74	324	2.4	50	72	11	9	2
	7%	6	24	2	Tr	.05	.01	1	Tr.
Peppers, green,									
Raw	100	11	25	.4	630	.04	.07	.4	120
Cooked	100	11	25	.4	740	.04	.07	.4	99
Persimmons, raw	100	6	26	3	2,710	.05	.05	Tr.	11
Pickles,									
Dill	100	32	20	1.2	310	Tr	.06	Tr.	6
Fresh, w/ bread and butter pickles	100	32	27	1.8	180	.02	.04	Tr.	9
Sour	100	25	20	1.2	310	Tr	.06	Tr	6
Sweet	100	16	18	1.3	110	0	.02	Tr	7

Tr See footnote on page 576

Note Parentheses indicate imputed value

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm	Fat Gm	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm	Fiber Gm	
<b>Pies:</b>		$\frac{1}{4}$ of 9-in pie						
Apple*	135		331	3	13	53	1.0	64
Blueberry*	135		291	3	9	51	1.0	71
Cherry*	135		340	3	13	55	.2	61
Custard or coconut custard	130		266	7	11	34	0	79
Lemon meringue	120		302	4	12	45	0	63
Mince*	135		341	3	0	62	.5	57
Pumpkin	130		263	6	13	44	.6	70
<b>Pimientos, canned</b>	38	1 medium	10	Tr.	Tr.	2	.2	34
<b>Pineapples:</b>								
Raw	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. diced	52	Tr.	Tr.	14	.4	85
Canned, syrup pack, solids and liquid	100	1 med slice, 2 tbsp. juice	78	Tr.	Tr.	21	.3	78
Frozen, chunks	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs	86	Tr.	Tr.	22	.4	77
<b>Pineapple juice, canned</b>	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	49	Tr.	Tr.	13	.1	86
<b>Plums:</b>								
All, excluding prunes, raw	100	2 medium	50	1	Tr.	13	.5	86
Italian prunes, canned, syrup pack, solids and liquid	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant or 2 med prunes	76	Tr.	Tr.	20	.3	79
<b>Popecorn, popped</b>	14	1 c.	54	2	1	10	.3	1
<b>Pork, fresh:</b>								
Retail items, medium fat								
Ham, cooked	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.	400	24	33	0	0	42
Loin or chops, cooked	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.	333	23	26	0	0	50
Miscellaneous lean cuts, raw	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.	357	15	33	0	0	50

Tr. See footnote on page 578

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
<b>Figs.</b>									
Apple	135	9	32	.5	220	.04	.02	.3	1
Blueberry	135	14	30	.7	160	.02	.04	.3	5
Cherry	135	14	36	.5	520	.04	.02	.3	2
Custard or coco- nut custard	130	162	151	16	290	.07	.21	.4	0
Lemon meringue	120	24	61	6	210	.01	.10	.2	1
Mince	135	22	54	30	10	.09	.05	.5	1
Pumpkin	130	70	105	10	2,480	.04	.15	.4	0
<b>Pimientos, canned</b>	38	3	6	.6	870	.01	.02	.1	36
<b>Pineapple:</b>									
Raw	100	16	11	.3	130	.06	.02	.2	24
Canned, syrup pack	100	29	7	.6	80	.07	.02	.2	9
Frozen, chunks	100	9	4	.4	33	.10	.03	.3	8
<b>Pineapple juice</b>	100	15	8	5	80	.05	.02	.2	9
<b>Plums.</b>									
Raw	100	17	20	.5	350	.06	.04	.5	5
Italian prunes, canned, syrup pack, solids and liquids	100	8	12	1.1	230	.03	.03	.4	1
<b>Popcorn, popped</b>	14	(2)	(39)	(4)	0	(.05)	(.02)	(3)	0
<b>Pork, fresh, retail items</b>									
Ham, cooked	100	11	238	31	0	.53	.24	47	0
Loin or chops, cooked	100	11	235	30	0	.83	.24	50	0
Miscellaneous lean cuts, raw	100	8	157	22	0	.70	.17	38	0

Note. Parentheses indicate imputed values

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Pork:</b>								
Cured								
Ham, smoked, me- dium fat, cooked	100	3% ozs.	397	23	33	Tr.	0	39
Luncheon meat								
Boiled ham	100	3% ozs.	302	23	23	0	0	48
Canned, spiced	100	3% ozs.	289	15	24	2	2	55
Salt pork, fat, raw	100	3% ozs.	783	4	85	0	0	8
Canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	36	5	2	0	0	23
<b>Potatoes:</b>								
Cooked:								
Baked	100	1 medium	98	2	Tr.	23	.5	74
Boiled or steamed, peeled before cooking	100	1 medium	83	2	Tr.	19	.4	78
French Fried*	100	20 pieces, 2x1x1/2	393	5	19	52	1.1	20
Fried, raw	100	% c.	282	4	14	36	.8	43
Hash-browned after holding overnight	100	% c.	241	3	12	32	.7	51
Mashed, milk and butter added*	100	% c.	123	2	6	10	.3	74
Dehydrated	100	3% ozs.	357	7	1	82	2.2	7
Potato chips	20	10 med. or 7 large	108	1	7	10	.1	1
Potato flour	100	1 c sifted	357	7	1	82	2.2	7
Pretzels	5	5 small sticks	18	Tr.	Tr.	4	Tr.	Tr.
<b>Prunes:</b>								
Dried, unsulfured								
Uncooked	100	% c medium	268	2	1	71	1.6	24
Cooked, no sugar added	100	6 prunes, 2 tbsp. juice	125	1	Tr.	33	.8	65
Cooked, sugar added	100	6 prunes, 2 tbsp. juice	165	1	Tr.	43	.6	55
Canned, strained, (infant food)	30	1 oz.	28	Tr.	Tr.	7	.2	22

Tr See footnote on page 576

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Pork.									
Cured:									
Ham, smoked, cooked	100	10	166	2.9	0	.54	21	4.2	0
Luncheon meat:									
Boiled ham	100	9	92	2.7	0	1.01	.26	5.1	0
Canned, spiced	100	9	161	2.2	0	.32	.22	2.8	0
Salt pork	100	Tr.	Tr.	6	0	(.18)	(.04)	(.9)	0
Canned (infant food)	100	4	51	.5	0	.10	.08	1.3	0
Potatoes:									
Cooked									
Baked	100	13	66	.8	20	.11	.05	1.4	17†
Boiled or steamed	100	11	56	.7	20	.09	.03	1.0	14
French fried	100	30	152	1.9	50	.18	.11	3.3	28
Fried, raw	100	21	106	1.3	40	.12	.08	2.3	19
Hash-browned	100	18	93	1.2	30	.08	.06	1.7	7
Mashed with milk, butter	100	27	59	.8	260	.08	.05	.8	7
Dehydrated	100	25	88	4.0	40	.30	.11	4.5	11
Potato chips	20	(6)	(30)	(4)	(10)	(.04)	.02	.8	2
Potato flour	100	25	88	4.0	40	.30	.11	4.5	23
Pretzels	5	1	4	Tr.	0	Tr.	Tr.	Tr.	0
Prunes.									
Dried									
Uncooked	100	54	85	3.9	1,890	10	.11	1.7	3
Cooked, no sugar added	100	25	40	1.8	890	.03	.08	.8	1
Cooked, sugar added	100	22	34	1.5	750	.03	.06	.8	1
Canned (infant food)	30	7	8	.4	210	.01	.01	.2	1



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Prune juice, canned	100	% c. scant	71	Tr.	0	19	..	80
Prune whip*	100	% c.	148	3	Tr.	37	.7	59
Pumpkin, canned	100	% c.	33	1	Tr.	8	1.2	90
Radishes, raw	40	4 small	4	Tr.	Tr.	1	.1	37
Raisins, unsulfured, dried, seedless	100 10	% c. 1 tbsp	268 26	2 Tr.	1 Tr.	71 7	.	24 2
Raspberries: Black, raw	100	% c.	74	2	2	16	6.8	81
Red	100	% c.	57	1	Tr.	14	4.7	84
Raw	100	3% ozs.	98	1	Tr.	25	3.3	74
Frozen	100							
Rhubarb, stems only.								
Raw	100	% c. diced	16	1	Tr.	4	.7	95
Cooked, sugar added or canned in syrup*	100	% c	141	Tr.	Tr.	36	.6	63
Rice.								
Brown, raw	100	% c.	360	8	2	78	.6	12
Converted.								
Raw	100	% c.	362	8	Tr.	79	.2	12
Cooked, fluffy*	100	% c.	116	2	Tr.	25	.1	78
White or milled								
Raw	100	% c	362	8	Tr.	79	.2	12
Cooked*	100	% c	119	3	Tr.	26	.1	71
Rice products (added thiamine and niacin)								
Flakes	30	1 c.	118	2	Tr.	26	.2	1
Krispies	30	1 c.	107	2	Tr.	25	.1	Tr.
Puffed	14	1 c	55	1	Tr.	12	.1	Tr.
Rice, wild. See Wild rice.								

Tr. See footnote on page 576

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg.	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Prune juice, canned	100	25	40	1.8		.03	.08	.4	(1)
Prune whip	100	26	42	1.8	860	.04	.11	.7	2
Pumpkin, canned	100	(20)	(36)	(7)	3,400	.02	.06	.5	
Radishes, raw	20	7	6	.2	10	.01	Tr.	.1	5
Raisins, unsulfured, dried	100 10	78 8	129 13	33 .3	50 5	.15 .02	.08 .01	.5 Tr.	Tr. Tr.
Raspberries: Black, raw	100	40	37	9	0	.02	.07	.3	24
Red	100	40	37	.9	130	.02	.07	.3	24
Raw	100	13	17	.8	330	.02	.06	.8	21
Frozen									
Rhubarb, stems only									
Raw	100	51½	25	.5	30	.01		.1	9
Cooked, sugar added	100	41½	20	.4	20	.01		.1	8
Rice:									
Brown, raw	100	39	303	2.0	0	.32	.05	4.6	0
Converted									
Raw	100	24	136	8	0	.20	.03	3.8	0
Cooked, fluffy	100	8	43	3	0	.05	.01	1.1	0
White or milled.									
Raw	100	24	136	.8	0	.07	.03	1.6	0
Cooked	100	8	45	.3	0	.01	.01	.4	0
Rice products (added thiamine and niacin)									
Flakes	30	6	35	.5	0	.14	.03	1.6	0
Krispies	30	7	33	.5	0	.11	.01	2.0	0
Puffed	1½	3	16	.3	0	.06	.01	.8	0
Rice, wild See Wild rice.									

Tr. See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values

† Calcium may not be available because of the presence of oxalic acid.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm	Fat Gm	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm
						Total Gm	Fiber Gm	
Rolls.*								
Plain, enriched (pan rolls)	98	1 small	86	3	2	15	Tr.	7
Hamburger bun	38	1 large	118	3	2	21	Tr.	10
Sweet, enriched	100	2 rolls	323	9	8	54	.2	28
	55	1 roll	178	5	4	30	.1	15
Rutabagas, cooked	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c diced	32	1	Tr.	8	1.4	91
Rye flour:								
Light	100	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ c. sifted	358	9	1	78	.4	11
Medium	100	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ c. sifted	350	11	2	75	1.0	11
Dark	100	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ c. sifted	330	16	3	68	2.4	11
Rye wafers or "Swedish health bread"	13	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ $\times$ 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ in. 2 wafers	43	2	Tr.	10	.3	1
Salad dressings								
Commercial, plain (mayonnaise type)	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c scant	384	1	87	14	0	45
	15	1 tbsp.	58	Tr.	6	2	0	7
French	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	394	1	36	20	.3	40
	15	1 tbsp	59	Tr	5	3	Tr	6
Home-cooked, boiled*	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c scant	165	5	10	15	0	68
	17	1 tbsp	28	1	2	3	0	11
Mayonnaise	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c	708	2	78	3	0	16
	13	1 tbsp.	92	Tr.	10	Tr.	0	2
Salmon. See Fish.								
Sardines. See Fish								
Sauerkraut, canned, drained solids	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	22	1	Tr	4	.9	91
Sausage:								
Bologna	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs	221	15	16	4		62
Frankfurter, cooked	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ medium	248	14	20	2		62
Liver, liverwurst	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs	263	17	21	2		59
Pork, links or bulk, raw	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.	450	11	45	0	0	42
Pork, bulk, canned	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs	299	15	26	0	0	55
Vienna sausage, canned	100	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs	215	16	16	0	0	64

Tr See footnote on page 676

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
<b>Rolls:</b>									
Plain, enriched	28	15	27	.5†	0	.07†	.04†	6†	0
Hamburger bun	38	21	36	7†	0	.09†	.06†	8†	0
Sweet, enriched	100	63	104	1.8†	0	.24†	.15†	2.2†	0
	53	35	57	1.0†	0	.13†	.08†	1.2†	0
<b>Rutabagas, cooked</b>	100	55	41	4	350	.05	.07	7	21
<b>Rye flour:</b>									
Light	100	22	185	1.1	0	.15	.07	6	0
Medium	100	(27)	262	2.6	0	.30	.12	2.5	0
Dark	100	54	(536)	4.5	0	.61	.22	2.7	0
<b>Rye wafers or "Swedish health bread"</b>	18	6	52	6	0	.04	.03	.2	0
<b>Salad dressings.</b>									
Commercial, plain	100	9	30	.4	140	.02	.03	0	0
	15	1	4	.1	20	Tr	Tr	0	0
French	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	15	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Home-cooked	100	90	102	.7	500	.08	.17	.3	Tr.
	17	15	17	1	80	.01	.03	Tr.	Tr.
Mayonnaise	100	19	60	1.0	210	.04	.04	0	0
	13	2	8	.1	30	Tr	Tr	0	0
<b>Salmon. See Fish</b>									
<b>Sardines. See Fish</b>									
<b>Sauerkraut, canned, drained solids</b>	100	36	18	(5)	40	.03	.06	.1	16
<b>Sausage.</b>									
Bologna	100	(9)	(112)	2.2	0	.18	.19	2.7	0
Frankfurters, cooked	100	6	49	1.2	0	.16	.18	2.5	0
Liver, liverwurst	100	9	238	5.4	5,750	.17	1.12	4.5	0
Pork, raw	100	8	100	1.6	0	.43	.17	2.3	0
Pork, bulk, canned	100	9	166	2.3	0	.20	.24	3.0	0
Vienna sausage	100	9	170	2.4	0	.10	.12	3.1	0

Tr See footnote on page 578

Note Parentheses indicate imputed values

† Iron, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin are based on the minimum level of enrichment specified by the Federal Security Agency

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm	Fiber Gm	
Scallops, raw	100	3½ ozs.	78	15	Tr.	3	0	80
Sherbet*	100	½ c.	123	2	0	30		68
Shortbread*	100 16	12 pieces 2 squares, 1½x1½ in	504	7	24	64	.2	4
			81	1	4	10	Tr.	1
Shrimp, canned, dry pack or drained solids of wet pack	100	3½ ozs.	127	27	1			66
Syrup, table blends (chiefly corn syrup)	100	½ c. 1 tbsp.	286	0	0	74		25
	20		57	0	0	(15)		5
Soups, canned †								
Bean, ready to serve	250	1 c.	191	9	5	30	1.5	205
Beef, ready to serve	250	1 c.	100	6	4	11	.2	229
Bouillon, ready to serve	240	1 c.	9	(2)		0	0	228
Chicken, ready to serve	250	1 c.	75	4	3	10	.2	235
Clam chowder, ready to serve	255	1 c.	86	5	2	13	.8	227
Cream soup (aspar- agus, celery or mushroom)	255	1 c.	201	7	12	18	.2	212
Liver soup, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	16	1	Tr.	2	.1	28
Noodle, rice or barley, ready to serve	250	1 c.	117	6	5	13	1.3	226
Pea, ready to serve	245	1 c.	141	6	2	25	1.5	215
Tomato, ready to serve	245	1 c.	90	2	2	18	.5	225
Vegetable Ready to serve	250	1 c.	82	4	2	15	.8	229
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	12	1	Tr.	■	.2	26
Vegetable and lamb soup, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	14	1	Tr.	2	.2	27

Tr See footnote on page 578

Note Parentheses indicate imputed value

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

† All ready-to-serve soups are calculated from equal weights of the condensed soup and water, except cream soup, which is based on equal weights of the condensed soups and milk

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Scallops, raw	100	26	208	18	0	(.04)	.10	1.4	
Sherbet*	100	50	40	0	0	.02	.08	Tr	
Shortbread*	100	10	59	4	0	.04	.02	.5	0
	16	2	9	.1	0	.01	Tr	.1	0
Shrimp, canned, dry pack or drained solids	100	115	263	3.1	60	.01	.03	2.2	0
Syrup, table blends	100	48	16	4.1	0	0	.01	.1	0
	20	9	3	.8	0	0	Tr.	Tr.	0
Soups, canned †									
Bean, ready to serve	250	95	102	2.8		.10	.10	.8	
Beef, ready to serve	250	15	62	.5					
Bouillon, ready to serve	240	2	24	1.0	0	0	.05	.8	11
Chicken, ready to serve	250	20	20	.5		.02	.12	1.5	
Clam chowder, ready to serve	255	36	76	3.6					
Cream soup	255	217	176	.5	200	.05	.20	.1	0
Liver soup, strained	30	5	18	.5	1,340	.02	.12	.5	1
Noodle, rice or barley	250	82	85	.2	30	.02	.05	.7	11
Pea, ready to serve	245	32	98	1.5	(440)	.17	.07	1.2	5
Tomato, ready to serve	245	24	39	1.0	(1,230)	.02	.10	.7	10
Vegetable Ready to serve	250	32	50	.8		.05	.08	1.0	8
Strained	30	7	11	.3	700	.02	.02	.1	Tr.
Vegetable and lamb soup, strained	30	6	10	.2	740	.01	.01	.3	Tr.

Tr See footnote on page 578.

Note Parentheses indicate imputed values

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

† All ready-to-serve soups are calculated from equal weights of the condensed soup and water, except cream soup, which is based on equal weights of the condensed soup and milk.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Soybeans, whole, mature, dried	100	3½ ozs.	331	35	18	85†	5.0	8
Soybean flour, flakes, gnts.	100	1 c.	238	45	1	38†	2.3	11
Low fat	100	1 c.	264	43	7	37†	2.6	9
Medium fat	100	1 c.						
Soybean sprouts, raw	100	1 c.	46	6	1	5	.8	86
Spaghetti:								
Unenriched.								
Dry	100	1 c., 2-in. pieces	377	13	1	77	.4	9
Cooked*	100	¾ c.	149	5	1	80	.2	61
Enriched								
Dry	100	1 c., 2-in. pieces	377	13	1	77	.4	9
Cooked*	100	¾ c.	149	5	1	80	.2	61
Spinach:								
Raw	100	3½ ozs.	20	2	Tr.	3	.6	93
Cooked	100	¾ c. packed	26	3	1	4	1.0	91
Canned:								
Drained solids	100	¾ c. packed	26	3	1	4	1.0	91
Strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	4	1	Tr.	1	.2	28
Frozen, raw	100	3½ ozs.	25	3	Tr.	4	.8	91
Squash:								
Summer:								
Cooked, diced, fresh or frozen	100	¾ c.	16	1	Tr.	4	.5	95
Winter:								
Baked, mashed	100	¾ c.	47	2	Tr.	11	1.8	86
Boiled, mashed	100	¾ c.	38	2	Tr.	9	1.4	89
Canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz.	8	Tr.	Tr.	2	.2	27
Starch, pure (including arrowroot, corn, etc.)	100	¾ c.	362	1	Tr.	87	.1	12
	8	1 tbsp.	29	0	0	7	Tr.	1

Tr. See footnote on page 576

\* Values are calculated from a recipe

† Approximately 40 per cent of this total amount of carbohydrate calculated by difference is sugar, starch and dextrin. The remaining portion is made up of materials thought to be utilized only poorly, if at all, by the body.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Cs Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg
Soybeans, whole, mature, dried	100	227	586	80	110	107	31	23	Tr.
Soybean flour, flakes, gnts	100	265	623	130	70	110	35	29	0
Low fat	100	244	610	130	110	82	34	26	0
Medium fat	100								
Soybean sprouts	100	48	67	10	180	23	20	8	13
Spaghetti									
Unenriched									
Dry	100	22	165	1.5	0	.09	.06	20	0
Cooked	100	9	65	6	0	.02	.02	.5	0
Enriched									
Dry	100	22	165	2.9†	0	.88†	.37†	60†	0
Cooked	100	9	65	1.1	0	.17	.10	14	0
Spinach									
Raw	100	81†	55	30	9,420	11	20	.6	59
Cooked	100	124†	33	20	11,780	.08	.20	.6	30
Canned									
Drained solids	100	124†	33	20	7,630	.02	.12	.4	14
Strained (infant food)	30	22†	11	4	1,190	.01	.03	.1	2
Frozen, raw	100	105†	45	25	8,100	10	16	.5	95
Squash									
Summer									
Cooked, diced, fresh, frozen	100	15	15	4	260	.04	.07	.6	11
Winter									
Baked	100	24	35	.8	6,190	.05	15	.6	7
Boiled	100	19	28	.6	4,950	.04	10	.4	5
Canned, strained (infant food)	30	9	5	1	560	.01	.02	(1)	1
Starch, pure (including arrowroot, corn, etc)	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Tr. See footnote on page 676

enrichment specified



TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
<b>Strawberries:</b>								
Raw	100	% c	37	1	1	8	1.4	90
Frozen, sugar added	100	3% ozs.	106	1	Tr.	27	1.1	72
<b>Sugars:</b>								
Granulated, cane or beet	100	% c.	385	0	0	100	0	1
	12	1 tbsp.	48	0	0	12	0	
Powdered	100	% c	385	0	0	100	0	1
Brown, dark	100	% c.	370	0	0	98	0	3
Maple	100	3% ozs.	348			(90)	0	8
<b>Sweet potatoes:</b>								
Baked	100	1 small	152	2	1	54	1.2	61
Boiled	100	% medium	123	2	1	28	1.0	69
Candied	100	% medium	179	2	4	36	.8	57
Canned, vacuum or solid pack	100	% c.	107	2	Tr.	25	1.0	72
<b>Tangerines (including other Mandarin type oranges)</b>	100	1 medium	44	1	Tr.	11	1.0	87
<b>Tangerine juice, unsweetened.</b>								
Fresh or frozen reconstituted	100	% c scant	39	1	Tr.	9	.	89
Canned	100	% c scant	39	1	Tr.	9	.	89
<b>Tapioca, dry, granulated</b>	100	% c	360	1	Tr.	80	.1	13
<b>Tomatoes.</b>								
Raw	100	1 small	20	1	Tr.	4	.6	94
Canned or cooked	100	% c	19	1	Tr.	4	.4	94
<b>Tomato juice, canned</b>	100	% c scant	21	1	Tr.	4	.2	94
<b>Tomato ketchup</b>	17	1 tbsp.	17	Tr.	Tr.	4	.1	12
<b>Tomato purée, canned</b>	100	% c scant	36	2	1	7	.4	89
<b>Tongue beef, medium fat, raw</b>	100	3% ozs.	207	16	15	Tr.	0	68
<b>Tortillas</b>	100	5 tortillas	211	6	(3)	49	(1.4)	42
	20	1 tortilla	50	1	(1)	10	(.3)	8

Tr. See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
 MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

LIST	Wt.	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Strawberries:									
Raw	100	28	27	.8	60	.03	.07	.3	60
Frozen, sugar added	100	14	17	.7	33	.02	.06	.5	53
Sugars.									
Granulated	100				0	0	0	0	0
	12				0	0	0	0	0
Powdered	100				0	0	0	0	0
Brown, dark	100	76	37	2.6	0	0	0	0	0
Maple	100								
Sweet potatoes:									
Baked	100	37	60	.9	9,510	10	.06	.8	23
Boiled	100	30	49	.7	7,700	.09	.05	.6	20
Candied	100	36	45	.9	6,250	.04	.04	.5	9
Canned, vacuum or solid pack	100	25	41	.8	8,850	.05	.04	.5	14
Tangerines (other Mandarin type oranges)	100	(33)	(23)	(4)	(420)	.07	(.03)	2	31
Tangerine juices:									
Fresh or frozen reconstituted	100	19	16	(.2)	(420)	.07	(.03)	(.2)	31
Canned	100	19	16	.2	(420)	(.06)	(.03)	(.2)	(26)
Tapioca, dry	100	12	12	(1.0)	0	0	0	0	0
Tomatoes.									
Raw	100	11	27	.6	1,100	.06	.04	.5	23
Canned or cooked	100	(11)	(27)	(.6)	1,050	.06	.03	.7	16
Tomato juice, canned	100	(7)	(15)	(4)	1,050	.05	.03	.8	16
Tomato ketchup	17	2	3	.1	(320)	.02	.01	.4	2
Tomato purée, canned	100	(11)	(37)	(1.1)	1,880	.09	.07	1.8	28
Tongue, beef	100	9	187	2.8	0	12	.29	5.0	0
Tortillas	100 20	111 22	184 37	2.2 4	210† 40†	19 31	.06 01	1.0 .2	

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed values.

† Vitamin A value of tortillas made from yellow corn; tortillas made from white corn have no vitamin A value.

**TABLE 1 (Continued)**  
**COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION**

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Tuna fish. See Fish.								
Turkey, medium fat, raw	100	3% ozs.	268	20	20	0	0	58
Turnips:								
Raw	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. diced	32	1	Tr.	7	1.1	91
Cooked	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. diced	27	1	Tr.	8	1.2	93
Turnip greens, boiled in small amount of water	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c.	30	3	Tr.	5	1.2	90
Veal.								
Retail items, medium fat								
Cutlet, boned, cooked	100	3% ozs.	219	28	11	0	0	60
Shoulder roast, boned, cooked	100	3% ozs.	228	28	12	0	0	59
Stew meat without bone, cooked with liquid	100	3% ozs.	296	25	21	0	0	53
Canned, strained (infant food)	30	1 oz	24	5	1	0	0	24
Vegetables, mixed, strained, canned (infant food)	30	1 oz	8	1	0	2	.2	27
Vinegar	100	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. scant	12	0	.	(5)	0	
Waffles, baked with enriched flour*	75	1 waffle, 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ x5 $\frac{1}{2}$ x $\frac{1}{2}$	216	7	8	28	.1	30
Walnuts, Persian or English	100 8	1 c. of halves 1 tbsp chopped	654 49	15 1	64 5	16 1	2.1 2	3 Tr
Watermelons	100	3% ozs. per portion	28	1	Tr.	7	6	92

Tr. See footnote on page 576

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value

\* Values are calculated from a recipe.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg	Vita- min A I.U.	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Tuna fish. See Fish.									
Turkey	100	23	320	38	Tr.	.09	.14	8.0	0
Turnips:									
Raw	100	40	34	.5	Tr.	.05	.07	.5	28
Cooked	100	40	34	.5	Tr.	.04	.06	.4	18
Turnip greens, boiled in small amount of water	100	259	50	2.4	10,800	.06	.41	.7	60
Veal:									
Retail items.									
Cutlet, boned, cooked	100	12	258	35	0	.06	.28	6.1	0
Shoulder roast, cooked	100	12	258	36	0	.13	.31	7.9	0
Stew meat, cooked	100	11	124	30	0	.10	.32	9.2	0
Canned (infant food)	90	4	48	5	0	.01	.09	1.6	0
Vegetables, mixed (infant food)	30	9	10	.3	270 to 1,510	.01	.01	.1	1
Vinegar	100	7	10	.5				..	..
Waffles, baked, en- riched flour	75	144	153	.8	270	.05	.14	.3	0
Walnuts	100 8	83 6	380 28	2.1 2	30 Tr.	.48 .04	.13 .01	12 .1	3 Tr.
Watermelons	100	7	12	.2	590	.05	.05	.2	6

Tr See footnote on page 576.

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
COMPOSITION OF FOODS EDIBLE PORTION

FOOD AND DESCRIPTION	Wt. Gm.	Approximate Measure	Food Energy Cal.	Pro- tein Gm.	Fat Gm.	CARBO- HYDRATE		Water Gm.
						Total Gm.	Fiber Gm.	
Wheat flours:								
Whole (from hard wheat)	100	1 c. scant	333	13	0	71	2.3	12
Self-rising, enriched Patent.	100	1 c. scant	350	9	1	74	.4	12
All purpose or family flour.								
Unenriched	100	1 c. scant	364	11	1	76	.3	12
Enriched	100	1 c. scant	364	11	1	76	.3	12
Bread flour								
Unenriched	100	1 c. scant	365	12	1	75	.3	12
Enriched	100	1 c. scant	365	12	1	75	.3	12
Cake or pastry flour	100	1 c. level	364	8	1	79	.2	12
Wheat products:								
Flakes (added iron, thiamine and niacin)	100	4 c.	355	11	2	80	1.7	4
	35	1 c.	125	4	1	28	.8	1
Germ	100	3% ozs., 1 c.	361	25	10	50	2.5	11
Puffed (added iron, thiamine and niacin)	100	8 c.	355	11	8	80	1.7	4
	12	1 c.	43	1	Tr.	10	.2	1
Rolled, cooked*	100	½ c. scant	75	2	Tr.	17	.5	80
Shredded, plain	30	1 large biscuit, 4x2½ in.	102	3	1	23	.7	2
Whole meal, cooked*	100	½ c. scant	72	3	Tr.	18	.4	80
Whole meal (added wheat germ, iron and thiamine), cooked*	100	½ c. scant	55	2	Tr.	12	.3	85
White sauce, medium*	100	½ c. scant	162	4	13	9	0	74
Wild rice, parched, raw	100	½ c.	353	14	1	75	1.0	9
Yeast:								
Compressed, baker's	12	1 cake, 1 in. square	12	1	Tr.	3	Tr.	9
Dried, brewer's	8	1 tbsp.	22	(3)	Tr.	3	.1	1

Tr. See footnote on page 576.

Note: Parentheses indicate imputed value.

\* Values are calculated from ½ recipe

TABLE 1 (Continued)  
MINERALS AND VITAMINS IN FOODS

List	Wt	MINERALS			VITAMINS				
		Ca Mg	P Mg	Fe Mg.	Vita- min A IU	Thia- mine Mg	Ribo- flavin Mg.	Niacin Mg.	Ascorbic Acid Mg.
Wheat, flours,									
Whole	100	41	372	33	0	.35	.12	4.9	0
Self-rising, enriched	100	272†	434	2.9†	0	.44†	.26†	3.5†	0
Patent									
All purpose or									
family flour									
Unenriched	100	16	87	.8	0	.06	.05	9	0
Enriched	100	16	87	2.9†	0	.44†	.26†	3.5†	0
Bread flour									
Unenriched	100	16	95	9	0	.08	.06	1.0	0
Enriched	100	16	95	2.9†	0	.44†	.26†	3.5†	0
Cake or pastry	100	17	73	.5	0	.03	.03	.7	0
Wheat products									
Flakes	100	46	329	4.2	0	.56	.18	6.4	0
	35	115	115	1.5	0	.20	.06	2.2	0
Germ	100	84	1,096	8.1	0	2.05	.80	4.6	0
Puffed	100	46	329	4.2	0	.56	.18	6.4	0
	12	6	39	5	0	.07	.02	8	0
Rolled, cooked	100	8	76	7	0	.07	.03	11	0
Shredded, plain	30	13	102	1.0	0	.06	.03	1.3	0
Whole meal, cooked	100	9	83	.7	0	.10	.03	.9	0
Whole meal, en- riched, cooked	100	8	65	4.9	0	.22	.03	.8	0
White sauce	100	115	95	.1	510	.03	.15	.1	Tr.
Wild rice	100	19	339		0	.45	.63	6.2	0
Yeast:									
Compressed, baker's	112	3	86	7	0	.06	.25	3.4	0
Dried, brewer's	8	8	151	1.5	0	.78	.44	2.9	0

Tr. See footnote on page 576

† Calcium ‡ based on the level usually found in self-rising flour

‡ Iron, thiamine, riboflavin and niacin are based on the minimum level of enrichment specified under the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act.

TABLE V  
FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS<sup>1</sup>

Food*	APPROXIMATE MEASURE	Wt Gm.	CALORIES	PROT. Gm.	FAT Gm.	CARBOHYDRATE Gm.	Ca Gm.	P Gm.	Fe Mg.	VIT. A I.U.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg.	THIAMINE Mg.	RIBOFLAVIN Mg.	NIA-COM Mg.
cereal products. defined	1 sl. bread (30 Gm.), ½ c. cooked cereal and cereal products (20 Gm. dry); ¼-1 c. prep. cereal (20 Gm.) 3 soda crack- ers (20 Gm.), 1½ c popcorn (20 Gm.); 1 griddle cake (4-in. diam).													
	1 sl. bread (30 Gm.), ½ c. cooked cereal (20 Gm. dry); ¼-1 c. prepared cereal (20 Gm.), 2 graham crackers (20 Gm.).		80	2.5	1	15	.01	.02	.2			.02	.02	.3
Whole grain and enriched														
			80	2.5	1	15	.02	.03	.6			.07	.04	.6
dry products: Butter, Margarine Cheese, Cheddar type	1 tp	5	95		4					165				
	1 cu. in	80	125	7.5	10	1	.22	.15	.3	420		.01	.10	
Cheese, cottage, skm	½ c. (for heavy cream add ½ serving butter)	100	95	19.5	1	2	.10	.19	.3	20		.02	.31	.1
	½ c.	100	100	10	6	1	.03	.02		250		.01	.04	
Cream, light	1 medium	180	150	7.0	7	15	.15	.16	.6	440		.06	.28	.1
	½ c.	90	80	6.5	6		.03	.10	1.4	570		.05	.14	.1
Egg											1	.03	.15	.1
Ice cream Milk														
Buttermilk, skm Whole	1 c.	240	85	8.5		12	.30	.23	.2	385		.10	.43	.2
	1 c.	240	165	8.5	9	12	.28	.22	.2			.10	.41	.2

TABLE III (Continued)  
FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS<sup>1</sup>

Food*	APPROXIMATE MEASURE	WT Gm	CALORIES	PROT Gm	FAT Gm	CARBOHYDRATE Gm	Ca Gm	P Gm	Fe Mg	VIT A LU	ASCORBIC ACID Mg	THIAMINE Mg	RIBOFLAVIN Mg	Niacin Mg
Potato, cooked	1 small (100 Gm.), for fried add 1 to 2 servings fat, for French fried (50 Gm) add 1 to 2 servings fat		85	2.0										
Tomato, fresh, canned, or juice	$\frac{1}{2}$ c. 1 small tomato (100 Gm.), for 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ tbsp catsup (50 Gm) add $\frac{1}{2}$ serving sweets					19	01	06	.7	20	14 $\frac{1}{2}$	.09 $\frac{1}{2}$	.03	1.0
Other, cooked	$\frac{1}{2}$ c beets, eggplant, onions, etc	20		1.0		4	01	.02	.5	1.035	18	.03	.03	.8
Other, commonly served raw	2 pieces celery, 8 sl cucumber, $\frac{1}{2}$ head lettuce	100	40	1.0		9	03	.05	6	80	8	03	.04	.3
		50	10	.5		2	.02	.01	.2	105	4	.01	.01	.2

<sup>1</sup> Leitcher, J. M., and Wilson, E. D. J. Am. Dietet. A. 57 366, 1951

\* The nutritive value of food mixtures such as macaroni and cheese, Spanish rice, chow mein, creamed vegetables, soups and so on should be computed on the basis of the kind and the approximate amount of the foods in the combination

<sup>†</sup> For sauerkraut, reduce by one half

<sup>‡</sup> For canned, reduce by one half

<sup>§</sup> Calcium may be unavailable in chard, spinach and beet greens

(Explanation of Use of Table is on following page)



FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS<sup>1</sup>

Food*	APPROXIMATE MEASURE	WT. Gm	CALORIES	PROT. Gm	FAT Gm	CARBOHYDRATE Gm	Ca Gm	P Gm	Fe Mg	VIT A I.U.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg	THIAMINE Mg	RIBOFLAVIN Mg	NIA-CIN Mg
Fruits (Continued)														
Yellow-flesh, canned, dried	fresh (100 Gm); 1 medium peach; 2 to 3 apricots, 3 plums; dried (30 Gm); for sweetened, canned, dried or fresh add	70		.5		17	.01	.03	.6	910	6	.01	.03	1.0
Other-dried	½ serving sweets													
	3 to 4 dates, 1½ to 2 small figs; dried apple, ½ c. raisins	30		.5		20	.03	.03	.9	15		.04	.03	.3
Other-fresh and canned	½ c.	100		.5		13	.01	.01	.4	95	4	.04	.03	.2
Gravy, white sauce	½ c.	65	105	2.5	8	6	.07	.06	.2	225		.04	.11	.2
Legumes														
Beans, peas	½ c. cooked, dried (30 Gm)	100		6.5		18	.05	.13	2.0	10	1	.19	.07	.7
Soybeans	½ c. cooked, dried (30 Gm)	105	105	10.5	5	4	.07	.18	2.4	35		.32	.09	.7
Meats														
Beef, lamb, veal, cooked	1 medium serving	75	240	19.0	18		.01	.15	2.3			.07	.17	.37
Fowl, cooked	1 medium serving	75	150	15.0	10		.01	.16	1.7			.04	.08	.33
Liver, cooked	1 small serving	60	135	14.0	5	6	.01	.29	4.7	32,100	19	.16	2.38	.89
Luncheon meats, cooked	2 sl. sausage, uncooked; ham, dried beef, luncheon roll (30 Gm); ½ frankfurter													
Pork, ham, cooked	1 medium serving	75	85	6.0	7		.01	.05	.3			.08	.08	.8
			280	18.0	23		.01	.16	2.2			.47	.17	.35

Nuts:	1 tbsp peanut butter, 8 to 15 walnut halves, 18 peanuts, 12 to 15 almonds, 12 pecan halves	15	90	40	7	3	01	06	3			04	08	1.1
Sweets:	1 tbsp. sugar, jelly, jam, syrup, honey, 1 serving plain Jello, plain candy (fondant or mints, 14 Gm), 8-oz bottle soft drink	55				14								
Candy bar	1 2-oz chocolate- coated bar	200	200	40	15	34	.06	.09	11	65		.04	.17	1.1
Molasses, sorghum	1 tbsp	100	100			11	.04	.01	18			.02	.03	.6
Vegetables.														
Cabbage-cooked and sauerkraut	% c.	100	25	15		5	.05	.03	.5	90	30†	.05	.05	.3
Cabbage, raw, cauliflower, cooked	1 c. cabbage (50 Gm), % c cauliflower (70 Gm)	15		1.0		3	.02	.03	.5	50	22	.04	.04	.2
Corn, parsnips, cooked	% c. corn, 1 large parsnip	100	85	2.0	1	11	.03	.07	.6	105	10†	.07†	.09†	.6†
Green and yellow Asparagus cooked	% c	100	20	2.0		3	.02	.05	1.0	1,040	18†	.13†	.17†	1.2†
Broccoli, cooked	% c	100	100	3.0		5	.13	.01	1.3	3,400	74	.07	.15	.8
Carrots, cooked	% c	100	30	.5		7	.03	.03	.6	12,500	4†	.05†	.05†	.4†
Green beans, cooked	% c	100	25	1.5		5	.04	.02	.7	600	14†	.07†	.10†	.5†
Leafy green, cooked	% c spinach, turnip, kale, other greens	100	30	2.5		5	.20†	.05	.27	10,400	33†	.08†	.21†	.6†
Peas, fresh, cooked, canned	% c.	100	70	4.0		13	.02	.09	1.8	630	15†	.25†	.14†	.23†
Sweet potato, cooked	% large	100	140	2.0	1	11	.03	.05	.7	8,605	22†	.10†	.06†	.7†

TABLE 2 (Continued)  
FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS<sup>1</sup>

Food*	APPROXIMATE MEASURE	WT Gm.	CALORIES	PROT. Gm.	FAT Gm.	CARBOHYDRATE Gm.	Ca Gm.	P Gm.	Fe Mg.	VIT. A I.U.	ASCORBIC ACID Mg.	THIAMINE Mg.	RIBOFLAVIN Mg.	NIA Gm.
Potato, cooked	1 small (100 Gm.), for fried add 1 to 2 servings fat, for French fried (50 Gm.) add 1 to 2 servings fat			2.0		19	.01	.06	.7	20	141	.09†	.03	1.0
Tomato, fresh, canned, in juice	½ c 1 small tomato (100 Gm.), for 2½ tbsp catsup (50 Gm.) add ½ serving sweets		20	1.0	4		.01	.02	.5	1,035	18	.05	.03	.8
Other, cooked	¾ c beets, eggplant, onions, etc.	100	40	1.0	9		.03	.05	.6	80	8	.03	.04	.3
Other, commonly served raw	2 pieces celery, 8 sl. cucumber, ¾ head lettuce	50	10	.5	2		.02	.02	.2	105	4	.02	.03	.2

<sup>1</sup> Leitchsenring, J. M., and Wilson, E. B.: *J Am Dietet A* 57:584, 1957.

\* The nutritive value of food mixtures such as macaroni and cheese, Spanish rice, chow mein, creamed vegetables, soups and so on should be computed on the basis of the kind and the approximate amount of the foods in the combination.

† For nutrient, reduce by one half.

‡ For canned, reduce by one half.

§ Calcium may be unavailable in chard, spinach and beet greens.

(Explanation of Use of Table 5 on following page.)

TABLE 2 (Continued)  
FOOD COMPOSITION TABLE FOR SHORT METHOD OF DIETARY ANALYSIS

Explanation of Use of Table 2

To illustrate the use of the food composition table, a sample day's menu from one of the homemaker's record is given below

This day's menu may be summarized as follows in preparing to calculate the nutritive value from the figures in Table 2

Breakfast		Foods		SERVINGS
Tomato juice	1 serving	Cereals.		
Oatmeal	1 serving	Refined		1
Cream (light)	2 servings	Whole grain or enriched		4
Sugar	2 tsp			
Bread, white enriched	1 sl	Dairy products:		
Butter	1 tsp.	Butter		5%
Milk, whole	1 c.	Cheese, Cheddar		1
		Cream, light		2
		Milk, whole		3%
Lunch				
Macaroni and cheese	1 serving	Desserts:		
Head lettuce,		Cake, plain		%
French dressing	1 serving	Pie crust		1
Applesauce, sweetened	1 serving	Pudding		1
Cupcake	1			
Bread, whole wheat	1 sl	Fruit, other, fresh or canned		1
Butter	1 tsp.			
Milk, whole	1 c.	Meat: liver		1
Mid-afternoon				
Chocolate bar	1	Sweets		1
		Candy bar		1
Dinner				
Liver	1 small serving	Vegetables:		
Potato, baked	1 small	Green beans		1
Butter	2 tsp	Potato		1
Green beans, buttered	1 serving	Tomato		1
Celery	2 pieces	Other, raw		1
Bread, white enriched	1 sl			
Butter	1 tsp			
Chocolate pie	1 serving			
Milk, whole	1 c			

**TABLE 3**  
**CLASSIFICATION OF FRUITS AND VEGETABLES ACCORDING TO**  
**CARBOHYDRATE CONTENT**

VEGETABLES 1% Protein	FRUITS 3% CARBOHYDRATE	VEGETABLES 2% Protein	FRUITS 1% Protein
Asparagus		Beans, snap, green and wax	Avocado (26% fat)
Cabbage, Chinese		Beet greens	Cantaloupe
Celery		Broccoli (3% prot.)	Watermelon
Chard		Cabbage	
Chicory leaves		Carrots, cooked	
Cucumbers		Cauliflower	
Endive, escarole		Collards (4% prot.)	
Lettuce		Eggplant	
Mushrooms, canned		Kale (4% prot.)	
Mustard greens		Kohlrabi	
Radishes		Okra	
Romaine lettuce		Peppers, green and red	
Sauerkraut		Tomato purée, canned	
Spinach (3% prot.)		Turnips, turnip tops	
Squash, summer (zucchini, yellow crooked neck)			
Tomatoes or juice			
Water cress			
9% CARBOHYDRATE		12% CARBOHYDRATE	
2% Protein	1% Protein	2% Protein	1% Protein
Artichokes, green	Gooseberries	Egg noodles	Apricots
Beets	Grapefruit or juice	Peas, fresh or frozen (5% prot.)	Blackberries
Brussels sprouts (4% prot.)	Lemons or juice		Limes
Carrots, raw	Lime juice		Oranges or juice
Dandelion greens	Melon, honeydew		Peaches
Onions	Papayas		Pineapple juice
Pumpkin	Strawberries		Plums
Rutabagas	Tangerine juice		Tangerines
Squash, winter			
15% CARBOHYDRATE		18% CARBOHYDRATE	
2% Protein	1% Protein	2% Protein	1% Protein
Parsnips	Apples or juice	Lima beans, fresh canned (6% prot.)	Grapes
	Blueberries	Potatoes	Grape juice
	Cherries, sour and sweet		Guavas
	Currants		Mangoes
	Loganberries		Prune juice, canned
	Nectarines		
	Pears		
	Pineapple, fresh		
	Raspberries, red and black		
21% CARBOHYDRATE		25-35% CARBOHYDRATE	
3% Protein	1% Protein	% Protein % Carbo- hydrate	
Corn	Bananas	Prunes, dried, cooked without sugar	1 33
Lima beans, frozen (6% prot.)	Figs, fresh	Plantains	1 31
	Persimmons	Sweet potatoes	
	Pineapple, frozen	Boiled	2 28
		Baked	2 34
		Macaroni, cooked	5 30
		Spaghetti, cooked	11 30
		Rice, cooked	2 26

Classification prepared by the Nutrition Department of The New York Hospital with values based upon U.S.D.A. Handbook No. 8, 1950

TABLE 4  
CHOLESTEROL CONTENT OF FOODS\*

	MG. PER 100 GM.		MG. PER 100 GM.
<b>Meats:</b>		<b>Dairy products:</b>	
Beef, round		Butter	280
Med. fat	125	Cheese	
Lean	95	Whole milk	135-160
Lamb, muscle, free of fat	70	Cottage	1.7
Pork, muscle, free of fat	60	Cream, 25% fat	87
Rabbit, muscle, free of fat	50	Eggs	
Veal	100-140	Whole	468
		Yolk	1,330
<b>Organ meats:</b>		White	■
Brain, beef	2,300	Milk	
Heart, beef	145	Whole, 4% fat	14
Kidney, beef	400	Skim, 1% fat	0.4
<b>Liver:</b>		<b>Miscellaneous:</b>	
Beef	320	Fish liver oils	
Calf	380	Cod	500
Lamb	610	Halibut	7,500
Pork	420	Lard	110
Sweetbreads	280	Beef suet, kidney	107
Tripe	150	Beef fat, other	90
<b>Fish:</b>		Mutton tallow, kidney	122
Codfish	50	Mutton fat, from chops	89
Oyster†	230-470	Pork fat, from chops	99
Salmon	60		
Shrimp†	150	No Cholesterol.	
Tuna, canned, oil removed	60	Cereals	
Fish roe and caviar	high in cholesterol	Coffee and tea	
<b>Fowl</b>		Fruits	
<b>Chicken:</b>		Margarine made from vegetable oils	
Lean muscle	60-90	Soup stock without fat	
Whole bird	113	Vegetables	
Breast with skin	89	Vegetable oils	
Duck, lean muscle	70		
Turkey, lean muscle	75		

\* Table adapted from Okey, R. Cholesterol content of foods, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 21: 241, 1945.  
Dobbins, E. V., et al. Low Fat, Low Cholesterol Diet, Doubleday, 1963. Pihl, A. *Scandinav. J. Clin.*  
Lab. Invest. 4: 116, 1952.

† Oysters and shrimp are known to contain other sterols than cholesterol.

**TABLE 5**  
**SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES**

	MG /100 GM.			MG /100 GM.	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Beverages</b>			<b>Oatmeal or rolled oats</b>	2	340
<b>Alcoholic:</b>			<b>Rice:</b>		
Beer	7*	46	Brown	9	150
Brandy	3	4	Converted	4	170
Rum	2	3	White polished	2	130
Whisky	1	1	Flakes	720	180
Wine, average	7*	104	Puffed	1	100
<b>Nonalcoholic:</b>			Tapioca, dry	4	19
Cocoa:			<b>Wheat:</b>		
Dry powder	5	1,400	Flakes	1,300*	320
Dutch process	57	3,200	Unsalted	2	
<b>Coffee</b>			Germ, plain	2	760
Instant, dry	84	3,100	Gluten	2	24
Roasted, dry	2	1,600	Puffed cereal	4	340
<b>Soft drinks:</b>			Shredded	2	330
Cola, gingerale and root beer	7*	1*	<b>Dairy Products and Eggs</b>		
Orange crush	2	100	<b>Butter:</b>		
Postum, instant dry	71	2,200	Salted, avg	1,000*	23
Tea, blend dry	4	1,800	Unsalted	10*	4
<b>Breads and Cereals</b>			Buttermilk, cultured	130	140
Barley, pearled	3	160	Cream, 32% fat	40	56
<b>Breads</b>			<b>Cheese:</b>		
Boston Brown with raisins	280	360	Cheddar	700*	92
White, enriched	600*	180	Cottage	290*	72
Whole wheat	600*	230	Unsalted curd	20*	
<b>Low sodium, avg of 14 commercial samples</b>	28*	120	Cream, Philadelphia	250*	74
Corn flakes	660	160	Process	1,500*	80
Corn meal, yellow	1	120	Swiss	710*	100
Corn, popped without salt	■	240	<b>Eggs</b>		
<b>Crackers</b>			Whole	130	100
Graham	710*	330	Whites only	150	100
Rye, Ry-Krisp, matzoth, unsalted			Yolks only	85	100
Passover bread	1	140	<b>Milk</b>		
<b>Farina</b>			Cow's, fresh, whole	50	140
Plain dry	2	88	Fresh, skim	52	150
Cream-of-Wheat, enriched	90	84	Condensed	140	340
<b>Flour</b>			Dry, skim	525	1,500
Bleached, enriched	1	86	Dry, whole	410	1,100
Bleached, phosphated	13	78	Evaporated	100	270
Buckwheat	1	680	Goat's, liquid	54	180
Gluten	■	24	Low sodium, dry	14	1,000*
Rye, dark	1	860	Malted, dry	440	720
Whole wheat (graham)	2	290	<b>Fats and Oils</b>		
Macaroni or spaghetti, dry	5*	160	Vegetable shortening	0*	0
			Margarine	1,100*	58
			Unsalted	10*	
			<b>Oils</b>		
			Cod-liver, corn, olive	0	0
			Cottonseed, peanut	Negligible	

\* Value variable or subject to variation because of processing method.

TABLE 5 (Continued)

SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES

	Mg /100 Gm			Mg /100 Gm	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Fish and Shellfish</b>			<b>Figs</b>		
Clams	180	240	Fresh	2	190
Cod fish			Canned in syrup	2*	105
Unsalted, raw	65	360	Dried	34	780
Frozen fillet	400	400	Fruit cocktail, canned	5*	160
Salted, dried	8,100	160	Gooseberries, raw	1	87
Crab, canned	1,000	110	Grapefruit		
Halibut			Fresh	1	200
Raw, unsalted	58	540	Juice, sweetened, canned	2*	150
Lobster, boiled	210	180	Sections, frozen	■	60
Oysters, raw	73*	110	Grapes		
Salmon:			Concord, less skins/seeds	3	■
Raw, unsalted	50	410	Juice, Concord	1	120
Canned with salt	540	300	Thompson seedless	4	160
Canned without salt	60*		Lemon, pulp and juice	1	130
Sardines, canned	550*	580	Lime, pulp and juice	1	100
Scallops, frozen	150	420	Nectarine, less skin	2	320
Shrimp, raw	140	220	Olives		
Tuna fish:			Green, pickled or stuffed	2,000*	55
Canned	800*	240	Rupe, pickled	980	23
Low salt dietetic	50*		Orange		
<b>Fruits, fresh, canned, frozen, dried</b>			Fresh pulp and juice	1	170
<b>Apples:</b>			Juice, canned	1	160
Juice, sweet cider	4	100	Peaches		
Raw, less skin and core	1	80	Fresh, less skin	1	160
Sauce, canned	1	55	Canned in syrup	2*	31
Sliced, frozen	■	68	Frozen in syrup	3	120
Apricots			Pears		
Raw	1	440	Fresh, less skin	2	100
Canned in syrup	4*	65	Canned in syrup	2*	52
Dried	10*	1,700	Pineapple		
Avocado	3	340	Raw	1	210
Banana	1	420	Canned in syrup	1*	120
Blackberries, fresh or canned	1*	150	Frozen in syrup	1	38
Blueberries, fresh or canned	1*	89	Juice, canned	1	140
Cantaloupe	13	230	Plums		
Cherries			Fresh, raw	1	170
Sour, canned or frozen	2*	78	Canned in syrup	1*	110
Sweet, raw or frozen	1	260	Prunes		
Canned in syrup	1	77	Raw with skin	1	210
Cranberries			Canned in syrup	3*	220
Raw	1	65	Dried	6	800
Sauce, canned	1*	17	Juice, bottled	2	260
Currants			Raisins, seedless	25	720
Raw, red	2	160	Raspberries, red, raw	1	130
Dried	20	730	Rhubarb		
Dates, semidry	1	790	Raw	■	70
			Frozen in syrup	2	180
			Strawberries		
			Raw	1	180
			Frozen, sweetened	2	180
			Tangerine, pulp and juice	1	110
			Watermelon	1	110

\* Value variable or subject to variation because of processing method



TABLE 5  
SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES

	Mg /100 Gm.			Mg /100 Gm.	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Beverages</b>			<b>Oatmeal or rolled oats</b>	■	340
<b>Alcoholic</b>			<b>Rice.</b>		
Beer	7*	46	Brown	9	150
Brandy	3	4	Converted	4	170
Rum	2	3	White polished	2	130
Whisky	1	1	Flakes	720	180
Wine, average	7*	104	Puffed	1	100
<b>Nonalcoholic</b>			Tapioca, dry	4	■
Cocoa.			<b>Wheat.</b>		
Dry powder	5	1,400	Flakes	1,300*	320
Dutch process	57	3,200	Unsalted	2	■
Coffee			Germ, plum	■	780
Instant, dry	84	3,100	Gluten	2	24
Roasted, dry	2	1,600	Puffed cereal	4	340
<b>Soft drinks</b>			Shredded	2	330
Cola, gingerale and root beer	7*	1*	<b>Dairy Products and Eggs</b>		
Orange crush	2	100	Butter.		
Postum, instant dry	71	2,200	Salted, avg.	1,000*	23
Tea, blend dry	4	1,800	Unsalted	10*	4
<b>Breads and Cereals</b>			Buttermilk, cultured	130	140
Barley, pearled	3	180	Cream, 32% fat	40	56
<b>Breads</b>			<b>Cheese</b>		
Boston Brown with raisins	280	380	Cheddar	700*	92
White, enriched	600*	180	Cottage	290*	72
Whole wheat	600*	230	Unsalted curd	20*	■
<b>Low sodium, avg of 14 commercial samples</b>	28*	120	Cream, Philadelphia	250*	74
Corn flakes	660	160	Process	1,500*	80
Corn meal, yellow	1	120	Swiss	710*	100
Corn, popped without salt	3	240	<b>Eggs</b>		
<b>Crackers</b>			Whole	130	100
Graham	710*	330	Whites only	150	100
Rye, Ry-Krisp, matzoth, unsalted	1	140	Yolks only	85	100
Passover bread	1	140	<b>Milk</b>		
<b>Fanna</b>			Cow's, fresh, whole	50	140
Plain dry	2	86	Fresh, skim	52	150
Cream-of-Wheat, enriched	90	84	Condensed	140	340
<b>Flour</b>			Dry, skim	525	1,500
Bleached, enriched	1	86	Dry, whole	410	1,100
Bleached, phosphated	13	78	Evaporated	100	270
Buckwheat	1	680	Goat's, liquid	34	180
Gluten	2	24	Low sodium, dry	14	1,000*
Rye, dark	1	860	Malted, dry	440	720
Whole wheat (graham)	2	290	<b>Fats and Oils</b>		
Macaroni or spaghetti, dry	■*	160	Vegetable shortening	0*	0
			Margarine	1,100*	58
			Unsalted	10*	■
			<b>Oils</b>		
			Cod-liver, corn, olive	0	0
			Cottonseed, peanut	Negligible	■

\* Value variable or subject to variation because of processing method.

TABLE 5 (Continued)

SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES

	Mg /100 Gm			Mg /100 Gm	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Fish and Shellfish</b>			<b>Figs</b>		
Clams	180	240	Fresh	2	190
Cod fish			Canned in syrup	2*	105
Unsalted, raw	65	360	Dried	34	780
Frozen fillet	400	400	Fruit cocktail, canned	5*	180
Salted, dried	8,100	160	Gooseberries, raw	1	87
Crab, canned	1,000	110	Grapefruit,		
Halibut			Fresh	1	200
Raw, unsalted	56	340	Juice, sweetened,		
Lobster, boiled	210	180	canned	2*	150
Oysters, raw	73*	110	Sections, frozen	■	60
Salmon			<b>Grapes</b>		
Raw, unsalted	50	410	Concord, less		
Canned with salt	540	300	skins/seeds	8	84
Canned without salt	60*		Juice, Concord	1	120
Sardines, canned	550*	560	Thompson seedless	4	180
Scallops, frozen	150	420	Lemon, pulp and juice	1	130
Shrimp, raw	140	220	Lime, pulp and juice	1	100
Tuna fish			Nectarine, less skin	2	320
Canned	800*	240	<b>Olives</b>		
Low salt dietetic	50*		Green, pickled or		
			stuffed	2,000*	■
			Ripe, pickled	980	23
<b>Fruits, fresh, canned,</b>			<b>Orange</b>		
<b>  frozen, dried</b>			Fresh pulp and juice	1	170
<b>Apples</b>			Juice, canned	1	180
Juice, sweet cider	4	100	<b>Peaches</b>		
Raw, less skin			Fresh, less skin	1	160
and core	1	80	Canned in syrup	2*	31
Sauce, canned	1	55	Frozen in syrup	3	120
Sliced, frozen	68	68	<b>Pears</b>		
<b>Apricots</b>			Fresh, less skin	2	100
Raw	1	440	Canned in syrup	2*	52
Canned in syrup	4*	65	<b>Pineapple</b>		
Dried	10*	1,700	Raw	1	210
Avocado	3	340	Canned in syrup	1*	120
Banana	1	420	Frozen in syrup	1	88
Blackberries, fresh			Juice, canned	1	140
or canned	1*	150	<b>Plums</b>		
Blueberries, fresh			Fresh, raw	1	170
or canned	1*	89	Canned in syrup	1*	110
Cantaloupe	18	230	<b>Prunes</b>		
Cherries			Raw with skin	1	210
Sour, canned or frozen	2*	78	Canned in syrup	3*	220
Sweet, raw or frozen	1	260	Dried	6	600
Canned in syrup	1	77	Juice, bottled	2	260
Cranberries			Raisins, seedless	25	720
Raw	1	65	Raspberries, red, raw	1	130
Sauce, canned	1*	17	Rhubarb		
Currants			Raw	2	70
Raw, red	2	160	Frozen in syrup	2	180
Dried	20	730	<b>Strawberries</b>		
Dates, semidry	1	790	Raw	1	180
			Frozen, sweetened	2	180
			Tangerine, pulp and juice	1	110
			Watermelon	1	110

\* Variable or subject to variation because of processing method

**TABLE 5 (Continued)**  
**SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES**

	MG./100 GM.			MG./100 GM.	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Meats and Poultry</b>			<b>Vegetables, fresh, frozen, dried</b>		
Bacon, fried crisp	2,400*	390	<b>Asparagus:</b>		
Beef:			Avg. fresh or frozen	3	280
Lean, raw	70	360	Canned spears	410	190
Corned	1,300	60	Canned without salt	4	
Heart	85	160	<b>Beans:</b>		
Kidney	200*	310	Baked with tomato sauce	400	140
Chicken, avg. light and dark	75*	285	Lima:		
Duck, avg. light and dark	85*	285	Fresh	1	680
Ham, raw	1,100*	340	Frozen	310*	580
Lamb, lean, raw	90	360	Canned without salt	2	..
Liver:			Snap:		
Beef	130*	380	Green or wax	1	300
Pork	80	350	Canned	410	120
Pork			Canned without salt	2	
Lean, raw	55	260	Frozen	■	110
Salt	1,800	27	<b>Beets:</b>		
Rabbit	40	385	Fresh, raw	60*	350
Veal, lean, raw	100*	330	Canned without salt	40*	120
<b>Nuts</b>			Beet greens, fresh	130	570
Almonds:			Broccoli:		
Raw	3	690	Fresh	15	400
Roasted and salted	160*	710	Frozen	15	250
Brazil nuts:			Brussels sprouts:		
Raw	1	670	Fresh	12	450
Roasted and salted	190*	730	Frozen	12	300
Cashew nuts			Cabbage, raw	15	230
Raw	14	560	Carrots		
Roasted and salted	200*	560	Raw	50	410
Coconut, dry, shredded	20	770	Canned without salt	85*	.
Filberts (hazelnuts)	1	560	Cauliflower, fresh or frozen	20	400
Peanuts:			Celery, stalks	100	300
Raw or roasted	2	740	Corn		
Salted with skin	460*	700	Sweet, fresh	1	.
Peanut butter:	120	820	White or yellow, canned	200	200
Without salt	5*		Canned without salt	2	
Walnuts, English or black	■	450	Cucumber, raw	5*	230
<b>Sweets</b>			Eggplant, less skin	2	190
Candy:			Kale, fresh	80*	410
Marshmallow	41	8	Lettuce, head	15*	140
Milk chocolate	86	420	Mushrooms, fresh	5	520
Peppermint patty	10	110	Mustard greens	48	450
Sweet chocolate	35	230	Okra, fresh pods	1	220
Honey	7	10*	Onions	10*	130
Syrups:			Parsley, fresh	30	880
Corn (Karo)	68	4	Parsnips, raw	8	740
Maple	14	130	Peas		
Sorghum	20*	600	Raw	2	370
Table blends	60*	4	Frozen	variable	160
Sugar:			Canned without salt	2*	
Light brown	25	230	Dry, split	20*	880
White	Negligible		Peppers, green pods	1	170

\* Value variable or subject to variation because of processing method.

TABLE 5 (Continued)

## SODIUM AND POTASSIUM CONTENT OF FOODS, SEASONINGS AND BEVERAGES

	Mc /100 Gm.			Mg /100 Gm.	
	Sodium	Potassium		Sodium	Potassium
<b>Vegetables (Continued)</b>			Potato chips	340	800
Potatoes, raw			Yeast		
Sweet, less skin	10*	530	Bakers	■	670
White, less skin	■	410	Cultured, dry, avg.	113	1,860
Pumpkin, raw	1	480			
Radish, raw	15*	260	<b>Spices and Seasonings</b>		
Rutabaga, raw	2	260	Allspice	62	680
Spinach			Caraway seed	17	1,400
Fresh	75*	780	Celery salt	28,000	380
Frozen	70*	380	Celery seed	140	1,400
Canned without salt	50*		Chocolate, unsweetened	4	830
Squash			Cinnamon, ground	8	200
Summer	1	175	Citron, candied	290	120
Winter	1	250	Clove, whole	210	1,000
Tomatoes			Curry powder	45	1,300
Fresh	8	230	Dill seed	13	1,000
Canned, regular	variable	130	Garlic, clove	6	510
Canned, without salt	3*		Ginger, ground	34	910
Tomato juice			Mace	45	180
Canned	230*	230	Mustard		
Without salt	5*		Powder	10	
Turnips, white	40*	230	Prepared paste	1,300	110
Turnip greens	10	440	Nutmeg	24	
			Onion powder	93	
<b>Miscellaneous</b>			Paprika	82	2,300
Catsup, tomato	1,300	800	Parsley flakes, dry	490	
Gelatin			Pepper		
Plain	30*	22	Black	16	880
Dessert, flavored	330	210	Red	46	2,400
Dessert, without salt	10		White	■	48
Jams and jellies	12*		Poppyseed	11	
Marmalade, orange	13	19	Sage, dry	20	670
Mayonnaise	590	25	Thyme, dry	38	500
Without salt	25*		Turmeric	22	2,700
Pickles, dill	1,400	200	Vanilla, extract	1	74
			Vinegar, cider	1	100
			Worcestershire sauce	2,100	480

\* Value variable or subject to variation because of processing method.

Figures derived from Bille C. E., et al. *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 25: 494, 1949 Davidson, C. S., et al. National Research Council Pub 325, 1954

**TABLE 6**  
**ACID-BASE REACTION OF FOODS**

[illegible]

\* Ash alkaline in vitro, partly acid in vivo, because organic acids are not completely utilized.

† Calcium largely excreted into intestinal tract. Therefore, effect upon pH of serum and urine tends to be acid because of high phosphate content.

TABLE 7  
 BLOOD AND URINE COMPONENTS

BLOOD		DEVIATIONS IN DISEASE	
	NORMAL RANGE	DECREASED	INCREASED
<b>Hematology</b>			
Red blood cells (erythrocytes)	4.5-5 million per cu mm	Anemia Hemorrhage Chronic infectious diseases Prolonged dietary deficiency of iron	Polycythemia Dehydration
White blood cells (leukocytes)	5-10 thousand per cu mm	Leukopenia	Acute infections Leukemias
Hemoglobin	13-16 Gm /100 cc	Anemias	Polycythemia Dehydration
Hematocrit	$\frac{\text{Red cells}}{\text{Serum}} = 42-50\%$ cells	Anemia	Polycythemia
<b>Chemistry</b>			
Sugar	70-100 mg /100 cc	Hyperinsulinism Addison's disease	Diabetes mellitus Cushing's syndrome
Nonprotein nitrogen	15-35 mg /100 cc		Dehydration Renal disease
Uric Acid	3-5 mg /100 cc		Gout Nephrosis
Urea nitrogen	10-20 mg /100 cc		Renal disease
Creatinine	1-1.5 mg /100 cc		Renal disease
Protein, total	6-8 Gm /100 cc	Nephrosis	Multiple myeloma (Bence-Jones protein)
Albumin	4.0-5.2 Gm /100 cc.	Nephritis with edema	
Globulin	1.3-2.7 Gm /100 cc.	Liver disease	
Calcium	9-11 mg /100 cc.	Renal disease Hypoparathyroidism Chronic rickets Steatorrhea	Hyperparathyroidism Multiple myeloma
Potassium	4.0-5.0 mEq /liter	Periodic paralysis	Addison's disease Renal disease
Sodium	139-144 mEq /liter	Diabetic acidosis Addison's disease Diarrhea Dehydration	Dehydration
Phosphorus	3.0-4.5 mg /100 cc.	Rickets Renal disease Hyperparathyroidism	Hypoparathyroidism Renal disease Diabetic coma

TABLE 7 (Continued)

		BLOOD	
		NORMAL RANGE	DEVIATIONS IN DISEASE
Chemistry (Continued)			DECREASED      INCREASED
Chlorides	99-104 mEq /liter	Renal disease Addison's disease Vomiting	Dehydration Renal disease
Cholesterol	150-280 mg /100 cc.	Pernicious anemia Malnutrition Hyperthyroidism	Atherosclerosis Biliary obstruction Myxedema Uncontrolled diabetes Renal disease
Bilirubin, total	0.1-0.8 mg /100 cc.		Jaundice
Phosphatase (alkaline)	1-4 units/100 cc (Bodansky)		Certain bone diseases
Vitamin C (in serum)	0.5-1.4 mg /100 cc.	Infection Dietary deficiency Leukemia	
Vitamin A	40-100 I.U. /100 cc.	Cirrhosis Infectious hepatitis Myxedema Malnutrition	
Carbon dioxide combining power	21-28 mEq /liter	Metabolic acidosis Hypoventilation	Metabolic alkalosis Hyperventilation

## COMPOSITION OF URINE

		NORMAL RANGE/24 HRS		NORMAL RANGE/24 HRS
Volume		1,000-1,500 cc	Mineral salts:	
Specific gravity	1.008-1.030		Calcium	100-300 mg
pH	5.5-8		Chlorides (as NaCl)	10-15 Gm
Total solids		55-70 Gm.	Magnesium	150-300 mg
Nitrogenous constituents*			Oxalate	15-30 mg.
Total nitrogen		10-17 Gm.	Phosphate	1-1.2 Gm
Urea		20-35 Gm	Potassium	2-3 Gm
Uric acid		0.5-0.7 Gm.	Sodium	4-5 Gm.
Creatinine		1.0-1.5 Gm.	Sulfates (total)	1-2 Gm.
Ammonia		0.5-1.0 Gm.		
Amino acids		0.5-1.5 Gm.		

TABLE 8  
EQUIVALENT WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

WEIGHT EQUIVALENTS						
	Milligram	Gram	Kilo-gram	Grain	Ounce	Pound
1 microgram (mcg.)	001	000001				
1 milligram (mg.)	1	001		0154		
1 gram (Gm.)	1,000.	1	001	15.4	035	0022
1 kilogram (Kg.)	1,000,000	1,000	1	15,400	35.2	2.2
1 gram (gr.)	64.8	065		1.		
1 ounce (oz.)		28.3		437.5	1	.063
1 pound (lb.)		453.6	.454		16.0	1.

VOLUME EQUIVALENTS						
	Cubic Millimeter	Cubic Centimeter	Liter	Fluid Ounce	Pint	Quart
1 cubic millimeter (cu. mm.)	1	001				
1 cubic centimeter (cc.)	1,000	1	001			
1 liter (L.)	1,000,000	1,000	1	33.8	2.1	1.05
1 fluid ounce		30.(29.57)	03	1		
1 pint (pt.)		473	473	16	1.	
1 quart (qt.)		946	946	32.	2	1.

LINEAR EQUIVALENTS						
	Millimeter	Centimeter	Meter	Inch	Foot	Yard
1 millimeter (mm.)	1	.1	001	039	.00325	0011
1 centimeter (cm.)	10	1.		39	0325	011
1 meter (M.)	1,000	100	1	39.37	3.25	1.08
1 inch (in.)	25.4	2.54	025	1	083	.028
1 foot (ft.)	304.8	30.48	305	12	1	.33
1 yard (yd.)	914.4	91.44	914	36	3	1.



TABLE 8 (Continued)  
EQUIVALENT WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

COMPARATIVE VALUES OF WEIGHT AND VOLUME OF WATER

1 liter	=	1 kilo.	=	2.2 lbs.
1 fluid ounce	=	30 Gm.	=	1 04 ozs.
1 pint	=	473 Gm.	=	1 04 lbs.
1 quart	=	946 kilo.	=	2 1 lbs.

TABLE OF COMMON MEASURES AND METRIC EQUIVALENTS

1 tsp.	=	5 cc
1 tbsp.	=	14 cc. (approx. 15 Gm.)
1 cup	=	225 cc (approx. 240 Gm.)

(See Table of Measures and Approximate Weights, p. 407)

COMPARATIVE TEMPERATURES

Boiling water, sea level	100	212
Body temperature	37	98 6
Tropical temperature	30	89
Room temperature, average	20	70
Freezing	0	32

TABLE OF MEASURES AND APPROXIMATE WEIGHTS

3 teaspoons	1 tbsp.
16 tablespoons	1 cup
$\frac{1}{2}$ cup	1 gill
2 cups	1 pt.
4 cups	1 qt.
2 pints	1 qt.
4 quarts	1 gal.
1 tablespoon butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
• 1 tablespoon liquid	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
1 tablespoon flour	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
1 tablespoon sugar	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
• 1 cup liquid	8 ozs.
1 cup flour	4 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.
1 cup butter	8 ozs.
1 cup sugar	11 ozs.

• Water or milk

TABLE 9  
AVERAGE WEIGHT FOR HEIGHT TABLES\*  
For Girls from Birth to School Age†

Height (In )	1 Mo	3 Mos	6 Mos	9 Mos.	12 Mos	18 Mos	24 Mos.	30 Mos.	36 Mos.	48 Mos	60 Mos	72 Mos.
20	8											
21	9	10										
22	10	11										
23	11	12	13									
24	12	13	14	14								
25	13	14	15	15								
26		15	16	17	17							
27		16	17	18	18							
28			19	19	19	19						
29			19	20	20	20						
30			21	21	21	21	21					
31				22	22	23	23	23				
32					23	24	24	24	25			
33						25	25	25	26			
34						26	26	26	27			
35						29	29	29	29	29		
36							30	30	30	30	31	
37							31	31	31	31	32	
38							33	33	33	33	33	
39								34	34	34	34	34
40									35	36	36	36
41										37	37	37
42										39	39	39
43										40	41	41
44											42	42
45												45
46												47
47												50
48												52

\* Metropolitan Life Insurance Company

† Prepared by Robert M. Woodbury, Ph D., Children's Bureau, U. S. Dept. of Labor

TABLE 9 (Continued)  
 AVERAGE WEIGHT FOR HEIGHT TABLES\*  
 For Boys from Birth to School Age†

Height (In )	1 Mo.	3 Mos.	6 Mos.	9 Mos.	12 Mos.	18 Mos.	24 Mos.	30 Mos.	36 Mos.	48 Mos.	60 Mos.	72 Mos.
20	8											
21	9	10										
22	10	11										
23	11	12	13									
24	12	13	14									
25	13	14	15	16								
26		15	17	17	18							
27		16	18	18	19							
28			19	19	20	20						
29			20	21	21	21						
30			22	22	22	22	22					
31				23	23	23	23	24				
32				24	24	24	25	25				
33					26	26	26	26	26			
34						27	27	27	27			
35						29	29	29	29	29		
36							30	31	31	31		
37							32	32	32	32	32	
38								33	33	33	34	
39								35	35	35	35	
40									36	36	36	36
41										38	38	38
42										39	39	39
43										41	41	41
44											43	43
45											45	45
46												48
47												50
48												52
49												55

\* Metropolitan Life Insurance Company

† Prepared by Robert M. Woodbury, Ph D., Children's Bureau, U. S. Dept. of Labor.

TABLE 9 (Continued)  
AVERAGE WEIGHT FOR HEIGHT TABLES\*  
For Girls from 5 to 18 Years†

Height (In )	5 Yrs.	6 Yrs.	7 Yrs.	8 Yrs.	9 Yrs.	10 Yrs.	11 Yrs.	12 Yrs.	13 Yrs.	14 Yrs.	15 Yrs.	16 Yrs.	17 Yrs.	18 Yrs.
38	33	33												
39	34	34												
40	35	36	36											
41	37	37	37											
42	39	39	39											
43	41	41	41	41										
44	42	42	42	42										
45	45	45	45	45	45									
46	47	47	47	48	48									
47	49	50	50	50	50	50								
48		52	52	52	52	53	53							
49		54	54	55	55	56	56							
50		56	56	57	58	59	61	62						
51			59	60	61	61	63	65						
52			63	64	64	64	65	67						
53			66	67	67	68	68	69	71					
54				69	70	70	71	71	73					
55				72	74	74	74	75	77	78				
56			?		76	78	78	79	81	83				
57					80	82	82	82	84	86	82			
58						84	86	86	88	90	96	101		
59						87	90	90	92	96	100	103	104	
60						91	95	95	97	101	105	108	109	111
61							99	100	101	105	108	112	113	116
62							104	105	106	109	113	115	117	118
63								110	110	112	116	117	119	120
64								114	115	117	119	120	122	123
65								118	120	121	122	123	125	126
66									124	124	125	128	129	130
67									128	130	131	133	133	135
68									131	133	135	136	138	138
69										135	137	138	140	142
70										136	138	140	142	144
71										138	140	142	144	145

\* Metropolitan Life Insurance Company.

† Prepared by Bird T. Baldwin, Ph.D., and Thomas D. Wood, M.D.

TABLE 9 (Continued)  
 AVERAGE WEIGHT FOR HEIGHT TABLES\*  
 For Boys from 5 to 19 Years†

Height (In )	5 Yrs	6 Yrs	7 Yrs	8 Yrs.	9 Yrs.	10 Yrs.	11 Yrs.	12 Yrs.	13 Yrs	14 Yrs.	15 Yrs.	16 Yrs.	17 Yrs.	18 Yrs	19 Yrs
38	34	33													
39	35	35													
40	36	36													
41	38	38	33												
42	39	39	39	39											
43	41	41	41	41											
44	44	44	44	44											
45	46	46	46	46	46										
46	47	48	48	48	48										
47	49	50	50	50	50	50									
48		52	53	53	53	53									
49		55	55	55	55	55	55								
50		57	58	58	58	58	58	58							
51			61	61	61	61	61	61							
52			63	64	64	64	64	64	64						
53			66	67	67	67	67	68	68						
54				70	70	70	70	71	71	72					
55				72	72	73	73	74	74	74					
56				75	76	77	77	77	78	78	80				
57					79	80	81	81	82	83	83				
58					83	84	84	85	85	86	87				
59						87	88	89	89	90	90	90			
60						91	92	92	93	94	95	96			
61							95	96	97	99	100	103	106		
62							100	101	102	103	104	107	111	116	
63							105	106	107	108	110	113	118	123	127
64								109	111	113	115	117	121	126	130
65								114	117	118	120	122	127	131	134
66									119	122	125	128	132	136	139
67									124	128	130	134	136	139	142
68										134	134	137	141	143	147
69										137	139	143	146	149	152
70										143	144	145	148	151	155
71										148	150	151	153	154	159
72											153	155	156	158	163
73											157	160	162	164	167
74											160	164	168	170	171

\* Metropolitan Life Insurance Company.

† Prepared by Bird T. Baldwin, Ph D, and Thomas D. Wood, M D

TABLE 10  
HEIGHT-WEIGHT TABLES FOR MEN AND WOMEN

Comparative Significance of Ideal vs. Average Weights for Adults

Tables of average weight for height for men and women at different ages, compiled by insurance companies from their records, were formerly used as the only guides to desirable weight. Evaluation of their statistics in terms of health and longevity disclosed that it was more advantageous to be slightly overweight under 30 and underweight over 30 as

IDEAL WEIGHTS FOR WOMEN AGED 25 AND OVER\*

HEIGHT (WITH SHOES)		WEIGHT IN POUNDS (AS ORDINARILY DRESSED)		
Ft.	In.	Small Frame	Medium Frame	Large Frame
4	11	104-111	110-118	117-127
5	0	105-113	112-120	119-129
5	1	107-115	114-122	121-131
5	2	110-118	117-125	124-135
5	3	113-121	120-128	127-138
5	4	116-125	124-132	131-142
5	5	119-128	127-135	135-145
5	6	123-132	130-140	138-150
5	7	126-136	134-144	142-154
5	8	129-139	137-147	145-158
5	9	133-143	141-151	149-162
5	10	136-147	145-155	152-166
5	11	139-150	148-158	155-169

IDEAL WEIGHTS FOR MEN AGED 25 AND OVER\*

HEIGHT (WITH SHOES)		WEIGHT IN POUNDS (AS ORDINARILY DRESSED)		
Ft.	In.	Small Frame	Medium Frame	Large Frame
5	2	116-125	121-133	131-142
5	3	119-128	127-138	133-144
5	4	122-132	130-140	137-149
5	5	126-136	134-144	141-153
5	6	129-139	137-147	145-157
5	7	133-143	141-151	149-162
5	8	136-147	145-156	153-166
5	9	140-151	149-160	157-170
5	10	144-155	153-164	161-175
5	11	148-159	157-168	165-180
6	0	152-164	161-173	169-185
6	1	157-169	166-178	174-190
6	2	163-175	171-184	179-198
6	3	168-180	176-189	184-202

\* Metropolitan Life Insurance Company

# Tests Concerned with Diabetes Mellitus; Insulin Administration

## TESTS FOR SUGAR AND DIACETIC ACID IN THE URINE

The urine of a diabetic may contain appreciable amounts of those products which the body cannot metabolize. For this reason urinary tests are a convenient criterion for judging the severity of the disease or the success of its treatment. The nurse and the patient should both know how to make simple tests for sugar and diacetic acid. Sometimes these are made on samples of urine taken from a single voiding, sometimes on group urines, and occasionally on a 24-hour specimen. It is significant for the physician to know at what hours of the day sugar is being excreted in order that he may adjust the insulin dosage accordingly. Urine from chemically regulated diabetics should contain no more than a trace of sugar. Urine from clinically treated diabetics may contain small amounts or a trace of sugar. The excretion of acetone or diacetic acid by a diabetic, regardless of the type of dietary management, is considered to be a danger signal.

### COLLECTION OF URINE

#### 24 Hour Specimen

The urine voided at 7 A.M. should be discarded. All urine voided during the

remainder of the day is collected in a convenient container. One teaspoonful of toluol may be added as a preservative.

#### Periodic Specimens

The physician may request a sugar test on urine voided before and after meals or at certain times of the day. In this case the samples are kept separately and preferably tested immediately.

#### Group Urines

Still another method of determining when sugar is spilled into the urine is to collect specimens during stated periods of time. This may be from 7 A.M. to 11 A.M., discarding the 7 A.M. specimen, from 11 A.M. to 3 P.M.; from 3 P.M. to 11 P.M., from 11 P.M. to 7 A.M.; and from 6 A.M. to 7 A.M., including the 7 A.M. voiding.

### BENEDICT QUALITATIVE TEST FOR SUGAR

#### Equipment Necessary

Test tubes—3 or more  
Teaspoon  
Medicine dropper  
Gas burner or alcohol lamp  
Benedict's qualitative solution

#### Directions for the Test

Place 5 cc. (1 teaspoon) of Benedict's solution in a test tube and, with a dropper, add exactly 11 drops of the urine to be tested. Shake gently and heat over a free flame, allowing it to boil 1 minute. The tube may be heated in vigorously boiling water for 5 minutes

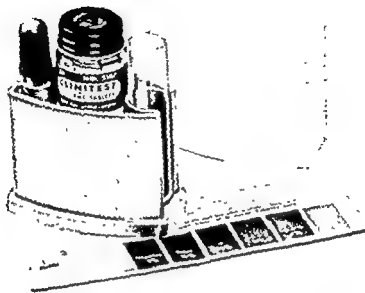


Fig. 128 Clinitest set for easy estimation of the amount of sugar present in the urine. It is accurate enough for clinical purposes. Directions for use are included in the text and accompany the set (Ames Company, Inc., Elkhart, Ind.)

with the same results. Allow the tube to cool spontaneously. The following color reactions indicate the amount of sugar present.

Clear blue = no change from the original solution = sugar free

Green = slight sediment on standing = trace of sugar present or 1+

Yellow or yellowish green = yellow sediment = 1 per cent of sugar or 2+

Greenish brown = more than 1 per cent sugar or 3+

Red or reddish brown = heavy sediment = more than 2 per cent of sugar present or 4+

Test tubes must be cleaned thoroughly after each test. A test-tube brush will be most convenient for this purpose.

Benedict's qualitative solution may be purchased from hospital laboratories, drugstores or diabetic supply houses, or may be made according to the following directions:

#### Benedict's Solution

	GR.	OR CC.
Copper sulfate (pure crystallized) . . . . .	17.3	
Sodium or potassium citrate . . . . .	173.0	
Sodium carbonate, crystallized. (If the anhydrous sodium carbonate is used, only one half of this amount should be taken) . . . . .	200.0	
Distilled water, to make . . . . .	1000.0	



The citrate and the carbonate are dissolved together with the aid of heat in about 700 cc. of water. The mixture is poured (through a filter, if necessary) into a large beaker. The copper sulfate is dissolved separately in about 100 cc. of water and is poured slowly into the first solution, with constant stirring. The mixture is cooled and diluted to 1 liter. This solution will keep indefinitely.

Several modifications for testing the urine for sugar have been developed, making them convenient for home and office use and for travel. One of these is Clinistest, a commercial preparation (Fig. 138). It consists of a tablet containing Benedict's copper reagent plus a chemical which brings the solution to a boil when 5 drops of urine and 10 drops of water are added. The color readings are

those of the Benedict test described above.

Test paper strips are also available. The color reactions are on a different scale, and the method is not as accurate as those using Benedict's solution.

#### GERHARDT'S TEST FOR DIACETIC ACID

Diacetic acid is only one of the three abnormal products which may appear in the urine as a result of the incomplete utilization of fat. It is the simplest one to detect.

#### Directions for the Test

To about 10 cc. of fresh urine in a test tube carefully add a few drops of a concentrated solution of ferric chloride, one drop at a time. A wine-red color indicates the presence of diacetic acid. Con-

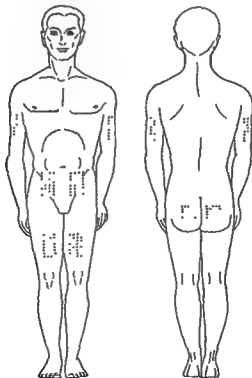


FIG. 139. Insulin sites (Adapted from Joslin, E. P., *Diabetic Manual*, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger)



Fig 140 To mix protamine zinc or NPH insulin, the insulin bottle should be rolled gently between the palms of the hands, but not shaken, to produce uniform distribution of the sediment without frothing (Rosenthal and Rosenthal *Diabetic Care in Pictures*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lippincott)



Fig 141 After inserting the needle through the rubber cap of the insulin bottle, invert the bottle, force the air in the syringe into the bottle and withdraw the needed amount of insulin. (Rosenthal and Rosenthal *Diabetic Care in Pictures*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

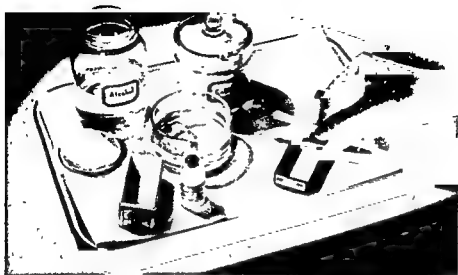


Fig 142. The syringe, which is now filled with insulin, should be put down carefully so that the needle on the syringe does not touch the hand or any object. The cover of the syringe box with its cutouts is a good resting place for the syringe until the skin is sterilized for the injection of insulin. (Rosenthal and Rosenthal *Diabetic Care in Pictures*, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

11 — the female chloride test line

drugs, it will persist. Add a portion of the red solution into a second test tube and heat in boiling water for 5 minutes. Compare the two tubes to determine whether or not the color has faded.

A simpler method for performing this test is by use of Acetest,<sup>1</sup> a commercially prepared tablet which will give a color reaction in the presence of acetone when a drop of urine is placed on the tablet.

#### DIRECTIONS FOR THE ADMINISTRATION OF INSULIN

Insulin cannot be given by mouth because, being a protein-like substance, it is destroyed by the digestive enzymes.

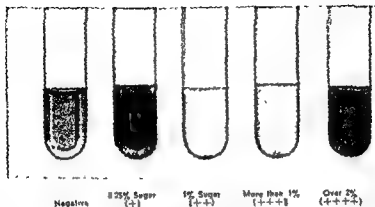
<sup>1</sup> Ames Company, Inc., Elkhart, Ind.

It is, therefore, given subcutaneously by means of a hypodermic needle and a syringe.

Insulin is sold in small rubber-capped vials labeled plainly as to the number of units of insulin in 1 cc of the solution. (One cc of U 40 contains 40 units; 1 cc of U 80 contains 80 units.) Read the label carefully and follow accurately the

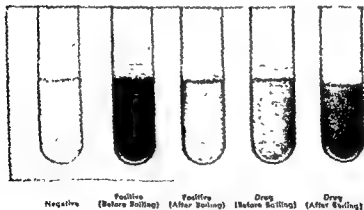
safe to use a syringe graduated in units to correspond with the strength of insulin used. Thus, U 40 insulin is used with a syringe graduated to U 40 only and without a double graduation. For the rare patient needing more than 80

PLATE 4



Quantitative estimation from the Benedict qualitative test for sugar in urine  
(Eli Lilly and Company)

PLATE 5



Test for acetoacetic (diacetic) acid Getherd's test (Eli Lilly and Company)





Fig 142 The left hand is used to pinch a large amount of flesh, the center of which is to be used for the injection. With the flesh thus held firmly, the needle can be injected more easily (Rosenthal and Rosenthal *Diabetic Care in Pictures*, ed 2, Philadelphia, Lippincott)

a 25 to 26 gauge needle about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in length. It is inserted into the skin at an angle of about 45°.

to produce uniform distribution of the sediment without frothing.

6 Wipe the rubber cap of the insulin bottle with cotton dipped in 70 per cent alcohol.

#### A. Sterilization of Equipment

1 Wash the hands thoroughly with soap and water.

2 Place the separate parts of the syringe and the needle with the wire removed in a large strainer set in a pan of water. Be sure the equipment is covered with water.

3 Bring water to a boil. When it is bubbling, boil 5 minutes.

4 Lift out strainer with equipment and pour water out of pan. Replace strainer with equipment in pan and allow to cool by standing.

5 If protamine zinc or NPH insulin is used, roll the insulin bottle gently between the palm of the hands in order

#### B. Loading the Syringe

1. Insert piston into the barrel without touching the cylinder of the piston. Fit the needle firmly onto the barrel without touching the point. Draw out the piston to the amount of insulin prescribed.

2 Push the needle through the rubber cap of the insulin bottle until the point is just visible.

3 Invert the bottle and force all the air in the syringe into the bottle.

4 Withdraw a trace more insulin than is needed.

5 Before removing the needle from the bottle, and while the bottle is still inverted, expel the air or extra insulin, bringing the piston exactly to the proper insulin dosage.

6. Place the filled syringe in the grooves of the cover of the box which contained the insulin, being careful not to contaminate the point of the needle.

### **C. Injecting the Insulin**

Insulin is best injected where the skin is relatively loose, the outside of the upper arm and the front of the thigh. It may also be given in the buttocks or under the skin of the abdomen. It is best to administer successive doses in different places.

1. Sterilize the skin at the place chosen for injection by rubbing it gently with the cotton soaked in alcohol which was used to sterilize the cap of the insulin bottle.

2. Pinch and lift up a section of

pushing the plunger and withdrawing the needle slowly to avoid leaving all the insulin in one spot.

4. Rub the spot with the alcohol sponge.

### **D. Care of Equipment**

1. Keep the insulin in a refrigerator
2. Wash syringe and needle in cold water immediately. Warm water and soap may occasionally be necessary. Rinse thoroughly.
3. Allow syringe and needle to air-dry. Reassemble the equipment and force some air through the needle a few times to dry it. Separate the equipment and replace the fine wire in the needle
4. Store in a dry, clean place.

### **INSULIN MIXTURES**

Sometimes a dosage of both a short- and a longer-acting insulin is prescribed. These may be given separately, one in each arm or leg, or they may be mixed and given as one injection, using the following procedure:

1. Withdraw the prescribed number of units of regular or crystalline insulin into the syringe.

2. Using the same needle and syringe, withdraw the prescribed number of units of protamine zinc insulin.

3. Inject the mixture under the skin in the usual manner.

# Bibliography

## Part One

### PRINCIPLES OF NUTRITION

(See also under Diet in Disease for textbooks and journals which carry chapters and articles on normal nutrition as well as diet in disease)

#### GENERAL REFERENCES

Books (for supplementary reading for instructors and students)

Bogert, L. J. Nutrition and Physical Fitness, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954

and C. E. Nelson, Nutrition and Physical Fitness, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954

and C. E. Nelson, Nutrition and Physical Fitness, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954

and C. E. Nelson, Nutrition and Physical Fitness, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954

Gerard, R. W. Food for Life, Chicago, Univ. Chicago Press, 1952

Handbook of Nutrition, Chicago, A.M.A., 1951.

Heinz, H. J., Co. Nutritional Data, Pittsburgh, H. J. Heinz Co., 1956

McCollum, E. V. A History of Nutrition, Boston, Houghton, 1957

McHenry, E. W. Basic Nutrition, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1957

Pattison, M., Barbour, H., and Eppright, E. Teaching Nutrition, Ames, Iowa, Iowa State College Press, 1957

Present Knowledge of Nutrition. New York, The Nutrition Foundation, 1956

Sherman, H. C. Chemistry of Food and Nutrition, New York, Macmillan, 1952

Taylor, C. M., and Macleod, G. Rose's Handbook of Nutrition, New York, Macmillan, 1955

#### Journals.

American Journal of Public Health

American Journal of Clinical Nutrition

Borden's Review of Nutrition Research

Food Research

Journal of the American Dietetic Association

Journal of Home Economics

Journal of Nutrition

Metabolism

Nutrition Abstracts and Reviews

Nutrition Reviews

Vitamins and Hormones

#### Journal Articles

Cooper, L. F. Florence Nightingale's contribution to dietetics, J. Am. Dietet. A. 30 121, 1954

Hunscher, H. A., Leverton, H. M., and Cedarquist, D. The life cycle and its diet symposium and bibliography, J. Home Economics 49 101, 1957

Jolliffe, N. Recent advances of public health significance, Metabolism 4 191, 1955

Krehl, W. A. A concept of optimal nutrition, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 4 634, 1956

Montague, M. F. Nature, nurture and nutrition, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 3 237, 1957

Moore, H. H. The meaning of food, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 3 77, 1957

Rosen, G. Metabolism: evolution of a concept, J. Am. Dietet. A. 31 861, 1955



## For Lay Readers

## Books.

- Bogert, L. J.: *Good Nutrition for Everybody*, Chicago, Univ. Chicago Press, 1949
- Fleck, H., and Munves. *Modern Diet and Nutrition*, New York, Dell, 1955
- Kilander, H. F.: *Nutrition for Health*, New York, McGraw-Hill, 1951.
- Nasset, E. S.: *Food and You*, Springfield, Ill., Thomas, 1951.
- Peyton, A. B.: *Practical Nutrition*, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1957.
- Sherman, H. C., and Lanford, C. S.: *Essentials of Nutrition*, New York, Macmillan, 1957

## Journals

- Science Digest*  
*Science News Letter*  
*Today's Health*

## BIOCHEMISTRY AND PHYSIOLOGY

## Books.

- Best, C. H., and Taylor, N. B.: *Human Body and Its Function, an Elementary Textbook of Physiology*, New York, Holt, 1955
- Bourne, G. H., and Kidder, G. W.: *Biochemistry and Physiology of Nutrition*, 2 vols., New York, Acad. Press, 1953.
- Carlson, A. J., and Johnson, W. E.: *Machinery of the Body*, ed 4, Chicago, Univ. Chicago Press, 1953
- Greusheimer, H. M.: *Physiology and Anatomy*, ed 7, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1955
- Harrow, B., and Mazur, H.: *Textbook of Biochemistry*, ed 6, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954
- West, E. S., and Todd, W. R.: *Textbook of Biochemistry*, New York, Macmillan, 1957
- Williams, R. J.: *Biochemical Individuality*, New York, Wiley, 1956.

## Journals:

- American Journal of Physiology*  
*Annual Review of Biochemistry*  
*Annual Review of Physiology*  
*Biochemical Journal*  
*Journal of Biological Chemistry*  
*Proceedings of Experimental Biology and Medicine*  
*Physiological Reviews*

## NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL FOOD PROBLEMS.

## Books and Special Publications:

- Consumption of Food in the United States 1909-1952*, Agr Handbook No 62, Sept., 1953, and Supplement for 1954, Oct., 1955.
- Hambidge, H.: *The Story of FAO*, New York, Van Nostrand, 1955

## Journal Articles:

- Hambidge, G.: *A world still hungry*, J. Home Economics 47 95, 1955
- Sure, H.: *The critical world food situation*, Am J. Clin Nutrition 4:211, 1956.
- Symposium: *Nutrition work of FAO, WHO and UNICEF*, Proc. Nutrition Soc 15.1, 1956.

## METABOLISM

## Energy Metabolism and Food Values

## Book and Pamphlets:

- Bowes, A. DeP., and Church, C. F.: *Food Values of Portions Commonly Used*, ed 8, 1956 (Available from Anna DePlanter Bowes, 7th and Delancey Sts., Philadelphia 6, Pa.)
- FAO Committee: *Energy-Yielding Components of Food*, Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, 1947
- FAO Committee: *Calorie Requirements*, Calorie Requirements, Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, 1957.
- Merrill, A. L., and Watt, B. M.: *Energy Value of Foods, Basis and Derivation*, Agricultural Research Service, USDA, Agr Handbook No 74, March, 1955
- Watt, B. K., and Merrill, A. L.: *Composition of Foods: Raw, Processed and Prepared*, USDA Agr Handbook No 8, 1950

## Journal Articles.

- Keys, A.: *Energy Requirements of Adults*, A.M.A. Handbook, Chap 13, 1951.
- Maynard, L. A.: *The Atwater system of calculating the calorie values of diets*, J Nutrition 28 443, 1944
- Passmore, P., and Durnin, J. V. G.: *A Human energy expenditure*, Physiol Rev 35 801, 1955
- Symposium by six authors: *Energy expenditure in man*, Proc Nutrition Soc 15 72, 1956



growing child, *Am J. Dis Child.* 93:26, 1957.

Tuttle, S. G., et al. Study of the essential amino acid requirements of men over fifty, *Metabolism* 6:564, 1957.

## MINERALS

### Books:

Sherman, H. C.: *Calcium and Phosphorus in Foods and Nutrition*, New York, Columbia Univ. Press, 1947.

Shohl, A. T.: *Mineral Metabolism*, New York, Reinhold, 1939.

Underwood, E. J.: *Trace Elements in Human and Animal Nutrition*, New York, Acad. Press, 1956.

### Journal Articles:

Brine, C., and Johnston, F. A.: Factors affecting calcium absorption by adults, *J. A. M. A.* 161:1000, 1956.

Gubler, C. J.: Absorption and metabolism of iron, *Science* 123:87, 1956.

— Copper metabolism in man, *J. A. M. A.* 161:530, 1956.

Hegsted, D. M.: Calcium requirements, *Nutrition Rev.* 15:257, 1957.

Johnston, F. A.: New developments in the theory of iron metabolism, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 27:739, 1951.

McElroy, W. D., and Nason, A.: Role of trace elements in nutrition, *Borden's Rev.* 17:47, 1956.

Mitchell, H. H., and Edman, M.: Fluorine in human nutrition, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 29:24, 1953.

Moore, C. V., and Dubach, R.: Metabolism of iron in the human, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 27:739, 1951.

Stearns, G.: Human requirement of calcium, phosphorus and magnesium, *J. A. M. A.* 142:478, 1950 (*A. M. A. Handbook*, Chap. 4, 1951).

Vallee, B. L.: Trace elements in biochemistry and nutrition, *Nutrition Rev.* 10:65, 1952.

Williams, D. E.: Influence of mineral intake on bone density in humans and in rats, *J. Nutrition* 61:489, 1957.

## VITAMINS

### General

#### Books:

Sebrell, W. H., and Harris, R. S.: *The Vitamins*, New York, Acad. Press, 1954.

*Present Knowledge of Nutrition*, New York, The Nutrition Foundation, 1956.

See also relevant chapters in general references.

#### Journal Articles:

Editorial. Nomenclature of the vitamins, *Nutrition Rev.* 9:289, 1951.

Editorial. Vitamins—food or drugs, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 3:511, 1955.

Millman, M.: Vitamins—the facts about them, *Today's Health*, p. 34, July, 1957.

Mitchell, H. S.: How vitamins function, *Am. J. Nursing* 51:96, 1951.

Rones, B.: The eyes and vitamins, *Am. J. Nursing* 52:728, 1952.

Symposium: Role of some of the newer vitamins in human nutrition, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 4:309, 1956.

### Fat-Soluble Vitamins

Becker, G. L.: The case against mineral oil, *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 19:344, 1952.

Butt, H. H.: Fat-soluble vitamins A, E and K, *J. A. M. A.* 143:236, 1950. (*A. M. A. Handbook*, Chap. 11, 1951).

Council on Foods and Nutrition. Importance of vitamin D milk, *J. A. M. A.* 159:1018, 1955.

Jeans, P. C.: Vitamin D, *J. A. M. A.* 143:177, 1950 (*A. M. A. Handbook*, Chap. 10, 1951).

Krehl, W. A.: Vitamin A I The visual process II Interrelationships between provitamin A and vitamin A *Borden's Rev.* 13:49, 61, 1952.

Mattill, H. A.: Vitamin E, *Borden's Rev.* 13:109, 1952.

Review. Intakes of vitamins A and D, *Nutrition Rev.* 15:74, 1957.

— Vitamin E deficiency in man, *Nutrition Rev.* 15:131, 1957.

Udell, S. C.: Ocular manifestations of vitamin deficiency, *Pub. Health Nursing* 43:219, 1951.

Wald, G.: Vision, *Fed. Proc.* 12:607, 1953.



**Folic Acid Group and Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>**

- Bauman, C. A.: Citrovorum factor, nutrition aspects, associations with leukemia and anemia, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 29:548, 1953.
- Conley, C. L., et al.: Observations on the absorption, utilization and excretion of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 38:84, 1951.
- Jukes, T. H.: Folic acid and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in the physiology of vertebrates, *Fed. Proc.* 12:633, 1953.
- Ling, C. T., and Chow, B. F.: Metabolic role of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, *Fed. Proc.* 11:249, 1952.
- Nelson, M. M., et al.: Production of multiple congenital abnormalities in young by maternal pteroylglutamic acid deficiency during gestation, *J. Nutrition* 49:61, 1952.
- Review. The utilization of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, *Nutrition Rev.* 10:219, 1952.
- and ascorbic acid, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 2:20, 1954.
- Woods, R.: The citrovorum factor, *Borden's Rev.* 12:59, 1951.

**MEAL PLANNING TO MEET RECOMMENDED ALLOWANCES****Books or Pamphlets:**

- Kinder, F.: Meal Management, New York, Macmillan, 1956.
- Page, L., and Phipard, E. F.: Essentials of an Adequate Diet, Home Ec. Res. Rep. No. 3 Agr. Res. Service, U.S.D.A., 1957.
- Recommended Dietary Allowances, Washington, Food and Nutrition Board, Nat. Res. Council, 1958.
- Wilmot, J. S., and Batjer, M. Q.: Food for the Family, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1955.

**FOOD FADS AND FALLACIES****Pamphlets:**

- American Dietetic Association: Food Facts Talk Back, Chicago, A.D.A., 1957.
- Cook, G. M., Foley, M. E.: Food Facts and Fads, Leaflet 308, Coop. Ext. Serv., Amherst, Univ. of Mass., 1957.

**Journal Articles:**

- Bavetta, L. A.: Food fads and faddists, *Am. J. Digest Dis.* 22:178, 1955.
- Beeuwkes, A. M.: Characteristics of the self-styled scientists, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:627, 1956.
- Editorial. Don't help the quacks, *Today's Health*, p. 13, Nov., 1958.
- Edwards, C. H.: Odd dietary practices of women, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30:976, 1954.
- Heunemann, R. L.: Combating food misinformation and quackery, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:623, 1956.
- Levertov, R.: Distorting facts into fads, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:793, 1957.
- Millman, M.: The reducing racket, *Today's Health*, p. 18, Jan., 1954.
- Olson, R.: Research, fads and practical dietetics, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:777, 1955.
- Robertson, H.: Food misinformation (see letter to editor), *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:840, 1956.
- Rosenberg, R. S.: Nutritional claims in food advertising, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:631, 1956.
- Symposium: What can we do about food faddism? *Fed. Proc.* 13:780, 1954.

**NUTRITION IN PREGNANCY****Books and Pamphlets.**

- Macy, I. G.: Physiological Adaptations and Nutritional Status During and After Pregnancy, Detroit 2, Children's Fund of Michigan, 1954.
- Moyer, E. C., et al.: Nutritional Status of Mothers and Their Infants, Detroit 2, Children's Fund of Michigan, 1954.
- Peters, A. DeH.: Prenatal Care, Children's Bureau, Publication No. 4, Federal Security Agency, 1949.
- Toverud, K. U., Stearns, G., and Macy, I. G.: Maternal Nutrition and Child Health, Bull. 123, National Research Council, Washington 25, D. C., 1950.

**Journal Articles:**

- Burke, B. S.: Diet and nutrition during pregnancy, *Am. J. Nursing* 52:1378, 1952.
- : Diet during pregnancy, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 2:425, 1954.
- Burke, B. S., Stevenson, E. S., Worcester, J., and Stuart, H. C.: Nutrition studies during pregnancy, *J. Nutrition* 38:453, 1949.
- Burke, B. S., and Stuart, H. C.: Nutritional

- requirements during pregnancy and lactation, *JAMA* 137 119, 1948 (*AMA Handbook of Nutrition*, 1951)
- Darby, W J The Vanderbilt cooperative study of maternal and infant nutrition IX Some obstetric implications, *Obst & Gynec* 5 528, 1955.
- Dickman, W. J., et al. Observations on protein intake and the health of the mother and baby I: Clinical and laboratory findings II Food intake *J Am Dietet A* 31 576, 1955
- Editorial Folic acid deficiency in macrocytic anemia of pregnancy and infancy, *JAMA* 143 1422, 1952
- Editorial: Weight gain and pregnancy, *JAMA* 164, 877, 1957
- Ingalls, T H: Causes and prevention of developmental defects, *JAMA* 161 1047, 1956
- maternal nutrition, *J Am Dietet A* 31 576, 1955
- McGanity, W J., et al. The Vanderbilt cooperative study of maternal and infant nutrition VIII Some nutritional implications, *J Am Dietet A* 31 582, 1955
- Murphy, M H, and Wertz, A W. Diets of pregnant women: influence of socioeconomic factors, *J Am Dietet A* 30 84, 1954
- Nutrition and the outcome of pregnancy, *Nutrition Rev.* 12 260, 1954
- Oldham, H, and Sheft, B Effect of caloric intake on nitrogen utilization during pregnancy, *J Am Dietet A* 27 847, 1951.
- Whitacre, F ■ Nutrition in prenatal care, *JAMA* 155 112, 1954
- ment an Introduction to the Study of Human Growth, New York, Harper, 1949.
- Gesell, A., Ilg, F., and Ames, L. B: Youth The Years from Ten to Sixteen, New York, Harper, 1956
- Johnston, J A Nutritional Studies in Adolescent Girls and Their Relation to Tuberculosis, Springfield, Ill., Thomas, 1953
- Martin, E A. Roberts' Nutritional Work with Children, Chicago, Univ Chicago Press, 1954
- Pattison, M., Barbour, H., and Eppright, E Teaching Nutrition, Ames, Iowa State College Press, 1957
- Rand, W., Sweeney M E, and Vincent, ■ L Growth and Development of the Young Child, ed. 5, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1953
- Spock, B Baby and Child Care, New York, Pocket Books, 1957
- Spock, B., and Lowenberg, M E Feeding Your Baby and Child, New York, Pocket Books, 1955
- Stearns, G., Nutrition and Health of Infants, Children and Adolescents, Proc Food and Nutr Instit USDA, Washington, Agric. Handbook No 56, 1952
- U S Dept of Health, Education and Welfare Infant Care, Children's Bureau Publ No 8, 1955

## Journal Articles:

- Barnes, G R Management of breast feeding, *JAMA* 151.192, 1953
- Beal, V A Nutritional intake of children I Calones, carbohydrate, fat and protein, *J Nutrition* 50 223, 1953
- Nutritional intake of children II Calcium, phosphorus and iron, *J Nutrition* 53 499, 1954
- Nutritional intake of children. III Thiamin, riboflavin, and niacin, *J Nutrition* 57 183, 1955
- Nutritional intake of children. IV. Vitamins A and D, ascorbic acid, *J Nutrition* 60 335, 1956
- On acceptance of solid foods and

## NUTRITION OF INFANTS AND CHILDREN

## Books and Pamphlets

- Aldrich, C A., and Aldrich, M M: Feeding Our Old-fashioned Children, New York, Macmillan, 1941
- Dunham, E C Premature Infants, ed 2, New York, Hoeber-Harper, 1955
- Gesell, A., and Ilg, F. L.: Child Develop-

- other food patterns of infants and children, *Pediatrics* 20:448, 1957.
- Bowes, A. deP.: Nutrition of children during their school years, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 3:254, 1955
- Deisher, H. W., and Goers, S. S.: A study of early and later introduction of solids into the infant diet, *J. Pediat.* 45:191, 1954
- Editorial Breast feeding, *J.A.M.A.* 161: 1568, 1956.
- Eppright, E. S., et al.: Nutritive value of the diets of Iowa school children, *J. Nutrition* 34:371, 1954
- Eppright, E. S., and Roderick, C.: Diet and nutritional status of Iowa school children, *Am. J. Pub. Health* 45:464, 1955
- Eppright, E. S., and Swanson, P. P.: Distribution of nutrients among meals and snacks of Iowa school children, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 31:256, 1955.
- Hansen, A. E.: Essential fatty acids in infant feeding, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 34:239, 1958.
- Hill, L. F.: Infant nutrition, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 3:75, 1955.
- Hundley, J. M., et al.: Height and weight of first grade children as a potential index of nutritional status, *Am. J. Pub. Health* 45:1454, 1955.
- Hig, F. L.: The child's idea of what and how to eat, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 24:658, 1948
- Jackson, R. L.: Feeding healthy infants, *Am. J. Nursing* 55:1076, 1955.
- McClure, M. H.: When the children hunger
- Wells, J.: Nutrition 43:189, 1951.
- Pratt, E. L.: Amino acid and protein requirements of infants, *J. A. M. A.* 164:408, 1957.
- Rabinovitch, R. H., and Fischhoff, J.: Feeding children to meet their emotional needs, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 28:614, 1952
- Richmond, J. B., and Pollock, G. H.: Psychologic aspects of infant feeding, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 29:656, 1953
- Snyderman, S. E., et al.: Nitrogen requirements of the growing child, *A. M. A. J. Dis. Child* 93:26, 1957
- Steven, G.: The magic bean in Calumet, *Am. J. Nursing* 57:57, 1957.
- Trainer, L. R.: The national school lunch program—a report, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:18, 1955.
- Tuttle, W. W., et al.: Effect on school boys of omitting breakfast, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30:674, 1954.
- Wagner, M. H.: Appetites and attitudes: a viewpoint on feeding the young child, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30:329, 1954.
- Washburn, A. H.: The child as a person developing, *A. M. A. J. Dis. Child* 34:46, 1957.
- Weng, L.: Nutrition and the preschool child, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 3:150, 1955.
- Formula Room**
- Heinemann, H. E. O., et al.: Converting to terminal formula heating, *Am. J. Nursing* 51:605, 1951
- Peto, M.: Preventing nipple clogging, *Am. J. Nursing* 50:487, 1950
- Review Infant formula room: procedures and layout, *Am. J. Nursing* 50:38, 1950
- GERIATRICS AND GERONTOLOGY**
- Books and Pamphlets**
- Lafquist, R. C.: Helping older persons with their nutrition problems in Growing with the Years, New York State Legislative Committee on the Problem of the Aged, 1954
- : Food Guide for Older Folks, Home and Garden Bull. No. 17, Washington, D. C., U. S. Gov. Printing Office, 1954.
- Newton, K.: Geriatric Nursing, ed. 2, St. Louis, Mosby, 1954
- Stegnitz, E. J.: Geriatric Medicine, Diagnosis and Management of Disease in the Aging and the Aged, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1950
- Walker, V. W., et al.: Eating Is Fun for Older People Too, Chicago, Am. Dietet. A., 1952
- Journal Articles**
- Batchelder, E. L.: Foods for the upper age groups and nutrition implications, *Am. J. Pub. Health* 46:1329, 1956
- : Nutritional status and dietary habits of older people, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:471, 1957.
- Bryant, K., et al.: Effect of aging and various types of breakfast on the blood sugar levels, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 28:17, 1952
- Chope, H. D., and Breslow, L.: Nutritional

- status of the aging, *Am J Pub Health* 46:61, 1956
- Donahue, W. T.: Psychologic aspects of feeding the aged, *J Am Dietet A* 27 461, 1951.
- Hayes, O B., et al: Relation of dietary intake to bone fragility in the aged, *J Gerontol* 11 154, 1956
- Heend, S.: Serving the aged, *J Am Dietet A* 31 376, 1955
- Horwitt, M. K.: Dietary requirements of the aged, *J Am Dietet A* 29 443, 1953
- Jones, F.: Meals on wheels, *Nursing Outlook* 3 130, 1955
- Jordan, M., et al: Dietary habits of persons living alone, *Geriatrics* 9 230, 1954
- Lyons, J. S., and Trulson, M. F.: Foods practices of older people living at home, *J. Gerontol* 11 66, 1956
- Moore, C. M.: Aged patients need lessons in nutrition, *Modern Hospital* 90:104, 1958
- Rock, J.: Food and nutrition in the aged, *J Am Dietet A* 27 461, 1951.
- 1955
- Tuttle, E.: A nutrition survey of the geriatric patient, *Geriatrics* 9 579, 1954
- Walker, V. W.: Man, his nutrition and his years, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 1 552, 1953
- FOOD AND THE PUBLIC HEALTH**
- Books and Pamphlets**
- Dack, G. M.: Food Poisoning, Chicago, Univ Chicago Press, 1956
- Food Protection Committee: The Safety of Artificial Sweeteners for Use in Food, National Research Council Pub No 386, 1955
- Food Protection Committee: The Use of Chemical Additives in Food Processing, National Research Council Pub No 398, 1956
- Jacobs, M. B.: The Chemistry and Technology of Food and Food Products, New York, Interscience, 1951
- Ordinance and Code Regulations of Eating and Drinking Establishments, U. S. Gov't Printing Office, 1950
- Tressler, D. K., and Evers, E. F.: The Freezing Preservation of Foods: Vol 1, Freezing of Fresh Foods, Vol 2, Freezing of Precooked and Prepared Foods, Westport, Avi Pub Co., 1957
- Journal Articles**
- Armago, R., et al: Food poisoning outbreaks associated with spray-dried milk—an epidemiologic study *Am J Pub Health* 47 1093, 1957
- Boyd, J. W., et al: Use of antibiotics for the preservation of fish and sea foods, *Am J Pub Health* 46 1531, 1956
- Dauer, C. C., and Sylvester, G.: 1956 summary of disease outbreaks, *Pub Health Rep* 72 735, 1957
- Hartell, S. E.: The longevity and behavior of pathogenic bacteria in frozen foods, *Am J Pub Health* 40 1072, 1951
- Jacobs, M. B.: Food and flavor colors, *Am Perfumer Aromatics*, 70 67, 1957
- Janssen, W. F.: The law behind the label, *J Am Dietet A* 28 609, 1952.
- Mickelsen, O.: Chemicals and food processing, *National Research Council Pub No 386*, 1955



## Part Two

## DIET IN DISEASE

(It is suggested that the bibliography under Nutrition and the references quoted in each chapter also be consulted.)

## GENERAL REFERENCES

## Books.

- Bowes, A. deP., and Church, C. F.: Food Values and Portions Commonly Used, ed 8 1956 (Available from Anna DePlanter Bowes, 7th and Delancey Sts., Philadelphia 6, Pa.)
- Cecil, R. L., and Loeb, R. F.: Textbook of Medicine, ed 9, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1953
- Duncan, G. G.: Diseases of Metabolism, ed 3, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1952
- Hawley, E. E., Carden, G., and Manves, E. D.: The Art and Science of Nutrition, ed 4, St. Louis, Mosby, 1955
- Johnson, D.: Modern Dietetics, New York, Putnam, 1951
- Jolliffe, N., Cannon, P., and Tisdall, F. F.: Handbook of Clinical Nutrition, New York, Harper, 1950.
- Krause, M. V.: Nutrition and Diet Therapy in Relation to Nursing, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1957.
- McLester, J. S., and Darby, W. J.: Diet in Health and Disease, ed 6, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1952
- Mayo Clinic Diet Manual, ed 2, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1954.
- Mitchell, K., and Bernard, M. C.: Food in Health and Disease, ed. 5, Philadelphia, Davis, 1952
- National League of Nursing Education Bibliographies on Nursing, Nutrition and Diet Therapy, vol. 2, New York, 1957
- Pollack, H., and Halpern, S. I.: Therapeutic Nutrition, Pub 234, National Research Council, Washington 25, D. C., 1952
- Practical Diet Therapy, New York, Am J Clin Nutr Inc, 1956
- Proudfit, F. T., and Robinson, C. H.: Nutrition and Diet Therapy, ed. 11, New York, Macmillan, 1955.
- Turner, D.: Handbook of Diet Therapy.

Rev. ed., Chicago, Univ. Chicago Press, 1952.

Wohl, M. G., and Goodheart, R. S.: Modern Nutrition in Health and Disease, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1955.

## Journals

- American Journal of Clinical Nutrition  
 American Journal of Digestive Diseases  
 American Journal of Medicine  
 American Journal of Nursing  
 American Journal of Public Health  
 Archives of Internal Medicine  
 Journal of Clinical Investigation  
 Journal of the American Dietetic Association  
 Journal of the American Medical Association  
 Journal of Nutrition  
 Nutrition Reviews  
 Public Health Nursing  
 (See also current diet manuals from leading hospitals)

## THE PATIENT AND HIS NUTRITIONAL PROBLEMS; DIET IN THE TREATMENT OF DISEASE

## Journal Articles

- Babcock, C. G.: Problems in sustaining the nutritional care of patients, J. Am. Dietet. A 28:222, 1952
- Blumenthal, G. W.: Emotional aspects of feeding the aged, J. Am. Dietet. A 52:829, 1956
- Cassel, J.: Social and cultural implications of food and food habits, Am J Pub. Health 47:732, 1957
- Editorial: The unpalatability of therapeutic diets, J. A. M. A. 164:53, 1957.

- of the chronically ill, *Am J Nursing* 51 165, 1951
- Goodman, J I, and Dowdell, W. The specter of malnutrition in chronic illness, *Ann Int Med* 43 1241, 1955
- Hughes, H H. No eggs for breakfast, *Am J Nursing* 57 470, 1957

- Roberts, M B. Communicating with people, *J Am Dietet A* 30 698, 1954
- Weber, K H. Diet instructions for patients at home, *Nursing Outlook* 4 39, 1956

## FEVERS AND INFECTIONS

### Journal Articles

- Bouner, G J. Nutrition and poliomyelitis, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 1 355, 1953
- Coburn, A F. Problems in the prevention of rheumatic fever by a reinforced diet, *J Am Dietet A* 28 345, 1950
- Edwards, H R, and Turner, J. Diet suggestions for the tuberculous on low income, *Pub Health Nursing* 43 681, 1951
- Getz, H R. Problems in feeding the tuberculous patient, *J Am Dietet A* 30 17, 1954
- Jackson, R L, and Kelly, H G. Nutrition in rheumatic fever, *J Am Dietet A* 25 392, 1949
- Kass, I, et al. Isoniazid as a cause of optic neuritis and atrophy, *JAMA* 164 1740, 1957
- Olson, H G. Nutrition in rheumatic fever, *Pub Health Nursing* 42 146, 1950
- Seifert, M H. Poliomyelitis and the relation of diet to its treatment, *J Am Dietet A* 30 671, 1954
- Wilcox, E B, and Galloway, L B. Children with and without rheumatic fever I. Nutrient intake, physique and growth, *J Am Dietet A* 30 345, 1954

## NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES

### Journal Articles

- Arnold, M A, et al. Effect of fluoridated public water supplies on dental caries prevalence, *Nutrition Abst & Rev* 27 219, 1957.
- Ast, D B, et al. Newburgh-Kingston caries-fluorine study. XIV. Combined

- clinical and roentgenographic dental findings after ten years of fluoride experience *J Am Dent A* 52 314, 1956
- Autret, M, and Brock, J F. Syndrome Potosiense Infantil (Kwashiorkor) and its prevention in Central America, *FAO Nutrition Studies* No 13, Rome, FAO, 1954

- Brock, J F, and Autret, M. Kwashiorkor in Africa, *FAO Nutrition Studies* No 8, Rome, FAO, 1952

Clark, H. The nutrition of...

- Darby, W J. Nutritional deficiency diseases today, *J Am Dietet A* 53 17, 1957

- Hall, B E. Diagnosis and treatment of

- Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Nutrition Fourth Report, *WHO Tech Rep Ser* No 97, Geneva, WHO, 1955, and *FAO Nutrition Meeting Ser* No 9, Rome, FAO, 1955

- Jolliffe, N. Diagnosis and treatment of nutritional deficiencies, *Am J Digest Dis* 1 323, 1956

Kennedy, R. et al. Report...

- Present status of controlled fluoridation in the United States, *Pub Health Rep* 71 963, 1956

- Review Infantile pellagra, *Nutrition Rev* 11 36, 1953

- Review Treatment of Kwashiorkor with vegetable proteins, *Nutrition Rev* 15 169, 1957

- Scrimshaw, N S. Endemic goiter, *Nutrition Rev* 15 161, 1957.

- Scrimshaw, N S, et al. Nutritional problems of children in Central America and Panama, *Pediatrics* 16 378, 1955

- Kwashiorkor in children and its response to therapy, *JAMA* 164 555, 1957

- Shaw, J H. Nutrition and dental caries, *JAMA* 166 833, 1958.

- Spies, T D. Some recent advances in nutrition, *JAMA* 167 675, 1958

- Victor, M. Alcohol and nutritional diseases of the nervous system, *JAMA* 167:65, 1958.
- Waterlow, J., and Vergara, A.: Protein malnutrition in Brazil, *FAO Nutrition Ser No 14*, Rome, FAO, 1958

## OVERWEIGHT AND UNDERWEIGHT

## Overweight

## Books:

- 1958
- Levertov, R. Food Becomes You, Lincoln, Univ Nebraska Press, 1952
- Nutrition Symposium, Overeating, Overweight and Obesity, New York, National Vitamin Foundation, 1952
- Ross, W. Diet to Suit Yourself, New York, Signet, Pocket Size ed., 1954.

## Journal Articles:

- Armstrong, D. B., et al: Obesity and its relation to health and disease, *JAMA* 147:1007, 1951.
- Ayers, W. M.: Changing attitudes toward overweight and reducing, *J. Am. Dietet A* 34 23, 1958
- Barnes, H. H.: Weight control—a practical office approach, *JAMA* 166 898, 1958
- Berryman, G. H. "Simple" obesity: a current review, *J Am Dietet A* 31 347, 1955
- Brewer, W. D., et al.: Weight reduction on low fat and low carbohydrate diets. II Utilization of nitrogen and calcium. *J. Am. Dietet. A* 23 213, 1952
- Bruch, H. Role of the emotions in hunger and appetite, *Ann New York Acad Sc* 63 68, 1955

- J Am. Dietet A* 23 113, 1954.
- Editorial Obesity, *JAMA* 157:1126, 1955
- Fryer, J. H., et al.: Safety Values of isocaloric diets for reducing, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 31 868, 1955
- Hamburger, W. W.: The psychology of

weight reduction, *J. Am Dietet. A* 31 17, 1958

- Johnson, M. L., Burke, B. S., and Mayer, J.: Relative importance of inactivity and overeating in the energy balance of obese high school girls, *Am J. Clin Nutrition* 4 35, 1956
- Mayer, J. An experimentalist's approach to the problem of obesity, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 31 231, 1955
- Stunkard, A. J., Grace, W. J., and Wolff, H. G. The night-eating syndrome, *Am J Med.* 19 78, 1955.
- Sussman, M. B.: Psychosocial correlates of obesity, *J. Am Dietet. A* 32 423, 1956
- Wolf, J. L.: On the job weight watching, *Nursing Outlook* 5 406, 1957.
- Young, C. M.: Weight reduction using a moderate fat diet. clinical response and energy metabolism, *J Am Dietet. A* 28. 410, 1952
- Weight reduction using a moderate fat diet biochemical responses, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 28 529, 1952
- Young, C. M., Berresford, K., and Moore, S.: Psychologic factors in weight control, *Am. J Clin Nutrition* 5:186, 1957.
- Young, C. M., et al: The problem of the obese patient, *J Am Dietet. A* 31:1111, 1955
- Yule, J. B., Marth, E. L., and Young, C. M.: Weight control—a community project, *J Am Dietet. A* 33 47, 1957.

## Underweight

- Fogelman, H. J., et al Food intake and hypnosis, *J. Am Dietet A* 32 519, 1956
- Keeton, H. W.: Nutrition and appetite training during illness, *JAMA* 151 253, 1953
- Shoskes, M., et al Fat emulsions for oral nutrition, *J Am Dietet. A* 27:197, 1951

## DIABETES MELLITUS

## Books.

- Diabetes Guidebook for the Physician, New York, American Diabetes Association, 1958
- Joslin, E. P.: A Diabetic Manual, ed 9, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1953
- Joslin, E. P., et al The Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus, ed 9, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1952
- Pollack, H., and Krause, M. V. Your

- Diabetes A Manual for the Patient, rev ed., New York, Harper, 1951
- Ricketts, H. T.: *Diabetes Mellitus*, Thomas, Springfield, 1955
- Rogers, F. L., and Leverton, R.: *Your Diabetes and How to Live with It*, Lincoln, Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1953
- The Practical Management of Diabetes, Springfield, Thomas, 1953
- Journal Articles:**
- Caso, E.: Calculation of diabetic diets, *J Am Dietet A* 26 575, 1950
- : Supplements to diabetic diet material, *J Am Dietet A* 32 929, 1956
- Cohen, A. S.: Current concepts in diabetes mellitus, *J Am Dietet A* 32 102, 1956
- Editorial Glucagon, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 1 395, 1953
- Goodman, J. I.: Management of diabetes mellitus during ketoacidosis, acute infection and surgery, *JAMA* 159 831, 1955
- Hinkle, L. E., and Wolf, S.: Importance of life stress in course and management of diabetes mellitus, *JAMA* 148 513, 1952
- Hundley, J. M.: Diabetes-overweight: U S problems, *J Am Dietet A* 32 417, 1956
- Joslin, E. P.: Development of the present treatment of diabetes, *J Am Dietet A* 23 213, 1949
- : Status of living diabetics with onset under forty years of age, *JAMA* 147, 209, 1951
- Kaufman, M.: Adapting therapeutic diets to Jewish food customs, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 5 678, 1957
- Keiding, N. R., Root, H. F., and Marble, A.: Importance of control of diabetes in prevention of vascular complications, *JAMA* 150 964, 1952
- Kinsell, L. W.: Preventing vascular disease in diabetes, *Diabetes* 4 298, 1955
- Ricketts, H. T.: Modern treatment of diabetes mellitus, *JAMA* 150 959, 1952
- Root, H. F.: Treatment of diabetic coma, *J Chron Dis* 2 121, 1955
- Tolstoi, E.: The free diet for diabetic patients, *Am J Nursing* 50 652, 1950
- Wilson, J. L., Root, H. F., and Marble, A.: Controlled versus free diet management of diabetes, *JAMA* 147:1528, 1951
- Oral Antidiabetic Drugs**
- Breneman, J. C.: Clinical use of tolbutamide in office and home care of diabetics, *JAMA* 164 627, 1957.
- Editorial Oral anti-diabetic sulfonamides, *Diabetes* 62, 1958
- Editorial Tolbutamide for diabetes mellitus, *JAMA* 164 562, 1957
- Diabetes and Pregnancy**
- Croasman, R.: Pregnancy and diabetes. nursing care, *Am J Nursing* 59 101, 1958
- Panel Discussion Diabetes and pregnancy, *Diabetes* 5 303, 1958
- Rouse, C. P., Jr.: Pregnancy and diabetes, *Am J Nursing* 59 100, 1958
- Juvenile Diabetes**
- Jackson, R. L., and Beckett, S. W.: Dietary management of children with diabetes, *J Am Dietet A* 32 528, 1956
- White, P.: Natural course and prognosis of juvenile diabetes, *Diabetes* 5 445, 1958.
- DISEASES OF THE DIGESTIVE TRACT**
- Esophagus and Stomach**
- Books:**
- Barborka, C. J., and Texter, E. C., Jr.: *Peptic Ulcer Diagnosis and Treatment*, Boston, Little, 1955
- Jordan, S. M., and Hibben, M.: *Good Food for Bad Stomachs*, Garden City, N. Y., Doubleday, 1952
- Portis, S. A.: *Diseases of the Digestive System*, ed 3, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1953
- Journal Articles**
- Althausen, T. L.: Prevention of recurrence in peptic ulcer, *Ann Int Med.* 30 544, 1949
- Andresen, A. F. R.: The peptic ulcer problem, *New York State J Med* 49 2311, 1949
- Evans, A., and Maisel, B.: Pneumoperitoneum in the management of hiatus hernia, *Am J Nursing* 57 1290, 1957
- Hall, C. M., and Rossett, N. E.: Antacid efficacy in vitro of some foods commonly used in peptic ulcer diets, *J Am Dietet A* 25 1022, 1949.

- Johnson, A.: Some dietary principles in digestive diseases, *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 17: 161, 1950
- Robinson, C. H.: The bland diet, *J. Clin. Nutrition* 2:206, 1954.
- Rogers, T. M.: The patient with upper gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage, *J.A.M.A.* 150:473, 1952.
- Sandweiss, D. J., and Brooks, F. P.: Recent advances in the medical treatment of peptic ulcer, *M. Clin. North America* 40:353, 1956
- Slesenger, M. H., *et al*: The disturbance of cardiac motility in cardiospasm, *Gastroenterology* 25 333, 1953.
- Snorf, L. D. Emotional factors in gastrointestinal disorders, *J.A.M.A.* 162 857, 1956
- Symposium: The bland diet—rationale, *J. Am. Dietet. A* 33:603, 1957.
- Texter, E. C., Jr., *et al*: Hiatus hernia, *J.A.M.A.* 160 830, 1956
- (See Surgical Nutrition for references on the "dumping syndrome.")

### Intestines

#### Book:

- Adlersberg, D. (ed.): *The Malabsorption Syndrome*, New York, Grune, 1957.

#### Journal Articles:

- Adlersberg, D.: Problems of management of idiopathic sprue, *New York J Med* 55 3575, 1955
- Bargen, J. A.: Non-surgical management of regional enteritis, *J.A.M.A.* 165:2045, 1957
- Brown, P. W. Constipation, *M. Clin. North America* 33 957, 1949
- Dericks, V. C., and Robeson, K. A.: Problems of colostomy patients, *Pub Health Nursing* 41:16, 1948
- Editorial Ulcerative colitis, *J.A.M.A.* 157: 1312, 1955.
- Engel, G. L.: Studies of ulcerative colitis III The nature of the psychologic processes, *Am. J Med* 11 231, 1955
- Farr, H. W.: Fluid and electrolyte balance with special reference to the gastrointestinal tract, *Am. J. Nursing* 54:826, 1954
- Finlay, J. M., and Wrightman, K. J. R.: Modern treatment of the malabsorption syndrome in adults, *Ann Int Med.* 45 191, 1956
- Fradkin, Z.: Dietary treatment of diarrheal diseases, *Am. J. Digest. Dis* 20 208, 1953.
- Frohman, I. P.: Constipation, *Am. J. Nursing* 55:65, 1955.
- Grace, W. J., and Wolff, H. G.: Treatment of ulcerative colitis, *J.A.M.A.* 146 931, 1951.
- Gray, S. J., *et al*: Treatment of ulcerative colitis with ACTH and cortisone, *J.A.M.A.* 148:1489, 1952.
- Kirmer, J. B., and Palmer, W. L.: Ulcerative colitis, *J.A.M.A.* 153 341, 1954.
- McDermott, W.: Diverticulitis, *Am. J. Nursing* 54 1231, 1954.
- Robinson, C. H.: Fiber in the diet, *Am J Clin. Nutrition* 4:288, 1956.
- Schwartz, M. K., *et al*: The effect of a gluten-free diet on fat, nitrogen and mineral metabolism in patients with sprue, *Gastroenterology* 32 232, 1957.
- Slesenger, M. H., Rynbergen, H. J., *et al*: A wheat, rye and oat-free diet in the treatment of sprue, *J Am Dietet A* 33 1137, 1957.
- Van de Kamer, J. H., and Weijers, H. A.: Coeliac disease V. Some experiments on the cause of the harmful effect of wheat gliadin, *Acta Paediat* 44 465, 1955
- Wirts, C. W., *et al*: Long term results in cortico-tropin treated ulcerative colitis, *J.A.M.A.* 154:36, 1954.

### DISEASES OF THE LIVER, THE BILIARY TRACT AND THE PANCREAS

#### Journal Articles:

- Bessman, S. P.: The role of ammonia in clinical syndromes, *Ann. Int. Med* 44 1037, 1956
- Chalmers, T. C., *et al*: Treatment of infectious hepatitis, *J Clin Invest* 34:1163, 1955
- Davidson, C. S. Medical management of cirrhosis of the liver, *J. Chron. Dis* 2:55, 1955.
- Cirrhosis of the liver treated with prolonged sodium restriction, *J.A.M.A.* 159 1257, 1955.
- Cirrhosis in alcoholics—protein nutrition and hepatic coma, *J.A.M.A.* 160 390, 1956

- Neefe, J. R.: Vital hepatitis problems and progress to 1954, *Am. J. Med.* 16 710, 1954.
- Patek, A. J.: Relation of nutrition to etiology and treatment of Laennec's cirrhosis, *J. Chron. Dis.* 3, 580, 1956.
- Patek, A. J., Jr., et al.: Dietary treatment of cirrhosis of the liver, *J. A.M.A.* 138 543, 1948.
- Proctor, C. A.: "The Management of..."
- Schwartz, H., et al.: Dietary protein in the genesis of hepatic coma, *New England J. Med.* 251 885, 1954.
- Sengstaken, R. W., and Blakemore, A. H.: Balloon tamponade for the control of hemorrhage from esophageal varices, *Ann. Surg.* 131 781, 1950.
- Snell, A. M., et al.: Panel on liver diseases, *J.A.M.A.* 138 118, 1953.
- Summerskill, W. H. J., et al.: The management of hepatic coma, *Am. J. Med.* 23 59, 1957.
- Watson, C.: Current status of treatment of cirrhosis of the liver, *J.A.M.A.* 166 764, 1958.
- Cornia, F. E.: Acne vulgaris, *Am. J. Nursing* 57 198, 1957.
- Criep, L. H.: The march of allergy, *J.A.M.A.* 166 572, 1958.
- Dees, S. C.: Some practical aspects of allergy, *J. Pediat.* 37 685, 1950.
- Friedenwald, V. H.: Is skin testing in allergic patients worth the effort, *J. Allergy* 23 420, 1952.
- Kraft, B., et al.: A psychotherapist's integration into an allergic practice, *Ann. Allergy* 15 168, 1957.
- Markow, H.: Food allergy, *New York J. Med.* 56 3735, 1958.
- Withers, O. R., and Hale, H.: Food allergy a review of the literature, *Ann. Allergy* 15 384, 1956.

## CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES

### Cardiac Disease

#### Books and Pamphlets.

- American Heart Assn., Food For Your Heart, New York, 1952.
- Davidson, C. S., et al.: Sodium Restricted Diets, Washington 25, D. C., National Research Council Publ. No. 925, 1954.
- Levine, S. A.: Clinical Heart Disease, ed. 5, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1957.
- Planning Low Sodium Meals, New York, Nutrition Foundation, 1954.
- Rice, T. H.: Low-Sodium Diet. A Manual for the Patient, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1951.
- White, P. D.: Heart Disease, ed. 4, New York, Macmillan, 1958.
- Your 500 mg Sodium Diet, Your 1,000 mg Sodium Diet, Your Mild Sodium Restricted Diet, New York, Am. Heart A., 1958.

(See Food Selection and Preparation for Cookbooks for low sodium diets.)

#### Journal Articles

- Blecha, E.: Low sodium diets, *Am. J. Nurs.* 58 404, 1958.

## ALLERGY; SKIN DISEASES

### Books and Pamphlets.

- Runkel, H. J., Randolph, T. G., and Zeller, M.: Food Allergy, Springfield, Ill., Thomas, 1951.
- Rowe, A. H.: Elimination Diets and the Patient's Allergies, ed. 2, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1944.
- Samuels, F. E.: The Allergic Patient and His World, Springfield, Ill., Thomas, 1953.
- The Skin and Its Allergies (pamphlet), Allergy Foundation of America, 801 Second Ave., New York, 1958.
- Vaughan, W. T., and Black, J. H.: Primer of Allergy, ed. 4, St. Louis, Mosby, 1954.

### Journal Articles.

- Alvarez, W. C.: The production of food allergy, *Gastroenterology* 30 325, 1956.

- Davidson, S. Diet and cardiovascular disease, *Am. J. Nursing* 57:194, 1957.
- Durant, F. M. Nutritional factors in cardiac disease, *Ann. Int. Med.* 35:397, 1951.
- Grollman, A. Sodium restriction as a dietary measure, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 22:861, 1946.
- Grollman, A., et al.: Sodium restriction in the diet, *J. A. M. A.* 129:533, 1945.
- Heap, B., and Robinson, C. New booklets for patients on sodium restriction, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 34:277, 1958.
- Johnson, D.: Planning a restricted sodium diet and bland, low fiber diet for the diabetic patient, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:569, 1957.
- Kaufman, M. Adapting therapeutic diets to Jewish food customs, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:876, 1957.
- Kay, C. F. Current status of therapy for congestive heart failure, *J. A. M. A.* 164:659, 1957.
- Kempner, W. Treatment of hypertensive vascular disease with rice diet, *Am. J. Med.* 4:545, 1948.
- Nelson, E. M.: Labeling foods of low sodium and low carbohydrate content, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:33, 1955.
- Plotz, M. The low sodium diet, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:818, 1957.
- Reimer, A. Dietary adjustments in the treatment of abnormal electrolyte patterns, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 27:654, 1951.
- Reimer, A., and Newburgh, L. H.: Certain aspects of potassium metabolism, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 27:1042, 1951.
- Robinson, C. H. Planning the sodium restricted diet, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:28, 1955.
- Wohl, M. G., et al.: Congestive heart failure, *A. M. A. Arch. Int. Med.* 96:11, 1955.
- Wright, E. G., et al.: Do spices increase acceptability of therapeutic diets, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:895, 1957.
- Wright, I. S. Vascular Diseases in Clinical Practice, ed. 2, Chicago, Year Book Pub., 1952.

## Journal Articles:

- Ahrens, E. H., Jr., et al.: Dietary control of serum lipids in relation to atherosclerosis, *J. A. M. A.* 164:1905, 1957.
- Council on Foods and Nutrition: Symposium on fats in human nutrition, *J. A. M. A.* 164:1890, 1957.
- Dahl, L. K.: Role of dietary sodium in essential hypertension, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 34:585, 1958.
- Dahl, L. K., and Love, R. A.: Etiological role of sodium chloride intake in essential hypertension in humans, *J. A. M. A.* 164:397, 1957.
- Editorial: Diet and atherosclerosis—the evidence from Israel, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:674, 1957.
- Frederickson, D. S.: Some biochemical aspects of lipid and lipoprotein metabolism, *J. A. M. A.* 164:1895, 1957.
- Gofman, J. W., et al.: Relation of fat and caloric intake to atherosclerosis, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 30:317, 1954.
- Kempner, W. Treatment of hypertensive vascular disease with rice diets, *Am. J. Med.* 4:545, 1948.
- Keys, A. Human atherosclerosis and the diet, *Circulation* 5:115, 1952.
- The diet and the development of coronary heart disease, *J. Chron. Dis.* 4:364, 1956.
- Kuo, P. T.: Lipemia in patients with coronary heart disease, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:22, 1957.
- Lew, E. A. Some implications of mortality

continued on page 740 of this issue

## Vascular Diseases

## Books:

- Dobbin, E. V. The Low Fat, Low Cholesterol Diet, Garden City, N. Y., Doubleday, 1951.
- Morrison, L. M. The Low Fat Way to Health and Longer Life, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., Prentice, 1958.
- Page, I. H. Hypertension, ed. 2, Springfield, Thomas, 1956.
- fat content of the diet, *J. A. M. A.* 164:2047, 1957.
- Page, I. H., and Corcoran, A. C. Dietary treatment of hypertension, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 1:7, 1952.
- Robinson, C. H.: The low cholesterol, low fat diet, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 2:353, 1954.

Stare, F. J., et al. Nutritional studies relating to serum lipids and atherosclerosis, *JAMA* 164:1920, 1957

Van Itallie, T. B. Dietary constituents and atherosclerosis, *J Am Dietet A* 33 352, 1957

—, Nutritional research in atherosclerosis—a progress report, *J. Am Dietet A* 34 242, 1958

Watkin, D. M. Effects of diet in essential hypertension, *Am J Med* 9 441, 1950

Wilhelm, C. M., et al. Nutrition and blood pressure, *Am J Digest Dis* 20 117, 1953

(Also consult references under Fats and Lipids)

## DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY

### Book

Addis, T. *Glomerulonephritis*, New York, Macmillan, 1948

### Nephritis

#### Journal Articles

Ball, O. T., and Meneely, G. R. Observations on dietary sodium chloride, *J Am Dietet A* 33 366, 1957

Corcoran, A. C. Advances in the treatment of acute and chronic renal insufficiency, *JAMA* 153:1233, 1953

—, Renal failure, *Am J Nursing* 56 768, 1956

Farr, H. W. Fluid and electrolyte balance, *Am J Med* 22:222, 1957

70 618, 1939

Kolff, W. J. Forced high caloric, low protein diet and the treatment of uremia, *Am J Med* 12 667, 1952

—, Treatment of uremia with forced high caloric, low protein diet, *Nutrition Rev.* 11:193, 1953

Lowe, K. G., and Valtin, H. Dietary treatment in acute anuria, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 4 486, 1956.

Merrill, A. J. Nutrition in chronic renal failure, *Am. J Clin Nutrition* 4 497, 1956

Pitts, R. F. Acid-base regulation by the kidneys, *Am J Med* 9 356, 1950

Robinson, C. H. Planning the high protein diet, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 1 401, 1953

Zimmerman, H. J. Nutritional aspects of

acute glomerulonephritis, *Am J Clin Nutrition* 4 482, 1956

### Infection and Kidney Stones

#### Book

Marshall, V. F. *Textbook of Urology*, New York, Hoeber-Harper, 1956

#### Journal Articles

Hand, J. R. Infections of the urinary tract, *Am J Nursing* 57:1008, 1957

Higgins, C. O. Etiology and prevention of renal calculus, *J Urol* 68 117, 1952

Prien, E. L. Studies in urolithiasis III. Physicochemical principles in stone formation and prevention, *J Urol* 73 627, 1955

—, minimum gel dietary prophylaxis after extensive nephrolithotomy, *J Urol* 73 660, 1955.

## DISEASES OF THE BLOOD

### Book

Wintrobe, M. M. *Clinical Hematology*, ed 4, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1956

#### Journal Articles

Baumann, C. A. Citrovorum factor nutrition aspects, associations with leukemia and anemia, *J Am Dietet A* 29 548, 1953

Bethell, F. H. Treatment of macrocytic anemias with vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, *J Am Dietet A* 26 89, 1950

Hall, B. E. Diagnosis and treatment of nutritional anemia, *JAMA* 151 1, 1953

Heck, F. J. Proper use of iron, liver extract, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folic acid in anemias, *JAMA* 148 783, 1952

Johnston, F. A. New developments in the theory of iron metabolism, *J Am Dietet A* 27 739, 1951

Kirschenfeld, J. J., and Tew, H. H. Prevalence and significance of anemia as seen in a rural general practice, *JAMA* 158 807, 1955

Murphy, W. P. Twenty-five years experience in treatment and management of pernicious anemia, *JAMA* 149 907, 1952

Spies, T. D., et al. Detection and nutritive



failure in children, J.A.M.A. 148:1376, 1952.

### DISEASES OF THE MUSCULO-SKELETAL AND THE NERVOUS SYSTEMS

#### Pamphlet:

Rusk, H. A., et al.: A Manual for Training the Disabled Homemaker, New York, New York Univ., Bellevue Medical Center, Institute of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, 1955.

#### Journal Articles:

Bayles, V. M.: Ingenuity of a dietitian "wheelchair," J. Am. Dietet. A. 32: 1058, 1956.

Editorial. The treatment of arthritis, J.A.M.A. 135:288, 1947.

Greenman, L.: Sodium restriction during ACTH therapy, Am. J. Nursing 53:444, 1953.

Kussner, C.: Successful feeding of mental patients, Hospital Management 80:83, 1955.

Morrissey, A. B., and Zimmerman, M. E.: Eating for the hand group, J. Am. Dietet. A. 32: 1058, 1956.

### MISCELLANEOUS METABOLIC DISTURBANCES

#### Books:

Duncan, G. G.: Diseases of Metabolism, ed. 3, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1952.

#### Journal Articles:

Beeuwkes, A. M.: The dietary treatment of functional hyperinsulinism, J. Am. Dietet. A. 18:731, 1942.

Conn, J. W., and Seltzer, H. S.: Spontaneous hypoglycemia in dietary and drug therapy, J.A.M.A. 155:884, 1954.

dePeyster, F. A., and Gilchrist, R. K.: Clinical response of spontaneous hypoglycemia to dietary and drug therapy, J.A.M.A. 155:884, 1954.

Editorial. Control of gout, J.A.M.A. 157: 1127, 1955.

Gutman, A. B., and Yu, T. F.: Prevention and treatment of chronic gouty arthritis, J.A.M.A. 157:1096, 1955.

Hench, P. S.: Diagnosis and treatment of gout and gouty arthritis, J.A.M.A. 116: 453, 1941.

Hoffman, W. S.: Metabolism of uric acid and its relation to gout, J.A.M.A. 154: 213, 1954.

Pascale, L. R.: Therapeutic value of probenecid (Benemid) in gout, J.A.M.A. 149: 1188, 1952.

Robinson, C. H.: The low purine diet, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 2:276, 1954.

Robinson, W. D.: Current status on the treatment of gout, J.A.M.A. 164:1670, 1957.

Talbott, J. H.: Gout, Am. J. Nursing 50: 731, 1950.

Thomas, H. M.: The treatment of hyperthyroidism, medical or surgical, New England J. Med. 248:760, 1953.

### SURGICAL NUTRITION; BURNS

#### Books and Pamphlets:

Cancer Nursing: A Manual for Public Health Nurses, Albany, New York State Department of Health, rev., 1955.

Cole, W. H., and Elman, R.: Textbook of General Surgery, ed. 6, New York, Appleton, 1952.

#### Journal Articles:

Allison, J. B.: Nitrogen balance and the nutritive value of proteins, J.A.M.A. 164: 283, 1957.

Artz, C. P., et al.: Some recent developments in oral feedings for optimum nutrition in burns, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 4:642, 1956.

Blocker, T. G., et al.: The care of patients with burns, Nursing Outlook 6:382, 1958.

—: Nutrition studies in severely burned patients, Ann. Surg. 141:589, 1955.

Cole, W. H.: Fat emulsions for intravenous use, J.A.M.A. 166:1042, 1958.

Crandon, J. H.: Nutrition in surgical patients, J.A.M.A. 158:264, 1955.

Editorial. Protein nutrition in surgery, J.A.M.A. 150:141, 1952.

Elman, R.: Protein needs in surgical patients, J. Am. Dietet. A. 32:524, 1956.

Farr, H. W.: Fluid and electrolyte balance, Am. J. Nursing 54:826, 1954.

Hine, D. E., et al.: The use of intravenous lipid substances in surgical patients, Am. J. Surg. 92:292, 1956.

Jordan, G. L., Jr.: The post-gastrectomy syndrome, J.A.M.A. 163:1485, 1957.

Lounds, E. A., et al.: A research diet team in a surgical research service, J. Am. Dietet. A. 33:902, 1957.

Paulson, III, and Harvey, J. C.: Hemato-

surgery, Arch. Surg. 61:977, 1951

Rhoads, J. E.: Supranormal dietary require-  
ments of acutely ill patients, J. Am  
Dietet. A. 53: 1197, 1953

Roberts, K. E., et al: Studies of the phys-  
iology of the dumping syndrome, New  
York J. Med. 53:2897, 1953

Van Itallie, T. B., and Stare, F. J.: Recent  
advances in nutrition related to surgical  
care, J. Am. Dietet. A. 52: 13, 1952

#### NUTRITION IN DISEASES OF INFANCY AND CHILDHOOD

(Also consult bibliography under  
specific diseases)

##### Books

Chase, F.: A Visit to the Hospital, New  
York, Grosset & Dunlap, 1957

Hartrich, P.: You and Your Child's Health,  
New York Harper, 1955

Holt, L. E., and McIntosh, R.: Pediatrics,  
ed. 12, New York, Appleton, 1953

Nelson, W.: Textbook of Pediatrics, ed  
6, Philadelphia, Saunders, 1956

##### Journal Articles

#### Interrelationship between Pediatric Dis-

1948

—. The nurse can help with child feeding  
problems, Pub. Health Nursing 43: 198,  
1951.

Morgan, M. C., and Lloyd, B. J.: Parents  
invited, Nursing Outlook 3: 258, 1955

Sittig, N. J.: Mealtime on the pediatric  
ward, Am. J. Nursing 55: 551, 1955.

Wallace, M. V.: Feeding the hospitalized  
child, J. Am. Dietet. A. 29: 449, 1953

Weng, L.: Group feeding for hospitalized  
children, J. Am. Dietet. A. 25: 620, 1949

#### Feeding Difficulties in Infants

Infant Care, Children's Bureau Publ. No. 8,  
Washington, U.S. Dept. of Health, Educ.  
and Welfare, 1955

Karelitz, S.: Diarrhea in infants and chil-  
dren, Pediatr. Clin. North America, pp  
137-152, Feb., 1956

#### Nutritional Deficiencies

Price, J. P., and Hart, W. M.: Malnutrition  
and anemia in young children, J. A. M. A.  
148: 5, 1952

Scrimshaw, N. S., et al: Kwashiorkor in

Woodruff, C. W.: Infantile scurvy, J. A. M. A.  
161: 448, 1956

#### Obesity in Children

Bruch, H.: Dietary Treatment of obesity in  
childhood, J. Am. Dietet. A. 20: 561,  
1944

Hoffman, R. H.: Obesity in childhood and  
adolescence, Am. J. Clin. Nutrition 5: 1,  
1957

Norman, J. M.: Treating obesity in children,  
J. Am. Dietet. A. 30: 695, 1954

#### Nutrition of Crippled Children

Abel, M.: Feeding the child with cerebral

Leamy, C.: A study of the food intake of a  
group of children with cerebral palsy,  
Am. J. Pub. Health 43: 1310, 1953.

- McCollum, D. W., and Richardson, E. O.: Care of the child with cleft lip and cleft palate, *Am. J. Nursing* 58:211, 1958
- Patterson, I.: Feeding the child with a cleft palate, *Pub Health Nursing* 43:148, 1951
- Reid, E. S.: Helping parents of handicapped children, *Children* 5:15, 1958
- Zickelsoose, M.: Feeding problems of children with cleft palate, *Children* 4:225, 1957.

### Nephrosis

- Barnett, H., et al.: The nephrotic syndrome in children, *Advances in Ped.* vol. 5, 1952
- Barnett, H., and Eder, H.: The nephrotic syndrome, *J. Chron. Dis.* 5:103, 1957.
- Kohn, J. L., and Obrinsky, W.: Lipid nephrosis in children, *Am. J. Dis. Child* 84:587, 1952

children with the nephrotic syndrome, *JAMA* 147:1101, 1951.

### Celiac Disease and Pancreatic Insufficiency

- Anderson, D. H., and Mike, E. M.: Diet therapy in the celiac syndrome, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 31:340, 1955
- Celiac Disease and Glutelin Sensitivity, *Nutrition Rev.* 14:165, 1956.
- Editorial: Cystic fibrosis, *JAMA* 161:1388, 1956
- Dicke, W. K., et al.: Coeliac disease. II. The presence in wheat of a factor having a deleterious effect in cases of coeliac disease, *Acta paediat.* 42:34, 1953
- duSant-Agnese, P. A.: Fibrocystic disease of the pancreas, *JAMA* 160:840, 1956
- Sheldon, W.: Coeliac disease, *Lancet*, p. 1097, Nov. 26, 1955
- Sleisenger, M. H., and Rynbergen, H. J.,

wheat gliadin, *Acta paediat.* 44:465, 1955.

### Inborn Errors of Metabolism

- Armstrong, M. D., et al.: Studies on phenylketonuria IX, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:543, 1957
- Holzel, A., et al.: Galactosemia, *Am. J. Med.* 22:703, 1957.
- Isselbacher, K. J.: Clinical and biochemical observations in galactosemia, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition* 5:527, 1958
- Kretschmer, N., and Eitzwiler, D. D.: Disorders associated with the metabolism of phenylalanine and tyrosine, *Pediatrics* 21:445, 1958
- Queries and Minor Notes: Phenylalanine in foods, *JAMA* 162:697, 1956.
- Wright, S. W.: Phenylketonuria, *JAMA* 165:2079, 1957.

### Diabetes in Children

#### Book:

- Fischer, A. E., and Horstmann, D. L.: *Handbook for Diabetic Children*, New York, Intercontinental, 1955

#### Journal Articles:

- Jackson, R. L., and Beckett, S. W.: Dietary management of children with diabetes, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 32:528, 1956
- Marble, A.: The future of the child with diabetes, *J. Am. Dietet. A.* 33:569, 1957
- White, P.: Natural course and prognosis of juvenile diabetes, *Diabetes* 5:445, 1956

### Allergy in Children

#### Books.

- Allergy in Children (pamphlet), Allergy Foundation of America, 801 Second Ave., New York, 1957
- Glaser, J.: *Allergy in Childhood*, Springfield, Thomas, 1956
- Swartz, H. F.: *The Allergic Child*, New York, Coward, 1954

#### Journal Articles:

- Bachman, K. D., and Dees, S. C.: Milk Allergy. I. Well babies, *Pediatrics* 20:393, 1957. II. Allergic infants, *Pediatrics* 20:400, 1957.

223, 1955.

Coeliac disease. V. Some experiments on the cause of the harmful effect of

- Rapaport, H G. Psychosomatic aspects of allergy in childhood, JAMA, 165:812, 1957.

### Part Three

## FOOD SELECTION AND PREPARATION

## COOKERY

## Cavanna E., and Welton, J. Gourmet

**Cookbooks**

- Barber, E M Edith Barber's Cook Book,  
New York. Putnam. 1946

- New Basic Cook Book, Boston, Houghton, 1957

- Rombauer, I S, and Becker, M R. The Joy of Cooking. New York, Bobbs, 1951.

### Basic Foods Books

- Justin, M., Rust, L. O., and Vail, G. Foods,  
ed 4. Boston. Houghton, 1956

- Lowe, B. *Experimental Cookery*, ed 4, New York, Wiley, 1955

- Sweetman is a Food Scientist and Therapist.

- cott. 1955

## Foods Laboratory Work Books

- Johnson, D. 1981. *Mammals of the*

- N Y, 1957

### Special Diet Cookbooks and Pamphlets

- Allergy Recipes (Pamphlet). Chicago, American Dietetic Assoc., 1957

- Cannon, P. *Unforbidden Sweets*, New York, Crowell, 1958.

- for Bad Stomachs, New York, Doubleday, 1951

- Levinson, L. L. *The Complete Book of Low Calorie Cooking*, New York, Hawthorne, 1956

- Lyon, T P, and Gofman, J W, and Associates. The Low Fat, Low Cholesterol Diet. New York, Doubleday, 1951.

- Payne, A. S., and Callahan, ■ Low Sodium Cook Book. Boston, Little, 1953

- Planning Low Sodium Meals (Pamphlet),  
New York, Nutrition Foundation, 1954

- Pollack, H., and Krause, M. V. *Your Diabetes: A Manual for the Patient*, New York, Hoeber, 1951.

- Small, M. The Special Diet Cook Book,  
New York, Greystone, 1952

- So You're on a Diet (Pamphlet), New York,  
American Can Co., 1958

- Stead, E. H., and Warren, G. K. *Low-Fat Cookery*. New York, McGraw, 1956

- Your 500 mg Sodium Diet, Your 1000 mg Sodium Diet, Your Mild Sodium-Restricted Diet (Pamphlets), New York, American Heart Association. 1953



# Glossary

The pronunciation follows the system of Webster's  
New International Dictionary, second edition

**acetone bodies** (ä's-ê-tôn) Acetone, diacetic acid and beta-hydroxybutyric acid. Called also ketone bodies (See ketosis, defined below)

**achlorhydria** (ä'klôr-hî'drî-a) Absence or diminished amount of hydrochloric acid in the gastric secretions.

**achylia gastrica** (ä-kt'î-g gäs'trî-kä) A condition in which the secretion of gastric juice is diminished or absent

**acidosis** (äs't-dô'sis) A condition in which the body's alkaline reserve is lowered, due to abnormal loss of alkaline salts or abnormal accumulation of acids

**acne** (äk'nê) A chronic inflammatory disease of the sebaceous glands, occurring most frequently on the face, the back and the chest

**acrodynia** (äk-rô-dîn'î-a) An eruptive skin disease. In humans, it is marked by pain in the soles of the feet and the palms of the hands

**ACTH** (ä-ç-t-h) adrenocorticotrophic hormone

**allergen** (äl'êr-jên) Any substance capable of inducing allergy

**alopecia** (äl'ô-pê'shî-a) Baldness, deficiency of hair

**amino acid** (ä-mê'nô äs'id) A class of organic compounds known as the building blocks of the protein molecule

**amylase** (äm't-läs) An enzyme that digests starch, as ptyalin in the saliva

**anaphylaxis** (än'a-fl-läk'sis) Unusual or exaggerated reaction or shock of the organism to foreign protein

**anastomosis** (ä-näs'tô-mô'sis) A communication between two vessels, a surgical formation of a passage between two vessels

**anorexia** (än'ô-rêk'sî-ä) Lack or loss of appetite for food

**antibiotic** (än'tî-bî-ot'îk) A substance which inhibits growth and multiplication of bacteria

**antihemorrhagic** (än'tî-hêm'ô-rä'jîk) Stopping hemorrhage. Often applied to vitamin K

**antineuritic** (än'tî-nû-rît'îk) Counteracting neuritis. Often applied to thiamine

**antirachitic** (än'tî-rä-kî'tîk) Preventive, curative or corrective of rickets. Often applied to vitamin D

**antiscorbutic** (än'tî-skôr-bû'tîk) Correcting or curing scurvy. Often applied to ascorbic acid

**antivitamin** (än'tî-vî'tî-mîn) A substance which may inactivate or destroy a vitamin

**anuria** (ä-nû'rî-ä) Absolute suppression of urinary secretion

**arachidonic acid** (är'ä-kî-dôn'îk äs'id) An unsaturated fatty acid, essential for normal nutrition.

**arteriosclerosis** (är-tê'rî-ô-skî-lô-rô'sis) A

- thickening and a hardening of the walls of arteries and capillaries.
- ascites** (ä-sī'tēz) Accumulation of fluid in the abdominal cavity.
- ascorbic acid** (ä-skör'bik) Vitamin C, deficiency of which is a causative factor in scurvy
- aspiration** (äs'pī-rä'shūn). The act of breathing or drawing in
- assay** (ä-sä'). Examination or analysis of a substance.
- asthenia** (äs-thē'nē-a) Without strength
- atherosclerosis** (äth'ēr-ō-sklē-rō'sis) Fatty degeneration of the connective tissue of the arterial walls
- atonic** (ä-tōn'ik). Lack of normal tone or vigor of an organ or part.
- atrophy** (ät'rō-fi). A wasting away of a cell, tissue, organ or part.
- avidin** (ä-vī-din) A proteinlike substance isolated from egg white.
- avitaminosis** (ä-vī'ta-mīn-ō'sis) A condition due to the lack or the deficiency of a vitamin in the diet, or to lack of absorption or utilization of it.
- bactericidal** (bäk-tēr'i-sid'äl) Destructive to bacteria
- bacteriostatic** (bäk-tēr'i-ō-stät'ik) Inhibitive to growth of bacteria
- base** (bäs) A substance which combines with acids to form neutral compounds
- benign** (bē-nin'). Mild, favorable for recovery.
- bio-assay** (bi'ō-d-sä') Examination or analysis of a substance by noting its effect on animals
- biotin** (bi'ō-tin). A member of the vitamin B complex
- botulism** (böt'ū-liz'm) Poisoning from the toxin produced by the organism *Clostridium botulinum*. The toxin has a selective action on the nervous system
- bradycardia** (bräd'i-kar'di-a) Abnormal slowness of the heartbeat
- calciferol** (käl-sif'ēr-öl) Vitamin D<sub>2</sub>, produced by irradiating ergosterol
- calcification** (käl'si-fi-ka'shūn) Process by which organic tissue becomes hardened by a deposit of calcium salts
- calculus**, pl. **calculi** (käl'kü-lūs). Commonly called stone.
- calorimeter** (käl'ō-rīm'ē-tēr). An instrument for measuring the heat change in any system (such as the types pictured in Chapter 5, one of which is used to measure the amount of heat produced by the body), and the bomb calorimeter used to measure the calorie (energy) value of foods
- carotene** (kär'ō-tēn). A yellow pigment which exists in several forms, alpha, beta and gamma carotene are provitamins which may be converted into vitamin A in the body.
- casein** (kä'sē-in). The principal protein of milk, the basis of cheese
- cheilosis** (ki-lō'sis) A condition marked by lesions on the lips and cracks at the angles of the mouth.
- cholecystitis** (köl'ē-sis-tītis). Inflammation of the gallbladder.
- cholecystokinin** (köl'ē-cyst'ō-kī'nin) A hormone produced in the wall of the duodenum in the presence of fat, which stimulates the contraction of the gallbladder.
- cholelithiasis** (köl'ē-li-thi'as-sis) The presence or formation of gallstones
- cholesterol** (kō-lēs'tēr-öl). The most common member of the sterol group, defined below
- choline** (kō'lēn) A component of lecithin. Necessary for fat transport in the body. Prevents the accumulation of fat in the liver.
- chyme** (kim). The thick, grayish, semiliquid mass into which food is converted by gastric digestion. In this form it passes into the small intestines.
- cirrhosis** (sī-rō'sis). Inflammation with hardening of the tissues of an organ, more especially the liver
- estrovorum factor** (sit'rō-vō'rūm fāk'tēr) A vitamin belonging to the B complex closely related to vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.
- cobalamine** (kō'bōl-ām'in). The basic molecule of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, several compounds
- organic substance of bones changeable by boiling into gelatin.
- colloidal** (kō-lōi'däl) Pertaining to a colloid, which is a substance containing tiny, solid, evenly dispersed particles not dissolved in the medium, but which will not settle out. Glue is an example.
- congenital** (kōn-jēn'i-täl). Existing at or before birth.
- cortex** (kōr'teks) The outer layers of an organ as distinguished from its inner substance

cortisone (côr'tē-sôn) A synthetic, hormone-like substance, similar to the adrenal cortex hormones

enzymes

cystitis (sis-tī'tis) Inflammation of the urinary bladder.

deamination (dē-ām'in-i-zā'shūn) The process of metabolism by which the nitrogen portion (amine group) is removed from amino acids

dehydration (dē'hi-drā'shūn) Removal of water from the body or a tissue

dermatitis (dūr'mā-tī'tis) Inflammation of the skin

desoxycorticosterone (dēs-ōx'ē-cōst'ē-cōstēr'ōn) A hormone produced by the cortex of the adrenal

urine

dysentery (dis'ēn-tēr-i) Inflammation of intestinal mucous membrane, especially the colon. The causative agent may be bac-

breathing

dystrophy (dis'trō-fī) Progressive weakening of a muscle.

eclampsia (ēk-lāmp'sī-ā) A sudden attack of convulsions. A severe manifestation of toxemia of pregnancy

eczema (ēk'zē-mā) A skin disease

edema (ē-dē'mā) An accumulation of large amounts of fluid in the intertissue spaces of the body

electrolyte (ē-lēk'trō-lī) The ionized form of an element. Common electrolytes in the body are sodium, potassium and chlorides

emaciation (ē-mā'sī-ā'shūn) A wasted condition of the body.

emulsion (ē-mūl'shūn) A finely divided

mixture or suspension of two liquids not mutually soluble

endemic (ēn-dēm'ik) Pertaining to or prevalent in a particular district or region

endocarditis (ēn'dō-kar-dī'tis) Inflammation of the endocardium (inner lining membrane of the heart)

endocrine (ēn'dō-krin) Applied to organs whose function it is to secrete internally a substance which plays an important role in metabolism

endogenous (ēn-dōf'ē-nūs) Originating within the organism

enzyme (ēn'zim) A substance, frequently protein in nature and formed in living cells, which brings about chemical changes

epithelium (ēp'i-thē'li-ūm) The outer layers of the skin and the mucous membranes, consisting of cells of various forms and arrangement

ergosterol (ēr-gōs'tēr-ōl) A sterol found in plant and in animal tissues which, on exposure to ultraviolet light, is converted into vitamin D<sub>2</sub> (See sterol)

erythrocyte (ē-rīth'rō-sīt) Red blood corpuscle

etiology (ē'tī-ōl'ō-jī) The study of the causation of a disease

exogenous (ēks-ōf'ē-nūs) Originating outside the organism

extractive (ēk-trāk'tiv) Any substance present in a tissue or in a mixture in a small quantity, and requiring to be extracted by a special method

extrinsic (ēks-trīn'sik) Coming from, or originating from, outside.

fatty acids (fāt'i ās'ids) The organic acids which combine with glycerol to form fat.

febrile (fē'bril) Pertaining to, or accompanied by, fever

feces (fē'sēz) Excrement, the discharge of the bowels.

ferment (fēr'mēt) An enzyme, defined above

fetus (fē'tūs) The product of conception after the fourth month of pregnancy.

fibrosis (fī-brō'sis) The formation of fibrous connective tissue.

fistula (fis'tu-lā) An abnormal tube-like passage in the body.

flatulence (flāt'ē-lēns) Distention of the in-



complex group, known also as pteroyl-glutamic acid  
 friable (frī'ā-b'l) Easily broken or crumbled.

gastrectomy (gāst'rēk'tō-mī). Surgical removal of a part or all of the stomach.

gavage (gā'vazh'). Feeding by the stomach tube.

geriatrics (jēr'i-āt'riks) Study and treatment of the problems and the diseases of old age.

in wheat

glossitis (glōs-'tīs). Inflammation of the tongue.

glucagon (glōō'kă-gōn) A hormone produced by the pancreas which breaks down liver glycogen to glucose.

gluten (glōō'tēn-'t'n) A protein found in many cereal grains.

glyceride (glis'ēr-id) A compound formed when glycerin and an acid are combined.

glycogen (glī'kō-jēn). A carbohydrate, similar in composition to starch. In this form, carbohydrate is stored temporarily in the liver and the muscles.

glycosuria (glī'kō-sū'rī-a). Presence of sugar in the urine.

hemeralopia (hēm'er-ā-lō'pī-a) Day blindness.

breaking down of red blood corpuscles

stance in the body, found wherever tissues are damaged. A stimulator of the

ported to another organ, where it produces a specific effect.

hydrolysate (hī-drōl'i-sāt). A product of hydrolysis. Often applied to protein.

hydrolysis (hī-drōl'i-sis). A chemical reaction in which a compound is broken down with the chemical addition of water and the formation of a new compound.

hyperchlorhydria (hī'pēr-klōr-hī'drī-a) Excessive secretion of hydrochloric acid in the stomach.

hypercholesteremia (hī'pēr-kō-lēs'tēr-ē'mī-d) Excess of cholesterol in the blood.

hyperemia (hī'pēr-ē'mē-a). A congestion of blood.

hyperplasia (hī'pēr-plā'zhī-d; -zī-d) Abnormal multiplication of cells, with increase in size of the organ, but without formation of a tumor.

hyperthermia (hī'pēr-thū'mī-d). Fever.

hypertrophic (hī'pēr-trōf'ik). Pertaining to an enlargement or overgrowth of an organ, or part, due to a diseased condition.

hypocalcemia (hī'pō-kāl-sē'mē-a). Abnormally low blood calcium.

hypochlorhydria (hī'pō-klōr-hī'drī-a) Diminished secretion of hydrochloric acid in the stomach.

protein in the blood

hypoprote thrombinemia (hī'pō-prō-thrōm-bīn-ē'mē-ah). Deficiency of prothrombin in the blood.

icterus (ik'tēr-ūs) Jaundice.

idiopathic (īdī-ō-pāth'ik) Self-originated, occurring without known cause.

ileitis (il'ē-'tīs) Inflammation of the ileum.  
 ileum (il'ē-ūm) Lower third portion of the small intestine. About 11 feet long.

incipient (in-sīp'i-ēnt) Beginning to exist.  
 inositol (in-ō'sī-tōl). A member of the vitamin B complex.

interstitial (in'tēr-stish'āl). In the spaces between the cells.

intravenous (in'tra-vē'nūs) Within or into a vein.

**intrinsic** (in-trín'sik) Situated entirely within, pertaining to itself.

**isotopes** (í'sò-tòps) Two or more chemical elements which have the same atomic number and identical chemical properties, but which differ in atomic weight or in the structure of the nucleus

**jejunum** (jé-òò'núm) Middle portion of the small intestine. About 8 feet long

**keratinize** (kér'd-tín-íz) To become horny-like

**ketosis** (kò-tò'sis) A condition in which there is an accumulation in the body of the ketone bodies (See acetone bodies) as a result of incomplete oxidation of the fatty acids

**kwashiorkor** (kwa-shí-òr'kér). A severe protein deficiency disease occurring in small children. Endemic in many parts of the world

**labile** (lá'bíl) Not fixed, unstable.

**lacteal(s)** (lá'k'té-ál) Tiny vessels in the intestinal wall through which fat is absorbed

**leukemia** (ló-ké'mí-dí). A disease of the blood-forming organs, characterized by a marked increase of the white corpuscles

**leukocyte** (ló'kò-sít). White blood corpuscles

**leukopenia** (ló'kò-pén'ík). Pertaining to leukopenia (reduction of leukocytes in the blood)

**linoleic acid** (lín'ò-lé'ík á's'íd) An unsaturated fatty acid essential for nutrition.

**linolenic acid** (lín'ò-lé'n'ík á's'íd) An unsaturated fatty acid essential for nutrition.

**lipase** (lí'pás, lí'pás) An enzyme that digests fat

**lipid** (lí'píd), **lipoid** (lí'poid) Fat or fat-like substances.

**lipoprotein** (lí'pò-prò'té-ín) Combination of a protein with a fat found in both animal and plant tissues.

**lipotropic** (lí'pò-tròp'ík) Applied to substances essential for fat metabolism.

**lumen** (lū'mén) The space within an artery, vein, intestine or tube.

**macrocyte** (mák'rò-sít) Abnormally large

work of a tissue

**menadione** (mè-ná-dí'ón). Synthetic vitamin K

**metabolism** (mè-táb'ò-líz'm) General term to designate all chemical changes which occur in living matter. These changes are of two types—constructive and destructive

**methionine** (mèth-í'ò-nín) An essential amino acid important for its influence on fat metabolism

**microcyte** (mí'krò-sít) An undersized red

intestinal tract

**myocarditis** (mí'ò-kar-dí'tis) Inflammation of the myocardium (heart muscle)

**myosin** (mí'ò-sín). A protein of muscle plasma

**myxedema** (mík'sè-dé'ma) Condition due to a deficiency of thyroid secretion.

**nasogastric tube** (ná'zò-gás'trík túb). Tube inserted through the nose and passed by way of the esophagus into the stomach.

**necrosis** (nè-kró'sis) Death of a circumscribed area of tissue

**neoplasm** (né'ò-pláz'm) Any new and abnormal growth such as a tumor.

**neurasthenia** (nú'rè's-thè'ní-dí) Nervous exhaustion characterized by abnormal fatigue

cells

**nyctalopia** (ní'k'té-lò'pí-dí). Night blindness, imperfection of vision at night or in a dim light.

**ophthalmia** (ôf-thîl'mî-a) Severe inflammation of the eye.

**osmotic pressure** (ôs-môt'îk). Unbalanced pressure, causing the phenomenon of osmosis.

**bone or bony substance**

**osteomalacia** (ôs'tê-ô-mâ-lî'shî-d) Softening of the bone due to loss of calcium. Occurs chiefly in adults.

**oxidation** (ôk-sî-dâ'shûn) A chemical process by which a substance combines with oxygen. In the body the rate of oxidation depends upon cell activity, not the intake of oxygen.

**pantothenic acid** (pân'tô-thên'îk) A member of the vitamin B complex.

**parenchyma** (pa-rêng'kl-ma) The functional part of an organ as distinguished from its framework.

**para-aminobenzoic acid** (pâr'a-â-mê-nô-bên-zô'îk âs'îd) A vitamin of the B complex group, a deficiency of which results in graying of dark hair of rats and other animals.

**parenteral** (pâr-ên'têr-âl). Not through the alimentary canal, i.e., subcutaneously or intravenously.

**parturition** (pâr-tû-rîsh'ûn). The act or process of giving birth to a child.

**peptide** (pêp'tîd, -îd) An intermediary product of enzymatic hydrolysis of protein.

**perforated** (pêr-fôr-â-têd) Having a hole or holes.

**perforation** (pêr-fôr-â-shûn) The act of perforating.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

**perforator** (pêr-fôr-â-tôr) One who perforates.

lution of sodium chloride isotonic with the blood.

**polycythemia** (pôl'î-sî-thê'mî-d) Excess of red corpuscles in the blood.

**polydipsia** (pôl'î-dîp'sî-a). Excessive thirst.

**polyneuritis** (pôl'î-nu-rî-tîs) Inflammation of many nerves.

**polyphagia** (pôl'î-fâ'jî-a) Excessive hunger.

**polyuria** (pôl'î-û'rî-a). Excessive secretion and discharge of urine.

**precursor** (prê-kûr'sêr). A substance which is converted into another.

**premature infant** (prê'mâ-tur'). An infant born before term.

**prognosis** (prôg-nô'sîs). Prospect as to recovery from a disease.

**prophylaxis** (prô'fî-lâk'sîs) The prevention of disease.

**protease** (prô'tê-âs) An enzyme that digests protein.

**protein hydrolysate** (prô'tê-lîn hî-drôl'î-zât). A solution containing the constituent amino acids of an artificially digested protein, usually milk or beef protein.

**proteinuria** (prô'tê-l-nû'rî-a) Presence of protein in the urine.

**proteolytic** (prô'tê-ô-lî'tîk). Effecting the digestion of proteins.

**protease(s)** (prô'tê-ôs) An intermediate product of enzymatic hydrolysis of protein between protein and peptone.

**protoplasm** (prô'tô-plâz'm). The essential living matter in a cell. The only known form of matter in which life is manifested.

**provitamin** (prô'vî'ta-mîn) The forerunner of a vitamin. Provitamin A is carotene.

**pteroylglutamic acid** (têr-ôl-glû-tâm'ic âs'îd) (See folic acid)

**ptyalin** (tî'a-lîn) The amylase of saliva.

**purine(s)** (pû'rên) End products of nucleoprotein metabolism.

**putrefaction** (pû'trê-fâk'shûn) The decomposition of animal matter, especially protein, caused by certain kinds of bacteria.

**pyelitis** (pî'ê-lî'tîs) Inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney.

**pyridoxine** (pî-rî-dôk'sîn) Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, a member of the vitamin B complex.

**radiography** (râ'dî-ôg'râ-fî) Photography with the roentgen rays. The making of x-ray pictures.

**remission** (rê-mîsh'ûn) The period of abatement of symptoms, or the lessening of their severity.

**renal (or kidney) threshold** (rê'nâl thrêsh'ôld).

The level at which a person is living.

#### BLOOD CELL

**retina** (rēt'i-nā) Innermost and the perceptive structure of the eye, formed by the expansion of the optic nerve.

**riboflavin** (rī'bō-flā'vīn). Vitamin B<sub>2</sub> or G, heat-stable factor of B complex.

**saponification** (sa-pŏn'i-fi-kā'shŭn) The splitting of fat by an alkali, yielding glycerol and soap. This may occur during the digestion of fat.

**satiety** (sa-tī'ē-tī) Fullness or gratification of appetite.

**sclerosis** (sklē-rō'sis). Hardening, a chronic thickening of a part due to inflammation and disease.

**spasmophilia** (spāz'mō-fīl'i-a) A tendency to spasm and convulsions.

**spastic** (spās'tik) Characterized by spasms or convulsions.

**sphincter** (sfīngk'tēr) A ringlike muscle which closes a natural opening.

**stasis** (stā'sis) A stoppage of the flow of blood or other body fluid in any part.

**steatorrhea** (stē'a-tō-rē'd) Presence of an excess of fat in the stools.

**sterol** (stēr'ol) Fat-soluble substances of a complex molecular structure.

**stomatitis** (stō-mat-i'tis) Inflammation of the mouth.

**suet** (sū'ēt) Hard fat of beef and mutton.

**syndrome** (sīn'drŏm) A set of symptoms which occur together.

**synthesis** (sīn'thē-sis) The process of building up a chemical compound.

**tetany** (tēt'd-nī) A condition characterized by intermittent spasms, muscle twitchings and cramps usually involving the extremities.

**thiamine** (thi'ām-in). Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. Antineuritic factor.

**thiochrome** (thī'ō-krŏm). The yellow coloring matter of yeast. It may be prepared by oxidizing thiamine.

**tocopherol** (tō-kŏf'ēr-ol) An alcohol-like substance which has the properties of vitamin E.

**toxemia of pregnancy** (tōks-ē'mē-ā prēg'nān-sē) A toxic condition of unknown etiology which occurs only in pregnancy.

**trauma** (trō'mā) An injury or a wound.

**trichinosis** (trik'i-nō'sis) A disease due to infection with trichinae—parasites found in raw pork.

**trimester** (tri-mēs'tēr) A period of three months.

**trypsin** (trīp'sīn) An enzyme that digests protein.

**ultraviolet light** (ūl'trā-vī'ō-lēt) Rays of shorter wave length than visible light. Sunlight is the natural source, but it may be derived from various kinds of electrical devices.

**urea** (ū-rē'a) The chief nitrogenous end product of protein metabolism in the body.

**uremia** (ū-rē'mī-a) Toxic condition produced by the presence of urinary constituents (waste products) in the blood.

**urobilinogen** (ū'rō-bī-līn'ō-jēn) An excretory product in the urine derived from one of the bile pigments. Bile pigments are derived from degenerated hemoglobin.

**urticaria** (ūr'tī-kā'rī-d) Hives, nettle rash.

**vascular** (vās'kū-lēr) Pertaining to, or full of, blood vessels.

**viosterol** (vī-ō'stēr-ol) A solution of irradiated ergosterol in oil, vitamin D<sub>2</sub>.

**xerophthalmia** (zē'rŏf-thāl'mī-d) A dry and lusterless condition of the eyes resulting from a vitamin A deficiency.

**zein** (zē'in) A protein obtained from corn.



# Index of Individual Recipes

- Ambrosia, 445
- Apple(s), baked, 445
  - pudding, 542
  - and celery, salad, 512
  - cobbler, unsalted, 570
  - crumble, using dry skim milk, 546
  - with heart, braised, 537
  - sauce, 445
    - low caloric, 552
  - stewed, 445
  - strudel, allergy (W-E-M), 562
  - tapioca, allergy (W-E-M), 562
- Apricot rice, 570-571
- Asparagus, cream of, soup, 519
- salad, 511
- Aspic, tomato (unsalted), 566
- Avocados, 445
- Bacon, 481
  - baked, 481
  - dressing, 514
  - pan-fried, 481
  - and peanut butter, sandwich, 528
  - and tomato, sandwich, 529
- Baking powder biscuits, 531
- Banana, baked, 445
  - milk shake, 418
- Barley, flour, gruel, 437
  - gruel, 437
- Bavarian cream, 461
- Beans, baked, New England style, 540
  - New York style, 541
  - soup, 534-535
  - Spanish, with liver, 538
- Beef, dried, creamed, 482
  - juice, 486
  - roast, 481
  - scrapped, 482
  - stew, brown, unsalted, 568
  - tea, 486
- Beverage, high protein, 558-559
  - low sodium, 558-559
- Biscuits, baking powder, 531
  - drop, 531
  - rolled oats, allergy (W-E-M), 561
- Bisque, clam, 520
  - oyster, 520
- Blanc mange, chocolate, 543
  - low caloric, 551-552
- Bouillon, 485
  - tomato, jellied, 485
- Bran muffins, 533
- Bread, gluten-free, 563
  - pudding, 457, 543
  - rye, allergy (W-E-M), 560-561
  - spoon, gluten-free, 564
  - unsalted, 569
- Broth, chicken, 486
  - clam, 516
- Brown Betty, 456
- Brownies, rice flour, gluten-free, 564
- Buttermilk, dressing, low caloric, 551
- Butterscotch, sauce, 462-463
  - wafers, allergy (W-M), 561
- Cabbage, salad, 511
- Cake, molasses, 544
  - sponge, rice flour, gluten-free, 564
- Caramel, custard, 457
  - Spanish cream, 461-462
  - syrup, 457
- Carrots, and noodles, creamed, using dry skim milk, 546
  - potatoes and "ham," scalloped, 539
- Celery, and apples, salad, 512
  - cream of, soup, 519-520
  - soup, 517
- Cereal, gruel, high caloric, No. I, 557
  - No. II, 557
- Cheese, cottage, salad, 511-512
  - sandwiches, 528
  - cream, salad, 512
  - sandwiches, 523
  - cream, sandwich, 529

## Cheese—(Continued)

- with eggs, baked, 452
- fondue, 468
  - for diabetic, 553
- with macaroni, baked, 438
  - for diabetic, 554
- in potatoes, stuffed, main dish, 537-538
- and rice, baked, 438
- sauce, 503
  - with eggs, poached, 451-452
  - for gnocchi, 538
  - with noodles, 439
  - rich, 503-504
- soufflé, 467-468
- toast, 527
- toasted, 468, 540
- tomato rabbit, 468
- and vegetables, casserole, 538
- Welsh rabbit, 468
- Chestnut sauce, 503
- Chicken, baby, roast, 484
  - baked, and rice, for diabetic, 553-554
  - boiled, 483
  - broiled, 484
  - broth, 486
  - creamed, 483-484
    - casserole of, 484
    - with mushrooms, 484
  - fricassee, 483
  - fried, 484
  - livers, 484
  - salad, 512
  - sandwiches, 528
  - tabasco (unsalted), 567-568
- Chiffonade dressing, 513
- Chili con carne, 541
- Chocolate, 415
  - blanc mange, 543
  - drops, quick, allergy (W-E), 561
  - eggnog, 415
  - ice cream, 462
  - iced, 415
  - milk, malted, 416
    - shake, high caloric, 557
  - pudding, 570
  - sauce, 463, 570
    - quick, 463
- Chowder, fish, for diabetic, 554
  - using dry skim milk, 545-546
  - vegetable, 535
  - potato, using dry skim milk, 545
  - vegetable, fish, 535
    - milk, 517, 535
- Cinnamon toast, 527
  - unsalted, 569
- Clams, bisque, 520
  - broth, 516
  - steamed, 494
- Club sandwich, 529
- Cobbler, apple, unsalted, 570
- Cocoa, 415
  - iced, 415
  - syrup, 415
    - using dry skim milk, 546
- Codfish, creamed, 493, 541
  - fillets, Florentine, baked, 541
- Coffee, Charlotte, 460
  - ice cream, 462
  - iced, 414
  - instant, 414
  - jelly, 460
- Consommé, Bellevue, 516
  - with gelatin, high caloric, high protein, 556
  - jellied, 485
    - low caloric, 548
- Cookies, molasses, 544
  - rice flour, gluten-free, 564
- Corn, cream of, soup, 520
  - muffins, Southern, gluten-free, 564
  - pone, crisp, allergy (W-E-M), 561
- Corn-meal, muffins, 532
  - and rye muffins, allergy (W-E-M), 561
- Cornstarch pudding, 458
- Cottage cheese salad, 511-512
- Cottage pudding, one-egg, 544
- Crabmeat salad, 512
- Cream, Bavarian, 461
  - custard, 457
  - lemon, 456
  - pineapple, 456
  - sauce, 503
    - allergy (W-E), 562
  - sour, dressing, 514
  - Spanish, 460-461
    - caramel, 461-462
    - mocha, 462
  - tapoca, 458
  - toast, 526
- Creole fish and potatoes, 542
- Creole kidney, 537
- Croustades, 527
- Croutons, 527
- Crumbs, fine dry, 527
  - soft, 527
- Cucumber salad, 511
- Custard, baked, 456-457, 542-543
  - for diabetic, 553
  - low caloric, 552
    - using dry skim milk, 546
  - caramel, 457

**Custard—(Continued)**

- cream, 457
- fluffy, 438
- high caloric, 557
- high protein, 557
- pudding, fruit, 543
- rice, 458
- soft, 457-458

**Dressing, bacon, 514**

- buttermilk, low caloric, 531
- chiffonade, 513
- cooked, low caloric, 531
- cream, sour, 514
- French, 513
- fruit, 513
- unsalted, 508
- mayonnaise, 513
- Roquefort, 513
- Russian, 513-514
- salad, cooked, 513
- fruit, cooked, 513
- spicy, low caloric, 550
- tomato, low caloric, 550-551
- yoghurt, low caloric, 531
- zero salad, low caloric, 551

**Egg(s), baked, with cheese, 452**

- espagnole, 452
- savory, 452
- with spinach, 452
- coddled, 451
- creamed, 433
- hard-cooked, 431
- lemonade, 418
- omelet, foamy, 452
- plain, 452
- poached, 451
- in butter, 451
- with cheese sauce, 451-452
- in milk, 451
- sauce, for fish, 492
- scrambled, 452
- shirred, 452
- stuffed, 451
- salad, 512
- and tuna fish, scalloped, 542
- white, with fruit juice, 558
- with ginger ale and grape juice, 558
- with lemonade, 558

**Eggnog, 415**

- chocolate, 415
- high caloric, 557, 558
- high protein, 558
- low sodium, 558

**Eggnog—(Continued)**

- molasses, 415
- orange, 415

**Feeding, high caloric, high protein, 557****Fish, baked, in foil, in low caloric diet, 550**

- boiled, 492
- broiled, 493
- chowder, for diabetic, 554
- using dry skim milk, 545-546
- vegetable, 535
- creamed, 492-493
- with mushrooms, 493
- creole, and potatoes, 542
- egg sauce, 492
- fillets, baked, 492
- pan-broiled, 492
- pie, 541-543
- poached, 492
- salad, jellied, low caloric, 550
- sandwiches, 528
- scalloped, 493
- tuna, creamed, unsalted, 508

**Frankfurters, with macaroni, 539****French dressing, 513**

- fruit, 513
  - unsalted, 508
- Fruit, custard pudding, 543**
- fresh, compote, 445
  - cup, for diabetic, 533
  - salad, plate, 512
  - gelatin, for diabetic, No. I, 533
  - No. II, 533
  - ice, for diabetic, 553
  - jellied, 480
  - salad, 512
  - juice, with egg white, 558
  - with gelatin, high caloric, high protein, 558-557
  - mixed, salad, 512
  - with rice, baked, 571
  - salad, jellied, 512
  - mixed, 512
  - siberbet, 570
  - whip(s), 455
  - No. I, 455
  - No. II, 456
  - yoghurt beverage, 418
- Frustrade, high caloric, 557**
- mint, 418
  - protein, 557-558

**Gelatin, with consommé, high caloric, high**

- protein, 558
- fruit, for diabetic, No. I, 533
- No. II, 533



**Gelatin—(Continued)**

- with juice, fruit, high caloric, high protein, 556-557
- vegetable, high caloric, high protein, 556-557
- lemon, for diabetic, 552
- orange, for diabetic, 552
- pineapple, for diabetic, 553
- with soup, condensed, high caloric, high protein, 558
- Ginger ale, and grape juice with egg white, 558
- in ice-cream soda, 557
- Gnocchi with cheese sauce, 538
- Goulash, 536
- Grapefruit, broiled, 445
- and orange, salad, 512
- Grape juice, and ginger ale with egg white, 558
- jellied, low-caloric, 552
- Gravy, brown, for roasts, 481
- Green salad, mixed, 511
- Halibut steaks, broiled, 492
- Ham, baked, 481
- broiled, 480
- pan-broiled, 480
- "Ham," potatoes and carrots, scalloped, 539
- Hamburg, baked, 482
- broiled, 480
- Heart, braised, with apples, 537
- fricassée, 537
- Hollandaise sauce, 503
- quick, 503
- Ice cream, chocolate, 482
- coffee, 482
- orange, 482
- soda, ginger ale in, 557
- vanilla, 482
- Italian spaghetti, for diabetic, 554
- Jelly, coffee, 460
- lemon, 460
- low caloric, 552
- orange, 460
- wine, 460
- Johnnycakes, old-fashioned, allergy (W.E.M.), 561
- Juice, beef, 488
- fruit, with egg white, 558
- with gelatin, high caloric, high protein, 556-557
- grape, jellied, low-caloric, 552
- tomato, cocktail (unsalted), 566

**Juice—(Continued)**

- vegetable, with gelatin, high caloric, high protein, 556-557
- Junket, 453
- Kidneys, broiled, 491
- creole, 537
- Lamb, chops, broiled, 490
- roast, 481
- stew, unsalted, 567
- Lemon, cream, 456
- gelatin, for diabetic, 552
- jelly, 460
- low caloric, 552
- Lemonade, 418
- egg, 418
- with egg white, 538
- Lima beans, baked, 541
- Liver, baked, with vegetables, 538
- chicken, 434
- pan-broiled, 491-492
- and rice, loaf, unsalted, 566-567
- and sausage, ring, 537
- stuffed, 536
- with Spanish beans, 539
- Lobster, tails, South African rock, 494
- Macaroni, baked, with cheese, 439
- with tomato, 439
- and cheese, for diabetic, 554
- with frankfurters, 539
- and meat, casserole, 539
- with tomatoes, baked, 539
- Madrilene, jellied, 455
- Marshmallow, and Rice Krispies, squares, allergy (W.E.M.), 562
- Mayonnaise dressing, 513
- Meat, balls, Swedish, 536-537
- loaf, 536
- unsalted, 563
- and macaroni, casserole, 539
- patty (unsalted), 567
- sandwiches, 528
- stew, 536
- for diabetic, 553
- Melons, salad, 512
- Meringues, allergy (W.M.), 562
- Milk, high protein, 558
- malted, chocolate, 416
- high protein, 558
- hot, 416
- molasses, 417
- punch, 418
- shake, 417

- Milk, shake—(Continued)  
 banana, 418  
 chocolate, high caloric, 557  
 high protein, 558  
 molasses, 417  
 toast, 528  
 vegetable chowder, 517, 535  
 and vegetable, soup, low caloric, 549
- Mint fruitade, 418
- Mocha, iced, 415
- Spanish cream, 462
- Molasses, cake, 544  
 cookies, 544  
 eggnog, 415  
 malted milk, 417  
 milk shake, 417  
 mousse, 462
- Mousse, molasses, 462
- Muffins, 531-532  
 bran, 533  
 bran-soy, ketogenic diet, 563  
 corn, Southern, gluten-free, 564  
 corn-meal, 532  
   and rye, allergy (W-E-M), 561  
 plain, 532  
 rice flour, gluten-free, 563-564  
 rich, 532  
 rye and corn-meal, allergy (W-E-M), 561  
 whole-wheat, 532
- Mushrooms, with chicken, creamed, 484  
 cream of, soup, 520  
 creamed, 504  
 with fish, creamed, 493  
 sandwich, hot, 529  
 sautéed, 504
- Noodles, with browned crumbs, 439  
 and carrots, creamed, using dry skim milk, 546  
 with cheese sauce, 439
- Oatmeal, 437
- Oats, rolled, biscuits, allergy (W-E-M), 561
- Omelet, foamy, 452  
 plain, 452
- Onions, buttered, 504  
 cream of, soup, 520
- Orange(s), Charlotte, 460  
 eggnog, 415  
 gelatin, for diabetic, 552  
 and grapefruit, salad, 512  
 ice cream, 462  
 jelly, 460
- Orangeade, 418
- Oysters, buque, 520  
 casino, baked, 494  
 creamed, 493  
 panned, 493  
 scalloped, 493  
 stew, 517
- Partridge, roast, 484
- Peanut butter, and bacon, sandwich, 528  
 sandwich, 528
- Pears, stewed, 446
- Peas, cream of, soup, 520
- Peppermint tapioca, 569-570
- Pie, fish, 511-542
- Pineapple, cream, 456  
 gelatin, for diabetic, 553  
 rice, 571
- Plums, stewed, 446
- Popovers, 569
- Pork, chops, pan-broiled, 480  
 fresh, roast, 481
- Potatoes, baked, 504  
 stuffed, 504  
   carrots and "ham," scalloped, 539  
 chowder, using dry skim milk, 545  
 cream of, soup, 520  
 and fish, creole, 542  
 mashed, 504  
 salad, 511  
   for diabetic, No I, 554  
   No II, 554  
   No III, 554  
 scalloped, 539-540  
   unsalted, 509  
 soup, 517  
 stewed, 504  
 stuffed, cheese in, main dish, 537-538  
 sweet, and apples, casserole, 569
- Prunes, pudding, Scandinavian, 543
- Pudding, apple, baked, 542  
 bread, 457, 543  
 chocolate, 570  
 cornstarch, 458  
 cottage, one-egg, 544  
 custard, fruit, 543  
 Indian, baked, gluten-free, 564  
 prune, Scandinavian, 543  
 rhubarb, baked, 456, 542  
 rice, 543  
 snow, 460  
 fruit, 460
- Parée, vegetable, canned, 519  
 fresh, for cream soups, 518-519
- Rabbit, tomato, 468  
 Welsh, 468



- Soup—(Continued)**  
 onion, cream of, 520  
 pea, cream of, 520  
 potato, 517  
   cream of, 520  
 spinach, cream of, 520  
 tomato, cream of, 520  
 vegetable, 485-486  
   for diabetic, 554
- Spaghetti, 439**  
   Italian, for diabetic, 554  
   Spanish style, 540
- Spanish beans with liver, 538**
- Spanish rice, 540**
- Spinach, 505**  
   cream of, soup, 520  
   with eggs, baked, 452
- Squab, roast, 484**
- Squash, baked, 505**
- Steak(s), broiled, 479-480**  
   halibut, broiled, 492  
   minute, 480  
   pan-broiled, 480  
   savory (unsalted), 567  
   veal, 480
- Stew, beef, brown, unsalted, 568**  
   lamb, unsalted, 567  
   meat, 536  
     for diabetic, 553  
   oyster, 517  
   veal, unsalted, 568
- Swedish meat balls, 536-537**
- Sweetbreads, broiled, 482**  
   creamed, 482
- Sweet potatoes, and apples, casserole, 569**
- Tabasco, chicken (unsalted), 567-568**
- Tapioca, apple, allergy (W-E-M), 562**  
   cream, 458  
   golden, 458  
   peppermint, 569-570
- Tea, 414**  
   beef, 486  
   iced, 414
- Toast, 525-526**  
   cheese, 527  
   cinnamon, 527  
     unsalted, 569  
   cream, 526
- Toast—(Continued)**  
   milk, 526  
   tomato, cream of, 527  
   water, 527
- Tomato(es), aspic (unsalted), 568**  
   baked, 505  
   broiled, 505  
   cream of, soup, 520  
     toast, 527  
   dressing, low caloric, 550-551  
   juice, cocktail (unsalted), 566  
   with macaroni, baked, 439, 539  
   madrilene, low caloric, 548-549  
   rabbit, 468  
   with rice, baked, 438  
   salad, 511  
   stewed, 505
- Tuna fish, creamed, unsalted, 568**  
   and eggs, scalloped, 542  
   loaf, 542
- Turkey, sandwiches, 528**
- Veal, casserole, unsalted, 567**  
   roast, 481  
   steak, 480  
   stew, unsalted, 568
- Vegetable(s), and cheese, casserole, 538**  
   chowder, fish, 535  
     with milk, 517, 533  
   fresh, purée, for cream soups, 518-519  
   juice, with gelatin, high caloric, high protein, 556-557  
   with liver, baked, 536  
   and milk, soup, low caloric, 549  
   mixed, salad, for diabetic, 554-555  
   salad, jellied, 511  
     mixed, 511  
   soup, 485-536  
     for diabetic, 554
- Water, toast, 527**
- Welsh rabbit, 463**
- Whole-wheat muffins, 532**
- Wine, cooler, 419**  
   jelly, 460  
   mulled, 419
- Yoghurt, beverage, fruit, 418**  
   dressing, low caloric, 551

# General Index

Acetest test for diacetic acid in urine, 662

Acetone, as product of fat metabolism, 35

Achlorhydria, 295

Acid(s), fatty, composition, comparative, 31-32

in diet, U. S. household, 32, 33

essential, 31-33

deficiency in diet, 31

*See also individual names*

Acid-base reaction of foods, 648

Acidosis, 26, 67

diabetic, 274

ketone, 35

Acne vulgaris, 332

Acronized process, preservation of poultry from spoilage, 205

ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) therapy, arthritis, rheumatoid, 362

collagen diseases, 364

fevers, 229

Activity as factor in estimation of dietary needs, 115, 118, 119

Adaptation, 115, 118, 119

Adaptation

Adaptation

Adrenal glands, secretion, effect on basal metabolism rate, 50

Adult(s), definition, 186

diet, recommended daily allowances, tables, interpretation and use, 115-119

requirements, ascorbic acid, 85, 99

calcium, 58-59

calories, 115, 116, 118, 119

iron, 62, 69

phosphorus, 58-59

recommended in daily allowances, 141-142

vitamins, A, 75-76

D, 80

Adult(s)—(Continued)

height-weight tables, ideal, 657

life-expectancy increase, 189

nutrition, 186-188

older, dietary requirements, 191-194

calories, 191-192

minerals, 193

protein, 192-193

vitamins, 193-194

food habits, 189-191

indiscretions, nutritional, 191

information about food, publications, 194-195

Agar-agar, 25

Age as factor, in ability to digest fats, 33

in basal metabolism rate, 50

in estimation of dietary needs, 115, 116

in nutrition, studies in diet of children, 177-178

Aged and aging, distinctions, 188-189

Agricultural Research Service, 6

Albanese, A. A., 38

Alcohol, beverages, 411-413, 419

calories, 262

in obesity, restrictions, 265

prohibited, in cirrhosis, 322

in pancreatitis, 324

Alcoholism, chronic, cirrhosis from, 318

polyneuritis from, 244

Alginates, 25

Alkalosis, 67-68

tetany due to, 372

Allergy, in children, 398

classification of allergens, 326

foods, 327

reactions, 200

manifestations, 32



- Ascorbic acid, in diet, recommended daily allowance—(Continued)  
 infant, 164  
 premature, 157  
 women, moderately active, in U.S.A., 118, 119  
 experiments with guinea pigs, 84, 85  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-635  
 in fruits, 441-442  
 functions, 84, 89  
 losses in cooking, 87  
 in low caloric diet, 268  
 measurement, 85  
 nomenclature, official acceptance, 85  
 physiologic significance, 84  
 properties, 85  
 sources in foods, 86-87, 99  
 stability in foods, 87, 99  
 storage, 84-85  
   in liver, 317  
   in tube feedings, 381-382  
   in vegetables, 496  
   for wound healing, 84, 250
- Atherosclerosis, 36, 341-344  
 fat intake, effect on development of, 342  
 pyridoxine (vitamin B<sub>6</sub>), effect on development of, 342
- Atkinson, M., 366
- Atwater, 108
- Avidin, 100
- Avitaminosis, definition, 73
- Babcock, C. G., 215
- Babylonia, nutrition in, 4-5
- Bacon, Roger, 187
- Bacteria, poisoning of food by, 198
- Banting, Frederick C., 400
- Barker, M. H., 318
- Barley, 432  
   for bread, 523
- Basedow's disease, 369
- Basic 7 Foods Groups, 15, 16
- Batters, 530
- Baumann, discovery of iodine in thyroid gland, 62
- Beal, V. A., 174
- Beef, 470-473  
   cuts, 471-472
- Benedict, A. L., pioneer work in nutrition, 5
- Benedict test for sugar in urine, 658-660
- Benben, 244-247  
   atrophic (dry), 245, 246  
   edematous (wet), 245, 246  
   etiology, 245-246  
   experimental work with chickens, 88  
   history, 71  
   incidence, 11, 244-245  
   morbidity and mortality, 11  
   treatment, 246-247
- Berries, preparation, 443
- Berryman, G. H., 261
- Betacarotene, vitamin A activity in, 75
- Beta-hydroxybutyric acid as product of fat metabolism, 35
- Betaine, 98
- Beta-tocopherol, 81
- Beverages, 409-419  
   alcoholic, 411-413  
   buttermilk, 411  
   calories, 262  
   chocolate, 411  
   cocoa, 411  
   coffee *See* Coffee  
   cold, 411  
   in menu, 409-413  
   milk. *See* Milk  
   milk-and-egg, recipes, 415-418  
   potassium content, 644-647  
   recipes, 414-419  
   sodium content, 644-647  
   tea *See* Tea  
   in therapeutic diet, low caloric, 547-548
- Bile, action on foods, 105-106  
   composition, 316  
   production and role of, 315-316
- Blindness, 317
- Biostat process, preservation of poultry from spoilage, 206
- Biotin, 98, 99
- Biscuits, 530-531
- Bisques, 518
- Blackstrap molasses, 20
- Blindness, glare *See* Hemeralopia  
   night *See* Nyctalopia
- Blood, building, iron in, 59  
   circulation, demonstrated by Harvey, 5  
   components, 619-650  
   diseases, 357-360  
     anemia *See* Anemia  
   donors, dietary recommendations for, 360  
   pressure, of men, average, 344  
   red cells, 357  
   sugar concentration, regulatory factors, 276  
   white cells, diseases affecting, 360

- Bone, building, requirements, vitamin D, 77, 79-80, 82  
 growth, calcium and phosphorus storage and replacement, 59
- Botulism, 199-200
- Boys, average weight for height, birth to school age, 654  
 5 to 19 years, 650
- Bran, 524  
 in diet, for constipation, prevention and therapy, ■  
 irritation of sensitive digestive tract, 24
- Bread(s), 522-533  
 biscuits and muffins, recipes, 530-533  
 doughs and batters, 530  
 economy in purchase and use, 125  
 enrichment, 524-525  
 legal requirements, 26, 27  
 exchanges in diet for diabetic, 284  
 grain for, 523-525  
 historical considerations, 522-523  
 making, yeast in, 525  
 in menu, 436  
 quick, 529  
 in therapeutic diets, low sodium, recipes, 569  
 yeast, as foundation for recipes, 525-530  
 sandwiches, 527-529  
 luncheon or supper, 528  
 tea, 529  
 toast, 525-527  
 standards, 525
- Breakfast, basic food patterns, 433  
 cereals, 433-435
- Breast feeding, 153-154  
 "burping," 154  
 colostrum, 154  
 mother's diet, 153-154  
 schedules, 154  
 weaning, 156-157
- Brecht feeding, in cleft palate, 391
- Brewer, W ■, 233
- Bright's disease, 349
- British Medical Association, human requirements for specific nutrients first defined by, 113
- Broths, 484, 486
- Brucellosis, inspection of cattle and goats, state control, 208-209
- Buckwheat, 432  
 grits, in menu, 435
- Bulk ■ diet, modifications for specific conditions, 226
- Bureau of Animal Industry, regulations concerning meat industry, 208
- Burke, ■ S., 141, 142, 149
- Burns, 383-384
- Burping of infant during feeding, 387
- Butter(s), 425-426  
 flavored, for vegetables, 503  
 substitutes, margarine, 30  
 and sugar, mixtures for kidney failure, 354
- Buttermilk, 411
- Cabbage, in salad, 507-508
- Caffeine, in coffee, 410
- Cake(s), calories, 263  
 economy in purchase and use, 125
- Calciferol See Vitamin D
- Calcium, 56-59, 69  
 in basic pattern dietary, 222  
 in body, 56, 58  
 consumption, per capita, United States, 12  
 deficiency, 58  
 of children, studies, 177-178  
 of family, 9  
 in diet, common foods, average servings, 57  
 daily patterns, 61  
 low caloric, 268  
 recommended daily allowance, 58, 60, 116  
 requirements 58-59  
 adults, 58, 193  
 children, 59  
 elementary school age, 175-176  
 infants, 59  
 in lactation, 58  
 in pregnancy 58, 142-144  
 women, moderately active, in U S A., 118, 119  
 in tube feedings, 381-382  
 in tuberculosis, 233  
 in food(s), dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-635  
 sources, 56-58, ■  
 function, 58, 69  
 loss, in cooking of vegetables, 56-57  
 in meat, 478  
 vitamin ■ required for absorption and utilization, 59
- Calcium phosphate calculi, renal, 354-356
- Calculi, renal, 354-356  
 calcium phosphate, dietary treatment, 354-356  
 dietary treatment, 354-356  
 etiology, 354  
 uric acid stones, 356



## Calculi—(Continued)

- urinary, experimental production in animals from vitamin A deficiency, 244
- Calorie(s), basic pattern dietary, 222
  - beverages, 262
    - alcoholic, 262, 412
  - candies, 263
  - definition, 47
  - desserts, 263
  - in diet, per capita, on world basis, 7, 8
    - for cirrhosis, 319, 320
  - in diabetes mellitus, sample prescription diet, 280
  - requirement, cardiac disease, chronic, 335
    - elementary school age, 174-175
    - nephrosclerosis, 351, 352
    - in pregnancy, 141, 148
    - women, moderately active, U.S.A., 118, 119
  - in fish, 488
  - in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641
    - Table 1, 576-634
  - measurement, 47-48
  - fruits, 262, 441
  - high content, and high protein, therapeutic diets, recipes, 555-559
  - low content, therapeutic diets, 547-552
    - beverages, 547-548
    - desserts, 551-552
    - fish, 550
    - meats, 549-550
    - salads, 550-551
    - soups, 548
    - vegetables, 550
  - meat, 478
  - milk, 156, 421
  - nuts, 262
  - recommended daily dietary allowances, 51
  - requirements, in diabetes mellitus, 278
    - in diet, estimation, by Food and Nutrition Board, 114-116
    - in obesity, dietary control, 264
  - sandwiches, 262
  - shellfish, 488
  - "snack" foods, 262-263
  - tube feedings, 381-382
  - vegetables, 498
- Calorimeter, bomb, 47
- Calorimetry, direct and indirect, 48
- Canada, Food Rules, 16
- standards for human dietary needs, 114
- Cancer, stomach, 303-304
- Candies, calories, 263
- Canning, preservation of food by, 204-205
- Cannon, 258
- Carbohydrate(s), 19-27
  - in basic pattern dietary, 222
  - consumption, per capita, United States, 12
  - in diet, for cirrhosis, 319, 320
    - in diabetes mellitus, distribution in day's menus, 278-279
    - ratio to fat and protein, 278
    - sample prescription diet, 280
  - ketogenic, 365
  - low caloric, 268
  - modifications for specific conditions, 228
  - requirements, cardiac disease, chronic, 335
    - nephrosclerosis, 352
  - in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641
    - Table 1, 576-634
  - in fruits, classification (Table 3), 642
  - insoluble, 21-25
  - interrelationships of forms, 25
  - metabolism, 25-27
    - mechanism, 275-276
  - in milk, 156
  - physiologic fuel value, 47
  - polysaccharides, 21
  - requirement(s), in normal metabolism, 26
    - in obesity, dietary control, 264
  - soluble. *See* Sugars
  - sources, natural, 19
  - starch(es). *See* Starch(es)
  - storage in body as adipose tissue, 26
  - sugar(s). *See* Sugar(s)
  - synthesis and breakdown in plant and animal life, 19-20, 24, 25
  - tolerance, test, in diabetes mellitus, 274-275
  - tube feedings, 381-382
  - vegetables, classification (Table 3), 642
  - world use, 19-20
- Cardiac disease, 333-341
  - arteriosclerotic, 333-334
  - atherosclerotic, 334
  - congenital, 333
  - decompensation, 334
  - dietary treatment, 334-341
    - chronic illness, 335-336
    - in compensation, 334
    - decompensation, severe, 335
    - low sodium diets, allowances and restrictions in foods, 338-339

- Cardiac disease, dietary treatment, low sodium diets—(*Continued*)  
 menus, 341  
 preparation of foods, 337  
 seasonings, 337  
 substitutes for salt, 337, 339  
 teaching the patient, 340-341  
 varieties, 336-341  
 principles, 335  
 etiology, 333-334  
 in pregnancy, as dietary complication, 180  
 rheumatic, 333  
 severity of involvement, 334
- Cardiospasm, 300
- Caries, dental, control, fluorine administration, 66  
 incidence, reduction, vitamin D in, 80
- Carotene, conversion to vitamin A in liver, 317  
 vitamin A activity in, 75, 76
- Carrots, in salad, 508
- Cathode rays, destruction of spoilage organisms in foods, 206
- Caviar, 483
- Cecil, R. L., 308
- Cederquist, D. C., 264
- Celery, in salad, 508
- Celiac disease, 394-396
- Cellulose(s), 21, 22  
 in diet, 23-24  
 as digestive aid, 108-109  
 in foods, 23-24  
 in vegetables, 498
- Cephalin, 35
- Cereals (and products), 430-439  
 basic pattern for breakfast, 433, 434  
 breakfast, 433-435  
 recipes, 437  
 deinfestation by irradiation, 206  
 in diet of infants, 164  
 digestibility, 433  
 economy in purchase and use, 125  
 enrichment required by law, 37  
 food value, 432  
 historical considerations, 430-431  
 in menu, 433-436  
 origin of word, 19  
 porridge-type, preparation, 436-437  
 preparation, 436-437  
 types, 431-432
- Charles Pfizer & Co., biostat process for preservation of poultry from spoilage, 206
- Cheese, 464-468  
 cheddar, 464
- Cheese—(*Continued*)  
 cookery principles, 467  
 cottage, 464-465  
 cream, 465  
 digestibility, 466  
 food value, 465-466  
 luxury, 465  
 in menu, 466-467  
 recipes, 467-468  
 family-size, inexpensive, 537-538  
 in salads, recipes, 511-512  
 types, 464-465
- Chemicals, as preservatives of food, 205  
 spoilage of food by, 201
- Chicken(s), uses as food, 473-474
- Child Research Center, Denver, 184
- Children, crippled, nutrition problems, 391-394  
 cerebral palsy, 392-394  
 cleft palate and lip, 391-392  
 diet, elementary school, 173-176  
 requirements, 174-176  
 high school age, 176-177  
 preschool, 170-173  
 establishment of good habits, 170-173  
 requirements, 171-172  
 recommended daily allowances, 116  
 requirements, ascorbic acid, 85  
 calcium, 59  
 iron, 62  
 phosphorus, 59  
 vitamin D, 80  
 school lunch program, 181-183  
 benefits, 183  
 organization, 181-182  
 types, 182  
 studies, 177-181  
 age as influence, 177-178  
 causes of poor food intake, 180-181  
 characteristics of adequate and inadequate nourishment, 180, 181  
 culture patterns, 180  
 income levels, 180  
 recommended daily dietary allowances, 177-178  
 vitamin intake, 178-180
- diseases, 394-398  
 allergy, 398  
 celiac disease, 394-396  
 diabetes mellitus, 290-291, 397-398  
 epilepsy, 398  
 galactosemia, 397  
 nephrosis, 394  
 pancreatic insufficiency, 396

- Children, diseases—(Continued)  
   phenylketonuria, 396-397  
   sick, nutrition problems, 385-387  
 Chinese dietary habits and patterns, 136-137  
 Chittenden, H. H., 5, 45  
 Chlorine, in body, 56  
   in diet, 69  
 Chlorosis from iron losses, 62  
 Chlorotetracycline, use in preservation of foods, 205  
 Chocolate, 411  
   recipes, 415  
 Cholecystectomy, postoperative diet, 323  
 Cholecystokinin, 315, 323, 379  
 Cholelithotomy, postoperative diet, 323  
 Cholesterol, 36  
   in foods, 643  
   role in metabolism, 324  
   vitamin D<sub>3</sub> from irradiation of, 78  
 Choline, 35, 98, 99  
   role in metabolism, 316  
 Chowders, recipes, 517  
 Chyme, 105, 107  
 Cirrhosis, 318-323  
   complications, coma, hepatic, 322-323  
   varices, esophageal, 322  
   dietary treatment, 319-322  
   feeding problem, 322  
   etiology, 318  
   symptoms, 318-319  
 Citrin (vitamin P), 87-88  
 Citrovorum factor (CF), 97  
 Citrus fruits, preparation, 444  
 Clams, 489  
 Clark, Faith, 9  
 Climate, effect on metabolism, 53  
   as factor in estimation of dietary needs, 115, 118, 119  
*Clostridium botulinum*, transmission by food, 197-200  
 Clothing and housing, effect on metabolism by regulation of body temperature, 53  
 Cobalt, in diet, ■■■  
   as trace element, 97  
 Cocoa, 411  
   iced, 411  
   recipes, 415  
 Cod-liver oil, therapy, rickets, 76-77, 253  
 Coffee, 410  
   caffeine in, 410  
   decaffeinated, 410  
   iced, 411  
   preparation, 413-414  
 Coffee—(Continued)  
   recipes, 414  
   tannin in, 410  
 Colic, 155, 387  
 Colitis, 307-308  
 Collagen diseases, 364  
 Colostomy, for cancer of bowel, 313  
 Colostrum, 154  
 Coma, hepatic, ■■ cirrhosis, 322-323  
   dietary treatment, 323  
   from ketosis in diabetes mellitus, 289-290  
 Constipation, 311-313  
   atonic, 311-312  
   definition, 311  
   etiology, 108, 311  
   with gallbladder disease, dietary treatment, 323-324  
   infant, 155, 388  
   in pellagra, 247  
   prevention, cellulose for bulk, 24  
   spastic, 312  
   treatment, cellulose for bulk, 24  
   dietary, 312  
   nursing problems, 312-313  
 Contaminants in foods, poisoning from, 200  
 Cook, Edward, 213  
 Cook, (Capt.) James, 249  
 Cooking, effect on starches, 22-23  
   preservation of food by, 203-204  
 Coons, C. M., 32  
 Copper, as catalytic agent in synthesis of iron, 61  
   in diet, 69  
   role of liver in metabolism of, 317  
 Cornua, F. ■■, 332  
 Corn (maize), 432  
   meal, enrichment levels required by law, 28, 27  
   in menu, 435  
 Corn-eaters' disease, 247  
 Cortisone therapy, arthritis, rheumatoid, 362  
   collagen diseases, 364  
*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, transmission by food, 197  
 Council on Foods, American Medical Association, on vitamin D in milk, 80  
 Crabs, 490  
 Cream, 422  
   sour, dressings, 510  
 Crumbs, for recipes, 527  
 Crustaceans, 488  
 Cucumbers, in salad, 508

- Cyclamates for artificial sweetening, 427-428
- Cystine, 38, 39
- Dahl, L. K., 344
- Dam, experimental work with vitamin K, 81-82
- Daniel and 3 companions in Babylonia, dietary experiment, 4-5
- Davidson, C. S., 322
- Davis and McCollum, recognition of vitamin A, 73
- Death, from botulism, 199  
See also Mortality
- Decompensation, 334, 335
- Deficiencies in nutrition, 235-258  
anemia, 255-256  
clinical signs, 257  
dental caries, 253-255  
diagnosis, early, 256-258  
general concept, 235-236  
goiter, simple or endemic, 256  
hemorrhagic disease of infants, 255  
kwashiorkor, 239, 241  
pellagra, 247-248  
prevalence of, 7-10  
United States, 7, 9  
protein, 236-239, 241  
surveys, United States, 9  
thiamine, 244-247  
treatment, 256-258  
vitamin, A, 241-244
- Dehydration, attention to, in prescribing preoperative diet, 373  
of body, 110-111
- Delivery, diet after, 150
- Dental caries, 253-255  
etiology, 253, 254  
incidence, 253  
prophylaxis, 254-255
- Dericks, V. C., 313
- Dermatomyositis, 364
- Desserts, 454-463  
calories, 263  
frozen, preparation, 462  
recipes, 462  
functions, 454  
gelatin, preparation, 459-460  
recipes, 460-462  
recipes, 455-463  
custards, 456-458  
family-size, inexpensive, 542-544
- Desserts, recipes—(Continued)  
fruits, 455-458  
gelatin, 460-462  
ice cream, 462  
puddings, 458  
prepared, 458-459  
sauces, 462-463  
serving, general rules, 454-455  
therapeutic diets, low caloric, 551-552  
low sodium, recipes, 569-571
- Detoxification by liver, 317
- Dextrin, in formula for infant feeding, 158
- Dextrins, 21, 23
- Dextrose See Glucose
- Diabetes mellitus, 272-292  
body changes, physiologic explanation, 275-277  
glucose in blood and urine, 275-276  
ketone bodies in blood and urine, 276-277  
in children, 290-291, 397-398  
definition, 272  
diagnosis, tests, 273-275  
dietary, 274-275  
urinalysis, 273-274  
dietary treatment, 277-285  
caloric requirements, 278  
carbohydrate distribution in day's diet, 278-279  
chemical regulation of blood-sugar levels, 277  
clinical control vs "free" diet, 277, 282, 285  
foods allowed, avoided or used sparingly, 279  
"free" or nonrestricted, 282, 285  
general principles, 279  
moderate control, 277-278  
planning and calculating, 280-285  
chemical control, 280-281  
meals and exchange lists, 231-234  
variations in food composition, 281  
prescriptions, 278-280  
calculation of quantities, 231  
sample, 280  
ratio of protein, fat and carbohydrate, 278  
recipes, 552-555  
emergencies, coma, 289-290  
insulin reactions, 290  
surgery, 290  
etiology, 272-273  
insulin therapy, 278, 285-289  
administration, 661-664  
equipment, care of, 664

- Diabetes mellitus, insulin therapy, equipment—(Continued)**  
 sterilization, 663  
 injection, 663, 664  
 loading syringe, 661, 663-664  
 crystalline zinc, 286  
 globin, 278-279, 288  
 mixtures of dosage, 664  
 NPH and Lente, 278, 287  
 protamine zinc, 278, 286-287  
 regular (unmodified), 278, 286  
*in pregnancy*, 150, 291  
 prognosis, 292  
 symptoms, 273  
 teaching patient, 291-292  
 tests, diagnostic, 273-275  
   *in management of condition*, 658-660  
     diabetic acid in urine, 660, 662  
     sugar in urine, 658-660  
       Benedict, 658-660  
     tolbutamide (Orinase) therapy, 289  
**Diabetic acid from fat metabolism**, 35  
**Diarrhea**, 305  
   etiology, 108, 305  
   infants, 155, 387-388  
   *in pellagra*, 247  
   treatment, dietary, 305  
     pectin, 25  
**Dieckman, W J**, 143  
**Diet(s), acid and alkaline ash, in kidney stones**, 356  
   adaptations, cancer of stomach, 304  
   allowances, recommended, 116  
   bland, foods allowed and avoided, 302  
   calories, requirements, estimation, by Food and Nutrition Board, 114-116  
   cellulose *in*, 23-24  
   children *See* Children, diet  
   convalescent, 223, 224  
   creatine-creatinine free, *in muscular dystrophy*, 364  
   after delivery, 150  
   elimination, *in allergy tests*, 328-329  
   faddist, and nutritional adequacy, *in obesity*, 265-267  
   family, need for improvement, 9  
   foundation, 15  
   "gluten-free," *in celiac disease*, 395-396  
     for sprue, 309-311  
   habits and patterns (regional, national and cultural), 128-139, 585  
     adaptations *in selections of food in pregnancy*, 146-147  
     Armenians, 135-136  
   Diet, habits and patterns—(Continued)  
     Chinese, 136-137  
     favorite national and regional dishes, 138-139  
     Greeks, 135-136  
     Hungarians, 135  
     Italians, 134-135  
     Japanese, 137  
     Jews, 132-134  
     Mexicans, 137-138  
     Polish groups, 135  
     Portuguese, 138  
   as problem *in planning therapeutic diet*, 216  
   Puerto Ricans, 138  
   significance, 128-130  
   Slavic groups, 135  
   studies *in nutrition of children*, 180  
   Turkish groups, 135-136  
   United States, 130-132  
   high caloric, colitis, 307  
     for underweight, 270  
   high carbohydrate, cirrhosis, 319-321  
     hepatitis, infectious, 318, 319  
   high protein, celiac disease, 394-395  
     cirrhosis, 319-321  
     colitis, 307  
     glomerulonephritis, chronic, 351  
     hepatitis, infectious, 318  
     obesity, 267-269  
   high vitamin, cirrhosis, 321-322  
   income as factor *in nutrition*, 180  
   infants, 166-167  
   Karrell, *in severe decompensation*, 335  
   ketogenic, for epilepsy, 365-366  
   *in labor*, 150  
   *in lactation*, 150-151, 153-154  
     menu for 1 day, 151  
     requirements, 151  
     supply of mother's milk, 150  
   light, *in convalescence*, 223, 224  
   liquid, fever, of short duration, 229-230  
     full, 223-225  
       *in poliomyelitis, acute*, 230-231  
   low calcium, moderately, *in kidney stones*, 355  
   low caloric, reducing, 265-269  
   low carbohydrate, for obesity, 267-269  
   low cholesterol, *in cardiovascular disease*, 343  
   low fat, allowances and restrictions, 323  
     bland, *in pancreatitis*, 324  
     *in celiac disease*, 394-395  
     moderately low, *in cirrhosis*, 319-321  
       *in hepatitis*—

**Diet, low fat—(Continued)**

- very low, bland foods, 324
  - in cardiovascular disease, 343
- low phosphorus, in kidney stones, 355
- low protein, in glomerulonephritis, chronic, 351, 352
- low purine, moderately low, in gout, 371
- low residue, in colitis, 308
  - moderately low, intestinal diseases, 306
  - very low, intestinal diseases, 306
- low sodium, in cardiac disease, 336-339
  - menu, 341
  - teaching the patient, booklets, 340
  - foods allowed and restricted, 338-339
  - in glomerulonephritis, chronic, 351, 352
  - moderately low, in cardiac disease, 336, 337
    - in vascular disease, 344
  - in vascular disease, 344
  - very low, in cardiac disease, 337, 340
  - in hypertension, 346
- needs, estimation in meal planning for family, 113-114
- postoperative, 375-383
  - cholecystectomy, 323
  - cholelithotomy, 323
  - complications in recovery, 375
  - dumping syndrome, 377-379
  - gastro-intestinal-tract operations, special routines, 376-379
  - general considerations, 375
  - surgery, of gallbladder, 379
    - for hemorrhoids, 379
    - of mouth and throat, 380
    - of rectum, 379
    - of stomach or duodenum, 376-377
  - tonsillectomy, 379-380
  - tube feedings, 380-383
    - nursing problems, 383
- in pregnancy *See* Pregnancy, diet
- preoperative, 373-375
  - general considerations, 374-375
  - symptoms requiring attention, 373-374
- problems of transplanted peoples, 138
- reducing, low-caloric, 265-269
- soft, 223-225
  - in intestinal diseases, 306
- as therapy, 220-227
  - anemia, hemorrhagic, 358-359
    - macrocytic, 360
  - nutritional, 358-359
  - arthritis, 361-363
  - burns, 384
  - calculi, renal, 354-356

**Diet, as therapy—(Continued)**

- cardiac disease. *See* Cardiac disease, dietary treatment
- celiac disease, 394-396
- cirrhosis, 319-322
- colitis, 307-308
- coma, hepatic, 323
- constipation, 312
  - with gallbladder disease, 323-324
- diarrhea, 305
- dumping syndrome, 377-379
- epilepsy, 365-366
- fevers, chronic, 232-234
- fibrosis, cystic, of pancreas, 396
- glomerulonephritis, acute, 350
- chronic, 350-351
- gout, 371-372
- hepatitis, infectious, 318
- in hospital, adequacy, nutritional, 227
  - basic pattern, 221, 222
  - menu, requirements, 221
  - modifications for specific conditions, 225-226
  - objectives, 225-226
  - progressive diets, 221, 223-225
    - full liquid, 225
    - menus, typical, 224
    - light or convalescent, 223, 224
    - soft, 225
- hypertension, 345-346
- hypoglycemia, spontaneous, 368-369
- infections, 232-234
- kidney failure, 353-354
- Ménère's syndrome, 366
- nephrosis, in children, 394
- obesity, 264-265
- pancreatic insufficiency, 396
- pancreatitis, 324-325
- poliomyelitis, 230-232
- psychological factors, 215-217
- recipes *See* Recipes, therapeutic diets
- responsibility in use of, 213-214
- rheumatic fever, 230
- tuberculosis, 232-234
- typhoid fever, 230
- underweight, 269-271
- vitamins, in foods, pattern for 1 day, 95-96

**Dietetics, history and development, 213****Digestibility of foods, 108, 109****Digestion, 101-112****absorption of food, 106-107****definition, 101****ease of, 108****effect on starches, 22-23**

## Digestion—(Continued)

- enzymes in, 101, 105
- factors affecting, 108-109
- in intestine, large, 107-108
- small, 105-106
- juices, amount produced daily, 110
- diagram and summary, 104, 105
- See also individual names
- mastication, 108
- metabolism, of cells, 111-112
  - intermediary, 109-111
    - dehydration, 110-111
    - nutrients, transport and storage, 109
    - water, in body fluids, 110, 111
    - relation to body function, 109-111
- in mouth, food changes, 101-102, 105
- organs, diagram, 104
- pathway, 294-295
- quantity of food as factor, 108
- in stomach, 102-105
  - enzymes, 102-104
  - exit of food from, 104-105
  - juices, 102, 105
- Dilantin Sodium therapy, epilepsy, 365
- Disaccharidase, action in digestion, 105
- Diverticulitis, 313-314
- Diverticulosis, 313
- Doughs, 530
- Dowdell, W., 227
- Dressing(s), cooked, 510
  - French, 509-510
  - mayonnaise, 510
  - for salads, 509-510
  - recipes, 513-514
- obesity, 283-284
- Ducks, as food, 473
- Dumping syndrome as postoperative complication, 377
  - dietary treatment, 377-379
- Duodenum, surgery of, postoperative diet, 376-377
- Dust, on food, transmission of infection, 198
- Dysentery, bacilli, transmission by food, 197
  - infants, 388
- Dystrophy, muscular, 364
- Eating, excessive, indigestion from, 301
  - rapid, indigestion from, 301
  - self-feeding aids, in cerebral palsy, 392, 393
  - nutritional, 238
- Education in nutrition, 182-183
  - community programs, 16-17
  - nursing services, role of, 16-17
  - teaching guides, 13-16
  - "Basic 7 Food Groups," 15, 16
  - daily food plan, 13-14
- Eggs, 448-453
  - allergic reactions to, 331
  - composition, 448
  - cooking principles, 450-451
  - digestibility, 448-449
  - economy in purchase and use, 125
  - fish, 487-488
  - food value, 448
  - in menu, 449-450
  - and milk, beverages, recipes, 415-418
  - poached, 449, 450
  - recipes, 451-453
  - in salads, 508
  - yolk, in diet, of infant, 165
- Egypt, ancient, nutrition in, 4
- Eijkman, experimental work in beriberi, 88
- Elvehjem, experimental work with niacin, 93
  - isolation of niacin from liver concentrates, 94
- Elwanger, *Pleasure of the Table*, quotation, 454
- Emotions, strains, indigestion from, 301
- Enamel, mottled, 255
- Energy, expenditure, measurement, 48
  - and heat, 46-47
  - metabolism, 48-53
  - requirements of infants, 159
- Enzymes, in digestion, action of, 101, 105
  - gastric, 102-104
  - intestinal, 105, 106
  - nomenclature, 101
  - pancreatic, 105
  - spoilage of food by, 201
- Epilepsy, 364-366
  - in children, 398
  - treatment, drugs, 365
  - ketogenic diet, 365-366
- Eppright, E. S., 177
- Erepsin, 41
- Ergosterol, 36
  - calciferol from irradiation of, 78
- Ergot poisoning, 200
- Esophagus, varices, with cirrhosis, 322

- Esters, 33
- Evans, recognition of vitamin E, 81
- Examination, medical, measurement of nutritional status, 9-10
- Exercise, and obesity, relation, 261-262
- Experimental method, dawn of, 5
- Extracts, use in flavoring food, 428
- Eyes, disorders, from riboflavin deficiency, 91, 99
- Fads and fallacies, dietary, avoidance of, 125-127
- FAO *See* Food and Agriculture Organization
- Farina, enrichment levels required by law, 26
- Fasting, prolonged, effect on total metabolic rate, 52
- Fat(s), 425-426  
   of body, as aid in regulation of temperature, 35  
   protection from mechanical injury, 35  
   support to vital organs, 35  
   classification, 30-31  
   composition, 31-32  
     per capita, United States, 12  
   concentration, 35  
   cooking, temperature control, 34-35  
   definition, 30  
   in diet, 29-30  
     American, 29  
     Asian and European, 29  
     basic pattern, 222  
     catharsis, 319, 320  
     diabetes mellitus, ratio in carbohydrate and protein, 278  
     sample prescription diet, 280  
   household, 32  
   intake, effect on development of atherosclerosis, 342  
   ketogenic, 365  
   low caloric, 268  
   modifications for specific conditions, 226  
   purposes, 29-30  
   requirements, cardiac disease, chronic, 335  
     nephrosclerosis, 352  
     tube feedings, 381-382  
   digestion and absorption, 33-35  
     variations, 33-34  
   emulsification in intestines, 33  
   exchanges in diet for diabetic, 284  
   from fatty acids, 31-33  
   in fish, 483
- Fat(s)—(Continued)  
   in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
     Table 1, 576-634  
   hard, 30  
   homogenization, 30  
   hydrogenation, 30  
   metabolism, 35  
     intermediate products in diseases, 35  
   in milk, 156  
   oxidation, 35  
   physiologic fuel value, 47  
   rancidity, destruction of vitamin A, 76  
   requirement, in obesity, dietary control, 264  
   saturated and unsaturated, 31  
   in shellfish, 486  
   soft, 30  
   storage in body, 35  
   tissues of body, storage of vitamin E in, 81  
   transformation of surplus carbohydrate in body into adipose tissue, 26  
   visible and invisible, 30  
   *See also individual names*
- Fatigue, indigestion from, 301
- Feces, elimination of minerals, 69
- Human Development, Yellow Springs, Ohio, 184
- Fever(s), chronic, therapy, diet, 232-234  
   definition, 229  
   rheumatic, 333  
   of short duration, dietary treatment, 229-232  
     metabolic changes, 229  
   therapy, antibiotics, 229  
   hormones, 229
- Fiber, in food, dietary analysis, Table 1, 576-634
- Fish, composition, 498  
   digestibility, 490  
   economy in purchase and use, 125  
   eggs, 487-488  
   food value, 487-488  
   liver, vitamin A in, 76  
     vitamin D in, 80  
   in menu, 490  
   preservation from spoilage, use of antibiotics, 206  
   recipes, 491-493  
     family-size, inexpensive, 541-542





- Foods, selection—(Continued)**  
 and preparation *See* Selection and preparation of food  
 sodium content, 644-647  
 spoilage, 200-202  
   by animals and insects, 201-202  
   chemical, 201  
   enzymic, 201  
   microbial, 200-201  
   physical causes, 201  
 stomach evacuation time for various items, 103, 104  
 symbolic significance apart from nutritive value, 215
- Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO),**  
 emphasis on nutrition, 7  
 formation of, 6  
 search for additional sources of protein, 45
- Food and Drug Act (1906),** initiation and passage, 209
- Food and Drug Administration, inspection**  
 of foods, 201  
 problems and methods, 209-210  
 public health safeguarded by, 126  
 regulations, use of antibiotics in preservation of foods, 205-206  
   of use of chemicals as preservatives of foods, 205
- Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, amendments,** recent, 209  
 initiation and passage, 209  
 regulations, additives to foods, 207  
 protection of consumer of foods, 207-208
- Food and Nutrition Board, National Research Council, Recommended Dietary Allowances,** adults, older, 191  
 ascorbic acid, 85, 99  
 calories, 114-116  
 children, 177-178  
 establishment of, 6  
 first publication, 6, 113-114  
 nutrients in basic pattern dietary, 221, 222  
 objectives, 114  
 table, 116  
 thiamine, 90-91  
 vitamins, 73  
 studies in nutrition of children, 177-181  
   age as influence, 177-178  
   causes of poor food intake, 180-181  
   characteristics of adequate and inadequate nourishment, 180, 181
- Food and Nutrition Board, studies in nutrition of children—(Continued)**  
 income levels and cultural patterns, 180  
   vitamin  $\square$  intake, 178-180
- Food and People** publications by UNESCO, 7
- Formula feeding** *See* Infants, feeding, formula
- Freezing, preservation of food by,** 203  
 spoilage of food by, 201
- French dressing,** 509-510
- Friedenwald, V. E.,** 327
- Frogs' legs,** 490
- Frolich and Holst, experimental scurvy in**  
 guinea pigs, 84
- Fructose (levulose, fruit sugar),** 20, 105, 106
- Fructosuria,** 274
- Fruit(s),** 440-446  
 calories, 262  
 canned, 446  
 carbohydrate content, classification (Table 3), 842  
 citrus, preparation, 444-445  
 concentrates, frozen, 440-442  
   preparation, 444  
 cooked, recipes, 445-446  
 in diet, of infant, 164-165  
 digestibility, 441-442  
 dried, 446  
 economy in purchase and use, 124  
 exchanges in diet for diabetic, 283  
 food value, 441-442  
 fresh, pesticide chemical residues on, Government regulation, 208  
   preparation, 443-445  
 frozen, 446  
 juices, canned, 446  
   and frozen, 418-419  
   as cold beverage, 411  
   frozen concentrates, preparation, 444  
 in menu, 442-443  
 raw, recipes, 445  
 in salads, 508, 509  
   recipes, 512
- Fuel values, physiologic, in foods,** 47-48
- Fungi, poisoning from eating,** 200
- Funk, proposal of term "vitamine,"** 72
- Furstenberg, A. C.,** 368
- Galactose,** 105, 106
- Galactosemia,** 397
- Galen, experimental work,** 5
- Gallbladder, disease,** 323-324  
 functions, 315-317

- Digestion—(Continued)  
   enzymes in, 101, 105  
   factors affecting, 108-109  
   in intestine, large, 107-108  
     small, 105-108  
   juices, amount produced daily, 110  
     diagram and summary, 104, 105  
   *See also individual names*  
   mastication, 108  
   metabolism, of cells, 111-112  
     intermediary, 109-111  
       dehydration, 110-111  
       nutrients, transport and storage, 109  
       water, in body fluids, 110, 111  
       relation to body function, 109-111  
   in mouth, food changes, 101-102, 105  
   organs, diagram, 104  
   pathway, 294-295  
   quantity of food as factor, 108  
   in stomach, 102-105  
     enzymes, 102-104  
     exit of food from, 104-105  
     juices, 102, 105  
 Dilantin Sodium therapy, epilepsy, 365  
 Disaccharidase, action in digestion, 105  
 Diverticulitis, 313-314  
 Diverticulosis, 313  
 Doughs, 530  
 Dowdell, W., 227  
 Dressing(s), cooked, 510  
   French, 509-510  
   mayonnaise, 510  
   for salads, 509-510  
     recipes, 513-514  
   sour-cream, 510  
   for vegetables, 502-504  
 Drug therapy, complications, in tuberculo-  
   sis, 234  
   obesity, 263-264  
 Ducks, as food, 473  
 Dumping syndrome as postoperative com-  
   plication, 377  
   dietary treatment, 377-379  
 Duodenum, surgery of, postoperative diet,  
   376-377  
 Dust, on food, transmission of infection,  
   198  
 Dysentery, bacilli, transmission by food,  
   197  
   infants, 388  
 Dystrophy, muscular, 364  
  
 Eating, self-feeding aids—(Continued)  
   for handicapped, 362, 363  
 Economy in menus and marketing, 124-125  
 Edema, attention to, in prescribing preop-  
   erative diet, 374  
   nutritional, 238  
 Education in nutrition, 182-183  
   community programs, 16-17  
   nursing services, role of, 16-17  
   teaching guides, 13-16  
     "Basic 7 Food Groups," 15, 16  
     daily food plan, 13-14  
 Eggs, 448-453  
   allergic reactions to, 331  
   composition, 448  
   cooking principles, 450-451  
   digestibility, 448-449  
   economy in purchase and use, 125  
   fish, 487-488  
   food value, 448  
   in menu, 449-450  
   and milk, beverages, recipes, 415-418  
   poached, 449, 450  
   recipes, 451-453  
   in salads, 508  
   yolk, in diet, of infant, 185  
 Egypt, ancient, nutrition in, 4  
 Eijkman, experimental work in beriberi, 88  
 Elvehjem, experimental work with niacin,  
   93  
   isolation of niacin from liver concen-  
   trates, 94  
 Elwanger, *Pleasure of the Table*, quotation,  
   454  
 Emotions, strains, indigestion from, 301  
 Enamel, mottled, 255  
 Energy, expenditure, measurement, 48  
   and heat, 46-47  
   metabolism, 46-53  
   requirements of infants, 159  
 Enzymes, in digestion, action of, 101, 105  
   gastric, 102-104  
   intestinal, 105, 106  
   nomenclature, 101  
   pancreatic, 105  
   spoilage of food by, 201  
 Epilepsy, 364-368  
   in children, 398  
   treatment, drugs, 365  
     ketogenic diet, 365-366  
 Eppright, E. S., 177  
 Erepsin, 41  
 Ergosterol, 36  
   calciferol from irradiation of, 78  
 Ergot poisoning, 200  
 Esophagus, varices, with cirrhosis, 322



## Fish—(Continued)

- in salads, 508
- recipes, 512
- salt-water, 487
- selection and care, 491
- therapeutic diets, low caloric, 550
- Fish-liver-oil concentrates therapy, hemeralopia, 242

- nyctalopia, 242
- rickets, 253

## Flavorings, 428-429

Flour, enrichment, legislation requiring, 26, 27, 524

- in therapeutic diets, combinations as substitutes for wheat flour, 560-563
- wheat, substitutes for, in therapeutic diets, 560-563

- white, enrichment, in Newfoundland, 10
- in United States, Hawaii and Puerto Rico, 11

- whole-wheat, parts of grain in, 23

Fluid(s), balance in body, maintenance by postoperative diet, 375

- in diet, in kidney stones, 356
- requirements, of infants, 159
- nephrosclerosis, 353

- restriction, in glomerulonephritis, acute, 350

Fluorine, addition to water supply, in prophylaxis of dental caries, 255

- administration in control of dental caries in children, 66

- deficiency in water supply, contributing to dental caries, 253

- in diet, 65-66

- mottled enamel from excess of, 65

Fluoroscopy in diagnosis, gastro-intestinal tract diseases, 295

- peptic ulcer, 296

Fluorosis, dental, 255

Fogelman, M. J., 227

Folacin (folic acid), 97, 99

- deficiency, megaloblastic anemia from, 359

- therapy, anemia, megaloblastic, in pregnancy, 147-148

Folic acid See Folacin

Folnic acid, 97

allergic reactions, 226

allowances and restrictions in diet(s), cardiovascular disease, 343

## Foods, allowances and restrictions—(Cont.)

- cirrhosis, 321

- kidney stones, 355

- postoperative, dumping syndrome, 378-379

- progressive hospital, 223

- appearance in serving patient, psychological effect, 216-217

- bulk, for promotion of normal intestinal motility, 108

- classification, by Institute of Home Economics, 281

- cholesterol content, 643

- composition, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641

- Table 1, 574-635

- variations, calculation in dietary treatment of diabetes mellitus, 281

- consumption, per capita, United States, 12

- cost, adaptations in selections in pregnancy, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

in diet, 146-147

- in obesity, 267

- flavor, affected by method of preparation, 337

- grading, Government standards, 208

- habits, changes, in United States, 11-13

- handlers, transmission of infection, 193

- idiosyncrasies to certain items, indigestion from, 301

- infections from, 197-198

- laws See Laws for food protection

- legislative control, enrichment of breads, flour and cereals, 26, 27

- patterns (regional, national and cultural). See Diet, habits and patterns

- in peace maintenance, 6-7

- poisoning, incidence, 197

- See Poisoning from food, 198-200

- potassium content, 644-647

- preparation, improper, indigestion from, 301

- methods, effect on flavor, 337

- preservation See Preservation of Foods

- protective, in diet, 13

- satiety value, in obesity, dietary control, 265

- scarcity, as international problem, 8-7

- selection, improper, indigestion from, 300-301

- Foods, selection—(Continued)**  
 and preparation *See* Selection and preparation of food  
 sodium content, 644-647  
 spoilage, 200-202  
   by animals and insects, 201-202  
   chemical, 201  
   enzymic, 201  
   microbial, 200-201  
   physical causes, 201  
 stomach evacuation time for various items, 103, 104  
 symbolic significance apart from nutritive value, 215
- Food and Drug Act (1906), initiation and passage, 209**
- Food and Drug Administration, inspection of foods, 201**  
 problems and methods, 209-210  
 public health safeguarded by, 126  
 regulations, use of antibiotics in preservation of foods, 205-206  
   of use of chemicals as preservatives of foods, 205
- Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, amendments, recent, 209**  
 initiation and passage, 209  
 regulations, additives to foods, 207  
   protection of consumer of foods, 207-208
- Food and Nutrition Board, National Research Council, Recommended Dietary Allowances, adults, older, 191**  
 ascorbic acid, 85, 99  
 calories, 114-116  
 children, 177-178  
 establishment of, 6  
 first publication, 6, 113-114  
 nutrients in basic pattern dietary, 221, 222  
 objectives, 114  
 table, 116  
 thiamine, 90-91  
 vitamins, 73  
 studies in nutrition of children, 177-181  
   age as influence, 177-178  
   causes of poor food intake, 180-181  
   characteristics of adequate and inadequate nourishment, 180, 181
- Food and Nutrition Board, studies in nutrition of children—(Continued)**  
 income levels and cultural patterns, 180  
   vitamin C intake, 178-180
- Food and People publications by UNESCO, 7**
- Formula feeding *See* Infants, feeding, formula**
- Freezing, preservation of food by, 203**  
 spoilage of food by, 201
- French dressing, 509-510**
- Friedenwald, V. E., 327**
- Frogs' legs, 490**
- Frolich and Holst, experimental scurvy in guinea pigs, 106**
- Fructose (levulose, fruit sugar), 20, 103, 106**
- Fructosuria, 274**
- Fruit(s), 440-446**  
 calories, 262  
 canned, 446  
 carbohydrate content, classification (Table 3), 642  
 citrus, preparation, 444-445  
 concentrates, frozen, 440-442  
   preparation, 444  
 cooked, recipes, 445-446  
 in diet, of infant, 184-185  
 digestibility, 441-442  
 dried, 446  
 economy in purchase and use, 124  
 exchanges in diet for diabetic, 283  
 food value, 441-442  
 fresh, pesticide chemical residues on, Government regulation, 208  
   preparation, 443-445  
 frozen, 446  
 juices, canned, 446  
   and frozen, 418-419  
   as cold beverage, 411  
   frozen concentrates, preparation, 444  
 in menu, 442-443  
 raw, recipes, 445  
 in salads, 508, 509  
 recipes, 512
- Fuel values, physiologic, in foods, 47-48**
- Fungi, poisoning from eating, 200**
- Funk, proposal of term "vitamine," 72**
- Furstenberg, A. C., 368**
- Galactose, 105, 106**
- Galactosemia, 397**
- Galen, experimental work, 5**
- Gallbladder, disease, 323-324**  
 functions, 315-317

- Gallstones, cholesterol in, 36  
 Gamma rays, destruction of spoilage organisms in foods, 206  
 Gamma-tocopherol, 81  
 Gastric juice, action on food, 102  
   secretion, daily amount, 102  
 Gastritis, acute, 301, 303  
   chronic, 303  
 Gastro-intestinal tract, digestion, pathway, 294-295  
   diseases, cancer of stomach, 303-304  
   cardiospasm, 300  
   diagnosis, 295  
   etiology, 294  
   gastritis, acute, 301, 303  
     chronic, 303  
   hiatus hernia, 303  
   indigestion, 294, 300-301  
   peptic ulcer. *See* Ulcer, peptic  
   sprue, 308-311  
   symptoms, 294  
   and food, relationship, 294  
 Gauss, Harry, 108  
 Geese, as food, 473  
 Gelatin, salads, 508-509  
   source, 39  
 Genito-urinary tract, changes due to vitamin A deficiency, 244  
 Gerhardt's test for diacetic acid in urine, 660, 662  
 Gernatics, definition, 186  
   nutrition, 186-195  
     *See also* Adults, diet and nutrition  
 Gesell, A., 172, 174  
 Getz, H. R., 233  
 Gillum, H. L., 192  
 Girls, average weight for height, birth to school age, 653  
   *See also* *AGE*  
   dietary treatment, 350  
   chronic, 350-351  
   dietary treatment, 350-351  
 Glossitis, in pellagra, 247  
 Glucose (dextrose), 20, 105, 108  
   in blood, maintenance of level, 25  
   mechanism, 275-276  
   *See also* *Insulin*  
 Glycine, 41  
 Glycogen, 23  
   conversion to glucose, 316  
   in liver, release as glucose, 25  
   loss from body stores, attention to, in prescribing preoperative diet, 373  
   sources, food, 23  
   storage, in body, 42  
     in liver, 23, 26, 109, 316  
     in muscles, 23, 25-26  
 Glycohemua in diabetes mellitus, mechanism, 275-276  
 Glycosuria, alimentary, 274  
   in diabetes mellitus, 273-274  
   mechanism, 275-276  
   renal, 274  
   tests, 658-660  
     Benedict, 658-660  
 Gout, incidence, 63-65  
   from iodine deficiency in diet, 62-63  
   *See also* *URIC ACID*  
 Gout, 364, 369-372  
 Grain(s), for bread, 523-525  
   deinfestation by irradiation, 206  
   whole or milled, 523-525  
 Grapefruit, preparation, 444-445  
 Graves's disease, 369  
 Great Britain, improvement in nutrition, 10  
   standards for human dietary needs, 114  
 Greece, ancient nutrition in, 5  
 Greek dietary habits and patterns, 135-136  
 Greens, in salad, preparation, 507  
 Grollman, Arthur, 346  
 Growth, and development, definitions, 169  
   evaluation of, 184  
   nutrition for, 169-184  
   rates, 169-170  
 Gutman, A. B., 371  
 Hale, F., 144  
 Hart, W. M., 388  
 Harvard School of Public Health, Department of Maternal and Child Health, Boston, 184  
 Harvey, William, demonstration of circulation of blood, 5  
 Hawaii, mandatory enrichment of flour and bread, 11  
 Hayes, M. A., 377  
 Heart, disease. *See* Cardiac disease disorders, functional, 334

- "Heartburn," 294, 300  
 Heat, effect on starches, 23
- in nutrition, 184  
 and weight tables, average, boys, birth  
   to school age, 654  
   5 to 18 years, 656  
   girls, birth to school age, 653  
   5 to 18 years, 655  
   ideal, men and women, 657
- Hemeralopia (glare blindness), 240-242  
 etiology, 73-74
- Hemicellulose(s), 21  
 in diet, 23-25  
 in food, 23-25  
 in vegetables, 498
- Hemoglobin, iron in, 59  
 resynthesis, 59  
 synthesis, 59, 61-62
- Hemorrhage, iron losses from, 59  
 in peptic ulcer, 296
- Hemorrhagic disease, in chicks, experimental work of Dam, 81-82  
 of infants, 255  
   prophylaxis, vitamin K, 83
- Hemorrhoids, 314
- Hydrochloric acid, action in digestion, 102, 105  
 tests in diagnosis, diseases of gastrointestinal tract, 295  
 therapy, tetany due to alkalosis, 372
- Hydrogenation of fats, 30
- Hyperchlorhydria, 295  
 in peptic ulcer, 296
- Hypertension, 344-346  
 average blood pressure of men, 344  
 etiology, 344  
 overweight, effect on, 345-346  
 role of sodium in, 346  
 treatment, dietary, 345-346  
   Kempner rice diet, 346  
   very low sodium diet, 345, 346
- Hypothyroidism, 370  
 effect on basal metabolism rate, 50
- Ice cream, preparation, 462  
 recipes, 462
- Ileitis, regional, 305-307  
 dietary treatment, 307
- Ilg, F. L., 172, 174
- Immobilization of patient, effect on nutrition, 217
- Income as factor in nutrition, studies of children, 180
- Indigestion, 294, 300-301  
 causes, 300-301  
 dietary treatment, 301
- Infant(s), condition at birth in relation to mother's prenatal diet, 141, 143  
 diet, 166-167  
   requirements, recommended daily allowances, 116  
   vitamins, A, 76  
   D, 80  
 digestive disturbances, 155  
 diseases, anemia, iron deficiency, 358  
   nutritional, 388-389  
   deficiency, 388-389  
   nutrition, 385-394  
   scurvy, 389  
 feeding, 153-167
- appetites, concepts of nutrition, 3, 4-6  
 Histidine, 38, 41  
 Hoagland, C. L., 321  
 Hoffman, R. H., 269, 390  
 Holden, W. D., 375  
 Holst and Frolich, experimental scurvy in guinea pigs, 111  
 Hominy, in menu, 435  
 Homogenization, of fats, 30  
 Honey, 427  
   fructose in, 20  
 Hormone, adrenocorticotrophic See ACTH  
 Hospital, basic pattern dietary, 221, 222  
   diets, nutritional adequacy, 227  
   progressive house diets, 221, 223-225  
 Hundley, J. M., 273  
 Hungarians, dietary habits and patterns, 135  
 Hunger, mass, abolition of, 7  
 Hunscher, H. A., 175



## Infant(s), feeding—(Continued)

- breast, 153-154
  - "burping," 154
  - colostrum, 154
  - schedules, 154
- difficulties, 387-388
  - colic, 387
  - constipation, 388
  - diarrhea and dysentery, 387-388
  - vomiting and regurgitation, 387
- formula, 154-155
  - amount, 159
  - calculation, 159
  - equipment, for feeding, 160-162
    - for preparation, 162
    - sterilization, 162-163
  - milks, 157-158
    - substitutes, 158
  - preparation, 160
    - equipment, 162
    - sterilization, 162-163
  - requirement, energy, 159
  - fluid, 159
  - protein, 158-159
  - sterilization, 162-163
  - sugars, 158
  - warming, 163
- improved methods, lower mortality
  - rate from, 159
- in prematurity, 156-157
- supplementary foods, 163-166
- infections, 389
- malnutrition, 389
- nutrition, 153-167
  - See also Infants, feeding
  - obesity, 390-391
  - premature, feeding, 156-157
  - underweight, 389-390
  - weaning, 156-157
  - weight gain, 154-155, 167
- Infection(s), diet in, 232-234
  - food-borne, 197-198
  - infants, 389
- Inositol, 98, 99
- Insects, spoilage of food by, 201
- Institute of Home Economics, basic scheme
  - for meal planning, 15
  - classification of foods, 281
  - research in nutrition, 6
- Insulin, administration, 288-289
  - control of release of glycogen of liver as glucose, 25
  - deficiency, in diabetes mellitus, 275
  - mechanism in control of blood-sugar levels, 275

## Insulin—(Continued)

- mixtures in dosage, diabetes mellitus
  - therapy, 664
- reactions in diabetes mellitus, 290
- secretion by pancreas, 272
- source, 272, 285
- therapy, diabetes mellitus, administration, 661-664
  - equipment, care of, 664
  - sterilization, 663
  - injection, 664
    - loading syringe, 661, 663-664
  - unit of measurement, 285
  - use of amino acids, 41
- International Unit (I.U.) of vitamins, A,
  - D, 72, 79, 82
- Intestine(s), diseases, 305-314
  - cancer, 313
  - colitis, 307-308
  - constipation. See Constipation
  - diarrhea. See Diarrhea
  - diverticulitis, 313-314
  - diverticulosis, 313
  - hemorrhoids, 314
  - ileitis, regional, 305-307
  - juices, digestive, 105
  - large, digestion, 107-108
  - motility, excessive, diarrhea from, 108
    - as factor in digestion, 108
  - sluggish, constipation from, 108
  - peristalsis, 108
  - small, digestion in, 105-106
- Iodine, 62-64
  - administration as prophylaxis against
    - goiter, 62-64
  - in body, 56, 63
  - in diet, deficiency, goiter from, 62-63
    - requirement, in pregnancy, 142, 144
  - discovery of presence in thyroid gland, 62
  - function in body, 63, 69
  - in shellfish, 488
- Iron, 59-62, 69
  - blood building, 59
  - in body, 58, 59
  - consumption, per capita, United States, 12
  - copper as catalytic agent in synthesis of, 61
  - deficiency, 59
    - in anemias of pregnancy, 147
  - in diet, anemia from lack of absorption, 358
  - common foods, average servings, 60
  - daily pattern, 61, 222

- Iron, in diet—(Continued)  
   deficiency, anemia from, 358  
   low caloric, 268  
   recommended daily allowance, 116  
     adolescents, 62  
     adults, 62, 60  
     children, 62  
     elementary school age, 175-176  
     in pregnancy, 142, 144  
     tube feedings, 381-382  
   in tuberculosis, 233  
   women, moderately active, U.S.A.,  
     118, 119  
   in food, dietary analysis, short method,  
     Table 2, 636-641  
     Table 1, 577-635  
   sources, 59-61, 69  
   function in body, 59, 69  
   losses, 59  
   in meat, 478  
   radioactive, 61  
   role of liver in metabolism of, 317  
   storage in liver, 61  
   Irradiation, use in preservation of foods,  
     206  
   Isoniazid therapy, complications, in tuber-  
     culosis, 234  
   Italian dietary habits and patterns, 134-135  
   Japanese dietary habits and patterns, 137  
   Jaundice, 317  
     hemolytic, 317  
     obstructive, 317  
     toxic, 317  
   Jeans, P. C., 140, 143  
     and Stearns, basis for requirements of  
       vitamin D, 80  
   Jewish diet, 141  
   Johne, 456  
   Joslin, E. P., 273, 277  
   Juice, gastric, analysis in diagnosis, dis-  
     eases of gastro-intestinal tract,  
     295  
     peptic ulcer, 296  
     hypersecretion in peptic ulcer, 296  
   meat, 484, 486  
   pancreatic, excretion, 272  
   Kantor, J. L., 299  
   Karrell diet in severe decompensation, 335  
   Keeton, R. W., 227  
   Kempner rice diet, in hypertension, 346  
   Kempner, W., 346  
   Ketogenic diet, 563  
   Ketone bodies, in blood and urine, mecha-  
     nism, 276-277  
     as product of fat metabolism, 35  
     in urine, 274  
   Ketoni, use in diet in phenylketonuria, 396  
   Ketosis, 35, 274  
     attention to, in prescribing preoperative  
       diet, 374  
     in diabetes mellitus, coma from, 289-290  
   Kidney(s), diseases, 348-356  
     glomerulonephritis, 349-351  
     nephritis, 349  
     nephrosclerosis, 351-353  
     nephrosis, 354  
     stones, 354-356  
     uremia, 353  
     failure, 353-354  
       dietary treatment, 353-354  
     functions, 348-349  
   Kunball and Marine, iodine for goiter pro-  
     phylaxis, 63-64  
   Koagulation/vitamin See Vitamin K  
   Kolf, W. J., 353  
   Kwashiorkor, 239, 241  
   Labels on foods and drugs, legal require-  
     ments, 207-208  
   Labor, diet in, 150  
   Lactase, 105, 106  
     diet, 150-151, 153-154  
     menu for 1 day, 151  
     requirements, 151  
     ascorbic acid, 85  
     recommended daily allowances, 116  
   Lactose, 20, 105, 106, 444  
     laxative action, 20  
     therapeutic use, 20-21  
   Lactonuria, 274  
   Lamb and mutton, 473  
   Lavosier, A. L., studies in metabolism, 5  
   Laws for food protection, 207-210  
     adulteration, 208  
     advertising claims, 208  
     labels, 207-208  
     pending legislation, 209-210  
     pesticide chemical residues on fresh  
       fruits and vegetables, 208  
   Laxative(s), cellulose in diet, 109  
     lactose, 20

- Laxative(s)**—(Continued)  
as obesity cures, injury from, 264  
water, 109
- League of Nations, Health Committee,**  
measurement of vitamin values  
in International Units (I.U.),  
72  
standards for dietary needs, 113  
recommended standards for adequate  
nutrition, ■
- Leanness, causes, 269**
- Lecithin, 35, 318**
- Legislation, Federal Government, enrich-**  
ment, bread and flour, 524-525
- Legumes, 496**
- Leonardo da Vinci, anatomic drawings, 5**
- Lettuce, in salad, preparation, 507**
- Leukemia, 360**
- Leverton, R. M., 61-62, 475**
- Levulose. See Fructose**
- Lichtman, H. C., 357**
- Liebig, Justus von, pioneer work in nutri-**  
tion, 5
- Life expectancy, and body weight, rela-**  
tion, 260-261  
increase, 189
- Light, exposure of foods to, spoilage from,**  
201
- Linoleic acid, 31, 32**
- Linolenic acid, 31**
- Lipase(s), 33, 101, 105-106**  
action on food in stomach, 102-105
- Lipoproteins, 36**
- Liver, animal, vitamin A in, 76**  
diseases, 317-323  
cirrhosis. *See* Cirrhosis  
hepatitis, infectious, 317-318  
formation of urea, 42  
functions, 315-317  
detoxification, 317  
metabolism and storage, 316-317  
production and role of bile, 315-316  
glycogen, release as glucose, 25  
storage, 23, 26, 109  
jaundice, 317  
pathologic conditions, 317  
as redistribution and disposal center for  
amino acids, 42  
storage in, glycogen, 23, 26, 109, 316  
vitamins, 75, 78, 83, 317
- Lobsters, 489-490**
- Lonalac, as substitute for regular milk in**  
tube feedings, 380
- Lund, C. J., 144**
- Lupus erythematosus, 364**
- Lusk, W. T., pioneer work in nutrition, 5**
- Lysine, 38, 39**
- Macaroni, enrichment levels required by**  
law, 26, 27  
in menu, 435  
recipes, 438-439
- McCann, M. B., and Trulson, M. F., on**  
place of fat in diet, 29
- McCollum and Davis, recognition of vita-**  
min A, 73
- McCollum, E. V., on man's concern for**  
food, 4
- McCollum, W. G., pioneer work in nutri-**  
tion, ■
- McGarity, W. J., 149**
- McLester, J. S., 264**
- Macy, I. C., 175**
- Magnesium in diet, 56, 67, 69**
- Malabsorption syndrome. See Sprue**
- Malnutrition, infants, 389**  
underweight from, 269
- Maltase, 101, 105, 106**
- Maltose, 20, 105, 106**  
as product of digestion, ■
- Manganese in diet, 66**
- Marble, A., 397**
- Margarine, 426**  
enrichment with vitamins A and D, in  
Newfoundland, 10  
from coconut oil, 426-427  
from cottonseed oil, 426-427  
from lard, 426-427  
from tallow, 426-427
- Marun, B. A., 161, 693**
- Mastication, thorough, as aid to digestion,**  
108
- Maynard, L. A., 495**
- Mayonnaise dressing, 510**
- Meals, planning, adults, older, 194**  
in diabetes mellitus, 281-284  
family, 113-127  
caloric allowances, 114-115  
economy hints, 124-125  
estimation of dietary needs, 113-114  
fads and fallacies, dietary, avoid-  
ance of, 125-127  
market orders for a week, 121-125  
menus for a week, 122-124  
in obesity, exchange lists, 267  
small, in dietary treatment, cardiac dis-  
ease, chronic, 335-336
- Meal Planning and Exchange Lists book-**  
let, use in diabetes mellitus,  
281-282, 552

- Measures and weights, equivalents, 651-652
- Meat(s), beef, 470-473  
   care of, 479  
   consumption, per capita, 474  
   trends, 469  
   cooking, general principles, 475-476  
   guide for housewife, 476-477  
   cooking, effect on food value, 478-479  
   temperatures, recommended, 41  
   in diet, of infant, 165-166  
   digestibility, 475  
   economy in purchase and use, 125  
   exchanges in diet for diabetic, 284  
   frozen, 470  
   handling, 470  
   inspection, 208, 469-470  
   juices, 484, 486  
   lamb and mutton, 473  
   in menu, 475  
   pork, 473  
   recipes, 479-482  
     family-size, inexpensive, 536-537  
   refrigeration, 470  
   roasting, 480-481  
   safety precautions, 469-470  
   in salads, 508  
     recipes, 512  
   storage, 470  
   therapeutic diets, low caloric, 549-550  
     low sodium, recipes, 566-568  
   types, 470-573  
   value as food, 475  
   variety, 473  
   veal, 473
- Melons, preparation, 443
- Men *See* Adults
- Menadione *See* Vitamin K
- Mendel, pioneer work in nutrition, 5, 38, 73
- Ménière's syndrome, 366
- Menstruation, increased iron intake required in diet, 177  
   iron losses from, 59, 62
- Mental illness, 366-367
- Menu(s), bland diet, 302  
   cereals in, 433-438  
   cheese in, 466-467  
   eggs in, 449-450  
   elimination test diets in allergy, 329  
   fish in, 490  
   fruits in, 442-443  
   in lactation, 151  
   low-cost, woman of Southeastern United States, 119, 120  
   meat in, 475  
   milk in, 423
- Menu(s)—(Continued)  
   moderate-cost, woman of Northern and Central United States, 118, 120  
   nuts in, 447  
   in peptic ulcer, convalescent, 8 feedings per day, 299  
   postoperative diet, surgery, of stomach or duodenum, 376  
   poultry in, 475  
   in pregnancy, 145  
   progressive house diets, 224  
   relishes in, 510  
   salads in, 510  
   sample, in tuberculosis, 232  
   shellfish in, 490  
   vegetables in, 499
- Metabolism, basal, 48-50  
   rate (BMR), 48-50  
   variations, 49-50  
   carbohydrates, 25-27  
   of cells of body, 111-112  
   climate and season as influences, 53  
   clothing and housing as influences, by regulating body temperature, 53  
   definition, 46  
   disturbances, 368-372  
   energy, 46-53  
     requirements, 50-52  
       activities, everyday, 50, 51  
       of nurse, 51-52  
       muscular work, 50-52  
   fats, 35  
   and heat, relationship, 47  
   increase, by ingestion of food, 52  
   proteins, 41-43  
     complexity, 43  
     stimulation by protein, 52-53
- Metals, as contaminants of food, poisoning from, 200
- Methionine, 38, 39, 98, 316
- Meulengracht, E., 299
- Mexican dietary habits and patterns, 137-138
- Microbes, spoilage of food by, 200-201
- Micrococcus pyogenes* var *aureus* or *albus*, transmission by food, 197, 198
- Milbank Memorial Fund, 180
- Milk, 420-424  
   allergic reactions to, 331  
   substitutes in formula for infant feeding, 159  
   composition, 156, 421  
   cow's, composition, 158, 158  
   in formula for infant feeding, 157

- Milk, cow's, in formula for infant feeding—  
 (Continued)  
 preparation with sterile technic, 163  
 cream, 422  
 in diet, adults, older, 193  
 elimination, in galactosemia, 397  
 in tuberculosis, 233  
 digestibility, 422-423  
 dried, in formula for infant feeding, 157  
 preparation with sterile technic, 163  
 nonfat (skim), 422  
 food value, 421-422
- lactic acid, in formula for infant feeding, 158  
 malted, 411  
 in menu, 423  
 methods of use, 423  
 objections to, 423  
 pasteurization, 203, 204  
 state regulation, 208  
 products, vitamin A in, 78  
 safety of supply, 420  
 skim, dry, reconstitution, 544-545  
 use in recipes, 544-546  
 soybean, as substitute in allergy, 158  
 use in recipes, 423-424  
 value in diet, 423
- Mineral oil, contraindicated, as laxative or  
 in reducing diets, 83  
 in pregnancy, 145  
 harmful effects in body, 30
- Minerals, 55-69  
 balance, acid-base, 67-68  
 in basic pattern dietary, 222  
 in body, adult, 56-68  
 calcium. *See* Calcium  
 in cereals, 433  
 cobalt, 65  
 in diet, low caloric, 268  
 modifications for specific conditions, 226  
 requirements, cardiac disease, chronic, 335  
 in tuberculosis, 233

- Minerals—(Continued)  
 elimination, 69  
 essential for life, 55-56  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-635  
 fluorine, 65-66  
 in fruits, 441  
 iodine. *See* Iodine  
 iron. *See* Iron  
 labels, legal requirements, 207-208  
 magnesium, 56, 67, 69  
 manganese, 60  
 in meat, 478  
 in milk, 422  
 in nuts, 447  
 phosphorus. *See* Phosphorus  
 potassium, 56, 67, 69  
 reaction of foods, acid-base, 68  
 requirements, adults, older, 193  
 in obesity, dietary control, 264  
 in shellfish, 488  
 sodium, 56, 67, 69  
 chloride, 66-67  
 sources, foods, 55  
 sulfur, 56, 67, 69  
 trace elements, 55, 56, 64-65  
 of doubtful significance, 66  
 essential, 65-66  
 toxic, 66  
 in tube feedings, 381-382  
 in vegetables, 497  
 zinc, 66
- Mitchell, H. S., 126-127, 159  
 Molasses, 20  
 Molds, spoilage of food by, 201  
 Mollusks, 488  
 Monosaccharides, 20  
 Morgan, A. F., 192  
 Morrison, L. M., 344  
 Mortality, botulism, 199  
 poisons, swallowing, 200  
 rate for infants reduced by improved nutrition, 159  
*See also* Death
- Mosenthal, H. O., 277  
 Mouth, digestion in, food changes, 101-102, 105  
 surgery, radical, postoperative diet, 380
- Muffins, 530-531  
 recipes, 531-533
- Murlin, pioneer work in nutrition, 11
- Muscles, storage in, glycogen, 23, 25-26  
 vitamin E, 81
- Mushrooms, 496  
 poisoning from eating, 200

- Musculoskeletal system, diseases, 361-364  
 arthritis *See* Arthritis  
 collagen diseases, 364  
 gout, 364  
 muscular dystrophy, 364  
 osteo-arthritis, 363-364  
 self-help devices for use in eating, 362, 363
- Mussels, 489
- Mutton, 473
- National Nutrition Conference, 8
- National Research Council, Food and Nutrition Board *See* Food and Nutrition Board
- Food Protection Committee, 209
- Fluoridation of water supply, 235
- National School Lunch Act, 181-183
- Nephritis, 349
- Nephrosclerosis, 351-353  
 dietary treatment, 351-353
- Nephrosis, 354  
 in children, 394
- Nervous system, diseases, 364-367  
 epilepsy, 364-366  
 Ménière's syndrome, 366  
 mental illness, 366-367
- Neuroses, gastric distress from, 294
- Newfoundland, improvement in nutrition, 10-11
- Niacin (nicotinic acid), 93-95, ■  
 in basic pattern dietary, 222  
 deficiency, in diet, of family, 9  
 in diet, average servings of common foods, 94  
 low caloric, 268  
 modifications for specific conditions, 226  
 recommended daily allowance, 116  
 women, moderately active, U.S.A., 118, 119  
 experiments with animals, 93  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-635  
 measurement, 95  
 in meat, 478  
 physiologic significance, 93  
 properties, 94-95  
 requirement, human, 95, 99  
 sources in foods, 95, 99  
 storage in body, 93-94  
 therapy, pellagra, 248  
 in tube feedings, 331-382  
 in vegetables, 496
- Niacinamide, 94  
 therapy, pellagra, 248
- Nicotinic acid *See* Niacin
- Night blindness (nyctalopia), 241-242
- Nightingale, Florence, as pioneer in dietetics, 5, 213
- Nitrogen, in amino acids, conversion ■  
 urea, 42  
 equilibrium, 38, 39
- Nonprotein nitrogen products, retention, consideration in prescribing preoperative diet, 374
- Noodles, enrichment levels required by law, 26, 27  
 in menu, 435  
 recipes, 439
- Nurse, as promoter of better nutrition, community health programs, 16-17  
 home, 16-17  
 patient, 17  
 psychological factors in feeding patients, 215-217  
 teaching opportunities, mother, nutrition and weight gains, 143  
 patient concerning nutritional needs, 218-219
- Nutramigen, as milk substitute, in galactosemia, 397
- Nutrition Advisory Committee, co-ordination of activities of FAO, WHO and UNESCO, 7
- Nutrition, concept of, present-day, 3-4  
 good, signs of, 165  
 history of, 4-6  
 Babylonia, 4-5  
 Egypt, ancient, 4  
 Greece, ancient, 5  
 improvement, in United States, 6, 11  
 on world basis, 6-7  
 of infants, improved, mortality rate reduced by, 159  
 international planning, 6-7  
 popular interest, 13  
 status, evaluation, 184
- Nuts, 446-447  
 calories, 262  
 digestibility, 447  
 food value, 447  
 in menu, 447
- Nyctalopia (night blindness), 73, 241-242
- Oat preparations, 432
- Oatmeal, 432
- Obesity, 261-269  
 etiology, 26, 35, 52, 261  
 and exercise, relation, 261-262

Milk, cow's, in formula for infant feeding—  
(Continued)

- preparation with sterile technic, 163
- cream, 422
- in diet, adults, older, 193
  - elimination, in galactosemia, 397
  - in tuberculosis, 233
- digestibility, 422-423
- dried, in formula for infant feeding, 157
  - preparation with sterile technic, 163
  - nonfat (skim), 422
- economy in purchase and use, 124-125
- and eggs, beverages, recipes, 415-418
- evaporated, composition, 156
  - in formula for infant feeding, 157
    - preparation with sterile technic, 163
  - fortification with vitamin D, 80
- exchanges in diet for diabetic, 282
- food value, 421-422
- in formula for infant feeding, 157-158
- fortification, with vitamin D, 80, 253
- as foundation for liquid diet, 230
- goat's, in formula for infant feeding, 158
- human, composition, 156, 158
- lactic acid, in formula for infant feeding, 158
- malTED, 411
- in menu, 423
- methods of use, 423
- objections to, 423
- pasteurization, 203, 204
  - state regulation, 208
- products, vitamin A in, 76
- safety of supply, 420
- skim, dry, reconstitution, 544-545
  - use in recipes, 544-546
- soybean, as substitute in allergy, 158
- use in recipes, 423-424
- value in diet, 423

Almeida, J. B. A.

- balance, acid-base, 67-68
- in basic pattern dietary, 222
- in body, adult, 56-68
- calcium. *See* Calcium
- in cereals, 433
- cobalt, 65
- in diet, low caloric, 268
  - modifications for specific conditions, 228
- requirements, cardiac disease, chronic, 335
- in tuberculosis, 233

## Minerals—(Continued)

- elimination, 69  
essential for life, 55-58  
in food, dietary analysis, short method,  
Table 2, 636-641  
Table 1, 577-635  
fluorine, 65-68  
in fruits, 441  
iodine. *See* Iodine  
iron. *See* Iron  
labels, legal requirements, 207-208  
magnesium, 56, 67, 69  
manganese, 66  
in meat, 478  
in milk, 422  
in nuts, 447  
phosphorus. *See* Phosphorus  
potassium, 56, 67, 69  
reaction of foods, acid-base, 68  
requirements, adults, older, 193  
in obesity, dietary control, 264  
in shellfish, 488  
sodium, 56, 67, 69  
chloride, 66-67  
sources, foods, 55  
sulfur, 56, 67, 69  
trace elements, 55, 56, 64-65  
of doubtful significance, 66  
essential, 65-66  
toxic, 66  
in tube feedings, 381-382  
in vegetables, 497

Mitchell, H. S., 126-127, 159

Molasses, 20

1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 26

•

● ●



1

10

1

!

1

See also

**See &  
Mount**

**Mosent  
March**

Mouth,

**Keywords:** child sexual abuse; disclosure; social support

surge  
M-F

## Mutins

recip  
M-1-

**Murken,  
M. G.**

Muscle

viii

## Mushrooms

poise

tion. 159

**See also** Death

Mosenthal, H. O., 277

Mouth, digestion in, food changes, 101-102,  
105

surgery, radical, postoperative diet. 380

Muffins, 530-531

recipes, 531-533

Murphy, pioneer work in nutrition. 5

Muscles, storage in, glycogen, 23, 25-28

vitamin E. 81

Mushrooms. 496

poisoning from eating, 200

- Poisoning from food, bacterial, 198  
 botulism, 199-200  
 contaminants, 200  
 definition, 198  
 mushrooms, 200  
 plants, 200  
 shellfish, 200  
 staphylococcal, 198-199
- Poisons, swallowing, mortality, 200
- Pokeweed greens, poisoning from eating, 200
- Polomyelitis, diet in, 230-232  
 complications, 232  
 nursing problems, 231-232
- Polish dietary habits and patterns, 135
- Pollack, H., 239
- Polyarteritis, 364
- Polynearitis, 244
- Population, changes in U.S., aged and aging, 188-189  
 statistics, United States, 189, 196
- Pork, 473  
 cookery principles, 475-476  
 Portuguese dietary habits and patterns, 138
- Potassium, in diet, 56, 67, 69  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-535  
 seasonings and beverages, 644-647  
 impaired elimination in disease of kidney, 349
- Potatoes, prevention of sprouting by irradiation, 206  
 starch grains before and after cooking, 21, 22  
 white, green parts, poisoning from eating, 200
- Poultry, choice and preparation, 482-483  
 economy in purchase and use, 125  
 freezing, 474  
 inspection, Government, 208  
 in menu, 475  
 preservation from spoilage, use of antibiotics, 205-206  
 recipes, 483-484  
 types, 473-474
- Pregnancy, anemia, iron deficiency, 358  
 diabetes mellitus in, 291  
 diet, 140-150  
 complications, 147-150  
 anemias, 147-148  
 cardiac disease, 150  
 diabetes, 150  
 overweight, 148-149  
 toxemia, 149-150  
 vomiting, 147
- Pregnancy, diet—(Continued)  
 effect on condition of infant at birth, 141-142  
 menus, 145  
 requirements, 140-145  
 ascorbic acid, 85  
 calcium, 142-144  
 calories, 142  
 iodine, 142, 144  
 iron, 142, 144  
 phosphorus, 142-144  
 protein, 142-143  
 recommended daily allowances, 116, 141-142  
 vitamins, 76, 142, 144-145  
 selection of food, 145-147  
 mineral oil, use contraindicated, 83  
 nutrition, studies, 140-142
- Prematurity, iron-deficiency anemia, 388
- Prescriptions, dietary, diabetes mellitus, 278-280
- Preservation of foods, 202-206  
 antibiotics, 205-206  
 canning, 204-205  
 chemical additives, 205  
 cooking and baking, 203-204  
 dehydration, 205  
 freezing, 203  
 irradiation, 206  
 pasteurization, 204  
 refrigeration, 202-203
- Price, J. P., 388
- Protease(s), 101, 105
- Protein(s), 37-45  
 allergic reactions to, 327  
 amino acids. *See* Amino acids  
 in basic pattern dietary, 222  
 per capita, United States, 12  
 in cereals, 432-433  
 composition, 37-38  
 deficiencies, 236-239, 241  
 in diet, of family, 9  
 etiology, 236-237  
 incidence, 236  
 symptoms and pathology, 237-238  
 treatment, 238-239  
 definition, 37  
 in diet, average servings of common foods, 40  
 cirrhosis, 319, 320  
 diabetes mellitus, ratio to fat and carbohydrate, 278  
 sample prescription diet, 280  
 ketogenic, 365  
 low caloric, 268  
 mixture, 39-40



**Obesity—(Continued)**

- health hazard, 280, 281
- hypertension from, 345-346
- infants, 390-391
- maintenance of weight loss, 267
- psychological factors, 265, 391
- success of antiobesity regimens, 267, 269
- treatment, diet, 264-265
  - adequacy of content and intake, 265-267
  - alcohol, restrictions, 265
  - fads, 265-267
  - low caloric reducing, 265-269
  - requirements, calories, 264
  - carbohydrate, 264
  - fat, 264
  - minerals, 264-265
  - protein, 264
  - vitamins, 264-265
  - satiety value of foods, 265
  - water intake, 265
- drugs, 263-264
- Odell, G. V., 475
- Office of Experiment Stations, 6
- Oil, mineral *See* Mineral oil
- Oldham, H., 148
- Oleic acid, 31, 32
- Onions, prevention of sprouting by irradiation, 206
- Oranges, preparation, 444-445
- Orinase (tolbutamide) therapy for diabetes mellitus, 289
- Orr, J. B., leadership in nutrition, 6
- Osborne, pioneer work in nutrition, 38, 73
- Osteo-arthritis, 363-364
- Osteomalacia, from vitamin D deficiency, 253
- Overeating, indigestion from, 301
- Oxidation, of fats, 35
- Oxyhemoglobin, 59
- Oxytetracycline, use in preservation of food, 205, 206
- Oysters, 489
- PABA (para-aminobenzoic acid), 98, 99
- Page, I. H., 343, 345
- insufficiency of enzymes, in children, 396
- role in digestion, 272
- secretions, external, pancreatic juice, 105
- Pancreatitis, 324-325
- Pantothenic acid, 97, 99

- Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA), 98, 99
- Pasteur, Louis, 5, 204
- evaluation of status on entering hospital, 217
- in immobilization, 217
- in long-term and chronic illness, 217-218
- psychological factors, 215-217
- teaching by nurse, 218-219
- Peaches, preparation, 443-444
- Pears, preparation, 444
- Pectin, 25
  - therapy, diarrhea, 25
- Pellagra, 94, 247-248
- Pentosuria, 274
- Pepper, 428
- Pepsin, 41
  - action on food in stomach, 102-103, 105
- Peptidases, 105, 106
- Perforation, in peptic ulcer, 296
- Peristalsis, in stomach, 104
- Perspiration, elimination of minerals, 69
- Phenobarbital therapy, epilepsy, 365
- Phenylalanine, 41
- Phenylketonuria, 396-397
- Philippines, beriberi, morbidity and mortality, 11
  - improvement in nutrition, 10
- Phosphates, in maintenance of acid-base balance of blood, 58, 67
  - role in muscle physiology, 58
- Phospholipids, 33, 65
- Phosphorus, 56-59, 69
  - in body, 58, 59
  - deficiency, ■
  - in diet, recommended daily allowance, 58, 69
  - requirements, 58-59
    - adults, 58-59
    - children, 59
    - infants, 59
    - in pregnancy, 142-144
  - in food(s), sources, 58-58, 69
  - function, 58, 69
  - loss, in cooking of vegetables, 56-57
  - in meat, 478
  - radioactive, 58
  - vitamin D required for absorption and utilization, 59
- Photosynthesis, 46
- Pic, calories, 263
- Pineapple, preparation, 444

- Rectum, surgery of, postoperative diet, 379
- Refrigeration, preservation of food by, 202-203
- Regimen Sanitatus Salernitanum*, quotation from, 220
- Regurgitation, by infants, 387
- Relish(es), definition, 506  
in menu, 510  
preparation, 510
- Rennin, action on food in, 102, 103, 105
- Reproduction, in animals, vitamin requirements, A, 75
- Research in nutrition, evolution in, 5-6  
pioneers, 5-6  
*See also under individual components of foods*
- Residue in diet, moderately low, in intestinal diseases, 306  
very low, in intestinal diseases, 306
- Respiratory tract, infections, from vitamin A deficiency, 244
- Rest as therapy, peptic ulcer, 296
- Rheumatic fever, therapy, diet, 230
- Riboflavin (vitamin B<sub>2</sub>), 91-93, 99  
in basic pattern dietary, 222  
deficiency, 248  
in diet, of family, 9  
disorders due to, pellagra, 247-248  
manifestations, 91, 99  
in diet, average servings of common foods, 92  
low caloric, 268  
recommended daily allowance, 116  
women, moderately active, U S A, 118, 119  
in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
Table 1, 577-635  
measurement, 93  
in meat, 478  
physiologic significance, 91  
properties, 90  
requirement, human, 93, 99  
sources in foods, 92, 93, 99  
stability in foods, 93  
storage in body, 93  
in tube feedings, 381-382  
in vegetables, 496
- Rice, 432  
enrichment, 11  
levels required by law, 26, 27  
Kempner diet, in hypertension, 346  
in menu, 435  
polished, and incidence of beriberi, 11  
recipes, 437-438  
in world diet, 11
- Rickets, 759-253  
etiology, 76, 251  
experimental production in animals, 78-80  
incidence, 250-251  
predisposition to, from hypovitaminosis in pregnancy, 78  
symptoms and pathology, 251, 252  
treatment, and prevention, 251-253  
ultraviolet light, 77  
vitamin, A, 76-77  
D, 79, 80
- Roberts, P. H., 193
- Roe, 487-488
- Roentgenography in diagnosis, gastro-intestinal tract diseases, 295  
peptic ulcer, 296  
stomach diseases, 295
- Rose, M. S., pioneer work in nutrition, 5
- Rose, W. C., pioneer work on amino acids, 38
- Roughage in diet, in carcinosis, 322  
modifications for specific conditions, 226
- Rowe, A. H., 328
- Rubner, Max, on loss of water in body, 110  
pioneer work in nutrition, 5
- Rye, 432  
for bread, 523
- Saccharin, 427-428  
as substitute for sugar, in beverages, 547-548
- Salad(s), cheese, recipes, 511-512  
combinations, 508-509  
definition, 508  
dressings, 509-510  
recipes, 513-514  
fish, recipes, 512  
fruit, 508, 509  
recipes, 512  
gelatin, 508-509  
meat, fish, poultry and eggs in, 508  
recipes, 512  
in menu, 510  
recipes, 511-512  
substitutes for, 508  
therapeutic diets, low caloric, 550-551  
vegetables in, 506-508  
leafy, 506-507  
recipes, 511
- Saliva, in digestion, 102  
action on starch, 22-23  
secretion, daily amount, 102
- Salmonella typhi*, transmission by food, 197
- Salt, balance, maintenance by postoperative diet, 375

- Proteins, in diet—(Continued)  
 modifications for specific conditions, 226  
 recommended daily allowance, 116  
 requirements, 43-45  
   basic pattern, daily, 44  
   cardiac disease, chronic, 335  
   elementary school age, 175  
   glomerulonephritis, chronic, 350-351  
   infants and children, 158-159  
   nephrosclerosis, 351-352  
   in pathologic and environmental conditions, 44  
   in pregnancy and lactation, 43, 142-143  
 research, 44-45  
 in tuberculosis, 233  
 women, moderately active, U.S.A., 118, 119  
 world use, 37  
 in fish, 488  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641  
   Table 1, 576-634  
 hydrolysate, 39  
 importance for health, 37  
 incomplete, 39  
 meat, 475, 478  
 metabolism, 41-43  
   complexity, 43  
 in milk, 156, 422  
 modification by heat, 41  
 nuts, 447  
 physiologic fuel value, 47  
 quality, 39-40  
 requirements, adults, older, 192-193  
   in obesity, dietary control, 264  
 shellfish, 488  
 sources, 37-38  
   animals, 39, 40  
   plants, 39, 40  
 and stature, relationship, 37  
 stimulation of metabolism, 52-53  
 tube feedings, 381-382  
 vegetables, 498  
 Psychological factors, in ease of digestion, 106  
   nutritional problems of patient, 215-217  
   in obesity, 265, 391  
 Psychoses, gastric distress from, 294  
 Pteroylglutamic acid, 97  
 Ptyalin, 22  
   action on food, 102  
 Public health, food. *See various items under Food*
- Puerto Rico, dietary habits and patterns, 138  
 mandatory enrichment of flour and bread, 11  
 Purée(s), 518  
   diet, "full," in bleeding peptic ulcers, 299-300  
 Purines in diet, modifications for specific conditions, 226  
   restriction in gout, 371  
 Pylorus, 104-105  
 Pyridoxal, 96, 99  
 Pyridoxamine, 96, 99  
 Pyridoxine (vitamin B<sub>6</sub>), 96, 99  
   effect on development of atherosclerosis, 342  
   therapy, complications, in tuberculosis, 234
- Rabinovitch, R. D., 163-164, 166-167  
 Recipes, family-size (Inexpensive), 534-546  
   cheese dishes, 537-538  
   desserts, 542-544  
   fish, 541-542  
   main dishes, 538-541  
   meat dishes, 536-537  
   soups, 534-535  
   vegetables, 544-546  
   beverages, 547-548  
   desserts, 551-552  
   fish, 550  
   meats, 549-550  
   salads, 550-551  
   soups, 548-549  
   vegetables, 550  
 low sodium, 565-571  
   breads, 569  
   cereals processed without salt, 565  
   desserts, 569-571  
   meats, 568-568  
   spices and herbs to flavor unsalted foods, 565-568  
   vegetables, 568-569  
*See also Index of Individual Recipes*  
 Recommended Dietary Allowances *See*

## Soybean milk as substitute—(Continued)

- Spies, T. D., experimental work in nutrition, 93, 97, 248
- Spock, B., 387
- Sprue (idiopathic steatorrhea), 308-311  
 etiology, 308, 310  
 symptoms, 308  
 treatment, "gluten-free" diet, 309-311  
 tropical, treatment, folacin, 97
- Staphylococcus, transmission by food, 197-199
- Starch(es), 21-23  
 cooking, effect of, 22-23  
 digestion, effect of, 22-23  
 in foods, percentages, 22  
 restricted, in diet for celiac disease, 394-395  
 sources, natural, 21
- Stare, F. J., 644
- State regulations in food protection, 208-209
- Stature, effect of protein in diet, 37
- Steam, pressure-processing in canning food, 204
- Steapsin, 105
- Stearns and Jeans, basis for requirement of vitamin D, 80
- Steatorrhea, idiopathic. *See* Sprue
- Steenbock, research on vitamin D, 78
- Stenility in animals from vitamin E deficiency, 81
- Stenlization, equipment, formula for infant, 165-183
- Stomach, acidities for various articles of diet, 103  
 anatomy and physiology, 102  
 digestion in, 102-105  
 enzymes, 102-104  
 juices, 102, 105  
 diseases, 294-303  
 cancer, 303-304  
 peptic ulcer. *See* Ulcer, peptic  
 exit of food, evacuation time for various articles of diet, 103  
 peristaltic waves, 104  
 pylorus, 104-105
- Stomach—(Continued)  
 surgery of, postoperative diet, 376-377
- Stomatitis, in pellagra, 247
- Stones, kidney, 354-356
- Streptococci, hemolytic, transmission by food, 197
- Streptococcus pyogenes, transmission by food, 197
- Stuart, H. C., 176
- Sucaryl for artificial sweetening, 427-428  
 in beverages, 547-548
- Succus entericus, 105
- Sucrase, 101, 105, 106
- Sucrose, 20, 105, 106  
 in formula for infant feeding, 158
- Sugar(s), 20-21, 427  
 brown, 20  
 and butter, mixtures for kidney failure, 354  
 double (disaccharides), 20  
 in foods, percentages, 22  
 in formula for infant feeding, 158  
 fructose. *See* Fructose  
 fruit. *See* Fructose  
 galactose. *See* Galactose  
 glucose. *See* Glucose  
 granulated, 20  
 lactose. *See* Maltose  
 malt. *See* Maltose  
 maltose. *See* Maltose  
 milk. *See* Lactose  
 molasses, 20  
 powdered, 20  
 raw, 20  
 single (monosaccharides), 20  
 sucrose. *See* Sucrose
- Sulfonamides, as possible vitamin antagonists, 100
- Sulfur in diet, 59, 67, 69
- Sure, naming of vitamin E, 81
- Surgery, for diabetics, 290  
 nutrition in, 373-383  
 postoperative diets. *See* Diets, postoperative  
 preoperative diets. *See* Diets, preoperative
- Swallowing, 102
- Sweetenings, 426-428  
 artificial, 427-428
- Takaki, 244
- Tannin, in coffee, 410
- Tes(s), 410-411  
 herb, 411  
 food, 411  
 preparation, 414

## Salt—(Continued)

- in diet, in cirrhosis, 322
- requirements, nephrosclerosis, 352
- restriction, in cardiac disease, chronic, 336
- in glomerulonephritis, 350, 351
- omission in processed cereals for therapeutic diets, 565
- for seasoning food, 428
- substitutes, use in cardiac disease, 337, 339
- table, iodized, for goiter prophylaxis, 54
- Sandwiches, 527-529
  - calories, 262
  - general directions, 527-528
  - recipes, 528-529
  - luncheon or supper, 528-529
- tea, 529
- Sauces for vegetables, 503
  - recipes, 503-504
- Scallops, 489
- School lunch program, 181-183
  - benefits, 183
  - organization and administration, 181-182
  - types of lunches, 182
- Scleroderma, 364
- Scrimshaw, N. S., 241
- Scurvy, 248-250
  - experiments with guinea pigs, 84
  - history, 249
  - incidence, 248-249
  - infantile, 389
  - symptoms and pathology, 249-250
  - treatment, 250
- Seasonings, 428-429
  - potassium content, 644-647
  - for salt-restricted diet, 337
  - sodium content, 644-647
- cooking terms, 407
- measurement of ingredients, 405-407
  - accuracy, 406
  - metric system and equivalents, 407
  - table of measures and approximate weights, 407
- menu, adequate daily, 403-405
- for patient, 405
- recipes, use of, 405

- Sheft, B. B., 148
- Sheldon, W., 395
- Shellfish, classification, 488
  - composition, 488
  - digestibility, 490
  - in menu, 490
  - poisoning from eating, 200
  - recipes, 493-494
  - selection and care, 493
  - types, 489-490
  - uncooked, from polluted water, typhoid fever from, 193
- Sherman, H. C., pioneer in nutrition research, 4, 5, 187-188
- Shigella, transmission by food, 197
- Shrimps, 490
- Sippy regimen in bleeding peptic ulcers, 299
- Skin, area, relation to heat production and loss, 49-50
  - diseases, 331-332
  - lesions, with pigmentation, from niacin deficiency, 246, 247
  - from vitamin A deficiency, 243-244
- Slavic dietary habits and patterns, 135
- Slesenger, M. H., 300
- Smith, A. V., 383
- "Snack" foods, calories, 262-263
- Sodium, chloride (table salt), in diet, 66-67
  - in diet, 56, 67, 69
  - requirements, nephrosclerosis, 352
  - in foods, seasonings and beverages, 644-647
  - low content, therapeutic diets, cereals processed without salt, 565
  - desserts, 569-571
  - recipes, 565-571
    - breads, 569
    - meats, 568-568
    - vegetables, 568-569
  - spices and herbs to flavor unsalted foods, 565-566
  - role in hypertension, 346
- Soups, 515-520
  - clear, 515-516
    - recipes, 516
  - cream, 517-518
    - recipes, 518-520
  - meat, preparation, 478-479, 484-485
    - recipes, 485-486
  - milk, unthickened, recipes, 510-517
  - ready-to-use, 515
  - recipes, family-size, inexpensive, 534-535
  - therapeutic diets, low caloric, 548-549
- Soybean milk as substitute for cow's milk, in allergy, 331

- Ulcer, peptic, treatment, dietary—(Cont)  
 frequent and small feedings, 297  
 lowering gastric acidity, 296-297  
 maintenance, 297-299  
 nonirritating foods, 297  
 medication, 296  
 rest, 296  
 surgical, 300
- Ultraviolet light, fortification of foods with  
 vitamin D, 78
- irradiation, decomposition of alpha-tocopherol from, III
- in sunlight, variation of amount, 77, 78
- treatment, rickets, 77
- Underwood, William, 204
- UNESCO *See* United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
- United Nations, Children's Fund, milk supplied by, 181
- Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO), emphasis on nutrition, 7
- search for additional sources of protein, 45
- Food and Agriculture Organization *See* Food and Agriculture Organization
- World Health Organization *See* World Health Organization
- United States, Department of Agriculture, Federal Meat Inspection Act, 208
- Fruit and Vegetable Division of the Agricultural Marketing Service, standards and inspection, 208
- human requirements for specific nutrients defined by, 113
- Institute of Home Economics *See* Institute of Home Economics
- National School Lunch Program, 181-183
- records of available foods, 11
- standards, for yeast-bread, 525
- dietary habits and patterns, regional differences, 130-132
- Urea, formation and excretion, 42
- impaired elimination in disease of kidney, 349
- production in metabolism, 317
- retention, consideration in prescribing preoperative diet, 374
- Uremia, 353
- Urinalysis, in diabetes mellitus, as diagnostic test, 273-274
- Urine, analysis *See* Urinalysis
- collection for testing, 658
- composition, 650
- diacetic acid, test, Acetates, 662  
 Gerhardt, 660, 662
- elimination of minerals, III
- normal, composition, 343
- volume and limits, 273
- specific gravity, 273
- sugar in *See* Glycosuria
- tests, collection of specimens, 658
- for diacetic acid, Acetates, 662  
 Gerhardt's, 660, 662
- for sugar, 658-660
- Utensils, eating, in public places, transmission of disease by, 198
- Valve, ileocecal, 107
- van de Kamer, J. H., 310
- Vanilla extract, 428
- van Itallie, T. B., 343
- Variations, individual, in nutritional needs, 10
- Varices, esophageal, with cirrhosis, 322
- Vascular diseases, 341-346
- atherosclerosis, 341-344
- dietary treatment, 343-344
- hypertension *See* Hypertension
- Veal, 473
- Vegetables, 495-505
- butters, flavored, 503
- canned, 498
- cooking, 502
- carbohydrate content, classification (Table 3), 642
- classification, botanical, 495-496
- consumption, per capita, 499
- cooking, 500-502
- canned form, 502
- dried form, 502
- frozen form, 502
- rules, general, and variations, 501
- timetable, 501
- dehydrated or dried, 499
- cooking, 502
- in diet, of infant, 165
- digestibility, 498
- dressings, 502-504
- economy in purchase and use, 124
- exchanges in diet for diabetic, 283
- flower, 496
- food value, 496-498
- fresh, pesticide chemical residues on, Government regulation, 208
- frozen, 498-499
- cooking, 502

- Tea(s) — (Continued)  
 recipes, 414  
 sandwiches, 529  
 tannin in, 411
- Teeth, enamel, mottled, from excess of  
 fluorine in diet, 85
- Temperature, body, regulation, by climate,  
 season, housing and clothing,  
 effect on metabolism, 53  
 by fat, 35  
 control, in cooking, fats, 34-35  
 in cooking, effect on proteins, 41
- Terrapins, 490
- Test(s), allergy. See Allergy, tests  
 blood-sugar, for diabetes mellitus, 274  
 creatin tolerance, in muscular dystrophy,  
 311  
 dietary, in diabetes mellitus, 274-275  
 ketone bodies in urine, 274  
 urinalysis. See Urinalysis
- Tetany, 372
- Thiamine (vitamin B<sub>1</sub>), 88-91, 99  
 in basic pattern dietary, 222  
 deficiency, in diet, of family, 9  
 disorders due to, 244-247  
 beriberi. See Beriberi  
 pellagra, 247-248  
 polyneuritis, 244  
 manifestations, 89, 99  
 in diet, average servings of common  
 foods, 90  
 low caloric, 263  
 modifications for specific conditions,  
 226  
 recommended daily allowance, 116  
 women, moderately active, U.S.A.,  
 118, 119  
 in food, dietary analysis, short method,  
 Table 2, 636-641  
 Table 1, 577-635  
 measurement, 89-90  
 in meat, 478  
 physiologic significance, 88-89  
 properties, 89  
 requirements, adults, older, 193-194  
 human, 90-91, 99  
 sources in food, 90, 91, 99  
 stability in foods, 91, ■  
 storage, 89  
 therapy, beriberi, 246-247  
 in tube feedings, 381-382  
 in vegetables, 496
- Thirst, governing water intake, 110-111
- Throat, surgery, radical, postoperative diet,  
 380
- Thyroid extract therapy, obesity, 263
- Thyroid gland, discovery of iodine in, 62  
 secretion, effect on basal metabolism rate,  
 50
- Thyrotoxicosis, 369
- Tisdall, 258
- Toast, recipes, 525-527
- Tocopherol (vitamin E), 81, 82
- Todd, experimental work with vitamin B<sub>12</sub>,  
 97
- Tolbutamide (Orinase) therapy for dia-  
 betes mellitus, 289
- Tomatoes, in salad, 508
- Tompkins, W. T., 149
- Tonsillectomy, postoperative diet, 379-380
- Toxemia, of pregnancy, as dietary compli-  
 cation, 149-150
- Tray for patient, arrangement by nurse, 405
- Trichina in pork, destruction by irradiation,  
 206
- Trulson, M. F., 29, 140
- Trypsin, 41, 105
- Tryptophane, 38, 39, ■
- Tube feedings, 380-383  
 in burns about face and mouth, 384  
 nursing problems, 383  
 in vances, esophageal, 322
- Tuberculosis, of cattle, state inspection and  
 control, 208-209  
 etiology and symptoms, 232-233  
 mortality, in Newfoundland, 11  
 treatment, dietary, 233-234  
 menu, sample, 232  
 drug complications, 235
- Tuohy, E. L., 193
- Turkeys, as food, 473
- Turkish dietary habits and patterns, 135-  
 138
- Turtles, 490
- Typhoid bacillus, transmission by food, 197
- Typhoid fever, etiology, uncooked shellfish  
 from polluted water, 198  
 therapy, diet, 230
- Tyrosine, 41
- Ulcer, duodenal, 295  
 gastric, 295  
 peptic, 295-300  
 acute, dietary treatment, 297  
 bleeding, dietary treatment, 299-300  
 convalescent, diet, 297  
 diagnosis, 298  
 etiology, 296  
 prognosis, 300  
 symptoms, 298  
 treatment, 296-300  
 dietary, 296-300

- Vitamin B complex—(Continued)**  
 in diet, requirements, adults, older, 193  
   elementary school age, 176  
   in prematurity, 157  
 discovery and early significance, 88  
 disorders due to, pellagra, 247-248  
 distribution, 88  
 experiments with animals, 88  
 factors, subdivision into, 88  
 mobility of intestines promoted by, 108  
 properties, ■  
 storage in liver, 317  
 therapeutic use, ■  
   beriberi, 247
- Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>** See Thiamine
- Vitamin B<sub>2</sub>** See Riboflavin
- Vitamin B<sub>6</sub>** (pyridoxine), 96, 99  
 effect on development of atherosclerosis, 342
- Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>**, 96-97, 99  
 physiologic significance, 98, 99  
 properties, 97  
 sources in foods, 97, 99
- rickets See Rickets
- in diet, recommended daily allowance, 116  
 requirement, elementary school age, 176  
   human, 80, 82  
   infant, 164  
   premature, 157  
 enrichment of foods by addition of, 207  
 essential for absorption and utilization of calcium and phosphorus, 59  
 forms, 78  
 fortification, milk, 157-158, 253  
   margarine, 30  
 function, 77, 82  
 history, 76-77  
 measurement, 72, 78-80  
 in milk, 422  
 physiologic significance, 77-78  
 precautions in use of supplementary sources, 253  
 properties, 78  
 sources, 80, 82  
 stability, 80-81  
 storage in body, 78, 317  
 toxicity, 78
- Vitamin D<sub>2</sub>** from irradiation of ergosterol, 78
- Vitamin D<sub>3</sub>** from irradiation of cholesterol, 78
- Vitamin E** (tocopherol), 81, 82
- Vitamin K** (menadiolone and derivatives), 81-83  
 deficiency, hemorrhagic disease of infants from, 255  
 measurement, ■  
 physiologic significance, 81-83  
 properties, 82, ■  
 in prophylaxis, hemorrhagic disease of newborn, 81  
 requirement, human, 83  
 sources, 82, 83  
 storage in body, 83, 317  
 therapy, hemorrhage, 83  
   hemorrhagic disease of infants, 255  
   hypoprothrombinemia, 374
- Vitamin P** (citrin), 87-88
- Voit, pioneer work in nutrition, 5
- Vomiting, by infants, 387  
 of pregnancy, as dietary complication, 147
- Warkany, J., 145
- Water, absorption, in large intestine, 107
- therapeutic, in obesity, 265  
 in digestive juices, 109  
 essential ■ life, 109  
 in fish, 488  
 in fluids of body, 110, 111  
 in foods, common, percentage, 110  
   dietary analysis, Table 1, 576-634  
 and functions of body, 109-111  
 laxative effect, 109  
 losses from body, 110-111  
 requirement in diet, 109  
 restriction, in cardiac disease, chronic, 336  
 in shellfish, 488  
 sodium content, high, restriction on use in cardiac disease, 339  
 in stomach, evacuation time, 104  
 in temperature regulation, 110  
 in urine, percentage, 110
- Weight, average, for height, boys, birth ■ school age, 654  
   5 to 18 years, 656  
   girls, birth to school age, 653  
   5 to 18 years, 655



**Vegetables—(Continued)**

- fruits classed as, 496
  - fungi, edible, 496
  - leafy, 495
  - legumes, 496
  - in menu, 499
  - preparation and cooking, 499-502
  - recipes, 504-505
  - roots and tubers, 495-496
  - in salads, 506-508
    - recipes, 511
  - saucers, 503
    - recipes, 503-504
  - seeds and seed pods, 496
  - stem, 495
  - therapeutic diets, low caloric, 550
    - low sodium, recipes, 568-569
  - vitamins in, loss in cooking, 496-497
- Vioosterol**, 78
- therapy, rickets, 253
- Vitamin(s)**, avitaminosis, 73
- in basic pattern dietary, 222
  - concentrates, use by older adults, 194
  - deficiency, 73
    - attention to, in prescribing preoperative diet, 374
    - skin manifestations, 332
  - definition, 71
  - in diet, low caloric, 268
    - modifications for specific conditions, 226
    - pattern for 1 day, 95-98
    - requirements, cardiac disease, chronic, 335
      - elementary school age, 176
      - in tuberculosis, 233
  - fat-soluble, 71-83
  - in food, dietary analysis, short method, Table 2, 636-641
    - Table 1, 577-635
  - grouping, 72
  - history, 71-72
  - hypervitaminosis, 73
  - labels, legal requirements, 207-208
  - losses in cooking and storage of food, 72
  - measurement, 72
  - in meat, 475, 478
    - effects of cooking, 478
  - niacin. *See* Niacin
  - nicotinic acid. *See* Niacin
  - nomenclature, 72
  - in nuts, 447
  - recommended dietary allowances, 73
  - requirements (human), 72-73
    - adults, older, 193-194
    - infants, 164

**Vitamin(s), requirements—(Continued)**

- in obesity, dietary control, 264-265
  - in pregnancy, 142, 144-145
  - in prematurity, 157
  - research, early, 5
  - storage in body, 73, 75
  - therapy, anemia, nutritional, 389
  - in tube feedings, 381-382
  - in vegetables, loss in cooking, 496-497
  - water-soluble, 84-100
  - See also* individual names
- Vitamin A**, 73-76, 82
- consumption, per capita, United States, 12
  - deficiency, in diet of family, 9
  - in diet, average servings of common foods, 74
  - recommended daily allowance, 116
  - requirements, animals, 75
    - elementary school age, 176
    - human, 75-76
    - infant, 164
      - premature, 157
    - in pregnancy and lactation, 76
    - women, moderately active, in U.S.A., 118, 119
  - diseases or disorders due to, 73, 82, 241-244
    - genito-urinary tract disorders, 244
    - hemeralopia (glare blindness), 73-74, 240-242
    - nyctalopia (night blindness), 73, 241-245
    - respiratory-tract infections, 244
    - skin lesions, 243-244
    - xerophthalmia, 243
    - xerosis, 242-243
  - fortification of foods, margarine, 80
  - fruits, 441
  - function, 73-74, 82
  - losses in cooking vegetables, 76
  - measurement, 72, 75, 82
  - milk, 422
  - physiologic significance, 73, 82
  - properties, 75
  - sources, food, 76
  - stability in foods, 76, 82
  - storage in liver, 317
  - therapy, hemeralopia, 242
    - nyctalopia, 243
    - xerophthalmia, 73, 243
    - xerosis, 243
- Vitamin B complex**, 88-99
- in cereals, 433
  - consumption, per capita, United States, 12



## Weight—(Continued)

- body, and life expectancy, relation, 260-261
- excess, in pregnancy, as dietary complication, 148-149
- as factor, in estimation of dietary needs, 115, 116
  - in nutrition, 184
- gain, adults, older, 191
- infant, 154-155, 167
- in obesity from therapeutic diet, maintenance of, 267
- overweight. *See* Obesity
- underweight, 269-271
  - anorexia nervosa, 271
  - infants, 389-390
  - treatment, diet, 269-271
  - nursing problems, 271
  - types of leanness, 269
- Weights and measures, equivalents, 651-652
- Went, L. N., 239
- Wheat, 432
  - allergic reactions to, 331
- Williams, R. D., findings of Mayo Clinic in thiamine deficiency, 89
- Williams, R. J., 193
- Williams, R. R., experimental work in nutrition, 88-89
  - rice-enrichment program in Philippines, 11
- Wine beverages, recipes, 419
- Wolf, S., 296
- Wolff, H. C., 296
- Women. *See* Adults
- Woodruff, C. W., 389
- World Health Organization (WHO), 7
  - search for additional sources of protein, 45
- Wound(s), healing, ascorbic acid essential for, 84
- Xerophthalmia, 243
  - etiology, 73
  - treatment, dietary, 73
- Xerosis, 242-243
- Yale Clinic of Child Development, 172
- Yeast(s), bread, as foundation for recipes, 525-530
  - sandwiches, 527-529
  - luncheon or supper, 528
  - tea, 529
  - toast, 525-527
    - in bread-making, 525
    - brewer's, thiamine in, 91
    - spoilage of food by, 201
- Youmans, J. B., 236, 238
- Young, C., 264, 267
- Zein, as incomplete protein, 39
- Zickefoose, M., 391
- Zinc in diet, 66





**HUMAN NUTRITION  
HISTORIC AND SCIENTIFIC**